Blackie is fishing now. He is not looking at me. I walk into the water and dive. Now I am under the water. I swim to Blackie under the water. Now I can see his legs. I open my mouth and bite him.
"Help!" cries Blackie. "There is a monster in the water."
Blackie runs out of the water.
"There is a monster in the lake!" he says to Pinky.
"A monster?!" cries Pinky.
"Yes, it has got red ears and very sharp teeth!"

Beginner
Elementary
Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate
Для продолжающих первого уровня

Intermediate
Для продолжающих второго уровня

Upper Intermediate
Для продолжающих третьего уровня

Advanced
Для совершенствующихся



ISBN 978-5-8112-3482-0
9785811234820

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение

Beginner

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Английский клуб

Юлия Пучкова

Забавные истории котенка Рэдди



Yulia Puchkova

Reddy's Funny Stories

Beginner

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Юлия Пучкова

Забавные истории котенка Рэдди

Москва
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2009

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
П90

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Пучкова, Ю. Я.

П90 Забавные истории котенка Рэдди / Юлия Пучкова. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2009. — 80 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-3482-0

Эта книга — сборник забавных историй, рассказанных котенком Рэдди о себе и своих сестричке и братике. Котята очень разные, но это не мешает им дружить. И что бы ни случилось, они всегда находят выход, а в трудную минуту обязательно приходят друг другу на помощь.

Каждая глава снабжена упражнениями, направленными на развитие навыков речи и отработку грамматики.

Пособие адресовано учащимся 3–5 классов школ, лицеев, гимназий, а также оно может быть использовано в сфере внешкольного образования. Книга содержит англо-русский словарь, соответствующий данному этапу обучения.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-3482-0

От автора

Дорогие ребята!

Всего год или два назад вы узнали английский алфавит, потом прочитали первые английские слова, и вот наступил новый этап в овладении вами иностранным языком. Вы начинаете читать книги на английском! И это здорово!

Истории котёнка Рэдди написаны специально для вас. Главные герои книги — забавные котята: два брата и сестра. Я уверена, что вы полюбите умную, трогательную Пинки и доброго, озорного Рэдди. Может быть, не всем вам понравится Блэки. Но не забывайте, что он ещё совсем маленький котёнок, и у него вся жизнь впереди, чтобы стать мудрее и добрее.

Читайте и улыбайтесь! Проделав упражнения, предложенные после каждой главы, вы будете приятно удивлены, обнаружив, что стали чуть-чуть лучше говорить, чуть-чуть лучше

разбираться в грамматике и научились отгадывать загадки на английском языке. Вы узнаете много новых слов и без труда запомните их, поскольку будете встречать их на протяжении всей книги то в одной, то в другой главе. И я точно знаю, что, прочитав эти истории, вы не остановитесь на достигнутом, а вооружившись новыми знаниями, возьмётесь за следующую, более трудную книгу и так далее.

Счастливого вам пути в прекрасный мир английского языка!

Перевод заданий к упражнениям

About you. — О тебе.

Answer the questions. — Ответь на вопросы.

Choose right. — Выбери правильно.

Circle the odd word. — Обведи не подходящее по смыслу слово.

Complete. — Дополни.

Fill in. — Вставь.

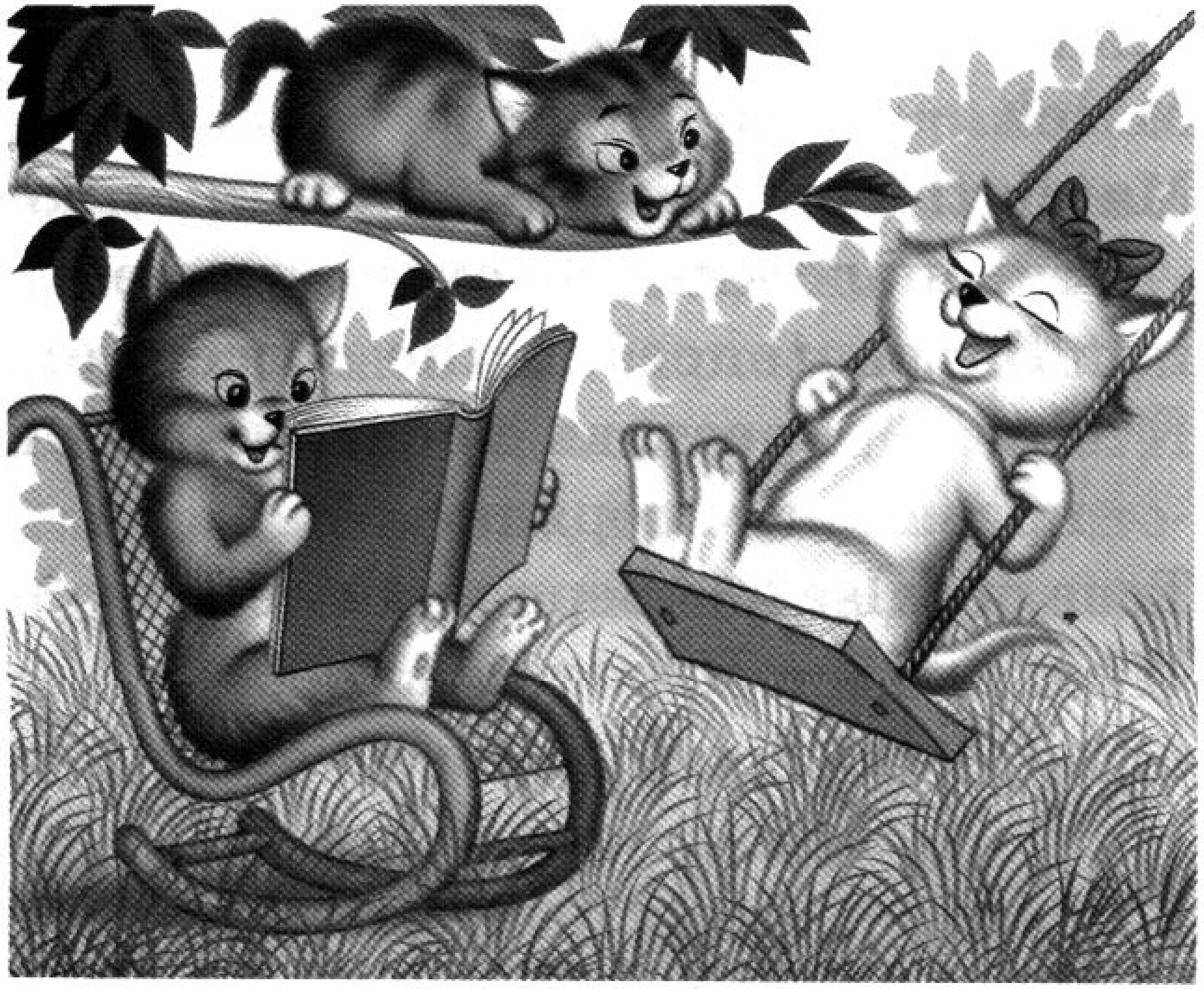
Match. — Подбери пару.

Match the opposites. — Соедини противоположные по смыслу слова.

Put the sentences in the correct order. — Расставь предложения в правильном порядке.

True or false? — Верно или неверно?

What is it? — Что это?



I. A PUZZLE

Look! This is Pinky. She is white, but her ears and nose are pink. And that is Blackie. He has got a grey body and a black tail. They are very nice and they are my sister and brother. They are my friends, too. And this is me. I am Reddy. I am red, and red is my favourite colour. We are kittens and we are little.

We have got a mother. But she is not with us now. She is with her sister. Mrs Paw visits and helps us. She is our mum's friend.

It is sunny today. We are in the garden now. Pinky is on the swing. She is swinging. Blackie is in an armchair. He is reading. And I am in a tree. I am watching the birds.

Pinky is very happy and she sings.

"Please, Pinky, don't sing!" says Blackie. "I can't read!"

"Don't read," says Pinky. "Listen to my song."

"But I want to read," says Blackie.

"And I want to sing!" says Pinky.

Pinky sings and Blackie is very angry. He takes his radio and turns it on.

Now Pinky is angry. She can't hear her song. She jumps down, comes up to Blackie and turns the radio off.

"Why are you doing that?" she asks. "Can you read when the radio is singing?"

Blackie looks at her and says:

"I can't read when the radio is singing. But you can sing when I am reading. That is not fair. But now I can't read and you can't sing. It is fair."

I, Reddy, don't like when my friends are not happy. I climb down the tree and go to them. I come up and say:

"Pinky, you can sing in the house. Then Blackie can't hear you and he can read. Or Blackie, you can read in the house. Then you can't hear Pinky and she can sing in the garden."

Blackie and Pinky are nice kittens.

"OK, I am going into the house," they say together.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. Who has got pink ears?
2. What colour is Blackie's tail?
3. What is Reddy's favourite colour?

4. Is their mum with them now?
5. Where is she?
6. Who helps the kittens?
7. Where are the kittens?
8. What is Pinky doing?
9. What is Blackie doing?

2 Match.

Pinky	has got	a black tail.
Blackie		red ears.
Reddy		a pink nose.

3 True or false?

1. Pinky has got a book.
2. Pinky has got a radio.
3. Reddy does not like when his friends are not happy.
4. Blackie and Pinky are in the house.

4 What is it?

1. It can sing. You can listen to it. You can turn it off.

2. It is big or small. You can read it.
3. It is in the garden. You can sit on it and swing.
4. It is long or short. You can sing it.
5. It is tall or short. You can climb it up and down.

II. A NICE DAY

We are in the house today. It is raining.

Pinky likes the cupboard. Now she is sleeping in the cupboard. Blackie likes the sofa. Now he is sitting on the sofa. I like the chair. Now I am playing with my tail under the chair.

"Can I play with you?" asks Blackie.

"But I am playing with my tail," I say. "I can't play with my tail and with you."

Blackie is sad. He wants to play and he plays with his tail.

Pinky wakes up. She comes out of the cupboard and looks at us.

"What are you doing?" she asks.

"We are playing with our tails," we answer.

"But it is not good. Can't you play together?" asks Pinky.

"How can we? Reddy is playing with his tail and I am playing with mine," says Blackie.

Pinky thinks and thinks and she says:

"You can play together. You, Blackie, can play with Reddy's tail. And you, Reddy, can play with Blackie's tail."

"You are very clever," Blackie and I say.

Pinky is very happy. Blackie and I are happy, too. Now we are all playing together. Pinky is playing with my tail, I am playing with Blackie's tail and Blackie is playing with Pinky's.

What a nice day!

Exercises

1 Answer the question.

1. Where are the kittens?
2. What is Pinky doing?
3. What is Blackie doing?
4. What is Reddy doing?

2 Match.

Pinky		under the chair.
Blackie	is	on the sofa.
Reddy		in the cupboard.

3 Fill in: *am, is, are.*

1. We ________ in the house today.
2. Blackie ________ sad.
3. I ________ playing with my tail.
4. You ________ clever.
5. Blackie and I ________ happy.

4 What is it?

1. There are cups and plates in it.
2. It has got four legs. You can sit on it.
3. It is big. You can sleep on it.
4. Animals have got it. It is long or short.



III. AN APPLE BALL

It is autumn. It is September. It is Pinky's birthday today. She is eight months. She has got two presents: Blackie's present and my present. Blackie's present is a small red ball and my present is a box of chocolates. Mrs Paw visits us in the morning. She gives Pinky a big birthday cake and

goes home because she has got a baby son there.

Pinky makes tea for us. We drink tea and eat chocolates together. Then we play with a small red ball. We play and play. Pinky catches the ball with her teeth. Oh no! There is a hole in the ball. We can't play with it now.

Pinky is very sad. She cries.

"I have not got any presents now," she says. "There are no chocolates and there is not a ball."

"Please, don't cry!" I say. "We can go and play in the garden. There are a lot of apples on the grass. We can play with the apples."

We go to the garden and we play with the apples. When there is a hole in the apple, we eat it up and play with another apple.

Pinky is happy now. She likes apples. They are red, you can play with them and you can eat them.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. What season is it?
2. Whose birthday is it?
3. What presents has Pinky got?
4. Has Mrs Paw got children?
5. What do the kittens drink?
6. Is there a hole in the ball?

2 What is it?

1. You can play with it but you can't eat it.
2. You can play with it and you can eat it.
3. You can drink it. It is hot. It is brown. You put sugar in it.

3 True or false?

1. It is Reddy's birthday.
2. Blackie gives Pinky a box of chocolates.
3. Pinky catches the ball with her teeth.

4. There are a lot of balls on the grass.
5. Pinky likes lemons.

4 Fill in: *have got, has got, is, are, am.*

1. The apple ________ red.
2. The ball ________ a hole.
3. The kittens ________ happy.
4. They ________ a box of chocolates.
5. The chocolates ________ nice.
6. I ________ happy.
7. I ________ a present.

IV. SNOW

It is winter. It is cold and it is snowing. We are in the living room. We are looking at the snow through the window.

"Let's go and play in the snow," says Pinky.

"No, it is too cold," says Blackie.

"We can put on our warm coats and boots," says Pinky.

"I can't run in my boots. They are too big," says Blackie and he looks at me.

"I can't run in my coat. It is too long," I say and I look at Blackie. It is so warm in the living room and so cold in the garden.

"I see," says Pinky. "Don't run. Stand and look at me. My clothes are nice. I can run in my boots and my coat."

"We can look at you through the window," say Blackie and I.

"OK," says Pinky. "Don't go. Sit down on the sofa and look at me through the window."

So Pinky puts on her warm clothes and boots and goes out. She runs in the snow and she makes a snowman. She jumps in the snow and dances in the snow. She makes a snowball and throws it at her snowman.

We are sitting on the sofa and looking at Pinky. Then I stand up, take my warm coat and boots and put them on.

"Blackie," I say. "Put on your warm clothes, and let's go out. It is fun in the snow."

"It is too cold," says Blackie. "I don't want."

So I go to Pinky. We run in the snow and we make two snowmen. We jump and dance in the snow. We make snowballs and throw them at our snowmen. We are having fun!

Suddenly we see Blackie. He is standing in the garden.

"Look, my boots are not too big," he says. "I think, I can run. Let's play together."

Now we play together and we are very happy.

Exercises

1 *Match.

make	a window
play	a snowball
throw	clothes
put on	snowballs
look through	a snowman

2 **Fill in: *they, I, me, them, us, we.***

1. ________ stand up and put on my clothes.
2. He looks at ________ , and I look at him.
3. We make snowballs and throw ________ at the snowmen.
4. ________ are our friends. ________ like them.
5. We are happy. Look at ________ !

3 **Match.**

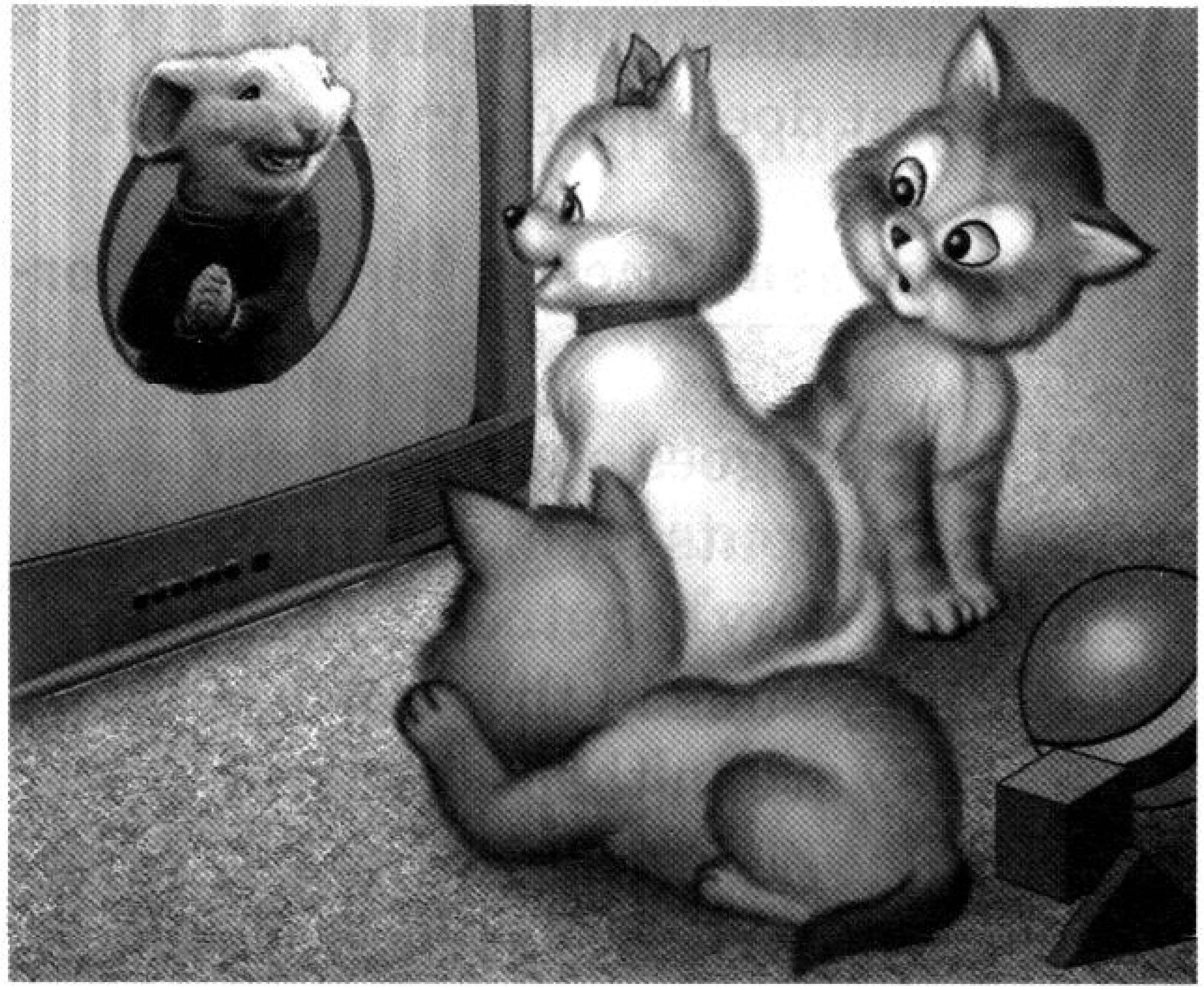
I	his
he	its
we	my
she	her
they	our
it	their
you	your

4 **Answer the questions.**

1. What is the weather like today?
2. Where are the kittens?
3. What does Pinky put on?
4. What does she do in the snow?

5 **Put the sentences in the correct order.**

1. Blackie goes out.
2. Reddy puts on his warm clothes.
3. They play together.
4. Pinky runs in the snow.
5. They are in the living room.



V. A FILM OR LUNCH?

It is very cold today. We are in the house. We are watching a film. It is about a mouse. Its name is Stuart Little. The film is very interesting. But, when I see a mouse, I am very hungry.

So I say:

"Let's watch another film!"

"What film?" asks Blackie.

"Another film. Not about mice," I say.

"OK," says Blackie. He takes another film and we watch it. It is about a clown fish. Its name is Nemo. The film is very interesting. But, when I see a fish, I am hungry. So I say:

"Let's watch another film."

"What film?" asks Blackie.

"Another film. Not about fish," I say.

Blackie takes another film and we watch it. It is about a bird. Its name is Valiant. The film is very interesting. But, when I see a bird, I am hungry.

"Let's watch another film!" I say.

"Again?" cries Blackie. He is very angry.

"Oh Blackie," says Pinky. "I think, Reddy is very hungry. Let's have lunch. And then we can watch a film."

So we have lunch. Now I am not hungry and I can watch films about mice, fish or birds.

"Thank you, Pinky," I say. "You are so clever."

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. What's the weather like today?
2. What are the kittens doing?
3. Are the films interesting?
4. Is Blackie angry?
5. What are the films about?
6. Is Reddy hungry?
7. Do they have lunch?

2 Match.

Stuart Little		a fish.
Nemo	is	a bird.
Valiant		a mouse.

3 Complete.

1. Let's watch a f_______.
2. When I see a mouse, I am h______.
3. Let's have l_______.

4 What is it?

1. It is big or small. It can sing and fly.
2. It is big or small. It can't talk but it can swim.
3. Cats catch it. It is small. It has got a long tail.
4. You can watch it. It is interesting.

VI. WELL DONE, PINKY!

It is Sunday today. It is our clean day. We tidy up our house on Sunday and we have a bath on Sunday.

Now Pinky is cleaning the kitchen and the bathroom. I am cleaning the dining room. Blackie is cleaning the bedroom. It is funny. We like it. When the house is clean, Pinky says:

"Now let's work in the garden. Let's water the flowers and the trees in the garden."

"Oh no!" we cry together with Blackie. "We can't work in the garden. We are tired."

"But think about the trees and the flowers!" says Pinky. "You drink milk and water every day, but they can't do it. They haven't got milk or water in the fridge. They are thirsty."

"How do you know?" we ask. "Do you talk to trees?"

"No, I don't," says Pinky, and she is very angry. "But I know! Look!"

Pinky takes a glass of water and waters the floor.

"Can you see the water?" she asks.

"Yes, we can," we answer.

"The floor is not thirsty. It is not drinking the water," says Pinky. "Now let's go to the garden."

Pinky takes another glass with water and we go to the garden.

We come up to a tree. Pinky waters the tree.

"Look!" says Pinky. "The tree is drinking! There is no water on the ground now."

We look at the ground. It is wet, but there is no water on the ground.

"The trees are thirsty!" says Pinky. "Now help me to water them."

"Pinky, you are very clever!" I say. "You can understand trees."

And we water all the trees and the flowers in the garden.

Mrs Paw always visits us on Sundays. She looks at the clean rooms and at the trees and flowers in the garden. She says: "Good kittens!"

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. What day is it today?
2. What do they tidy up?
3. Do they like it?
4. Do they go to the garden?
5. Do they water the trees and the flowers?
6. Who visits the kittens on Sundays?

2 Match.

Pinky Reddy Blackie	cleans	the bathroom. the dining room. the kitchen. the bedroom.

3 About you.

1. Do you tidy up your room?
2. Do you water the flowers?
3. Do you work in the garden?
4. Do you water the trees in your garden?

4 What is it?

1. It is beautiful. It is red, yellow, white, orange, pink or blue. You water it.
2. It is small or big. You have water in it.
3. Tables, sofas, chairs, bookcases, armchairs stand on it.
4. You can sleep in this room.
5. You can eat in this room.
6. You can cook in this room.
7. You can wash in this room.



VII. A MONSTER

It is sunny today. It is very hot. We are hot. We take a big towel, three cups, three plates, some milk, some meat, three apples and go to the lake.

The lake is big and the water in the lake is cold. We swim and play. Then we go out. Blackie does not go out. He is in the lake.

"Go out!" says Pinky. "The water is not warm. It is cold."

"I am not cold," says Blackie. "I like the water!"

"Pinky," I say. "Let's eat our breakfast."

"But we can't. Blackie is in the lake."

"Yes, we can," I say.

I take a piece of meat, eat it and say:

"Look, Blackie! I am eating our meat! It is very nice!"

Blackie looks at me and says:

"Eat the meat. I can fish here."

So Blackie is in the water. The water is cold. Pinky is not happy. She is sad. She looks at me and says:

"Reddy, what can we do?"

"Wait and see," I say.

Blackie is fishing now. He is not looking at me. I walk into the water and dive. Now I am under the water. I swim to Blackie under the water. Now I can see his legs. I open my mouth and bite him.

"Help!" cries Blackie. "There is a monster in the water."

Blackie runs out of the water.

"There is a monster in the lake!" he says to Pinky.

"A monster?!" cries Pinky.

"Yes, it has got red ears and very sharp teeth!"

Pinky looks at Blackie. She knows that monster but she says:

"Don't go into the water again! I know that monster. It is in one of my books. It is a terrible monster!"

"OK," says Blackie. He is afraid. He looks at Pinky and says:

"And where is Reddy?"

"Oh no!" cries Pinky. "He is in the water!"

"Oh no!" cries Blackie. "The monster can bite him!"

They look at the lake. I am swimming in the lake.

"Reddy, come out!" cry Pinky and Blackie. "There is a terrible monster in the water!" says Blackie.

"Is it big?" I ask.

"It is long and it has got red ears and very sharp teeth!"

"But I am not afraid of monsters. I have got sharp teeth, too," I say. "I am not going out. The water is warm now. Don't wait for me. Have breakfast."

"Oh!" says Pinky. "Again."

She looks at Blackie.

"What about a monster with a black tail?" she says.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. What's the weather like today?
2. Are the kittens hot?
3. What do they take?
4. Where do they go?
5. Is the water hot?
6. Who is the monster with red ears?
7. Who is the monster with a black tail?

2 Match.

Pinky		not cold.
Blackie	is	eating the meat.
Reddy		not happy.

3 True or false?

1. Blackie is sad.
2. Reddy bites Pinky.
3. Pinky is under the water.
4. There is a monster in the lake.
5. The lake is small.
6. Pinky is swimming in the lake.
7. Blackie is afraid of the monster.

4 Put the sentences in the correct order.

1. The kittens go to the lake.
2. It is sunny today.
3. Reddy eats the meat.
4. Reddy bites Blackie.
5. Reddy dives into the water.
6. Blackie runs out of the water.

VIII. A VISITOR

It is evening. We are in the house. We are on the sofa. It is very late, but we don't want to go to bed.

There is a big vase in our room. It is empty.

Suddenly we hear a noise in the vase. We jump down and run to the vase. Blackie climbs up the vase and looks in.

"What is there?" we ask.

"I can't see," says Blackie. "It is too dark in the vase."

Then we hear the noise again.

"There is a small animal in the vase!" says Pinky. "Let's help it!"

"How can we help it?" we ask.

"Take the umbrella and put it in the vase. Then the animal can climb up the umbrella and get out," says Pinky.

I take the umbrella and put it in the vase. We listen and look. Suddenly we see the small animal. It is climbing up the umbrella. It is ... Oh, it is a mouse!

"Oh, help!" cries Pinky. Pinky is a kitten, but she is afraid of mice. She jumps upon a shelf and hides behind the books.

Now the mouse can see us. It looks at us and cries, "Oh, help!" and climbs down the umbrella back into the vase.

"There is a mouse in the vase!" cries Blackie. "It is big and fat and I am hungry!"

"Oh no!" cries Pinky on the shelf. "Don't eat it! Please, don't eat it!"

But Blackie doesn't listen to Pinky. He puts his paw into the vase. He wants to catch the mouse but he can't. Then Blackie says. "I can climb into the vase and catch the mouse."

Blackie climbs into the vase. We can only see his tail now.

"It is too dark here!" cries Blackie. "I can't see the mouse!" He is very angry.

Suddenly we can see the mouse. It climbs up Blackie's tail and out of the vase.

"Blackie!" I say. "The mouse is not in the vase!"

"Where is it?" cries Blackie.

The mouse climbs down the vase and runs into a hole in the floor.

"It is under the floor," says Pinky. "Blackie, climb out!"

"But I can't!" cries Blackie. "Help me!"

I look at Pinky, and she looks at me.

"Then jump out!" we say.

"I can't jump here!" says Blackie.

"What can we do?" I ask Pinky.

"Take the umbrella and put it in the vase," says Pinky. "Then this hungry animal can climb out."

I put the umbrella in the vase. Soon we can see Blackie's head, then his body and his tail.

"Thank you," he says.

"The mouse is in that small hole in the floor," says Pinky. "You can climb in and catch it."

Blackie looks at the small hole.

"No," he says. "The mouse is very small and thin, and I am not very hungry."

"Then let's go to bed. It is very late," says Pinky.

Exercises

1 True or false?

1. It is morning.
2. The kittens are in the garden.
3. They want to go to bed.
4. There is a big animal in the vase.
5. A mouse climbs up the umbrella.
6. Reddy is afraid of mice.
7. Blackie doesn't listen to Pinky.
8. Blackie climbs down the umbrella.
9. The mouse is behind the books.

2 What is it?

1. You can put flowers in it.
2. You take it with you, when it is raining.
3. It is small. Mice live there.
4. People put books on it.

3 Fill in: ***up, in, to, at, of.***

1. It is climbing ________ the umbrella.
2. We put the umbrella ________ the vase.
3. The mouse looks ________ us.
4. Pinky is afraid ________ mice.
5. Blackie doesn't listen ________ Pinky.
6. We run ________ the vase.
7. We can hear a noise ________ the vase.

4 Answer the questions.

1. Where is the noise?
2. What do the kittens put in the vase?
3. What is there in the vase?
4. Where does Pinky hide?
5. Who is hungry?
6. Does the mouse climb out of the vase?
7. Where does the mouse hide?

IX. TED

It is a happy day today. We are going to a party. It is Ted's birthday today. Ted is Mrs Paw's son. He is one year old today.

We take our present and go to the white house. Mrs Paw opens the door and we go in. Ted comes to us. He is a small grey kitten. He has got kind big green eyes and a short tail. We give him the present and sing "Happy birthday to you!" for him. Ted opens his present. It is a toy fish.

Then we have lunch. There is a lot of food. There are French fries and cheese, sandwiches and biscuits, fruit and ice cream.

"I like French fries," says Blackie. "I hope you don't like French fries?" he asks Ted.

Ted looks at Blackie. He thinks and thinks, then he says: "No, I don't. I like cheese and biscuits. You can eat the French fries. And I can eat some cheese and biscuits."

I am listening to them and I am very angry.

"I like French fries," I say suddenly.

"No, you don't like them," cries Blackie. He is angry. "I know. You like sandwiches and biscuits. You can eat them."

"No," I say, "today I like French fries."

I take a lot of French fries and say: "Ted, we can eat French fries together."

Ted is happy because he likes French fries. Blackie is angry because he likes French fries, too.

After lunch we play and watch TV. Now everyone is happy. Ted's birthday is great.

Exercises

1 Circle the odd word.

1. sandwiches, cheese, French fries, juice

2. son, kitten, brother, mother
3. paws, tail, eyes, head
4. small, short, fat, grey

2 Match the opposites.

fat	put
angry	kind
small	thin
open	big
take	close

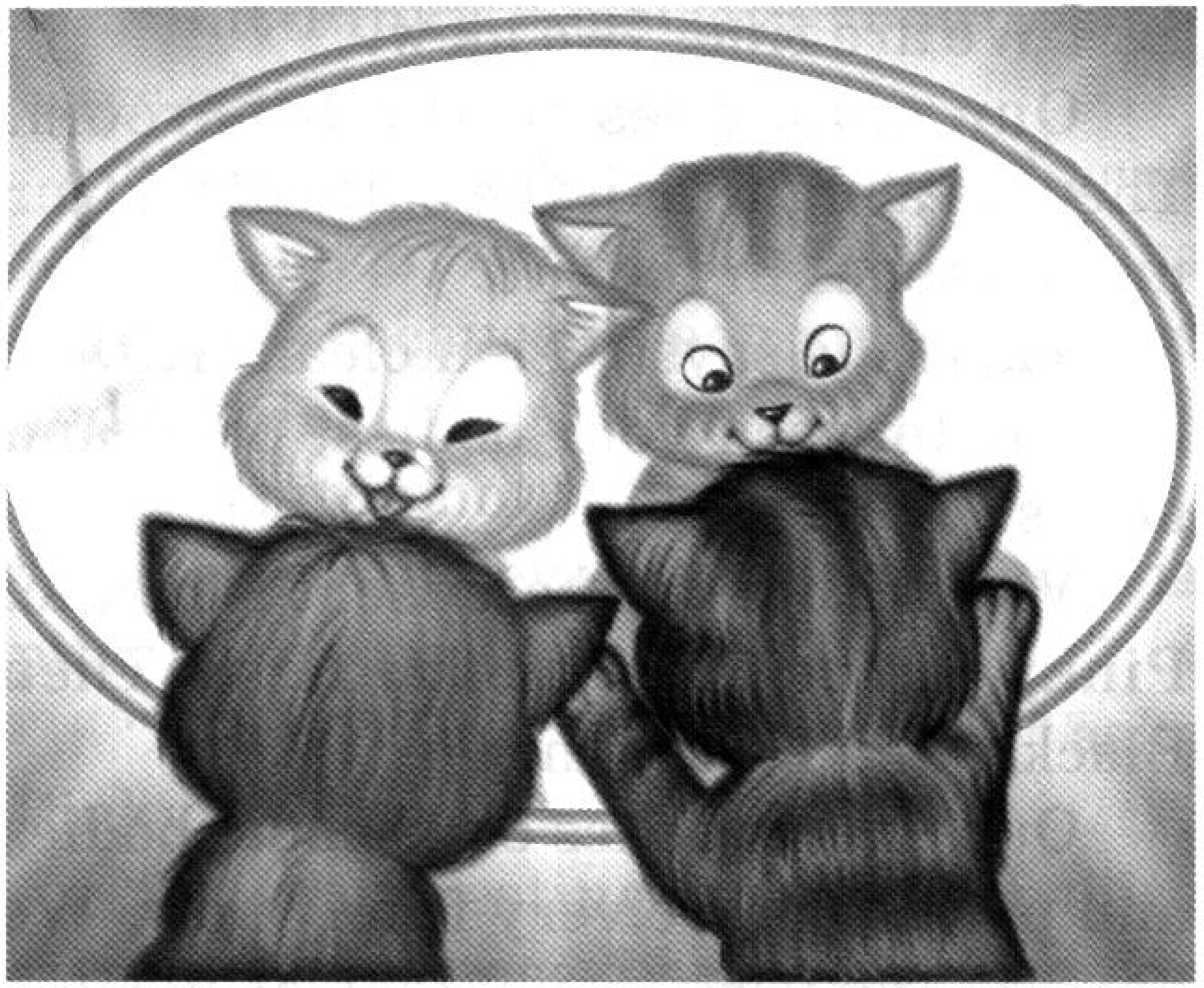
3 Fill in: *am, is, are*.

1. There ________ a lot of food.
2. There ________ French fries.
3. I ________ angry.
4. Today it ________ a happy day.
5. Everyone ________ happy.

4 Answer the questions.

1. What day is it today?
2. Where are the kittens going?
3. What is Ted's present?
4. Does Ted like French fries?
5. Does Reddy like French fries?

6. Why is Blackie angry?
7. When do they play and watch TV?



X. A MAGIC TUB

It is Sunday today. Our mummy is coming today. We love our mum. She is kind and she loves us. Our mum is very clean and she likes when we are clean, too.

Now we can hear a noise at the door. It is our mum. She is coming in.

"Hello, my little kittens," she says. "How are you?"

"We are fine," we mew.

Our mum goes to the bathroom. There is a big tub in the bathroom. Our mum washes in the tub.

Then she says: "I am clean. Now it is time to wash your bodies, paws and heads."

We like our tub because it is magic. Pinky jumps into the tub first. Then Blackie and I jump in.

Our mum washes our heads, bodies and paws. We are very funny now. We are wet and very thin. I look at Blackie and see a white spot on his nose.

"Blackie," I say. "Here is your white spot."

"Oh great!" cries Blackie. "I have got my beautiful white spot again."

"Oh Reddy!" cries Pinky. "Your ears are yellow again. You are handsome with these ears."

I run to the mirror and look in it. I can see my yellow ears again. They are very nice.

"But Pinky," we say, "you are always white."

"Yes," says Pinky. "I am always white. And my ears and nose are always pink. It is because I clean my ears, nose and body every day."

"But it is not interesting," we say. "You are white every day, your nose is pink every day."

"Why? What is interesting?" asks Pinky.

"It is interesting to lose the white spot on your nose," says Blackie, "or your yellow ears," I say, "and then suddenly find them in the magic tub."

"And then you meet your friends and they say..." starts Pinky.

Suddenly we hear a noise at the door. It is Ted. He often visits us now. He comes in, looks at us and says: "Hello, Pinky! Hello, everyone! And where are your brothers?"

We look at Ted and cry: "But we are here! You are looking at us!"

"No, you are not Pinky's brothers. Blackie hasn't got a white spot on his nose, and Reddy hasn't got yellow ears," says Ted. "OK, I can come in the evening. Are your brothers at home in the evening?"

Pinky looks at us. "I don't know," she says.

Ted is sad. He goes away.

We look at Pinky and say: "What can we do?"

"Go to the garden and jump into a magic puddle," she says.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. Who is coming today?
2. Where does mummy go?
3. Why do the kittens like their tub?
4. What colour is Pinky?
5. Who visits the kittens?

2 Put the sentences in the correct order.

1. Pinky jumps into the tub.
2. Reddy can see his yellow ears again.
3. Blackie has got a white spot on his nose.
4. Mum comes.
5. Ted comes.
6. Ted is sad.

3 Match the opposites.

clean	happy
sad	boring
white	dirty
interesting	black

4 What is it?

1. You can sit and wash in it.
2. When you put on your new clothes, you look in it.
3. There are a lot of them when it is raining.
4. They are an animal's hands.

XI. AN ESCAPE

Mummy is at Mrs Paw's house today. Ted is ill. And we are playing in the garden. Suddenly we see a woman. She is coming to us.

She comes up and looks at us. She looks at Blackie and me, then she looks at Pinky.

Suddenly she takes Pinky in her arms. She goes out of our garden with Pinky.

"Help!" cries Pinky.

"Bite her!" cries Blackie.

But Pinky can't bite. She is very kind.

The woman walks and walks and we run after her.

She comes to a house, opens the door and goes in. Then she closes the door.

Blackie and I are sitting at the door now. We are sad and afraid.

Suddenly I see an open window. I jump into the window. Then Blackie jumps into the window, too. Now we

are in a very big room. But where is Pinky?

We hear a noise at the door and we hide under the sofa.

The woman comes in. She is holding Pinky in her hands. She goes to the window and closes it.

"Oh no," Blackie and I say. We are looking at her from under the sofa.

The woman puts Pinky on the sofa and says: "This is your home, little kitten. You are my little Pussy. Pussy, you are my pet now. You can sleep on the sofa. You can walk on the floor, but don't jump on the table, cupboard or bookcases. I don't like it."

The woman goes out and closes the door. We climb out.

"Pinky," we say, "we are here."

"Oh," she cries, "thank you. I am afraid. I don't want a new home. What can I do?"

"We can jump on the cupboard, bookcases, shelves and table."

"Why?" asks Pinky.

"Look!" I say. I jump onto the bookcase. There is a big beautiful vase there. I push the vase and it is on the floor. Then I jump onto the shelf and all the books are on the floor. Blackie jumps onto the cupboard. Now there are a lot of cups, plates and glasses on the floor.

Pinky is looking at us.

"What are you doing?" she cries.

Now we can hear a noise at the door. The woman is coming back.

"Where is my little Pussy?" she says behind the door. She opens the door and looks around.

"Oh!" she cries and sits down on the floor.

She is sitting and looking at the broken vase, cups and plates.

Then she comes up to Pinky. She takes her with one hand, opens the window and throws Pinky out.

Blackie and I jump out of the window together.

"Run, Pinky!" we cry and we run away.

Now we are in our garden again.

"Thank you, brothers," says Pinky. She is very happy and we are happy, too.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. Where is mummy?
2. Where are the kittens?
3. Can Pinky bite?
4. Does the woman take Pinky to her home?
5. How do the brothers help Pinky?
6. Does the woman throw Pinky out?

2 Circle the odd word.

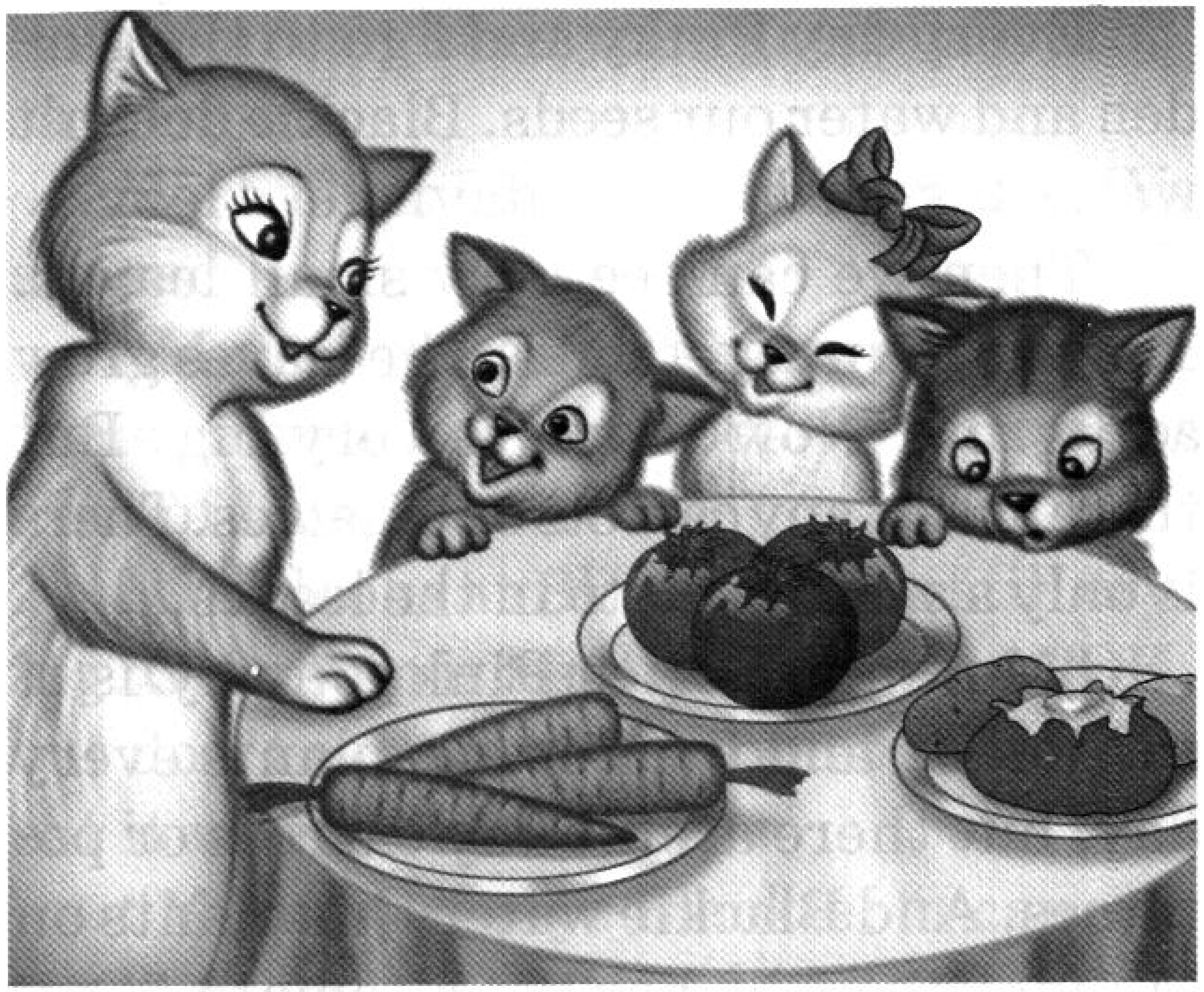
1. bookcase, cupboard, table, window
2. afraid, happy, big, sad
3. children, woman, man, girl
4. bite, look, eat, drink
5. arms, hands, fingers, feet

3 Fill in: ***don't, doesn't, isn't, aren't.***

1. I ________ like it.
2. Pinky ________ jump onto the cupboard.
3. Pinky ________ happy.
4. Blackie and Reddy ________ on the sofa.

4 Fill in: ***on, to, out, into, in.***

1. The woman throws Pinky ______.
2. The vase is ______ the floor.
3. We are ______ our garden again.
4. We jump ______ the window.
5. She goes ______ the window.



XII. HELPING MUMMY

Today we are helping mum in the garden. We are planting flowers and vegetables. Mum is planting roses. Blackie is planting tomatoes. I am planting potatoes. And Pinky is planting carrots.

"Mum, when can we eat the vegetables?" we ask.

"When they grow big," she says.

Every day Pinky and I go to the garden and water our seeds. Blackie doesn't water his seeds every day. He is lazy.

Then we can see very small leaves. They are our vegetables. The leaves grow and grow. Now they are very big. But there aren't any carrots or potatoes. There is only a small tomato in the leaves.

"Mummy," cries Pinky, "why is it so? Reddy and I water our plants every day, but there aren't any carrots or potatoes. And Blackie waters his plants on Mondays and he has got a tomato."

"My dear," says mum, "come here and let's dig."

Pinky, mum and I go to our plants. We dig and dig. Hooray! Our carrots and potatoes are funny.

They hide in the ground. We dig them out. There are a lot of them.

"Now," says mum, "Pinky and Reddy can have a lot of carrots and potatoes for lunch."

"And me?" asks Blackie. He wants carrots and potatoes, too.

"You can have your green tomato," says mum.

We look at Blackie. He is crying. We are sad.

"Mum," we say. "Can we give him some carrots and potatoes? We have got a lot of them."

Mum looks at Blackie. He is still crying. Our mum is kind and she says: "OK, but don't eat his green tomato. You can eat it when it is red."

"Mummy," says Blackie, "I can water the tomatoes every day."

Now he works in the garden every day and there are a lot of tomatoes in the leaves. They are red, and we eat them together.

Exercises

1 Circle the odd word.

1. carrots, potatoes, tomatoes, roses
2. funny, yellow, green, red
3. Monday, Sunday, day, Tuesday

4. flowers, seeds, grass, trees
5. look, cry, see, listen

2 True or false?

1. They are planting fruit.
2. There are carrots and potatoes in the leaves.
3. Blackie waters his plants on Tuesdays.
4. Reddy and Pinky can have carrots and potatoes for lunch.
5. The kittens can eat the green tomato.

3 Choose right.

1. Blackie is planting **potatoes/tomatoes**.
2. Blackie doesn't water his **seeds/carrots** every day.
3. Our carrots and potatoes are **fine/funny**.
4. Pinky can have carrots for **dinner/lunch**.
5. Blackie is **crying/happy**.

6. Our mum is **kind/angry**.
7. Blackie **works/walks** in the garden every day.

4 Answer the questions.

1. What is mum planting?
2. What do Reddy and Pinky do every day?
3. Does Blackie water his seeds every day?
4. Why do they dig and dig?
5. Does Blackie want to eat his green tomato?

XIII. GOODBYE

Today we are going to mum's sister, aunt Fatty. We are taking our toys with us. I am taking my toy cars, aeroplanes and helicopters. Pinky is taking her dolls and their clothes. She has got a lot of clothes for dolls. There are skirts and trousers, shirts and shorts, dresses and jackets, shoes and boots.

"Pinky, why have you got many clothes for dolls?" I ask.

"Because I have not got my clothes, and I like clothes. They are so beautiful. They are long or short, big or small. They are colourful, too. What is your favourite colour?"

"Red," I say, "it is a very beautiful colour. I like it. And what is yours?"

"I don't know. I like yellow and green, red and blue, pink and white."

Mum comes into the room.

"Are you ready?" she asks.

"Yes, we are," we say.

"Where is Blackie?" asks mum.

"He is in the garden. He is taking his toys," we say.

"Are his toys in the garden?" asks mum.

"Yes, there are a lot of Blackie's toys in the garden," we say.

"What are they?" mum asks.

"They are stones and sticks, frogs and toads," we say. "He likes them. They are his favourite toys."

Mum looks through the window. She can see Blackie in the garden. He is walking in the puddle.

"And he is taking the puddles with him, too," she says.

Now we are in the garden. We have got a lot of bags. We are ready to go and we say:

"Goodbye, our house! Goodbye, everyone!"

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

1. Where are the kittens going?
2. What is Pinky taking?
3. Why does Pinky like clothes?
4. What is Pinky's favourite colour?
5. Where is Blackie?
6. What are Blackie's favourite toys?
7. Is Blackie taking the puddles with him?

2 What is it?

1. It can fly very fast and very high.
2. It can fly fast but it can't fly high.
3. People drive it.
4. Girls play with them.
5. People wear them on their body, arms and legs.

3 Circle the odd word.

1. trousers, jacket, shorts, skirt
2. shirt, coat, boots, jacket
3. car, aeroplane, doll, helicopter
4. frogs, sticks, lizards, toads
5. gloves, boots, shoes, socks

4 Put the sentences in the correct order.

1. We are taking our toys with us.
2. Pinky likes clothes.
3. Blackie is walking in the puddle.
4. We are going to aunt Fatty.
5. Mum looks through the window.

Vocabulary

A

about [ə'baʊt] о
aeroplane ['eərəpleɪn] аэроплан, самолёт
afraid [ə'freɪd] испуганный
after ['ɑ:ftə] после, за
again [ə'gen, ə'geɪn] снова, опять
all [ɔ:l] все
always ['ɔ:lwəz] всегда
angry ['æŋgrɪ] рассерженный, злой
animal ['ænɪml] животное
another [ə'nʌðə] другой, ещё один
answer ['ɑ:nsə] отвечать
apple ['æpl] яблоко
arm [ɑ:m] рука
armchair ['ɑ:mtʃeə] кресло
around [ə'raʊnd] вокруг
ask [ɑ:sk] спросить
at [æt (*полная форма*); ət (*редуцированная форма*)] у, возле, около
aunt [ɑ:nt] тётя
autumn ['ɔ:təm] осень
away [ə'weɪ] прочь

B

baby [ˈbeɪbɪ] малыш
back [bæk] назад, обратно
bag [bæg] сумка
ball [bɔ:l] мяч
bath [bɑ:θ] *см.* **have a bath**
bathroom [ˈbɑ:θru:m] ванная комната
beautiful [ˈbju:təfl] красивый
because [bɪˈkɒz] потому что
bedroom [ˈbedru:m] спальня
behind [bɪˈhaɪnd] за, позади
big [bɪg] большой
bird [bɜ:d] птица
birthday [ˈbɜ:θdeɪ] день рождения
biscuit [ˈbɪskɪt] печенье
bite [baɪt] кусать(ся)
black [blæk] чёрный
blue [blu:] синий, голубой
body [ˈbɒdɪ] тело, туловище
book [bʊk] книга
bookcase [ˈbʊkkeɪs] книжный шкаф
boots [bu:ts] ботинки, сапоги
boring [ˈbɔ:rɪŋ] скучный
box [bɒks] коробка

breakfast [ˈbrekfəst] завтрак
broken [ˈbrəʊk(ə)n] разбитый
brother [ˈbrʌðə] брат
brown [braʊn] коричневый

C

cake [keɪk] торт, пирожное
car [kɑ:] машина
carrot [ˈkærət] морковь
catch [kætʃ] ловить, поймать
chair [tʃeə] стул
cheese [tʃi:z] сыр
children [ˈtʃɪldr(ə)n] дети
chocolate [ˈtʃɒklət] шоколад, шоколадная конфета
clean [kli:n] чистый; чистить
clever [ˈklevə] умный
climb [klaɪm] лезть, лазать
close [kləʊz] закрыть
clothes [kləʊðz] одежда
clown-fish [ˈklaʊn fɪʃ] рыба-клоун
coat [kəʊt] пальто
cold [kəʊld] холодный
colour [ˈkʌlə] цвет

colourful [ˈkʌləfl] разноцветный
come [kʌm] приходить
come up [ˌkʌmˈʌp] подходить
cook [kʊk] готовить (еду)
cries [kraɪz] *см.* **cry**
cry [kraɪ] плакать, кричать
cup [kʌp] чашка
cupboard [ˈkʌbəd] буфет

D

dance [dɑ:ns] танцевать
dark [dɑ:k] тёмный, темно
day [deɪ] день
dear [dɪə] дорогой
dig [dɪg] копать
dining room [ˈdaɪnɪŋ ru:m] столовая
dinner [ˈdɪnə] обед
dirty [ˈdɜ:tɪ] грязный
dive [daɪv] нырять
do [du: (*полная форма*); dʊ, də, d (*редуцированные формы*)] делать
doll [dɒl] кукла
door [dɔ:] дверь
down [daʊn] вниз

dress [dres] платье
drink [drɪŋk] пить
drive [draɪv] вести машину

E

ear [ɪə] ухо
eat [i:t] есть, кушать
empty [ˈem(p)tɪ] пустой
escape [ɪsˈkeɪp] побег
evening [ˈi:vnɪŋ] вечер
every [ˈevrɪ] каждый
everyone [ˈevrɪwʌn] все
eye [aɪ] глаз

F

fair [feə] справедливый, справедливо
fast* [fɑ:st] быстрый
fat [fæt] толстый
favourite [ˈfeɪvrət] любимый
feet [fi:t] ступни, ноги
film [fɪlm] фильм
find [faɪnd] найти
fine [faɪn] хороший; хорошо

finger [ˈfɪŋgə] палец
first [fɜ:st] первый
fish [fɪʃ] рыба; ловить рыбу
floor [flɔ:] пол
flower [ˈflaʊə] цветок
fly [flaɪ] летать
food [fu:d] еда
foot [fʊt] ступня, нога
for [fɔ: (*полная форма*); fə (*редуцированная форма*)] для, на
French fries [ˈfren(t)ʃ ˌfraɪz] картофель-фри
fridge [frɪdʒ] холодильник
frog [frɒg] лягушка
from [frɒm (*полная форма*); frəm (*редуцированная форма*)] из, от
fruit [fru:t] фрукт(ы)
fun [fʌn] веселье
funny [ˈfʌnɪ] смешной, забавный

G

garden [ˈgɑ:dn] сад
girl [gɜ:l] девочка
give [gɪv] давать

glass [glɑ:s] стакан
gloves [glʌv] перчатки
go [gəʊ] идти
good [gʊd] хороший
grass [grɑ:s] трава
great [greɪt] великолепно, здорово
green [gri:n] зелёный
grey [greɪ] серый
ground [graʊnd] земля
grow [grəʊ] расти, выращивать

H

hand [hænd] рука, кисть (руки)
handsome [ˈhæns(ə)m] красивый
happy [ˈhæpɪ] счастливый, радостный, довольный
have [hæv (*полная форма*); həv, əv, v (*редуцированные формы*)] иметь
  have a bath принимать ванну
  have breakfast завтракать
  have lunch обедать
  have fun веселиться
head [hed] голова
hear [hɪə] слышать

helicopter [ˈhelɪkɒptə] вертолёт
help [help] помогать
here [hɪə] вот, здесь, тут
hide [haɪd] прятаться
high [haɪ] высокий, высоко
hold [həʊld] держать
hole [həʊl] дырка, норка
home [həʊm] дом
hooray [hʊˈreɪ] ура
hope [həʊp] надеяться
hot [hɒt] жаркий, жарко
house [haʊs] дом
how [haʊ] как
hungry [ˈhʌŋgrɪ] голодный

I

ice-cream [ˈaɪskri:m] мороженое
ill [ɪl] больной
interesting [ˈɪntrəstɪŋ] интересный
into [ˈɪntu:, ˈɪntʊ, ˈɪntə] в, внутрь

J

jacket [ˈdʒækɪt] куртка

juice [dʒu:s] сок
jump [dʒʌmp] прыгать

K

kind [kaɪnd] добрый
kitchen [ˈkɪtʃ(ə)n] кухня
kitten [ˈkɪtn] котёнок
know [nəʊ] знать

L

lake [leɪk] озеро
late [leɪt] поздний, поздно
lazy [ˈleɪzɪ] ленивый
leaf [li:f] лист (растения)
leaves [li:vz] листья (растения)
leg [leg] нога
lemon [ˈlemən] лимон
let's [let] давай(те)
like [laɪk] нравиться, любить
listen [ˈlɪsn] слушать
little [ˈlɪtl] маленький
live [lɪv] жить

living room [ˈlɪvɪŋrʊm] жилая комната, гостиная
lizard [ˈlɪzəd] ящерица
long [lɒŋ] длинный
look [lʊk] смотреть
lose [lu:z] терять
lot of/ a lot of [lɒt ɒv] много
love [lʌv] любить
lunch [lʌn(t)ʃ] обед

M

magic [ˈmædʒɪk] волшебный
make [meɪk] делать, создавать; готовить
meat [mi:t] мясо
meet [mi:t] встречать(ся)
mew [mju:] мяукать
mice [maɪs] мыши
milk [mɪlk] молоко
mine [maɪn] мой, моя, моё, мои
mirror [ˈmɪrə] зеркало
Monday [ˈmʌndeɪ] понедельник
monster [ˈmɒnstə] чудовище
month [mʌnθ] месяц

morning [ˈmɔ:nɪŋ] утро
mother [ˈmʌðə] мама
mouse [maʊs] мышь
mouth [maʊθ] рот
Mrs (Mistress) [ˈmɪsɪz] миссис (замужняя женщина)
mummy [ˈmʌmɪ] мамочка

N

new [nju:] новый
nice [naɪs] приятный, милый, хороший
noise [nɔɪz] шум
nose [nəʊz] нос
now [naʊ] сейчас, теперь

O

often [ˈɒfn] часто
old [əʊld] старый
only [ˈəʊnlɪ] только
open [ˈəʊp(ə)n] открывать
out [aʊt] из, изнутри, наружу

P

party [patı] вечеринка
paw [pɔ:] лапа
people [´pi:pl] люди
pet [pet] домашнее животное, домашний любимец
piece [pi:s] кусок
pink [pıŋk] розовый
plant [plɑ:nt] растение; сажать
plate [pleıt] тарелка
play [pleı] играть
potato [pə´teıtəʊ] картошка
present [´preznt] подарок
puddle [´pʌdl] лужа
push [pʊʃ] толкать
Pussy [´pʊsı] киса, кисонька (*ласковое обращение к кошке*)
put [pʊt] ставить, класть
put on [´pʊt ˏɒn] надевать
puzzle [´pʌzl] задача, проблема

R

rain [reın] дождь, идти (*о дожде*)

read [ri:d] читать
ready [´redı] готовый
red [red] красный, рыжий (*о цвете волос, шерсти*)
room [ru:m] комната
rose [rəʊz] роза
run [rʌn] бежать

S

sad [sæd] грустный
sandwich [´sænwıdʒ] сэндвич, закрытый бутерброд
say [seı] сказать
season [´si:zn] сезон, время года
see [si:] видеть
I see понимаю
seed [si:d] семя
September [sep´tembə] сентябрь
sharp [ʃɑ:p] острый
shelf [ʃelf] полка
shirt [ʃɜ:t] рубашка
shoes [ʃu:z] туфли
short [ʃɔ:t] короткий
shorts [ʃɔ:ts] шорты

sing [sɪŋ] петь
sister [ˈsɪstə] сестра
sit [sɪt] сидеть
skirt [skɜːt] юбка
sleep [sliːp] спать
small [smɔːl] маленький
snow [snəʊ] снег, идти (*о снеге*)
snowball [ˈsnəʊbɔːl] снежок
snowman [ˈsnəʊmæn] снеговик
so [səʊ] поэтому, итак; так, таким образом
socks [sɒks] носки
sofa [ˈsəʊfə] диван
some [sʌm] немного, несколько
son [sʌn] сын
song [sɒŋ] песня
soon [suːn] скоро, вскоре
spot [spɒt] пятно
stand [stænd] стоять
start [stɑːt] начать
stick [stɪk] палка
still [stɪl] всё ещё
stone [stəʊn] камень
stories [ˈstɔːrɪz] истории
story [ˈstɔːrɪz] история

suddenly [ˈsʌdnlɪ] вдруг
sugar [ˈʃʊgə] сахар
Sunday [ˈsʌndeɪ] воскресенье
sunny [ˈsʌnɪ] солнечный
swim [swɪm] плавать
swing [swɪŋ] качели, качаться (на качелях)

T

table [ˈteɪbl] стол
tail [teɪl] хвост
take [teɪk] брать
talk [tɔːk] говорить
tall [tɔːl] высокий
tea [tiː] чай
teeth [tiːθ] зубы
terrible [ˈterəbl] ужасный
then [ðen] потом, затем
there [ðeə] там
thin [θɪn] худой, тонкий
think [θɪŋk] думать
thirsty [ˈθɜːstɪ] испытывающий жажду

through [θru:] через, сквозь
throw [θrəʊ] бросать, кидать
  throw out [ˈθrəʊ ˈaʊt] выбрасывать, выкидывать
tidy up [ˈtaɪdɪ ˈʌp] убирать(ся)
time [taɪm] время
tired [ˈta(ɪ)əd] усталый
toad [təʊd] жаба
today [təˈdeɪ] сегодня
together [təˈgeðə] вместе
tomato [təˈmɑ:təʊ] помидор
too [tu:] слишком; тоже
towel [ˈtaʊəl] полотенце
toy [tɔɪ] игрушка, игрушечный
tree [tri:] дерево
trousers [ˈtraʊzəz] брюки, штаны
tub [tʌb] ванна, корыто
Tuesday [ˈtju:zdeɪ] вторник
turn off [ˈtɜ:n ˈɒf] выключать
turn on [ˈtɜ:n ˈɒn] включать

U

umbrella [ʌmˈbrelə] зонт
under [ˈʌndə] под

understand [ˌʌndəˈstænd] понимать
up [ʌp] вверх

V

vase [vɑ:z] ваза
vegetable [ˈvedʒtəbl] овощ
very [ˈverɪ] очень
visit [ˈvɪzɪt] навещать, посетить
visitor [ˈvɪzɪtə] посетитель

W

wait (for) [weɪt] ([fɔ:]) ждать (кого-то)
wake up [ˈweɪk ˈʌp] просыпаться, будить
walk [wɔ:k] ходить, гулять
want [wɒnt] хотеть
warm [wɔ:m] тёплый
wash [wɒʃ] мыть(ся)
watch [wɒtʃ] часы; смотреть
water [ˈwɒ:tə] вода; поливать
wear [weə] носить (*об одежде*)
weather [ˈweðə] погода
well [wel] хорошо

well done! [ˌwelˈdʌn] молодец!
wet [wet] мокрый, мокро
what [wɒt] что; какой
when [wen] когда
where [weə] где
white [waɪt] белый
who [hu:] кто
whose [hu:z] чей
why [waɪ] почему
window [ˈwɪndəʊ] окно
winter [ˈwɪntə] зима
with [wɪð] с
woman [ˈwʊmən] женщина
work [wɜ:k] работать

Y

year [jɪə] год
yellow [ˈjeləʊ] жёлтый

Содержание

Учебное издание

Пучкова Юлия Яковлевна

ЗАБАВНЫЕ ИСТОРИИ КОТЕНКА РЭДДИ

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *Е. Е. Гостилина*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Оформление, иллюстрация на обложку *А. М. Кузнецов*
Иллюстрации *А. М. Кузнецов*
Технический редактор *Т. В. Исаева*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректор *Н. А. Гурзо*

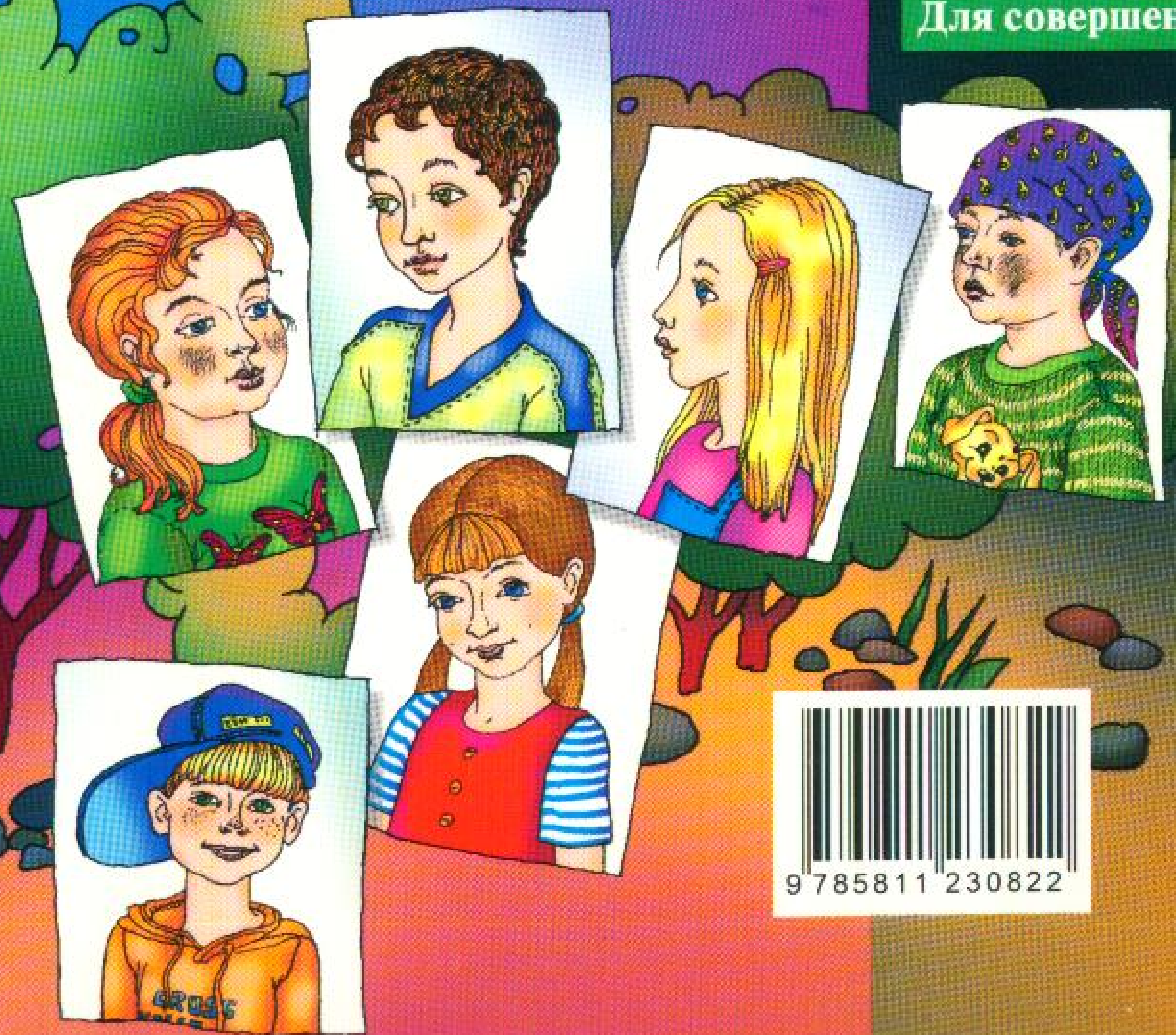
Подписано в печать 02.07.09. Бумага офсетная.
Формат 60×90 1/16. Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 5.
Усл.-печ. л. 5. Тираж 12 000 экз. Заказ № 3739.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени
полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

Do you like reading about boys and girls like yourself?
Do you like laughing?
Are you able to sympathize? If so, you won't stay indifferent to the adventures of the six friends in this book!
Read this book at school, read it with your parents at home.
It is written for you!

Тебе нравится читать о таких же, как ты, мальчишках и девчонках?
Если ты любишь смеяться и умеешь сопереживать, тогда приключения шестерых друзей в этой книге не оставят тебя равнодушным!
Читай эту книгу в школе, читай дома с родителями.
Она написана для тебя!



- Beginner
- Elementary
- Для начинающих
- Pre-Intermediate
- Для продолжающих первого уровня
- Intermediate
- Для продолжающих второго уровня
- Upper Intermediate
- Для продолжающих третьего уровня
- Advanced
- Для совершенствующихся

9 785811 230822

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение

Beginner

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

ДЛЯ МЛАДШИХ ШКОЛЬНИКОВ

Английский клуб

Юлия Пучкова

Приключения шестерых друзей



Yulia Puchkova

The Adventures of Six Friends

Beginner

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Юлия Пучкова

Приключения шестерых друзей

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
П88

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Пучкова, Ю. Я.

П88 Приключения шестерых друзей. [= The Adventures of Six Friends] / Юлия Пучкова. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 96 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-3082-2

Книга представляет собой занимательную повесть о приключениях шестерых школьников. Они смешные и добрые, неугомонные и изобретательные. Они все разные, но это не мешает им дружить и весело проводить время вместе.

Текст каждой главы снабжен упражнениями, направленными на развитие навыков речи и отработку грамматических структур.

Пособие рассчитано на начальный этап изучения английского языка в школах, гимназиях, лицеях, а также в сфере внешкольного образования. Книга содержит англо-русский словарь, соответствующий данному этапу обучения.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-3082-2

От автора

Дорогие ребята! Это здорово, что вы решили прочитать эту книгу! Я уверена — она вам понравится. Ведь она про таких же как вы ребят. У каждого из них свой характер и свои привычки. Но все они вместе — добрые друзья. Их шестеро: три мальчика и три девочки.

Как и все мальчики, герои этой книги любят подшучивать друг над другом, но в трудную минуту всегда придут на помощь. Они смешные и добрые, неугомонные и изобретательные. Героини — обычные девочки, любящие поболтать, покрутиться перед зеркалом и почитать нотации. Они все разные, но это не мешает им дружить и весело проводить время вместе.

Я уверена, что вы полюбите героев этой книги. Вы будете смеяться над их добрыми шутками, сочувствовать их проблемам и искать вместе с ними выходы из трудных ситуаций. А может быть, прочитав эту книгу, вы захотите инсценировать некоторые главы на уроках или праздниках в вашей школе.

Кроме того, из этой книги вы почерпнете много новых полезных слов, вы научитесь работать с текстом, разыгрывать диалоги, рассказывать о себе. А некоторые главы придется даже самим проиллюстрировать! Так что веселье и труд будут идти рука об руку.

В добрый и веселый час! Желаю вам всем настоящих друзей. Умейте их прощать и понимать, и никогда не теряйте!

Перевод заданий к упражнениям

Act out the dialogue. — Разыграй диалог по ролям.
Answer the questions. — Ответь на вопросы.
Choose right. — Выбери верно.
Circle the odd word out. — Обведи слово, не подходящее по смыслу.
Compare. — Сравни.
Complete the chart. — Заполни таблицу.
Complete the sentences. — Закончи предложения.
Correct the statements. — Исправь утверждения.
Draw a clock with the proper time next to the sentences. — Нарисуй часы с соответствующим временем рядом с предложениями.
Draw a picture and describe it. — Нарисуй картинку и опиши ее.
Explain why. — Объясни почему.
Fill in the correct words from exercise 3. — Вставь правильные слова из упражнения 3.
Fill in the names. — Вставь имена.
Fill in the prepositions. — Вставь предлоги.
Fill in the words. — Вставь слова.
Make up a small poem. — Сочини стишок.
Make up six correct sentences. — Составь шесть правильных предложений.
Match two parts of the sentences. — Соедини обе части предложения.
Match the words in two columns. — Найди соответствия слов из колонок.
Put the sentences instead of the numbers. — Расставь предложения вместо цифр.

Put the sentences in the right order. — Расставь предложения в правильном порядке.
Retell the story. — Перескажи историю.
Role-play the conversation. — Разыграй разговор по ролям.
Speak about yourself. — Расскажи о себе.
True or False? — Верно или неверно?
Write. — Напиши.



Chapter 1
SIX FRIENDS

There lived six little children: Clever, Fat, Noisy, Naughty, Slow and Funny. They were all eight years old.

Clever was a nice little girl. She was short and thin. She had long dark hair and big brown eyes. She liked reading and she was very clever.

Fat was a nice little boy. He was short and fat. He had short fair hair and grey eyes. He liked eating very much.

Noisy was a nice little girl. She was tall and slim. She had long fair hair and big blue eyes. She liked talking and she was very noisy.

Naughty was a nice little boy. He was tall and thin. He had short curly brown hair and big blue eyes. He liked riding a bike and he was very naughty.

Slow was a nice little girl. She was short and plump. She had long curly dark hair and brown eyes. She liked wearing beautiful clothes but she was very slow.

Funny was a nice little boy. He was tall and thin, he had short fair hair and dark eyes. He liked walking and he was very funny.

They were in the same form and they were friends.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why was Clever clever?
b) Why was Fat fat?
c) Why was Noisy noisy?
d) Was Naughty short?
e) Who was plump?
f) What colour were Slow's eyes?
g) Did Funny have dark hair?
h) Did the children know each other?

2 Match two parts of the sentences.

Clever		grey eyes.
Fat		dark eyes.
Noisy	had	big blue eyes.
Naughty		beautiful clothes.
Slow		a bike.
Funny		a lot of books.

3 Correct the statements.

a) Clever was a nice little boy.
b) Fat liked reading.
c) Noisy was short and fat.
d) Slow was very fast.
e) The children were six years old.
f) Funny had long fair hair and blue eyes.

4 Draw a picture of one of the children and describe him / her.

5 Fill in the words *had* or *was*.

a) Fat ________ eight.
b) Clever ________ long dark hair.
c) Naughty ________ big blue eyes.
d) Noisy ________ tall and slim.
e) Funny ________ a nice little boy.

6 Speak about yourself.

a) How many friends have you got?
b) How old are they?
c) What are they like?

7 Look at the picture. Match the children with their pictures.



Chapter 2
BIRTHDAY PRESENT

It was Sunday and it was Fat's birthday. In the morning his mum and dad came into his room. "Wake up, dear! Happy birthday to you!" they said. "Here is your present!"

Fat opened his eyes and saw a bike. It was very beautiful. It was red and blue and had very big wheels.

"Oh, thank you very much!" cried Fat. "Can I go to the yard and cycle?"

"Yes, you can ," his parents said, "but come home at noon. Your friends are coming at three o'clock. You must tidy your room, lay the table and cook pizza."

"OK, mummy!" said Fat. "Don't worry! I know I must do it."

Fat's mum looked at him and said, "Oh, dear, look out of the window! It's sunny and warm. Take off your trousers, jumper and trainers. Put on some shorts, a T-shirt and sandals."

Fat took off the warm clothes and put on his yellow shorts, a red T-shirt and green sandals.

"Oh, I look cute!" he said when he looked in the mirror. And he went downstairs with his bike.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Whose birthday was on Sunday?
b) What was Fat's present?
c) What colour was his bike?
d) Why did Fat's mum say, "Take off your trousers, jumper and trainers."?
e) Did Fat put on green shorts?
f) Was Fat a good son?

2 True or False?

a) Fat's birthday was on Saturday.
b) Fat's bike was red and blue.

c) The weather was cold.
d) Fat put on warm clothes.
e) Fat looked cute.

3 Choose right.

a) *In the morning / In the afternoon* Fat's mum and dad came into his room.
b) Fat asked, "Can I go to the yard and *skate / cycle*?"
c) His parents said, "Your friends are coming *at noon / at three o'clock.*"
d) Fat put on his yellow *sandals / shorts.*
e) He went *downstairs / upstairs.*

4 Draw a picture of Fat in his warm or summer clothes and describe it.

5 Fill in the prepositions: *at, into, in (2), to, on, out of, off.*

a) Look ________ the window!
b) Take ________ the warm clothes.
c) Come ________ my room.
d) You must come ________ noon.
e) She always looks ________ the mirrow.
f) Put ________ your shorts and a T-shirt.
g) You can go ________ the yard.
h) ________ the morning his friends came.

6 Speak about youself.

a) When is your birthday?
b) What present did you get on your birthday?
c) Did you like your present?
d) Do your mum and dad give you a birthday present when you are in bed?



Chapter 3
IN THE YARD

In the yard he saw his friends Funny and Naughty. They were on the playground.

"Hi!" cried Fat.

"Oh, Fat, we are glad to see you. Happy birthday! Why do you look like traffic lights?" laughed Naughty.

"I don't. I look cute!" said Fat.

"What have you got?" asked Naughty.

"I have got a bike. It's my birthday present!"

"Oh, great! Can I ride it?" asked Naughty.

"Oh, Naughty, but I want to ride it myself!" said Fat.

"OK," said Naughty.

So Fat climbed upon his bike and started cycling. There was a small gate in the fence of the yard. Fat wanted to ride through the gate. But the gate was too small for him. So his bike went through and Fat got stuck in the gate.

"Help me, help me!" cried Fat. "Catch my bike!" Funny and Naughty ran to catch the bike. It wasn't easy but at last they did it. They climbed upon the bike and came back to Fat.

"Oh, now help me, please! I can't hang here like this! I must be at home at noon!" cried Fat.

Funny and Naughty ran up to him. "Oh, you look so funny!" laughed Funny.

"Don't laugh! Please, get me down!" cried Fat. Funny and Naughty first pulled him then pushed him, but nothing helped.

"Run to my mum!" cried Fat. So Funny and Naughty ran to Fat's mum very fast. They told her all the story. She took a bottle of olive oil and ran to her poor son.

When she came up to him she opened the bottle and poured the oil down on Fat.

"What are you doing?" shouted Fat.

"I'm helping you, dear," answered his mum.

"Oh, I'm falling!" cried Fat and fell down on the grass.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Did Fat look like traffic lights?
b) Who did Fat see in the yard?
c) Who climbed upon the bike?
d) What did Fat want to do?
e) Why did he get stuck?
f) Did Funny and Naughty catch the bike?
g) What did the boys do to help Fat?
h) How did his mum help Fat?
i) Where did Fat fall down?

2 Fill in the prepositions: *of (2), to, in, on, through, at (2).*

a) Funny and Naughty were ________ the playground.
b) Fat wanted to ride ________ the gate.
c) "I must be ________ home ________ noon."
d) She took a bottle ________ olive oil and ran ________ her poor son.
e) There was a small gate ________ the fence ________ the yard.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

"Help me, help me!"	laughed Funny.
"I'm helping you, dear!"	shouted Fat.
"I look cute!"	asked Naughty.
"Oh, you look so funny!"	said Fat.
"What are you doing?"	cried Fat.
"What have you got?"	answered his mum.

4 Complete the sentences.

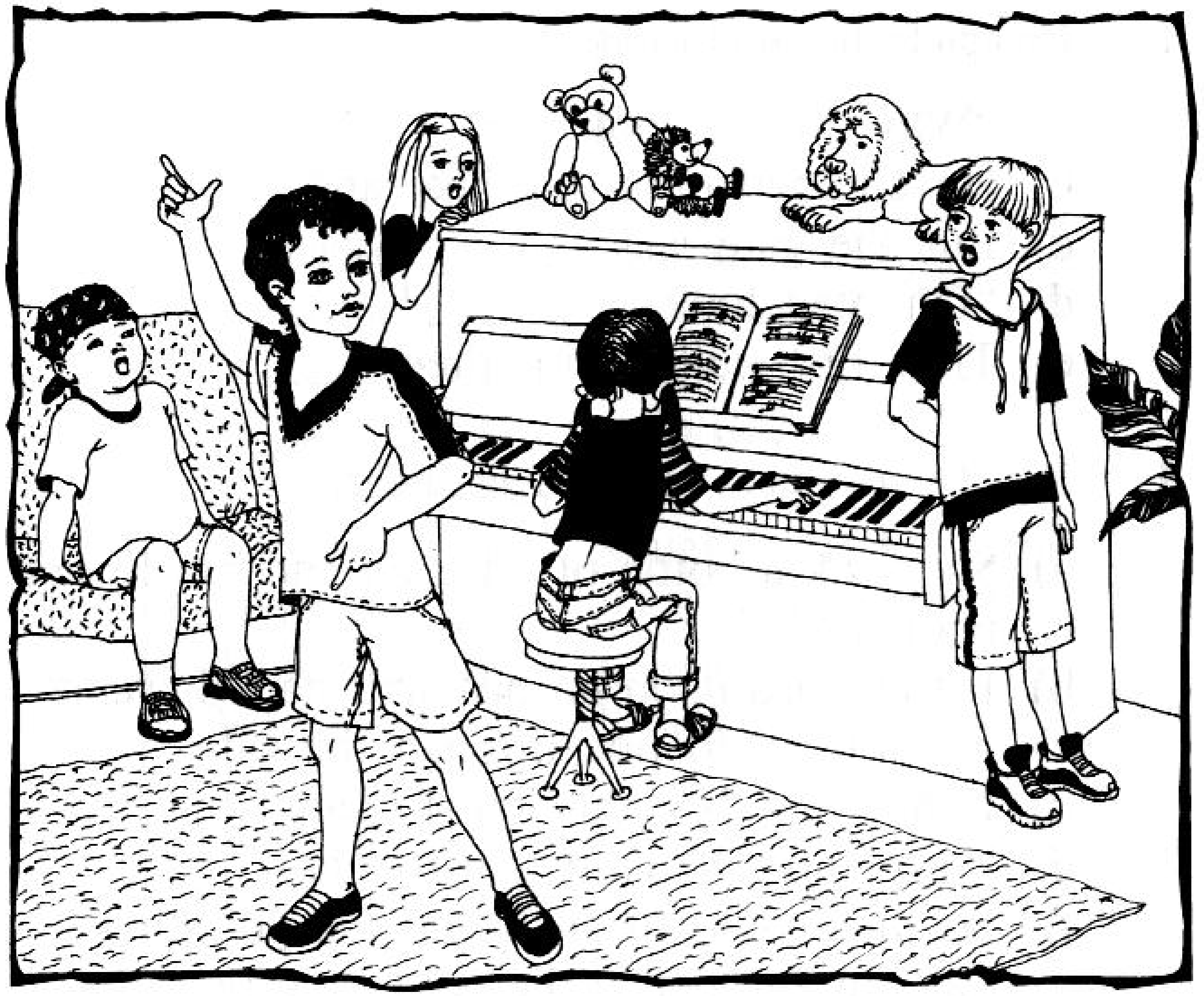
a) "Why do you look like ________ ?"
b) He climbed upon his bike and ________ .
c) But the gate was ________ .
d) "Oh, you look ________ !"
e) They first pulled him then ________ .

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) She took a bottle of olive oil and ran to her poor son.
b) Fat climbed upon his bike and started cycling.
c) Fat wanted to ride through the gate.
d) Funny and Naughty ran to catch the bike.
e) Funny and Naughty ran to Fat's mum.
f) His bike went through and Fat got stuck.
g) Fat's mum opened the bottle and poured the oil down on Fat.

6 Choose right.

a) Fat wanted to ride through 1) *the yard*, 2) *the gate.*
b) The gate was 1) *too small*, 2) *too big.*
c) Funny and Naughty ran 1) *to catch the bike*, 2) *to climb upon the bike.*
d) Funny and Naughty 1) *first pushed him then pulled him*, 2) *first pulled him then pushed him.*



Chapter 4
FAT'S BIRTHDAY PARTY

So Fat went home with his mum and his bike. Mum put him in the bath tub and washed with a lot of soap. When he was clean, it was half past two.

"Oh, dear!" cried Fat's mum. "Your friends are coming soon and we are not ready!"

So Fat went to tidy his room and his mum went to cook pizza and lay the table. At ten past three two of Fat's friends came. They were Funny and Naughty.

"Happy birthday to you!" said Naughty and gave Fat a big bottle of olive oil. The boys laughed, but Fat was angry, he wanted to cry, but his friends said, "Don't be angry. It's a joke! Best wishes on your ninth birthday!" And they gave Fat a big box. When Fat opened it, he saw a CD, a book about animals and a big jar of jam.

"Thank you, friends!" said Fat and smiled. They sat down to watch a cartoon. Soon came Noisy and Clever. They gave Fat a big cake, an apple pie and a box of chocolates. Fat was happy.

It was half past four but Slow wasn't there.

"Where is Slow?" asked Fat.

"We don't know," answered the children. "Let's phone her!"

And they phoned Slow. But she wasn't at home. So the children sat down at the table. They ate and drank, talked and watched films and cartoons. Then they danced and sang, and Clever played the piano. After that, they listened to new CDs. It was a very merry birthday party!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did Fat's mum put Fat in the bath tub?
b) Who came first?
c) Why was Fat angry with Funny and Naughty?
d) How old was Fat?

e) What did the girls give Fat?
f) Who didn't come to the party?
g) What time did the children phone Slow?
h) Was Slow at home?
i) What did the children watch?

2 Correct the statements.

a) When Fat was clean, it was half past three.
b) Fat went to cook pizza.
c) Funny and Naughty gave Fat a big bottle of milk.
d) The girls gave Fat a box of sweets.
e) It was a very boring birthday party.

3 Fill in the prepositions: *at (2), to, past, of, on, about.*

a) _______ ten _______ three two of Fat's friends came.
b) "Best wishes _______ your ninth birthday!"
c) He saw a CD, a book _______ animals and a big jar _______ jam.
d) Slow wasn't _______ home.
e) They listened _______ new CDs.

4 Who did this? Fill in the names.

a) _______ went home with his mum and his bike.
b) _______ played the piano.
c) _______ and _______ gave Fat a big bottle of olive oil.
d) _______ wasn't at home.
e) _______ and _______ gave Fat an apple pie.

5 Complete the sentences.

a) Mum washed Fat with _______ .
b) Fat went to _______ and his mum went _______ .
c) "Happy birthday to you!" said Naughty and gave Fat _______ .
d) When Fat opened the box he saw _______ .
e) They sat down to watch a _______ .
f) They phoned Slow, but she _______ .

6 Speak about youself.

a) What presents do you like to get?
b) What presents do you like to give your friends?
c) What do you do at birthday parties?

7 Explain why:

a) all children's presents were food.
b) Slow didn't come on time (вовремя).
c) it was a very merry birthday.

8 Look at the picture. Who are the children and what are they doing?



Chapter 5
SLOW IS COMING

Exercises

1 The parts of the story are mixed up. Put them in the right order.

a) So at four o'clock I started putting on this fifth dress and I was ready at half past four. I took my present for you and went downstairs. At quarter to five I was in the yard.

It was raining and I walked very slowly. I didn't want to make my beautiful shoes, socks and dress dirty. And here I am!

b) It was quarter to seven when Slow came in.
"You are late!" said Fat.
"Yes, I'm terribly sorry!" said Slow.
"But you look beautiful!" said Fat.
"Thank you," said Slow. "It is the fifth dress."

c) Slow gave Fat her present. It was a jar of honey, a kilo of strawberries and an interesting book with a lot of pictures. Fat thanked her and they went into the room.

d) I put on the first dress from twelve till half past twelve. But I looked fat in it. I took it off from half past twelve till one o'clock. Then I tried a second dress. But it was too long and covered my beautiful shoes. The third was red and I haven't got red shoes. The fourth was old and too short.

2 Draw a clock with the proper time next to the sentences.

a) Slow put on the first dress at
b) Slow took off the first dress at
c) Slow started putting the fifth dress at
d) Slow was ready at
e) Slow was in the yard at
f) Slow came to Fat at

3 Retell Slow's story (parts A, D).

4 Explain why:

a) Slow was late.
b) Slow took off the first dress.
c) Slow didn't like the second dress.
d) she didn't put on the red dress.
e) she walked very slowly.

5 Complete the sentences.

a) It was quarter to seven when ________ .
b) Slow looked ________ in her first dress.
c) The second dress was too long and ________ .
d) The third was red and ________ .
e) The fourth was old and ________ .
f) Slow took her present and ________ .
g) Slow gave Fat a jar ________ .

6 Speak about yourself.

a) How do you choose your clothes when you go to the party?
b) Who buys clothes for you?
c) What is your favourite colour?
d) What colour clothes do you usually wear?



Chapter 6
GOOD FRIEND

It was Monday morning. Fat was in bed. His mum came to wake him up. Fat could hear her but he couldn't get up. He had a terrible stomachache.

"Oh, no! It is your birthday party! You ate too many sweets yesterday!" cried his mother. She phoned Fat's teacher.

"Mrs Smart, my son is ill. He can't go to school. He has got a terrible stomachache!"

"I see," said Mrs Smart. "I hope he feels better soon. I think, it's his birthday party."

So Fat didn't go to school. He stayed in bed. In the afternoon his friend Naughty visited him.

"How are you, Fat?" asked Naughty. "You look awful!"

"I'm not well. My stomach hurts," answered Fat.

"I see," said Naughty. "So you mustn't eat your jam, honey and sweets."

"No, I mustn't," answered Fat. "And it's awful! I like sweets, cakes, pies and chocolates so much!"

"I can help you," said Naughty. "I can eat them up."

"But..." Fat started, but stopped. "OK. Eat them up. I am too fat, and I have got a stomachache."

So Naughty sat down at the table and started eating. Fat closed his eyes, he didn't want to see that.

First Naughty ate all the cakes and slices of the pie, then all the sweets and chocolates.

Fat opened his eyes. "Thank you," he said. "You are a very good friend. I hope your stomach is stronger than mine."

On Tuesday Fat went to school, but Naughty wasn't there. After school Fat visited his friend. Naughty was in bed. He had a terrible toothache.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why didn't Fat go to school?
b) Who came to Fat in the afternoon?
c) How much food did Naughty eat?
d) Why did Naughty eat all the food?
e) Was Naughty's stomach stronger than Fat's?
f) Why was Naughty in bed?

2 Circle the odd word out.

a) sweets, cakes, slices, pies
b) toothache, stomachache, headache, terrible
c) terrible, bad, awful, good
d) Monday, yesterday, Tuesday, Wednesday

3 True or False?

a) Fat couldn't get up because he couldn't hear his mum.
b) Fat had a terrible toothache.
c) In the evening his friend Naughty came.
d) Naughty ate all the food because he wanted to help Fat.
e) Naughty had a terrible headache.
f) Naughty was in bed.

4 Act out the dialogue between Fat and Naughty.

5 **Look at the picture. Find in the text the sentences to the picture.**

6 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

a) Naughty was in bed.
b) Fat was in bed.
c) In the afternoon Naughty visited him.
d) Fat closed his eyes.
e) On Tuesday Fat went to school.
f) Naughty sat down at the table and started eating.
g) "You mustn't eat your jam, honey and sweets."



Chapter 7
CATCHING BUTTERFLIES

It was summer now. The children were happy. There was a big field near their town. They went to the field to catch butterflies.

"Wow! Look! What a beautiful butterfly!" cried Noisy. "I think, I can catch it!" Noisy ran after the butterfly. She ran and shouted, "Oh, how fast it is flying! What beautiful spots it has got!"

"Noisy, be quiet!" said Clever. "Don't shout all the time! The butterfly can hear you."

"Nonsense," said Noisy. "First, I can't be quiet because I'm noisy. Second, the butterfly can hear me but it can't understand that I want to catch it!"

"Why?" asked the children.

"Because it doesn't speak English!"

"No, it doesn't speak English but it can understand English!" said Clever. "It is an English butterfly. My dog is English, too. She doesn't speak English but she understands it very well."

"Oh, really?" asked Noisy. "Then I must learn French or Spanish! I hope our butterflies can't understand these languages!"

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What season was it?
b) Where did the children go?
c) What did they see in the field?
d) Who ran after the butterfly?
e) Why couldn't Noisy catch the butterfly?
f) What pet did Clever have?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Noisy ran after the butterfly.
b) It was summer now.
c) She ran and shouted.
d) They went to the field to catch butterflies.

3 Match the words in two columns.

Russia	American
England	French
Poland	Spanish
France	Greek
Greece	English
Spain	Polish
USA	Turkish
Turkey	Russian

4 Fill in the correct words from exercise 3.

a) I live in _______ . I'm Greek.
b) She is from Spain. She is _______ .
c) If you live in the USA, you are _______ .
d) My parents are from Poland. They are _______ .
e) We live in Russia. We are _______ .

5 Circle the odd word out.

a) English, Clever, French, Spanish
b) happy, noisy, beautiful, nice
c) river, field, town, lake

6 Fill in the words: *is* or *has got.*

a) The butterfly _______ beautiful.
b) It _______ beautiful spots.
c) She _______ noisy.
d) Clever _______ a dog.

7 **Speak about yourself.**

a) Do you like catching butterflies?
b) Can you catch them?
c) Why do you catch them?



Chapter 8
DOGS AND CATS

Fat had a cat. His name was Fluffy. Fat loved him very much. He went with Fluffy to the park every day. They usually walked in the park in the afternoon.

It was Thursday. It was time to go to the park but Fat didn't go.

"Fat, it's time to go for a walk with Fluffy," his mother said.

"I can't, mum. I'm still doing my homework. I have got a lot of homework today," said Fat.

"OK, go later," said his mum.

It was seven o'clock in the evening when Fat's homework was ready. He took Fluffy in his arms and off they went. They came to the park and sat down on the grass. Suddenly Fat saw Clever. She was with her dog, Dolly.

"Hey, Clever!" shouted Fat. "Come here! Let's play together!"

Now Clever saw Fat. But at the same time Clever's dog saw Fat's cat. Dolly was very angry. She didn't like cats. In fact, she hated cats. So she barked and ran to Fluffy. Fluffy wasn't silly. In fact, he was a very clever cat. He ran fast to the nearest tree and climbed it up.

Now Fluffy sat in the tree and Dolly jumped and barked under the tree. Clever and Fat were under the tree too. They didn't know what to do.

"Take away your dog!" cried Fat.

"I can't!" cried Clever. "She is stronger than me! Do it yourself, please, or climb up the tree and take your cat down."

"I can't," said Fat. "Your dog is very angry and she is barking. She can bite me! I'm afraid!"

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What pet did Fat have?
b) Where did they usually walk?

c) What day was it?
d) Did Fat have much homework?
e) Who came to the park with a dog?
f) What did Dolly do?
g) Where did Fluffy climb?
h) Did the children know what to do?

2 Explain why:

a) Fat didn't go to the park in the afternoon.
b) Dolly was angry.
c) Fluffy ran fast to the nearest tree.
d) Clever didn't take Dolly away.
e) Fat didn't get Fluffy down.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

Dolly	took her dog for a walk.
Fat	ran fast and climbed up a tree.
Clever	did his homework.
Fluffy	jumped and barked.

4 Fill in the words *had* or *was*.

a) His name ________ Fluffy.
b) Fat ________ a cat.
c) Dolly ________ very angry.
d) Clever ________ a dog.
e) Fat ________ a lot of homework.

5 Circle the odd word out.

a) bark, run, angry, climb

b) in, under, is, on
c) Fat's, Clever's, Let's, Dolly's
d) was, is, are, had
e) bark, say, shout, cry

6 Can you help the children? Have you got any ideas?



Chapter 9
GREAT IDEA

At that moment they saw Funny.

"Hey, Funny, help us!" Clever and Fat shouted. Funny saw Dolly and Fluffy.

"Oh, I see," he said. "Your pets are not good friends. But what can I do?"

"Get another cat," said Clever.

"OK," said Funny and ran away.

Soon he came back. He had a cat in his arms.

"Show the cat to Dolly," commanded Clever. "And put it on the grass next to her."

Funny showed the cat to Dolly and put it on the grass. Dolly looked at the cat a moment and ran after it. And Clever ran after Dolly. But the cat wasn't sillier than Fluffy. It ran up to a tree and climbed it up very fast.

"Thank you, Funny!" said Fat. Now he wasn't afraid. He climbed up the tree and took Fluffy down. But poor Clever was under another tree now.

"Oh, no!" she said. "That doesn't help!"

"I can run to your parents," said Funny.

"But they are at work now," said Clever.

"I know what to do!" said Funny. "Clever, your house is near the park on the left. I can catch another cat, show it to Dolly and put it on the grass on the left of this tree. I can do it again and again and we can get to your house soon."

"That's a great idea!" smiled Fat. "I'm sorry, friends, but I must go." And he went away very fast.

When the twelfth cat was in a twelfth tree, Clever and Funny were opposite Clever's house. Clever saw her mum through an open window.

"Oh, mummy, you are back! Come here!" shouted Clever. Clever's mother ran out and took Dolly away.

Clever told her all the story. "Poor children," laughed. Clever's mother. "Now let's have tea with sweets and forget cats!"

Exercises

1 Correct the statements.

a) Dolly and Fluffy were good friends.
b) Funny climbed up the tree and took Fluffy down.
c) Clever's house was on the right.
d) Twenty cats helped the children.
e) Clever's mum was at work.
f) They had tea with cakes.

2 Match two parts of the sentences.

Funny	saw the cat and ran after it.
Clever	came back with a cat in his arms.
Fat	listened to the story and laughed.
Dolly	climbed up the tree.
Clever's	mum ran after Dolly.

3 Choose right.

a) "Show the cat to Dolly and put it on the grass *next to / behind* her".
b) Poor Clever was *in / under* another tree now.
c) When the twelfth cat was in a twelfth tree, Clever and Funny were *next to / opposite* Clever's house.
d) Clever saw her mum *through / on the right of* the open window.

4 Circle the odd word out.

a) opposite, on the left, near, through
b) doesn't, wasn't, I'm, hasn't
c) Clever's, it's, I'm, wasn't
d) saw, looked, ran, went

5 Complete the sentences.

a) Funny showed the cat to Dolly and _______ .
b) The cat ran up to a tree and ________ .
c) Fat climbed up the tree and ________ .
d) When the twelfth cat was in a twelfth tree, Clever and Funny ________ .
e) Clever's mother ran out and ________ .

6 Fill in the prepositions.

a) The twelfth cat was ________ a twelfth tree.
b) He put the cat ________ the grass.
c) Clever's mother ran ________ .
d) "Your house is near the park ________ the left".
e) Dolly looked ________ the cat a moment.
f) Funny had a cat ________ his arms.

7 Was Fat a good friend? Explain why.



Chapter 10
NOISY NEIGHBOURS

On Friday Clever and Slow went to Noisy. When they came in, they could hear a terrible noise in one of the rooms upstairs. They went there and saw Noisy.

"What are you doing?" asked the girls.

"I'm asking my neighbours to be quiet," answered Noisy.

"Why must they be quiet?" asked the girls.

"Because my little brother is sleeping!" answered Noisy.

"Are your neighbours making a noise?" asked Clever.

"No, they aren't yet. But I'm telling them that my brother is sleeping and that they mustn't make a noise!"

With these words Noisy shouted out of the window, "Mrs Stout! Can you hear me? My little brother is sleeping. Please, don't make a noise till three o'clock," and then, "Mr Dickson! Can you hear me? My little brother is sleeping! Please, be quiet till three o'clock!"

"How many neighbours have you got?" asked Slow.

"A lot! And they don't always hear me from the first time," answered Noisy.

"I see," said Clever. "Don't you see, Noisy, that it's you who is making the noise? I think, you should walk to your neighbours. You shouldn't shout to them when your brother is sleeping!"

"And I don't think he is," said Slow.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Who did Clever and Slow visit on Friday?
b) Where did a noise come from?
c) Who made the noise?
d) Did Noisy have many neighbours?
e) Did Noisy walk or shout to her neighbours?
f) How old do you think her brother was?

2 Match two parts of the sentences.

Noisy	is sleeping.
The girls	can hear a terrible noise.
Noisy's brother	is making the noise.

3 Fill in the words: *should, must, is, can, are, have.*

a) "________ you hear me?"
b) "How many neighbours ________ you got?"
c) "My little brother ________ sleeping!"
d) "________ your neighbours making noise?"
e) " Why ________ they be quiet?"
f) "You ________ not shout to them!"

4 Role-play the conversation between Noisy and the girls.

5 Choose right.

a) When the girls came in, they could hear a terrible noise *downstairs / upstairs.*
b) "My little *brother / sister* is sleeping," said Noisy.
c) "You should *shout / walk* to your neighbours," said Clever.
d) *Neighbours / Noisy are / is* making the noise.

6 Complete the sentences.

a) On Friday Clever and Slow ________ .
b) "Are your neighbours ________ ?" asked Clever.

c) With these words Noisy ________ .

d) "They don't always hear me ________ ," answered Noisy.

e) "You ________ when your brother is sleeping."

7 Circle the odd word out.

a) sleeping, morning, shouting, doing

b) first, sixth, third, second

c) Friday, Monday, yesterday, Sunday

d) brother, neighbour, sister, mother

e) went, came, heard, asked



Chapter 11
IN THE COUNTRY

Exercises

1 Put the sentences instead of the numbers in the story.

A. "Don't worry! We are not going to swim," said Clever.

B. "We are looking at them."

C. It was June.

D. All the children started laughing.

E. "Yes, it is," answered Funny. "And I like it here!"

On Saturday all the children went to the country together with their parents. The weather was sunny and hot. (1)

When they came to the place, the children went to the field to play, and their parents started working in the garden.

When the children came up to the field, Funny cried, "Oh, look at those big white dogs in the field! And they are eating grass! How funny!" Clever looked at him and smiled, "Is it the first time you are in the country?" she asked. (2)

"They are not dogs. Those animals are goats!" said Clever.

"Oh, goats! Now I know what they are like. I can make a poem about them. Listen!

Those big goats
Have got white coats
They're eating the grass
And looking at us!"

"Well done!" said Clever. "But I think, they aren't looking at us." (3)

"And Naughty is looking at you!" said Slow. Naughty was red, "I'm not looking at her. I'm listening to her," he said.

"Let's go to the river," said Clever.

"But I haven't got my swim suit on," said Noisy.

"And I haven't got my swimming trunks," said Funny. (4)

"The water in the river is too cold. But we can see horses and cows there. They usually go there to drink water."

When the children came to the river, Clever said sadly, "Oh, I can't see any cows or horses. I only can see a sheep."

"Oh, a ship!" cried Funny. "We can sail on it. It's better than cows and horses!"

(5)

"Funny, look, it's not a ship! It's a she-ep!"

2 Write the names of the animals.

Name	*Colour*	*What it does*
	white or black	gives milk
	colourful	gives milk
	white or black	gives wool
	different colours	people ride it

3 Answer the questions.

a) Where did the children go on Saturday?
b) What did the children see in the field?
c) Why did they go to the river?
d) Did they see cows and horses by the river?
e) Why didn't the children swim?
f) Did they sail on a ship?

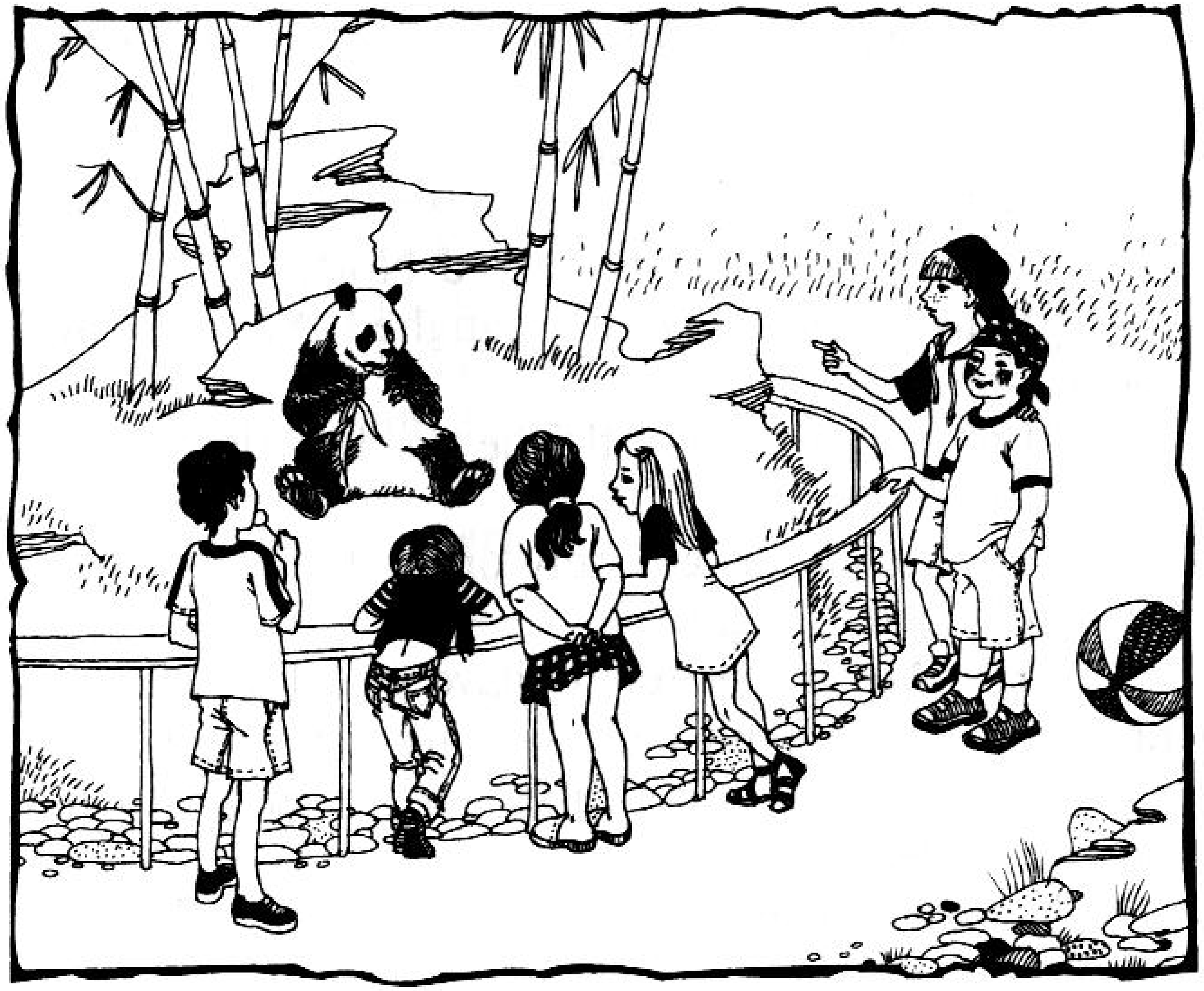
4 Make up a small poem about an animal.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) The children came up to the field.
b) "Let's go to the river," said Clever.
c) The weather was sunny and hot.
d) "Oh, look at those big white dogs in the field!" cried Funny.
e) "They are not dogs. Those animals are goats!" said Clever.
f) Clever looked at him and smiled.

6 Circle the odd word out.

a) sheep, horse, ship, goat
b) sunny, funny, hot, cold
c) white, red, big, green
d) sail, swim, drink, look



Chapter 12
AT THE ZOO

In August the children and their parents came back to town. It was very boring in town after the merry summer in the countryside. So on Sunday the children went to the Zoo.

"Oh, look, there is a cheetah in the cage over there!" cried Funny.

"Yes, I can see it. It's the fastest animal on the land," said Clever.

"But it's not the strongest. I think, lion is stronger," said Noisy.

"But it's slower," said Slow.

"But it's not the slowest animal," smiled Fat.

"Who is the slowest?" asked Noisy.

"Slow is the slowest!" laughed Naughty and looked at Slow.

"I'm not the slowest! The snail is slower than me," said Slow.

"Yes, but it has got only one leg, and you have got two!" said Naughty.

"Yes, but it's better to have one leg, then it's not right or left. And I always mix them up when I put on my shoes. So it's easier for the snail. It can't mix up its legs!" said Slow.

Naughty smiled at Slow. "That's a pity the snail hasn't got any shoes," he laughed.

"Oh, I can see a panda over there!" cried Funny. "What is it eating?"

"It's eating bamboo leaves," said Clever.

"Are they sweet?" asked Fat.

"Do you want to try them?" asked Naughty.

"Yes, I do. Please, ask the panda for a leaf or two for me!" said Fat and smiled.

"Don't be greedy. You are much fatter than this poor panda," answered Naughty.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) When did the children come back to town?
b) Where did they go on Sunday?
c) What animals did they see at the Zoo?
d) Who wanted to try bamboo leaves?

2 Complete the chart.

small	smaller	smallest
fat	fatter	
noisy	noisier	
clever		
thin		
heavy		
short		
big		
slim		
fast		
slow		
dirty		

3 Match the words in two columns.

slow	cheetah
fat	snail
fast	lion
strong	panda

4 Choose right.

a) The cheetah is *the biggest / the fastest* animal on the land.
b) The blue whale is the biggest *animal / fish.*
c) The python is *the fattest / the longest* animal.
d) The elephant is *heavier / taller* than the giraffe.

5 Compare the cheetah and the panda. Use the words: *fast, slow, thin, fat, long, short, strong, heavy.*

6 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) "Oh, look, there is a cheetah in the cage over there!" cried Funny.
b) "It's eating bamboo leaves," said Clever.
c) "Yes, I can see it. It's the fastest animal on the land," said Clever.
d) On Sunday the children went to the Zoo.
e) "Oh, I can see a panda over there!" cried Funny.

7 Circle the odd word out.

a) slowest, fastest, fatter, strongest
b) panda, cheetah, lion, snail
c) laughed, said, looked, asked
d) merry, boring, terrible, noisy
e) had, got, has, have
f) faster, stronger, better, slower

Chapter 13
PYTHON

Suddenly Slow screamed.

"What's the matter?" asked Clever.

"Look! There is a long snake in a tree!" Slow looked afraid. All the children looked at the tree.

"Don't worry. It's a python. It is sleeping. It is beautiful!" said Clever.

"Or handsome, if it is he," said Naughty.

Noisy looked at them and said, "But why is it

here? What is it doing here in the tree? Whose is it? Where is it from?"

"I think, it lives here in the Zoo," said Clever. "I hope somebody is taking him for a walk."

The children looked around and saw two women.

"The python is theirs!" shouted Fat.

Clever came up to the women, pointed to the python and asked, "Is it yours?" The women looked up, screamed and ran away very fast.

"Oops, it's not theirs. But why did they run away?" asked Funny.

"I think, they ran to find the zookeeper," answered Slow. "So we must guard the python till the zookeeper comes." So the children sat down on the grass, took out their sandwiches and started their lunch.

Exercises

1 Explain why:

a) Slow screamed.
b) the women ran away very fast.
c) the children sat down on the grass.

2 True or False?

a) Suddenly Slow smiled.
b) There was a big panda in the tree.
c) There were three women next to the tree.

d) The python was the women's.
e) The children started their lunch.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

The women	pointed to the python.
Slow	took out their sandwiches.
The children	looked afraid.
Clever	screamed and ran away.

4 Draw a picture illustrating the chapter and describe it in 5-6 sentences. Use the words: *there are / is, looking, sleeping, long, afraid.*

5 Choose right.

a) Suddenly Slow *smiled / screamed.*
b) Slow looked *afraid / happy.*
c) The women looked up, screamed and *ran / walked* away very fast.
d) The children took out their *sandwiches / buns* and started their lunch.

6 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) The women saw the python and ran away very fast.
b) So the children sat down on the grass.
c) The children looked around and saw two women.
d) All the children looked at the tree.
e) "Whose is it?" asked Noisy.
f) "It's a python," said Clever.

7 Circle the odd word out.

a) yours, mine, he's, theirs
b) why, what, where, suddenly
c) looked, lives, shouted, screamed
d) say, scream, cry, shout
e) fast, beautiful, cute, handsome



Chapter 14
LUNCH FOR PYTHON

Slow looked at the python and said, "I think, the poor python is very hungry. Let's give it a piece of ham!"

"Oh, yes, a great idea!" cried the children. "But how can we do that? It's very high in the tree!"

"I can climb up the tree and give it the food," said Fat.

"Can you?" asked the children. "You are very brave!" Fat was very proud. He put his food on the

grass, took a big piece of ham out of his sandwich and started climbing up the tree. But it was difficult to do it with the piece of ham in his hand. So Fat said, "Take the ham and throw it back to me when I'm up." He climbed and climbed and climbed. Now he was high in the tree. But the python was on a thin branch, at the very end of it. So Fat started climbing up that branch. Suddenly there was an awful noise and all the three of them fell down on the grass: the python, the branch and Fat.

"Are you OK?" asked Funny.

"Yes," said Fat. "I only hit my leg."

"All is well that ends well," said Clever. "The python is here and the ham is here. Now we can feed it easily." The python opened its eyes, smelled the ham, ate it up and closed its eyes again.

"What a nice python," said Slow. "It's so cute and quiet! I think, we should give it some water to drink."

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What idea did Slow have?
b) Was Fat brave?
c) What did Fat do?
d) Where was the python?
e) What happened to Fat, the branch and the python?

f) Was Fat OK?
g) What did the python do?
h) Who wanted to give the python some water?

2 Fill in the prepositions: *with, of (2), at, up, on, in.*

a) Slow looked ________ the python.
b) "It's very high ________ the tree."
c) "I can climb ________ the tree."
d) It was difficult to do it ________ a piece ________ ham in his hand.
e) All the three ________ them fell down ________ the grass.

3 Match the words in two columns.

poor	
brave	
hungry	Python
kind	idea
proud	Fat
awful	branch
nice	noise
cute	Slow
great	
quiet	
thin	

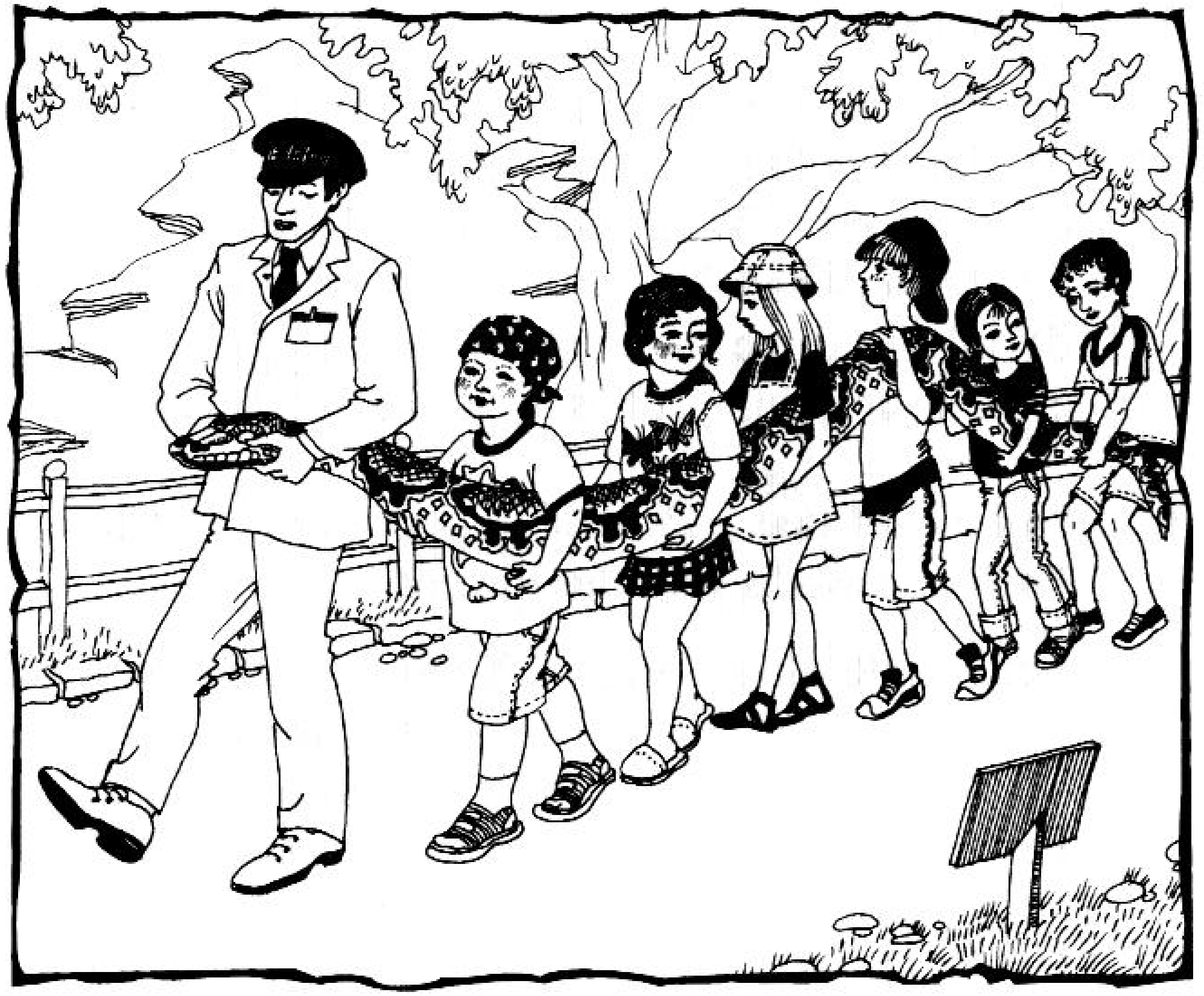
4 Draw a picture of Fat when he is climbing up the tree. Don't forget to draw the python in the tree. Now describe it. Use the words: *climbing, sleeping, thin branch, brave, proud.*

5 Explain why:

a) Fat was very proud.
b) Fat climbed up the tree.
c) Fat said, "Take the ham and throw it back to me when I'm up."
d) all the three of them fell down on the grass.
e) Clever said, "All is well that ends well."

6 "All is well that ends well" is a proverb. Match the English proverbs with the Russian ones.

Better late than never.	Хорошо смеется тот, кто смеется последним.
East or West, home is best.	В гостях хорошо, а дома лучше.
He laughs best, who laughs last.	Без труда не вытащишь рыбку из пруда.
One man, no man.	Лучше поздно, чем никогда.
No sweet without some sweat.	Один в поле не воин.



Chapter 15
ZOOKEEPER COMES

At that moment they saw a tall man. He looked very angry. He ran up to them and shouted, "What are you doing here? You mustn't climb trees in the Zoo!"

"But we are not climbing trees! We are guarding your python!" said the children. The zookeeper looked down on the grass and saw the python. Now everyone saw that it was a very long and thick python.

"Oh, good children, I'm sorry. Thank you very much. Can you help me to carry the python back to its cage?" asked the zookeeper.

"Yes, we can!" cried the children. And everyone who was at the Zoo that day could see a funny line of people: the first was the zookeeper, the second was Fat, the third and the fourth were Slow and Noisy, the fifth and the sixth were Funny and Clever and the seventh was Naughty. They went one after another, and each of them held a piece of the long python in their hands.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What was the tall man?
b) What did the zookeeper see on the grass?
c) What was the python like?
d) Did the children help the zookeeper?
e) How did the children help him?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) The zookeeper saw the python.
b) The zookeeper and the children held the python in their hands.
c) A tall man ran up to them.
d) And everyone who was at the Zoo could see a funny line of people.

3 Circle the odd word out.

a) field, forest, countryside, river
b) climb, run, go, shout
c) shout, carry, look, must
d) long, cute, thick, big
e) ran, went, saw, helped

4 Choose right.

a) The man looked *angry / happy.*
b) The children *climbed trees / guarded* the python.
c) The python was *long / tall* and *fat / thick.*
d) The children carried *the zookeeper / the python.*

5 Explain why:

a) the zookeeper asked the children to help him to carry the python.
b) the zookeeper looked angry.
c) the children went one after another.

6 What happened afterwards? How did the zookeeper thank the children? What did they say? Use the words: *zookeeper (help, guard, come, every day), children (glad, thank you, help, feed the python).*



Chapter 16
BACK TO SCHOOL

It was Autumn again. It was time to go to school. The children came to school on Monday, they had five lessons: History, Science, Art, English and PE.

"What is your favourite subject, Funny?" asked Naughty.

"I like PE," answered Funny. "Do you?"

"Yes, I like PE too. But my favourite subject is Art. I like drawing and painting very much. And you, Fat and Clever?"

"I like Science because I like animals," said Fat.

"I like all the subjects, but my favourite is History," said Clever.

"I don't like History. It's boring!" said Noisy.

"How do you know? You never listen to the teacher. You always talk!" said Slow.

"Yes, I always do when I sit with Merry, but at History lessons I sit with Quiet and she is very boring!" said Noisy.

After Science the children had Art. The teacher of Art, Mr Pencil, was a very kind and funny man. He asked the children to sit down and said, "I'm glad to see you again. Today we are going to draw or paint animals. I hope you all have got a favourite animal. Maybe, it's your pet or a farm animal, maybe, you saw it at the Zoo. Now start!"

All the children started drawing or painting. Mr Pencil walked around the classroom and looked at the children's pictures.

"What are you drawing, Slow?" he asked when he came up to Slow.

"I'm drawing a panda. I saw it at the Zoo," said Slow.

"And what are you drawing, Funny?" asked Mr Pencil.

"I'm drawing a goat. I saw it in the country," said Funny. Clever painted her dog, Dolly. Noisy drew the python from the Zoo. Fat drew his cat, Fluffy. Then Mr Pencil came up to Naughty. He saw a picture of a man.

"Why are you painting a man? I asked you to paint your favourite animal," said Mr Pencil angrily.

"Yes, I know," answered Naughty. "But our Science teacher said at the lesson that people are animals too. And you are my favourite teacher. I'm painting you, Mr Pencil!" smiled Naughty.

Exercises

1 Correct the statements.

a) On Monday the children had Music.
b) Funny's favourite subject was Art.
c) Fat didn't like animals.
d) Noisy sat with Merry at History lessons.
e) Mr Pencil was the teacher of Science.
f) Mr Pencil asked the children to draw their favourite teachers.
g) Fat painted the python from the Zoo.

2 Make up six correct sentences.

Slow		the python
Noisy		Mr Pencil
Clever	drew	Fluffy
Fat	painted	the panda
Naughty		a goat
Funny		Dolly

3 Circle the odd word out.

a) Slow, Noisy, girl, Clever
b) subject, Science, Art, History
c) teacher, subject, lesson, animal
d) History, Art, PE, Music
e) funny, favourite, interesting, boring
f) paint, write, sing, draw

4 Speak about yourself.

a) What are your favourite subjects?
b) What are your favourite teachers like?
c) Is it interesting or boring at the lessons?

5 Fill in the prepositions: *to, on, of, in, at.*

a) "Maybe, you saw it ________ the Zoo," said Mr Pencil.
b) The children came _________ school ________ Monday.
c) "I saw it _______ the country," said Funny.
d) The teacher _______ Art was a very kind and funny man.

6 Explain why:

a) it was time to go to school.
b) Naughty said, "My favourite subject is Art."
c) Fat liked Science.
d) Noisy didn't like History.
e) Mr Pencil walked around the classroom.
f) Clever painted her dog.
g) Mr Pencil was angry when he saw Naughty's picture.
h) Naughty painted a man.



Chapter 17
THOSE ROLLS AND BUNS

It was Tuesday afternoon. Fat walked along the street. Suddenly he saw Funny.

"Hey, Funny!"

"Hello, Fat. Where are you going?" asked Funny. "First I'm going to the baker's to buy some rolls and buns. And then I'm going to the grocer's. I must buy some flour and some sugar for mum. Come with me!" answered Fat and smiled.

"Oh, Fat. I don't think rolls and buns are good for you. You mustn't eat them every day," said Funny.

"Why? I'm already fat and they are so tasty," and Fat smiled again.

"So you want to be fatter. I see," said Funny.

"No, I don't. I can't run well because I'm too fat, but I can't live without rolls and buns!" cried Fat.

"Listen, Fat. I'm your best friend," said Funny. "I shouldn't go to the baker's and buy rolls and buns for you. I shouldn't do what is bad for you. Besides, I must go to the butcher's to buy some meat. Bye."

"Bye," said Fat sadly and walked on.

But Funny didn't go to the butcher's. He turned left into another street, then turned right and ran to the baker's very fast.

He ran into the baker's shop, closed the door and shouted, "Mr Pie! You must know my friend Fat. He is going here now. He is going to buy rolls and buns. But he is already too fat. Please, don't sell them to him!"

"But how can I do that?" asked Mr Pie.

"You must take all the rolls and buns away from the counters! Please, Mr Pie, do it for me and for him! I can help you!" cried Funny.

"OK," said Mr Pie and they took away all Fat's favourite foods.

Exercises

1 Correct the statements.

a) It was Tuesday evening.
b) Suddenly Fat saw Noisy.
c) "I can live without rolls and buns," cried Fat.
d) Funny went to the butcher's.
e) "You must eat all the rolls and buns from the counter. I can help you."

2 Match the words in two columns.

at the butcher's	rolls, buns, bread
at the grocer's	flour, sugar, salt
at the baker's	meat, ham, chicken

3 Explain why:

a) Fat went to the baker's.
b) Funny didn't want to go with him.
c) Funny ran to the baker's.

4 Fill in the prepositions: *without, into, along, to, for, from, with.*

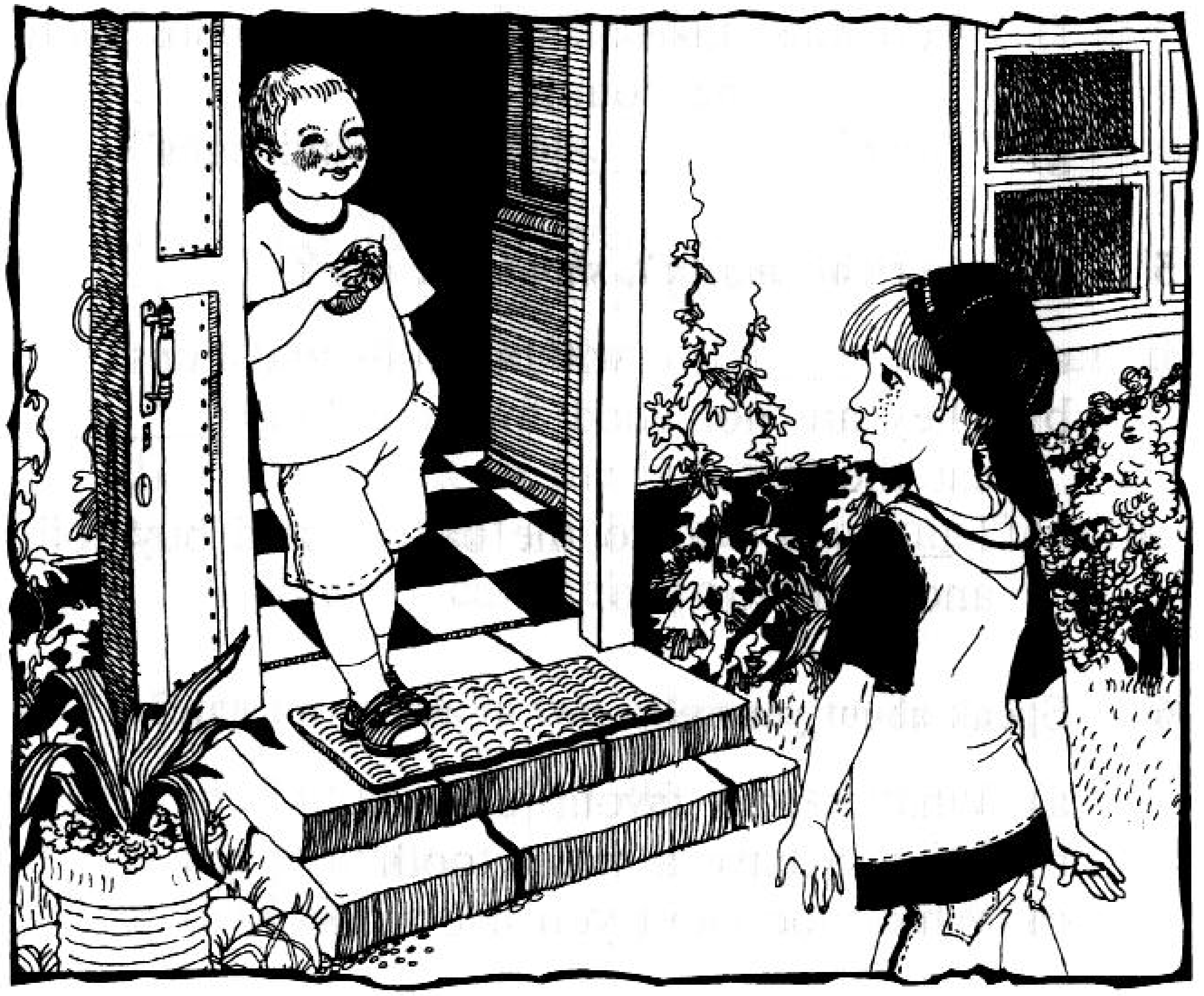
a) "Come ________ me!" shouted Fat.
b) Fat walked ________ the street.
c) "I'm going ________ the baker's."
d) He turned ________ another street.
e) "I don't think rolls and buns are good ________ you.
f) "You must take all the rolls and buns away ________ the counter."
g) "I can't live ________ rolls and buns!"

5 Choose right: *mustn't, shouldn't, can't.*

a) I ________ live without rolls and buns!
b) They are not good for you. You ________ eat them.
c) I ________ go to the baker's and buy rolls and buns for you.

6 Speak about yourself.

a) What is your favourite food?
b) Do you have a sweet tooth?
c) What food can't you live without?



Chapter 18
HELPFUL WOMAN

When Fat came in, he didn't see any rolls and buns in the shop. "Good afternoon, Mr Pie. Can I buy some rolls and buns?" asked Fat.

"I'm very sorry. But we haven't got any rolls and buns at the moment," said Mr Pie.

"Oh, no!" cried Fat." "I need them so much!"

"I'm terribly sorry," repeated Mr Pie and he was really very sorry.

Fat went out of the shop. He turned left and went to the grocer's. He was very sad. He wanted rolls and buns very much.

In the evening Funny phoned Fat. "Hello, Fat. What are you doing?" he asked.

"I'm having tea. Come to me," said Fat, his voice was happy.

"Hooray," smiled Funny. "He can live without rolls and buns and he can be happy!" He ran downstairs and on to Fat's house.

When Fat opened the door, Funny opened his mouth...

"What's the matter with you, Funny? You don't look happy," asked Fat.

"Where did you get that bun?" asked Funny, looking at the big bun in Fat's hand. "Did you buy it at the baker's?"

"Oh, no! There were no rolls and buns there! But then I went to the grocer's to buy some flour and sugar for mum. There I met a very nice woman. She likes rolls and buns too. But she doesn't usually buy them, she cooks them. She taught me how to cook tasty buns! She is here. She is helping me. I think you know her. She is Mrs Pie."

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why was Mr Pie really sorry?
b) Where did Fat go after the baker's shop?

c) Who did he meet at the grocer's?
d) Why did Funny open his mouth when Fat opened the door?
e) Was Fat happy now?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) We haven't got ________ at the moment.
b) Fat turned left and went ________ .
c) When Fat opened the door, Funny ______ .
d) She doesn't usually buy them, she _______ .
e) She taught me how ________ .

3 Choose right.

a) Fat went to the baker's to buy: *1) flour, 2) rolls and buns, 3) meat.*
b) Fat was very sad because: *1) he went to the grocer's, 2) there were no rolls and buns at the baker's, 3) he met Mrs Pie.*
c) Mrs Pie usually: *1) buys rolls and buns, 2) eats rolls and buns, 3) cooks rolls and buns.*

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) "She is Mrs Pie."
b) Fat went to the grocer's to buy some sugar and flour.
c) Fat went out of the shop.
d) In the evening Funny phoned Fat.
e) "I met a very nice woman at the grocer's."
f) When Fat came in, he didn't see any rolls and buns.

g) "She doesn't usually buy rolls and buns, she cooks them."

5 Retell Fat's story.

6 Think of a dialogue between Fat and Mrs Pie at the grocer's shop. Use the words: *sad, no rolls and buns, teach, cook.*

7 Who do you like better: Naughty, Fat, Clever, Noisy, Slow or Funny? Why? What is your friend like?

Vocabulary

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — прилагательное
a predic adjective predicative — предикативное употребление имени прилагательного
adv adverb — наречие
cj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — существительное
phr v phrasal verb — фразовый глагол
pl plural — множественное число
prep preposition — предлог
pron pronoun — местоимение
v verb — глагол
зд. — здесь

A

about [ə'baʊt] *prep* о, про, по
afraid [ə'freɪd] *a predic* испуганный
after ['ɑ:ftə] *prep* после, за
afternoon [ˌɑ:ftə'nu:n] *n* время после полудня
afterwards ['ɑ:ftəwəd(z)] *adv* потом, впоследствии
again [ə'ge(ɪ)n] *adv* опять, снова
all [ɔ:l] *a* все, всё
along [ə'lɒŋ] *adv* по, вдоль
already [ɔ:l'redɪ] *adv* уже
always ['ɔ:lw(e)ɪz] *adv* всегда
angry ['æŋgrɪ] *a* сердитый

angrily ['æŋgrɪlɪ] *adv* сердито
animal ['ænɪm(ə)l] *n* животное
another [ə'nʌðə] *a* другой
answer ['ɑ:nsə] *n* ответ
apple ['æp(ə)l] *n* яблоко
arm [ɑ:m] *n* рука
around [ə'raʊnd] *adv* вокруг
art [ɑ:t] *n* изобразительное искусство
ask [ɑ:sk] *v* спрашивать
ate [et; eɪt] *форма прошедшего времени от* eat
August ['ɔ:gəst] *n* август
autumn ['ɔ:təm] *n* осень
away [ə'weɪ] *adv* прочь
awful ['ɔ:f(ə)l] *a* ужасный

B

back [bæk] *adv* назад
bad [bæd] *a* плохой
baker ['beɪkə] *n* булочник
baker's ['beɪkəz] *n* булочная
bamboo [ˌbæm'bu:] *n* бамбук
bark [bɑ:k] *v* лаять
bath tub ['bɑ:θtʌb] *n* ванна
because [bɪ'kɒz; bɪkəz] *cj* потому что
bed [bed] *n* постель, кровать
behind [bɪ'haɪnd] *adv* за, сзади, позади
besides [bɪ'saɪdz] *adv* к тому же
best [best] *adv* лучший, лучше всего, больше всего
better ['betə] *adv* лучше, больше
bike [baɪk] *n* велосипед
bite [baɪt] *v* кусать(ся)
book [bʊk] *n* книга
boring ['bɔ:rɪŋ] *a* скучный
bottle ['bɒtl] *n* бутылка
box [bɒks] *n* коробка
branch [brɑ:ntʃ] *n* ветка
brave [breɪv] *a* смелый
bread [bred] *n* хлеб
bun [bʌn] *n* сдобная булочка
but [bʌt] *cj* но

butcher [ˈbʊtʃə] *n* мясник
butcher's [ˈbʊtʃəz] *n* мясной магазин
butterfly [ˈbʌtəflaɪ] *n* бабочка
buy [baɪ] *v* покупать

C

cage [keɪdʒ] *n* клетка
cake [keɪk] *n* торт, пирожное
came [keɪm] *форма прошедшего времени от* come
can [kæn] *v* мочь, уметь
carry [ˈkærɪ] *v* нести
cartoon [kɑːˈtuːn] *n* мультфильм
catch [kætʃ] *v* ловить
CD [ˈsiːˈdiː] *n* компакт-диск, аудио диск
chetah [ˈtʃiːtə] *n* гепард
children [ˈtʃɪldrən] *n pl* дети
chocolate [ˈtʃɒklɪt] *n* шоколад, шоколадная конфета
choose [tʃuːz] *v* выбирать
clean [kliːn] *a* чистый; *v* чистить
clever [ˈklevə] *a* умный
climb [klaɪm] *v* влезать
clock [klɒk] *n* часы (настенные, напольные)
close [kləʊz] *v* закрывать
clothes [kləʊ(ð)z] *n* одежда
coat [kəʊt] *n зд.* шубка
cold [kəʊld] *a* холодный
colour [ˈkʌlə] *n* цвет
colourful [ˈkʌləf(ə)l] *a* разноцветный
command [kəˈmɑːnd] *v* командовать
come [kʌm] *v* приходить
come in [ˈkʌmˈɪn] *phr v* входить
cook [kʊk] *v* готовить
could [kʊd] *форма прошедшего времени от* can
counter [ˈkaʊntə] *n* прилавок
country, countryside [ˈkʌntrɪ, ˈkʌntrɪsaɪd] *n* сельская местность, деревня
cover [ˈkʌvə] *v* закрывать
cow [kaʊ] *n* корова

cried *форма прошедшего времени от* cry
cry [kraɪ] *v* кричать; плакать
curly [ˈkɜːlɪ] *a* кудрявый
cute [kjuːt] *a* симпатичный
cycle [ˈsaɪk(ə)l] *v* кататься на велосипеде

D

dance [dɑːns] *v* танцевать
dark [dɑːk] *a* темный
dear [dɪə] *a* дорогой
describe [dɪsˈkraɪb] *v* описать
different [ˈdɪf(ə)rənt] *a* разный
difficult [ˈdɪfɪk(ə)lt] *a* трудный
dirty [ˈdɜːtɪ] *a* грязный
door [dɔː] *n* дверь
down [daʊn] *adv* вниз, внизу
downstairs [ˌdaʊnˈsteəz] *adv* внизу, вниз по лестнице
drank [dræŋk] *форма прошедшего времени от* drink
draw [drɔː] *v* рисовать
drew [druː] *форма прошедшего времени от* draw
dress [dres] *n* платье
drink [drɪŋk] *v* пить

E

each [iːtʃ] *a* каждый
each other [ˌiːtʃˈʌðə] друг друга, друг с другом
easy [ˈiːzɪ] *a* легкий
easily [ˈiːzɪlɪ] *adv* легко
eat [iːt] *v* есть, съесть
eat up [ˈiːtˈʌp] *phr v* доесть
evening [ˈiːvnɪŋ] *n* вечер
everyone [ˈevrɪwʌn] *pron* каждый, все
end [end] *n* конец; *v* заканчивать

F

fact [fækt] *n* факт
in fact [ɪnˈfækt] на самом деле
fair [feə] *a* светлый

fall [fɔ:l] *v* падать
farm [fɑ:m] *a* фермерский
fast [fɑ:st] *a* быстрый
fat [fæt] *a* толстый
favourite [ˈfeɪv(ə)rɪt] *a* любимый
feed [fi:d] *v* кормить
feel [fi:l] *v* чувствовать
fell [fel] *форма прошедшего времени от* fall
fence [fens] *n* забор
field [fi:ld] *n* поле
fifth [fɪfθ] *a* пятый
find [faɪnd] *v* найти
first [fɜ:st] *a* первый
flour [ˈflaʊə] *n* мука
fluffy [ˈflʌfɪ] *a* пушистый
fly [flaɪ] *v* летать
food [fu:d] *n* еда, пища
for [fɔ:] *prep* для
forest [ˈfɒrɪst] *n* лес
forget [fəˈget] *v* забыть
form [fɔ:m] *n* класс
French [frentʃ] *a* французский
Friday [ˈfraɪdɪ] *n* пятница
from [frɒm] *prep* от, с
funny [ˈfʌnɪ] *a* смешной

G

garden [gɑ:dn] *n* сад
gate [geɪt] *n* калитка
gave [geɪv] *форма прошедшего времени от* give
get [get] *v* достать, добраться
get down [ˈgetˈdaʊn] *phr v* снять
get stuck [ˈgetˈstʌk] застрять
get up [ˈgetˈʌp] *phr v* вставать
give [gɪv] *v* давать
glad [glæd] *a* довольный
go [gəʊ] *v* идти
goat [gəʊt] *n* коза, козел
good [gʊd] *a* хороший
got stuck *форма прошедшего времени от* get stuck
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
great [greɪt] *a* великолепный
Greece [gri:s] *n* Греция
greedy [ˈgri:dɪ] *a* жадный
grocer [ˈgrəʊsə] *n* бакалейщик

grocer's [ˈgrəʊsəz] *n* бакалея (магазин)
guard [gɑ:d] *v* сторожить

H

half [hɑ:f] *n* половина
ham [hæm] *n* ветчина
hand [hænd] *n* кисть руки
handsome [ˈhæns(ə)m] *a* красивый
hang [hæŋ] *v* висеть
happen [ˈhæpən] *v* случиться
happy [ˈhæpɪ] *a* счастливый, радостный
hate [heɪt] *v* не любить, ненавидеть
hear [hɪə] *v* слышать
heavy [ˈhevɪ] *a* тяжелый
held [held] *форма прошедшего времени от* hold
help [help] *v* помогать
helpful [ˈhelpf(ə)l] *a* отзывчивый
here [hɪə] *adv* здесь, сюда
high [haɪ] *a* высокий, высоко
History [ˈhɪst(ə)rɪ] *n* история
hit [hɪt] *v* ударить
hold [həʊld] *v* держать в руках
home [həʊm] *n* дом
homework [ˈhəʊmwɜ:k] *n* домашняя работа
honey [ˈhʌnɪ] *n* мед
hooray! [hʊˈreɪ] *int* ура!
hope [həʊp] *v* надеяться
horse [hɔ:s] *n* лошадь
hot [hɒt] *a* горячий, горячо
house [haʊs] *n* дом
how [haʊ] *adv* как
how many сколько
hungry [ˈhʌŋgrɪ] *a* голодный
hurt [hɜ:t] *v* причинять боль

I

idea [aɪˈdɪə] *n* идея, мысль
ill [ɪl] *a* больной
illustrate [ˈɪləstreɪt] *v* проиллюстрировать
interesting [ˈɪntrɪstɪŋ] *a* интересный

into [ˈɪntu:] *prep* в, внутрь

J

jam [dʒæm] *n* джем
jar [dʒɑ:] *n* банка
joke [dʒəʊk] *n* шутка
jump [dʒʌmp] *v* прыгать
jumper [ˈdʒʌmpə] *n* джемпер
June [dʒu:n] *n* июнь

K

kilo [ˈki:ləʊ] *n* килограмм
kind [kaɪnd] *a* добрый
know [nəʊ] *v* знать

L

land [lænd] *n* суша
language [ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ] *n* язык
last [lɑ:st] *a* прошлый, последний
  at last наконец
late [leɪt] *a* поздний, поздно
laugh [lɑ:f] *v* смеяться
leaf [li:f] *n* лист
learn [lɜ:n] *v* выучить
leaves [li:vz] *n pl* листья
left [left] *a* левый
  on the left слева
leg [leg] *n* нога
lesson [ˈles(ə)n] *n* урок
let's (let us) [ˈlets] ([ˈletʌs]) давай(те)
like [laɪk] *v* нравиться, любить
like [laɪk] *a* подобный, похожий
line [laɪn] *n* вереница
lion [ˈlaɪən] *n* лев
listen [ˈlɪs(ə)n] *v* слушать
long [lɒŋ] *a* длинный; долгий
look [lʊk] *v* выглядеть
  look at смотреть на
  look out of смотреть из
lunch [lʌntʃ] *n* обед

M

make [meɪk] *v* делать
man [mæn] *n* мужчина
matter [ˈmætə] *n* дело, проблема
maybe [ˈmeɪbɪ] *adv* может быть

meat [mi:t] *n* мясо
meet [mi:t] *v* встречать
merry [ˈmerɪ] *a* веселый
met [met] *форма прошедшего времени от* meet
milk [mɪlk] *n* молоко
mine [maɪn] *pron* мой
mirror [ˈmɪrə] *n* зеркало
mix up [ˈmɪksˈʌp] *phr v* перепутать
moment [ˈməʊmənt] *n* момент, мгновение
Monday [ˈmʌndɪ] *n* понедельник
morning [ˈmɔ:nɪŋ] *n* утро
much [mʌtʃ] *a* гораздо, много
must [mʌst] *v* должен
  mustn't нельзя
myself [maɪˈself] *pron* сам, сама

N

naughty [ˈnɔ:tɪ] *a* озорной
near [nɪə] *adv* близко
need [ni:d] *v* нуждаться
neighbour [ˈneɪbə] *n* сосед(ка)
new [nju:] *a* новый
next to [ˈnekst tʊ] *adv* рядом
noise [nɔɪz] *n* шум
noisy [ˈnɔɪzɪ] *a* шумный
nonsense [ˈnɒns(ə)ns] *n* чепуха
noon [nu:n] *n* полдень
nothing [ˈnʌθɪŋ] *pron* ничего
now [naʊ] *adv* сейчас, теперь

O

off [ɒf] с, со, прочь
old [əʊld] *a* старый
olive oil [ˈɒlɪvɔɪl] оливковое масло
only [ˈəʊnlɪ] *cj* только, всего лишь
oops! [ʊps] *int* ой! (*выражение удивления*)
open [ˈəʊpən] *v* открывать
opposite [ˈɒpəzɪt] *adv* напротив
out [aʊt] *prep* из, наружу

P

paint [peɪnt] *v* рисовать красками
panda [ˈpændə] *n* панда
parents [ˈpe(ə)rənts] родители
part [pɑ:t] *n* часть
party [ˈpɑ:tɪ] *n* вечеринка
past [pɑ:st] *prep* после (*о времени*)
  past two после двух = третий час
PE = physical education [ˈfɪzɪk(ə)l(ˌ)edjʊˈkeɪʃ(ə)n] физкультура
pet [pet] *n* любимец, домашнее животное
phone [fəʊn] *v* звонить по телефону
piano [ˈpɪɑ:nəʊ] *n* пианино
picture [ˈpɪktʃə] *n* картинка, картина; зрелище
pie [paɪ] *n* пирог
piece [pi:s] *n* кусок
pity [ˈpɪtɪ] *n* жалость
  that's a pity жаль
place [pleɪs] *n* место
playground [ˈpleɪgraʊnd] *n* детская площадка
plump [plʌmp] *a* пухленький, толстенький
point [pɔɪnt] *v* указать
Poland [ˈpəʊlənd] *n* Польша
poor [pʊə] *a* бедный
pour [pɔ:] *v* лить, полить
proper [ˈprɒpə] *a* подходящий
proud [praʊd] *a* гордый
pull [pʊl] *v* тянуть
push [pʊʃ] *v* толкать
put [pʊt] *v* класть, ставить
put on [ˈpʊtˈɒn] *phr v* надевать
python [ˈpaɪθ(ə)n] *n* питон

Q

quiet [ˈkwaɪət] *a* тихий
quarter [ˈkwɔ:tə] четверть

R

rain [reɪn] *n* дождь; *v* идти (*о дожде*)

ran [ræn] *форма прошедшего времени от* run
ready [ˈredɪ] *a* готовый
really [ˈrɪ(ə)lɪ] *adv* действительно, на самом деле
repeat [rɪˈpi:t] *v* повторять
ride [raɪd] *v* ехать верхом
riding [ˈraɪdɪŋ] *n* верховая езда
right [raɪt] *a* правый, направо
river [ˈrɪvə] *n* река
roll [rəʊl] *n* булочка, рулет
room [ru:m] *n* комната
run [rʌn] *v* бежать
run out [ˈrʌnˈaʊt] *phr v* выбегать

S

sad [sæd] *a* грустный
sadly [ˈsædlɪ] *adv* с грустью
said [sed] *форма прошедшего времени от* say
sail [seɪl] *v* плыть (на корабле)
salt [sɔ:lt] *n* соль
same [seɪm] *n* тот же самый
sandals [ˈsændlz] *n pl* сандалии
sandwich [ˈsænwɪdʒ] *n* сэндвич
sang [sæŋ] *форма прошедшего времени от* sing
sat [sæt] *форма прошедшего времени от* sit
Saturday [ˈsætədɪ] *n* суббота
saw [sɔ:] *форма прошедшего времени от* see
say [seɪ] *v* сказать
Science [ˈsaɪəns] *n* естествознание, наука
scream [skri:m] *v* вскрикнуть
season [ˈsi:z(ə)n] *n* время года
second [ˈsekənd] *a* второй
see [si:] *v* видеть, понимать
sell [sel] *v* продавать
sheep [ʃi:p] *n* овца
ship [ʃɪp] *n* корабль
shoes [ʃu:z] *n pl* туфли
shop [ʃɒp] *n* магазин

short [ʃɔ:t] *a* низкий, невысокий
shorts [ʃɔ:ts] *n* шорты
should [ʃʊd] *v* следует, нужно
shout [ʃaʊt] *v* кричать
show [ʃəʊ] *v* показывать
silly [ˈsɪlɪ] *a* глупый
sing [sɪŋ] *v* петь
sit [sɪt] *v* сидеть
skate [skeɪt] *v* кататься на коньках
sleep [sli:p] *v* спать
slice [slaɪs] *n* кусок
slim [slɪm] *a* стройный
slow [sləʊ] *a* медленный
slowly [ˈsləʊlɪ] *adv* медленно
smell [smel] *v* почуять, унюхать
smile [smaɪl] *v* улыбаться
snail [sneɪl] *n* улитка
snake [sneɪk] *n* змея
so [səʊ] *adv* так, итак, поэтому
soap [səʊp] *n* мыло
socks [sɒks] *n pl* носки
some [sʌm] *adv* несколько, немного
somebody [ˈsʌmbədɪ] *pron* кто-то
son [sʌn] *n* сын
soon [su:n] *adv* вскоре, скоро
sorry [ˈsɒrɪ] *a* жаль
I'm sorry извините
Spanish [ˈspænɪʃ] *a* испанский
speak [spi:k] *v* говорить
spot [spɒt] *n* пятнышко
start [stɑ:t] *v* начинать
stay [steɪ] *v* остановиться, остаться
still [stɪl] *adv* все еще
stomach [ˈstʌmək] *n* живот
stomachache [ˈstʌməkeɪk] *n* боль в животе
stop [stɒp] *v* остановиться, перестать
story [ˈstɔ:rɪ] *n* история
strawberry [ˈstrɔ:b(ə)rɪ] *n* клубника
street [stri:t] *n* улица
strong [strɒŋ] *a* сильный
subject [ˈsʌbdʒɪkt] *n* предмет
suddenly [ˈsʌd(ə)nlɪ] *adv* вдруг
sugar [ˈʃʊgə] *n* сахар
summer [ˈsʌmə] *n* лето

Sunday [ˈsʌndɪ] *n* воскресенье
sunny [ˈsʌnɪ] *a* солнечный
sweet [swi:t] *a* сладкий; *n* конфета
sweet tooth [ˌswi:tˈtu:θ] *n* пристрастие к сладкому
to have a sweet tooth быть сладкоежкой, сластеной
swim [swɪm] *v* плавать
swimming trunks [ˈswiniŋ trʌŋks] плавки
swim suit [ˈswɪm s(j)u:t] *n* купальник

T

table [ˈteɪb(ə)l] *n* стол
to lay the table накрывать на стол
take [teɪk] *v* брать, вести
take off [ˈteɪkˈɒf] *phr v* снять (*об одежде*)
talk [tɔ:k] *v* говорить
tall [tɔ:l] *a* высокий
tasty [ˈteɪstɪ] *a* вкусный
taught [tɔ:t] *форма прошедшего времени от* teach
tea [ti:] *n* чай
teach [ˈti:tʃ] *v* учить
teacher [ˈti:tʃə] *n* учитель
tell [ˈtel] *v* сказать, рассказать
terrible [ˈterəb(ə)l] *a* ужасный
terribly [ˈterəblɪ] *adv* ужасно
than [ðæn] *cj* чем
thank [θæŋk] *v* благодарить
that [ðæt] *pron* тот, та, то; что
then [ðen] *adv* потом, тогда
there [ðeə] *adv* там, туда
these [ði:z] эти, это
thick [θɪk] *a* толстый
thin [θɪn] *a* тонкий, худой
think [θɪŋk] *v* думать
this [ðɪs] *pron* этот, эта, это
through [θru:] *prep* через, сквозь
throw [θrəʊ] *v* бросать, кидать
Thursday [ˈθɜ:zdɪ] *n* четверг

tidy [ˈtaɪdɪ] *v* убирать, прибирать
till [tɪl] *prep* до
time [taɪm] *n* время
today [təˈdeɪ] *adv* сегодня
together [təˈgeðə] *adv* вместе
told [təʊld] *форма прошедшего времени от* tell
too [tu:] *adv* тоже, слишком
took [tʊk] *форма прошедшего времени от* take
toothache [ˈtu:θeɪk] *n* зубная боль
town [taʊn] *n* город
traffic lights [ˈtræfɪklaɪts] светофор
trainers [ˈtreɪnəz] *n pl* кроссовки
tree [tri:] *n* дерево
tried [traɪd] *форма прошедшего времени от* try
trousers [ˈtraʊzəz] *n* брюки, штаны
try [traɪ] *v* пытаться, стараться
T-shirt [ˈti:ʃɜ:t] *n* футболка
Tuesday [ˈtju:zdɪ] *n* вторник
turn [tɜ:n] *v* повернуть

U

under [ˈʌndə] *prep* под
understand [ˌʌndəˈstænd] *v* понимать
up [ʌp] *adv* вверх
upon [əˈpɒn] *prep* на
upstairs [ˌʌpˈsteəz] *adv* наверх, наверху
use [ju:z] *v* использовать
usually [ˈju:ʒʊəlɪ; ˈju:ʒ(ə)lɪ] *adv* обычно

V

very [ˈverɪ] *adv* очень
very much очень
visit [ˈvɪzɪt] *v* навестить
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос

W

wake up [ˈweɪkˈʌp] *v* будить; просыпаться
walk [wɔ:k] *v n* прогулка; ходить пешком
want [wɒnt] *v* хотеть
warm [wɔ:m] *a* теплый
wash [wɒʃ] *v* мыть(ся)
watch [wɒtʃ] *v* смотреть
water [ˈwɔ:tə] *n* вода
wear [weə] *v* носить (одежду)
weather [ˈweðə] *n* погода
well [wel] *a* здоровый, хороший
well done молодец
went [went] *форма прошедшего времени от* go
wheel [wi:l] *n* колесо
where [weə] *cj* где, куда
white [waɪt] *a* белый
whose [hu:z] *pron* чей, чья, чьё
why [waɪ] *adv* почему
window [ˈwɪndəʊ] *n* окно
with [wɪð] *prep* с
without [wɪˈðaʊt] *prep* без
women [ˈwɪmɪn] *n pl* женщины
wool [wʊl] *n* шерсть
word [wɜ:d] *n* слово
work [wɜ:k] *n* работа
at work на работе
worry [ˈwʌrɪ] *v* волноваться
wow! [waʊ] *int* ух ты!

Y

yard [jɑ:d] *n* двор
yourself [jəˈself] *pron* сам, сама

Z

zoo [zu:] *n* зоопарк
zookeeper [ˈzu:ˌki:pə] *n* смотритель зоопарка

Содержание



The Magic Land of Oz...
We first get into it when we read "The Wizard of the Emerald City" by A. Volkov.
For this famous fairy tale is the first book in L.F. Baum's series retold in Russian.
In this book the young reader will meet Dorothy and her friends again, as well as make acquaintance with new amusing characters.

- Beginner
- Elementary
- Для начинающих
- Pre-Intermediate
- Для продолжающих первого уровня
- Intermediate
- Для продолжающих второго уровня
- Upper Intermediate
- Для продолжающих третьего уровня
- Advanced
- Для совершенствующихся

ISBN 978-5-8112-2970-3

Л. Фрэнк Баум ЧУДЕСА СТРАНЫ ОЗ • L. Frank Baum THE MAGIC OF OZ

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение

Английский клуб

Elementary

Л. Фрэнк Баум

Чудеса страны Оз

L. Frank Baum

The Magic of Oz

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Л. Фрэнк Баум

ЧУДЕСА СТРАНЫ ОЗ

Адаптация текста, словарь
Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой
Упражнения И. П. Твердохлебовой

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Б29

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Баум, Л. Ф.

Б29 Чудеса страны Оз [= The Magic of Oz] / Л. Фрэнк Баум; адаптация текста, слов. Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой; упражнения И. П. Твердохлебовой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 240 с. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-2970-3

Книга представляет собой две адаптированные и сокращенные части знаменитого сказочного цикла Л. Фрэнка Баума о Волшебной стране Оз. Тексты сказок сопровождаются занимательными упражнениями. Книга содержит постраничный комментарий и словарь и предназначена для начинающих самостоятельно изучать английский язык.

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93

ISBN 978-5-8112-2970-3

Part One





Chapter One
THE CYCLONE

Little Dorothy[1] lived on the great Kansas prairie[2]. She lived with Uncle Henry and Aunt Em. Uncle Henry was a farmer. Aunt Em was his wife. Their house was very small. It had only one room. There were not many things in it. There was a table, a cupboard, three or four chairs and the beds.

Near the house there were neither trees nor flowers. On the right and on the left there was only the great grey Kansas prairie. Even the grass was not green but grey.

---

[1] Dorothy [ˈdɔrəθɪ] — Дороти

[2] Kansas prairie [ˈkænzəs ˈprɛərɪ] — Канзасская прерия (*Канзас — штат в центральной части США*)

Uncle Henry and Aunt Em worked all day. They never laughed. They had no time to laugh. They began to work early in the morning and stopped late in the evening. But little Dorothy often laughed. She laughed because she was happy. She was happy because she had a dear friend. It was Toto,[1] a little black dog. Toto had long hair, small black eyes and a funny little nose. Toto and Dorothy ran and played all day long.[2]

One afternoon Uncle Henry was at the door of his house. He looked at the sky. The sky was not blue, it was grey. Dorothy was in the yard with Toto in her arms. She looked at the sky too. Dorothy did not like that grey sky.

Suddenly a storm came from the East. The sky was very dark now. Uncle Henry cried out to Aunt Em who was in the house:

"A cyclone, Em, a cyclone is coming! How terrible!" He ran off to look after the cows and the horses. Aunt Em came to the door and looked at the sky too. She was frightened.[3]

"Yes, a cyclone is coming," she cried to Dorothy. "Quick, Dorothy, run into the house and stay there. I must help Uncle Henry!"

And Aunt Em quickly ran off.

Dorothy ran into the house with Toto in her arms. At that moment a strange and terrible thing happened. The cyclone lifted the little house into the air. Then it carried the house very, very far away. Little Dorothy did not know what to do. It was very dark in the house and she was frightened. She wanted to cry.

"What will happen to us?"[4] little Dorothy thought.

Minute after minute passed. Hour after hour passed.

"I must wait and see what will happen," the girl thought. "Now I shall go to bed and sleep."[5]

She got up, found her bed and lay down on it. Toto came up and lay down beside the bed.

---

[1] Toto [ˈtoutou] — Тото

[2] all day long — весь день

[3] was frightened [ˈfraɪtənd] — была испугана

[4] What will happen to us? — Что с нами будет?

[5] Now I shall go to bed and sleep. — Сейчас я должна лечь спать.

Chapter Two
DOROTHY MEETS A GOOD WITCH

Dorothy slept for a long time. When she woke up she sat up in her bed and looked around. It was early morning. It was very light in the room now. She got up and with Toto in her arms ran to the door and opened it.

The little girl cried out with joy.[1] She saw a lot[2] of beautiful fruit-trees and wonderful bright flowers. Beautiful birds sat in the trees and sang their songs. A little way off[3] there was a little river.

"I am in a fairy-land," thought Dorothy. She looked at the bright flowers and beautiful trees and laughed with joy.

Suddenly Dorothy saw some people a little way off. There were three men and one woman coming to the house.

"What funny people," thought Dorothy. "They are so small, but they look old, — not like children."

The woman was very old. Her face was yellow. Her hair was white. She could not walk fast.

The funny people came up to the house and stopped. For some time neither Dorothy nor the people spoke. Dorothy looked at them, they looked at Dorothy.

"I think they are afraid of me," she thought. "Why?"

The little old woman came up to Dorothy and said. "You are welcome, beautiful Fairy, to the Land of Oz, to the Country of the Munchkins.[4] We thank you very, very much!"

"Why do you call me a fairy? Why do you thank me?" asked Dorothy.

"We thank you because you have killed[5] the Wicked Witch of the East,"[6] answered the old woman. "Our people were her slaves. Now they are free."

"I don't understand her," thought Dorothy. "Why does she

---

[1] cried out with joy — вскрикнула от радости

[2] a lot — очень много

[3] a little way off — невдалеке

[4] You are welcome, beautiful Fairy ['fɛərɪ], to the Land of Oz, to the Country of the Munchkins ['mʌntʃkɪnz]. — Добро пожаловать, прекрасная фея, на землю Оз, в страну Жевунов (*прозвище жителей, от глагола* to munch — *жевать*).

[5] you have killed — Вы убили

[6] the Wicked ['wɪkɪd] Witch of the East — Злая Колдунья Восточной страны

say I killed the Witch of the East? I didn't kill her. How could I kill her? I am only a little girl. What can I say to this old woman?"

And she said: "You are very kind. But I think there is a mistake. I am not a fairy, and I didn't kill the Witch of the East!"

"That's right," answered the little old woman. "You didn't kill her. Your house did it."

"How?" asked Dorothy.

"Look," said the little woman, "you can see the Witch's feet under your house!"

Dorothy looked and saw two feet in silver shoes. The body was under the house.

She was frightened. "What shall I do?" she cried out. "What shall I do? Now I understand what happened. The house fell on this poor woman and killed her. I am so sorry, so sorry for her![1] What shall we do now?"

"You must not be sorry for *her*!" said the little woman.

"But who was she?" asked Dorothy.

"She was the Wicked Witch of the East," answered the woman. "She made all the Munchkin people her slaves. They worked for her day and night. Now they are free, because your house has fallen on her and killed her."

"Who are you?" asked Dorothy. "And where am I?"

"I am the Witch of the North," said the little woman. "But I am a good witch and a friend of the Munchkin people. You are in the Munchkin Country in the Land of Oz."

"So you are a witch too..." said Dorothy.

"Yes, I am," answered the little woman. "But I am a good witch, I tell you."

"Are there any good witches?" asked Dorothy.

"Yes, there are," answered the little woman. "There were four witches in the Land of Oz. Two of them are good witches, the Witch of the South and the Witch of the North. I am the Witch of the North. Then there were two wicked witches. They lived in the East and in the West. And now there is only one wicked witch in the Land of Oz. She lives in the West. Your house killed the Witch of the East and we are glad of that."[2]

---

[1] I am so sorry... for her! — Мне так жаль... ее!

[2] we are glad of that — мы этому рады



Chapter Three
DOROTHY WANTS TO GO BACK HOME

"If you are a good witch," cried Dorothy, "please help me to go back to my aunt and uncle. I think they are terribly frightened, they don't know where I am. Please help me to go back to Kansas prairie."

The little men and the old woman looked at Dorothy and did not speak for some time.

"We don't know where Kansas is," said one of them. "We cannot help you to go back to your prairie."

"That's true, my dear," said the good witch. "We don't know where your prairie is and we can't help you. You must stay with us."

At these words[1] Dorothy began to cry. She could not be happy

[1] at these words — при этих словах.

in that beautiful country when her aunt and uncle were so far away. She loved them very much. The little people looked at her and began to cry too. Then the little old woman said:

"What is your name, dear child?"

"My name is Dorothy," said the girl.

"Listen to me, Dorothy," said the little woman. "Only Oz, the great Wizard of the Land of Oz,[1] can help you. You must find him and ask him to help you. He lives in the Emerald City."

"Where is that city?" asked Dorothy.

"It's in the middle of the Land of Oz. And the Wizard is the ruler of the Emerald City," said the little old woman.

"Is he a good man?" asked Dorothy.

"I don't know," said the little old woman. "I only know that he is a good Wizard."

"How can I get to the Emerald City?" asked Dorothy. "Can you tell me the way there?"

"You must walk all the way there," said the old woman. "It is a long way. And it is full of dangers."[2]

"I am afraid," said the little girl. "Can you go with me?[3] You are my friends, aren't you?"

"Yes, we are your friends," said the Good Witch, "but we cannot go with you. I am sorry to say. But take these shoes, my dear!" The little woman took off the silver shoes of the Wicked Witch of the East and gave them to Dorothy. "There is some magic in these shoes. I don't know what magic, but I hope it will help you."

Dorothy took the shoes of the Wicked Witch of the East and put them on.

"Now I must leave you," said the kind little woman. "I hope you will find the Emerald City and the Wizard of the Land of Oz. The road to the Emerald City is made of yellow brick.[4] You must walk along that

[1] only Oz, the Great Wizard of the Land of Oz — только Оз, Великий Волшебник страны Оз

[2] It is a long way. And it is full of dangers. — Путь туда далек. И он полон опасностей.

[3] Can you go with me? — *зд.* Не пойдете ли Вы со мной?

[4] The road... is made of yellow brick. — Дорога... вымощена желтым кирпичом.

road. And don't be afraid of the Wizard. Tell him your story and he will help you to go back to your aunt and uncle. Good-bye, my dear!"

The Witch turned around on her left foot three times[1] and disappeared. The three old Munchkins said good-bye to Dorothy and walked away.

Chapter Four
DOROTHY MEETS THE SCARECROW

Dorothy put on the silver shoes of the Wicked Witch of the East and called Toto. "Come along, Toto," she said, "we shall go to the Emerald City and ask the Great Wizard to send us back to Kansas."

She went into the little house, took some bread from the cupboard and put it in the little basket.

So Dorothy and Toto began to walk along the yellow brick road. The day was fine. The sky was blue. The birds sang in the trees. Dorothy was happy because she hoped to see her aunt and uncle very soon.

Evening came. Dorothy was tired from her long walk. She decided to have a rest. So she sat down on the green grass by the road. Not far away in the middle of the field she saw a scarecrow.

The Scarecrow looked very funny. There was straw in its body and straw in its head. Its face was a piece of an old shirt. The nose, the mouth and eyes were painted[2] on the shirt. It had a hat on its head and a pair of old shoes on its feet.

Dorothy went up to the Scarecrow and stopped.

"Good day," said the Scarecrow in a very friendly way.[3]

"Oh, can you speak?" asked the little girl in surprise.

"Yes," was the answer, "I can! How do you do?"

"How do you do," Dorothy answered. "I hope you are well?"[4]

---

[1] turned around on her left foot three times — повернулась на левой ноге три раза

[2] were painted — были нарисованы (краской)

[3] in a very friendly way — вполне по-дружески

[4] I hope you are well? — Надеюсь, Вы себя хорошо чувствуете?

"No," answered the Scarecrow, "I am not very well. I don't like to stay here day and night. But I must keep the birds away.[1]"

"Can't you get down?" asked Dorothy.

"I think I can with your help," said the Scarecrow. "Please give me your hand!»

Dorothy gave him her hand and helped the Scarecrow to get down.

"Thank you very much," said the Scarecrow. "I am a new man now. Who are you, little girl? And where are you going?"

"My name is Dorothy," said the little girl. "I am going to the Emerald City. I want to ask the Great Wizard to send me back to Kansas prairie."

«Where is the Emerald City?" asked the Scarecrow, "and who is the Great Wizard?"

"Why! Don't you know the Great Wizard?"[2] Dorothy asked him in surprise. "All the people in the country know him."

"And I don't!" cried the Scarecrow. "You see, the farmers who made me with straw made a mistake. They didn't put brains into my head. I have no brains and people always call me a fool."

"Oh," said Dorothy, "I am very sorry for you!"

"I want to go with you to the Emerald City," said the Scarecrow, "I shall ask the Wizard to give me some brains. Do you think he can do it?"

"I don't know," said Dorothy. "But you may come with me if you like."

"Yes, I shall come with you," said the Scarecrow. "You see, I don't like it when people call me a fool because I have no brains. I have only straw in my head."

"I understand you very well," said the little girl. She was very sorry for the Scarecrow. "Come with me. We shall ask the Great Wizard to give you some brains."

"Thank you," said the Scarecrow, "thank you very much!"

And they walked back to the yellow brick road.

When Toto saw their new comrade, he did not like him. And he showed it. He began to bark.

"Don't be afraid of Toto," said Dorothy. "He never bites."

---

[1] I must keep the birds away — я должен отпугивать птиц

[2] Why! Don't you know the Great Wizard? — Как! Разве ты не знаешь Великого Волшебника?

"Oh, I am not afraid of him," said the Scarecrow. "He can't bite the straw. I am afraid of only one thing."

"What are you afraid of?" asked the little girl. "The farmer who made you?"

"No, I am afraid only of a lighted match,[1]" answered the Scarecrow.

Chapter Five
DOROTHY MEETS THE WOODMAN AND THE LION

They started for the Emerald City. On their way there they met a strange man. His body, his arms and legs were made of tin. His head was made of tin too. In his right hand he had an axe. He was a woodman.

"Where are you going?" the funny man asked them.

"We are going to the Emerald City," answered Dorothy.

"Why are you going there?" asked the Woodman.

"We are going to the Emerald City because we want to see the Great Wizard of Oz," answered the little girl.

"Why do you want to see the Great Wizard?" asked the Tin Woodman.

"I want to ask him to send me back to Kansas prairie," answered Dorothy. "The Scarecrow will ask him to put some brains into his head. You see, only the Great Wizard can do these things."

"May I go with you?" asked the Tin Woodman. "I want to ask the Great Wizard to put a heart into my body. There is no heart in my body. And I can't be happy if I have no heart."

"You may come with us if you like," said the little girl.

Soon Dorothy and her two comrades came to a thick forest. Suddenly they heard a terrible roar. Then they saw a great lion who jumped on the road. With one blow of his paw he sent the Scarecrow to the ground.[2] Then he turned to the Tin Woodman and gave him

[1] a lighted match ['laɪtɪd 'mætʃ] — зажженная спичка

[2] With one blow [blou] of his paw [pɔ:] he sent the Scarecrow to the ground. — Одним ударом лапы он опрокинул на землю Страшилу.

a blow with his paw. The Tin Woodman fell to the ground and lay there. Toto began to bark and the Lion gave him a blow too.

Dorothy was a very brave girl. She ran up to the Lion and gave him a blow on the nose.

"Don't bite my Toto! How can you? You are so big, and he is so small. You are a big coward! Only cowards can be bad to those who are small.[1]"

"Yes, I am a coward," said the Lion. "I know it very well. I am not brave. But what can I do?"

"And why are you a coward?" asked Dorothy.

"I don't know why," answered the Lion. "All the other beasts in the forest think I am very brave. People call the Lion the King of the Beasts. I know that people are afraid of me when I roar. That's why[2] I always roar when I meet people or animals. They all run away from me. They don't know that I am afraid of *them*. And I don't want them to know."

"Do you want to come with us to the Emerald City and see the Great Wizard of Oz?" Dorothy asked him. "I think the Great Wizard can give you courage and make you brave."

"Oh, yes," answered the Lion. "I shall be very glad to go with you to the Emerald City."

So the four comrades started for the Emerald City along the road of yellow brick.

[1] can be bad to those who are small — могут обижать тех, кто меньше их

[2] that's why — вот почему



Chapter Six
DOROTHY TALKS ABOUT OZ, THE WIZARD

After a long walk Dorothy and her friends came to a great green wall. The wall went around the Emerald City. It was high and thick and had only one gate in it. The road of yellow brick ended at the gate.

Dorothy knocked at the gate. It opened slowly and they saw a little man in a green suit. His face was green; his beard and hair were green too. Near him there was a large green box.

When the little man in the green suit saw Dorothy and her comrades he asked:

"Who are you? What do you want in the Emerald City?"

"We want to see the Great Wizard of Oz," said Dorothy.

"Do you think the Great Wizard will see you?[1]" asked the little green man.

"Why not?" asked Dorothy. "Why can't he see us?"

"He sees no men, women or children," answered the little green man.

"Does he never go out for a walk?" asked the Scarecrow.

"Never!" was the answer. "He sits day after day in the great Throne Room and never goes out."

"What is he like?" asked the girl.

"I can't tell you that, I have never seen him," said the green man. "You see, the Great Wizard can change his form when he likes. And he changes it all the time. Some people say he looks like a bird or a cat. Other people say he looks like a monkey. And some say he looks like a beautiful fairy. But we don't know what his right form is!"[2]

"That is very strange, isn't it?" said Dorothy. "But we must see him."

"Why must you see him?" asked the little man.

"I must see him because I want him to give me some brains," said the Scarecrow.

"Oh, it's very easy for him to give you some brains," said the little man. "The Great Wizard has a lot of brains."

"And I want him to give me a heart," said the Tin Woodman.

"That will be easy for him too," said the little man. "He has a large collection of hearts, big and small. He keeps them in a silver box."

"And I shall ask him to give me some courage," said the Cowardly Lion.

"Oh, the Wizard has a big bag of courage in his Throne Room," said the little green man. "He will be glad to give you some courage from the bag."

"And I shall ask him to send me back to Kansas prairie," said Dorothy. "It is my home. My aunt and uncle are waiting for me there."

"I don't know where Kansas prairie is," said the little man. "But I hope the Great Wizard will find Kansas for you. Now I shall take you to him, if you are not afraid. The Wizard of Oz is very

---

[1] will see you — *зд.* примет вас

[2] what his right form is — какова его наружность на самом деле

terrible. But first I shall give you all eye-glasses. You must put them on and wear them all the time."

"Why?" asked Dorothy.

"Because," said the green man, "the Great Wizard has ordered it. All the houses in the Emerald City are made of emeralds. To look at them will be bad for your eyes. All the people who live in the Emerald City and those who come to it must wear eye-glasses night and day. They can't take them off because when they put the eye-glasses on I lock them. The Great Wizard ordered it and you must do what he wants you to do."

He opened his big box. Dorothy saw a lot of green eye-glasses in it.

The man found a pair of glasses for Dorothy and put them over her eyes. Then he locked them at the back of her head with a little key. Then the green man found a pair of glasses for the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman. He even found green glasses for Toto and the Lion.

He locked all of them with his key and said:

"Now let us go to the Great Wizard of Oz!"

And they went after the little green man into the streets of the Emerald City.

Little Dorothy and her friends gave a cry of surprise — so bright and beautiful was the Emerald City. They liked it very much. The houses were made of green emeralds. The window glass was green too. Even the sky over their heads was a little green. There were many people: men, women and children, walking in the streets of the Emerald City. They all wore green clothes. They had beautiful green eyes and green hair. They looked at Dorothy and her friends in surprise, but they did not speak to them. The children were frightened when they saw the Cowardly Lion. They all ran to their mothers. There were no horses, dogs or other animals in the Emerald City. The people looked at Toto in surprise.

There were many shops in the Emerald City. Dorothy saw green sweets and cakes, green shoes and hats, and green clothes in the shops. At one place a man sold green nuts and children gave him green money.

Soon they saw a big and wonderful palace. It stood in the middle of the Emerald City. The walls of the palace were made of green emeralds.

The ruler of the Emerald City, the Great Wizard of Oz lived in that beautiful green palace.

Chapter Seven
THE GREAT WIZARD OF OZ

There was a soldier at the door of the palace, who had a long green beard. His face was green too. And so was his hair.[1] The little man said to the soldier: "These people want to see the Great Wizard."

"Come in," said the Green Soldier. "Wait a little and I shall go to the door of the Throne Room and tell the Wizard that you are waiting for him."

Dorothy and her friends waited for a long time. At last the Green Soldier came back.

"Have you seen the Wizard?" asked Dorothy.

"No, I haven't," said the Green Soldier. "I have never seen him. But I spoke to him through the screen which was between us. The Wizard was behind it. He says that he will see you and do what he can for you. Each of you must come into his room alone. Each day Oz will see only one of you. So you will stay at the Palace for some days. I shall take you to your rooms now. You can rest there."

"Thank you," said Dorothy. "Thank you very much. 'That is very kind of the Great Wizard."

Suddenly a bell rang and a green girl came up to Dorothy.

She said: "That is the signal. You must go into the Throne Room alone."

She opened the door and Dorothy walked into a big round room. Dorothy saw a throne in the room. It was made of green emeralds. In the middle of the throne there was a very, very Big Head. There were no arms, or legs, or body. Only a Head! There was no hair on the Head. But it had eyes, a nose and a mouth.

Dorothy was frightened. The eyes of the Head turned slowly and looked at her. Then the mouth opened and said:

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you, little girl? And what do you want of me?"

Dorothy took courage[2] and answered:

"I am Dorothy, and I want your help. I want you to send me

---

[1] And so was his hair. — И такие же (зеленые) были у него волосы.

[2] Dorothy took courage — Дороти набралась храбрости

home[1] to my Aunt Em and my Uncle Henry. Your country is beautiful, but I want to go home."

The eyes of the Head looked at her for a minute. Then the Head said:

"Where did you get those silver shoes?"

"I got them from the Wicked Witch of the East," said Dorothy. "My house fell on her and killed her. So I took her silver shoes."

Then the Head said again:

"What do you want of me?"

"I want you to send me back to Kansas to my Aunt Em and my Uncle Henry," said Dorothy again. "Your country is very beautiful, but I don't like it. And I know that Aunt Em is unhappy because she doesn't know where I am."

The eyes of the Head opened and closed three times. Then they looked up and down. And after that they looked at Dorothy again. The Wizard said:

"Why do you ask *me* to do it for you?"

"Because you are strong and I am not," said Dorothy. "Because you are the Great Wizard and I am only a poor little girl."

"But you are strong too," said the Wizard. "You killed the Wicked Witch of the East."

"I didn't want to kill her," said Dorothy, "and I didn't kill her. My house did it, it fell on her."

"Well," said the Head. "You ask me to help you. You want me to send you back home. And what will *you* do for me? You must help me first. Help me and then I shall help you."

"But what can I do?" asked Dorothy. "How can I help you?"

"Kill the Wicked Witch of the West," said the Wizard.

"But I cannot do it," poor Dorothy cried out.

"You killed the Wicked Witch of the East and you wear her silver shoes. So you can kill the Wicked Witch of the West too. Kill her and I shall send you back to your aunt and uncle."

The little girl was terribly frightened.

"How can I kill the Wicked Witch of the West? If you, the Great and Terrible Wizard, can't kill her, how can I do it?"

[1] I want you to send me home — я хочу, чтобы Вы отослали меня домой

"I don't know how. But that is my answer. Kill her, then come and tell that you have killed her. Now go! And remember — she is very, very wicked. She is terrible!"

Poor Dorothy went back to the room where her friends were.

"There is no hope for me," said Dorothy. And she repeated the words of the Wizard. Then she went to her room and cried there.

Her friends were very sorry for her, but they did not know how they could help her.

Chapter Eight
THE SCARECROW AND THE TIN WOODMAN TALK TO THE WIZARD

The next morning the Green Soldier took the Scarecrow to the Wizard.

When the Scarecrow came into the Great Throne Room, he saw a Beautiful Girl on the emerald throne. Her dress was green and her long hair was green too.

The Beautiful Girl looked at the Scarecrow and said: "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you, and what do you want of me?"

"I am only a Scarecrow. My body is made of straw. My head is made of straw too, so I have no brains. Please put some brains into my head, — because I don't want to be a fool."

"Why must I do this for you?" asked the Beautiful Girl.

"Because you have a lot of brains," said the Scarecrow. "Only you can help me."

"All right," said the Girl, "I shall help you. But you must help *me* first."

"How can I help you?" asked the Scarecrow.

"Kill the Wicked Witch of the West; then I shall give you a lot of brains," said Oz.

"But you asked Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch of the West," said the Scarecrow.

"That's right, I did," said Oz. "it's all the same to me[1] who

[1] it's all the same to me — Мне все равно

kills her. Come and tell me that you have killed her and I shall do what you want me to do."

The Scarecrow went back to his friends.

"Did you see the Big Head?" asked Dorothy.

"It was a Beautiful Girl, not a Head," said the Scarecrow. And he repeated the words of Oz. His friends were very sorry for him.

The next morning the Green Soldier came for the Woodman.

When the Tin Woodman came into the Great Throne Room he saw a Terrible Beast there. The Beast was very big. It had five long arms and five long legs. There were five eyes in its face. But the Tin Woodman was not afraid of the Beast, he had no heart.

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible," said the Beast in a loud voice. "Who are you, and what do you want of me?"

"I am a Woodman and I have no heart because I am made of tin. Please give me a heart. I want to be a real man."

"Why do you ask me for a heart?" said the Beast.

"Because only you can do it! Please help me," said the Woodman.

"I can give you a heart, but you must help me first," said Oz.

"What must I do?" asked the Woodman.

"Help Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch of the West," answered the Beast. "Then come to me. And I shall give you a big heart."

So the Tin Woodman went back to his friends and repeated the words of the Terrible Beast. And they were very sorry for the poor Woodman.

The Cowardly Lion said:

"Tomorrow I shall go to see the Wizard. If he is in the form of a Beast,[1] I shall roar and frighten him. If he is in the form of a Beautiful Girl I shall jump at her and frighten her. If he is in the form of a Head I shall push it down from the throne. All will be well, my friends."

[1] if he is in the form of a Beast — если он примет облик Зверя



Chapter Nine
"WHAT SHALL WE DO NOW?"

The Cowardly Lion walked into the Throne Room and looked around. He saw a Ball of Fire in front of the throne. The fire was very bright. It was so bright, that the Lion could not look at it. He could not go near it.

Then a voice came from the Ball of Fire. These were the words:

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you and what do you want of me?"

And the Lion answered:

"I am a Cowardly Lion. I am afraid of people and beasts. I ask you to give me some courage. People call me the King of Beasts, so I must be brave."

"Why do you ask *me* for it?" asked Oz.

"Because you are Oz, the Great and Terrible. You, only you, can give me courage," said the Lion.

The voice said:

"Kill the Wicked Witch of the West and I shall give you courage."

The Lion was very angry. But what could he do? He went back to his friends and repeated the Wizard's words.

"What shall we do now?" asked Dorothy.

"There is only one thing we can do,"[1] answered the Lion. "We can go to the West and kill the Wicked Witch of the West."

"But can we do it?" asked Dorothy.

"We *must* do it or I shall never have courage," said the Lion.

"And I shall never have brains," said the Scarecrow.

"And I shall never have a heart," said the Tin Woodman.

"And I shall never see Aunt Em and Uncle Henry," said Dorothy and began to cry.

"I think we *must* do it," said Dorothy after a short time. "The witch is very wicked and she does much harm to people.[2]"

"I shall go with you, Dorothy," said the Lion.

"I shall go too," cried the Scarecrow.

"So shall I," said the Tin Woodman.

Early next morning Dorothy and her friends came up to the gate of the Emerald City.

The Green Soldier unlocked their eye-glasses and put them back in his big box. Then he opened the gate for our friends.

"How can we find the Wicked Witch of the West?" Dorothy asked him.

"Oh, it is very easy," said the Green Soldier. "Go to the West, only to the West. You will find her in the West."

They thanked him and said good-bye. Then they started to walk to the West.

They walked and walked for a long time. "Let us rest a little now," said Dorothy. She and Toto and the Lion lay down on the grass. They closed their eyes and soon they were asleep.[3]

---

[1] There is only one thing we can do. — *зд.* Мы можем сейчас сделать одно-единственное.

[2] she does much harm to people — она причиняет много вреда людям

[3] soon they were asleep — вскоре они заснули

Now, readers, let me tell you that the Wicked Witch of the West had only one eye. But this eye was very strong. It was like a telescope and she could see very far.

So, as she sat down at her door and looked around, she saw Dorothy and her friends. They were very far off, but the Witch could see them and was very angry.

"I don't want strangers in my country," cried the Witch.

She ordered her slaves to come to her. Her slaves were monkeys with big, strong wings.

"Fly to those people. They are strangers, and I don't like strangers in my country," she said. "Kill the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow. Bring the little girl and the Lion here. They will work for me."

The monkeys flew to Dorothy and her friends. Some of the monkeys took the Tin Woodman and flew up into the air. Then they dropped the poor Woodman. He fell on the ground and broke his arms and legs.

Other monkeys took the Scarecrow. They pulled all the straw out of his body and his head. Then they flew into the air and dropped him into a tall tree.

Some of the monkeys were very big. They lifted the Cowardly Lion up and flew away with him. Two monkeys took Dorothy, who had Toto in her arms, and flew with them to the Witch's palace.[1] They brought the Lion and Dorothy to the Witch and then flew away.

Chapter Ten
DOROTHY AT THE WITCH'S PALACE

When the monkeys brought Dorothy to the Wicked Witch of the West she looked down at Dorothy's feet. She was frightened. She saw the silver shoes and she knew that those silver shoes had great magic. Then the Witch looked into the little girl's eyes. They were clear and kind. So the Witch understood that Dorothy did not know that the shoes had magic and could help her.

---

[1] the Witch's ['wɪtʃɪz] palace — дворец колдуньи

So the Witch thought: "I can make her my slave; she doesn't know that the silver shoes have magic. She doesn't know that they can help her!" Then she said to Dorothy:

"Come with me! I shall give you some work to do. You must work very well or I shall make an end of you.[1] I have made an end of the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman."

The Witch took the little girl to the kitchen. She ordered her to clean the kitchen, to wash the floor and the windows. Dorothy did not say a word. She began to work. She was afraid of the Witch.

Many days passed. Poor Dorothy worked hard from morning till night. Every night, when the Witch was asleep, she went to the yard and gave the Lion some food. She took it from the cupboard in the kitchen. The Witch gave the Lion no food because he did not want to work for her. The Lion was very hungry all the time.

Dorothy often cried. When she cried Toto sat at her feet and looked into her face. Neither Dorothy nor Toto could forget their friends, the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow. Where were they now? Dorothy and Toto were very sorry for them. "Shall we ever see them again, Toto?" said Dorothy.

The Wicked Witch wanted very much to get the silver shoes which were on Dorothy's feet. But the little girl took them off only at night or when she took a bath.[2] The Witch did not go to Dorothy's room at night because she was afraid of the dark. And she did not come near when Dorothy took a bath because she was afraid of water. But Dorothy did not know that.

Once Dorothy ran against a bucket of water[3] in the kitchen. She fell down. In her fall one of the silver shoes came off. The Witch took it at once and quickly put it on her foot. The little girl was very angry. She cried to the Witch:

"Give me back my shoe!"

"No, I shall not give it to you. It is not your shoe, it is my shoe now!"

"You are a wicked old woman," cried Dorothy. "You must not take my shoe from me."

"Some day I shall have the other shoe too," said the Witch.

[1] or I shall make an end of you — иначе я разделаюсь с тобой

[2] when she took a bath — когда она мылась

[3] ran against a bucket of water — споткнулась о ведро с водой

Dorothy was very angry now. She picked up the bucket of water and threw the water at the Witch.

At once the wicked woman gave a loud cry. She was frightened. Then suddenly she became smaller. Dorothy looked at her in surprise.

"What are you doing?" cried the Witch. "Don't you see I am melting!"[1]

"I am very sorry," said Dorothy.

She was frightened too. The Witch melted and melted like sugar.

"The water! It will make an end of me. You knew it very well," cried the Witch.

"No, I didn't," answered Dorothy. "How could I know it?"

"Look out! Here I go!"[2] cried the Witch.

With these words she fell to the floor and became a brown dirty mass. Dorothy took another bucket of water and threw it at the mass. Then she saw her silver shoe. She took it quickly and put it on her foot again. Then she ran out into the yard and told the Lion about the end of the Wicked Witch of the West.

[1] Don't you see I am melting! — Разве ты не видишь, я таю!

[2] Look out! Here I go! — Осторожней! Я умираю!



Chapter Eleven
"A FRIEND IN NEED IS A FRIEND INDEED"[1]

"First of all,"[2] said Dorothy, "we must find our friends — the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow."

"Yes, let us find them," said the Lion.

Dorothy asked some monkeys with wings to help her to find her comrades. They were glad to help Dorothy. They remembered the place where they dropped the Tin Woodman very well. So they flew there and soon found him.

The monkeys brought the Tin Woodman to the palace. Many

[1] "A Friend in Need Is a Friend Indeed." — *посл.* «Друзья познаются в беде».

[2] first of all — прежде всего

smiths worked for three days and four nights on his legs and arms. At last[1] the Woodman could walk again. Dorothy and the Lion were very happy. The Tin Woodman was happy too, because he was with his dear friends.

Now they wanted to find the Scarecrow. That was not so easy. They walked all that day and the next day. Then they saw a tall tree, and the Scarecrow in it. The Tin Woodman began to cut the tree. Soon the tree fell down. The Scarecrow fell down too.

They lifted him up and carried him back to the palace. They put nice clean straw into his body and he jumped to his feet. He thanked his dear friends.

"Now," said Dorothy, "we must go back to the Wizard of Oz."

"Yes," said the Tin Woodman, "let us go back to the Emerald palace. I hope I shall get my heart now."

"And I shall get my brains," said the Scarecrow.

"And I shall get my courage," said the Cowardly Lion.

"And I shall go back to Kansas," cried Dorothy. "Oh, let us start for the Emerald City at once!"

And they did.[2] They walked and walked and walked. Many days passed before our four friends saw the green walls of the Emerald City.

They were very happy to be back in the Throne Room of the Great Wizard. There were no people in the room. They waited and waited. At last they heard a voice. It said:

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. What do you want of me?"

They looked in every corner of the Throne Room, but they did not see the Wizard there. At last Dorothy asked:

"Where are you, Great Wizard?"

"I am here," said the Voice, "but you can't see me."

Then Dorothy said again:

"Now you must do what you promised us."

"What did I promise you?" asked Oz.

"You promised to send me back to Kansas," said the little girl.

"And you promised to give me brains," said the Scarecrow.

"And you promised to give me a heart," said the Tin Woodman.

"And you promised to give me courage," said the Cowardly Lion.

[1] at last — наконец

[2] And they did. — *зд.* И они отправились.

"But what about the Wicked Witch of the West?"[1] asked the Voice. "What happened to her?"

"The Witch melted," said Dorothy. "I threw a bucket of water at her, and she melted."

"Oh, she melted, you say that she melted?" said the Voice. "Well, come tomorrow morning. I must have time to think it over,[2]" said the Wizards.

"You had a lot of time to think it over," said the Tin Woodman. He was very angry.

"We don't want to wait, you must do it at once," said the Scarecrow.

"Yes, you must do it now," cried Dorothy.

And the Cowardly Lion roared. He wanted to frighten the Wizard. But he frightened little Toto. The little dog ran away. He ran against the screen that stood in a corner. The screen fell down. And what did they all see? They saw... Read the next chapter and you will know what our friends saw.

Chapter Twelve
THE WIZARD'S STORY

Behind the screen they saw a little old man. He was terribly frightened.

"Who are you?" Dorothy cried out.

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible," said the little old man in a small voice.[3] "Don't kill me — please! Don't kill me! I shall do all you want me to do!".

The friends looked at him in great surprise. They did not know what to say.

"I saw Oz in the form of a Great Head," said Dorothy.

"I saw Oz in the form of a Beautiful Girl," said the Scarecrow.

"I saw Oz in the form of a Terrible Beast," cried the Woodman.

[1] But what about the Wicked Witch of the West? — А как со Злой Колдуньей Западной страны?

[2] to think it over — чтобы обдумать это

[3] in a small voice — тоненьким голосом

"And I saw Oz in the form of a Ball of Fire," said the Lion.

"No," said the little old man, "you are all wrong.[1] I fooled you all the time."

"Fooled?" cried Dorothy. "Are you *not* a great Wizard?"

"No, I am not," said the old man. "It is my secret. I am not a Wizard, I am a poor old man."

"You are a humbug," cried the Scarecrow.

"Yes, I *am*. I *am* a humbug."

"But this is terrible," said the Tin Woodman. "How shall I get my heart?"

"How shall I get my courage?" asked the Lion.

"And how shall I get my brains?" cried the Scarecrow.

"My dear friends," said Oz, "please don't think about those little things! Think about me and help me!"

"Who knows here that you are a humbug?" asked Dorothy.

"Only you four," answered Oz. "For many years I fooled all the people of the Land of Oz. They never see me and they think that I am great and terrible!"

"Tell us, please," said Dorothy. "How could you take the form of a Great Head?"

"That was one of my tricks," answered Oz. "come this way,[2] please, and I shall show you."

He took them to a small room behind the Throne Room. In a corner they saw the Great Head. It was made of thick paper.

"When you came to see me," the Wizard said to Dorothy, "I stood behind the screen and pulled a thread. So the eyes and the mouth opened and closed. Here are some other things!"

He showed this Scarecrow the dress and the mask of the Beautiful Girl. And he showed the Tin Woodman a lot of skins and said: "I made my Terrible Beast out of these skins. And my Ball of Fire was made of cotton and it burned brightly. And now I ask all of you to sit down. I am going to tell you my story."

And the Wizard began: "I was born[3] in a small town near Kansas. One day a man from a circus showed me some tricks. I began to work at a circus. I became a balloonist."

[1] you are all wrong — вы все ошибаетесь

[2] come this way — пройдите сюда

[3] I was born — я родился

"What is that?" asked Dorothy.

"A balloonist is a man who goes in a balloon high up in the sky. Every day I went in a balloon high up in the sky. It was my work at the circus, to go up in a balloon and do tricks."

"What for?" asked Dorothy.

"People saw my balloon and bought tickets to see the other interesting things in the circus," answered Oz.

"Oh," said the girl. "I understand."

"Well," continued the Wizard, "one evening I went up in my balloon. It was windy. And the wind carried the balloon very, very far away. On the morning of the second day I looked down and saw a strange and beautiful country. Soon the balloon came down. I saw a lot of people. Men, women and children ran up to me. 'Look, a great Wizard has fallen out of the sky!' they all cried. I didn't tell them that it was a mistake. I let them think[1] that I *was* a Wizard. They were afraid of me and were ready to do all I wanted them to do."

Chapter Thirteen
THE OLD HUMBUG

"Go on, go on with your story," said Dorothy. "How did you become the Great Wizard?"

"I told them to build this city and my palace," the old man went on. "The good people did all I wanted them to do. And, they did it all very well. The country was green and beautiful. I liked it very much. I called this new city 'The Emerald City'. I told the people to wear green eye-glasses. From that time on[2] all was green for them."

"But isn't all around here green?" asked Dorothy.

"No, it isn't," answered the Wizard with a laugh. "Only the wall is green. But the good people think that they live in the emerald city. They think that my palace is made of emeralds, but it is made of glass. It was built many, many years ago. I was very young when

[1] I let them think — я позволил им думать

[2] from that time on — с этого времени

the balloon brought me here. And I am an old man now. I don't want to be a humbug now. I want to go home. All this time the people liked me and were happy. But I was not happy here. I was always afraid of the Witches of the East and the West. They were very wicked and they could kill me very easily. It was a very happy day for me when your house fell on the Wicked Witch of the East and killed her. But there was another Wicked Witch, the Witch of the West. I was afraid of her. So when you came, I told you to kill the Wicked Witch of the West. I was ready to promise to do all you wanted me to do. But, dear friends, I am very sorry. I can't do what I promised you to do. Please, don't be angry with me!"

"I think that you are a very bad man," said Dorothy.

"Oh, no, my dear," said the old man, "I am not a bad man, but I am a bad Wizard."

"But, this is terrible," said the Tin Woodman. "Who will give me a heart?"

"Who will give me some brains?" said the Scarecrow.

"Who will give me some courage?" asked the Cowardly Lion.

"And how can I get back to Kansas?" said Dorothy.

"My dear friends," said the little man, "I must think about all that. During all these years I learned magic. I shall try to give brains to the Scarecrow, courage to the Lion and a heart to the Tin Woodman. And I shall try to send you, my brave little girl, back to Kansas prairie. Come tomorrow morning and we shall see. Only don't tell my people that I am a humbug."

They promised him to keep his secret[1] and went back to their rooms. They were happy again because they were full of hopes now.

[1] to keep his secret — хранить его тайну



Chapter Fourteen
THE WIZARD HELPS THE FOUR FRIENDS

Next morning the Scarecrow got up very early. He said to his friends: "I am going to the Great Wizard. At last I shall have brains in my head, not straw."

"I know you have no brains, but I like you as you are, [1]" said Dorothy.

"You are very kind, dear Dorothy," said the Scarecrow, "but I want so much to be clever."

Then he said good-bye to his friends and went to the Throne Room.

There he knocked at the door.

[1] I like you as you are — ты мне и так нравишься

"Come in!" said Oz.

The Scarecrow found the little man in the small room behind the Throne Room.

"I have come to get my brains," he said. "You promised to put brains into my head."

"Oh, yes," said the Wizard, "I remember it very well. I am very sorry, but I must take your head off and put some brains into it."

"That's all right," said the Scarecrow. "Take it off!"

So the old man took the Scarecrow's head off and pulled the straw out of it. He put a lot of pins into the straw. He filled the head with all that. Then he put the head back on the Scarecrow's shoulders and said to him:

"Now you will be a great man. You have a lot of brains."

"Thank you very much," said the Scarecrow. "I think I am already wise[1] with my new brains."

He went back to his friends.

"Look how wise I am now!" he said.

"Yes, your head is very big now," said Dorothy. "But why are there so many pins in it?"

"Because my brains are now very sharp,[2]" answered the Scarecrow.

"Now I must go to the Wizard and get my heart," said the Tin Woodman. He went to the door of the Throne Room and knocked at it.

"Come in," said Oz. The Tin Woodman went into the Throne Room and said:

"You promised to give me a heart. I have come to get it."

"Very well," said the Wizard. "But I must cut a small hole in your breast[3] first. Then I shall put a heart in it."

"All right," said the Tin Woodman, "do it please."

So the Wizard cut a small hole in the left side of the Woodman's breast. Then he went to a cupboard and took out of it a small box. Out of the box he took a small heart. It was made of red silk.

[1] wise [waɪz] — мудрый

[2] my brains are now very sharp [ʃɑːp] — теперь у меня очень острый ум

[3] in your breast [brest] — в твоей груди

"It is a very beautiful heart, isn't it?" said Oz.

"Yes, it is!" said the Tin Woodman. "But is it a kind heart?"

"Oh, yes, it is, it's a very kind heart!" answered Oz.

The Tin Woodman thanked the Wizard many times. He was happy.

"I like this heart very much," he said. "And I shall never forget your help! Thank you very, very much!"

"That's all right," answered the Wizard.

The Woodman ran back to his friends.

The Cowardly Lion now went to the Throne Room and knocked at the door.

"Come in!" said the Wizard.

"I have come to get my courage," said the Lion.

"Very well," said the old man. "You will have it!"

He went to his cupboard and took out a green cup. It was a very beautiful cup. There was some red wine in it. The Wizard gave it to the Lion.

"Drink it," said Oz.

"What is it?" asked the Lion.

"You must drink it," said Oz. "It is courage. Courage must be *in* you! Do you understand? Drink it quickly."

The Lion took the cup and quickly drank from it.

"How are you now?"[1] asked Oz.

"Oh, I am fine!" answered the Lion. "I have a lot of courage! I am full of courage.[2] Thank you very, very much!"

And the happy Lion went to his friends.

Oz laughed very much when he thought of the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Cowardly Lion.

"How funny they are! I am glad I have made them happy," he thought. "I told them that I'm a bad Wizard, but they don't believe me and ask me to do things that I can't do. So *they* make a humbug of me!"

Then he thought of Dorothy.

"It was easy to make her three friends happy. But how can I help her? How can I take the poor child back to Kansas? I'm afraid I can't do it!"

---

[1] How are you now? — Ну, как теперь?

[2] full of courage — преисполнен храбрости

Chapter Fifteen
THE WIZARD WANTS TO HELP DOROTHY

Three days passed and Dorothy did not see Oz. And she did not know what to do. Her friends were very happy. The Scarecrow talked about the wonderful ideas in his head. The Tin Woodman walked round with his hand on his new heart. And the Lion said that he was very brave now.

But Dorothy was unhappy because she wanted to get home so much.

On the fourth day Oz sent for her. She ran to the Throne Room at once.

"Sit down, my dear," said Oz. "I think I know how to take you back home to Kansas."

"How?" asked Dorothy.

"Well, let me tell you what I think," said the little man. "You see,[1] when I came to this country, I came in a balloon. You came here through the air too. So I think the best way to get back to Kansas is through the air.[2] I can't make a cyclone. But I think I can make a balloon."

"How?" asked Dorothy.

"I shall make it out of silk," said the Wizard. "And then we must have hot air. Hot air is not so good as gas. But there is no gas in all the country. Hot air becomes cold very quickly, and then the balloon falls. But we have to try hot air."

"We?" cried the girl, "do you want to go with me?"

"Yes," answered Oz. "I am not going to stay here. I don't like to fool the good people of this country. I am afraid to go out of my rooms. I am afraid that some day they will know all about me. I must go away from this country, so I shall go with you to Kansas. I can work for a circus again."

"I am very glad to hear that you are going with me," said Dorothy. "I shall be very happy to have you with me."

"Thank you," he answered. "And now let us begin to work. You must help me to make the balloon."

---

[1] you see — видите ли

[2] the best way to get back to Kansas is through the air — *зд.* лучше всего вернуться в Канзас по воздуху

They began to make a balloon out of silk. They worked and worked and in three days the balloon was ready.

The green soldier brought a big basket, and the old man tied it to the balloon.

When all was ready, the green soldier said to the people:

"The Great Oz is going to see his brother-wizard,[1] who lives in the air. He will say good-bye to you."

The Tin Woodman made a big fire in front of the palace. Oz held the balloon over the fire. Soon the balloon was full of hot air. The Wizard got into the basket and said to the people:

"I am now going away to visit my brother who lives in the sky. In my absence[2] the Scarecrow will rule the Emerald City. He is very clever now, so you must do what he tells you to do. I know he will be a very good ruler, so you must obey him and like him."

Then he said to Dorothy: "Come, Dorothy! Quick, quick! Or the balloon will rise!"

"I can't find Toto," cried the little girl. "I don't want to leave him here!"

At last she found her dear friend Toto. She took him in her arms and ran to the balloon. Oz put his hand to help her to get into the basket, but at that moment the balloon suddenly rose into the air.[3] Poor Dorothy cried: "Come back, I want to go too."

"I can't come back, my dear," cried Oz from the basket. "Good-bye!"

"Good-bye!" cried the good people of the Emerald City. "Good-bye, Oz, good-bye! You were our good friend. You have built this beautiful Emerald City for us. We shall always remember you!"

Oz never came back, but the people always remembered him and loved him. They said: "Oz was always our friend. When he was here he built this wonderful Emerald City for us, and we were always happy with him!"

---

[1] is going to see his brother-wizard — отправляется навестить своего брата-волшебника

[2] in my absence — во время моего отсутствия

[3] the balloon suddenly rose into the air — *зд.* воздушный шар внезапно взлетел в воздух

Chapter Sixteen
DOROTHY IS UNHAPPY

Poor Dorothy cried all the time. And her friends were very sorry for her. The Tin Woodman cried a little too.

"Now I shall never see my Aunt Em and my Uncle Henry," she said to her friends one day.

They were all in the Throne Room. The Scarecrow was now the ruler of the Emerald City. He sat on the big throne and his comrades stood before him.

"Dear Dorothy," said the Scarecrow, "we all like this beautiful Emerald City. It is nice to live here, isn't it? Don't think about your Kansas, then we can all be happy here."

"But I don't want to live here," cried Dorothy. "I want to go back to Kansas and live with Aunt Em and Uncle Henry."

"But what can we do, how can we help you?" asked the Tin Woodman.

"I must think about it," said the Scarecrow. He thought and thought. Then he said: "Let us call the Green Soldier and ask him to help us."

So they called the Green Soldier.

"This little girl," the Scarecrow said to him, "wants to go back to Kansas. How can she do it?"

"Only Ozma[1] can help her," answered the Green Soldier.

"Who is Ozma?" said Dorothy.

"Ozma is the Good Witch of the South. She is the ruler of the Land of Oz. I know she will help you, she is very kind."

"How shall I find her?" asked Dorothy.

"You must go to the South," answered the Green Soldier. "It's very easy to find her palace. But the way there is full of dangers." With these words the soldier left the room.

The Scarecrow thought hard.[2] He thought and thought. Then he said: "The best thing for Dorothy is to go[3] to Ozma and ask her for help."

---

[1] Ozma ['ɔzmə] — Озма

[2] The Scarecrow thought hard. — Страшила напряженно думал.

[3] the best thing for Dorothy is to go — самое лучшее для Дороти — это пойти

"Yes, I shall go to the Country of the South," said Dorothy. "I can't stay here."

"I shall go with Dorothy," said the Lion. "I don't want to stay in this city. I want to help Dorothy. I am not cowardly now."

"Well," said the Tin Woodman. "I shall go with Dorothy too. I have a big kind heart. It tells me that I must not leave Dorothy when she wants help."

"When shall we start?" asked the Scarecrow.

"Are you going too?" they asked.

"Yes, I am!" said the Scarecrow. "Dorothy helped me to get my wonderful brains. How can I leave her now when she wants help?"

"Thank you all, my dear friends," said Dorothy. "You are very kind to me. I want to start at once!"[1]

"We shall start tomorrow morning," said the Scarecrow.

Early next morning the Green Soldier unlocked their eye-glasses.

Then he opened the gate for them. Our friends started on their way.[2]

They were happy. Dorothy hoped to get home, and her friends were glad that they could help her.

It was a very long way to the Country of the South, and they met with many dangers. They walked through dark forests full of beasts. They went up high mountains. Wicked giants tried to kill them. But each time their love for one another[3] helped them.

At last they came to a rich and happy country. It was the Country of the South.

They saw green fields, beautiful rivers, small houses and nice gardens full of fruit. At last they came to a very beautiful palace. It was Ozma's palace. Three beautiful young girl-soldiers stood before the gate. One of them came up to Dorothy and asked: "Where do you come from?[4] What do you want here?"

"We have come to see Ozma, the Good Witch of the South, who rules the Land of Oz," said Dorothy. "Please, take us to her!"

---

[1] at once — немедленно

[2] started on their way — отправились в путь

[3] for one another — друг к другу

[4] Where do you come from? — Откуда ты?

"What is your name?" asked one of the girl-soldiers. "We shall go to Ozma and tell her about you."

Dorothy told them her name. The girl-soldier went into the palace.

When she came back she said to Dorothy: "Ozma asks you to come in."

The girl-soldier took our friends to a big Throne Room where they saw Ozma on a beautiful throne.



Chapter Seventeen
OZMA HELPS DOROTHY

Ozma was young and beautiful. She had a white dress on. It was made of silk. She looked at Dorothy with her beautiful blue eyes and said:

"What can I do for you, child?"[1]

Dorothy told the Good Witch her story.

"Now," she said, "I want to go back to Kansas prairie to Aunt Em and Uncle Henry. My aunt is waiting for me and I love her very much! She thinks that some terrible thing has happened to me, and she is unhappy."

[1] What can I do for you, child? — *зд.* Чем я могу быть тебе полезна, дитя?

"I hope," said Ozma, "that I can help you, dear child. I can tell you how to get back to Kansas."

"You are good[1] and beautiful," cried Dorothy. "I shall be happy to go home. Please, please, tell me how to get back to Kansas."

"Your silver shoes will carry you there. I see that you don't know their magic," said Ozma.

"Oh, they are magic shoes!" said Dorothy. "Now I understand why the Wicked Witch of the West wanted so much to take them from me. She knew their magic," cried Dorothy. "But what must I do?"

"You must turn round on your left foot three times and say: 'I want to get back to Kansas!' That's all," said the Fairy.

"Oh," cried Dorothy, "how easy it is! I want very, very much to go home. But now I am glad that I didn't go home before. I have found good friends. I have seen many new and beautiful countries. But you know, East or West home is best.[2] But I want to know what my dear friends, the Lion, the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman want to do."

"Let us ask them," said Ozma. "Tell us, Scarecrow, what are you going to do?"

"I shall go back to the Emerald City," said the Scarecrow. "Oz made me the ruler of the Emerald City and the people like me."

Then Ozma asked the Tin Woodman and the Lion what they wanted to do.

"We don't want to leave our friend, the Scarecrow," they answered. "We want to go back to the Emerald City with him."

"I am glad that you all like the Emerald City," said Ozma. "It will be the capital of the Land of Oz from now on."

"But shall I be the ruler of the Emerald City?" asked the Scarecrow.

"Yes, certainly," said Ozma, "and you and your friends will live in the Emerald Palace."

"Dear Ozma," said Dorothy. "I know now that my friends will be happy here. May I go back to Kansas now?"

"Yes, my dear! Turn on your left foot three times and then tell the shoes to carry you home."

[1] you are good — Вы добры

[2] East or West home is best. — *посл.* «В гостях хорошо, а дома лучше».

Dorothy thanked the Good Fairy, took Toto in her arms, and said good-bye to the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion. She was sorry to leave her friends. Then Ozma said: "Come again to the Emerald City, dear Dorothy. My birthday is a great holiday in the Land of Oz. I shall be glad to see you in my palace on that day."

"Oh, Dorothy, you must come, you must come!" cried the girl's friends.

"Yes, yes," answered Dorothy. With Toto in her arms she turned on her left foot three times and said to the silver shoes:

"Take me home to Aunt Em!"

***

"Where am I?" said Dorothy. She saw the great Kansas prairie. And in front of her she saw Uncle Henry's new farm house.

Aunt Em saw Dorothy and ran out of the house.

"My dear child!" she cried and took the girl in her arms.[1] "Where have you been all this time?[2] Where did you come from?"

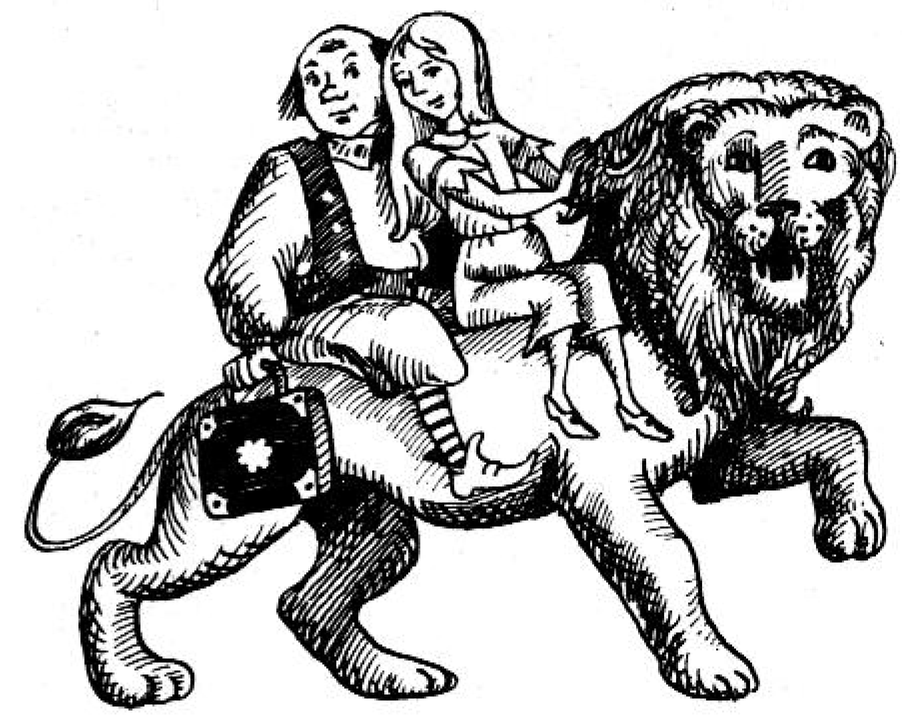
"From the Land of Oz," said Dorothy. "And here is Toto too. And oh, Aunt Em! I am so glad to be at home again!"

---

[1] took the girl in her arms — заключила девочку в объятия

[2] Where have you been [bi:n] all this time? — *зд.* Где ты пропадала столько времени?

Part Two





Chapter One
BINI ARU AND HIS SON KIKI ARU[1]

Well, dear readers, you now know a lot about the Land of Oz and its capital — the Emerald City. And you know that there are very many countries in the Land of Oz.

In one of these countries, the Munchkin Country, there lived an old man.[2] His name was Bini Aru.

This man had a secret. He knew a magic word. This word could change you into an animal, a bird, a flower, a stone. And it could change you back[3] into your real form.

[1] Bini Aru ['bɪnɪ 'ɑ:ru:], Kiki Aru ['kɪkɪ 'ɑ:ru:]

[2] there lived an old man — жил-был старик

[3] it could change you back — оно могло вернуть вас снова

It was a very easy thing to do if you knew how to say the word. The word was *Pyrzqxgl.*

Can you, readers, say the word? I'm afraid you can't. But Bini Aru knew how to say it.

Usually when Bini Aru went far away from home and was hungry, he said: "I want to become a sheep: *Pyrzqxgl!*" He became a sheep at once. And he ate a lot of grass. Then the sheep said: "I want to be Bini Aru again. *Pyrzqxgl!*" and the magic changed the sheep back into an old man.

Now Bini Aru was afraid to forget the magic word. So he decided to write it in some secret place.[1] That was a clever idea. But where could he find a secret place? He thought and thought and at last he decided to find it in his house, in his room.

Bini Aru had a son. His son's name was Kiki. Kiki's father told him that he must not come into his room. But Kiki was a wicked boy. Once, when his father was not at home, Kiki opened the door of his father's room and went in.

As he came into the room, he stumbled over one of the floor boards.[2] He did not find any interesting things[3] in his father's room. As he went back to the door he stumbled again over that floor board.

He looked at the board for a long time. "That's strange," he thought. "Why did I stumble over that board for a second time?"

Kiki took the board out, and saw some writing on the back of it.[4] The writing told him how to read and say the magic word *Pyrzqxgl.* Now he knew that the word could change you into a bird or an animal. If you repeated the word again it could change you back into your real form: into a boy, girl, man or woman.

Now Kiki knew his father's secret. He took a piece of paper and made a copy of the writing.[5] Then he put the board back in its place.

[1] secret place — тайник

[2] floor boards — половицы

[3] did not find any interesting things — не нашел ничего интересного

[4] saw some writing on the back of it — увидел на обратной стороне (доски) какую-то надпись

[5] made a copy of the writing — переписал эту надпись

"Father must not know that I have his secret," thought the wicked boy.

He went into the garden and sat down under a tree. "I always wanted to go away from this country and visit the big world," he thought. "Now I can change my form and be a bird. Then I can fly and see the big world. And I can fly away from this country which I hate so much. But first I must learn the magic word and remember it. I don't want to be always a bird."

So he learned the word by heart,[1] repeated it a hundred times.

"Now I shall not forget the word," he thought. "And I must find the place for this paper in a secret place."

So he put it into a tin box and put the box in a corner of the garden under a big stone.

He decided to become a bird at once. So he stood in front of the house and said: "I want to become a big strong bird. I want to become a hawk! *Pyrzqxgl!*" And at once he became a grey hawk.

Chapter Two
KIKI WANTS TO BE VERY WICKED

Slowly Kiki rose into the air and flew away into a new world.

He flew for a long time. He flew from one country to another and from one city to another.

It was late now and Kiki was very tired. He decided to rest a little in a tree. From his tree he could see a big inn.

"What kind of food do hawks eat?" he thought. "And where can I get it? Do hawks sleep in trees? But I don't want to sleep in a tree. I want a bed, not a tree."

So he flew down to the ground and said: "I want to become Kiki Aru again: *Pyrzqxgl!*"

At once he became a boy. He went to the inn and asked the innkeeper to give him a good supper and a bed.

[1] he learned... by heart — выучил... наизусть

"Have you any money?" asked the innkeeper. "If you have no money you must go away at once."

Kiki had no money, so he could not stay at the hotel. The boy did not know what to do. He stood for a long time in the yard of the inn. Suddenly through an open window Kiki saw a big room with a table in the middle of it. There was a lot of gold pieces on the table. An old man went up to the table and began to count the money.

"For one of those gold pieces I can get supper and a bed," thought Kiki. So he changed his form and became a hawk again. The hawk flew into the room through the open window, caught up one of the gold pieces in its beak[1] and flew out again. The old man could not catch it.

Kiki flew into a tree and dropped the gold piece to the ground. Then he became a boy again. He picked up the gold piece from the ground and put it in his pocket.

"You will be sorry for that!"[2] cried a small voice[3] over his head.

Kiki looked up and saw a little bird in the tree.

"Sorry for what?" he asked.

"Oh, I saw gold pieces too," said the little bird. "You took one gold piece from the table and flew away. Then you changed back into a boy. That's magic and magic is wicked. And to steal money is very, very wicked. You will be sorry one day."

"Well, all right, I am wicked," said Kiki. "I am glad of it. I always wanted to be wicked. But I didn't know how to do it."

"Haw, haw, haw!" Kiki heard a big voice behind him. "Very good, my boy! I'm glad I have met you!"

The little bird was frightened and flew away. Do you want to know who laughed behind Kiki?

Read the next chapter and you will find the answer.

[1] caught up one of the gold pieces in its beak — подхватил клювом одну золотую монету

[2] You will be sorry for that. — Ты пожалеешь об этом.

[3] a small voice — тоненький голосок

Chapter Three
KIKI MEETS A STRANGE MAN

Kiki turned around and saw a strange old man. He had a fat, big body and very thin legs and arms. He had a big round face. His white beard was very long. Kiki saw that the pockets of his clothes were very big. They were full of jewels.

"Who are you?" asked Kiki.

"I was once King in the Nome Country[1] in the Land of Oz," said the strange old man. "But the people of Oz kicked me out of my country. Now I have no home and I must go from place to place."

"Why did they kick you out?" asked the boy.

"Well, in our time it happens very often," answered the King of Nomes. "People just come and kick their kings out of their countries. I thought I was a very good King. But those bad Oz people kicked me out of the country. I don't want to talk about it. Let's talk about other things. Who are you, boy? And where do you live?"

"My name is Kiki Aru," said the boy. "I lived in the Munchkin Country in the Land of Oz. Now I go from place to place like you."

The King looked at the boy for some time.

"Well," he said at last, "I know from the bird that you changed into a hawk and back again into your real form. Is that true?"

Kiki thought a little. "I must not be afraid of that Nome King. I shall tell him the truth," he decided at last.

"Yes," he said. "That is true."

"Then you are a Wizard," said the King. "That's very good! I had some very good magic tools, but my enemies, the Oz people, took them all away from me. And where are you going now?"

"I am going to the inn to get supper and bed," said Kiki.

"Have you the money for it?" asked the Nome.

"Yes," Kiki answered, "I have one gold piece."

"Which you stole," laughed the Nome. "Very good. And you are glad that you are wicked. I like you, young man. I shall go to the inn with you."

When they came into the inn, the innkeeper looked at Kiki

---

[1] I was once King in the Nome Country — когда-то я был королем страны Номов

very angrily, and said: "Why did you come again? You have no money for your supper and a bed."

Kiki showed the master his gold piece. Then the innkeeper turned to the Nome and asked him: "And how about you?[1] Have you the money for your supper and a bed?"

"I have some other good things," said the old man, "I shall show them to you."

He took out a bag from one of his pockets and threw a lot of jewels on the table. The innkeeper and Kiki looked at the jewels in surprise. Neither the man nor Kiki knew what to say.

Then the innkeeper ran to the kitchen to make a good supper for the Nome and Kiki.

"Where did you get so many jewels?" asked Kiki.

"Well, I can tell you all about it," said the Nome King. "When those wicked people of the Land of Oz were going to kick me out, they said: 'Take as many jewels as you can carry[2] and go away from the country.' So I made many pockets in my clothes and put a lot of jewels into those pockets. It is very nice to have jewels. For them you can get all you want!"

"Oh, don't speak so loud," said Kiki and looked around.

After supper the Nome King said to Kiki: "I hate all the Oz people. And I hate Ozma, Dorothy and her friends, the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman, the Cowardly Lion and the Wizard of Oz. And I wanted them to be unhappy. But I didn't know how to do it. Now with your help, I think I can do it. Will you help me to conquer the Land of Oz? I shall give you a lot of my jewels. You can have some fine big diamonds, rubies or emeralds."

"He wants to know my secret," thought the boy. "But I don't want him to know it, I shall not tell him my secret."

And Kiki said: "No."

"Then take all my jewels," said the Nome King.

"No, no, no," cried Kiki.

Now the Nome King was angry.

"Then," he said, "I shall tell the innkeeper that you stole that gold piece."

---

[1] And how about you? — А у Вас как?

[2] as many jewels as you can carry — столько драгоценностей, сколько сможешь унести

Kiki laughed at these words.

"Oh," he said, "I am not afraid. I can change into a lion and eat him up. Of I shall become a bird and fly away, and he will not catch me."

"Can you really do this?" asked the old man.

"Of course, I can," answered Kiki. "I can change you into a tree or a stone in a moment, and leave you here by the road."

Kiki's words frightened the wicked old man. But he wanted so much to know Kiki's secret! So he said: "I know what I can do. I can make you King of Oz. Tell me your secret and help me to conquer the Land of Oz. The Oz people are my enemies. I want to make them unhappy. I shall change them into trees or stones. When I have conquered the Oz people I shall go away to my country. You will never see me again. And from that day on you will be King of the Land of Oz and rule the country!"

"I shall think about it," said Kiki. "I don't want to talk about it!"

Chapter Four
THE NOME'S PLANS

Next morning the old man said to Kiki: "If you want to help me to conquer the Oz people, we must start for the Land of Oz. That is a very long way."

"Oh, that's all right," answered Kiki. "I shall change form into a bird, and I shall be there in an hour."

"Then change me into a bird too," said the Nome, "and I shall fly with you to the Land of Oz."

"He is right," thought Kiki. "We can fly to the Land of Oz. I think I shall really be King of the Land of Oz."

And this is what the Nome thought: "The boy has a wonderful secret. But he doesn't want to tell me his secret. Of course, he is silly. He thinks he can become King of the Land of Oz. So I hope he will help me to conquer my enemies."

Then the old man said aloud: "Listen to me, boy! I shall tell you my plan. Let us fly to Oz in the form of birds. We shall fly to the big forests there. These forests are full of beasts. We shall

promise them to change all the beasts into men and women. And we shall ask them to help us to conquer the people of Oz. After that we shall give them the houses and all the good things of the Oz people."

"And what will happen then?" asked Kiki.

"Then," went on the Nome King, "we shall change all the people of Oz back into beasts and send them to live in the forests. That is a very good and easy plan, isn't it? I think that all the beasts in the Land of Oz will like my plan."

Kiki Aru did not know much about the Land of Oz. He did not know much about the beasts that lived in the forests of that country. He liked the old Nome's plan. But he was not going to tell him the magic word.

"He doesn't know my secret," he thought, "so he can do me no harm now. I shall become the ruler of Oz. Then I shall change him into a stone, and he will do me no harm then," thought the bad boy.

"I shall know Kiki's secret," the wicked Nome thought, "I shall change the boy into paper and burn him up."

Wicked people are always like this.[1] They try to harm one another. 'The Nome wanted to do harm to Kiki, and Kiki wanted to do harm to the Nome.

"It is a long way[2] to the Land of Oz," said the boy. "And it is very hot now. Let us wait. In the evening it will not be so hot and we shall fly then."

"All right," said the Nome. "Let us wait."

When evening came they went out into the yard and stopped under a big tree.

"Stay here for a few minutes," said Kiki. "I shall soon be back." He walked quickly away.

"Where is he going?" thought the Nome King, but he stood in his place.

Suddenly his form began to change. In a moment he became a great eagle. He was frightened. But then he saw another eagle, who was large and strong too.

---

[1] Wicked people are always like this. — Злые люди всегда так поступают.

[2] it is a long way — далеко

"Now we are ready to start," said the other eagle in Kiki's voice.

"I see now that the boy is not so silly," thought the Nome. "He is clever. He doesn't want me to hear his magic word."

And the two eagles flew high up in the air.



Chapter Five
BIRTHDAY PRESENTS FOR OZMA

Or course, dear readers, you remember Dorothy, the little girl from the great Kansas prairie. And I hope you remember her dear friend Ozma, the ruler of the Land of Oz.

Dorothy often came to the Emerald City to visit Ozma and to see her other dear friends: the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman, the Cowardly Lion and the Wizard of Oz. You remember that he wanted to fly away in a balloon. Well, the balloon fell down not far from the Emerald City and the Wizard came back. But he was not very sorry. He decided to study magic, because he did not want to be a humbug. Ozma gave him three rooms in her palace and he studied magic there. Now he really knew some magic.

One morning Dorothy took a walk in Ozma's beautiful garden.

"What can I give Ozma for her birthday?" Dorothy thought.

Suddenly Dorothy saw the Tin Woodman in the garden.

"What will you give Ozma for her birthday?" she asked.

"It's a secret," answered the Tin Woodman. "But I can tell you. I have a song for her. I can tell you the words with which the song begins. Listen!

"I am crazy,[1]
You are a daisy,[2]
Ozma dear!

You are a nice and beautiful fairy.
May your birthdays all be happy,[3]
Ozma dear!"

"Well, how do you like it, Dorothy?" asked the Tin Woodman.

"Is it good poetry?" asked Dorothy. She did not like the song.

"Of course, it is!" said the Tin Woodman. "I shall call it like this: 'When Ozma has a birthday we are all happy because we love dear Ozma very, very much'."

"I think it is very long," said Dorothy.

"I don't think so," said the Tin Woodman. "And what are *you* going to give Ozma for her birthday?"

"I don't know," said Dorothy. "But I want to give her a very nice present!"

Dorothy said good-bye to the Tin Woodman and walked to the back of the palace. There she saw the Scarecrow.

"Are you going to give Ozma a present for her birthday?" she asked.

"Of course, I am," said the Scarecrow.

"What are you going to give her?" said Dorothy.

"I am making a pair of straw shoes for her," answered the Scarecrow. "Ozma must like straw, because she likes *me* very much. She knows that my body is made of straw and I think she will like these nice straw shoes."

---

[1] I am crazy ['kreɪzɪ] — Я без ума (от Вас)

[2] You are a daisy ['deɪzɪ] — *зд.* Вы просто душенька

[3] May your birthdays all be happy — *зд.* Желаю Вам счастливых дней рожденья

"And what can I give her for her birthday?" asked Dorothy.

"Oh, I don't know," said the Scarecrow. "Think hard, Dorothy, think very hard, and a good idea will come to you."

So Dorothy went to her room, where she sat down and thought hard about a birthday present for Ozma's birthday.

She thought and thought. Then she saw Toto and asked him: "What can I give Ozma for her birthday?"

"Oh, give her some bones," said the dog. "It will be a great present for her!"

"A bone is a good present for a dog, but not for a Fairy," said Dorothy. "I see I must think hard again."

Dorothy thought and thought and suddenly an idea came to her. She went to the Wizard of Oz. He was glad to see Dorothy.

"Wizard," said Dorothy, "will you help me to make a birthday present for Ozma?"

"I shall be very glad to do what I can for you and for Ozma," he answered.

"I want to make a great cake," said Dorothy. "And in the middle of it I am going to hide a lot of very small monkeys. We shall put the cake on the table. Then the monkeys will get out of the cake. They will dance on the table around the cake. And then Ozma will cut the cake."

"That's very clever, really very clever, my dear," said the Wizard and laughed. "But your monkeys must be very, very small. Where will you get such small monkeys?"

"I hope," said Dorothy, "that you will help me. In the big forest there are a lot of monkeys."

"Big monkeys," said the Wizard.

"Well," said Dorothy. "This is my plan: you and I go to that forest. There we shall catch some big monkeys. Then you will make them small. We shall put those small monkeys in a basket and bring them home. After that you will teach them how to dance. It will be our secret. And on Ozma's birthday we shall put them all into the cake. They will know by that time what they must do."

"All right," said the Wizard, "I think I can do what you want me to do. I am ready to go with you. Let's take the Cowardly Lion with us. We shall go to the forest on his back and he will roar and frighten all the beasts there."

Chapter Six
KIKI AND THE NOME IN THE BIG FOREST

There is a very big forest in the middle of the Land of Oz. The animals call it 'Gugu[1] Forest', because the King of this forest is the big yellow leopard Gugu.

All the animals of the Land of Oz live in this forest. There are hundreds and hundreds of them there. Gugu, the Leopard has three friends who help him to rule the forest: the Bear, the Wolf and the Grey Monkey. They are very strong and clever. The other animals in the forest are afraid of them. They obey them and do what the Leopard, the Wolf and the Grey Monkey want them to do.

One morning two eagles flew high over the forest. In the middle of the forest the eagles flew down and sat in a tall tree.

"Here we shall begin our work," said one eagle. It was the Nome King. You remember him of course, don't you?

"Are there many animals here?" asked Kiki.

"The forest is full of them," answered the Nome. "We must go to them and tell them about our plans. I hope they will like them and will help us to conquer the people of Oz. But first we must change into animals."

"What animals shall we become?" asked Kiki.

"I think," said the Nome, "that we must not look like other animals.[2]"

"What animals must we become?" asked Kiki again.

"Let us have the heads of lions, the bodies of monkeys, the wings of eagles," said the Nome.

"I think that we shall be very strange animals," answered the boy.

"Are you afraid to look strange?"[3] asked the Nome.

"All right," said Kiki. "You stay here and I shall fly away to another tree and say my magic word."

"No," said the Nome. "You must not fly away from me. Make your magic here."

---

[1] Gugu ['gu:gu:] — Гугу

[2] we must not look like other animals — мы не должны быть похожи на других животных

[3] Are you afraid to look strange? — Ты что, боишься казаться странным?

"No," cried Kiki, "I shall not do that. You want to know my secret. But I shall not tell you my magic word."

The Nome was very angry with Kiki. But he said aloud:

"All right! Do as you like.[1]"

The Nome was afraid of Kiki. "He must not be angry with me,"[2] he thought, "or he will not change my form, and I shall always be an eagle. And I don't want that. Some day I shall know his secret and then..."

Kiki flew to a tree from which the Nome could not hear him. He said: "The Nome King and I must have the heads of lions, the bodies of monkeys and the wings of eagles: *Pyrzqxgl.*"

At once his form changed. He became a strange animal with the head of a lion, the body of a monkey, and the wings of an eagle.

Kiki flew down to the Nome who was now a strange animal too. He looked like Kiki. And they flew down to the ground.

Chapter Seven
THE NOME TALKS TO THE LEOPARD, KING OF THE FOREST

On that morning Leopard the King and his three friends met on a big clearing in the centre of the forest.

"My dear friends," said Gugu, the King of the forest. "We must decide what we shall do with the animals who did not obey me. A monkey threw a big nut at a fox and broke its head. A bear wanted to kill a giraffe..."

Suddenly Gugu stopped. He and his friends saw two strange beasts on the clearing.

"What do they want here?"[3] cried Gugu angrily.

The strange beasts came to them.

"Good morning, brothers," said the Nome.

"We are not your brothers," answered the Bear. "Who are you and why did you come to the forest of Gugu?"

---

[1] Do as you like. — Поступай как хочешь.

[2] he must not be angry with me — он не должен рассердиться на меня

[3] What do they want here? — Что им здесь надо?

The Nome at once thought up a name,[1] and said: "We are two Li-Mon-Eags.[2] Our home is in the sky. We came down here to tell you that the people of Oz want to conquer the animals of the forest. The animals of the forest will become slaves of the Oz people. They will do all the work for them."

"We shall fight the Oz people," cried the Bear. "We shall make *them* our slaves." "That's right," said the Wolf and the Grey Monkey.

"Stop it,"[3] cried Gugu the King. His friends obeyed him at once. He looked at the strange beasts for a long time.

"The people of Oz," he said at last, "are neither our friends, nor our enemies. They have no slaves, and they do not want to have slaves. I know they don't want to conquer us. I think you are telling us lies,[4] you strange Li-Mon-Eags."

"Oh, I give you my word, it is the truth," cried the Nome. "I shall tell you how we learned about it. One day, my comrade and I flew to a forest near the Emerald City. There we saw a lot of people. We heard what they said. They said: 'We shall conquer the animals of the forest and make them our slaves.'"

"We live in the sky," went on the Nome, "but we are animals too and we want to help you and that is why we are here."

The Nome stopped and looked at Gugu and his friends. "And how can you help us?" asked Gugu the King. "Well," said the Nome, "the Land of Oz is a very rich country. The people of Oz have very many nice things. They have houses with good beds, they have good food, nice clothes, jewels and many, many other good things. Let us conquer them before they conquer you. Then you will have all the nice things that they now have. The animals will become the masters of the people. The people will become the slaves of the animals."

"But we don't want to become their masters," said the Bear. "And we don't know what to do with their things."

"Oh, I shall tell you what we are going to do for you," said the Nome. "We are magicians. This is my plan. First you must conquer

---

[1] thought up a name — придумал имя

[2] Li-Mon-Eags ['laɪ'mʌn'i:gz] — *сокр. от* Lion-Monkey-Eagles

[3] Stop it. — Прекратите.

[4] you are telling us lies [laɪz] — Вы лжете нам

the Oz people. After that we shall change them into animals and send them to the forest to live there. Then we shall change all the animals of this forest into men and women. Then you will live in the Emerald City and you will know what to do with the nice things of the Oz people."

For a moment they did not speak.[1] Then Leopard the King said: "Show us that you can really change us. If you are magicians — change Loo[2] the Wolf into a man. Then we shall believe you. If you can't do it, we shall not believe you. And we shall kill you."

"All right," said the Nome. "My comrade will do it, not I."

Kiki went a little way[4] from the animals and said his magic word. The Wolf at once became a fat little man in a red costume. Gugu the King was frightened. He could not say a word.

After a moment he said to the Nome: "Yes, now we believe you."

Gugu spoke now like a friend.

Then he turned to the animals of the forest. He said: "What shall we say to our friends, the Li-Mon-Eags? I want the animals of our forest to know all about their plan. They will decide what answer we must give. You, Grey Monkey, go and tell all the animals to come to this clearing tomorrow morning. We shall have a meeting here. The magician will talk to the animals and tell them his plan. If they decide to fight[4] the Oz people, we shall fight them too. And now," he said to the Nome, "you must change our comrade into a wolf again."

So Kiki changed the man back into a wolf. The Wolf ran away happy. Gugu and his friends went away too.

"I hope they will like our plan," said the Nome. "I hope that the animals will fight and conquer the Land of Oz. Then I shall punish Ozma and Dorothy and all my enemies." And the Nome laughed.

"Don't forget that all the work is done by *me*,[5]" said Kiki.

---

[1] For a moment they did not speak. — На какое-то время они замолчали.

[2] Loo [lu:] — Лу

[3] Kiki went a little way — Кики отошел в сторону

[4] if they decide to fight — если они решат сражаться

[5] all the work is done by *me* — вся работа проделана мною

"No, I shall not forget," said the Nome. "I shall not forget. And I promise you that you will be King of the Land of Oz."

"But will King Gugu let me be King?"[1] asked the boy.

"Oh, don't be afraid of *him*," said the wicked Nome. "You can change him into a tree, and a tree can't do you any harm!"[2]

"Of course," answered Kiki. But he thought: "I shall change the Nome into a tree too. I don't like him. He is very bad. He is not a real friend. He can do much harm."

And the Nome thought: "I shall learn the magic word and change Kiki into a stone."

So, you see, dear readers, that wicked people can never be real friends.

Chapter Eight
THE MEETING ON THE CLEARING

Next morning all the animals of the forest came to the big clearing. There were hundreds and hundreds of beasts. There were wolves and foxes, bears, lions and monkeys, and many other animals. Leopard the King sat down on a big stone which was his throne.

"Brothers," he said in his loud voice, "yesterday two beasts of a very strange form came to our forest. They are great magicians. They can change the forms of people and animals. They live in the sky. They are here because they want to help us. My friends — the Bear, the Wolf, the Grey Monkey and I saw their magic work.[3] Now one of the magicians wants to speak to you. Will you listen to him?"

"Yes, yes, let him speak!" cried all the animals.

So the Nome came out in front of the animals. The animals looked at him in great surprise. They looked at his lion's head, his eagle's wings and his monkey's body.

[1] will King Gugu let me be King — позволит ли мне Король Гугу стать королем

[2] a tree can't do you any harm — дерево не сможет причинить тебе никакого вреда

[3] saw their magic work — видели, как они делают чудеса

The Nome spoke for a long time. When he finished one of the animals said: "Can you really change animals into men, women and children?"

"Yes, he can, he can!" cried the Wolf.

Now Gugu, the King of the forest, got up from his throne and said: "You have heard the plan of our friends, haven't you? Now you must give your answer. Do you like the plan?"

"Yes," cried some of the animals.

"No," cried others. Some animals said neither yes nor no.

Gugu the King looked at the animals and said: "Think, think hard. I am waiting for your answer. If you are ready to answer now, I shall hear you."

The animals began to talk to one another. Some of them wanted to fight the Oz people, others did not want to fight them. And there were some beasts who did not want even to talk about fighting. The noise was so great that they could not hear one another. Suddenly the noise stopped. All the animals looked in great surprise at a strange group which they suddenly saw on the clearing.



Chapter Nine
DOROTHY AND THE WIZARD COME TO THE MEETING OF THE ANIMALS

A great Lion, very big and very strong came up to the clearing. A little girl was on his back. Behind the little girl sat a funny little man. In his right hand he had a black bag. The little girl and the funny little man jumped down from the Lion's back and stood before Gugu the King.

"Who are you?" asked Gugu and looked at the girl. All the animals looked at her too.

"I am Dorothy," answered the girl.

"And who is the man with you?" asked the King.

"This man is the Wizard of Oz," answered the girl. "He is my true friend. He can do wonderful magic tricks. And here is my other friend, the Cowardly Lion. We all live in the Emerald City."

"Were you not afraid to come here?" asked Gugu the King.

"Oh, no," answered the little girl. "I am never afraid when I am with the Cowardly Lion. I know him very well. He doesn't like to fight. That is why we call him 'Cowardly'. But when he *must* fight he fights so well that no animal can conquer him."

The animals of the forest stood around Dorothy and her friends. They listened with great interest to their words.

They forgot all about the two Li-Mon-Eags. But what became of them? Of course, you understand that when the Nome saw Dorothy and her friends he was terribly frightened. He knew them at once. He said to Kiki: "Here are my enemies. They are very dangerous." Then he thought: "I hope that they will not know me in this animal form. They will not know who I am."

And what did Kiki do? He stood all the time behind the Nome. He was terribly frightened too. "Now they will learn our plan to conquer the Oz people," he thought. "They will tell the animals of the forest all about us. The animals will kill us."

Then he looked at the Nome and thought: "Oh, that wicked Nome! I hate him! How I hate him! I am the magician. I know the magic word and I don't want to obey him. He forgets that I am not his slave. No, I shall not obey him now!"

Then he looked at the Wizard and thought: "That Wizard is a real magician. I think he has brought his magic tools in that black bag. I want to have his magic tools. My magic word cannot do what his magic tools can."

Kiki thought hard. He ran away from the clearing into the forest and said: "The Wizard of Oz must become a fox: *Pyrzqxgl*."

Suddenly the Wizard's body began to change its form. In a moment he became a fox. His black box fell to the ground. Kiki flew up to the Wizard, caught up his bag and flew away.

The fox cried out as loud as he could: "There is a wicked magician here. Help! Help!"

His friends heard his cry and were frightened. Dorothy heard his cry too. She looked at her poor friend. Then she cried too: "Help!" But the next moment the little girl's form began to change. Dorothy became a little white lamb.

The Cowardly Lion was terribly angry. He looked around. He wanted to find the wicked magician and to kill him.

But Kiki said his magic word again. In a moment the great Lion became a little boy. Now the Lion could not harm Kiki.

"Now I shall change the wicked Nome too," thought Kiki. And he changed the Nome into... a goose.

"I am afraid of Gugu," thought Kiki. "He is clever and can harm me." So he changed Gugu into a fat woman.

Then he flew to a very high tree. He looked down from the tree at the fox, at the little Lamb, at the Goose, at the Boy and the Fat Woman.

"Oh, how funny they look,"[1] he cried and he laughed and laughed.

Chapter Ten
THE NOME TRIES TO FIND KIKI

All the animals on the clearing were terribly frightened now. "Let us run away from this place," they all cried. "The magician can change our forms too." And they all ran away from the clearing very quickly.

Only the little Lamb, the Fox, the Boy, and the Fat Woman stayed on the clearing. They did not know what to do. So they did not speak, they only looked at one another.

"Who are you?" the Boy asked the Fat Woman.

"And who are you?" the Fox asked the Lamb.

"I am Dorothy," said the Lamb.

"I am the Wizard," said the Fox.

"I am the Cowardly Lion," said the Munchkin Boy.

"I am Gugu the King," said the Fat Woman.

But when they asked the Goose who he really was, the Nome did not want to tell them his name. He said: "I am just a goose, and that is all. And I don't remember what I was before."

Kiki Aru flew with the Wizard's black bag to a high tree. "Here they can't see me," he thought. "I shall open the Wizard's black bag and take his magic tools. With the tools I can do magic which I can't do with my one magic word."

He opened the bag and took out the magic tools one by one.[2]

---

[1] how funny they look — до чего они смешные

[2] one by one — по очереди

He looked at them for a long time. At last he said: "No, I don't know what to do with these magic tools."

Of course, he did not know what to do with the magic tools. Who was Kiki? He was not a magician. He was a wicked boy who knew only how to say the magic word *Pyrzqxgl*. So Kiki hung the black bag on the tree and began to think of a new plan.

Dorothy and her friends, the Nome and Gugu the King were still on the clearing. They did not know what to do. "This is magic," said the Wizard. "It's not difficult to break this magic[1] with my magic tools. But the tools are in my black bag. And where is the bag? Who knows?"

There was no answer.

"Let us look for the bag!" said Dorothy. "I think we can find it."

They all looked and looked for the black bag but could not find it.

The Goose, who was really the Nome, wanted to find it too. But he wanted to hide it from the Wizard. He was afraid of the Wizard.

"They will find the bag," he thought, "and then the Wizard will change us back to our real form. Then they will know me. And then they will kick me out of the Land of Oz. I shall never punish them!" So the Goose looked for the black bag too but he could not find it. Then he decided to run away. "I must run away from here," he thought. "And I must find Kiki Aru. I want him to change me back into a Li-Mon-Eag."

He looked around. Then he ran away as quickly as he could.[2] When he was far away from Dorothy and her friends he began to call: "Kiki Aru, Kiki Aru!"

Kiki Aru was in his tree. He heard the Nome's cries but he could not decide what to do next.[3]

The boy hated the Nome and was afraid of him. But he needed his help. So when he heard the Nome's cries: "Kiki Aru! Quack-quack![4] Kiki Aru!" he flew down to the ground and said to the Nome: "I am here. What do you want of me?"

---

[1] it's not difficult to break this magic — нетрудно разбить эти чары

[2] he ran away as quickly as he could — побежал прочь изо всех сил

[3] he could not decide what to do next — он не мог решить, что же ему дальше делать

[4] Quack-quack! ['kwæk 'kwæk] — Га-га-га! (*звукоподражание*)

"Why did you do all this?" asked the Goose.

"Because I wanted to do it," answered Kiki. "You must remember that I am the magician, not you. I don't want to obey you."

The Goose listened and thought: "Yes, I must obey the boy now. I hope I shall know his secret some day. Then I shall change *him* into a goose."

And he said aloud: "You are right, Kiki. Now you will be my master. But you must help me to conquer the Land of Oz. You can do it, can't you?"

"How can I help you?" asked the boy.

"First,[1] change me back into the form of a Li-Mon-Eag. After that we can talk."

"Wait a moment," said Kiki. He flew back to his tree and said: "I want the Goose to become a Li-Mon-Eag again. *Pyrzqxgl.*"

His magic word changed the Goose into a Li-Mon-Eag at once.

"Good," cried the Nome. He was very happy. "Now let us find a place where we can talk about my new plan. I don't want the animals to listen to our talk."

They went to a small clearing in the forest and sat down on the ground. The Nome said: "Listen to me, Kiki. I shall tell you my plan."

Chapter Eleven
THE WIZARD LEARNS KIKI'S SECRET

At that moment a Fox came up to the clearing. The Nome and Kiki did not see the Fox, because it was behind them. But the Fox was really the Wizard of Oz. He looked at the two Li-Mon-Eags and thought: "There are two of them now. And a short time ago there was only one Li-Mon-Eag. The Goose changed into the beast! I understand it all now. It is all clear now. At last I can tell who changed our forms. The Goose and his comrade — the wicked magician. These two beasts are our enemies. I must watch them all the time and see what they will do next."

The Wizard-Fox came up to Kiki Aru and the Nome. There

[1] first — сперва

was a big tree near them with a big hole in it. "I shall hide in the hole and see what those beasts will do next," thought the Wizard. He jumped into the hole and watched the two Li-Mon-Eags. And he heard their talk.

"Well," said the Nome to Kiki, "this is my plan. Look at the trees in the forest. They are full of monkeys. We shall change fifty little monkeys into fifty soldiers. The Oz people don't know how to fight. They will be frightened and the soldiers will conquer them in a day or two.[1]"

Kiki thought for some time and then said: "I like your plan."

"Can you change those fifty little monkeys all at once?[2]" asked the Nome.

"No, I can't," answered Kiki. "I must change them one at a time.[3] Stay here, and I shall go and change the first monkey."

"But where are you going?" asked the Nome.

"You know very well that I can't say the magic word when you are near. I shall go where you cannot hear me," answered Kiki.

The Nome was very angry when he heard that. But he said: "All right!"

Kiki got up and went to a tree which stood near them. It was just the tree in which the Wizard-Fox was. Kiki Aru ran up to the tree and tried to look into the hole. It was very dark in the hole. So Kiki did not see the Fox.

Kiki said: "I want that monkey in the big tree on the left to become a soldier with a big sword: *Pyrzqxgl*" Then he ran back to the Nome.

"I am so glad I know the magic word now," thought the Wizard. "I can change the forms of people and animals now. But first I must remember the word."

In a moment a soldier with a big sword stood on the clearing.

"Good," cried the Nome. "Change the other monkeys, quick!"

So Kiki ran back to the tree with the hole in it and said his magic word again. He ran to the tree and back six times.

Soon six big soldiers with swords stood in the forest.

When Kiki ran back to the Nome for the sixth time the Wizard-

[1] in a day or two — за один-два дня

[2] all at once — сразу всех

[3] one at a time — по одному

Fox put his head out of the hole. He thought: "I have heard the magic word six times. Now I shall try and say it."

And he said aloud: "This animal Li-Mon-Eag must become a small nut: *Pyrzqxgl*".

At once Kiki changed into a small nut. The Wizard cried out with joy and jumped out of the hole.

"Now I shall change the other one into a big nut," he thought.

At that moment the Nome rose from the ground and looked around. He saw the Fox, but he did not see Kiki. "Where is Kiki, why did he not come back?" he thought. He was frightened.

"This Li-Mon-Eag must become a big nut: *Pyzrqxgl*" cried the Wizard-Fox. But, as you see, the order of the letters in the word was wrong. He did not say the magic word in the right way.[1] So the Nome's form did not change.

The Nome understood at once that it was the magic word. He ran to the Fox and said: "You must become a goose: *Pyrqzxgl*"

But the Nome said the word in the wrong way[2] too — that's why the Wizard-Fox's form did not change. He ran away from the angry Nome and hid behind a big tree.

The Nome King repeated the magic word many times but every time he said it in the wrong way. The Fox behind the tree repeated the word many times too, and suddenly he said it in the right way. And the Nome at once became a big nut. The Wizard-Fox said: "I want my real form again. I want to become a man: *Pyrzqxgl*."

At once he became the Wizard of Oz again. He picked up the big nut and the small nut. Then he put them into his pocket and ran back to the big clearing, to his friends, as quickly as he could.

Chapter Twelve
THE WIZARD CHANGES HIS FRIENDS' FORMS AGAIN

Dorothy, who was a little Lamb, cried out with joy when she saw her friend the Wizard in his real form. The Fat Woman

[1] in the right way — правильно, как следует
[2] in the wrong way — неправильно

and the Munchkin Boy stood around him and looked at him in great surprise.

"How wonderful!" they cried. "How did it happen? Who changed you back into your real form?"

"First, I shall change you all into your real forms and then I shall tell you all about it," answered the Wizard. He said the magic word and changed his friends, one by one, back into their real forms. Then he told his happy friends of his adventures and showed them the two nuts.

"Now," he said, "we must not be afraid of those two wicked beasts. They are only nuts now. Nuts can't speak, so they can't change their forms and can't harm us."

"But listen," cried Dorothy. "What about the soldiers? [1] Where are they now?"

"I forgot all about them,"[2] said the Wizard. "But I think they must be in the forest. Let's go there at once!"

The Wizard was right. The soldiers were in the forest. They were so big and tall that they could not make a step in the thick forest. Hundreds and hundreds of monkeys sat in the trees. They looked at the soldiers and talked to one another.[3] They made a great noise. The Wizard and his friends could not hear each other.

The Wizard had no magic tools, you remember, but now he knew the magic word *Pyrzqxgl* and he quickly changed the six soldiers into monkeys.

"The Wizard is a very good man," cried the monkeys in the trees. "We like him, we want to thank him."

"I must tell you," said the Wizard, "that I want to take twelve monkeys with me to the Emerald City. Who wants to come with me?"

At once twelve monkeys cried: "We are ready to go with you. Take us with you, Wizard."

Then the Wizard said: "You see, I want only twelve little monkeys. I shall make you very, very small. What will you say to this?"

The monkeys cried: "All right, make us small!"

[1] What about the soldiers? — А как обстоят дела с солдатами?
[2] I forgot all about them. — Я совершенно забыл о них.
[3] talked to one another — говорили друг с другом

The Wizard put a small basket on the ground and said: "My monkeys must become very small: *Pyrzqxgl!*" And suddenly all saw in the basket twelve very, very small monkeys.

"And now we shall say good-bye to you," said the Wizard of Oz. "I promise to bring back your brothers and sisters soon. They will be happy in the Emerald City. But this is their home. And you know that 'East or West home is best'!"

Dorothy and the Wizard said good-bye to all their friends.

"Good-bye, friends," said Gugu the Leopard. "I like you. I know that you are the true friends of animals. We shall always be glad to see you in our forest. Good-bye!"

The Wizard and Dorothy went away on the back of the Cowardly Lion. The basket with the little monkeys in it was in the Wizard's hand.

For a long time the monkeys in the trees cried "Good-bye" to their new friends.



Chapter Thirteen
OZMA'S BIRTHDAY

At last our friends came home. The Wizard began to teach the twelve little monkeys at once. They were very clever. The Wizard was very kind to them and the monkeys loved him very much. Soon they were ready to do all the tricks which the Wizard wanted them to do.

At last Ozma's birthday came. You must know that Ozma's birthday was always a great holiday in the Land of Oz. On that day all the people in all the countries of the Land of Oz decorated their houses with flowers and flags. The people sang, danced and played games.

Ozma's palace stood in the middle of a big garden. The garden was full of flowers and fountains. Hundreds and hundreds of birds sang in this garden.

There was some writing on a board near one of the fountains. This is what that writing said:

Don't Drink From That Fountain!
If you drink the water from this fountain
You Will Forget All That You Knew Before!
You will forget even
Your Name!

On her birthday Ozma always gave a great dinner at her Emerald Palace. And on that day, too, Ozma's friends, people and animals, came to her palace from all the countries of the Land of Oz.

Ozma was always glad to see her friends, she laughed and talked with all of them.

Then four beautiful girls brought in a very big cake and put it in the middle of the table. There were flowers and lighted candles[1] on it. In the centre of the cake there were letters which were made of sugar:

OZMA'S BIRTHDAY CAKE
from DOROTHY and the WIZARD

Ozma cried with joy: "Oh, how beautiful!"

"And now," cried Dorothy, "now you must cut the cake and give a piece to each of us."

Ozma took a knife and cut the cake. Suddenly a little monkey jumped out of it. Then eleven more[2] monkeys jumped out of the cake.

"Many happy returns,"[3] cried the monkeys. They danced and did some acrobatic tricks. All their tricks were very funny. Ozma and her friends laughed very much.

"Thank you, dear Dorothy," said Ozma, "and you, dear Wizard, for your wonderful present."

Dorothy and her friend, the old Wizard, were very glad that Ozma liked their birthday cake so much.

After that the Tin Woodman sang his song, and all Ozma's friends liked it very much too!

---

[1] lighted candles — зажженные свечи

[2] eleven more — еще одиннадцать

[3] Many happy returns [rı'tə:nz]. — Поздравляем с днем рождения.

On the morning after Ozma's birthday, the Wizard and Dorothy went out for a walk in Ozma's wonderful garden. Ozma too came out of her Emerald Palace for a walk in the garden. She came up to Dorothy and the Wizard and said: "You have told me a lot about your adventures in the Gugu Forest. But I want you to tell me more about them. I want to know how you got those little monkeys for the birthday cake."

So they sat down on an emerald bench opposite one of the fountains. Dorothy and the Wizard began to tell Ozma about their adventures. Ozma listened to them with great interest. Then she said to the Wizard: "So you changed those terrible Li-Mon-Eags into nuts. And where are they now?"

"Oh, I forgot about them," answered the Wizard. "They must be in my pocket." And he took two nuts out of his pocket and showed them to Ozma.

Ozma looked at the nuts for a long time and then said: "No, I don't think that it is right to leave them in the form of nuts. I think, Wizard, that you must change them back into their real forms."

"Don't forget, Ozma, that they are very wicked," said the Wizard. "And we don't know their real forms, do we?"[1]

"No, no, but we must not be afraid of two living things,[2]" said Ozma. Ozma was very, very kind. "Even if they are our enemies, or wicked magicians," she went on.

"I am afraid, Ozma," said the little man, "that they know some magic which can do us much harm."

"I have an idea," cried Dorothy. "Please, do as I tell you, and their magic will not harm us."

"What is it, my dear?" asked Ozma.

"Look at that writing on the board," said the girl. "Read it! The writing says that we must not drink from that fountain or we shall forget all that we knew before, even our names. Let the Wizard change the nuts into their real forms and make them thirsty.[3] Then

---

[1] And we don't know their real forms, do we? — И мы не знаем, каков их настоящий вид, не так ли?

[2] living things — живые существа

[3] Let the Wizard change the nuts into their real forms and make them thirsty. — Пусть волшебник вернет орехам их прежний вид и заставит их испытывать жажду.

they will run to the fountain and drink some water. Then they will forget all, even their names."

"That's not a bad idea," said the Wizard.

"I think it is a very good idea," said Ozma. "Run for a cup, girl!"

Chapter Fourteen
AGAIN KIKI AND THE NOME

Dorothy ran away and was soon back[1] with a cup. She put the cup near the fountain. The Wizard put the small nut near the fountain too. He said: "That little nut must take its real form. And I want it to become thirsty! *Pyrzqxgl*!"

An once the nut changed into Kiki Aru, the boy from the Munchkin Country.

The boy looked around in great surprise. He could not understand where he was. And he was terribly thirsty. He was very glad when he saw the cup and the fountain. He took up the cup and ran to the fountain. And he drank and drank, one cup after another. He forgot his name and the name of the country he lived in. He looked around and saw Ozma, the Wizard and Dorothy. He did not remember either their names or who they were.[2] But he found Ozma very beautiful. And he liked the little girl and the old man. So he smiled to them. For the first time in his life Kiki smiled a kind and happy smile.

Dorothy liked his smile. "Come and sit here beside me," she said to the boy. The boy obeyed her. He ran to her and sat down on the bench beside her.

"I thought you were a wicked magician, and you are only a boy," she said.

"What is a magician and what is a boy?" he asked.

"Don't you know?" asked Dorothy.

"No, I don't," he answered.

---

[1] and was soon back — и скоро вернулась

[2] He did not remember either their names or who they were. — Он не помнил ни их имен, ни того, кем они были.

"He is not wicked now," said Ozma. "He is a very nice boy. He will live with us and we shall teach him to be kind and to love people. It is very good that he has forgotten his past. And now," she said to the Wizard, "please change the big nut. We want to see the boy's comrade."

The Wizard put the big nut on the ground near the fountain and said: "I want this big nut to take its real form and become very thirsty: *Pyrzqxgl*."

In a moment the Nome stood before our friends. He was terribly thirsty and looked only at the water in the fountain. He was going to drink and took up the cup.

At that moment Dorothy cried out:

"Why,[1] it's the old Nome King!"

The old man looked at them and cried out very angrily:

"Yes, I am the Nome King. I am going to conquer the Land of Oz. And I shall punish all the people in the countries of the Land of Oz. You kicked me out of my country. Now I shall fight you and I shall kick you out of the Land of Oz."

His long white hair rose up in the air. His eyes were terrible. Ozma and her friends looked at their enemy in great surprise and could not say a word.

The Nome laughed his wicked laugh.[2] He drank the water from the cup. Then he threw the cup on the ground and said angrily: "And now... and now... and..."

He touched his head with his hand and thought for some time.

"I have forgotten what I told you about. What was it?" he asked with a smile.

"Can't you remember it?"[3] asked the Wizard.

"No. I can't," said the Nome. "I have forgotten..."

"Who are you?" asked Dorothy.

The Nome tried to remember. He thought for some time. Then he said: "I... don't know... who I am, I can't remember."

"And don't you know who *we* are?" asked Dorothy.

---

[1] why — о (*восклицание*)

[2] The Nome laughed his wicked laugh. — Ном засмеялся своим злым смехом.

[3] Can't you remember it? — Неужели ты не можешь вспомнить?

"No, I don't," said the Nome.

"Do you know this boy?" asked Ozma.

The old man looked at Kiki for a long time. Then he said: "No, I don't. I don't know either him or you."

"What shall we do with him?" asked the Wizard.

"He has forgotten his past, and he will not do any harm now," said Ozma. "We must not send him away from the Land of Oz, because then he will become wicked again. We must find a place and same work for him in the Land of Oz. Here he will see only good and kind people. So he will become as good and kind as they are.[1]"

So Kiki Aru and the Nome found a new home in the Emerald City, the capital of the Land of Oz. Ozma, Dorothy and the Wizard taught the boy and the old man to be kind and to love people. Soon Kiki and the Nome became as good and kind as all the people in the Land of Oz.

[1] as good and kind as they are — таким же хорошим и добрым, как все они

Activities



PART ONE

Chapter One

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "A cyclone is coming!"
2) "Quick, run into the house and stay there."
3) "I must help Uncle Henry!"

2 Say who:

1) saw the cyclone first.
2) was in the yard when the storm began.
3) told Dorothy to run into the house.
4) wanted to cry.
5) lay down beside the bed.

3 Say who in the story is:

hardworking / brave / ready to help / afraid of the storm / frightened of darkness

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Little Dorothy lived in Kansas City in America.
2) She lived with her parents.
3) Dorothy was a farmer's niece.
4) Uncle Henry knew a lot of things about animals and plants.
5) Uncle Henry kept a lot of books about animals in his house.
6) Aunt Em helped her husband on the farm.
7) Dorothy liked to play with her dog.
8) Toto was a big black dog with short hair.
9) When the storm began Toto was in the house.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The cyclone carried the house far away.
2) Uncle Henry ran off to look after the animals.
3) It was very dark in the house.
4) Aunt Em ran out of the house to help her husband.
5) Suddenly a storm came.
6) Dorothy ran into the house with Toto in her arms.
7) Dorothy was frightened.
8) She decided to go to bed and sleep.
9) Dorothy was playing in the yard with Toto.

6 Answer the questions.

1) How many rooms were there in the farmer's house?
2) What animals did Uncle Henry keep on the farm?
3) Were there any other houses near the farm?
4) Where did the storm come from?
5) Where was Uncle Henry when the storm began?
6) Where was Dorothy when the storm began?
7) Where was Aunt Em when the storm began?
8) What did the storm do with the house?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say which of the words is the Odd One Out.

- uncle, aunt, wife, girl, husband
- chair, cupboard, bed, room
- trees, grass, flowers, prairie
- yard, cows, horses, sheep
- blue, grey, dark, green, black

2 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns.

small	late
never	cry
early	big
laugh	slow
quick	get up
lie down	always

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

trees
grass
prairie
early
dear
grey
terrible
frightened
late
suddenly

1) Uncle Henry's farm was on the great Kansas ________ .
2) Near the house there were neither ________ nor ________.
3) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em began to work ________ in the morning and stopped ________ in the evening.
4) Dorothy was happy because she had a ________ friend.
5) One day the sky wasn't blue, it was ________ .
6) ________ a storm came. It was ________ .
7) The storm ________ the people on the farm.

4 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

1) Little Dorothy (live) on a farm.
2) She (have) an uncle and an aunt.
3) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em (work) all day.
4) They (begin) to work early in the morning and (stop) late at night.
5) During the day Dorothy (run) and (play) with her dear friend, Toto.
6) One afternoon Uncle Henry (look) at the sky. He (not like) it.
7) Aunt Em (come) to the door and (look) at the sky too. She (be frightened).
8) The cyclone (come) from the East.
9) Dorothy (run) into the house.
10) The girl (not know) what to do.
11) She (think): " I shall go to bed and sleep".

12) She (get up), (find) her bed and (lie) down on it.
13) Toto (come up) and (lie) down beside the bed.

5 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Uncle Henry ran off *to look after* the cows and horses.
2) Aunt Em *looked at* the dark sky.
3) Toto had long *hair.*
4) Dorothy's *hair* was not long.
5) At that moment *a terrible thing* happened.

6 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The storm came ____ the East. It was terrible. It made everything ____ the prairie look dark. Aunt Em was ____ the house. Uncle Henry was ____ the door ____ his house, but Dorothy and their little dog Toto were ____ the yard. When Aunt Em heard her husband's words "A cyclone, Em, a cyclone is coming! How terrible", she quickly ran ____ ____ the house and cried ____ Dorothy: " Quick, Dorothy, run ____ the house and stay there". Then she ran ____ to help Uncle Henry to look after the cows and horses. Dorothy took Toto ____ her arms and ran ____ the house. At that time the cyclone suddenly lifted the little house ____ the air and carried it far away.

Discussing the Text

1 Explain why:

1) there were neither trees nor flowers near the house where Dorothy lived.
2) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em never laughed.
3) Dorothy was a happy girl.
4) Uncle Henry looked at the sky one day.
5) Aunt Em was frightened.

2 Prove that:

1) the cyclone was very strong.

2) Dorothy was frightened.
3) the little girl didn't know what was happenning.
4) Toto loved Dorothy.

3 Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:

1) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em.
2) your house in the prairie.
3) your friend Toto.
4) the terrible storm.

4 Read and draw.

1) Draw a picture of the little house on the prairie.
2) Draw a picture of the only room in the house.
3) Draw a portrait of one of the main characters.

5 Role-play.

After the storm Uncle Henry and Aunt Em were very unhappy. They didn't know where Dorothy and Toto were. They asked the Sheriff of Kansas to help them. What do you think the Sheriff's questions were? Act out their conversation.

Chapter Two

? ***Checking Comprehension***

1 Who said it?

1) "You are welcome, beautiful Fairy, to the Land of Oz".
2) "Why do you call me a Fairy?"
3) "You are very kind. But I think there is a mistake".
4) "What shall we do now?"

2 Say who:

1) came to greet Dorothy.

2) could not walk fast.
3) killed the Wicked Witch of the East.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

happy / afraid / sorry / frightened / surprised / glad

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Dorothy couldn't sleep at night.
2) Toto woke up earlier than Dorothy.
3) The people of the Munchkin Country were very small.
4) The three men looked young.
5) The Munchkins were not free people, they were slaves.
6) The Witch of the North was Munchkin's master.
7) Dorothy's house killed the Witch of the West.
8) All the Witches in the Land of Oz were wicked.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The storm was over.
2) The old woman welcomed Dorothy to the Land of Oz.
3) Dorothy got up, took Toto and ran to the door.
4) Suddenly Dorothy saw some funny people.
5) When she opened the door she laughed with joy.
6) The Good Witch told Dorothy about the Land of Oz.
7) The Good Witch told Dorothy about the Wicked Witch.
8) Dorothy learned that the Munchkins became free people.
9) The country was very beautiful.

6 Answer the questions.

1) When did Dorothy wake up?
2) Was it light or dark in the house?
3) What did Dorothy see outside?
4) How many people came up to the house?
5) Did Dorothy know who the people were?
6) Who spoke first?
7) Did Dorothy understand why the little people thanked her?

8) What happened to the Witch of the East?
9) How many Witches lived in the Land of Oz? What were their names?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns:

light	young
a little way off	open
old	slaves
fast	dark
ask	good
wicked	answer
close	far away
free people	slow

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) The girl sat up in her bed and looked *around.*
2) Our people were her *slaves.*
3) The Witch *made* all the Munchkin people her slaves.
4) The *body* was under the house.
5) There were two *wicked* witches in the Land of Oz.

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

South
slaves
silver
fast
free
fairy
friend
feet
joy
old
good

1) Dorothy looked at the beautiful flowers and laughed with __________.
2) The little woman couldn't walk __________, because she was very __________.
3) The Munchkins called Dorothy a __________.
4) The people in the Munchkin Country were __________, now they are __________.
5) There were two __________ in __________ shoes under the house.
6) The Witch of the North was a __________ witch and a __________ of the Munchkin people.
7) The second good witch lived in the __________ of the Land of Oz.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

"Now I understand what happened!" cried _____ Dorothy. "The house fell _____ this poor woman and killed her." The girl was frightened. She understood that there was a body _____ the house. She looked and saw two feet _____ silver shoes. "I am so sorry, so sorry _____ her!" "You must not be sorry _____ her! She was the Wicked Witch _____ the East," said the little woman.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Oz, of, there, four, in, were, witches, the, Land.
2) North, South, the, lived, in, good, the, in, witches, and, the.
3) Munchkin, the, woman, little, good, witch, a, and, friend, was, the, a, of, people.
4) North, she, the, in, lived.
5) Dorothy's, the, they, East, all, were, house, glad, killed, that, the, of, Witch.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to speak		
to make		
to run		
to sleep		
to fall		
to sit		
to say		
to sing		
to see		
to wake up		
to get up		
to come up		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "I'm in a fairy-land," thought Dorothy.
2) "I'm only a little girl," thought Dorothy.
3) "I think they are afraid of me," thought the girl.
4) "Why do you call me a fairy?" asked Dorothy.
5) "Why do you thank me?" asked Dorothy.
6) "You are very kind. But I think there is a mistake," she said.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Dorothy cried out with joy when she opened the door in the morning.
2) Dorothy thought she was in a fairy-land.
3) Dorothy thought the people she saw were funny.
4) the little people were afraid of Dorothy.

5) the Munchkins called Dorothy a Fairy.
6) the Witch of the North asked Dorothy not to be sorry.
7) the Munchkins were glad that Dorothy's house killed the Witch of the East.

2 Prove that:

1) the Land of Oz was beautiful.
2) the Munchkins looked different from the people on the Kansas prairie.
3) the Munchkins were kind people.
4) the Munchkins were not afraid of the Witch of the North any more.
5) Dorothy didn't know where she really was.

3 Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:

1) the land you saw in the morning.
2) the three Munchkin men.
3) the Good Witch of the North.

4 Read and draw.

1) Dorothy saw a lot of beautiful fruit-trees in the new country, didn't she?
   What fruit grew in them? Draw a picture of some.
2) Dorothy loved the wonderful flowers she saw in the Munchkin Country.
   Were they the flowers she knew or did they look unusual to her?
   Draw a picture of some.
3) Draw a portrait of the Good Witch.

5 Role-play.

a) Can you imagine what the Munchkins talked about when they saw a house flying in the sky? Work together in small groups and make up talks between them.

b) Work in pairs and act out the talk between Dorothy and the Good Witch.

Chapter Three

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "We don't know where Kansas is."
2) "You must stay with us."
3) "Can you go with me?"
4) "There is some magic in these shoes."

2 Say who:

1) asked for help.
2) began to cry.
3) told Dorothy the way to the Emerald City.
4) took the silver shoes off the Wicked Witch.

3 Say who in the story is:

very sad / silent for some time / afraid / in a hurry / very polite

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Little Dorothy felt very unhappy.
2) She was worried about her Uncle and Aunt.
3) The Good Witch consulted a magic book to find Kansas.
4) Nobody in the Land of Oz could help Dorothy to get back home.
5) The Emerald City was in the South of the Land of Oz.
6) The Munchkins wanted to go to the Emerald City too.
7) Dorothy wanted to go to the Emerald City alone.
8) The Good Witch told Dorothy the magic of the silver shoes.
9) The road to the Emerald City was made of yellow brick.
10) The Witch turned around Dorothy three times and disappeared.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The three old men said good-bye and left.

2) The Good Witch gave the silver shoes to Dorothy.
3) The Good Witch asked Dorothy about her name.
4) Dorothy thought about her Uncle and Aunt.
5) The Munchkins said that they couldn't help the girl.
6) Dorothy asked for help.
7) The Good Witch told Dorothy about the Wizard of the Land of Oz.
8) Dorothy was very unhappy and began to cry.
9) The Good Witch told Dorothy to walk along the yellow brick road.
10) Dorothy took the shoes and put them on.
11) The Witch disappeared.

6 Answer the questions.

1) What did Dorothy ask the Good Witch about?
2) Did the Munchkins know where Kansas was?
3) Who was the ruler of the Emerald City?
4) Was the Wizard good or wicked?
5) How far was the Emerald City from the Munchkin Country?
6) What did the Good Witch tell Dorothy about the road to the Emerald City?
7) Could the Munchkins leave their country?
8) Was the Good Witch sorry that she couldn't help Dorothy herself?
9) How did the Good Witch disappear?
10) Did the three little men walk away without saying a word?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) He lives in the *Emerald* City.
2) The Wizard is the *ruler* of the Emerald City.
3) There is some *magic* in these shoes.
4) The road is made of yellow *brick.*
5) The road was long and full of *dangers.*
6) The Wizard will help you to *go back* home.
7) The Witch said good-bye and *disappeared.*

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

afraid cry frightened help middle only put speak thought took

1) Please __________ me to go back to Kansas prairie.
2) The little woman didn't __________ for some time.
3) Dorothy __________ her Uncle and Aunt were terribly __________ .
4) The Munchkins looked at Dorothy and began to __________ .
5) The Emerald City is in the __________ of the Land of Oz.
6) There was __________ one road to the Emerald City.
7) Dorothy __________ the shoes and __________ them on.
8) The Good Witch told the girl not to be __________ of the Wizard of Oz.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Good Witch said that only Oz, the great Wizard _____ the Land _____ Oz, could help Dorothy. The Wizard lived _____ the Emerald City which was _____ the middle _____ the Land _____ Oz. Dorothy wanted to know how to get _____ the Emerald City. The old woman told the girl to walk _____ the yellow brick road. The road was long and full _____ dangers. The Witch was sorry that she couldn't go _____ the girl, but she hoped the great Wizard would help her to get _____ home. The old woman said good-bye _____ the girl, turned _____ and disappeared.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the events in the story:

beautiful	bricks
magic	grass
great	shoes
wicked	city
little	witch
yellow	country
silver	wizard
green	people
emerald	word

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Stay, us, must, with, you.
2) Must, him, you, find.
3) All, walk, must, you, the, there, way.
4) On, must, shoes, you, put, silver, the.
5) You, now, leave, I, must.
6) Road, along, you, that, must, walk.

6 How well do you know the rules of reading?

a) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [t] at the end? Underline them.

looked	loved	asked	lived
walked	hoped	turned	helped

b) Find in the story some sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "My uncle and aunt don't know where I am," said Dorothy.
2) "They are terribly frightened," thought Dorothy.
3) "We don't know where the prairie is," said the Good Witch.
4) "What is your name, dear child?" asked the old woman.
5) "Where is the city?" asked Dorothy.

6) "We cannot go with you," said the little men.
7) "I hope you will find the Wizard," said the Good Witch.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Dorothy asked the old woman to help her.
2) Dorothy thought that Uncle Henry and Aunt Em were terribly frightened.
3) Dorothy couldn't stay in the Land of Oz.
4) the Witch of the North asked Dorothy about her name.
5) the Witch of the North told Dorothy about the Emerald City.
6) the Witch of the North gave Dorothy the silver shoes.
7) the Munchkins couldn't go with Dorothy.

2 Prove that:

1) Dorothy loved her Uncle and Aunt and she was missing them.
2) the Munchkins were kind people and they were sorry for Dorothy.
3) the Good Witch had things to do in the North.
4) Dorothy was afraid to go to the Emerald City alone.

3 Imagine that you are the good witch. Speak about:

1) the Land of Oz.
2) the Wizard of Oz.
3) the road to the Emerald City.
4) the little girl whose house killed the wicked witch of the East.

4 How well do you know geography?

Neither the Munchkins nor the Good Witch knew where Kansas prairie was. Do you know where Kansas is? Draw a map of America and mark Kansas on it. If necessary, consult a geographical atlas.

5 Role-play.

Work in pairs, read and then act out the talk between Dorothy and the Good Witch.

Chapter Four

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I am not very well."
2) "Please give me your hand!"
3) "Don't you know the Great Wizard?"
4) "I am not afraid of him."

2 Say who:

1) spoke in a friendly way.
2) asked for help.
3) made a mistake.
4) did not like the Scarecrow.

3 Say who in the story is:

very tired / greatly surprised / very sorry / friendly / ready to help / angry

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Little Dorothy got ready for the walk very well.
2) She knew well what she wanted to ask the Wizard about.
3) Dorothy forgot to put on the magic shoes.
4) Dorothy was happy because the weather was fine.
5) The road to the Emerald City was very long.
6) In the afternoon the girl decided to have a rest.
7) Dorothy sat down on the green grass by the road.

8) The Scarecrow could think, but he could not speak.
9) Dorothy told the Scarecrow about the magic shoes.
10) The Scarecrow frightened Toto.
11) Dorothy wanted to help the funny straw man.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Dorothy called Toto.
2) The Scarecrow greeted the little girl.
3) Dorothy and Toto walked along the yellow brick road.
4) The Scarecrow told Dorothy that he would come with her.
5) Dorothy took some food from the cupboard.
6) The little girl helped the Scarecrow to get down.
7) Dorothy, Toto and the Scarecrow walked together to the Emerald City.
8) Dorothy told the Scarecrow about the Wizard of the Land of Oz.
9) Dorothy decided to get ready for the long walk.
10) The Scarecrow told Dorothy his story.
11) Dorothy put the silver shoes on.
12) Toto did not like the Scarecrow and began to bark at him.

6 Answer the questions.

1) What did Dorothy put into a basket?
2) What was the weather like that day?
3) What did Dorothy see along the road?
4) Where did Dorothy see the Scarecrow?
5) What was the Scarecrow made of?
6) Did the Scarecrow like his life in the field?
7) What was the Scarecrow's job?
8) Could the Scarecrow get down himself?
9) Did the Scarecrow know about the Wizard?
10) What did the Scarecrow want to ask the Wizard about?
11) What did Toto do when he saw the new companion?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

tired lighted middle cupboard brains straw hoped piece mistake

1) Dorothy took some bread from the _________ .
2) The little girl _________ to see her aunt and uncle soon.
3) Dorothy was _________ from her long walk.
4) Not far from the road in the _________ of the field she saw a scarecrow.
5) Its face was a _________ of an old shirt.
6) There were no _________ in his head.
7) The farmers who made him with _________ made a _________ .
8) The Scarecrow was afraid only of a _________ match.

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Dorothy put on the shoes and *called* Toto.
2) I have no brains and people always *call* me a fool.
3) The farmers who *made* me with straw *made* a mistake.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy sat down _____ the green grass _____ the road. Not far _____ _____ the middle _____ the field she saw a scarecrow. Dorothy went _____ to the Scarecrow and stopped. The Scarecrow greeted her _____ a friendly way. "Oh, can you speak?" asked the little girl _____ surprise. "Yes," was the answer and the straw man told Dorothy that he stayed _____ the middle _____ the field to keep the birds _____ . But he didn't like to stay there day and night. He wanted to get _____ . Dorothy gave him her hand and helped the Scarecrow to get _____ .

4 **Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the events in the story:**

blue	walk
green	sky
straw	grass
painted	man
lighted	comrade
friendly	match
new	way
long	face

5 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.**
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) day, night, like, stay, I, to, here, and, don't.
2) come, you, me, you, like, if, may, with.
3) began, bark, to, he.
4) straw, can't, the, he, bite.
5) he, not, was, who, of, afraid, farmer, the, made, him.

6 **How well do you know the rules of reading?**

a) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [d] at the end? Underline them with ________ line.

b) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [ɪd] at the end? Underline them with _ _ _ _ _ _ line.

called	hoped	decided	looked
stopped	asked	answered	helped
cried	walked	showed	

c) Find in the story five sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

1) "Can you speak?" Dorothy asked the Scarecrow.
2) "Who are you?" asked the Scarecrow.
3) "Where are you going?" asked the Scarecrow.

4) "Where is the Emerald City?" asked the Scarecrow.
5) "Don't you know the Great Wizard?" asked Dorothy.
6) "Do you think he can do it?" asked the Scarecrow.
7) "What are you afraid of?"asked the little girl.

8 **Talk about yourself.**

Model: The Scarecrow said:
"You see, *I don't like it when* people call me a fool because I have no brains."

Work in pairs and find out if there is anything you don't like in what others do. Say why.
Start your sentences like this:

1) I don't like it when people ... because ... .
2) I don't like it when my parents ... because ... .
3) I don't like it when my friends ... because ... .
4) I don't like it when girls ... because ... .
5) I don't like it when boys ... because ... .

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why Dorothy:**

1) put on the silver shoes.
2) went into the little house.
3) stopped by the road.
4) went up to the Scarecrow.
5) gave her hand to the Scarecrow.
6) told the Scarecrow about the Wizard and the Emerald City.
7) asked the Scarecrow what he was afraid of.

2 **Explain why:**

1) the Scarecrow looked funny.
2) the Scarecrow didn't know about the Wizard of Oz.
3) people called the straw man a fool.

3 **Prove that:**

1) Dorothy was a practical girl.
2) the Scarecrow was happy to get down.
3) Dorothy was sorry for the Scarecrow.
4) the Scarecrow was not afraid of Toto.

4 **Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:**

1) the funny straw man.
2) why the Scarecrow surprised you.
3) why you told the Scarecrow about the Emerald City.
4) what you told the Scarecrow about the Wizard of Oz.

5 **Read and draw.**

1) Draw a picture of Dorothy and Toto as they started their long walk to the Emerald City. Do you think the silver shoes fitted Dorothy well or they were big for her?
2) Draw a picture of the Scarecrow at the moment when he got down and made his first step on the ground.

6 **Role-play.**

Work in pairs, read and then act out the talk between Dorothy and the Scarecrow.

Chapter Five

? ***Checking Comprehension***

1 **Who said it?**

1) "Where are you going?"
2) "I can't be happy if I have no heart."
3) "They all run away from me."

2 **Say who:**

1) jumped on the road.
2) gave the Lion a blow.
3) fell on the ground.
4) called the Lion a coward.

3 **Say who in the story is:**

friendly / very brave/ very sad / very sorry / ready to help

4 **Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.**

1) The Woodman lived in the field.
2) He asked Dorothy where she and her friend were going.
3) The Scarecrow told the Woodman why they wanted to see the Wizard.
4) The Lion lived in a thick forest.
5) The Lion attacked Toto first.
6) Dorothy wasn' t afraid of the Lion.
7) Dorothy invited the Woodman and the Lion to go to the Emerald City.

5 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

1) The Lion said he knew he was a coward.
2) Dorothy shouted at the beast.
3) The Lion was very glad to go to the Emerald City with the friends.
4) Suddenly they met a funny man who was made of tin.
5) The Lion wanted to bite Toto.
6) The Tin Woodman said he had no heart.
7) They came to a thick forest.
8) The Lion attacked the friends.
9) The Lion jumped on the road.
10) The Woodman said he wanted to come along with Dorothy.
11) Dorothy explained why they were on the way to see the Great Wizard.
12) They started for the Emerald City.

6 Answer the questions.

1) Was the Woodman made of wood?
2) What did he have in his right hand?
3) What did the Woodman ask Dorothy and the Scarecrow about?
4) Did the Woodman have a heart?
5) Did Dorothy and her companions see or hear the Lion first?
6) Was the Lion big or small?
7) Did the Lion have strong paws?
8) Was Toto afraid of the Lion?
9) What did Dorothy do when the Lion gave a blow to her friends?
10) What did the Lion want to ask the Wizard about?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Read the words.

head	had	heart	heard
her	here	were	there

2 Complete the descriptions. The words from the box can help you.

a)

body
head
heart
arms
legs
hand
woodman

The stranger looked funny: his ________ , his ________ and ________ were made of tin. His ________ was made of tin too. In his right ________ he had an axe. He was a ________ . He said he had no ________ and couldn't be happy without it.

b)

king
beasts
roar
scared
brave
courage
coward

When the Lion met people or animals he ________ them with a terrible ________ . All the other ________ in the forest thought he was very ________ . People called the Lion the ________ of the Beasts, but Dorothy called him a ________ . The Lion wanted the Wizard to give him some ________ .

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy and her two companions came _____ a thick forest. Suddenly they heard a terrible roar _____ the forest and a big lion jumped _____ the road. With one blow _____ his paw he sent the Scarecrow _____ the ground. Then he gave a blow _____ the Woodman and the tin man fell _____ the ground and lay there. Toto didn't run _____ . He started barking _____ the big beast. Dorothy was not afraid _____ the Lion so she ran _____ _____ the Lion and gave him a blow _____ the nose.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the characters and events in the story:

tin	woodman
thick	blow
terrible	girl
strong	forest
brave	coward
big	roar

5 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.**
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Brains, the, head, into, some, to, ask, Scarecrow, will, him, his, put.
2) They, a, man, on, way, their, met, strange.
3) Cowards, bad, only, be, those, can, small, are, who, to.

6 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

1) "Where are you going?" asked the Woodman.
2) "Why are you going to the Emerald City?" asked the Woodman.
3) "Do you want to come with us to the Emerald City?" asked Dorothy.
4) "Do you want to see the Great Wizard of Oz?" Dorothy asked the Lion.

7 **Follow the model and make up sentences about other characters.**

In the story the Lion said:
"I don't want people to know that I am afraid of them."

Model: The *Lion didn't want people to know* that he was afraid of them.

Dorothy		people	to call him a fool
The Scarecrow	didn't want		to frighten her friends
The Lion			to run away from him
The little girl		the Lion	to bite Toto

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why:**

1) the Woodman looked strange.
2) the Tin Woodman decided to go with Dorothy.
3) the Lion attacked the three companions.
4) the Lion was afraid of people and animals.
5) Dorothy invited the Lion to come with her to the Emerald City.

2 **Prove that:**

1) the Woodman was friendly.
2) Toto was not afraid of the Lion.
3) Dorothy was a brave girl.
4) the Lion wasn't brave.
5) Dorothy wanted to help her new companions.

3 **Do you agree with Dorothy when she says:**

"Only cowards can be bad to those who are small"?

4 **Imagine that you are the Tin Woodman. Speak about:**

1) yourself.
2) the two people and the dog you met.
3) the accident (происшествие) in the forest.
4) what you want to ask the Wizard of Oz about and why.

5 **Read and write.**

As Dorothy was walking along the yellow brick road, she thought of what she would tell the Great Wizard about. She wanted to tell him about many things: the terrible storm, the Good Witch of the North and the silver shoes. She also wanted to tell him about herself, Toto and the three new companions she had. There were so many thoughts in her little head! She wished she could write them down. But she had neither paper to write on nor time to stop. Can you do it for her?

6 **Role-play.**
Work in pairs, read and then act out the talks:

1) between Dorothy and the Tin Woodman.
2) between Dorothy and the Lion.

Chapter Six

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "What do you want in the Emerald City?"
2) "Why can't he see us?"
3) "Does he never go out for a walk?"
4) "That is very strange, isn't it?"
5) "I don't know where Kansas prairie is."

2 Say who:

1) knocked at the gate.
2) opened the gate.
3) could change his form.
4) wore eye-glasses all the time.
5) gave a cry of surprise.
6) wore green clothes.

3 Say who in the story is:

talkative / surprised / frightened / silent / busy / happy

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The yellow brick road ended at the gate.
2) The gate opened very quickly.
3) The man at the gate wore green clothes.
4) The man at the gate didn't want to know who the visitors were.
5) The green box was full of emeralds.
6) The green man found a pair of glasses for every visitor.
7) Toto didn't like his glasses.
8) The people in the Emerald City greeted the visitors.
9) The children ran to have a look at the Lion.
10) The money in the city was green.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Little Dorothy and her friends went into the streets of the Emerald City.
2) A little man in a green suit opened the gate.
3) Everybody got a pair of eye-glasses.
4) The little green man asked why the friends wanted to see the Great Wizard.
5) Dorothy and her friends came to a great green wall.
6) The friends learned a lot of strange things about the Wizard.
7) The man locked all the glasses with his key.
8) They liked it very much.
9) Soon they saw a big wonderful palace.
10) Dorothy knocked at the gate.

6 Answer the questions:

1) What was the colour of the wall around the Emerald City?
2) How many gates were there in the wall?
3) Did the man at the gate know what the Great Wizard looked like?
4) Was the little green man sure that the Wizard would help all the visitors?
5) What did the friends have to put on before coming into the Emerald City?
6) What were the houses in the Emerald City made of?
7) Were there any animals in the city?
8) Were there any people in the city?
9) Were there any shops in the city?
10) What was sold in the shops?
11) Where did the friends see the palace?
12) Did Dorothy and her friends like the city?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	after	asked	wall	large	glasses
[i:]	speak	green	head	easy	people

2 Complete the descriptions. The words from the box can help you.

beard bird eye-glasses fairy face hair cat clothes changed monkey order right

a) The man at the gate looked strange: his _______ , his _______ and _______ were green. His _______ were green too. He said he couldn't let the friends into the city without green _______ .That was the _______ of the Great Wizard.

b) When the Wizard met people he _______ his form. Some people said he looked like a _______ or a _______ . Other people said he looked like a _______ . And some said he looked like a beautiful _______ . But nobody knew what his _______ form was.

3 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the characters and events in the story:

high	collection
thick	box
large	gate
little	palace
silver	wall
wonderful	key

4 The letters in the words below are jumbled up.

a) Put the letters in the right order and guess the words.

- earths
- rainbs
- rageouc

b) Can you say where the Wizard kept these things?

5 Write down the plural form of the words below:

child	
box	
man	
city	
woman	
fairy	

6 Fill in the missing articles.

After ___ long walk Dorothy and her friends came to ___ great green wall. ___ wall was high and thick and it went around ___ Emerald City. There was ___ gate in ___ wall. Dorothy knocked at ___ gate. When ___ gate opened they saw ___ little man in ___ green suit. Near him there was ___ large green box. When ___ man found out why Dorothy and her companions wanted to see ___ Wizard, he said he was not sure if ___ Great Wizard would see them. He said that ___ Wizard never left ___ palace. He sat in ___ Great Throne Room and never went out for ___ walk.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "He sees no men, women or children," answered the little green man.
2) "I want him to give me some brains," said the Scarecrow.
3) "I want him to give me a heart," said the Tin Woodman.

4) "I want him to give me some courage," said the Cowardly Lion.
5) "I don't know where Kansas prairie is. But I hope the Great Wizard will find it for you," said the little man.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why the little man in a green suit:

1) looked strange.
2) wasn't sure if the Wizard would see the four visitors.
3) said that the Wizard was terrible.
4) asked the friends to put on the eye-glasses.
5) locked the glasses at the back of their heads with a little

2 Prove that:

1) it was not easy to get into the Emerald City.
2) the little green man followed the rules of the country.
3) the people of the Emerald City were surprised to see the visitors.
4) the children of the Emerald City were afraid of the Lion and the dog.
5) Dorothy and her friends thought the city was wonderful.

3 Imagine that you are the little green man. Speak about:

1) the life in the the Emerald City.
2) the rules of the Emerald City.
3) the Great Wizard.

4 Role-play.

a) Work in groups of three, make up little conversations between:

1) the little green man, Dorothy and the Scarecrow.
2) Dorothy, the Tin Woodman and the little green man.
3) Dorothy, the Lion and the little green man.

b) Work in pairs and make up a conversation between a salesman in a shop and a little boy.

The boy comes to the shop to buy some sweets and nuts. He has just seen an unusual group of people in town and is giving the news to the salesman. When the salesman looks out of the window he sees the strangers himself!

c) Work in pairs and make up a conversation between a mother and her little daughter.

The mother is at home making a new dress for her daughter, when the little girl runs into the house very frightened. The mother asks her what the matter is and finds out that the child has just seen some terrible beasts in the street. She doesn't know what they are.

When you are ready, role-play your conversations in front of the class.

Chapter Seven

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I have never seen him."
2) "That is very kind of the Great Wizard."
3) "You must help me first."
4) "But I cannot do it."
5) "Remember - she is very, very wicked."

2 Say who:

1) informed the Wizard of the visitors.
2) waited for a long time.
3) went to see the Wizard first.
4) looked at silver shoes with interest.
5) asked for help.

3 **Say who in the story is:**

full of hope / helpful / terribly frightened / unkind / very unhappy / very sorry

4 **Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.**

1) That day the Wizard was in the Throne Room.
2) The Green Soldier asked the friends to wait.
3) The Green Soldier informed the Wizard of the visitors.
4) The Great Wizard asked the soldier a lot of questions.
5) Dorothy and her friends didn't wait long for the soldier to come back.
6) The soldier brought good news.
7) Oz wanted to see all the friends together.
8) Each of the friends had his room in the palace.
9) When the bell rang the soldier came up to Dorothy.
10) The Wizard looked at Dorothy's shoes with interest.

5 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

1) The Wizard said that Dorothy was strong.
2) The Wizard wanted to see each of the friends alone.
3) When she saw the Wizard she was frightened.
4) Dorothy thought she could never do what the Wizard wanted.
5) The Big Head looked at Dorothy and spoke.
6) Dorothy took courage and answered.
7) The Big Head studied the girl's shoes.
8) Dorothy went to see the Wizard first.
9) Dorothy protested and asked for help again.
10) The Wizard gave a task to the girl.
11) Then she went to her room and cried.
12) She went to her friends and repeated the words of the Wizard.

6 **Answer the questions.**

1) Was the soldier at the palace door helpful?
2) What did he do?
3) Did the Green Soldier see the Wizard?

4) How did he talk to the Wizard?
5) Did the Wizard agree to see the friends?
6) How did Dorothy know that it was time to go to the Throne Room?
7) What shape was the Throne Room?
8) What did Dorothy see in the Throne Room?
9) Did the Big Head look friendly?
10) Did the Wizard know that Dorothy had the magic shoes on?
11) What task did the Wizard give Dorothy?
12) Was the girl happy to fulfil it?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **How well do you know the rules of reading?**
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	glasses	arms	after	want	last	aunt
[i:]	East	people	head	screen	between	
[ou]	alone	throne	only	some	open	home

2 **Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.**

saw
waited
opened
rang
spoke
repeated
opened
closed
asked
help
send
came

1) Dorothy and her friends __________ for a long time.
2) The Green Soldier __________ to the Wizard through a screen.

3) Suddenly a bell __________ and a green girl __________ up to Dorothy.
4) Dorothy __________ a throne in the room.
5) The mouth __________ and said: "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible."
6) The eyes of the Head __________ and __________ three times.
7) Dorothy __________ the Wizard to __________ her back home.
8) The Wizard asked the girl to __________ him first.
9) Dorothy __________ the words of the Wizard to her friends.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

There was a soldier _____ the palace door. The little man said _____ the soldier that the visitiors wanted to come _____ . The soldier invited the visitors _____ the waiting room and went _____ the Throne room. He spoke _____ the Wizard _____ the screen which was _____ _____ _____ them. The Wizard was _____ it. He said that he would see the visitors and decide what he could do _____ them. Each of the visitors should come _____ his room alone.

4 Match the words with opposite meanings, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the characters and events in the story:

long	terrible
round	rich
wonderful	wicked
poor	small
great	short
kind	weak
strong	square

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Palace, will, at, for, days, stay, you, some, the.
2) Head, of, the, eyes, her, looked, at, a, for, minute.
3) I, aunt, know, where, unhappy, doesn't, because, that, my, is, she, know, am, I.

6 How many irregular verbs can you find in the box in Exercise 2? Write them out in the infinitive and give their second and third forms.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "These people want to see the Wizard," said the little man.
2) "I have never seen him," answered the soldier.
3) "That is the signal, " said the green girl.
4) "I want to go home," said Dorothy.
5) "What do you want of me?" asked the Head.
6) "I want you to send me back to Kansas,"answered Dorothy.

8 Follow the model and make up sentences about other characters.

Model: Dorothy wanted the Wizard to send her back home.

Dorothy		the Wizard	to ...
The Scarecrow			to ...
The Lion	wanted		to ...
The Tin Woodman		Dorothy	to ...
The Wizard			to ...

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) the Green Soldier spoke to the Wizard through the screen.
2) the Wizard wanted the visitors to stay at the Palace for some days.
3) Dorothy was frightened when she saw the Wizard.
4) Dorothy didn't want to stay in the Land of Oz.
5) the Wizard looked at Dorothy's shoes.
6) the Wizard thought Dorothy was strong.
7) the Wizard gave a task to Dorothy.
8) the friends were sorry for Dorothy.

2 **Prove that:**

1) nobody has ever seen the Wizard.
2) the Wizard could really change his form.
3) Dorothy was a brave girl.
4) the Wizard knew about the magic of the silver shoes.
5) the Witch of the West was wicked.
6) Dorothy has lost hope to get home soon.

3 **Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:**

1) the Palace and the people that you saw in it.
2) the Wizard as you saw him.
3) what you asked the Wizard about.
4) the task that the Wizard gave you.

4 **Read and write.**

After the visit to the Wizard Dorothy went back to the room where her friends were. She didn't look happy and she said: "There is no hope for me." What do you think her friends asked her about? Make a list of six questions, write them down. You may use them in the role-play (Exercise 6, b.)

5 **What is your opinion?**

1) Do you think the Wizard did it right when he asked Dorothy to help him first?
   Do you remember what exactly he said?
2) What would you think of your friend if he / she said: "You ask me to help you. And what will you do for me?"
3) Dorothy loved the Land of Oz. She thought it was very beautiful. But she wanted to go home. What makes home?
4) Do you agree with the saying "East or West, home is best"?

6 **Role-play.**

a) Work in pairs, read and then act out the talks:

1) between Dorothy and the Green Soldier;
2) between the Wizard and Dorothy.

b) Work in groups of four and role-play the following scene:

The Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion are worried about Dorothy. It has been a long time since she went to see the Wizard. They got into one room. Dorothy comes in. She looks very unhappy. The friends understand that something wrong has happened and ask her some questions. They feel sorry for poor Dorothy, but they don't know what to do.

Chapter Eight

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 **Who said it?**

1) "I don't want to be a fool."
2) "How can I help you?"
3) "It's all the same to me..."
4) "Did you see the Big Head?"
5) "What must I do?"
6) "Tomorrow I shall go to see the Wizard."

2 **Say who:**

1) took the Scarecrow to the Wizard.
2) greeted the Scarecrow.
3) met the Tin Woodman in the throne room.
4) wanted to frighten the Wizard.

3 **Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.**

1) The Green Soldier came for the Scarecrow in the morning.
2) The Scarecrow spoke first.
3) The Scarecrow thought the Wizard had a lot of brains.
4) The Wizard thought the Scarecow was very strong.
5) The Wizard gave a new task to the Scarecrow.
6) The Scarecrow didn't understand the Wizard's task.

7) The same morning the Green Soldier came for the Woodman.
8) The Woodman was not afraid of the Beast.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The Cowardly Lion wanted to help his friends.
2) The Wizard gave a task to the Scarecrow.
3) The Tin Woodman went back to his friends.
4) The Scarecrow came into the Great Throne Room.
5) The Tin Woodman asked the Wizard to give him a heart.
6) The Scarecrow asked the Wizard to give him some brains.
7) The Woodman told the Beast that he had no heart.
8) The friends were very sorry for the Scarecrow.
9) The Tin Woodman saw a Terrible Beast on the Throne.
10) The Wizard told the Woodman to help Dorothy.

5 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Beautiful Girl look like?
2) What did the Wizard want the Scarecrow to do?
3) Did the Wizard promise to help the Scarecrow?
4) What did the Beast look like?
5) How many eyes did the Beast have?
6) What did the Wizard want the Woodman to do?
7) What did the Wizard promise to give to the Woodman?
8) Did the friends discuss the results of their visits to the Wizard?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	asked	last	heart	are	made	aunt	
[i:]	beast	repeat	great	green	please		
[au]	down	loud	coward	because	about		
[ɔ:]	all	form	straw	wall	shall	roar	morning

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

emerald clever real green beautiful long big great terrible poor strong

1) When the Scarecrow came into the room, he saw a _______ Girl on the _______ throne.
2) Her hair was _______ and _______ .
3) She looked at the Scarecrow and said: "I am Oz, the _______ and _______ ."
4) The Scarecrow thought the Wizard was very _______ , because he had a lot of brains.
5) The Beast was very _______ and looked very _______ .
6) The Tin Woodman wanted to be a _______ man.
7) The friends were sorry for the _______ Woodman.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

When the Tin Woodman came _____ the Great Throne Room, he saw a Terrible Beast _____ the throne. The Beast looked _____ the Woodman and said a _____ loud voice: "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible." The Woodman was not afraid _____ the Beast, because there was no heart _____ his body. He was not a real man, he was made _____ tin. He came to the Wizard to ask him _____ a heart. The Wizard listened _____ the Woodman and said that he would give him a heart, but first he wanted the Woodman to help Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch _____ the West. So the Tin Woodman went _____ _____ his friends. They were very sorry _____ the poor Woodman.

4 Check your pronunciation of past tense regular verbs.
As you know the *-ed* ending can be pronounced in three different ways: [d], [t], [ɪd]. Sort out the verbs in the box below into three columns.

[d]	[t]	[ɪd]

looked
helped
killed
asked
repeated
wanted
frightened
jumped
pushed

5 Fill in the missing forms of the irregular verbs in the box below, then find some sentences with these verbs in the chapter:

take		taken
come	came	
	saw	
say		said
make	made	
	told	
		given

6 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you, and what do you want of me?" said the Beautiful Girl on the throne.
2) "Please put some brains into my head," the Scarecrow asked the Beautiful Girl.
3) "Please give me a heart," the Woodman asked the Beast. "Help Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch," Oz gave a task to the Woodman.

7 Follow the model and make up other sentences.

Model: It's all the same to the Wizard who kills the witch.

		Dorothy		helps the friends
It's all the same	to	the Scarecrow	who	brings good news
		the Woodman		gives him brains
		Toto		changes his life
		the Lion		plays with him

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) the Green Soldier came twice to the friends' room.
2) Dorothy was sure that the Scarecrow saw the Big Head.
3) the Wizard changed his form.
4) the Wizard thought the Scarecrow was strong.
5) the Wizard gave the same task to the friends.
6) the friends were sorry for the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman.

2 Prove that:

1) the Wizard didn't like the Witch of the West.
2) the Wizard couldn't kill the Wicked Witch himself.

3) it was all the same for the Wizard who would kill the Witch.
4) it was more important for the Wizard to hear that the Wicked Witch was killed than to help the friends.

3 What did the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman say?
On behalf of one of the main characters speak about:

1) the Wizard as you saw him.
2) the help you wanted to get from the Wizard.
3) the task that the Wizard gave you.
4) what you thought of the task.

4 What is your opinion?

1) The Woodman said: "I want to become a real man." What did he mean by that?
2) Do you think the Wizard understood that the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman were Dorothy's friends?
3) Why did the Wizard give the same task to the friends?
4) Was the Wizard's task dangerous?
5) The Cowardly Lion said that he would roar and frighten the Wizard no matter what his form was. Why did the Lion want to frighten the Wizard?

5 Role-play.

a) Work in pairs, read and then act out the following talks:

1) between the Scarecrow and the Wizard;
2) between the Tin Woodman and the Wizard.

b) Work with a partner and role-play the following scene:

The Green Soldier knew what was happenning in the Palace very well, because every morning he took one of the friends to see the Wizard. He also knew how little luck each of them had. Imagine that it is already the end of the third day. Suddenly on his way home the soldier meets the little man in the green suit. They stop to have a little chat.

Chapter Nine

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "There is only one thing we can do".
2) "But can we do it?"
3) " I don't like strangers in my country".

2 Say who:

1) went to see the Wizard last.
2) opened the gate for the friends.
3) did much harm to people.
4) had lots of slaves.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

upset / angry / frightened / tired /wicked / full of anger / strong

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The Lion went up very near to the Ball of Fire.
2) The Wizard spoke in a very loud voice.
3) The Lion was afraid of the Ball of Fire.
4) The Lion believed that the Wizard could help him.
5) The three friends didn't know what to do.
6) The Lion thought there was only one way out.
7) Dorothy was frightened.
8) All the friends agreed that they should go to the West.
9) The Wicked Witch of the West had a telescope.
10) The Wicked Witch ordered to kill all the strangers.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The friends thanked the Green Soldier.
2) The slaves dropped the poor Woodman on the ground.

3) The friends decided to go to the West.
4) The monkeys brought Dorothy and the Lion to the Witch.
5) They walked for a long time and decided to have a rest.
6) They left the Emerald City and started to walk to the West.
7) The Witch ordered her slaves to kill the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow.
8) They pulled all the straw out of the Scarecrow's body.
9) They were so tired that they fell asleep.

6 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Lion see on the throne?
2) What did the Lion see in front of the throne?
3) Was the Ball of Fire very bright?
4) What did the Wizard say?
5) What did the Lion ask the Wizard for?
6) Did the Wizard give some courage to the Lion?
7) What did the Wizard ask the Lion to do?
8) Was the Lion unhappy?
9) When did the friends leave the Emerald City?
10) Who saw them off?
11) Did the friends know the way to the land of the Wicked Witch?
12) Where did the Wicked Witch of the West live?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite?
Fill in the boxes in the second column with matching words:

free people	
a little way off	
kind	
terrible	
strangers	

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

courage bright people far voice beasts harm telescope wicked

1) The Ball of Fire was so ________ that the Lion couldn't look at it.
2) Then a ________ came from the Ball of Fire.
3) The Lion asked the Wizard for some ________ because he was afraid of ________ and ________ .
4) The witch was very ________ and she did much ________ to people.
5) The witch could see very ________ with her only eye which was like a ________ .

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) *Fly to* those people.
2) The Monkeys *flew to* Dorothy and her friends.
3) Some of them took the Tin Woodman and *flew up* into the air.
4) Two monkeys took Dorothy and Toto and *flew* with them *to* the palace.
5) The monkeys *lifted* the Lion up into the air.
6) The monkeys *flew away* with the Lion.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Witch ordered her slaves to come _____ her. She told them to fly _____ the strangers and kill two _____ them. She wanted the monkeys to bring the little girl and the Lion _____ her house, because she wanted them to work _____ her. The monkeys flew _____ Dorothy and her friends. Some _____ the

monkeys took the Tin Woodman and flew ____ ____ the air. They dropped the poor Woodman ____ the ground and broke his arms and legs. Other monkeys pulled all the straw ____ ____ the Scarecrow's body and his head. Then they flew ____ ____ the air and dropped him ____ a tall tree.

5 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

1) Wizard's, the, Lion, the, back, his, words, went, repeated, to, friends, and.
2) The, ordered, slaves, witch, her, come, to, her, to.
3) The, strangers, flew,to, the, monkeys, brought, the, and, away, palace.

6 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to give		
to go		
to take		
to see		
to fly		
to fall		
to come		
to find		
to bring		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

1) "There is only one thing we can do," said the Lion.

2) "I shall go with you," said the Scarecrow.
3) "There are strangers in my country!" cried the Witch.
4) "I don't like strangers in my country," said the Witch.

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why:**

1) the Wizard changed his form again.
2) the Lion didn't jump at the Ball of Fire.
3) the Wizard gave the same task to the Lion.
4) the Lion was angry.
5) Dorothy changed her mind.
6) the friends didn't see the monkeys.
7) the Witch ordered to kill the Woodman and the Scarecrow.
8) the Witch ordered to bring Dorothy and the Lion to her.

2 **Prove that:**

1) the Lion changed his mind when he came into the Throne Room.
2) the friends believed that the Wizard would fulfil their wishes.
3) it wasn't easy for Dorothy to agree to the Lion's words.
4) the Wicked Witch of the West looked strange.
5) the Witch was very angry and aggressive.
6) the monkey-slaves looked unusual and were very strong.

3 **On behalf of the Lion speak about:**

1) the Wizard as you saw him.
2) the help you wanted to get from the Wizard.
3) the task that the Wizard gave you.
4) what you thought of the task.
5) what you thought the friends should do.
6) the Wicked Witch of the West and her slaves.

4 **Read and draw.**

1) Draw a picture of the Wicked Witch of the West.

2) When Dorothy was in the Munchkin Country she loved the countryside there.
What do you think she saw around in the country where the Witch of the West was the ruler?
3) Draw a picture of some monkey-slaves. Did they all look the same or different?

5 Role-play.

a) Work in pairs and act out the talk between the Cowardly Lion and the Wizard.

b) Work together in small groups and act out the talk between Dorothy and her friends when they take the decision to go to the West and fulfil the Wizard's task.

Chapter Ten

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I shall give you some work to do".
2) "Shall we ever see them again?"
3) "It is not your shoe, it is my shoe now!"
4) "What are you doing?"

2 Say who:

1) brought Dorothy to the palace.
2) knew about the magic of the shoes.
3) worked hard.
4) gave the Lion food.
5) often cried.
6) took a bath in the evening.
7) gave a loud cry.
8) melted like sugar.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

frightened / afraid of the dark/ afraid of water/ hungry / angry / surprised / happy

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) When the Witch saw Dorothy she was frightened.
2) When Dorothy saw the Witch she felt sorry for her.
3) The Witch understood that Dorothy knew nothing about the magic of the shoes.
4) The Witch wanted to get the shoes very much.
5) Dorothy wore the shoes all the time.
6) The Witch gave much work to Dorothy.
7) Dorothy worked long hours.
8) The Lion lived in the palace.
9) The Witch didn't give any food to the Lion.
10) Every morning Dorothy took a bath.
11) The Witch took one of the silver shoes when Dorothy was taking a bath.
12) When Dorothy threw a bucket of water at the Witch, the Witch grew larger.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Dorothy became very angry.
2) Dorothy ran to tell the good news to the Lion.
3) The Witch took the silver shoe and put it on.
4) The witch fell on the floor and became a brown dirty mass.
5) Once Dorothy ran against a bucket of water and fell down.
6) Dorothy took another bucket of water and threw it on the dirty mass.
7) One silver shoe fell off her foot.
8) Then she saw her silver shoe again.
9) The Witch ordered Dorothy to clean the kitchen.
10) Dorothy quickly put the shoe on her foot.

6 Answer the questions.

1) How did the Witch understand that Dorothy knew nothing about the magic of the shoes?

2) What did the Witch order the little girl to do?
3) What did the Witch promise to do with the little girl if she didn't work very well?
4) Was Dorothy afraid of the Witch?
5) How long did Dorothy stay in the Witch's palace?
6) Where did Dorothy take food for the Lion?
7) Did the Lion work for the Witch?
8) Did Dorothy think about her friends?
9) Did Dorothy take her shoes off during the day?
10) Did Dorothy know that the Witch was afraid of water?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite?
Fill in the boxes in the second column with matching words:

take away	
clean	
slave	
forget	
beginning	

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

afraid agreed because bucket dirty food melted kitchen slave sugar

1) The Witch made Dorothy her _______ .
2) The poor girl was so frightened that she _______ to work for the Witch.
3) The Lion didn't get any _______ from the Witch_______ he didn't want to work for her.
4) The witch didn't go to Dorothy's room because she was _______ of water.
5) Dorothy ran against a _______ of water in the _______ .
6) The Witch first became smaller and then _______ like _______ .
7) Dorothy looked at the floor and saw only some _______ mass.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Dorothy often *cried.*
2) She *cried* to the witch: "Give me back my shoe!"
3) At once the wicked woman *gave a* loud *cry.*
4) "Don't you see I am melting,", *cried* the Witch.
5) She *picked up* the bucket.
6) She took another bucket of water and *threw* it at the mass.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Witch ordered Dorothy to work ____ the kitchen ____ the palace. She ordered her to work well or she promised to make an end ____ her. For many days Dorothy worked hard ____ morning ____ night. ____ work Dorothy went ____ her room. She often cried. When she cried Toto sat ____ her feet and looked ____ her face. Neither Dorothy nor Toto could forget their friends. They were very sorry ____ them. Once Dorothy ran ____ a bucket ____ water ____ the kitchen. She fell ____ and one ____ her silver shoes came ____ .

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Witch, wanted, much, to, silver, were, on, feet, Wicked, the, very, get, the, shoes, which, Dorothy's.

2) Dorothy, up, the, water, picked, and, bucket, threw, of, it, the, Witch, at.
3) Witch, brown, the, became, fell, to, the, mass, floor, and, a, dirty.

6 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to bring		
to take		
to get		
to understand		
to begin		
to fall		
to know		
to forget		
to give		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

1) "I don't want to work for the Witch," said the Lion.
2) "I shall not give you the shoe," cried out the Witch.
3) "Some day I shall have the other shoe too!" said the Witch.
4) "What are you doing?" the Witch asked Dorothy.

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why:**

1) the Witch wanted to get the silver shoes.

2) the Witch made Dorothy her slave.
3) the Witch told Dorothy about the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow.
4) the Witch gave no food to the Lion.
5) Dorothy often cried.
6) it was difficult for the Witch to get hold of the shoes.
7) Dorothy became angry when the Witch took her shoe.
8) the Witch became smaller.

2 **Prove that:**

1) the Witch was afraid of the dark.
2) the Witch was afraid of water.
3) The Lion was not afraid of the Witch.
4) Dorothy threw the water at the Witch in anger.
5) the Witch knew her end was near.

3 **Look at the sentences in "Who said it" Exercise 1 and describe the situations in which they were said.**

4 **On behalf of Dorothy speak about:**

1) your life in the palace.
2) your friend the Lion and how you tried to help him.
3) the day the Witch melted and how it happened.

5 **Role-play.**

a) Every time Dorothy went to see the Lion she brought him some food. The Lion asked Dorothy about her life in the palace. Sometimes they discussed plans of getting away from the Wicked Witch, but Dorothy was frightened. Work in pairs and act out the talk between Dorothy and the Lion.

b) More than once the Witch tried to get hold of the magic shoes. And at last she has one of them on her foot! But what is it? The girl doesn't look frightened at all. Her voice is angry and she wants the Witch to give the silver shoe back to her. Work in pairs and act out the final talk between Dorothy and the Witch.

Chapter Eleven

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "First of all we must find our friends".
2) "Where are you, Great Wizard?"
3) "What happened to the Wicked Witch of the West?"
4) "You had a lot of time to think it over."
5) "We don't want to wait, you must do it at once."

2 Say who:

1) helped Dorothy to find her comrades.
2) repaired the Tin Woodman.
3) greeted the friends in the Throne Room.
4) made a lot of promises.
5) didn't want to wait.
6) wanted to frighten the Wizard.
7) frightened Toto.
8) ran away.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

busy / glad to help / very happy / grateful / full of hope

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Dorothy wanted to find her friends as soon as possible.
2) The monkeys were ready to help.
3) The monkeys were glad that there was no Witch of the West any more.
4) It was difficult to repair the Tin Woodman.
5) It wasn't easy to find the Scarecrow.
6) A lot of smiths worked to repair the Scarecrow.
7) The Scarecrow thanked his friends.
8) The monkeys took the friends to the Emerald City very quickly.
9) The friends were very happy to be back to the Emerald City.

10) The friends were surprised to see no Wizard in the Throne Room.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) At this moment the Lion roared and Toto ran away.
2) They decided to go back to the Emerald City as soon as possible.
3) They looked everywhere but they didn't see anybody.
4) The Wizard said he needed time to think.
5) The friends came into the Throne Room.
6) They waited and waited.
7) The friends didn't want to wait.
8) At last they heard the Voice of the Wizard.
9) Dorothy told the Wizard that there was no Witch of the West any longer.
10) The friends were together again.

6 Answer the questions:

1) Did the monkeys remember the place where they dropped the Tin Woodman?
2) Could the Woodman walk when the monkeys found him?
3) How long did the smiths work on the Woodman?
4) How did the friends repair the Scarecrow?
5) How soon did the friends get back to the Emerald City?
6) Did they meet the Green Soldier at the City gate?
7) What form did the Wizard take this time?
8) Did the Wizard remember about his promise?
9) What did the Wizard want to know first?
10) Did the Wizard want to fulfil his promises at once?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words and phrases in the columns:

first of all	to find
to lose	to break
to repair	at last
fall down	in the corner
in the centre	get up

2 **Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.**

body wings arms legs smiths screen corner clean tall

1) Dorothy asked the monkeys with ________ to help her.
2) Many ________ worked for three days and four nights on his ________ and ________ .
3) At the end of the day they saw a ________ tree, and the Scarecrow in it.
4) They put nice ________ straw into the Scarecrow's ________ .
5) They looked in every ________ of the Throne Room, but didn't see anybody.
6) The little dog ran against the ________ that stood in the corner.

3 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

1) The Tin Woodman began *to cut* the tree.
2) "Oh, let us *start for* the Emerald City at once!"
3) "You had a lot of time *to think it over.*"

4 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

1) The Tin Woodman was happy because he was _____ dear friends.
2) The friends lifted the Scarecrow _____ and carried him _____ to the palace.
3) When they put new straw _____ his body, the Scarecrow jumped _____ his feet _____ once.
4) The Wizard was _____ the Throne Room but the friends couldn't see him.

5) The Witch melted when Dorothy threw a bucket _____ water _____ her.
6) The Wizard said he needed time to think everything _____.
7) The dog ran _____ the screen that stood _____ the corner, and the screen fell _____ .

5 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.**
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Woodman, the, monkeys, Tin, brought, the, the, palace, to.
2) Dorothy, wanted, once, City, at, to, go, to, the, Emerald.
3) Many, the, walls, friends, passed, before, green, days, of, our, saw, the, city.

6 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

	found	
to let		
		flown
	could	
		seen
to cut		
	fell	
		thrown

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

1) "Where are you, Great Wizard?" asked Dorothy.
2) "I am here but you can't see me," said the Voice.

3) "We don't want to wait," cried the friends.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Dorothy decided to find her friends first.
2) the monkeys were glad to help.
3) the smiths worked very long on the Woodman.
4) the Woodman cut down a tall tree.
5) the friends wanted to go back to the Emerald City.
6) the friends had to wait for a long time.
7) the Wizard didn't take any form this time.
8) the Wizard wanted to hear the news about the Wicked Witch.
9) the Lion wanted to frighten the Wizard.
10) the Wizard wanted to have more time to think everything over.

2 Prove that:

1) Dorothy was a good friend.
2) the monkeys were not wicked.
3) the Tin Woodman was very helpful.
4) the Wizard didn't remember his promise.
5) the Wizard remembered his task well.
6) all the friends didn't want to wait for another day.

3 Look at the sentences in "Who said it" Exercise 1 and describe the situations in which they were said in more detail.

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

1) how the Tin Woodman was repaired.
2) how the Scarecrow was repaired.
3) what you thought of on the way back to the Emerald City.
4) how you got into the palace this time.
5) the meeting with the Wizard.

5 What is your opinion?

The author gave this chapter the name: "A friend in need is a friend indeed." Was he right? Did Dorothy and her friends prove to be real friends?

6 Role-play.

Working with some of your classmates, read the conversation between the four friends and the Wizard. Then act it out in class.

Chapter Twelve

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I saw Oz in the form of a Great Head."
2) "I saw Oz in the form of a Beautiful Girl."
3) "I saw Oz in the form of a Terrible Beast."
4) "I saw Oz in the form of a Ball of Fire."
5) "I fooled you all the time."
6) "You are a humbug."

2 Say who:

1) stood behind the screen.
2) didn't know what to say.
3) fooled all the people of the Land of Oz.
4) knew a lot of tricks.
5) showed some tricks to the old man for the first time.
6) called the poor old man the Wizard first.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

terribly frightened / greatly surprised / awfully wrong / worried

4 **Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.**

1) The little old man spoke in a loud voice.
2) The friends were greatly surprised to see the little old man.
3) The little old man had a great secret.
4) The old man was a humbug.
5) Some people in the country knew his secret.
6) The Witch of the West knew the Wizard's secret.
7) The man showed the friends how he made his tricks.
8) Dorothy asked the man to tell them his story.
9) The man used to work in a circus.
10) He made balloons himself.
11) One windy day the man went up in his balloon.
12) When the man came to a strange country he told the people in that land that he was a Wizard.

5 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

1) A lot of people came to greet him.
2) The man began to work in the circus.
3) The people called the man a Wizard.
4) He became a balloonist.
5) The man used to live in a small town near Kansas.
6) Once a man from a circus showed him some interesting tricks.
7) The little man from Kansas prairie became a terrible Wizard.
8) He often went high up in the sky in his balloon and made tricks.
9) Many people saw his balloon and came to buy tickets to the circus.
10) One evening a strong wind carried the balloon far away.
11) When the balloon came down the Kansas man saw a strange, but beautiful country.
12) Many people saw his balloon and came to buy tickets to the circus.
13) The man didn't tell them that it was a mistake.

6 **Answer the questions:**

1) What did the little man ask the friends about?
2) Did he really think that the friends could kill him?
3) Were the friends happy to learn that the man wasn't a Wizard?
4) What were the friends worried about most of all?
5) What did the Wizard think about their worries?
6) How did the old man change his form as a Wizard?
7) What did the Wizard keep in a small room behind the Throne Room?
8) What did the Wizard make the Great Head of?
9) How did the Wizard become a Terrible Beast?
10) Was it difficult for him to take the form of the Ball of Fire?
11) Where did the old man come from?
12) How did he learn to make tricks?
13) What did he do in the circus?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.**

paper kill cotton corner secret surprise skins thread burned fooled

1) The little man asked not to ________ him.
2) The friends looked at him in great ________ .
3) Nobody in the country knew the Wizard's ________ .
4) For many years Oz ________ all the people in the country.
5) In the ________ of the room they saw the Great Head. It was made of ________ .
6) When the Wizard pulled a ________ the Great Head opened and closed its eyes.
7) The Terrible Beast was made of lot of ________ .
8) The Ball of Fire was made of ________ and it ________ brightly.

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) "You are a *humbug*,"cried the Scarecrow.
2) "Oh, please don't think about those *little things*!"
3) "That was *one of my tricks*,"answered Oz.
4) "One day a man from the circus showed me some *tricks*."

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) The little man _____ the screen was terribly frightened.
2) My dear friends, please don't think _____ those little things!
3) How could you take the form _____ a Great Head?
4) He took them _____ a small room _____ the Throne Room.
5) My Ball _____ Fire was made _____ cotton and it burned brightly.
6) The balloonist began to work _____ the circus.
7) Every day he went in a baloon high _____ _____ the sky.

4 What did the friends see in the Wizard's secret room? Name three things in the room that could burn.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Land, for, of, the, many, years, I, Oz, fooled, all, the, people, of.
2) I, tell, am, my, going, to, story, you.
3) Kansas, small, he, a, was, in, town, born, near.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to buy		
to run		
to fall		
to think		
to stand		
to take		
to show		
to become		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "You are all wrong," said the old man.
2) "You are a humbug," cried the Scarecrow.
3) "Who knows here that you are a humbug?" asked Dorothy.
4) "They never see me and they think I am great and terrible!" said Oz.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) the little man behind the screen was frightened.
2) the little man spoke in a small voice.
3) the friends looked at him in great surprise.
4) the Wizard fooled the friends.
5) the Wizard fooled the people of the Land of Oz.
6) the Wizard called the friends' worries little things.
7) the old man told the friends his story.

2 Prove that:

1) the Wizard was a humbug.
2) the little old man had some talents.
3) Dorothy was interested in his story.

3 On behalf of the Wizard speak about:

1) your past.
2) your life in the Emerald City.

3) the tricks you made.
4) things you were afraid of in the Land of Oz.

4 What is your opinion?

1) Was the Wizard's story happy?
2) Did each of the friends listen to the old man's story with the same interest?
3) Did the man like to be called a *humbug*? Was he a humbug?

5 Role-play.

Working with some of your classmates, read the conversation between the four friends and the Wizard. Then act it out in class.

Chapter Thirteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "How did you become the Great Wizard?"
2) "The good people think they live in the Emerald City."
3) "I must think about all that."

2 Say who:

1) built the Emerald City.
2) called the new city "The Emerald City".
3) was afraid of witches.
4) learned magic.
5) promised to keep the secret.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

sad / surprised / angry / happy / full of hope

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The little old man didn't want to speak.
2) The Emerald City was built a long time ago.
3) The Emerald City was not made of emeralds.
4) The old man fooled the good people of the Land of Oz.
5) Oz told everybody to wear green glasses.
6) Oz was not happy in the new country from the first day.
7) He was always afraid of the Wicked Witches.
8) If the Witches wanted they could kill Oz easily.
9) Oz thought he was a bad man and a bad Wizard.
10) Oz said he would try to keep his promises.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The Wizard started his story.
2) As the Wizard was afraid of the Witch of the West he asked Dorothy to kill her.
3) First Oz told the good people to build the city and the palace.
4) The good people did it all very well.
5) Then Oz told the people to wear green glasses.
6) Dorothy asked the Wizard to tell them his story to the end.
7) The people believed that everything in the City was made of emeralds.
8) All the time the people liked the Wizard and were happy.
9) The Wizard said he would try to do his best to help them.
10) The four friends were very unhappy because the Wizard couldn't keep his promise.

6 Answer the questions:

1) What did Dorothy ask the little man about?
2) Who ordered to build the palace?
3) Were the people of the Land of Oz good builders?
4) Did they know that the City was not made of emeralds?
5) When was the City built?
6) How old was Oz when his balloon brought him into a new country?
7) What made the Wizard's life unhappy?

8) Did the Wizard understand that he made wrong promises?
9) What did the Wizard decide to do?
10) When did the Wizard ask the friends to come back?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words and phrases in the columns:

brave	to break
to build	to take off
to wear	cowardly
to laugh	to cry

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

brave easily ready humbug magic witches try

1) There were two wicked ________ in the country and they could kill the Wizard ________ .
2) The Wizard was so afraid of the Witch of the West that he was ________ to make any promise.
3) The Wizard didn't want to be a ________ any longer.
4) During many years the Wizard learned ________ .
5) The Wizard thought that Dorothy was a ________ girl.
6) The old man said he would ________ to send Dorothy back to Kansas prairie.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) "*Go on, go on* with your story," said Dorothy.
2) "I told them to build this city and my palace," the old man *went on*.

3) Every day the man *went* in a balloon high *up* in the sky.
4) The friends *went back* to their rooms.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The good people thought they lived _____ the Emerald City. They thought everything _____ them was green. They believed the palace was made _____ emeralds, but it was made _____ glass. The Wizard told them to wear glasses, so that everything was green _____ them.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) From, that, green, time, on, for, them, all, was.
2) The, when, the, balloon, man, was, very, a, new, young, brought, him, to, country.
3) Wizard, during, all, the, learned, these, years, magic.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to build		
to think		
to bring		
to fall		
to send		
to keep		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "How did you become the Great Wizard?" asked Dorothy.

2) "I think you are a very bad man," said the girl.
3) "I can't do what I promised you to do,"said the Wizard.
4) "Who will give me some brains?" asked the Scarecrow.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Dorothy wanted the Wizard to go on with his story.
2) the Wizard called the people in the Emerald City "good people".
3) the Wizard told the people to wear green eye-glasses.
4) the Wizard was not happy.
5) the Wizard asked Dorothy and her friends to kill the Witch of the West.
6) the Wizard was sorry.
7) the Wizard asked the friends to come back to him on the following day.

2 Prove that:

1) the Wizard was not happy with his life in the Emerald City.
2) the Wizard really wanted to help the four friends.
3) the friends were full of hope again.

3 On behalf of the Wizard speak about:

1) how the Emerald City was built.
2) the happiest days of your life in the Emerald City.
3) why you don't want to be a humbug any more.
4) why you want to help the four friends.

4 What is your opinion?

"I am not a bad man, but I am a bad Wizard," said the little old man. Was he right or was he wrong?

Chapter Fourteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "Look how wise I am now!"
2) "I must cut a small hole in your breast first."
3) "I shall never forget your help."
4) "I am full of courage."

2 Say who:

1) got up very early.
2) went to the Throne Room.
3) laughed very much.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

busy / sorry / happy / surprised / proud / grateful / sad

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The Scarecrow got up very early.
2) The little old man couldn't sleep that night.
3) The Scarecrow found the little man in the Throne Room.
4) The Wizard made new brains for the straw man out of pins.
5) The new brains were very sharp.
6) The Wizard cut a small hole in the right side of the Woodman's breast.
7) The new heart was made of red paper.
8) The Woodman asked if the heart was beautiful.
9) The Wizard kept courage in a box.
10) The Lion had to drink courage.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The Scarecrow found the little man in the small room.

2) The Tin Woodman went into the Trone Room.
3) The Wizard thought hard how to help Dorothy.
4) The Wizard laughed with joy as he looked at the three friends.
5) The Wizard filled the Scarecrow's head with lots of pins.
6) The Cowardly Lion drank courage very quickly.
7) The Scarecrow's head looked very big and there were many pins in it.
8) The Woodman loved his new heart very much.
9) The Lion became full of courage.
10) The Woodman ran back to his friends.
11) The Wizard put a kind heart into the hole in the Woodman's breast.

6 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Wizard make the brains of?
2) How did the Wizard put the brains into the Scarecrow's head?
3) What did the Wizard make the Woodman's heart of?
4) Where did the Wizard keep the heart?
5) How did the Wizard put the new heart into the Woodman's body?
6) What did the Wizard make courage of?
7) What colour was courage?
8) Where did the Wizard keep courage?
9) How did the Lion become full of courage?
10) Did the Wizard make the three friends happy?
11) Did the Wizard have a plan how to send Dorothy back to Kansas?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Which of the verbs in each line is the Odd One Out?

[-t]	knocked	asked	promised	pulled	thanked
[-d]	believed	helped	filled	cleaned	remembered

2 Find in the story sentences with the following words and read them out loud:

clever	behind	shoulder	pins
sharp	hole	silk	courage

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

breast cup hole found knocked pulled silk wine wise

1) When the Scarecrow came up to the Throne Room he _______ at the door.
2) The Scarecrow _______ the little man in the small room.
3) Oz took the Scarecrow's head off and _______ the straw out of it.
4) "I think I am already _______ with my new brains."
5) The Wizard cut a small _______ in the Woodman's _______ .
6) The new heart was made of _______ .
7) The Wizard gave the green _______ full of red _______ to the Lion.

4 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) "I must *take* your head *off*,"said Oz.
2) "*Take* it *off*," said the Scarecrow.
3) Oz went to a cupboard and *took out* a small box.
4) The Wicked Witch of the West never *took* a bath.

5 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Oz took the Scarecrow's head ____ and pulled the straw ____

_____ it. He put a lot _____ pins _____ the straw. He filled the head _____ all that. Then he put the head back _____ the Scarecrow's shoulders and said _____ him: "Now you have a lot _____ brains." The Scarecrow thanked Oz very much and said: "I think I am already wise _____ my new brains."

6 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

1) I, at, last, shall, brains, in, my, have, head.
2) Oz, into, a, put, lot, straw, of, pins, the.
3) He, his, cupboard, went, to, and, green, took, cup, out, a.

7 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

	got up	
	went	
	understood	
	thought	
	cut	
	drank	

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

8 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

1) "I am going to the Great Wizard," said the Scarecrow.
2) "I know you have no brains, but I like you as you are," said Dorothy.
3) "I remember it very well," said Oz.
4) "I shall never forget your help," said the Tin Woodman.
5) "I have come to get my courage," said the Lion.

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why:**

1) the Wizard made the brains for the Scarecrow out of pins.
2) the Tin Woodman asked if the Wizard wanted to give him a kind heart.
3) the Cowardly Lion had to drink courage.
4) the three friends were very happy.
5) Oz laughed very much.
6) Oz thought that the three friends were very funny.
7) it wasn't easy for Oz to make Dorothy happy.

2 **Prove that:**

1) the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Cowardly Lion wanted to share (*поделиться*) their joy with their friends.
2) the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Cowardly Lion were ready to do anything the Wizard asked them for.
3) each of the friends believed that the poor old man was a Great Wizard.
4) the thought of Dorothy made the Wizard sad.

3 **On behalf of one of the characters speak about your visit to Oz. Describe in details:**

1) how Oz met you.
2) what you saw in his room.
3) what Oz asked you to do.
4) what you felt.
5) how you thanked the Wizard.
6) who you wanted to share your happiness with.

4 **What is your opinion?**

"I told them that I'm a bad Wizard, but they don't believe me and ask to do things that I can't do. So *they* make a humbug of me!" thought the little old man. Was he right or was he wrong? Why did the friends believe him?

5 **Work in pairs and act out the talk between:**

1) the Scarecrow and the Wizard.
2) Dorothy and the Scarecrow.
3) the Tin Woodman and the Wizard.
4) the Lion and the Wizard.

6 **Read and write.**

Dorothy felt very happy for her friends. She was happy that the Scarecrow had new sharp brains, and the Tin Woodman had a kind heart, and the Lion was full of courage. All her friends' wishes came true.Was there anybody in the Land of Oz she could share her happiness with? Of course, there was! Dorothy remembered the Good Witch of the North and sat down to write a letter to her. What do you think the little girl wrote to her about?

Chapter Fifteen

? ***Checking Comprehension***

1 **Who said it?**

1) "Do you want to go with me?"
2) "The Great Oz is going to see his brother-wizard, who lives in the air."
3) "I know he will be a very good ruler."
4) "Oz was always our friend."

2 **Say who:**

1) talked about wonderful ideas.
2) worked to make a balloon.
3) brought a big basket.
4) tied the basket to the balloon.
5) made a big fire.
6) flew away in the balloon.

3 **Say who in this Chapter is:**

worried / happy / full of ideas / glad / helpful / in panic

4 **Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.**

1) The little girl was unhappy.
2) On the fourth day the Wizard sent for Dorothy.
3) Dorothy walked to the Throne Room.
4) The Wizard thought the best way to get back to Kansas was through air.
5) The Wizard knew a lot about making balloons.
6) The Wizard was going to stay in the Emerald City.
7) Dorothy helped the Wizard to make a balloon.
8) The people of the City gathered together in front of the palace.
9) They saw the Wizard for the first time in their lives.
10) Dorothy found Toto in the big basket.
11) The balloon rose into the air without Dorothy.

5 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

1) The Wizard couldn't make the balloon go down.
2) The Wizard called Dorothy to the palace.
3) Dorothy learned that Oz wanted to come with her.
4) When the balloon was ready the Green Soldier spoke to the good people.
5) The good people of the Emerald City cried "Good-bye" to the Wizard.
6) The Tin Woodman made a big fire.
7) The Wizard told Dorothy about his plan.
8) The balloon was ready to go into the air.
9) Dorothy couldn't find Toto.
10) They began to build a balloon.
11) Suddenly the balloon flew up into the air.

6 **Answer the questions.**

1) How many days didn't Dorothy see the Wizard?
2) What did the Scarecrow do?

3) What did the Tin Woodman do?
4) What did the Lion do?
5) When did the Wizard send for Dorothy?
6) Did the Wizard have a plan how to help Dorothy?
7) Did the Wizard want to make a cyclone?
8) Did the Wizard have a balloon?
9) What did the Wizard decide to make a balloon of?
10) What did he want to fill the balloon with?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Which of the verbs in each line is the Odd One Out?

[-t]	passed	talked	walked	loved	worked
[-d]	tied	cried	wanted	lived	remembered

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

circus
called
silk
gas
falls
fool
obey
remembered
ruler

1) The Wizard wanted to make the balloon out of ________ .
2) Hot air is not so good as ________ . But there was no ________ in all the country.
3) Hot air becomes cold very quickly, and the balloon ________ .
4) Oz wanted to leave the country because he didn't want to ________ the good people any longer.
5) Oz thought that he could work for the ________ again.
6) Oz believed the Scarecrow would be a good ________ , so the people of the country must ________ him and like him.

7) The good people ________ the Wizard their friend and always ________ him.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) "Quick! Or the balloon will *rise*," said Oz.
2) Oz *put out* his hand to help Dorothy, but at that moment the balloon suddenly *rose* into the air.
3) "In my *absence* the Scarecrow will rule the country," said Oz.
4) "I know he will be a very good *ruler*, so you must *obey* and like him."

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Tin Woodman made a big fire ____ front ____ the palace. Oz held the balloon ____ the fire. Soon the balloon was full ____ hot air. The Wizard got ____ a basket and said ____ the people that he was going to visit his brother-wizard who lived ____ the sky. ____ his absence he asked the Scarecrow to be the ruler ____ the Emerald City.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Kansas, the, back, best, through, way, to, get, to, is, the, air.
2) The, green, brought, a, big, basket, soldier.
3) The, tied, the, old, basket, to, the, balloon, man.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to get		
		known
	came	
to become		

	began	
to rise		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "I shall make the balloon out of silk," said the Wizard.
2) "I am afraid to go out of my rooms," said the Wizard.
3) "I can't find Toto," cried the little girl.
4) "I can't come back," cried Oz from the basket.
5) "We shall never forget our good friend,"cried the good people.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why the Wizard:

1) didn't send for Dorothy for three days.
2) wanted to fly away by air.
3) didn't want to stay in the Land of Oz.
4) asked Dorothy for help.
5) spoke to the good people of the Emerald City.
6) asked the Scarecrow to rule his city in his absence.
7) couldn't help Dorothy and Toto to get into the basket.
8) couldn't come back.

2 Prove that:

1) the Wizard knew a lot about balloon-making.
2) it wasn't easy to make the balloon.
3) the good people of the Emerald City loved Oz.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about your visit to Oz. Describe in details:

1) how Oz met you.

2) what you saw in his room.
3) what Oz told you about.
4) what surprised you in his words.
5) what Oz asked you to do.
6) how you felt.
7) who you wanted to share your happiness with.

4 What is your opinion?

1) Why did the Wizard think the Scarecrow would make a good ruler?
2) Why didn't the Wizard ask the Tin Woodman or the Lion to rule the Emerald City?

5 Work in pairs and act out the talk between Dorothy and the Wizard.

6 Read and draw.

You know that the Wizard came to the Land of Oz in a balloon. It was a professional circus balloon, wasn't it? How different was that balloon from the one the Wizard made with Dorothy and her friends? Draw a picture of two balloons and explain the difference to your classmates.

7 Read and write.

a) When the Scarecrow inspected the Throne Room, he found a lot of drawings of hot air balloons. But there were no instructions how to make one. The Scarecrow was puzzled. Can you help him and write a good instruction how to make a hot air balloon?

b) The good people of the Emerald City had a special book in which they wrote down information about all great events in the city. There was a page describing the day when a good Wizard came to their country, and several pages about Dorothy's visit. What do you think the good people wrote in that book about the Wizard's last day in the City?

Chapter Sixteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "But I don't want to live here."
2) "But what can we do, how can we help you?"
3) "I know she will help you, she is very kind."
4) "I want to help Dorothy. I am not cowardly now."

2 Say who:

1) cried all the time.
2) sat on the big throne.
3) told the friends about Ozma.
4) walked through dangerous woods.
5) met the friends at Ozma's palace.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

unhappy / sorry for Dorothy / wishing to help / thoughtful / very kind / brave

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The friends felt sorry for Dorothy.
2) The Scarecrow thought hard and he had a plan.
3) The Green Soldier told the friends about Ozma.
4) Ozma was the Good Witch of the North.
5) Dorothy knew Ozma.
6) The Soldier said that Ozma was very kind.
7) The road to the Country of the South was full of wonders.
8) The Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion decided to go with Dorothy.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) The Scarecrow sat on the throne and thought.

2) All the friends decided to come along with Dorothy.
3) They saw green fields and nice gardens full of fruit.
4) Early in the morning the friends left the Emerald City.
5) He thought how they could help Dorothy to get back home.
6) The Green Soldier said that only Ozma could help Dorothy.
7) Dorothy asked the girl-soldiers to take her to Ozma.
8) The Scarecrow asked the Green Soldier to come into the Throne Room.
9) The road to the South was full of many dangers.
10) Ozma asked the friends to come into her Throne Room.

6 Answer the questions:

1) What made the Tin Woodman cry?
2) What did the Scarecrow want Dorothy to do?
3) Was the Scarecrow the ruler of the Land of Oz?
4) Who was the ruler of the Land of Oz?
5) Where did Ozma live?
6) Did the friends start for the Country of the South at once?
7) What happened at the gate of the Emerald City in the morning?
8) Was the Country of the South far away?
9) Was the road pleasant?
10) How did the friends know that they came to the Country of the South?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	garden	ask	want	heart	last
[ai]	time	high	cried	kind	live
[ei]	take	danger	way	palace	stay

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

cowardly
gate
giants
forests
once
leave
mountains
way

1) Dorothy wanted to go to the Country of the South at _______ .
2) As the Lion was no longer _______ he decided to come along with Dorothy.
3) The kind heart told the Woodman not to _______ Dorothy.
4) The Green Soldier opened the _______ for them.
5) They walked through dark _______ and went up high _______ .
6) Wicked _______ tried to kill them.
7) It was a very long _______ to the Country of the South.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) With these words the soldier *left* the room.
2) "How can I *leave* her now when she wants my help?"
3) The friends *left* the Emerald City early in the morning.
4) Wicked *giants* tried to kill them.
5) The girl-soldier *took* our friends to a big Throne Room.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

On the way ____ the Country ____ the South the friends met ____ many dangers, but each time their love ____ one another helped them. At last they came ____ a rich and happy country. They saw a lot ____ green fields and nice gardens full ____ fruit. Then the friends came ____ a very beautiful palace. Three young girl-soldiers stood ____ the gate. The girl-soldiers looked ____ the little girl and her companions ____ a smile. One ____ them came ____ ____

Dorothy and asked:"Where do you come ____ ? What do you want ____ the Country ____ the South?" Dorothy told the girl-soldier who they were and asked her to take them ____ Ozma.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Dorothy, poor, all, the, cried, time.
2) Dorothy, to, home, soon, hoped, get.
3) Green, early, Soldier, next, unlocked, morning, their, the, eye-glasses.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to see		
to stand		
to find		
to leave		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "I want to go back to Kansas and live with Aunt Em and Uncle Henry," cried Dorothy.
2) "Ozma is the ruler of the Land of Oz," said the Green Soldier.
3) "How shall I find her?" asked the little girl.
4) "It's very easy to find her palace, but the way there is full of dangers," said the soldier.
5) "We shall start tomorrow morning," said Dorothy.
6) "What is your name?" asked one of the girl-soldiers.
7) "Ozma asks you to come in," the girl said to Dorothy.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why the Scarecrow:

1) sat on the throne.
2) wanted Dorothy not to think about Kansas.
3) wanted Dorothy to live in the Emerald City.
4) thought hard.
5) wanted to come along with Dorothy to the Country of the South.

2 Prove that:

1) the Tin Woodman was very sorry for Dorothy.
2) the Scarecrow had sharp brains.
3) the friends couldn't leave Dorothy without help.
4) the way to the South was full of dangers.
5) the Country of the South looked beautiful.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

1) why you were not happy in the beautiful Emerald City.
2) how you first heard of Ozma.
3) what you thought of your friends' decision to come along with you.
4) the way to the Country of the South.
5) what you saw in Ozma's country.

4 What is your opinion?

The Scarecrow thought that if Dorothy didn't think about Kansas she could be happy in the beautiful city. Was he right? Do you agree with him? Is this a place that makes a person happy?

5 Work in little groups and act out the talks between:

1) Dorothy, the Scarecrow and the Green Soldier.
2) Dorothy, the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion.
3) three girl-soldiers and Dorothy.

6 Read and draw.

Now you know a lot about the Land of Oz. Can you draw a map of it in order to help Dorothy and her friends to get to the Country of the South? If you are a good artist, make your map pictorial.

Chapter Seventeen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "What can I do for you, child?"
2) "Oh, they are magic shoes!"
3) "East or West, home is best."
4) "I shall go back to the Emerald City."
5) "We want to go to the Emerald City with him."

2 Say who:

1) knew the magic of the silver shoes.
2) wanted to know what the friends' plans were.
3) wanted to go back to the Emerald City.
4) asked Dorothy to come to the Land of Oz again.
5) ran out of the house to greet Dorothy.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

kind / surprised / glad / a good friend / sad / sorry / happy

4 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Ozma was young and beautiful.
2) Ozma had a beautiful silk dress on.
3) Ozma's dress was yellow.
4) Ozma called Dorothy 'dear child'.
5) Ozma asked Dorothy a lot of questions.

6) Ozma knew the magic of the silver shoes.
7) Dorothy wanted to leave the Land of Oz at once.
8) The Scarecrow wanted to go to Kansas.
9) Ozma made the Emerald City the capital of the Land of Oz.
10) Dorothy promised to come back as soon as possible.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Dorothy took Toto in her arms and said good-bye to her friends.
2) Now Dorothy knew that she could get to Kansas easily.
3) She turned on her left foot three times and said the magic words.
4) Dorothy learned what the magic of the shoes was.
5) Aunt Em and Uncle Henry were happy to see Dorothy back.
6) Dorothy asked Ozma for help.
7) All the friends wanted to go back to the Emerald City.
8) Dorothy told Ozma her story.
9) The Scarecrow said he wanted to be the ruler of the Emerald City.
10) Ozma asked the friends what they wanted to do.

6 Answer the questions:

1) What did Ozma look like?
2) What did Ozma ask Dorothy about?
3) What was Dorothy worried about?
4) Could Ozma help Dorothy?
5) What was the magic of the silver shoes?
6) What did Dorothy suddenly understand?
7) Did the magic work easily?
8) What did Dorothy have to do if she wanted to go home?
9) What did Dorothy want to know before going away?
10) When did Ozma ask Dorothy to come back?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[u:]	ruler	much	blue	fool
[ai]	white	child	witch	time
[ei]	great	leave	wait	say

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

birthday eyes capital carry leave turn terrible

1) Ozma looked at Dorothy with her beautiful blue _______ and spoke to her.
2) My aunt thinks that some _______ thing has happened to me.
3) Your silver shoes will _______ you there.
4) You must _______ round on your left foot three times.
5) The friends didn't want to _______ the Scarecrow.
6) The Emerald City will be the _______ of the Land of Oz.
7) Ozma's _______ was a great holiday in the Land of Oz.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Turn on your left foot three *times.*
2) Dorothy understood why the Wicked Witch wanted *to take* the shoes from her.
3) "*Take* me home to Aunt Em!"
4) Aunt Em cried with joy and *took* the girl in her arms.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy thanked the Good Fairy, and said good-bye ____ her friends. Then ____ Toto ____ her arms she turned ____ her left foot three times and said ____ the silver shoes: "Take

me home _____ Aunt Em!" And surprise, surprise! When she opened her eyes she saw her uncle's new farm _____ front _____ her. She was _____ Kansas again and her aunt and uncle were running _____ her.

5 What did they ask?

Aunt Em and Uncle Henry were very happy to see Dorothy. They asked her a lot of questions. Their first questions were: "Where have you been all this time? Where did you come from?" Can you imagine what their other questions were, when they learned that Dorothy and Toto came from the Land of Oz? Write down at least six questions.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to know		
to leave		
to find		
to go		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "Now I want to go back to Kansas," said Dorothy.
2) "I can tell you how to get back to Kansas," said Ozma.
3) "We don't want to leave our friend the Scarecrow," said the Tin Woodman..
4) "My birthday is a great holiday in the Land of Oz," said Ozma.
5) "Where have you been all the time?" cried Aunt Em.
6) "What is your name?" asked one of the girl-soldiers.
7) "Ozma asks you to come in," the girl said to Dorothy.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Ozma wanted to know Dorothy's story.
2) Ozma understood that Dorothy knew nothing about the magic of the shoes.
3) Dorothy was surprised.
4) Ozma and Dorothy asked the three friends about their plans.
5) Ozma asked Dorothy to come again.
6) the friends asked Dorothy to come again.

2 Prove that:

1) Ozma was glad to help Dorothy.
2) Dorothy was a grateful girl.
3) Dorothy was a good friend.
4) Ozma liked the friends and wanted them to be happy.
5) Ozma and Dorothy's friends wanted the little girl to come back.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

1) Ozma.
2) what you have learned about the silver shoes.
3) how the magic of the shoes worked.
4) what you have learned about your friends' plans.
5) your first day back in Kansas.

4 What is your opinion?

"East or West, home is best."

1)* What did Dorothy mean by these words?
2) What do people in Russia say when they mean the same?
3) Have you ever said these words yourself? When was it?

5 Work in little groups and act out the talks between

1) Dorothy and Ozma.
2) Ozma, the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion.
3) Dorothy, Ozma and the three friends.

PART TWO

Chapter One

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) Bini Aru was
   a) an animal
   b) an old man
   c) a magic word

2) Bini Aru knew
   a) a magic word
   b) a magic place
   c) a magic stone

3) Kiki Aru was
   a) Bini Aru's friend
   b) Bini Aru's son
   c) Bini Aru's bird

4) Kiki Aru found
   a) a piece of paper
   b) a floor board
   c) a strange writing

5) Kiki became
   a) a little bird
   b) a strong bird
   c) a wild beast

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Bini Aru lived in the Land of Oz.
2) Bini Aru lived in the Emerald City.
3) Bini Aru had a secret.
4) Bini Aru didn't know what his real form was.
5) Bini Aru often used the magic word.
6) Bini Aru was afraid to forget the magic word.
7) Bini Aru told his son about his secret.
8) Kiki Aru found the secret place by chance.
9) Kiki stumbled over a floor board.
10) Kiki couldn't read the writing.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What word was magic?
2) What magic could the word make?
3) When did Bini Aru change his form?
4) Was Bini Aru a wicked man?
5) Where did Bini Aru find a secret place?
6) What did Bini Aru hide in the secret place?
7) Did Bini Aru tell his son about his secret?
8) What was Kiki Aru doing in his father's room?
9) How did Kiki learn his father's secret?
10) What did Kiki do with the floor board?
11) How did Kiki learn the magic word?
12) Where did Kiki hide the copy of the writing?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Divide the words in the box into three categories:

place to live	people	animal

capital	city
girl	country
man	land
sheep	woman
room	house
home	boy
lion	

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) *At last* Bini Aru decided to find a secret place in the house.
2) Kiki was a *wicked* boy.

3) As he went back to the door he *stumbled* again over that floor board.
4) So Kiki learned the word *by heart.*
5) I want to become a *hawk*!

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

As the boy came _____ his father's room, he stumbled _____ one _____ the floor boards. He didn't find any interesting things _____ the room and decided to leave. But _____ that moment he stumbled _____ the same floor board again. Kiki looked _____ the board _____ a long time. Then he took the board _____ , and saw some writing _____ the back _____ it. Kiki couldn't believe his eyes! He understood that there was great magic _____ the word. It could change him _____ a bird or an animal!

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) It was a very easy thing to do	when he went far away from home and was very hungry.
2) Bini Aru usually changed his form	that he must not come into his room.
3) Bini Aru told his son	it could change you back into your real form.
4) Kiki took the board out and	if you knew how to say the magic word.
5) If you repeated the word again	he repeated it a hundred times.
6) Kiki wanted to fly away from his country	saw some writing on the back of it.
7) As Kiki wanted to remember the magic word by heart	because he hated to live in it.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Bini Aru changed his form.

2) Bini Aru kept the magic word a secret.
3) Bini Aru wrote down the magic word.
4) Kiki Aru came to his father's room.
5) Kiki looked at the floor board with interest.
6) Kiki wanted to become a bird.

2 Prove that:

1) the magic word was difficult to remember.
2) Kiki Aru was a wicked boy.
3) Kiki didn't like the Munchkin Country.
4) Kiki was happy to learn his father's secret.
5) Kiki Aru was afraid to forget the word.

3 Add more details to this:

1) Bini Aru was afraid to forget the magic word.
2) Kiki Aru took the floor board and saw some strange writing on it.
3) Kiki Aru learned the word by heart.
4) Kiki Aru decided to become a bird.

4 On behalf of Bini Aru speak about:

1) the country you live in.
2) things you like to do.
3) your son.

5 On behalf of Kiki Aru speak about:

1) the house you live in.
2) things you like to do.
3) your best wish.
4) the day you found a strange floor board.

6 Read and write.

What exactly did the writing on the board say? Can you write it down?

Chapter Two

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) Kiki flew for
   a) an hour
   b) a long time
   c) two days

2) Kiki Aru saw
   a) a palace
   b) a bank
   c) an inn

3) Kiki Aru had
   a) some money
   b) much money
   c) no money

4) The innkeeper
   a) asked Kiki to come in
   b) told Kiki to go away
   c) gave Kiki a gold piece

5) Kiki
   a) found a gold piece
   b) lost a gold piece
   c) stole a gold piece

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Kiki rose into the air and flew over the Munchkin Country.
2) Soon Kiki became very tired.
3) He decided to rest a little in a tree.
4) The boy didn't know what hawks ate.
5) Kiki didn't want to sleep in a tree.
6) Kiki didn't have any money.
7) The innkeeper gave Kiki a good supper and a bed.
8) Kiki needed some money badly.
9) Kiki had to change his form again.
10) Nobody saw Kiki steal a gold piece.

3 Answer the questions.

1) Where did Kiki fly to?

2) Did he fly for a long time?
3) Did Kiki want to sleep like a bird or did he want to sleep like a boy?
4) Where did Kiki go for supper?
5) Did he get his supper?
6) What did the boy see through the open window?
7) How many gold pieces did Kiki want to get?
8) How did the boy get the money?
9) Where did Kiki put the gold piece?
10) Who said that magic was wicked?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) From his tree the hawk could see a big *inn*.
2) The *innkeeper* asked the boy for some money.
3) Kiki could not *stay* at the hotel.
4) Kiki saw a lot of *gold pieces* on the table.
5) The bird caught up one of the gold pieces in its *beak*.
6) To *steal* money is very *wicked*!

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The boy could not stay _____ the hotel _____ money. He stood _____ a long time _____ the yard and didn't know what to do. Suddenly _____ an open window the boy saw a big room _____ a table _____ the middle _____ it. There was a lot _____ gold pieces _____ the table. An old man went up _____ the table and began to count the money.Kiki thought it was his luck. _____ one _____ those gold pieces he could get food _____ supper and a bed _____ the night.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

1) Kiki (to rise) into the air and (to fly) away into a new world.
2) He (to come) down and (to sit) in a tree.
3) The boy (to go) to the inn and (to ask) the inkeeper (to give) him a good supper.

4) Kiki (to fly) into a tree and (to drop) the gold piece to the ground.
5) The little bird (to speak) in a small voice.
6) The little bird (to see) Kiki (to steal) the money.
7) The bird (to say) Kiki (to be sorry) for that one day.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) Kiki decided to have some rest	so he changed his form and became Kiki again.
2) As Kiki was in the form of a bird	began to count the money.
3) The boy didn't know what birds ate	the hawk flew through it and caught a gold piece.
4) If you have no money	because he was very tired.
5) The innkeeper came up to the table and	he decided to rest in a little tree.
6) As the window was opened	you must go away at once.

Discussing the story

1 Say why:

1) Kiki was tired.
2) Kiki flew down to the ground.
3) the innkeeper didn't give the boy any food.
4) Kiki became a hawk again.
5) the little bird spoke to Kiki.
6) Kiki was glad.

2 Prove that:

1) Kiki Aru knew very little about birds.
2) Kiki has never been to a hotel before.
3) it was easy for a hawk to get a gold piece from the house.
4) Kiki has done something wicked.

3 Add more details to this:

1) From his tree Kiki saw an inn.
2) An old man went up to the table.
3) The hawk flew into the room.
4) Kiki heard a small voice.
5) Kiki heard a big voice behind him.

4 On behalf of the little bird speak about:

1) what you saw happen in the yard of the inn.
2) what you thought of the boy.
3) what made you fly away.

5 Act out the talk between:

1) Kiki Aru and the innkeeper.
2) Kiki Aru and the little bird.

6 What is your opinion?

The little bird said: "Magic is wicked" and "To steal money is very, very wicked." Was the bird right?

Chapter Three

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The strange man was
a) a Wizard
b) a wicked king
c) a good king

2) The Nome people
a) loved their King
b) kicked their King out of the country
c) killed their King

3) Kiki Aru
a) didn't talk to the stranger
b) told the stranger the truth about himself
c) didn't tell the stranger the truth about himself

4) The innkeeper
a) sent for a cook
b) gave the two visitors no food
c) cooked the supper for the visitors

5) Kiki's words
a) made the stranger smile
b) frightened the strange man
c) made the stranger unhappy

6) The sranger wanted
a) to be King of the Land of Oz
b) to be the ruler of the Emerald City
c) to become the Nome King again

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The man who spoke in a big voice was old and fat.
2) The stranger's pockets were full of heavy stones.
3) The stranger was on his way home.
4) The man said that he used to be a king.
5) The man thought Kiki was a Wizard.
6) The stranger said he used to have good magic tools himself.
7) The innkeeper made a very good supper for Kiki and the stranger.
8) The stranger stole his jewels from the Oz people.
9) The Nome King hated Ozma.
10) The Nome King promised to give Kiki a lot of jewels.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What did the stranger look like?
2) What were his pockets full of?
3) Where did the old man take all his jewels from?

4) Who was the old man?
5) Did the Nome King have a lot of friends in the Land of Oz?
6) What did the Nome King ask Kiki about?
7) What did Kiki and the stranger pay for their supper?
8) Who cooked the supper?
9) Was Kiki afraid of the Nome King?
10) Did the Nome King tell Kiki about his wish?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) The stranger's pockets were full of *jewels*.
2) The people of Oz *kicked him out* of the country.
3) The Nome King used to have some very good magic *tools*.
4) Will you help me to *conquer* the Land of Oz?
5) The Oz people were his *enemies*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

a) When they came _____ the inn, the innkeeper looked _____ Kiki very angrily. He knew that the boy had no money _____ his supper and bed. But Kiki took a gold piece _____ _____ his pocket and showed it _____ the master. Then the innkeeper turned _____ the Nome and asked if he had the money _____ his supper and bed. The Nome took _____ a bag and threw a lot _____ jewels _____ the table. The innkeeper and Kiki looked _____ the jewels _____ surprise.

b) Kiki was not afraid _____ the stranger because _____ the help _____ the magic word he could easily change him _____ a tree or a stone _____ a moment. The stranger wanted to know Kiki's secret. But Kiki didn't want to talk _____ it. Then the Nome King promised Kiki to make him the King _____ Oz. And as Kiki liked the idea, he said he would think _____ it.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) The pockets of his clothes were big	but the Oz people kicked him out of the country.
2) Once the stranger was the Nome King	I shall go away.
3) When they came into the inn	the innkeeper looked at them angrily.
4) When I have conquered the Oz people	because he kept a lot of jewels in them.
5) The innkeeper ran into the kitchen	because he hated them.
6) The stranger wanted to conquer the Oz people	to make a good supper for the visitors.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Kiki turned around.
2) the old man looked strange.
3) the stranger was very rich.
4) the stranger didn't want to talk about himself.
5) the stranger wanted to know Kiki's secret.
6) the innkeeper ran to the kitchen.
7) Kiki asked the Nome not to speak very loud.
8) the Nome wanted to conquer the Land of Oz.
9) Kiki laughed when the Nome became angry.

2 Prove that:

1) the Nome was wicked.
2) Kiki was not afraid of the Nome.
3) the Nome wanted to know Kiki's secret very much.
4) the Nome liked Kiki.
5) Kiki liked the idea of being the King of Oz.

3 Add more details to this:

1) Kiki saw a strange old man.

2) The old man was once a king.
3) When they came into the inn the innkeeper looked at them.
4) The Nome hated all the Oz people.

4 On behalf of Kiki speak about:

1) the strange man you saw.
2) what you thought the man wanted of you.
3) what made you not to be afraid of the stranger.
4) your second meeting with the innkeeper.

5 Act out the talk between:

1) Kiki Aru and the strange man when they met for the first time.
2) Kiki Aru and the Nome after supper.
3) the innkeeper, Kiki and the Nome at the door of the inn.

6 What is your opinion?

The Nome said: "Well, in our time it happens very often. People just come and kick their kings out of their counrties." Did the people of Oz have no reason for kicking the Nome out of their country?

Chapter Four

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The old man thought that
   a) the boy was silly
   b) the boy was clever
   c) the boy needed help

2) Kiki Aru
   a) liked the Nome's plan
   b) didn't like the Nome's plan
   c) changed the Nome's plan

3) The old man
a) turned into a bird
b) asked Kiki to change his form
c) changed Kiki into a bird

4) Kiki
a) wanted to fly at once
b) wanted to fly in the afternoon
c) wanted to wait till evening

5) The two people
a) turned into hawks
b) turned into little birds
c) turned into eagles

2 **Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.**

1) The old man wanted Kiki to help him.
2) The old man's plan was wicked.
3) The Nome thought and spoke the same things.
4) Kiki wanted to keep the magic word his secret.
5) The Nome was far away from Kiki when the boy said the magic word.
6) The Nome was happy to become a great eagle.
7) The large and strong eagle spoke in the innkeeper's voice.
8) The Nome understood that the boy was not silly.

3 **Answer the questions.**

1) How did Kiki decide to get to the Land of Oz?
2) Did Kiki want the Nome to come with him?
3) Did the Nome tell Kiki the truth?
4) Did the Nome really want to make Kiki the ruler of the Oz country?
5) What did the Nome want to do with the beasts of the big forest?
6) What did the Nome want to change Kiki into?
7) What did Kiki want to change the Nome into?
8) Who wanted to do harm?
9) Where did Kiki and Nome wait for the evening?
10) What did they do when the evening came?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

1) The Nome wanted *to do harm* to Kiki.
2) Wicked people try *to harm* one another.
3) I see now that the boy is not *silly*.
4) In a moment the Nome became a great *eagle*.
5) The old man hoped that Kiki would help him to conquer his *enemies*.

2 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

As Kiki Aru knew very little _____ the Land _____ Oz, he listened _____ the Nome's plan _____ interest. The plan was easy. The Nome wanted them both to fly _____ the Land _____ Oz _____ the form _____ birds. He said it would be nice to change _____ large and strong birds. He explained that there were a lot _____ big forests _____ Oz country. Those forests were full _____ beasts. The Nome wanted to change all the beasts _____ men and women. _____ their help the Nome wished to conquer the people _____ Oz. At the same time the Nome wanted to change all the people _____ Oz _____ beasts and send them to live_____ the forests.

3 **Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.**

1) When the evening (to come) they (to go out) into the yard.
2) They (to stand) under a big tree and (to speak).
3) Kiki (to ask) the Nome (to stay) under the tree while he (to go away).
4) The Nome first (to think) that the boy (to be) silly, but he (to change) his mind soon.
5) Suddenly the Nome (to feel) that his form (to begin) to change.
6) As soon as the magic change (to happen) the two eagles (to fly) high up in the sky.

4 **Match two parts of the sentences.**

1) The Nome told Kiki about his plan	because he could fool the Nome easily.
2) Kiki was sure that he would rule the Oz people	he quickly walked away.
3) As the weather was very hot the two people	he felt that his form began to change.
4) As Kiki didn't want the Nome to hear the word	because he wanted the boy to help him.
5) While the Nome was standing under a big tree	he listened to the Nome's stories with interest.
6) As Kiki didn't know much about the Land of Oz	decided to wait till evening.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Kiki listened to the Nome's plan.
2) Kiki wanted to fly to the Land of Oz.
3) the Nome thought one thing and said another.
4) Kiki and the Nome wanted to harm one another.
5) Kiki changed the Nome and himself into eagles.
6) the Nome thought that Kiki was clever.

2 Prove that:

1) Kiki Aru wanted to be great.
2) the Nome wanted to harm Kiki.
3) the Nome was afraid of Kiki.
4) the Nome's plan was wicked.

3 Add more details to this:

1) There were many forests in the Land of Oz.
2) The Nome wanted to do harm to Kiki.
3) Kiki wanted to do harm to the Nome.

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

1) what you talked in the inn about.
2) what you thought of the plan.
3) what you wanted to become after you have conquered the Land of Oz.
4) what you wanted to do with your companion.

5 Act out the talk between:

Kiki Aru and the Nome as they stood under a tree in the yard.

6 What is your opinion?

"Wicked people always try to harm one another". Do you agree with these words?
Can good people sometimes do harm?

Chapter Five

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The Wizard's balloon
   a) flew away
   b) fell down
   c) came back

2) The Woodman
   a) told Dorothy his secret
   b) didn't tell Dorothy his secret
   c) asked Dorothy about her secret

3) The Scarecrow
   a) made a nice straw hat
   b) bought a pair of straw shoes
   c) made a pair of straw shoes

4) Dorothy
   a) liked Toto's present
   b) thought Toto had a great present
   c) didn't like Toto's present at all

5) Dorothy wanted
a) to buy some monkeys
b) to catch some monkeys
c) to take some monkeys to the forest

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The Wizard couldn't come back to the Emerald City.
2) The four friends were preparing presents for Ozma.
3) The Tin Woodman wrote a beautiful poem.
4) Dorothy didn't know what present to give to Ozma.
5) The Scarecrow gave Dorothy good advice.
6) Dorothy thought of an unusual present.
7) Dorothy wanted to catch small monkeys.
8) Ozma, Dorothy and the Lion went to the big forest.

3 Answer the questions.

1) Where did Dorothy live?
2) Did Dorothy often come to visit her friends?
3) Where did the Wizard live?
4) What did the Wizard do in the Emerald City?
5) Where did the Tin Woodman like to spend his time?
6) Did Toto learn to speak in the Land of Oz?
7) Did Dorothy follow the Scarecrow's advice?
8) What birthday present did Dorothy want to give to Ozma?
9) Did Dorothy need any help?
10) What help did Dorothy ask the Wizard for?
11) Who was ready to come with Dorothy to the big forest?
12) What did Dorothy want the monkeys to do?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Now the Wizard really knew some *magic*.
2) Think *very hard* and a good idea will come to you.
3) But the monkeys *must be* very small.
4) We shall *put them all into* the cake.
5) The Lion *will roar* and frighten all the beasts.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy wanted to make a nice present _____ Ozma. But what could she give her? The girl went _____ her room, where she sat _____ and thought hard _____ a birthday present _____ the good fairy. Suddenly an idea came _____ her. She went _____ the Wizard _____ Oz and asked him _____ help. The Wizard was glad to do what he could _____ Dorothy and _____ Ozma. He listened _____ Dorothy's plan _____ interest and laughed. He didn't understand how Dorothy was going to hide a lot _____ monkeys _____ the middle _____ the cake.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

1) The Wizard's balloon (to fall down) not far from the Emerald City.
2) Oz (to decide) to study magic.
3) Dorothy (not to like) the Tin Woodman's song.
4) The Scarecrow (to think) that Ozma (to love) him very much.
5) Toto (to think) that some bones (to be) a wonderful present for Ozma.
6) Dorothy (to go) to the Wizard for help.
7) The Wizard (to be glad) to help his little friend.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) Oz wanted to study magic	because it was not good poetry.
2) Dorothy often came to the Emerald City	because he believed Ozma liked straw.
3) Dorothy didn't like the poem	because he did not want to be a humbug.
4) The Scarecrow was making straw shoes	because they should get into the birthday cake.
5) Dorothy went to her room	because she had many friends there.
6) Dorothy asked Oz to make the monkeys small	because she wanted to think hard.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) the Wizard went back to the Emerald City.
2) the Wizard decided to study magic.
3) the Tin Woodman spent a lot of time in the garden.
4) the Strawman thought straw shoes would be a good present for Ozma.
5) Dorothy's present was unusual.
6) Dorothy asked the Wizard to help her.
7) the Wizard wanted to go to the forest with the Lion.

2 Prove that:

1) the Wizard has changed.
2) Toto has changed.
3) it was a difficult task for Dorothy to choose a present for Ozma.

3 Add more details to this:

1) The Wizard was sorry.
2) The Tin Woodman was happy.
3) The Scarecrow was busy.

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

1) your birthday present for Ozma.
2) why you wanted to give that present to her.

5 Act out the talk between:

1) Dorothy and the Tin Woodman.
2) Dorothy and the Scarecrow.
3) Dorothy and the Wizard.

6 What is your opinion?

1) "Think hard and a good idea will come to you". Do you agree with these words?
2) Have you ever thought very hard about something and it helped you?

Chapter Six

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The King of the forest was
   a) the Bear
   b) the Grey Monkey
   c) the Yellow Leopard

2) Gugu ruled the forest
   a) alone
   b) with the help of three friends
   c) with the help of Ozma

3) The eagles wanted to
   a) look like other animals
   b) become very strange animals
   c) look like strange birds

4) The Nome was
   a) angry with Kiki Aru
   b) happy with what Kiki did
   c) angry with himself

5) Kiki Aru made magic
   a) on the tree where the Nome sat
   b) far from the Nome
   c) under a big tree

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) There were hundreds of animals in the Land of Oz.
2) The animals had a strong King.
3) The King was strong but not clever.
4) The Nome wanted to speak only with Gugu.
5) Kiki was afraid to become a strange animal.

6) The strange animals should have heads of leopards.
7) The Nome had a secret wish.
8) Kiki and the Nome looked alike in their new form.
9) Kiki and the Nome did not look like eagles at all in their new form.

3 Answer the questions.

1) Where did all the animals of the Land of Oz live?
2) Where was the big forest situated?
3) How did the animals call their forest?
4) Who did the animals obey?
5) Where did the two eagles stop?
6) Did Kiki know how many animals lived in the forest?
7) Did the Nome want to speak to the animals of the forest?
8) What animals did the Nome and Kiki decide to change into?
9) Did Kiki tell the Nome the magic word?
10) Was the Nome afraid of Kiki?
11) How did Kiki make magic?
12) What did the Nome and Kiki do when they changed their form?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) The Bear, the Wolf and the Grey Monkey helped Gugu *to rule* the country.
2) The other animals *obeyed* them.
3) The animals will help us *to conquer* the people of Oz.
4) You *stay* here and I will fly to another tree.
5) Some day I shall *know* his secret and then.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

All the animals _____ the Land _____ Oz lived _____ a big forest _____ the middle _____ the country. When the two eagles saw the forest they flew _____ and sat _____ a tall tree. Their plan

was to go _____ the animals and tell them _____ their plans. The Nome hoped that the animals would listen _____ them and help them. But first they needed to change _____ animals. They decided to have the heads _____ lions, the bodies _____ monkeys and the wings _____ eagles. As Kiki didn't want the Nome know his magic word, he flew _____ and made magic _____ another tree. The Nome was very angry _____ the boy, but as he was afraid _____ him, he didn't say anything. Kiki changed the two eagles _____ very strange animals who could walk _____ the ground and fly _____ the sky.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

1) One morning two eagles (to fly) high over the big forest.
2) In the middle of the forest the eagles (to fly) down and (to sit) in a tall tree.
3) As soon as Kiki (to say) the magic word the Nome (to change) his form.
4) Kiki and the Nome (to become) very strange animals.
5) The Nome (to hope) that some day he (to know) the secret word.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) The animals called the forest "Gugu Forest"	because they were strong and clever.
2) The animals were afraid of their rulers	because he kept asking a lot of questions.
3) The two eagles stopped to talk	because the boy didn't teach him the secret word.
4) Kiki didn't know much about the Gugu Forest	because the King of the forest was Gugu.
5) The Nome was very angry with Kiki	because he needed his help.
6) Kiki turned into the same animal as the Nome	because they needed to decide what form to take.

1 Say why:

1) three friends helped Gugu to rule the forest.
2) the animals obeyed their rulers.
3) the Nome and Kiki wanted to speak to the animals.
4) the eagles wanted to change their form.
5) the Nome wanted to look like no other animal in the forest.
6) Kiki made magic far away from the Nome.

2 Prove that:

1) the animals of the forest lived in an organized country.
2) Kiki was not afraid to look strange.
3) Kiki didn't want to obey the Nome.
4) the Nome was afraid of Kiki.

3 Add more details to this:

1) The Leopard had three friends.
2) The Nome didn't want to be angry with Kiki.
3) Kiki turned the two eagles into very strange animals.

4 On behalf of the Nome speak about:

1) the big forest and the life of animals there.
2) why you wanted to look different from other animals.
3) why you wanted to have the head of a lion, the body of a monkey and the wings of an eagle.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

Kiki Aru and the Nome.

6 What is your opinion?

"Are you afraid to look strange?" Why did the Nome ask Kiki this question? Did Kiki answer the question? How does Kiki's reaction characterize the boy?

Chapter Seven

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) King Gugu was
   a) pleased with the forest animals
   b) angry with some animals
   c) displeased with all the animals
2) The strangers
   a) spoke in angry voices
   b) addressed the animals in a friendly way
   c) waited to be introduced
3) King Gugu
   a) believed the strangers
   b) thought the strangers were telling lies
   c) thought the strangers were telling the truth
4) Kiki Aru
   a) changed the Wolf into a man
   b) changed the Monkey into a man
   c) changed the Bear into a man
5) The Nome wanted to turn Kiki into
   a) a tree
   b) a stone
   c) a wild beast

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The Leopard was a wise King.
2) King Gugu trusted his friends.
3) King Gugu didn't like the strange-looking animals.
4) The strangers spoke in a very pleasant manner.
5) The Bear didn't believe the strangers.
6) King Gugu didn't like Li-Mon-Eags' name.
7) King Gugu thought Li-Mon-Eags were telling lies.
8) The rulers of the forest wanted to see magic.
9) Kiki's magic frightened the animals.
10) The animals decided to obey Kiki.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What were the animals discussing on a big clearing?
2) What did the strange beasts look like?
3) Did the strangers look like brother-animals?
4) Where did the Li-Mon-Eags live?
5) Why did they come down?
6) What did the Li-Mon-Eags tell the animals about the people of Oz?
7) Did the animals want to become masters of the people?
8) When did King Gugu begin to speak like a friend?
9) What did the animals decide to do?
10) Did the Nome tell the animals about his real plan?
11) Did the Nome tell Kiki about his real plan?
12) What did Kiki want to do with the Nome when he became King?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Divide the words in the box into three categories:

people	animal	place

clearing	friend
forest	fox
giraffe	beast
city	monkey
house	slave
master	women
land	palace
man	wolf
country	enemy
brother	

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Leopard the King and his friends met on a big *clearing*.
2) The strange beasts *came up* to them.
3) The Nome at once *thought up* a name.
4) The animals will become *the masters* of the people.
5) I *promise* you that you will be the King of the Land of Oz.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) The animals didn't trust the Li-Mon-Eags	the people will become their slaves.
2) When the animals conquer the Land of Oz	because they showed their magic to them.
3) The Nome promised to change all the people into animals	because the people of Oz were neither their friends, nor their enemies.
4) The animals believed the Li-Mon-Eags	because he wanted them to know about the Li-Mon-Eags' plan.
5) Gugu the King was frightened	because he wasn't a real friend.
6) Gugu decided to have a meeting with all the animals of the forest	because he wanted to send them to the forest to live there.
7) Kiki didn't trust the Nome	because the Wolf became a little fat man.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Nome made ____ a clever story. He said that the Li-Mon-Eags lived ____ the sky. One day two Li-Mon-Eags flew ____ a forest ____ the Emerald City and saw a lot ____ people. They heard the people talk ____ their wicked plans. As soon as they heard that the people ____ Oz wanted to conquer the animals ____ the forest, they flew____ . When the Nome finished his story he looked ____ Gugu and his friends.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) the Nome made up a new name for Kiki and himself.
2) the Nome said that he and his friend lived in the sky.
3) Gugu the King didn't believe the strangers.
4) Gugu the King asked the strangers to change the Wolf into a man.
5) Gugu the King changed his mind and called a meeting with all the animals.
6) Kiki Aru and the Nome had wicked thoughts about each other.

2 Prove that:

1) life in the forest was not quiet.
2) Gugu the King and his friends were surprised by the form of the strangers.
3) Gugu the King had more wit than his friends.
4) the Li-Mon-Eags didn't become the animals' friends at once. the Nome was happy with the result of the meeting with the King of the forest.

3 Add more details to this:

1) Gugu the King stopped his speech.
2) The Wolf, the Grey Monkey and the Bear obeyed Gugu.
3) Kiki decided to change the Nome into a tree.

4 On behalf of the King of the Forest speak about:

1) the reason of your morning meeting with your friends.
2) the two strangers.
3) why you didn't trust the Li-Mon-Eags first.
4) what made you believe the Li-Mon-Eags.
5) why you wanted to see all the animals of the forest.

5 On behalf of the Wolf speak about the Li-Mon-Eags' magic.

6 Read and act out the talk between:

the Nome and Kiki Aru.

7 What is your opinion?

"The wicked people can never be real friends". Do you share this opinion? Speak with your classmates and find out what they think about it.

Chapter Eight

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) There were
   a) dozens of beasts in the forest
   b) hundreds of beasts in the forest
   c) thousands of beasts in the forest

2) The Leopard sat
   a) on a big throne
   b) on a big stone
   c) on a big tortoise

3) The King spoke
   a) in a loud voice
   b) in a secret voice
   c) in a quiet voice

4) The animals wanted the strangers
   a) to go away
   b) to speak
   c) to show their magic

5) The animals
   a) agreed to the Nome's plan
   b) argued about the Nome's plan
   c) obeyed their King's decision

2 **Say *true, false,* or *I don't know.***

1) All the animals of the forest came to the big clearing.
2) All the beasts were the same.
3) There were no crocodiles among the animals.
4) The Leopard addressed the animals in a friendly way.
5) The animals had never seen any beast like Li-Mon-Eags before.
6) Both of the magicians wanted to speak to the animals.
7) The Nome spoke for a short time.
8) When the Nome finished the animals didn't say anything.
9) The Wolf didn't want the Li-Mon-Eags to make magic again.
10) The animals couldn't agree on what to do.
11) The animals made much noise discussing the Nome's plan.
12) The noise stopped when the animals saw a strange group on the clearing.

3 **Answer the questions.**

1) What did Gugu tell the animals about the Li-Mon-Eags?
2) Did all the animals believe that the strangers were magicians?
3) Did the animals like the Li-Mon-Eags' plan to conquer the people of Oz?
4) Were there any animals who disapproved of fighting?
5) Did Gugu ask the animals to give him their answer quickly?
6) What stopped the noise?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

1) There were *hundreds and hundreds* of beasts.
2) Will you *listen to* him?
3) Think very *hard.*
4) Some of them wanted *to fight.*
5) Some of them even didn't want to talk about *fighting.*

2 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

Next morning hundreds ____ beasts came ____ the big clearing. Their King spoke ____ a loud voice ____ his throne. He told the animals ____ the two strangers who were real magicians and came to help them, because their country was ____ danger.The people ____ Oz wanted to turn the animals ____ their slaves. One ____ the magicians wanted to speak ____ the animals ____ his plans. When one of the strangers came ____ front ____ the animals, they looked ____ him ____ great surprise. They had never seen an animal ____ a head ____ the lion, a body ____ the monkey and wings ____ the eagle.

3 **Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.**

1) Hundreds of animals (to come) to the clearing.
2) The King (to get up) from his throne and (to speak) in a loud voice.
3) The animals (to listen) in silence.
4) The Nome (to tell) the animals about the Li-Mon-Eags' plan.
5) When the Nome (to finish) the animals (to begin) to talk to one another.
6) The beasts (to make) so much noise that they (can not) hear each other.
7) Suddenly the animals (to see) a strange group.

4 **Finish up the sentences and write them down.**

1) The animals came to the clearing because ...
2) Gugu addressed the animals 'brothers' because ...
3) Gugu explained that the Li-Mon-Eags came to the forest because ...
4) The Nome came out in front of the animals because ...
5) The beasts looked at the Nome in great surprise because ...
6) The Wolf was the first to cry out that the strangers were real magicians because ...
7) Gugu wanted the animals to think hard about the plan because ...

8) The animals began to shout loudly because ...
9) The noise suddenly stopped because ...

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) the animals came to the clearing.
2) the animals looked at the Li-Mon-Eags in surprise.
3) Gugu asked the Nome to speak to the animals.
4) Gugu the King asked the animals to think hard.
5) the animals made much noise.

2 Prove that:

1) Gugu the King called a meeting for a serious reason.
2) Gugu the King believed that the Li-Mon-Eags were magicians.
3) the Wolf was frightened by the Li-Mon-Eags' magic.
4) not all the animals agreed with the Li-Mon-Eags' plan.

3 Add more details to this:

1) The animals looked at the Nome in great surprise.
2) The animals began to talk to one another.
3) Suddenly the noise stopped.

4 On behalf of one of the animals speak about:

1) why you came to the clearing.
2) who you saw on the clearing.
3) what you thought of the magicians' plan.

5 Make up and act out a talk between:

1) two animals who liked the magicians' plan.
2) two animals who disliked the magicians' plan.
3) one animal who liked the magicians' plan and one animal who didn't like it at all.

6 What is your opinion?

Gugu the King addressed the animals as "brothers". Why? What do you think of Gugu? What kind of ruler was he?

Chapter Nine

Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

1) Dorothy arrived in the forest
   a) on the Lion's back
   b) on foot
   c) with the help of the silver shoes

2) The strangers
   a) spoke in angry voices
   b) addressed the animals in a friendly way
   c) waited to be introduced

3) Kiki turned the Wizard of Oz into
   a) a fat woman
   b) a goose
   c) a fox

4) Kiki turned the Nome into
   a) a tree
   b) a goose
   c) a little lamb

5) When Kiki flew into a very high tree
   a) he cried
   b) he smiled
   c) he laughed

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) There were three people and a lion among the group of strangers.
2) King Gugu looked at the girl in great surprise.
3) The Li-Mon-Eags were very afraid of the strangers.
4) The Nome knew who the strangers were.

5) Kiki was afraid of the Wizard.
6) Kiki wanted to get hold of the magician's bag.
7) The Wizard turned Kiki into a fox.
8) Kiki said the magic word four times.
9) The Lion wanted to kill the wicked magician.
10) The Nome was glad that Kiki used his magic.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What did Gugu the King ask Dorothy about?
2) How did Dorothy introduce her friends?
3) Did the animals listen to Dorothy with interest?
4) Did the Wizard of Oz speak to the animals?
5) Did the Nome recognize the girl and her friends?
6) What did the Nome say to Kiki about the strange group?
7) What was the Nome afraid of?
8) Did Kiki speak to the strangers?
9) What did Kiki do?
10) Did the Wizard of Oz understand that there was a wicked magician among the animals in the forest?
11) What happened to Dorothy?
12) Who became a little boy?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicised words mean.

1) Dorothy said that the Lion was her *true* friend.
2) The Wizard had his *magic tools* in a black bag.
3) The Nome *knew* them at once.
4) The Wizard was *a real* magician.
5) Now the Lion could not *harm* Kiki.
6) Dorothy became a little white *lamb*.

2 Which of the words in the box below can you use to describe:

- colour?
- quality?
- size?

black	little	strong	funny
true	wonderful	emerald	wicked
magic	real	poor	white
clever	high	fat	great
serious	ugly	yellow	quiet
silver	angry		

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The animals _____ the forest stood _____ the little girl and her friends. They listened _____ her _____ great interest. They couldn't believe that she was not afraid _____ them. Dorothy didn't see the Li-Mon-Eags because they were standing _____ other animals. The Nome knew Dorothy _____ once. He was very frightened, but he hoped the strangers would not know him _____ his new animal form. Kiki looked _____ the Nome and thought: "Oh, that wicked Nome! How I hate him! The strangers will tell the animals _____ the forest all _____ us and the animals will kill us." Kiki thought hard. Then he ran _____ _____ the clearing _____ the forest and said the magic word several times.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) Dorothy was not afraid of the animals	because Kiki said his magic word.
2) The Wizard had his magic tools with him	because she was with her friends.
3) The Nome was terribly frightened	he knew the Wizard had his magic tools in it.
4) Kiki looked at the black bag because	he couldn't see the wicked magician.
5) The Wizard's body changed its form	because he wanted to do some magic tricks.
6) The Lion was terribly angry because	he was very clever and could harm him.
7) Kiki changed Gugu's form because	because he knew who the strangers were.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) Dorothy and the Wizard came to the forest.
2) the animals listened to Dorothy's words with interest.
3) the Nome was frightened.
4) Kiki stood behind the Nome all the time.
5) Kiki wanted to have the Wizard's tools.
6) Kiki ran away.
7) the Wizard knew there was a wicked magician nearby.
8) Kiki laughed.

2 Prove that:

1) Dorothy was proud of her friends.
2) Dorothy was not afraid of the animals of the forest.
3) Kiki hated the Nome.
4) Kiki was afraid of the Wizard.
5) Kiki was afraid of Gugu.
6) Kiki was wicked.

3 Say who became:

- a fox
- a lamb
- a goose
- a boy
- a fat woman

4 On behalf of Gugu speak about:

1) the strange group that appeared on the clearing.
2) the impression Dorothy made on you.
3) the magic changes that you saw happen with the strangers.
4) what happened to you.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

Dorothy and Gugu the King.

Chapter Ten

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

1) Kiki Aru
   a) stayed on the clearing
   b) flew far away
   c) stayed near the clearing

2) Kiki Aru
   a) opened the magic bag
   b) lost the magic tools
   c) couldn't open the magic bag

3) The Wizard thought it was
   a) difficult to break the magic
   b) easy to break the magic
   c) impossible to break the magic

4) The Nome
   a) was not afraid of Kiki
   b) wanted Kiki to be his master
   c) was afraid of Kiki

5) The magic word changed the Goose
   a) into the Nome
   b) into the Munchkin Boy
   c) into the Li-Mon-Eag

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) All the animals were terribly frightened.
2) Some of the animals didn't run away from the clearing.
3) They didn't know what to do.
4) There was a Fat Man and a Little Boy on the clearing too.
5) The Goose didn't know who it really was.
6) The Wizard didn't know where his bag was.
7) Dorothy thought it wasn't difficult to find the bag.
8) The Goose didn't want to look for the black bag.
9) The Goose wanted to find Kiki Aru.
10) Kiki had a new plan.

3 **Answer the questions.**

1) What did all the animals of the forest do?
2) How did Dorothy learn that the Fox was her friend the Wizard?
3) Did the Munchkin Boy remember who he really was?
4) Did Kiki fly far away from the clearing?
5) Did Kiki know what to do with the magic tools?
6) Who wanted to get the magic tools back?
7) Who looked for the the black bag with magic tools?
8) Where did the Goose find Kiki Aru?
9) Did Kiki need the Nome's help?
10) What did Kiki change the Goose into?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

1) *Let us* run away from this place.
2) Dorothy and her friends *stayed* on the clearing.
3) With *the tools* I can do magic.
4) Kiki *hung* the bag on the tree.
5) It is not difficult *to break the magic* with my magic tools.
6) They all *looked for* the black bag.
7) The Nome *tried* to find Kiki.

2 **How many phrases can you make up with the words in the box below using the verbs *to do* or *to make*? Write them down.**

magic
magic tools
harm
friends
magic tricks
a copy
a birthday present
a cake

3 **Complete the sentences, using *to do* or *to make*.**

1) He doesn't know my secret, so he can ________ me no harm now.
2) He is very bad. He can ________ much harm.
3) You must not fly away from me. ________ your magic here.
4) A tree can't ________ any harm.
5) He took a piece of paper and ________ a copy of the writing.
6) Will you help me to ________ a birthday present for Ozma?
7) Dorothy wanted to ________ a great cake.
8) With the tools I can ________ magic which I can't ________ with one magic word.

4 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

The animals _____ the clearing were very frightened. They thought the magician would change their form too and ran _____ from that place.Only the little Lamb, the Fox, the Boy, and the Fat Woman stayed _____ the clearing. They didn't speak, they only looked _____ one another.When they remembered what they were before, they looked _____ the Goose. The Goose, who was really the Nome, was afraid _____ the Wizard and his friends. So he decided to hide his real name _____ them. He said that he was just a goose. But when the friends and Gugu started to look _____ the Wizard's black bag, the Goose started looking _____ it too. He wanted to find the bag and hide it _____ the Wizard. "If the Wizard knows who I really am, he will kick me _____ _____ the Land of Oz!"

Discussing the Story

1 **Say why:**

1) some animals stayed on the clearing.
2) the Goose didn't give his real name.
3) Kiki understood nothing about the magic tools.

4) the Wizard wanted to find his black bag.
5) the Goose wanted to find the black bag too.
6) the Nome wanted to find Kiki.
7) the Nome obeyed Kiki.
8) Kiki was ready to listen to the Nome's plan.

2 Prove that:

1) the Goose didn't want to change into his real form.
2) Kiki was a lazy boy.
3) Kiki needed the Nome.
4) the Nome wanted to find Kiki very much.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

1) how you found out what animals stayed on the clearing.
2) your plan to find the black bag.

4 Read and act out the talk between:

Kiki Aru and the Nome.

5 What is your opinion?

"Why did you do all this?" The Nome didn't know why Kiki changed his form. Do you know why?

Chapter Eleven

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The Wizard understood that the Li-Mon-Eags
   a) were their friends
   b) were their enemies
   c) were the Munchkins

2) The Fox hid in
   a) a big hole in the ground
   b) a big hole in a wall
   c) a big hole in a tree

3) The Nome wanted to change monkeys into
   a) Li-Mon-Eags
   b) swords
   c) soldiers

4) Kiki became
   a) a tree
   b) a nut
   c) a stone

5) The Wizard
   a) threw the nuts away
   b) put the nuts into his pocket
   c) ate the nuts

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The Fox saw the two Li-Mon-Eags by chance.
2) The Wizard-Fox understood the Li-Mon-Eags' secret.
3) The Wizard-Fox decided to watch the wicked magicians.
4) The hole in the tree was very deep.
5) The Wizard-Fox couldn't hear well what the Li-Mon-Eags spoke about.
6) The Nome wanted to frighten the Oz people with fifty soldiers.
7) Kiki changed all the monkeys into soldiers at once.
8) The Nome was angry with Kiki again.
9) The Wizard-Fox learned the magic word at once.
10) The Nome heard the magic word from Kiki.
11) The Wizard repeated the magic word correctly three times.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What place did Kiki and the Nome choose for their secret talk?
2) Did the Wizard-Fox understand who the Li-Mon-Eags really were?
3) Where did the Wizard-Fox hide himself?
4) What was the Nome's new plan?

5) How did the Wizard-Fox learn the magic word?
6) Did the Wizard remember the magic word at once?
7) What happened when the Wizard said the magic word for the first time?
8) What happened when the Wizard said the magic word for the second time?
9) Did the Nome understand who the Fox really was?
10) What did the Nome want to do with the Fox?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) I understand it all now. It is all *clear* now.
2) I must *watch them* all the time.
3) There was a big *hole* in the tree.
4) In a moment a soldier with a big *sword* stood on the clearing.
5) The Wizard *put his head out of the hole.*
6) *The order* of the letters in the word was wrong.

2 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

The Wizard-Fox (to hide) in a big hole in the tree. The two Li-Mon-Eags (to sit) not far from him, so he (to hear) everything they (to talk) about. The Wizard (to understand) that the wicked magicians (to want) to conquer the people of Oz. He (to think) it (to be) a very wicked plan. The Wizard (to become) very angry. Suddenly he (to see) one Li-Mon-Eag (to get up) and (to come) nearer to the tree where he (to hide). The Li-Mon-Eag (to look) into the hole, but he couldn't (to see) anything because it (to be) very dark inside it. Then a wonderful thing (to happen): the Wizard (to hear) the magic word!

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

When Kiki ran back _____ the Nome _____ the sixth time the Wizard-Fox put his head _____ _____ the hole. He was not

afraid _____ the wicked magician because he knew the magic word. When he said it aloud Kiki changed _____ a small nut _____ once. The Wizard cried _____ joy and jumped _____ _____ the hole. _____ that moment the Nome rose _____ the ground and looked around. The Wizard-Fox looked _____ him and said: "This Li-Mon-Eag must change _____ a big nut: Pyzrqxgl!" But no magic happened because the order _____ the letters _____ the magic word was wrong.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) the Wizard-Fox got into the hole.
2) the Nome wanted to change the monkeys into soldiers.
3) Kiki ran up to the tree several times.
4) the Wizard-Fox listened to the magic word six times.
5) the Wizard-Fox jumped out of the hole.
6) the Nome's form didn't change for the first time.
7) the Wizard-Fox changed the Li-Mon-Eags into nuts.

2 Prove that:

1) Kiki still didn't trust the Nome.
2) the Nome was angry.
3) the hole was a good place to hide.
4) the Nome didn't know what happened to Kiki.

3 Add more details:

1) At last I can tell you who changed our forms.
2) The Nome saw the Fox, but he did not see Kiki.
3) The Nome repeated the word several times.

4 On behalf of the Wizard speak about:

1) the strange animals on the clearing.
2) what you thought of the Li-Mon-Eags.
3) how you learned the magic word.

4) what you changed the Li-Mon-Eags into.
5) what you decided to do next.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

Kiki and the Nome

6 What is your opinion?

The Wizard decided to change the wicked magicians into nuts. Why didn't he change them into something else? Was his idea a good one?

Chapter Twelve

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The Wizard changed his friends
   a) all at once
   b) one by one
   c) first into nuts, then into their real form

2) The soldiers
   a) were running around the forest
   b) couldn't move
   c) were climbing the trees

3) The monkeys
   a) asked the Wizard hundreds of questions
   b) shouted at the Wizard
   c) thanked the Wizard very much

4) The basket was big enough for
   a) twelve real monkeys
   b) twelve soldiers
   c) twelve little monkeys

5) Dorothy and her friends
   a) stayed in the forest for some more days
   b) decided to live in the forest
   c) went away to the Emerald City

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Dorothy was the first to see the Wizard in his real form.
2) The Wizard changed all his friends into their real form at once.
3) The Wizard told his friends of his adventures.
4) The Wizard had a good reason for changing the wicked magicians into nuts.
5) The six soldiers made much noise in the forest.
6) The Wizard changed the soldiers back into monkeys.
7) The Wizard made magic with the help of his magic tools.
8) The monkeys liked the Wizard very much.
9) All the monkeys got into a small basket.
10) The Wizard promised to bring the monkeys back to the forest soon.
11) Gugu knew he had some real friends in the Emerald City.
12) Dorothy carried the basket in her hands.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Wizard's friends want to know?
2) What was the first thing the Wizard did when he came back to his friends?
3) Did the Wizard show the two nuts to his friends?
4) Could the nuts talk?
5) Could the nuts do any harm to the animals ?
6) Were the monkeys interested in the six big soldiers?
7) How did the Wizard change the soldiers back into little monkeys?
8) What did the Wizard need the twelve monkeys for?
9) Did the monkeys want to come with the Wizard?
10) What did Gugu think of the Wizard and his friends?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) The Wizard told his friends of his *adventures*.
2) The big soldiers couldn't *make a step*.
3) The monkeys *made great noise*.
4) You are the *true friends* of animals.
5) The Wizard *promised* to bring the monkeys back.

2 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

1) The Wizard (made / did) magic without his tools.
2) The Wizard (made / did) his friends very happy.
3) The two nuts couldn't (make / do) the friends any harm.
4) They monkeys (made / did) great noise in the forest.
5) The Wizard (made / did) twelve monkeys very small.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Wizard changed his friends _____ their real forms. Then he told his happy friends _____ his adventures and showed them the two nuts. Dorothy, Gugu and the Cowardly Lion stood _____ the Wizard and listened _____ his story _____ great surprise. They were not afraid _____ the wicked beasts any more because they were only nuts now. Then they all went _____ the forest where the six soldiers were. Hundreds and hundreds _____ monkeys sat _____ the trees making great noise and talking _____ one another. When the Wizard changed the soldiers _____ monkeys again, all the monkeys _____ the forest cried _____ joy and thanked the kind magician. They wanted to come _____ him _____ the Emerald City.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) the Wizard went back to his friends in the clearing.

2) the wicked beasts could do no harm any more.
3) the friends hurried into the forest.
4) the friends couldn't hear each other in the forest.
5) the Wizard couldn't use his magic tools.
6) the monkeys wanted to go to the Emerald City.
7) Gugu invited the Wizard to come to the forest back again.

2 Prove that:

1) the Wizard was a true friend.
2) the nuts couldn't do harm any longer.
3) the soldiers were happy to become monkeys again.
4) Gugu liked the Wizard and his friends.

3 Add more details:

1) The Wizard told his happy friends of his adventures.
2) The monkeys looked at the soldiers.
3) The Wizard put a small basket on the ground.
4) "What will you say to this?"

4 On behalf of Gugu the Leopard speak about:

1) the Wizard's magic.
2) what you thought of the Wizard.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

1) Dorothy, the Fat Woman, the Munchkin Boy and the Wizard.
2) the Wizard and the monkeys.

6 What is your opinion?

"East or West, home is best."
The Wizard took twelve little monkeys away from the forest to the Emerald City. Will the monkeys like the Emerald City? Will they want to come back to the forest?

Chapter Thirteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) Ozma was
   a) pleased to see all her guests
   b) angry with some Oz people
   c) displeased with all the animals

2) The Oz people
   a) made fun on Ozma's birthday
   b) worked hard on Ozma's birthday
   c) drank water from fountains on Ozma's birthday

3) Dorothy
   a) cut the cake
   b) asked the Wizard to cut the cake
   c) asked Ozma to cut the cake

4) Ozma
   a) knew the real form of the nuts
   b) wanted to know the real form of the nuts
   c) didn't want to know the real form of the nuts

5) Dorothy wanted
   a) to use the magic of the fountain
   b) to drink some water from the fountain
   c) to put the nuts into the fountain

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) The Wizard began to teach the twelve monkeys at once.

2) The monkeys couldn't understand what the Wizard wanted them to do.
3) The Oz people loved Ozma's birthday.
4) There were a lot of fountains in Ozma's garden.
5) There was a special board next to each of the fountains.
6) Ozma invited many guests to her birthday.
7) Ozma's birthday cake was beautifully decorated.
8) The candles were made of sugar.
9) Ozma thanked her friends for the wonderful present.
10) Ozma wanted the Wizard to change the nuts into Li-Mon-Eags again.
11) Dorothy wanted to use the magic of the fountain.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Wizard teach the monkeys?
2) How did the people of the Land of Oz decorate their houses for Ozma's birthday?
3) What writing was there on a board near one of the fountains?
4) Who came to Ozma's birthday?
5) Did Ozma like the birthday cake?
6) What happened when Ozma cut the cake?
7) Did Ozma know where the Wizard took the little monkeys from?
8) What did the Tin Woodman give Ozma as a present?
9) What did the Wizard, Ozma and Dorothy speak about in the garden?
10) Did they know the real form of the nuts?
11) How did Dorothy want to use the magic of the fountain?
12) Did Ozma like Dorothy's plan?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) There was *a writing* on a board near one of the fountains.
2) There were *lighted candles* on the cake.

3) In the centre of the cake there were *letters* which were made of sugar.
4) They sat down on an emerald bench *opposite* one of the fountains.
5) The Wizard will *make them thirsty*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

_____ last Ozma's birthday came. It was a great holiday _____ the Land _____ Oz. The people sang, danced and played games _____ the streets and their gardens. Ozma gave a great dinner _____ her Emerald Palace. Ozma's friends, people and animals, came _____ her palace _____ all the countries _____ the Land _____ Oz. Ozma talked _____ all _____ them. Then four beautiful girls brought _____ a very big cake and put it _____ the middle _____ the table. There were flowers and candles _____ it. _____ the centre _____ the cake there were letters which were made _____ sugar. When Ozma saw the cake she cried _____ joy: "Oh, how beautiful!" Then suddenly some funny monkeys jumped _____ _____ the cake and cried "Many happy returns!" Ozma laughed very much. She thanked her friends _____ the beautiful and unusual present.

3 How many phrasal verbs can you make with the help of the prepositions in the box? Use three of them to speak about the events of this chapter.

- out
- up
- down
- for
- away

to go to come to sit to run

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) The Wizard taught the monkeys different tricks	she wanted to see all her friends.
2) The monkeys learned the acrobatic tricks fast	because they enjoyed the party greatly.
3) There was a writing on one of the fountains	he wanted to make Ozma laugh.
4) Ozma gave a great dinner because	because they were very clever.
5) Ozma and her friends laughed very much	because the fountain was not a usual one.
6) The Wizard was against Ozma's plan because	the magicians could do more harm to the people of Oz.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) Ozma's birthday was a great holiday.
2) Ozma gave a great dinner.
3) Dorothy asked Ozma to cut the cake herself.
4) the monkeys made everybody laugh.
5) people couldn't drink water from one of the fountains in Ozma's garden.
6) Ozma wanted the Wizard to change the nuts into their real form.
7) the Wizard was against Ozma's idea.
8) Ozma sent Dorothy for a cup.

2 Prove that:

1) the Land of Oz looked differently on Ozma's birthday.
2) Ozma loved guests.
3) Ozma loved birthday surprises.
4) Ozma was kind.
5) Ozma liked Dorothy's plan.

3 Add more details to this:

1) There was some writing on a board near one of the fountains.
2) Ozma took a knife and cut the cake.
3) Dorothy went out for a walk in Ozma's garden.
4) "We must not be afraid of two living things."
5) "That's not a bad idea," said the Wizard.

4 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

1) the Land of Oz on Ozma's birthday.
2) your present to Ozma.
3) why you wanted to give Ozma an unusual present.
4) why you went for a walk the following morning.
5) what you talked with Ozma and the Wizard about.
6) your plan to use the magic of the fountain.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

1) Dorothy, Ozma and the little monkeys.
2) the Wizard, Dorothy and Ozma.

6 What is your opinion?

"We must not be afraid of two living things even if they are our enemies, or wicked magicians," said Ozma. Do you share her opinion? Speak with your classmates and find out what they think about it.

Chapter Fourteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Make the right choice:

1) The Wizard put the small nut
   a) near the fountain
   b) into the fountain
   c) into a cup next to the fountain

2) Kiki looked around
   a) with fear
   b) with anger
   c) in great surprise

3) The water from the fountain changed the Nome into
   a) his real form
   b) a kind old man
   c) a magician

4) Ozma wanted the Nome and Kiki
   a) to go away
   b) to stay in the Emerald City
   c) to live in the Munchkin Country

5) Dorothy and the Wizard were happy to teach Kiki and the Nome
   a) some acrobatic tricks
   b) some magic
   c) to be kind and to love people

2 Say *true*, *false*, or *I don't know*.

1) Dorothy put the little nut near the fountain.
2) The first nut changed into Kiki Aru.
3) Kiki understood where he was and got frightened.
4) Kiki was very thirsty.
5) The little boy drank three liters of water.
6) Kiki didn't remember anything about his life.
7) Kiki looked at Dorothy and began to cry.
8) Dorothy recognized the Nome King.
9) The Nome was happy to see Dorothy and her friends.
10) The magic water of the fountain changed the Nome into a kind man.

3 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Wizard say when he put the little nut near the fountain?
2) What was the real form of the first nut?
3) What did Kiki do for the first time in his life?
4) What did Ozma say about the little Munchkin Boy?
5) What did the Wizard say when he put the big nut near the fountain?

6) What happened when the Nome drank some water?
7) Did he remember Kiki?
8) Did Ozma want to send the Nome away from the Land of Oz?
9) Did the Nome and Kiki become good and kind?
10) Who helped them?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Kiki *found* Ozma very beautiful.
2) The boy smiled a kind and happy *smile*.
3) I shall *fight* you and kick you out of the Land of Oz.
4) I don't know *either* him *or* you.

2 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

1) The boy (to take) the cup and (to run) to the fountain.
2) He (to drink) one cup after another.
3) He (to forget) his name and the name of the country he (to live) in.
4) The Nome (to stand) in front of the friends and his long white hair (to rise) in the air.
5) The friends (to teach) the Nome and Kiki how to be kind and good.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Wizard put the small nut _____ the ground _____ the fountain and said the magic word. _____ once the nut changed _____ Kiki Aru, the boy _____ the Munchkin Country. The boy looked around _____ great surprise, because he couldn't understand where he was. He was terribly thirsty. He took _____ a cup and ran _____ the fountain. He drank one cup _____ another. When he looked around again he saw some beautiful people sitting _____ a bench. He liked them and smiled _____ them. _____ the first time _____ his life Kiki smiled a kind and happy smile.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

1) the Wizard put the nuts near the fountain one by one.
2) Kiki didn't understand where he was.
3) the boy obeyed Dorothy.
4) Ozma and her friends looked at the Nome in great surprise.
5) the Nome coudn't finish his angry speech.
6) Ozma wanted to leave Kiki and the Nome in the Emerald City.

2 Prove that:

1) the magic of the fountain really worked.
2) neither Kiki nor the Nome could do harm any longer.
3) it wasn't easy for Ozma, Dorothy and the Wizard to teach Kiki and the Nome how to be good and kind.

3 Add more details:

1) Kiki was very glad when he saw a cup and a fountain.
2) Kiki smiled to them.
3) The Nome laughed his wicked laugh.
4) "I don't know either him or you."

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

1) the magic changes you saw.
2) what you thought must be done with the boy and the Nome.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

1) Dorothy, Ozma and the Munchkin Boy.
2) the Wizard, Dorothy, Ozma and the Nome.

6 What is your opinion?

1) Ozma believed that if the Nome stayed in the Land of

Oz, and saw only good and kind people, he would become good and kind himself.

2) Do you share her opinion? Do you believe that a place can change a man?
3) Speak with your classmates and find out what they think about it.

Dear Friend!

You have finished reading the book. Congratulations!
We hope, you have enjoyed it.

Now let's talk about it and its characters once again.

Questions and tasks for the final discussion:

1) Did you like reading the book?
2) What have you learnt about the Land of Oz?
3) The Land of Oz was a magic country, wasn't it? Do you remember who could make magic there? Can you name all the magicians, witches and wizards of the country? How did they make their magic?
4) Some of the magicians were wicked. What happened to all of them? Why do you think they met such an end?
5) What character did you like most of all? Explain why.
6) Was there any character that you disliked very much? Explain why you didn't like him / her.
7) Describe your favourite part of the book. Role-play it with some of your classmates.
8) Dorothy has found many friends in the Land of Oz. Were they true friends? Can you prove it? What does it mean to be a true friend? Have you got a true friend? Which of the characters of the book would you like to be your friend? Say why.
9) There were many beautiful places in the Land of Oz. Which of them would you like to visit? Say why. What beautiful things would you see there?
10) In this book the animals of the Gugu Forest behave like people. Have you read any other books where the animals behave like people? What books? Did you like them?
11) Ozma, Dorothy and the Wizard decided to teach two wicked characters to be good and kind. What exactly do you think they taught their pupils? What good things can you teach someone?
12) Say what you think about the end of the book? Can you think of a different end to the story? Write it down and then read it in class.

13) Try your hand at story writing. Can you imagine what happened with your favourite character in ten years time? Start your story like this:

"Dorothy was happy to be back to the Emerald City once again. She was looking forward to meeting her friends: the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman, the Cowardly Lion, Ozma, the Wizard. She knew Kiki and the Nome would wait for her too. But what was it? Why were the people of Oz making so much noise? Dorothy turned back and saw..."

VOCABULARY

Принятые сокращения

a adjective прилагательное
adv adverb наречие
cj conjunction союз
int interjection междометие
n noun существительное
num numeral числительное
pl plural множественное число
pron pronoun местоимение
prep preposition предлог
v verb глагол

A

about [ə'baut] *prep* об, относительно; около, вокруг
acrobatic [ˌækrə'bætɪk] *a* акробатический
adventure [əd'ventʃə] *n* приключение
afraid [ə'freɪd] *a* испуганный
be afraid of бояться
again [ə'geɪn] *adv* опять, снова
ago [ə'gou] *adv* тому назад
air [ɛə] *n* воздух
all [ɔːl] *pron* весь, вся, все
alone [ə'loun] *a* один, одинокий
along [ə'lɔŋ] *prep* вдоль, по; *adv* (*часто* with) вместе с
already [ɔːl'redɪ] *adv* уже
always ['ɔːlw(e)ɪz] *adv* всегда
anger ['æŋgə] *n* гнев
angrily ['æŋgrɪlɪ] *adv* сердито
angry ['æŋgrɪ] *a* сердитый
be angry with smb. сердиться на кого-л.
animal ['ænɪm(ə)l] *n* животное
another [ə'nʌðə] *pron* другой, еще один
any ['enɪ] *pron* какой-нибудь, сколько-нибудь (*в вопросительных предложениях*)
anybody ['enɪˌbɔdɪ] *pron* кто-нибудь (*в вопросительных предложениях*)
arm [ɑːm] *n* рука (от кисти до плеча)
around [ə'raund] *adv* кругом, всюду; вблизи
as [æz, əz] *adv* как; так как, в то время как
as ... as такие же ... как, так же ... как
asleep [ə'sliːp] *a* спящий
be asleep спать
at [æt, ət] *prep* в, у, при, на
ate [et] *см.* **eat**
away [ə'weɪ] *adv* прочь
axe [æks] *n* топор

B

back [bæk] *n* спина; *adv* назад
get back вернуться
go back возвращаться
balloon [bə'luːn] *n* воздушный шар
balloonist [bə'luːnɪst] *n* воздухоплаватель
bark [bɑːk] *v* лаять
basket ['bɑːskɪt] *n* корзинка
bath [bɑːθ] *n* ванна
take a bath принять ванну

be (was / were, been) [bi:] ([wɔz] / [wə:], [bi:n]) *v* быть; существовать; находиться
beak [bi:k] *n* клюв
bear [bɛə] *n* медведь
beard [bɪəd] *n* борода
beast [bi:st] *n* зверь; чудовище
beautiful [ˈbju:tɪful] *a* красивый, прекрасный
because [bɪˈkɔ:z] *cj* потому что
become (became, become) [bɪˈkʌm] ([bɪˈkeɪm], [bɪˈkʌm]) *v* стать, становиться; превратиться
before [bɪˈfɔ:] *prep* перед; до; прежде чем
begin (began, begun) [bɪˈgɪn] ([bɪˈgæn], [bɪˈgʌn]) *v* начинать(ся)
beginning [bɪˈgɪnɪŋ] *n* начало
behind [bɪˈhaɪnd] *prep* сзади, позади
believe [bɪˈli:v] *v* верить, доверять
bell [bel] *n* звонок
beside [bɪˈsaɪd] *prep* около, рядом
best [best] *a* (*превосх. ст. от* good) наилучший
bird [bə:d] *n* птица
birthday [ˈbə:θdeɪ] *n* день рождения
bite (bit, bitten) [baɪt] ([bɪt], [bɪtən]) *v* кусать(ся)
blow [blou] *n* удар
board [bɔ:d] *n* доска
body [ˈbɔdɪ] *n* тело
bone [boun] *n* кость
born [bɔ:n] *a* рожденный
be born родиться
both [bouθ] *pron* оба
brains [breɪnz] *n* мозги, ум
brave [breɪv] *a* храбрый
break (broke, broken) [breɪk] ([brouk], [broukən]) *v* ломать(ся), разбивать(ся)
brick [brɪk] *n* кирпич
bright [braɪt] *a* яркий
brightly [ˈbraɪtlɪ] *adv* ярко
bring (brought) [brɪŋ] ([brɔ:t]) *v* приносить, приводить
bucket [ˈbʌkɪt] *n* ведро
burn (burnt) [bə:n] ([bə:nt]) *v* сгореть; сжигать
but [bʌt] *cj* но
by [baɪ] *prep* у, при, около, по, к; мимо; на

C

cake [keɪk] *n* торт, пирог
call [kɔ:l] *n* зов; *v* звать, позвать; кричать
can (could) [kæn] ([kud]) *v* мочь, смочь
candle [ˈkændl] *n* свеча
capital [ˈkæpɪtl] *n* столица
carry [ˈkærɪ] *v* нести, относить
cat [kæt] *n* кошка
catch (caught) [kætʃ] ([kɔ:t]) *v* ловить, поймать; схватить
change [tʃeɪndʒ] *v* менять(ся), изменять(ся)
chapter [ˈtʃæptə] *n* глава
chop [tʃɔp] *v* рубить
circus [ˈsə:kəs] *n* цирк
city [ˈsɪtɪ] *n* большой город
clean [kli:n] *v* чистить, убирать; *a* чистый
clear [klɪə] *a* ясный, светлый
clearing [ˈklɪərɪŋ] *n* поляна в лесу
clever [ˈklevə] *a* умный, способный
close [klouz] *v* закрывать
clothes [klouðz] *n* одежда, платье
cold [kould] *n* холод; *a* холодный
come (came, come) [kʌm] ([keɪm], [kʌm]) *v* приходить
come along идти по, вдоль
come back возвращаться
come down спускаться
come in входить
came off сойти; спадать, сваливаться
come up (to) подойти (к)
comrade [ˈkɔmrɪd] *n* товарищ
conquer [ˈkɔŋkə] *v* завоевывать, побеждать
contents [ˈkɔntents] *n* содержание
continue [kənˈtɪnju:] *v* продолжать(ся)
copy [ˈkɔpɪ] *n* копия
make a copy снять копию, переписать
corner [ˈkɔ:nə] *n* угол
cotton [ˈkɔtn] *n* вата
count [kaunt] *v* считать, подсчитывать
country [ˈkʌntrɪ] *n* страна, государство
cow [kau] *n* корова
coward [ˈkauəd] *n* трус
cowardly [ˈkauədlɪ] *a* трусливый
crow [krou] *n* ворона
cruel [ˈkruəl] *a* жестокий
cry [kraɪ] *v* кричать
cry out крикнуть, воскликнуть
give a cry вскрикнуть
cut (cut) [kʌt] ([kʌt]) *v* резать, отрезать
cut off отрезать
cut out вырезать
cyclone [ˈsaɪkloun] *n* циклон, вихрь

D

dance [dɑ:ns] *v* танцевать
danger [ˈdeɪndʒə] *n* опасность
dark [dɑ:k] *a* темный
dear [dɪə] *a* дорогой, милый
decide [dɪˈsaɪd] *v* решать, принимать решение
difficult [ˈdɪfɪkəlt] *a* трудный
dinner [ˈdɪnə] *n* обед
dirty [ˈdə:tɪ] *a* грязный
disappear [ˌdɪsəˈpɪə] *v* исчезать, пропадать
do (did, done) [du:] ([dɪd], [dʌn]) *v* делать, сделать
down [daun] *adv* вниз; внизу
dress [dres] *n* платье; *v* одеваться
drink (drank, drunk) [drɪŋk] ([dræŋk], [drʌŋk]) *v* пить
drop [drɔp] *v* ронять, бросать
during [ˈdjuərɪŋ] *prep* в течение

E

each [i:tʃ] *pron* каждый
each other друг друга
eagle [ˈi:gl] *n* орел
earth [ə:θ] *n* земля
easily [ˈi:zɪlɪ] *adv* легко
East [i:st] *n* восток
easy [ˈi:zɪ] *a* легкий
eat (ate, eaten) [i:t] ([et], [ˈi:tn]) *v* кушать, есть
eat up съесть
egg [eg] *n* яйцо
emerald [ˈem(ə)rəld] *n* изумруд
the Emerald City Изумрудный город
end [end] *n* конец; *v* кончаться
enemy [ˈenɪmɪ] *n* враг, неприятель
even [ˈi:vn] *adv* даже
ever [ˈevə] *adv* когда-либо
every [ˈevrɪ] *pron* каждый
explain [ɪksˈpleɪn] *v* объяснять
eye-glasses [ˈaɪglɑ:sɪz] *n* очки

F

fairy [ˈfɛərɪ] *n* волшебница, фея; *a* волшебный
fall (fell; fallen) [fɔ:l] ([fel]; [ˈfɔlən]) *v* падать, упасть
fall asleep заснуть
fall over опрокидываться, свалиться
far [fɑ:] *adv* далеко
far away далеко
fat [fæt] *a* жирный, толстый
fear [fɪə] *n* страх

fairyland ['fɛərɪlænd] *n* сказочная страна
few [fju:] *a* мало
a few несколько
fight (fought) [faɪt] ([fɔ:t]) *n* битва, драка; *v* драться, сражаться
fill [fɪl] *v* наполнять
find (found) [faɪnd] ([faund]) *v* найти, находить
finish ['fɪnɪʃ] *v* кончать, заканчивать
fire [faɪə] *n* огонь
set fire to поджечь что-л.
first [fə:st] *a* первый; *adv* сперва, сначала
at first сначала
for the first time впервые
fish [fɪʃ] *n* рыба
floor [flɔ:] *n* пол
fly (flew, flown) [flaɪ] ([flu:], [floun]) *v* летать
fly away улететь
fly down лететь вниз
fly up взлететь
follow ['fɔlou] *v* следовать за
food [fu:d] *n* пища
fool [fu:l] *n* дурак; *v* дурачить, обманывать
forest ['fɔrɪst] *n* лес
forget (forgot, forgotten) [fə'get] ([fə'gɔt], [fə'gɔtən]) *v* забыть, забывать
form [fɔ:m] *n* форма, внешний вид
found [faund] *см.* **find**
fountain ['fauntɪn] *n* фонтан
fox [fɔks] *n* лисица
free [fri:] *a* свободный
friendly ['frendlɪ] *a* дружеский
frighten ['fraɪtn] *v* пугать, испугать
be frightened испугаться
front [frʌnt] *a* передняя сторона чего-л.
in front of перед, впереди
fruit [fru:t] *n* плод(ы), фрукт(ы)
full (of) ['ful (əf)] *a* полный
funny ['fʌnɪ] *a* забавный, смешной

G

game [geɪm] *n* игра
play games играть в игры
gas [gæs] *n* газ
gate [geɪt] *n* ворота
get (got) [get] ([gɔt]) *v* получить, достать; добраться, дойти; попасть; доставить; сделаться
get back вернуться
get down спуститься
get in (into) забраться, проникнуть
get to попадать, добираться
get up встать
giant ['dʒaɪənt] *n* великан, гигант
giraffe [dʒɪ'rɑ:f] *n* жираф
give (gave, given) [gɪv] ([geɪv], ['gɪvən]) *v* давать, дать
give a cry вскрикнуть
glad [glæd] *a* довольный, радостный
be glad радоваться
glass [glɑ:s] *n* стекло; *a* стеклянный
go (went; gone) [gou] ([went], [gɔn]) *v* идти, ходить, уходить; ехать
go along идти вдоль
go away уходить
go back возвращаться
go into входить
go on продолжать
go out (of) выходить
go up подниматься
go up (to) подходить
gold [gould] *n* золото; *a* золотой
good-bye [gud'baɪ] *int* до свидания
goose [gu:s] (*мн. ч.* **geese**) *n* гусь
got [gɔt] *см.* **get**
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
great [greɪt] *a* большой, великий
ground [graund] *n* земля

group [gru:p] *n* группа
guest [gest] *n* гость

H

hang (hung) [hæŋ] ([hʌŋ]) *v* висеть
happen ['hæp(ə)n] *v* случаться, происходить
happily ['hæpɪlɪ] *adv* счастливо
happy ['hæpɪ] *a* счастливый
hard [hɑ:d] *a* жесткий, трудный; *adv* усердно; много
think hard напрягать ум
work hard упорно работать
harm [hɑ:m] *n* вред, зло; *v* вредить
do harm причинять зло
hate [heɪt] *v* ненавидеть
hawk [hɔ:k] *n* ястреб
head [hed] *n* голова
hear (heard) [hɪə] ([hə:d]) *v* слышать, услышать
heart [hɑ:t] *n* сердце
help [help] *n* помощь; *v* помогать
hide (hid, hidden) [haɪd] ([hɪd], [hɪdən]) *v* прятать, спрятаться
high [haɪ] *a* высокий
hold (held) [hould] ([held]) *v* держать
hold out протягивать
hole [houl] *n* дупло; отверстие; дырка
holiday ['hɔlɪdɪ] *n* праздник, день отдыха
home [houm] *n* дом
at home дома
hope [houp] *n* надежда; *v* надеяться
horse [hɔ:s] *n* лошадь
hot [hɔt] *a* жаркий
hour ['auə] *n* час
house[haus] *n* дом
how [hau] *adv* как
humbug ['hʌmbʌg] *n* обманщик, мошенник
hundred ['hʌndrɪd] *num*, *n* сто, сотня
hungry ['hʌŋgrɪ] *a* голодный
be hungry быть голодным

I

idea [aɪ'dɪə] *n* идея, понятие, представление
if [ɪf] *cj* если
in [ɪn] *prep* в; через
in a minute через минуту
indeed [ɪn'di:d] *adv* в самом деле, действительно
inn [ɪn] *n* гостиница
inside ['ɪn'saɪd] *adv* внутренняя сторона, изнанка; внутри
interest ['ɪntrɪst] *n* интерес
into ['ɪntu, 'ɪntə] *prep* в; внутрь

J

jar [ðʒɑ:] *n* кувшин
jewel ['dʒu:əl] *n* драгоценный камень
joy [dʒɔɪ] *n* радость
jump [dʒʌmp] *v* прыгать, прыгнуть
jump down спрыгнуть, соскочить
jump out выпрыгнуть
jump up подпрыгнуть
just [dʒʌst] *adv* как раз; просто; только что; только
just then как раз в это время

K

keep (kept) [ki:p] ([kept]) *v* держать(ся); сдерживать
keep away держать на расстоянии, отпугивать
keep watch сторожить, стоять на страже
key [ki:] *n* ключ
kick [kɪk] *v* лягнуть, ударить ногой
kick out вышвырнуть, выгнать
kill [kɪl] *v* убивать
kind [kaɪnd] *a* добрый, любезный
kind-hearted ['kaɪnd'hɑ:tɪd] *a* мягкосердечный
king [kɪŋ] *n* король

kingdom ['kɪŋdəm] *n* королевство, царство
kitchen ['kɪtʃɪn] *n* кухня
knew [nju:] *см.* **know**
knife [naɪf] *n* нож
knock [nɔk] *v* стучать, постучать
know (knew, known) [nou] ([nju:], [noun]) *v* знать, узна(ва)ть

L

lamb [læm] *n* ягненок
land [lænd] *n* земля, страна, держава
large [lɑ:dʒ] *a* большой
last [lɑ:st] *a* последний
  at last наконец
laugh [lɑ:f] *n* смех; *v* смеяться
lay [leɪ] *см.* **lie**
learn (learnt) [lə:n] ([lə:nt]) *v* учить, выучить; узнать
leave (left) [li:v] ([left]) *v* оставлять, покидать
left [left] *a* левый
  on the left; to the left налево
leopard ['lepəd] *n* леопард
let (let) [let] ([let]) *v* позволить, пустить
  let us go! пойдем!
letter ['letə] *n* буква; письмо
lie (lay, lain) [laɪ] ([leɪ], [leɪn]) *v* лежать
  lie down ложиться, лечь
life [laɪf] *n* жизнь
lift [lɪft] *v* поднимать
light [laɪt] *a* легкий, светлый
like[1] [laɪk] *v* любить, нравиться
like[2] *a* похожий; *adv* подобно, как
lion [laɪən] *n* лев
listen (to) ['lɪsn (tu)] *v* слушать, прислушиваться (к)
little ['lɪtl] *a* маленький
  a little немного
lock [lɔk] *v* запирать (*на замок*)
long [lɔŋ] *a* длинный; долгий; *adv* долго
  all day long целый день
  how long сколько времени, как долго
look [luk] *n* взгляд; *v* смотреть; выглядеть; казаться
  look after присматривать, заботиться
  look around оглядеться
  look at смотреть на
  look for искать
  look like быть похожим
  look out выглядывать
  look up поднять глаза
lot [lɔt] *adv* много
  a lot of много
loud [laud] *a* громкий
loudly ['laudlɪ] *adv* громко
love [lʌv] *n* любовь; *v* любить
low [lou] *a* низкий; тихий; негромкий
  in a low voice тихо, тихим голосом

M

magic ['mædʒɪk] *n* волшебство, колдовство; чудеса; *a* волшебный, магический
magician [mə'dʒɪʃn] *n* волшебник, чародей
make (made) [meɪk] ([meɪd]) *v* делать, сделать; заставлять
mask [mɑ:sk] *n* маска
mass [mæs] *n* масса, груда
master ['mɑ:stə] *n* хозяин, владелец, господин
may [meɪ] *v* мочь
meet (met) [mi:t] ([met]) *v* встречать(ся)
meeting ['mi:tɪŋ] *n* встреча
melt [melt] *v* таять, растоплять(ся), растворять(ся)

middle ['mɪdl] *n* середина
minute ['mɪnɪt] *n* минута
mistake [mɪs'teɪk] *n* ошибка
moment ['moumənt] *n* момент
  in a moment в одно мгновение
money ['mʌnɪ] *n* деньги
monkey ['mʌŋkɪ] *n* обезьяна
mountain ['mauntɪn] *n* гора
mouth [mauθ] *n* рот
move [mu:v] *v* двигать(ся), передвигать(ся)
much [mʌtʃ] *adv* много; гораздо (*при сравнении*)
  very much очень
munch [mʌntʃ] *v* жевать, пережевывать

N

near [nɪə] *adv, prep* около, близко
never ['nevə] *adv* никогда
new [nju:] *a* новый
next [nekst] *a* следующий, ближайший
nice [naɪs] *a* хороший, красивый, приятный, славный
noise [nɔɪz] *n* шум
North [nɔ:θ] *n* север
nose [nouz] *n* нос
nut [nʌt] *n* орех

O

obey [ə'beɪ] *v* слушаться, повиноваться
of [ɔv, əv] *prep* с, из, о, от, о(об)
off [ɔf] *prep* прочь, с, от
often ['ɔfn] *adv* часто
on [ɔn] *prep* на, в, о
once [wʌns] *adv* однажды, один раз
  at once сразу же, немедленно
only ['ounlɪ] *adv* только
opposite ['ɔpəzɪt] *adv* напротив
or [ɔ:] *cj* или
order ['ɔ:də] *n* порядок; приказ; *v* приказывать, распоряжаться
other ['ʌðə] *pron* другой
out (of) [aut] *prep* из
over ['ouvə] *prep* через; над; выше; об

P

paint [peɪnt] *v* рисовать, нарисовать
pair [pɛə] *n* пара
palace ['pælɪs] *n* дворец
part [pɑ:t] *n* часть
pass [pɑ:s] *v* проходить
  pass by проходить мимо
past [pɑ:st] *n* прошлое
paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа
people ['pi:pl] *n* люди, народ
pick [pɪk] *v* поднимать
  pick up схватить
plan [plæn] *n* план
pocket ['pɔkɪt] *n* карман
poetry ['pouɪtrɪ] *n* стихи, поэзия
politely [pə'laɪtlɪ] *adv* вежливо
prairie ['prɛərɪ] *n* прерия, степь
present ['preznt] *n* подарок
promise ['prɔmɪs] *n* обещание; *v* обещать
pull [pul] *v* тащить, дергать
  pull out выдергивать
punish ['pʌnɪʃ] *v* наказать, отомстить
push [puʃ] *v* толкать
put (put) [put] ([put]) *v* положить, класть
  put into вложить, положить вовнутрь
  put on надеть
  put out вытянуть
  put over покрыть

Q

question ['kwestʃn] *n* вопрос

quick [kwɪk] *a* быстрый; *adv* быстро; живо
quickly ['kwɪklɪ] *adv* быстро

R

raise [reɪz] *v* поднять
read (read) [ri:d] ([red]) *v* читать
reader ['ri:də] *n* читатель
ready ['redɪ] *a* готовый
real [rɪəl] *a* настоящий, действительный
really ['rɪəlɪ] *adv* на самом деле; действительно
remember [rɪ'membə] *v* помнить, вспомнить
repeat [rɪ'pi:t] *v* повторять
rest [rest] *v* отдыхать
rich [rɪtʃ] *a* богатый
right [raɪt] *a* правый, правильный; *adv* право
  all right хорошо, ладно
  be right быть правым
rise (rose, risen) [raɪz] ([rouz], ['rɪzn]) *v* подниматься
river ['rɪvə] *n* река
road [roud] *n* дорога
roar [rɔ:] *n* рычание; *v* рычать
round [raund] *a* круглый; *adv* кругом
rule [ru:l] *v* управлять
ruler ['ru:lə] *n* правитель
run (ran, run) [rʌn] ([ræn], [rʌn]) *v* бежать, бегать, прибежать
  run about бегать вокруг
  run against [ə'geɪnst] натолкнуть(ся) на что-л.
  run away убежать
  run off убежать
  run out выбежать
  run up (to) подбежать
  run up and down бегать взад и вперед

S

save [seɪv] *v* спасать
say (said) [seɪ] ([sed]) *v* сказать
scarecrow ['skɛəkrou] *n* пугало, чучело
screen [skri:n] *n* ширма
secret ['si:krɪt] *n* тайна, секрет; *a* тайный
see (saw, seen) [si:] ([sɔ:], [si:n]) *v* видеть, увидеть; понимать
sell (sold) [sel] ([sould]) *v* продавать
send (sent) [send] ([sent]) *v* послать, посылать
  send back отослать
shake (shook, shaken) [ʃeɪk] ([ʃuk], [ʃeɪk(ə)n]) *v* трясти, качать
  shake hands обменяться рукопожатием
sheep [ʃi:p] *n* овца
shirt [ʃə:t] *n* рубашка
shoe [ʃu:] *n* башмак, туфля
shop [ʃɔp] *n* лавка, магазин
short [ʃɔ:t] *a* короткий
shoulder ['ʃouldə] *n* плечо
show [ʃou] *v* показывать
side [saɪd] *n* сторона
  at his side рядом с ним
  on every side вокруг, повсюду
signal ['sɪgn(ə)l] *n* сигнал
silly ['sɪlɪ] *a* глупый
silk [sɪlk] *n* шелк
silver ['sɪlvə] *n* серебро; *a* серебряный
sing (sang, sung) [sɪŋ] ([sæŋ], [sʌŋ]) *v* петь
sit (sat) [sɪt] ([sæt]) *v* сидеть
  sit down садиться
  sit up садиться, приподниматься (*из лежачего положения*)
sky [skaɪ] *n* небо
slave [sleɪv] *n* раб
sleep (slept) [sli:p] ([slept]) *v* спать
slowly ['sloulɪ] *adv* медленно

small [smɔ:l] *a* маленький, тоненький
smile [smaɪl] *n* улыбка; *v* улыбаться
smith [smɪθ] *n* кузнец
so [sou] *adv, cj* так, итак, так что
  so that так что
soldier ['souldʒə] *n* солдат, воин; часовой
some [sʌm] *pron* несколько; некоторые; какой-то; некоторое количество
  some day когда-нибудь
song [sɔŋ] *n* песня
soon [su:n] *adv* скоро
  as soon as как только
sorry ['sɔrɪ] *a* огорченный
  be sorry сожалеть; извиняться
sound [saund] *n* звук
South [sauθ] *n* юг
speak (spoke, spoken) [spi:k] ([spouk], ['spouk(ə)n]) *v* говорить
stand (stood) [stænd] ([stud]) *v* стоять
  stand up встать
star [stɑ:] *n* звезда
start (for) [stɑ:t (fɔ:)] *v* отправляться (в путь)
statue ['stætju:] *n* статуя
stay [steɪ] *v* оставаться
steal (stole, stolen) [sti:l] ([stoul], [stoul(ə)n]) *v* красть, украсть
step [step] *n* шаг; ступенька
stick (out) [stɪk (aut)] *v* торчать
still[1] [stɪl] *adv* все-таки; все еще
still[2] *adv* тихо; неподвижно
  lie still лежать без движения
stone [stoun] *n* камень
stood [stud] *см.* **stand**
stop [stɔp] *v* остановиться
story ['stɔrɪ] *n* рассказ, история
strange [streɪndʒ] *a* странный, необычный; незнакомый
stranger ['streɪndʒə] *n* незнакомец, чужой, посторонний
straw [strɔ:] *n* солома
strong [strɔŋ] *a* сильный
study ['stʌdɪ] *v* учить, изучать
stumble (over) [stʌmbl (,ouvə)] *v* споткнуться
suddenly ['sʌdnlɪ] *adv* внезапно, вдруг, неожиданно
sugar ['ʃugə] *n* сахар
suit [sju:t] *n* костюм
sun [sʌn] *n* солнце
  in the sun на солнце
sunshine ['sʌnʃaɪn] *n* солнечный свет
supper ['sʌpə] *n* ужин
  have supper ужинать
surprise [sə'praɪz] *n* удивление; *v* удивлять
  be surprised удивиться
  in surprise с удивлением
sweets [swi:ts] *n* конфеты, сладости
sword [sɔ:d] *n* шпага, сабля

T

take (took, taken) [teɪk] ([tuk], [teɪk(ə)n]) *v* брать, взять; проводить
  take a walk погулять; совершить прогулку
  take out вынимать
tall [tɔ:l] *a* высокий
taught [tɔ:t] *см.* **teach**
teach (taught) [ti:tʃ] ([tɔ:t]) *v* обучать
tear [tɪə] *n* слеза
telescope ['telɪskoup] *n* подзорная труба, телескоп
tell (told) [tel] (['tould]) *v* говорить, рассказывать, сообщать
terrible ['terəbl] *a* внушающий страх, страшный, ужасный
terribly ['terɪblɪ] *adv* ужасно
thank [θæŋk] *v* благодарить
  thank you спасибо, благодарю вас
  thank you very much большое спасибо

that[1] [ðæt] *cj* что
that[2] [ðæt] *pron* (*pl* **those**) тот, та, то; который
thing [θɪŋ] *n* вещь, предмет
think (**thought**) [θɪŋk] ([θɔ:t]) *v* думать
think over обдумать
thirsty ['θə:stɪ] *a* испытывающий жажду
be thirsty хотеть пить
thousand ['θauz(ə)nd] *num* тысяча
thread [θred] *n* нитка
threw [θru:] *см.* **throw**
throne [θroun] *n* трон
the Throne Room тронный зал
through [θru:] *prep* через, сквозь
throw (**threw**, **thrown**) [θrou] ([θru:], [θroun]) *v* бросать, швырять
tie [taɪ] *v* связывать, привязывать
till [tɪl] *prep* пока не; до тех пор, пока
time [taɪm] *n* время; раз
tin [tɪn] *n* жесть, олово
tired ['taɪəd] *a* усталый, утомленный
be tired устать
together [tə'geðə] *adv* вместе
took [tuk] *см.* **take**
tool [tu:l] *n* инструмент, орудие
touch [tʌtʃ] *v* трогать, притрагиваться
towards [tə'wɔ:dz, tɔ:dz] *adv* по направлению
trick [trɪk] *n* фокус, трюк
true [tru:] *a* правильный, истинный, настоящий; верный, преданный
trust [trʌst] *v* доверять, верить
truth [tru:θ] *n* правда
try [traɪ] *v* испробовать; стараться, пытаться
try on примерять
turn [tə:n] *n* черед, очередь; *v* повернуть(ся); перевернуть
in turn по очереди
turn into превратить(ся) в
turn to обратиться

U

under ['ʌndə] *prep* под, ниже
understand (**understood**) [ˌʌndə'stænd] ([ˌʌndə'stud]) *v* понимать, понять
understood [ˌʌndə'stud] *см.* **understand**
unhappy [ʌn'hæpɪ] *a* несчастливый, несчастный
unknown ['ʌn'noun] *a* неизвестный, незнакомый, чужой
unlock [ʌn'lɔk] *v* отпирать
up [ʌp] вверх, наверху
up and down *prep* вверх и вниз, туда и сюда
use[1] [ju:z] *v* пользоваться, применять
use[2] [ju:s] *n* польза
usual ['ju:ʒuəl] *a* обыкновенный, обычный

V

visit ['vɪzɪt] *n* посещение; *v* посещать
vocabulary [və'kæbjulərɪ] *n* словарь
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос
in a big voice громким голосом
in a small voice тонким голосом

W

wait [weɪt] *v* ожидать
wait for ждать кого-л. или что-л.
walk [wɔ:k] *n* прогулка; *v* идти; идти пешком, гулять
walk up подойти
wall [wɔ:l] *n* стена
want [wɔnt] *v* хотеть; нуждаться в чем-л.
warm [wɔ:m] *a* теплый

wash [wɔʃ] *v* мыть
watch [wɔtʃ] *v* наблюдать
keep watch караулить
water ['wɔ:tə] *n* вода
way [weɪ] *n* дорога, путь; способ
a little way off поодаль
in the right way правильно
on the way на пути, в пути
wear (**wore**, **worn**) [wɛə] ([wɔ:], [wɔ:n]) *v* быть одетым (во что-л.); носить (одежду и т. п.)
weather ['weðə] *n* погода
welcome ['welkəm] *n* прием, приветствие
you are welcome милости просим, добро пожаловать
well [wel] *adv* хорошо; итак, ну
be well быть здоровым
West [west] *n* запад
what [wɔt] *pron* что, какой
which [wɪtʃ] *pron* какой, который
whisper ['wɪspə] *n* шепот; *v* шептать, прошептать
why [waɪ] *adv*, *pron* почему; как
that's why вот почему
wicked ['wɪkɪd] *a* злой; нехороший
wife [waɪf] *n* жена
wind [wɪnd] *n* ветер
windy ['wɪndɪ] *a* ветреный; обдуваемый ветром
wing [wɪŋ] *n* крыло
wise [waɪz] *a* мудрый, умный
wish [wɪʃ] *n* желание; *v* желать, пожелать
witch [wɪtʃ] *n* ведьма, колдунья, волшебница (злая)
wizard ['wɪzəd] *n* колдун, чародей, волшебник
wolf [wulf] *n* волк
wonder ['wʌndə] *n* чудо; удивление, изумление
in wonder в удивлении
wonderful ['wʌndəful] *a* удивительный, замечательный
woodman ['wudmən] *n* лесоруб, дровосек
the Tin Woodman Железный Дровосек
word [wə:d] *n* слово
work [wə:k] *n* работа; *v* работать
world [wə:ld] *n* мир, свет
write (**wrote**, **written**) [raɪt] ([rout], ['rɪt(ə)n]) *v* писать, написать
writing ['raɪtɪŋ] *n* надпись
wrong [rɔŋ] *a* неправильный, ошибочный
be wrong ошибаться, быть несправедливым к

Y

yard [jɑ:d] *n* двор
year [jɪə] *n* год
yellow ['jelou] *a* желтый
yes [jes] *adv* да
yesterday ['jestəd(ə)ɪ] *adv* вчера
yet [jet] *adv* все-таки, все же
young [jʌŋ] *a* молодой

CONTENTS

PART ONE

PART TWO

ACTIVITIES

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:
тел./факс: (495) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 104

Наш сайт: www.airis.ru

Вы можете приобрести наши книги с 11[00] до 17[30],
кроме субботы, воскресенья, в киоске по адресу:
пр. Мира, д. 104, 4 этаж, тел. (495) 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.
По всем вопросам обращаться
по тел.: (495) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

Учебное издание

Баум Лаймен Фрэнк

ЧУДЕСА СТРАНЫ ОЗ

Адаптация текста, словарь *Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой*
Упражнения *И. П. Твердохлебовой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *Т. Ю. Никитина*
Иллюстрации на обложку *А. М. Кузнецов*
Оформление обложки *А. М. Кузнецов*
Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректоры *Т. Е. Львова, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 20.05.08. Формат 60×90/16.
Печать офсетная. Гарнитура «Таймс». Печ. л. 15.
Усл.-печ. л. 15. Тираж 7000 экз. Заказ № 3734.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени
полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

"Whatever comes," she said,
"cannot change one thing.
If I am a princess in rags
and tatters, I can be
a princess inside.
It would be easy to be a princess if
I were dressed in wonderful clothes,
but it is a great deal more of a triumph
to be one all the time
when no one knows it."



Beginner
Elementary
Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate
Для продолжающих первого уровня

Intermediate
Для продолжающих второго уровня

Upper Intermediate
Для продолжающих третьего уровня

Advanced
Для совершенствующихся

9785811230785

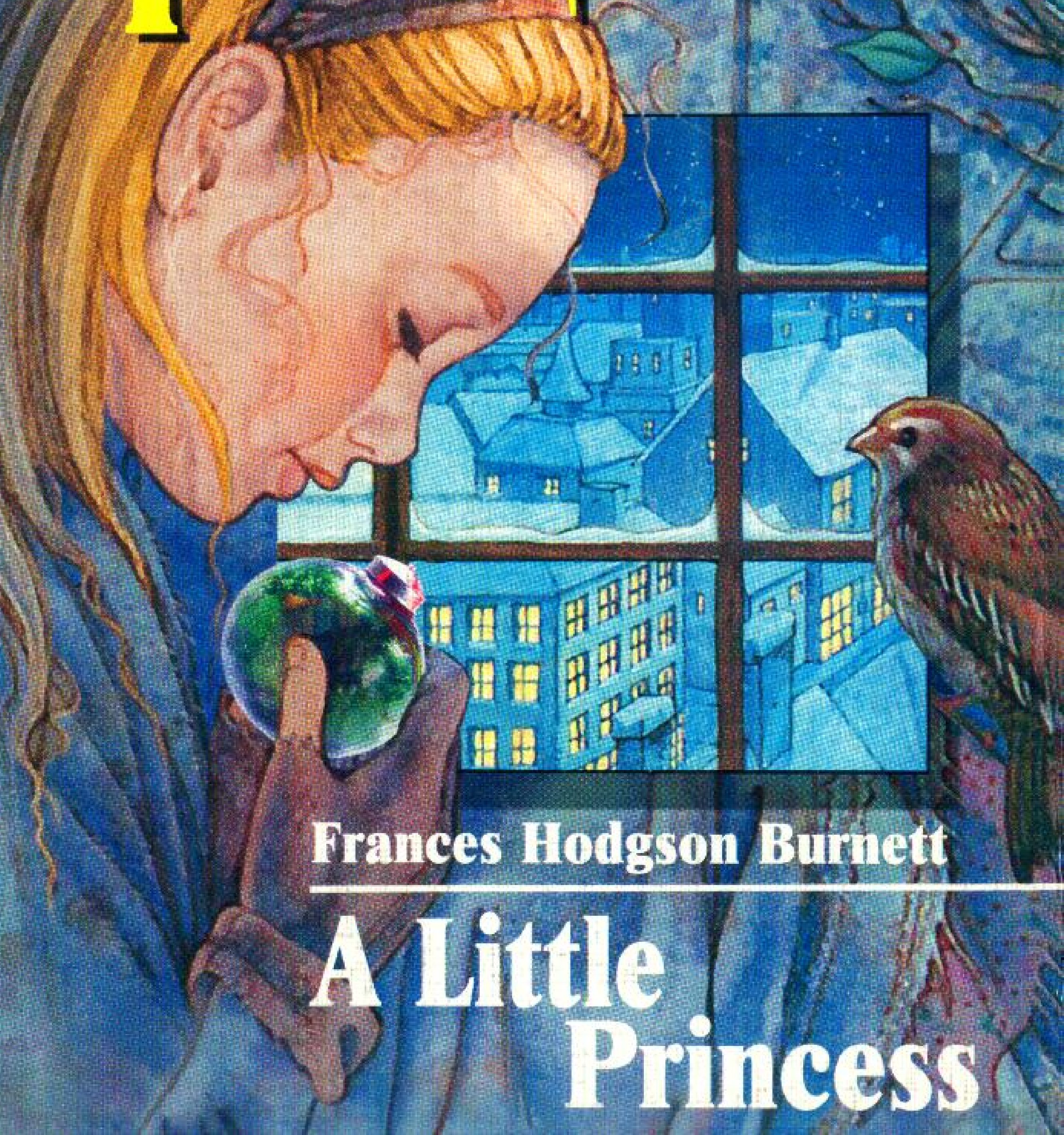
АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение
Elementary
АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Английский клуб

Фрэнсис Ходжсон Бернетт

Маленькая принцесса



Frances Hodgson Burnett

A Little Princess

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Фрэнсис Ходжсон Бернетт

Маленькая принцесса

Адаптация текста, предисловие, комментарий, упражнения и словарь Е. В. Угаровой

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-922
Б51

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Бернетт, Ф. Х.
Б51 Маленькая принцесса / Фрэнсис Ходжсон Бернетт; адаптация текста, предисловие, коммент., упражнения, словарь Е. В. Угаровой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 128 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-3078-5

Данная книга представляет собой адаптацию романтической повести знаменитой детской писательницы Фрэнсис Бернетт «Маленькая принцесса» о приключениях девочки по имени Сара Кру, которая сумела справиться с непростыми испытаниями, которые уготовила ей судьба, благодаря своему мужеству, помощи верных друзей и невероятной удаче.

После каждой главы приводится перевод новых слов на русский язык, постраничный комментарий, а также упражнения, направленные на проверку понимания текста, отработку лексики и грамматических конструкций, развитие устной речи.

Пособие предназначено учащимся школ, гимназий, лицеев, а также широкому кругу лиц, изучающих английский язык самостоятельно.

ББК 81.2Англ-922
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-3078-5

Предисловие

Дорогие ребята!

Перед вами новая книга для чтения на английском языке из серии «Английский клуб». На этот раз мы предлагаем вам увлекательную повесть американской писательницы Фрэнсис Бернетт «Маленькая принцесса», которая завоевала миллионы детских сердец. В ней рассказывается трогательная история девочки по имени Сара Кру, которая воображала себя принцессой. После внезапной смерти отца Сара из привилегированной ученицы частного пансиона превратилась в нищую одинокую сироту и бесправную служанку. Девочке пришлось столкнуться с бедностью и несправедливостью, но она не впала в отчаяние и сохранила удивительную силу духа, доброту, душевную щедрость и достоинство настоящей принцессы.

Мы надеемся, что чтение этой повести будет для вас не только интересным, но и полезным. Мы советуем пользоваться словариком и внимательно изучать комментарии, помещенные после каждой главы. Специально подобранные упражнения помогут вам выучить много новых английских слов и выражений и научиться правильно употреблять их в речи.

Желаем успеха!



1
SARA

Once on a dark winter's day a little girl sat with her father in a ***cab*** which was slowly driving along the streets of London. She sat looking out of the window at the passing people with her big serious eyes.

It was an ***odd*** look for such a little girl because Sara Crewe was only seven. But she was an unusual girl and she was always dreaming and thinking things about grown-up people and the world they belonged to.

At this moment she was remembering the voyage she had just made from Bombay with her father, Captain Crewe. She was thinking of the big ship, and of the children playing about on the hot deck. She moved closer to her father.

"Papa," she said in a low, mysterious little voice which was almost a whisper, "papa."

"What is it, darling?" Captain Crewe answered, looking down into her face. "What is Sara thinking of?"

"Is this the place?" Sara whispered.

"Yes, little Sara, it is. We have reached it at last." And though she was only seven years old, she knew that he felt sad when he said it.

Her mother had died when she was born. Her young, handsome, rich, loving father was the only ***relation*** she had in the world. They had always played together and been fond of each other.

Only one thing had troubled her — "the place" she was to be taken to some day.[1] The climate in India was very bad for children, and as soon as possible they were sent away from it — generally to England and to school. Though her father's stories of the voyage and the new country had attracted Sara, she did not like the thought that he could not stay with her.

"Couldn't you go to that place with me, papa?" she had asked when she was five years old. "Couldn't you go to school too? I would help you with your lessons."

"But you will not stay there for a very long time, little Sara," he had always said. "You will go to a nice house where there will be a lot of little girls, and you will play together, and I will send you books, and you will grow so fast and become big enough and clever enough to come back and take care of papa."

She liked this idea. She wanted to stay with her father; to ride with him and sit at the head of his table when he had dinner-parties; to talk to him and read his books. She did not care very much for other little girls, but she liked books more than anything else, and was, in fact, always inventing stories of beauti-

---

[1] **Only one thing had troubled her — "the place" she was to be taken to some day.** — Ее тревожила только мысль о «том месте», куда ее когда-нибудь отвезут.

ful things, and telling them to herself. Sometimes she had told them to her father, and he had liked them as much as she did.

"Well, papa," she said softly, "if we are here we must do it."

He kissed her. He was also very sad though he knew he must **keep that a secret**[1]. He didn't want to part with his little Sara. So he held her very closely in his arm as the cab rolled into the big square in which stood the big brick jouse.

On the front door there was a **brass plate**[2] with black letters:

MISS MINCHIN,
Select Seminary[3] for Young Ladies.

"Here we are, Sara," said Captain Crewe, making his voice sound as cheerful as possible. Then he lifted her out of the cab and they rang the bell. Sara often thought afverwards that the house was somehow exactly like Miss Minchin. It was respectable, but everything in it was ugly. The furniture was hard and polished. The chairs were square, armchairs were heavy and uncomfortable. Sara did not like the place at once.

Miss Minchin entered the room. She was very like her house, Sara felt: tall and dull, and respectable and ugly. She had large, cold eyes, and a large, cold smile. She knew from the lady who had recommended her school to Captain Crewe that he was a rich father who was ready to spend a great deal of money on his little daughter.

"It will be a great privilege to have such a beautiful and promising child, Captain Crewe," she said, taking Sara's hand. "Lady Meredith has told me of her unusual cleverness. A clever child is a great treasure in a school like mine."

Sara stood quietly, looking at Miss Minchin's face. She was thinking something odd, as usual.

---

[1] **keep that a secret** — хранить это в тайне

[2] **brass plate** — медная табличка

[3] **Select Seminary** — Образцовая школа

"Why does she say I am a beautiful child?" she was thinking. "I am not beautiful at all. Colonel Grange's little girl, Isobel, is beautiful. She has ***dimples***, and rose-coloured cheeks, and long hair the colour of gold. I have short black hair and green eyes, and I am thin. I am one of the ugliest children I ever saw. **She is telling a story**.[1]"

She was mistaken, however, in thinking she was an ugly child. She was not like Isobel Grange, but she had charm of her own. She was a thin creature, rather tall for her age, and had an attractive little face. Her hair was heavy and black and only curled at the tips; her eyes were greenish grey, it is true, but they were big, wonderful eyes with long, black lashes, and though she herself did not like the colour of them, many other people did.

Later Sara discovered that Miss Minchin said the same thing to each papa and mamma who brought a child to her school.

Sara stood near her father and listened while he and Miss Minchin talked. She had been brought to the seminary because Lady Meredith's two little girls had been educated there, and Captain Crewe had a great respect for Lady Meredith's experience.

"I am not worried about her education," Captain Crewe said, with his gay laugh, as he held Sara's hand. 'The difficulty will be to keep her from learning too fast and too much. She is always sitting with a book. She wants grown-up books — great, big, fat ones — French and German as well as English — history and biography and poets, and all sorts of things. ***Drag*** her away from her books when she reads too much. Make her ride her pony or go out and buy a new doll. She ought to play more with dolls."

"Papa," said Sara. "I can't have many dolls. Dolls ought to be **intimate friends**[2]. Emily is going to be my intimate friend."

---

[1] **She is telling a story**. — Она говорит неправду.

[2] **intimate friends** — близкие друзья

Captain Crewe looked at Miss Minchin and Miss Minchin looked at Captain Crewe.

"Who is Emily?" she asked.

"Tell her, Sara," Captain Crewe said, smiling.

Sara's green-grey eyes looked very serious as she answered.

"She is a doll I haven't got yet," she said "She is a doll papa is going to buy for me. We will go together to find her. I have called her Emily. She is going to be my friend when papa is gone. I want her to talk to about him."

"What an original child!" said Miss Minchin. "What a darling little girl!"

"Yes," said Captain Crewe. "She is a darling little girl. Take great care of her for me, Miss Minchin."

Sara stayed with her father at his hotel for several days until he sailed away again to India. They visited many big shops together, and bought many things. They bought, indeed, many more things than Sara needed. Captain Crewe wanted his little girl to have everything she admired and everything he admired himself, so they collected a wardrobe much too big for a child of seven: dresses, hats, coats, gloves and handkerchiefs and silk stockings.

And at last they found Emily. Sara saw her in a small shop.

"Oh, papa!" she cried. "There is Emily! I knew her the minute I saw her — so perhaps she knew me, too."

Perhaps she had known her. She had certainly a very intelligent expression in her eyes when Sara took her in her arms. She was a large doll, but not too large; she had naturally curling golden-brown hair, and her eyes were clear, grey blue, with soft, thick eyelashes.

"Of course," said Sara, looking into her face as she held her on her knee — "of course, papa, this is Emily."

So they bought Emily and a wardrobe as big as Sara's own.

The next day Captain Crewe took her to Miss Minchin's and left her there. He explained to Miss Minchin that his ***law-***

yers would give her any advice she wanted, and that they would pay the bills for Sara's ***expenses***.

Then he went with Sara into her little sitting room to say to her good-bye. Sara sat on his knee and looked long at his face.

"Are you learning me by heart, little Sara?" he said.

"No," she answered. "I know you by heart. You are inside my heart." And they put their arms round each other, and kissed.

When the cab drove away from the door, Sara was sitting on the floor of her sitting-room, with her hands under her chin and her eyes following it until it had turned the corner of the square. Emily was sitting by her. When Miss Minchin sent her sister, Miss Amelia, to see what the child was doing, she found she could not open the door.

"I have locked it," said a polite little voice from inside. "**I want to be by myself, if you please.**[1]"

Miss Amelia was a fat woman. She was really the better person of the two, but she never disobeyed Miss Minchin. She went downstairs again, looking almost alarmed.

"I never saw such a funny, old-fashioned child, sister," she said. "She has locked herself in, and she is not making any noise."

"It is much better than if she kicked and screamed, as some of them do," Miss Minchin answered.

"I saw her clothes," said Miss Amelia. "What *do* you think of them?"

"I think they are perfectly ***ridiculous***," replied Miss Minchin sharply, "but they will look very well at the head of the line when we take the school-children to church on Sunday. She will look like a little princess."

[1] **I want to be by myself, if you please.** — Если позволите, я бы хотела побыть одной.

Useful Words

cab *n* кэб, наемный экипаж
odd *a* странный
relation *n* родственник
dimples *n pl* ямочки
drag *v* тащить
lawyer *n* юрист
expenses *n pl* расходы
ridiculous *a* нелепый, смехотворный

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) How old was Sara when she came to England?
b) Where did she live before?
c) What can you say about Sara's parents?
d) What did Sara feel when she saw the school and Miss Minchin?
e) What books did Sara prefer to read?
f) What kind of clothes did Captain Crewe buy for Sara?
g) What did Miss Amelia think of Sara?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Captain Crewe brought his daughter to Miss Minchin's seminary because ____________ .
b) Sara wanted to find Emily because ____________ .
c) Captain Crewe was sad because ____________ .
d) Miss Minchin wanted to have Sara in her school ____________ .
e) Sara locked the door of her room because _____ ____________ .

3 Match the words having the same or very close meaning.

1) intelligent	a) strange
2) to care for	b) to be troubled
3) to be worried	c) to be fond of
4) odd	d) clever

4 Choose the right words from the box and use them in the sentences.

expenses relation ridiculous experience dimples

a) Captain Crewe had a great respect for Lady Meredith's ____________ and took her advice.
b) Captain Crew asked his lawyers to pay the bills for Sara's ____________ .
c) Miss Minchin said that Sara's new clothes looked ____________ for a child.
d) Isobel Grange had long hair the colour of gold and ____________ .
e) Sara's father was the only ____________ she had.

5 Describe:

a) the appearance (внешний вид) of Sara Crewe and Miss Minchin;
b) the interior of the school;
c) the doll Emily.

6 Say why:

a) English children were sent from India to England.
b) Captain Crewe bought a fantastic wardrobe for Sara.
c) Sara thought that Miss Minchin was telling a story.

7 **Speak of Sara Crewe. What was unusual about her? Prove that she was a clever girl.**

8 **Sara says, "Dolls must be intimate friends." Do you agree with her? Give your opinion.**

2
A FRENCH LESSON

When Sara entered the schoolroom the next morning everybody looked at her with wide, interested eyes. By that time every pupil — from Lavinia Herbert, who was nearly thirteen and felt quite grown up, to Lottie Legh, who was only just four — had heard a great deal about her. They knew that **she was Miss Minchin's show pupil**[1]. One or two of them had even seen her French ***maid***, Mariette, who had arrived the evening before. Lavinia had managed to pass Sara's room when the door was open, and had seen Mariette opening a box which had arrived late from some ship.

"It was full of ***petticoats***," she whispered to her friend Jessie. "My mamma says that children should be dressed simply. She has got one of those petticoats on now. I saw it when she sat down."

"She has silk stockings on!" whispered Jessie. "And what little feet! I never saw such little feet."

"Oh," ***sniffed*** Lavinia, "**that is the way her shoes are made**[2]. I don't think she is pretty at all. Her eyes are such a strange colour."

"She isn't pretty as other pretty people are," said Jessie, **stealing a glance at Sara**[3], "but she makes you want to look at

[1] **she was Miss Minchin's show pupil** — она будет занимать особое, привилегированное положение в школе мисс Минчин

[2] **that is the way her shoes are made** — это просто от туфель

[3] **stealing a glance at Sara** — украдкой взглянув на Сару

her again. She has tremendously long eyelashes, but her eyes are almost green."

Sara was sitting quietly in her seat, waiting to be told what to do. She was interested, and looked back quietly at the children who looked at her. She wondered what they were thinking of, and if they liked Miss Minchin, and if they cared for their lessons, and if any of them had a papa at all like her own.

Minchin ***rapped*** upon her desk.

"Young ladies," she said, "I wish to introduce you to your new companion." All the little girls rose in their places, and Sara rose also. "I shall expect you all to be very ***agreeable*** to Miss Crewe; she has just come to us from India."

"Sara," said Miss Minchin, in her schoolroom manner, "come here to me."

She had taken a book from the desk and was turning over its leaves. Sara went to her politely.

"As your papa has taken a French maid for you," she began, "I conclude that **he wishes you to make a special study of the French language**[1]."

Sara felt a little ***awkward***.

"I think he took her," she said, "because he — he thought I would like her, Miss Minchin."

"I am afraid," said Miss Minchin, with a ***sour*** smile, "that you have been a very ***spoiled*** little girl and always imagine that things are done because you like them. My impression is that your papa wished you to learn French."

Miss Minchin was a very ***severe*** person, and she seemed so absolutely sure that Sara knew nothing of French that she felt as if it would be almost rude to correct her. The truth was that Sara's mother had been a Frenchwoman, and Captain Crewe had loved her language, so it happened that Sara had always heard and been familiar with it.

"I — I have never really learned French, but — but I," she began, trying to make herself clear.

[1] **he wishes you to make a special study of the French language** — он хочет, чтобы ты хорошенько изучила французский язык

"That is enough," said Miss Minchin. "If you have not learned, you must begin at once. The French master, Monsieur Dufarge, will be here in a few minutes. Take this book and look at it until he arrives."

Monsieur Dufarge arrived very shortly afterward. He was a very nice, intelligent, middle-aged Frenchman, and he looked interested when his eyes fell upon Sara trying politely to seem absorbed in her little book of phrases.

"Is this a new pupil for me, madame?" he said to Miss Minchin. "**I hope that is my good fortune**.[1]"

"Her papa — Captain Crewe — is very anxious that she should begin the language. But I am afraid she has a childish ***prejudice*** against it. She does not seem to wish to learn," said Miss Minchin.

"I am sorry of that, mademoiselle," he said kindly to Sara. "Perhaps, when we begin to study together, I may show you that it is a charming language."

Little Sara rose in her seat. She looked up into Monsieur Dufarge's face with her big, green-grey eyes. She knew that he would understand as soon as she spoke. She began to explain quite simply in pretty and fluent French. Madame had not understood. She had not learned French exactly — not out of books but her papa and other people had always spoken it to her, and she had read it and written it as she had read and written English. Her papa loved it, and she loved it because he did. Her dear mamma, who had died when she was born, had been French. She would be glad to learn anything monsieur would teach her, but what she had tried to explain to madame was that she already knew the words in this book.

When she began to speak **Miss Minchin started quite violently**[2] and sat looking at her over her eyeglasses, almost indignantly, until she had finished. Monsieur Dufarge began to smile, and his smile was one of great pleasure.

When she had finished, he took the phrase-book from her. But he spoke to Miss Minchin.

"Ah, madame," he said, "there is not much I can teach her. She has not *learned* French; she is French."

"You did not tell me," exclaimed Miss Minchin, turning on Sara.

"I — I tried," said Sara. "I — I suppose I did not begin right."

Miss Minchin knew she had tried, and that it had not been her fault that she was not allowed to explain. And when she saw that the pupils had been listening, and that Lavinia and Jessie were, ***giggling*** behind their French grammars, she felt angry.

"Silence, young ladies!" she said severely, rapping upon the desk: "Silence at once!"

And she began from that minute **to feel a grudge against her new pupil**[1].

Useful Words

maid *n* горничная, служанка
petticoat *n* нижняя юбка
sniff *v* фыркать
rap *v* стучать
agreeable *a* приятный
awkward *a* неловкий
sour *a* кислый
spoiled *a* избалованный
severe *a* строгий
prejudice *n* предубеждение
giggle *v* хихикать

---

[1] **I hope that is my good fortune.** — Я надеюсь, что меня ждет немало приятных минут.

[2] **Miss Minchin started quite violently** — мисс Минчин вздрогнула всем телом

[1] **to feel a grudge against her new pupil** — испытывать неприязнь по отношению к своей новой ученице

Exercises

1 Say who is:

a) Lavinia;
b) Mariette;
c) Jessie;
d) Monsieur Dufarge.

2 Answer the questions.

a) Why were the pupils much interested in Sara?
b) What impressed Lavinia and Jessie?
c) What did Sara feel when she was sitting in her seat?
d) What made Miss Minchin think that Sara did not know French?
e) What did Sara tell Monsieur Dufarge?
f) What was the reaction of Miss Minchin?

3 Match the verbs and their definitions.

to giggle	to be anxious to know
to sniff	to make a sudden movement
to introduce	to show contempt or disapproval
to wonder	to make known
to start	to laugh in a nervous and silly way

4 Choose the right word.

a) Miss Minchin declared that Sara was a (nice, spoiled, silly) little girl.
b) Miss Minchin looked at Sara with a (cold, agreeable, sour) smile.
c) Sara felt (worried, awkward, alarmed).
d) Miss Minchin was a very (polite, rude, severe) person.

5 Fill in the prepositions *against, in, for, of, upon, behind.*

a) Sara's box was full ______ nice petticoats.
b) Sara was wondering if the pupils cared ______ their lessons.
c) Sara explained ______ fluent French that she loved and knew that language.
d) Lavinia and Jessie were giggling ______ their French grammars.
e) Miss Minchin angrily rapped ______ her desk.
f) Miss Minchin began to feel a grudge ______ her new pupil.

6 Say why:

a) Sara did not say at once that she had heard and spoken French all her life.
b) Miss Minchin did not allow Sara to explain it.
c) Miss Minchin began to feel a grudge against Sara.

7 Act out the dialogue between Sara and Miss Minchin.

8 Lavinia said, "My mamma says that children should be dressed simply." Do you agree with Lavinia's mother? Give your opinion.

3
ERMENGARDE

On that first morning, when Sara sat in her seat, she had noticed very soon one little girl, about her own age, who looked at her very hard with a pair of light blue eyes. She was a fat child, who did not look as if she were clever, but she had a kind face. She had pulled the ***pigtail*** round her neck, and was biting the end of the ***ribbon***, as she ***stared*** at the new pupil. When

Monsieur Dufarge began to speak to Sara, she looked a little frightened; and when Sara stepped forward and answered him in French, the fat little girl grew quite red in her ***amazement***. She spent weeks in her efforts to remember French words and it was almost too much for her to suddenly find herself listening to a child her own age who could speak French fluently. She stared so hard and bit the ribbon on her pigtail so fast that she attracted the attention of Miss Minchin, who was extremely ***cross*** at the moment.

"Miss St John!" she exclaimed severely. "What do you mean by such conduct? Take your ribbon out of your mouth!"

Miss St John became redder than ever — so red, indeed, that she almost looked as if tears were coming into her poor, silly, childish eyes; and Sara saw her and was so sorry for her that she began to like her and want to be her friend. She always tried to help someone who was made uncomfortable or unhappy.

When lessons were over and the pupils gathered together in groups to talk, Sara looked for Miss St John, and finding her in a window-seat, she walked over to her and spoke.

"What is your name?" she said.

To explain Miss St John's amazement one must know that of this new pupil the entire school had talked the night before in great excitement. A new pupil with a carriage and a pony and a maid, and a voyage from India, was not an ordinary girl.

"My name's Ermengarde St John," she answered.

"Mine is Sara Crewe," said Sara. "Yours is very pretty. **It sounds like a story-book**.[1]"

"Do you like it?" fluttered Ermengarde. "I — I like yours."

Miss St John's main trouble in life was that she had a clever father. **Ermengarde was a severe trial to Mr St John**.[2] He could not understand how a child of his could be such a dull creature with no talents at all.

---

[1] **It sounds like a story-book**. — Оно словно из волшебной сказки.

[2] **Ermengarde was a severe trial to Mr St John**. — Эрменгарда была тяжелым бременем для мистера Сент-Джона.

"She must be *made* to learn," her father said to Miss Minchin.

So Ermengarde spent the greater part of her life **in disgrace**[1] or in tears. She learned things and forgot them; or, if she remembered them, she did not understand them.

"You can speak French, can't you?" she asked Sara in admiration.

Sara got on to the window-seat, which was a big, deep one, and sat **with her hands clasped round her knees**[2].

"I can speak it because I have heard it all my life," she answered. "You could speak it if you had always heard it."

"Oh, no, I couldn't," said Ermengarde. "I never could speak it! I can't *say* the words. They're so unusual."

She paused a moment, and then added respectfully.

"You are *clever,* aren't you?"

Sara she wondered if she was — and if she was, how it had happened.

"I don't know," she said. "I can't tell." Then, seeing a sad look on the round face, she laughed and changed the subject.

"Would you like to see Emily?" she asked.

"Who is Emily?" Ermengarde asked, just as Miss Minchin had done.

"Come up to my room and see," said Sara.

They jumped down from the window-seat together, and went upstairs.

"Is it true," Ermengarde whispered, as they went through the hall — "is it true that you have a playroom all to yourself?"

"Yes," Sara answered. "Papa asked Miss Minchin to let me have one, because — well, it was because when I play I make up stories and tell them to myself, and I don't like people to hear me."

Ermengarde stopped ***short***, staring, and quite losing her breath.

---

[1] **in disgrace** — в опале

[2] **with her hands clasped round her knees** — обхватив руками колени

"You *make up* stories!" she ***gasped***. "Can you do that — as well as speak French? Can *you*?"

Sara looked at her in simple surprise.

"Why, anyone can make up things," she said. "Have you never tried?"

She put her hand on Ermengarde's.

"Let us go very quietly to the door," she whispered, "and then I will open it quite suddenly; perhaps we may catch her."

Ermengarde had no idea what it meant, but she was sure it was something exciting. She followed her **on tiptoe**[1] along the passage. Then Sara suddenly opened the door. Ermengarde saw a ***neat*** and quiet room, a fire gently burning in the fireplace and a wonderful doll sitting in a chair by it, apparently reading a book.

"Oh, she got back to her seat before we could see her!" Sara exclaimed.

Ermengarde looked from her to the doll and back again.

"Can she — walk?" she asked, breathlessly.

"Yes," answered Sara. "At least, I believe she can. At least, I *pretend* I believe she can. Have you never pretended things?"

"No," said Ermengarde. "Never. I — tell me about it."

She was so impressed by this odd, new companion that she actually stared at Sara instead of at Emily.

Sara sat upon the rug and told her strange things. She told her stories of the voyage, and stories of India; but what ***fascinated*** Ermengarde the most was her ***fancy*** about the dolls who walked and talked, and who could do anything they chose when people were out of the room, but who must keep their powers a secret and get back to their places when people returned to the room.

"We couldn't do it," said Sara seriously. "You see, it's a kind of magic."

Once, when Sara was telling her the story of the search for Emily, Ermengarde saw her face suddenly change.

---

[1] **on tiptoe** — на цыпочках

Then Sara said: "Do you love your father more than anything else in all the whole world?" Ermengarde was greatly embarrassed.

"I — I scarcely ever see him," she ***stammered***. "He is always in the library — reading things."

"I love mine more than all the world ten times over," Sara said. "He has gone away. I promised him I would ***bear*** it, and I will. You have to bear things. Think what soldiers bear! Papa is a soldier."

Ermengarde felt that she was beginning to adore her. She was so wonderful and different from anyone else.

"If I go on talking and talking," she said, "and telling you things about pretending, I shall bear it better. You don't forget, but you bear it better."

"Lavinia and Jessie are 'best friends'," said Ermengarde. "I wish we could be 'best friends'. You're clever, and I'm the stupidest child in the school, but I — oh, I do so like you!"

"I'm glad of that," said Sara. "We will be friends. And I can help you with your French lessons."

Useful Words

pigtail *n* косичка
ribbon *n* лента
stare *v* пристально глядеть
amazement *n* изумление
cross *a* раздраженный, сердитый
short *adv* резко, внезапно
gasp *v* открыть рот от удивления
neat *a* чистый, аккуратный
fascinate *v* восхищать
fancy *n* фантазия
stammer *v* заикаться, запинаться
bear *v* переносить, терпеть

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What was the problem with Ermengarde?
b) Why did Ermengarde attract the attention of Miss Minchin?
c) What did Sara think of Ermengarde's name?
d) What Sara's talents impressed Ermengarde?
e) What story did Sara tell Ermengarde?
f) What did Sara promise to her new friend?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) When Sara began to speak French, Ermengarde grew red in amazement because ___________ .
b) Sara always tried to help someone who __________ .
c) Sara had a playroom all to herself because ______ ______ .
d) Ermengarde did not see her father very often because ___________ .
e) Ermengarde was beginning to adore Sara because ___________ .

3 Find in the text the English for:

уважительно
сменить тему разговора
придумывать истории
в искреннем удивлении
держать свои способности в секрете
волшебство

4 Fill in the prepositions *about, on, in, at, around, of.*

a) Ermengarde had pulled the pigtail ______ her neck and was biting the end ______ the ribbon.
b) Ermengarde was staring curiously ______ a new pupil.

c) When lessons were over the pupils gathered together ______ groups to talk.
d) Ermengarde spent the greater part of her life ______ disgrace and ______ tears.
e) Sara and Ermengarde came up to the room ______ tiptoe.
f) Most of all Ermengarde liked Sara's fancy ______ dolls.

5 Complete the chart.

	redder	
		the stupidest
		the best
fat		
	greater	

6 Say why Sara came up to Ermengarde. Would you do the same in her place?

7 Imagine that you are Ermengarde. Say how you met Sara and what you felt about her.



4
LOTTIE

The next years at Miss Minchin's Select Seminary Sara was ***treated*** more as a guest than a little girl. Privately Miss Minchin disliked her, but she was far too practical to do or say anything which might make such a desirable pupil wish to leave her school. She knew quite well that if Sara wrote to her papa to tell him she was uncomfortable or unhappy, Captain Crewe would remove her at once. Sara was ***praised*** for her quickness at her lessons, for her good manners; the simplest thing she did was treated as if it were a ***virtue***. But the clever little brain told her many sensible and true things about herself and her circumstances, and now and then she talked these things over to Ermengarde.

"**Things happen to people by accident**[1]," she used to say. "It just happened that I always liked lessons and books, and could remember things when I learned them. It just happened that I was born with a father who was beautiful and nice and clever, and could give me everything I liked. But if you have everything you want and everyone is kind to you, how can you find out whether you are really a nice child or a horrid one? Perhaps I'm a bad child, and no one will ever know, just because **I never have any trials**[2]."

"Lavinia has no trials," said Ermengarde, "and she is horrid enough."

Lavinia, in fact, was ***spiteful***. Until Sara's arrival, she had felt herself the leader in the school. She was rather pretty, and had been the best-dressed pupil in the Select Seminary until Sara's velvet coats and furs appeared. This, at the beginning, had been bitter enough; but as time went on it became apparent that Sara was a leader, too.

Sara was a friendly little soul, and shared her privileges and belongings **with a free hand**[3]. She was a ***motherly*** young person, and when little girls fell down and scraped their knees, she ran and helped them up and found in her pocket a bonbon.

So the younger children adored Sara. More than once she had a tea party for them in her own room. And she allowed to play with Emily, and use Emily's own tea-service.

Lottie Legh admired Sara greatly. Lottie had been sent to school by a young papa who could not imagine what else to do with her. Her young mother had died, and as the child had been treated like a favourite doll or a very spoiled pet monkey since the first hour of her life, she was an awful little creature. When she wanted anything or did not want anything, she cried.

---

[1] **Things happen to people by accident** — Многое у людей зависит от случайностей

[2] **I never have any trials** — у меня нет возможностей себя испытать

[3] **with a free hand** — легко

In some mysterious way she had found out that people felt sorry for a very small girl who had lost her mother. So it became her ***habit*** to make great use of this knowledge.

One morning, passing a sitting-room, Sara heard both Miss Minchin and Miss Amelia trying to quiet some child who, evidently, refused to be silenced.

"Oh — oh — oh!" Sara heard; "I haven't got any mamma-a!"

"Oh, Lottie!" screamed Miss Amelia. "Do stop, darling! Don't cry! Please don't!"

When Miss Minchin came out and saw her, she looked rather annoyed.

"I stopped," explained Sara, "because I knew it was Lottie — and I thought, perhaps — just perhaps, I could make her be quiet. May I try, Miss Minchin?"

"If you can. You are a clever child," answered Miss Minchin. And she left her.

When Sara entered the room, Lottie was lying upon the floor, screaming and kicking her small fat legs violently, and Miss Amelia was ***bending*** over her in despair, looking quite red and damp with heat.

Sara went to them quietly.

"Miss Amelia," she said in a low voice, "Miss Minchin says I may try to make her stop — may I?"

Miss Amelia turned and looked at her hopelessly. "Oh, do you think you can?" she gasped.

"I don't know whether I *can*," answered Sara, still in her half-whisper, "but I will try."

"Oh, Sara!" said Miss Amelia. "We never had such an awful child before. I don't believe we *can* keep her."

But she left the room, and was very happy to find an ***excuse*** for doing it.

Sara stood by the angry child for a few moments, and looked down at her without saying anything. Then she sat down on the floor beside her and waited.

Lottie opened her eyes and saw a little girl. But it was the one who owned Emily and all the nice things. And she was looking at her with interest.

"I — haven't — any — ma-ma-a!" she announced; but her voice was not so strong.

Sara looked at her with a sort of understanding in her eyes.

"Neither have I," she said.

This was so unexpected that Lottie actually dropped her legs, and lay and stared. A new idea will stop a crying child when nothing else will. Then Lottie asked:

"Where is she?"

"She went to heaven," she said. "But I am sure she comes out sometimes to see me though I don't see her. So does yours. Perhaps they can both see us now. Perhaps they are both in this room."

Lottie looked about her. She was a pretty, little, curly-headed creature, and her round eyes were like wet ***forget-me-nots***.

Sara went on talking. Perhaps some people might think that what she said was rather like a fairy story, but it was all so real to her own imagination that Lottie began to listen in spite of herself. She had been told that her mamma had wings and a crown, and she had been shown pictures of angels-ladies in white. But Sara seemed to be telling a real story about a lovely country where real people were.

"There are fields and fields of flowers," she said, forgetting herself, as usual, when she began, and talking rather as if she were in a dream — "fields and fields of lilies. And little children run about in the lilyfields and gather flowers, and laugh. And the streets are shining. And no one is ever tired, however far they walk. And there are walls made of pearl and gold all round the city, but they are low enough for the people to go and lean on them, and look down to the earth and smile, and send beautiful messages."

It was a pretty story. When it came to an end, Lottie was very sorry.

"I want to go there," she cried. "I — haven't any mamma in this school."

Sara saw the danger-signal, and came out of her dream.

"I will be your mamma," she said. "We will play that you are my little girl. And Emily shall be your sister."

Lottie's dimples all began to show themselves.

"Shall she?" she said.

"Yes," answered Sara, jumping to her feet. "Let us go and tell her. And then I will wash your face and brush your hair."

And from that time Sara was an ***adopted*** mother.

Useful Words

treat *v* обращаться, относиться
praise *v* хвалить
virtue *n* добродетель
spiteful *a* злой, недоброжелательный
motherly *a* по-матерински заботливый
habit *n* привычка
bend *v* наклоняться
despair *n* отчаяние
excuse *n* предлог, оправдание
forget-me-not *n* незабудка
adopted *a* приемный

Exercises

1 Describe in what way Sara was treated:

a) at Miss Minchin's Select Seminary in general;
b) by Miss Minchin;
c) by Lavinia;
d) by younger children.

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Sara told Lottie a wonderful story about angels.
b) Miss Minchin came out of the room rather annoyed.
c) Sara often had tea parties for younger girls.
d) Miss Amelia left the room, happy to find an excuse for doing it.
e) Lottie was lying on the floor, screaming and kicking her fat legs.
f) One morning, passing a sitting room, Sara heard Miss Minchin and Miss Amelia trying to quiet some child.
g) Sara sat down on the floor beside angry Lottie.

3 Put as many questions as you can.

a) Sara shared her privileges and belongings with a free hand.
b) Sara looked at Lottie with a sort of understanding in her eyes.
c) And the little children run about in the lilyfields and gather the flowers and laugh.

4 Find in the text the English for:

желанная ученица
оцарапать коленку
чайный сервиз
избалованная ручная обезьянка
сказка
жемчуг
приемная мать

5 Fill in the prepositions *out, over, for, up, down, at, of.*

a) Sara was praised _____ quickness _____ her lessons.
b) She talked many serious things ______ to Ermengarde.
c) When little girls fell _______ and scraped their knees Sara ran and helped them _______ .

d) Lottie began to listen to Sara's wonderful story in spite _______ herself.
e) Sara saw the danger-signal and came _______ of her dream.

6 Say why:

a) Miss Minchin did not show that she disliked Sara.
b) Lavinia was spiteful.
c) young girls adored Sara.
d) Sara offered to make Lottie quiet.

7 Talk about Lottie.

a) Describe her and talk about her character.
b) Do you like the way Sara quieted Lottie? What would you do if you were Sara?

8 Prove that:

A new idea will stop a crying child when nothing else will.

9 Sara says, "Things happen to people by accident." Do you agree with Sara? Give your opinion.

5
BECKY

The great power Sara had and the one which brought her even more followers than her nice things and the fact that she was "the show pupil" was her power of telling stories and of making everything she talked about seem like a story, whether it was one or not.

Sara not only could tell stories, but she adored telling them. When she sat or stood in the centre of a circle and began

to invent wonderful things, her green eyes grew big and shining, her cheeks flushed, and, without knowing that she was doing it, she began to act. She forgot that she was talking to listening children; she saw and lived with the **fairy folk**[1], or the kings and queens and beautiful ladies, whose adventures she was ***narrating***. Sometimes when she had finished her story, **she was quite out of breath with excitement**[2].

"When I am telling it," she said, "it doesn't seem as if it was only made up. It seems more real than you are — more real than the schoolroom. I feel as if I were all the people in the story — one after the other."

She had been at Miss Minchin's school about two years when, one foggy winter's afternoon, as she was getting out of her carriage, she noticed a little figure with wide-open eyes, standing on the steps. Something in the ***smudgy*** face made her look at it, and when she looked she smiled because it was her way to smile at people.

But the owner of the smudgy face and the wide-open eyes evidently was afraid of her and quickly disappeared. That very evening, as Sara was sitting in the middle of a group of listeners in a corner of the schoolroom telling one of her stories, the very same figure ***timidly*** entered the room, carrying a heavy coal-box and a brush **to sweep up the ashes**[3].

She was cleaner than she had been in the afternoon but she looked just as ***frightened***. She was evidently afraid to look at the children. She put on pieces of coal with her fingers trying not to make noise. But Sara saw in two minutes that she was deeply interested in what was going on, and that she was doing her work slowly in the hope of catching a word here and there. And realizing this, she raised her voice and spoke more clearly.

---

[1] **fairy folk** — волшебницы

[2] **she was quite out of breath with excitement** — она задыхалась от волнения

[3] **to sweep up the ashes** — выгрести золу

"The ***Mermaids*** swam about in the crystal-green water, and dragged after them a fishing-net with deep sea pearls," she said. "The Princess sat on the white rock and watched them."

It was a wonderful story about a princess who was loved by a **Prince Merman**[1], and went to live with him in caves under the sea.

The small figure before the fireplace was so much impressed by the story that she actually forgot that she had no right to listen at all, and also forgot everything else.

The brush fell from her hand, and Lavinia Herbert looked round.

"That girl has been listening," she said.

The little servant ***snatched up*** her brush, the coal-box and ran out of the room like a frightened rabbit.

"I knew she was listening," said Sara. "Why shouldn't she?"

"Well," said Lavinia, "I do not know whether your mamma would like you to tell stories to servant girls, but I know *my* mamma wouldn't like *me* to do it."

"My mamma!" said Sara. "I don't believe she would mind it."

"Who is that little girl who makes the fires?" she asked Mariette that night.

Mariette said that she was a timid little thing. She was fourteen years old, but was so small that she looked about twelve.

"What is her name?" asked Sara.

Her name was Becky. Mariette heard everyone calling: "Becky, do this," and "Becky, do that," every five minutes in the day.

A few weeks later on another foggy afternoon Sara entered her sitting-room and in her armchair she found Becky asleep and an empty coal-box on the floor near her. She had been running about all day and was very tired.

On this particular afternoon Sara had been taking her dancing lesson, she was wearing a dress the colour of a rose.

[1] **Prince Merman** — морской король

Mariette had bought some real ***buds*** to wear on her black locks. She had been learning a new dance in which she had been flying about the room, like a large rose-coloured butterfly.

When Sara entered the room she made some butterfly steps — and there sat Becky.

It did not occur to her to feel cross at finding her chair occupied by the small, ***dingy*** figure.

She took a seat on the edge of the table, wondering what it would be best to do. Miss Amelia might come in at any moment, and if she did, **Becky would be sure to be scolded**[1].

"But she is so tired," she thought. "She *is* so tired!"

Becky opened her eyes with a frightened gasp. She did not know she had fallen asleep. She had only sat down for one moment — and here she found herself staring in wild alarm at the wonderful pupil, who sat near her, like a rose-coloured fairy, with interested eyes.

Oh, she had got herself into trouble! She would be turned out of doors without ***wages***.

"Oh, miss! Oh, miss!" she stammered. "I am sorry, miss!"

Sara jumped down, and came quite close to her.

"Don't be frightened," she said, quite as if she had been speaking to a little girl like herself. "You were tired."

How poor Becky stared at her! In fact, she had never heard such a nice, friendly sound in anyone's voice before.

"Aren't you angry, miss?" she gasped. "Aren't you going to tell the missus?"

"No," cried Sara. "Of course I'm not. Why, we are just the same — I am only a little girl like you. **It's just an accident that I am not you, and you are not me!**[2]"

Becky did not understand. Sara realized that Becky did not know what she meant.

[1] **Becky would be sure to be scolded** — Бекки наверняка отругают

[2] **It's just an accident that I am not you, and you are not me!** — Ведь это простая случайность, что я не ты, а ты не я.

"Have you done your work?" she asked. "Could you stay here a few minutes?"

Becky lost her breath again.

"Here, miss? Me?"

Sara ran to the door, opened it, and looked out and listened.

"No one is anywhere about," she explained. "If your bedrooms are finished, perhaps you might stay. I thought — perhaps you might like a piece of cake."

The next ten minutes seemed to Becky like a sort of fairy tale. Sara opened a cupboard, and gave her a thick slice of cake. She talked and asked questions, and laughed until Becky's fears actually began to calm themselves.

"Is that — " she said, looking at the rose-coloured dress. "Is that there your best?"

"It is one of my dancing dresses," answered Sara. "I like it; don't you?"

For a few seconds Becky was almost speechless with admiration. Then she said:

"I once saw a princess in the street outside **Covent Garden**[1]. There was one young lady, she was pink all over — the dress and all. People said: 'That's the princess.' You looked like her."

"I've often thought," said Sara, "that I should like to be a princess; I wonder what it feels like. **I believe I will begin pretending I am one.**[2]"

Sara turned to Becky with a new question.

"Becky," she said, "weren't you listening to that story?"

"Yes, miss," ***confessed*** Becky, a little alarmed again. "It was that beautiful I — I couldn't help it."

"Would you like to hear the rest?"

Becky lost her breath again.

[1] **Covent Garden** — «Ковент-Гарден», Королевский оперный театр

[2] **I believe I will begin pretending I am one.** — Я, может быть, попробую представить себе, что я принцесса.

"Me hear it?" she cried. "Like as if I was a pupil, miss! All about the Prince — and the little white Mer-babies swimming about laughing — with stars in their hair?"

Sara nodded.

"You haven't time to hear it now, I'm afraid," she said, "but if you tell me just what time you come to do my rooms, I will try to be here and tell you a bit of it every day until it is finished."

Becky stared at her adoringly.

When she went downstairs, she was not the same Becky. She had an extra piece of cake in her pocket, and she was warm and happy.

"If I *was* a princess — a *real* princess," said to herself Sara, "I could give people what they need. But even if I am only a pretend princess, I can invent little things to do for people. Things like this."

Useful Words

narrate *v* рассказывать, повествовать
smudgy *a* грязный, чумазый
timidly *adv* робко
frightened *a* испуганный
mermaid *n* русалка
snatch up *phr v* схватить
bud *n* бутон
dingy *a* перепачканный
wages *n pl* заработная плата, жалованье
confess *v* признаваться

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Who was Becky?
b) When did Sara see Becky for the first time?

c) What did she look like?
d) What was the story that impressed Becky so much that she forgot everything?
e) What was Sara's reaction when she saw Becky asleep in her chair?
f) What did she promise to Becky?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) The brush fell from Becky's hand because ________ .
b) Lavinia was cross with Becky because __________ .
c) Becky fell asleep in Sara's chair because ________ .
d) Sara was wearing a dancing dress because ________ ________ .
e) Becky left Sara's room warm and happy because ___ ____________ .

3 Choose the right word from the box and use it in the sentences.

mermaids wages carriage rock power

a) Sara noticed Becky when she was getting out of her ____________ .
b) Becky liked a wonderful story about ___________ .
c) The Princess sat on the white __________ by the sea.
d) Sara had a wonderful ___________ of making up stories.
e) Becky was afraid that she would be turned out of doors without ____________ .

4 Translate the sentences into Russian.

a) Sara looked at Becky and smiled because it was her way to smile at people.

b) Sara entered the room and made some butterfly steps.
c) It did not occur to Sara to feel cross at finding her favourite chair occupied by the small, dingy figure.

5 Choose right.

a) *There/It* was Sara's power of telling stories that fascinated all the girls.
b) *There/It* was nobody in the corridor.
c) *There/It* was a wonderful story about a princess loved by a Prince Merman.
d) *There/It* was one young lady in pink all over.
e) *There/It* was a timid dingy girl too small for her age.

6 Prove that Becky left Sara's room a different person.

7 Act out the dialogue between Sara and Becky.

8 Sara had a wonderful power of making up and telling stories. Do you agree that it is a great talent? Do you know any people who are good at it?



6
THE DIAMOND MINES

Not very long after this a very exciting thing happened. In one of his letters Captain Crewe told a most interesting story. A friend who had been at school with him when he was a boy had unexpectedly come to him in India. He was the owner of land upon which diamonds had been found, and **he was developing the mines**[1]. As he was fond of the friend of his school days, he had given him an opportunity **to share in this enormous fortune by becoming a partner in his scheme**[2]. "Diamond mines"

[1] **he was developing the mines** — он уже начал разрабатывать алмазные копи

[2] **to share in this enormous fortune by becoming a partner in his scheme** — стать его партнером и разделить с ним это огромное богатство

sounded so like the **"Arabian Nights"**[1] that no one could be ***indifferent***. Lavinia was very spiteful about it, and told Jessie that she didn't believe such things as diamond mines existed.

"If there were mines full of diamonds, people would be so rich it would be ridiculous."

"Perhaps Sara will be so rich that she will be ridiculous," giggled Jessie.

"She's ridiculous without being rich," Lavinia sniffed.

"One of her 'pretends' is that she is a princess. She plays it all the time even in school. She says it makes her learn her lessons better."

A few weeks before Sara's eleventh birthday a letter came to her from her father. He was not very well, and was evidently ***overweighted*** by the business connected with the diamond mines.

He had made wonderful preparations for her birthday. Among other things, a new doll had been ordered in Paris, and many other presents.

When Sara's birthday arrived the whole house was in excitement. The schoolroom was decorated with flowers, the desks had been moved away.

When Sara went into her sitting-room in the morning, she found on the table a small package, tied up in a piece of brown paper. She knew it was a present, and she thought she could guess whom it came from. She opened it quite tenderly. It was a square ***pin-cushion***, made of not quite clean red flannel, and black pins had been stuck carefully into it to form the words, "**Many happy returns**.[2]"

"Oh!" cried Sara, with a warm feeling in her heart. "I like it so, it — it makes me feel sad."

And just at that very moment she heard the door open, and saw Becky.

There was a happy ***grin*** on her face.

"Do you like it, Miss Sara?" she said. "Do you?"

[1] **"Arabian Nights"** — арабские сказки «Тысяча и одна ночь»

[2] **Many happy returns.** — Поздравляю с днем рождения.

"Like it?" cried Sara. "You darling Becky, you made it all yourself."

Becky gave a hysteric but joyful sniff, and her eyes looked quite ***moist*** with delight.

"It is nothing, and the flannel isn't new; but I wanted to give you something and I made it at nights. I knew you could *pretend* it was satin with diamond pins in. I tried to when I was making it."

Sara flew at her and hugged her.

"Oh, Becky!" she cried out, with a little laugh. "I love you, Becky — I do, I do!"

When Sara entered the schoolroom in the afternoon, she did so as the head of a sort of procession. Miss Minchin, in her best silk dress, led her by the hand. A manservant followed, carrying the box containing the doll, a housemaid carried a second box, and Becky — a third one.

"James, place the box on the table and remove the lid," said Miss Minchin "Emma, put yours upon a chair — Becky!"

Becky had quite forgotten herself in her excitement, and was grinning at Lottie.

"It is not your place to look at the young ladies," said Miss Minchin. "Put your box down."

Becky quickly obeyed.

"You may leave us," Miss Minchin announced to the servants.

"If you please, Miss Minchin," said Sara suddenly, "mayn't Becky stay?"

It was a ***bold*** thing to do. Miss Minchin gazed at her show pupil disturbedly.

"Becky!" she exclaimed. "My dearest Sara!"

Sara made a step toward her.

"I want her because I know she will like to see the presents," she explained. "She is a little girl too, you know."

Miss Minchin was scandalized. She glanced from one figure to the other.

"My dear Sara," she said, "Becky is the ***scullery-maid***. Scullery-maids — er — are not little girls."

It really had not occurred to her to think of them in that light. Scullery-maids were machines who carried coal and made fires.

"But Becky is," said Sara. "And I know she would enjoy herself. Please let her stay — because it is my birthday."

Miss Minchin replied with much dignity:

"As you ask it as a birthday favour — she may stay. Go and stand there, too near the young ladies."

Becky went to her place, grinning. She did not care where she was sent, so that she might have the luck of being inside the room, instead of being downstairs in the scullery. Miss Minchin made a speech congratulating Sara and left the room. Sara bent over one of the boxes with a delighted face.

"These are books, I know," she said.

Then she turned to the biggest box. When she took out the doll it was so magnificent that the children ***uttered*** delighted exclamations of joy.

"She is almost as big as Lottie," someone gasped.

"Suppose," Sara said, as she stood by the table, putting a large, black-velvet hat on the smiling doll, "suppose she understands human talk and feels proud of being admired."

"You are always supposing things," said Lavinia.

"I know I am," said Sara, undisturbedly. "I like it. There is nothing so nice as supposing. It's almost like being a fairy. If you suppose anything hard enough it seems as if it were real."

"It's all very well to suppose things if you have everything," said Lavinia. "Could you suppose and pretend if you were a beggar and lived in an ***attic***?"

Sara looked thoughtful.

"I *believe* I could," she said. **"If one was a beggar, one would have to suppose and pretend all the time.**[1] But it mightn't be easy."

---

[1] **If one was a beggar, one would have to suppose and pretend all the time.** — Если я была бы нищей, мне бы пришлось все время себе что-нибудь представлять.

She often thought afterward how strange it was that just as she had finished saying this — just at that very moment — Miss Amelia came into the room.

"Sara," she said, "your papa's lawyer, Mr Barrow, has come to see Miss Minchin, and, as she must talk to him alone, you had all better come and have your party now, so that my sister can have her interview here in the schoolroom."

When the girls left, Miss Minchin came into the room, accompanied by a dry little gentleman, who looked rather worried. Miss Minchin herself also looked worried and puzzled.

"Please be seated, Mr Barrow," she said.

Mr Barrow did not sit down at once. His attention seemed attracted by the doll and the things which surrounded her. He looked at them in nervous disapproval.

"Birthday presents," said Mr Barrow, in critical manner, "to a child eleven years old! **Mad extravagance**[1], I call it."

Miss Minchin felt offended.

"Captain Crewe is **a man of fortune**[2]," she said. "The diamond mines alone —"

"Diamond mines!" exclaimed Mr Barrow. "There are none!"

Miss Minchin actually got up from her chair.

"What!" she cried. "What do you mean?"

"**Diamond mines bring ruin oftener than they bring wealth**[3]," said Mr Barrow. "When a man is in the hands of a very dear friend, and is not a business man himself, he had better get rid of the dear friend's diamond mines, or gold mines, or any other kind of mines dear friends want his money to put into. The ***late*** Captain Crewe —"

Here Miss Minchin stopped him with a gasp.

"The *late* Captain Crewe!" she cried out, "the *late*! You don't come to tell me that Captain Crewe is —"

[1] **Mad extravagance!** — Безумная расточительность!

[2] **a man of fortune** — богатый человек

[3] **Diamond mines bring ruin oftener than they bring wealth** — Алмазные копи приносят разорение чаще, чем богатство

"He's dead, ma'am," Mr Barrow answered. "Died of **jungle fever**[1] and business troubles combined."

Miss Minchin dropped into her chair again.

"What *were* his business troubles?" she said.

"Diamond mines," answered Mr Barrow, "and dear friends — and ruin."

Miss Minchin lost her breath.

"Ruin!" she gasped out.

"Lost every penny. That young man had too much money. His dear friend put all his own money into the mines and all Captain Crewe's. Then the dear friend ran away — Captain Crewe was already ill when the news came. The shock was too much for him. He died, thinking about his little girl — and didn't leave a penny."

Now Miss Minchin understood, and never had she received such a blow in her life.

"Do you mean to tell me," she cried out, that he left *nothing?* That Sara will have no fortune? That the child is a beggar? That she is left on my hands a little ***pauper***?"

"She is certainly left a beggar," said Mr Barrow. "And she is certainly left on your hands, ma'am, as she hasn't a relation in the world that we know of."

"I am not responsible for her, and I refuse to be made responsible!"

Miss Minchin became quite white with rage.

Mr Barrow turned to go.

"**I have nothing to do with that**[2], madam," he said uninterestedly.

"I will turn her into the street!" cried Miss Minchin.

"I wouldn't do that, madam," said the man, "it wouldn't look well."

He was a clever business man, and he knew what he was saying. He also knew that Miss Minchin was a business woman,

[1] **jungle fever** — тропическая лихорадка

[2] **I have nothing to do with that** — Меня это не касается

and would be ***shrewd*** enough to see the truth. She could not ***afford*** to do a thing which would make people speak of her as cruel and hard-hearted.

"Better keep her and make use of her," he added. "She's a clever child, I believe. You can get a good deal out of her as she grows older. Good morning!"

When he left, the door was opened by Miss Amelia.

"What is the matter, sister?" she asked.

Miss Minchin wasted no words.

"Captain Crewe is dead," she said. "He has died without a penny. That spoiled child is left a pauper on my hands."

Miss Amelia sat down quite heavily in the nearest chair.

"Put a stop to this ridiculous party of hers."

"I?" panted Miss Amelia. "M-must I go and tell her now?"

"This moment!" was the angry answer.

Miss Amelia got up and went out of the room, without ***venturing*** to say another word.

Some time later Miss Amelia returned. "Sister," she said, "she is the strangest child I ever saw. When I told her what had happened, she just stood quite still and looked at me without making a sound. Her eyes seemed to get bigger and bigger, and she went quite pale. When I had finished, she still stood staring for a few seconds, and then her chin began to shake, and she turned round and ran out of the room and upstairs."

Nobody but Sara herself ever knew what had happened in her room after she had run upstairs and locked her door. She walked up and down, saying over and over again to herself in a voice which did not seem her own:

"My papa is dead! My papa is dead!"

Once she stopped before Emily, who sat watching her from her chair, and cried out wildly:

"Emily! Do you hear? Do you hear — papa is dead! He is dead in India — thousands of miles away."

When she came into Miss Minchin's sitting-room, her face was white and her eyes had dark rings around them. It was clear that she didn't want to show what she had suffered and was

suffering. She no longer looked like the rose-coloured butterfly child, she looked instead a strange, lonely little figure.

She had put on, without Mariette's help, an old black dress. It was too short and ***tight*** and her slender legs looked long and thin. She held Emily tightly in one arm.

"Put down your doll," said Miss Minchin. "What do you mean by bringing her here?"

"No," Sara answered. "I will not put her down. She is all I have. My papa gave her to me."

She had always made Miss Minchin feel secretly uncomfortable, and she did so now.

"You will have no time for dolls in future," she said. "You will have to work and improve yourself and make yourself useful."

Sara didn't say a word.

"Everything will be very different now," Miss Minchin went on. "I suppose Miss Amelia has explained matters to you."

"Yes," answered Sara. "My papa is dead. He left me no money. I am quite poor."

"You are a beggar," said Miss Minchin. "You have no relations and no home, and no one to take care of you. You are not a princess any longer. You will have no carriage, no maid. You will wear your oldest clothes. You are like Becky — **you must work for your living**[1]. You speak French well, and you can help with the younger children."

"May I?" exclaimed Sara. "Oh, please, let me! I know I can teach them. I like them, and they like me."

"Don't talk nonsense about people liking you," said Miss Minchin. "You will have to do more than teach the little ones. You will **run errands**[2] and help in the kitchen as well as in the schoolroom. If you don't please me, you will be sent away. Remember that. Now go."

Sara turned to leave the room.

---

[1] **you must work for your living** — тебе придется самой зарабатывать себе на жизнь

[2] **run errands** — выполнять разные поручения

"Stop!" said Miss Minchin. "Don't you intend to thank me?"

"What for?" asked Sara.

"For my kindness to you," replied Miss Minchin. "For my kindness in giving you a home."

Sara made two or three steps toward her.

"You are not kind," she said. "You are *not* kind, and it is *not* a home." And she had turned and run out of the room before Miss Minchin could stop her.

Before she reached her room Miss Amelia came out of the door and closed it behind her, looking nervous and awkward. The truth was that she felt secretly ashamed of the thing she had been ordered to do.

"That is not your room now," Miss Amelia said.

Somehow, all at once, Sara understood. She realized that this was the beginning of the change Miss Minchin had spoken of.

"Where is my room?" she asked, hoping very much that her voice did not shake.

"You will sleep in the attic next to Becky."

Sara knew where it was. Becky had told her about it.

When she reached the attic door and opened it, she saw a small dingy room. There was a small fireplace, and a hard bed covered with an old blanket. Some pieces of furniture too much old to be used downstairs had been sent up. Sara sat on an old red footstool. She seldom cried. She did not cry now. She laid Emily across her knees and put her face down upon her and her arms around her.

And as she sat in this silence the door was timidly pushed open and a face appeared. It was Becky's face, and Becky had been crying for hours.

Sara lifted her head and looked at her. She tried to begin to smile, and somehow she could not. Suddenly her face looked more like a child's not so much too old for her years.

"Oh, Becky," she said. "I told you we were just the same — only two little girls — just two little girls. You see how true it is. There's no difference now. I'm not a princess any more."

Becky ran to her and caught her hand.

"Yes, miss, you are," she cried, and her words were all broken. "Whatsoever happens to you, you'd be a princess all the same."

Useful Words

indifferent *a* неравнодушный
overweight *v* перегружать, утомлять
pin-cushion *n* подушечка для булавок
grin *n* широкая улыбка
moist *a* влажный
bold *a* смелый
scullery-maid *n* посудомойка
utter *v* произносить
attic *n* чердак
late *a* покойный
pauper *n* нищенка
shrewd *a* проницательный
afford *v* позволить себе
venture *v* осмеливаться
tight *a* тесный

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did Lavinia think about diamond mines?
b) What did Becky give Sara for her birthday?
c) Why did Miss Minchin allow Becky to see the presents together with the pupils?
d) What was the reason for Captain Crewe's death?
e) How did Sara take the news of her father's death?
f) What duties did Miss Minchin find for Sara?
g) Where did she have to move from her room?

2 Choose the right ending.

a) A friend of Captain Crewe asked him
   1. to buy his diamond mines.
   2. to develop his diamond mines together.
   3. to become his partner in a new scheme.

b) Captain Crewe ordered for Sara's birthday
   1. books and a wonderful doll.
   2. new dresses and hats.
   3. a diamond ring.

c) Mr Barrow told Miss Minchin that Captain Crewe
   1. wanted to take Sara home.
   2. had died without a penny.
   3. had left Sara a big fortune.

d) Miss Minchin left Sara at school because
   1. Mr Barrow paid for her education.
   2. she wanted to make use of her.
   3. Sara decided to work for her living.

3 Find in the text the synonyms to the following words and word combinations.

a wide smile	a gift
a rich man	brave
a project	a beggar

4 Choose the right words from the box and use them in the sentences.

to utter disapproval to afford shrewd to venture

a) Miss Amelia did not __________ to defend Sara.

b) Miss Minchin could not __________ to do cruel things to ruin her reputation.

c) The girls were so impressed with the wonderful doll that they __________ loud exclamations of admiration.

d) Mr Barrow looked at the fantastic doll and other presents with __________ .

e) Miss Minchin was a __________ person and realized that she could make use of Sara.

5 Say why:

a) the diamond mines brought Captain Crewe ruin.
b) Sara was much impressed with Becky's present.
c) Miss Amelia did not say a word in Sara's defence.

6 Speak of Mr Barrow. Do you think he was a hard-hearted man or just a good lawyer and a clever businessman? Give your opinion.

7 Imagine that you are Becky. Describe Sara's birthday. Say what you felt about Sara's troubles.

8 What episodes of this chapter prove that Sara was a girl with a strong and bold character?

7
IN THE ATTIC

The change in Sara's life did not come about gradually, but was made all at once.

Mariette had left the house the next morning. When Sara went down to breakfast she saw that her seat at Miss Minchin's side was occupied by Lavinia, and Miss Minchin spoke to her coldly.

"You will begin your new duties, Sara," she said, "by taking your seat with the younger children at a smaller table. You must keep them quiet, and see that they behave well. Lottie has already upset her tea."

That was the beginning, and from day to day she got more duties. She taught the younger children French and heard their other lessons. It was found that she could be made use of in numberless directions. She could be sent on errands at any time and in all weathers. She could be told to do things other people neglected. The cook and the housemaids took their tone from Miss Minchin. They were not servants of the best class, and had neither good manners nor good ***tempers***, and **it was convenient to have at hand someone on whom blame could be laid**[1].

Her own lessons became things of the past. She was taught nothing, and only after long and busy days spent in running here and there at everybody's orders was she allowed to go into the deserted schoolroom, with a pile of old books, and study alone at night.

"If I do not remind myself of the things I have learned, perhaps I may forget them," she said to herself. "I am almost a scullery-maid, and if I am a scullery-maid who knows nothing, I shall be like poor Becky."

One of the most curious things in her new existence was her changed position among the pupils. They no longer saw her as one of them. Miss Minchin preferred that she should not talk to other children and live a separate life — one suited to her circumstances.

Sara was too proud to try to continue to be intimate with girls who evidently felt rather awkward and uncertain about her. The fact was that Miss Minchin's pupils were dull, ***matter-of-fact*** young people. They were accustomed to being rich and comfortable, and as Sara's dresses grew shorter and she wore shoes with

[1] **it was convenient to have at hand someone on whom blame could be laid** — часто было удобно, чтобы под рукой был кто-то, на кого можно было бы свалить всю вину

holes in them and was sent out to buy ***groceries*** and carry them through the streets in a basket on her arm they felt rather as if, when they spoke to her, they were addressing a servant.

Sara didn't complain but **there were hours when her child's heart might almost have broken with loneliness but for three people**[1].

The first was Becky — just Becky. They had little chance to speak to each other during the day. Each had her own tasks to perform.

But before ***daybreak*** she used to ***slip*** into Sara's attic and button her dress and give her such help as she required before she went downstairs to light the kitchen fire. And when night came Sara always heard the knock at her door which meant that her maid was ready to help her again if she was needed.

The second of the trio was Ermengarde, but odd things happened before Ermengarde found her place.

Ermengarde had gone home for a few weeks. When she came back she did not see Sara for a day or two, and when she met her for the first time in a corridor she could not think of anything to say. She knew what had happened, but, somehow, she had never imagined Sara could look so odd and poor and almost like a servant.

"Oh," she stammered. "How — how are you?"

"I don't know," Sara replied. "How are you?"

'I'm quite well," said Ermengarde. Then she thought of something to say which seemed more intimate. "Are you — are you very unhappy?"

Sara felt that if anyone was as stupid as that, one had better get away from her.

"What do you think?" she said. "Do you think I am very happy?" and she marched past her without another word.

[1] **there were hours when her child's heart might almost have broken with loneliness but for three people** — но бывали дни, когда ее детское сердечко не вынесло бы одиночества, если бы не три человека, которые были с ней рядом

Later she realized that **poor dull Ermengarde was not to be blamed for her awkward ways**[1]. She was always awkward, and the more she felt, the more stupid she became.

So for several weeks a barrier stood between them. When they met by chance Sara looked the other way, and Ermengarde felt too ***embarrassed*** to speak.

"If she doesn't want to talk to me," Sara thought, "**I will keep out of her way. Miss Minchin makes that easy enough.**[2]"

Miss Minchin made it so easy that at last they didn't see each other at all. At that time it was noticed that Ermengarde was more stupid than ever, and that she looked unhappy.

That night Sara went to her attic later than usual. When she reached the top of the stairs, she was surprised to see light coming from under the attic door.

"Nobody goes there but myself," she thought quickly, "but someone has lighted a candle."

Someone had, indeed, lighted a candle. The someone was sitting upon the footstool, and was dressed in her night-gown. It was Ermengarde.

"Ermengarde!" cried Sara. She was so surprised that she was almost frightened. "You will get into trouble."

Ermengarde stood up from her footstool. Her eyes and nose were pink with crying.

"I know I shall — if I'm found out," she said. "But I don't care I don't care a bit. Oh, Sara, please tell me. What *is* the matter? Why don't you like me any more?"

It was so simple — so like the old Ermengarde who had asked her to be "best friends".

"I do like you," Sara answered. "I thought — you see, everything is different now. I thought you — were different."

---

[1] **poor dull Ermengarde was not to be blamed for her awkward ways** — бедную недалекую Эрменгарду нельзя было винить за ее неловкость

[2] **I will keep out of her way. Miss Minchin makes that easy enough.** — я буду держаться от нее подальше. С помощью мисс Минчин это будет очень легко.

Ermengarde opened her wet eyes wide.

"Why, it was you who were different!" she cried. "You didn't want to talk to me. I didn't know what to do."

Sara thought a moment. She saw she had made a mistake.

"I *am* different," she explained, "though not in the way you think. Miss Minchin does not want me to talk to the girls. Most of them don't want to talk to me. I thought — perhaps — you didn't. So I tried to keep out of your way."

They rushed into each other's arms.

Ermengarde looked at the odd, big-eyed little face adoringly.

"I couldn't bear it any more," she said. "You could live without me, Sara; but I couldn't live without you. I was nearly *dead*. So tonight I decided to come here and ask you to be friends again."

"You are nicer than I am," said Sara. "I was too proud to try and make friends. You see, now that ***trials*** have come, they show that I am *not* a nice child. I was afraid they would. Perhaps that is what they were sent for."

"I don't see any good in them," said Ermengarde.

"Neither do I — to speak the truth," said Sara frankly. "But I suppose there *might* be good in things, even if we don't see it."

Ermengarde looked round the attic.

"Sara," she said, "do you think you can bear living here?"

Sara looked round also.

"If I pretend it's quite different, I can," she answered. "Or if I pretend it is a place in a story."

She spoke slowly. Her imagination was beginning to work for her.

"Other people have lived in worse places. Think of the ***Count*** of Monte Cristo. And think of the people in the Bastille!"

"The Bastille," half whispered Ermengarde. She remembered stories of the French Revolution which Sara had made up.

A well-known ***glow*** came into Sara's eyes.

"Yes," she said. "That will be a good place to pretend about. I am a prisoner in the Bastille. I have been here for

years and years — and years; and everybody has forgotten about me. Miss Minchin is the ***jailer*** — and Becky is the prisoner in the next ***cell.***"

She turned to Ermengarde, looking quite like the old Sara.

"I shall pretend that," she said, "and **it will be a great comfort**[1]."

"And will you tell me all about it?" said Ermengarde. "May I come here at night, whenever it is safe, and hear the things you have made up in the day?"

"Yes," answered Sara, nodding.

Useful Words

temper *n* характер
matter-of-fact *a зд.* лишенный фантазии
groceries *n pl* бакалейные товары
daybreak *n* рассвет
slip *v* скользить; двигаться, не привлекая внимания
embarrassed *a* смущенный
trial *n* испытание
count *n* граф
glow *n* свет, блеск
jailer *n* тюремщик
cell *n* тюремная камера

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) When did the change in Sara's life come?
b) How did other pupils treat Sara?
c) When did Becky come to see Sara?

[1] **it will be a great comfort** — мне будет намного легче

d) Why did Sara decide to keep out of Ermengarde's way?
e) When and why did Ermengarde come to Sara's attic?
f) At what moment did Sara look like the old Sara?

2 Match the two parts of the sentences.

a) She could be told to do things	1) Sara could be made use of in numberless directions.
b) She was kept so much at work that	2) but Sara had felt as if she was years the older.
c) Sara and Ermengarde had always been friends	3) other people neglected.
d) It was found that	4) she had no opportunity of speaking to other pupils.

3 Find in the text the English for:

в любую погоду
Лотти уже разлила свой чай.
отправлять с поручениями
встретиться случайно

4 Fill in the prepositions if necessary.

a) The cook and the housemaids were not servants ______ the best class.
b) Sara spent days running here and there ______ everybody's orders.
c) Miss Minchin wanted Sara to live a life suited ______ her circumstances.
d) The other girls felt as if they were addressing ______ a servant.
e) Sara wore old shabby dresses and shoes ______ holes.

5 Say why:

a) the servants treated Sara badly.

b) Sara tried to find time for her own lessons.
c) Miss Minchin wanted Sara to live a separate life.
d) Sara did not understand Ermengarde's true feelings.

6 Describe Sara's days. Why do you think she did not complain of her hard life?

7 Imagine that you are Ermengarde. Say:

- what you felt about the change in Sara's life;
- what your life was without Sara;
- what you did to return your old friendship with Sara.

8 Sara supposed that there might be good in things, even if it is not seen. Do you agree with her? Give your opinion.

8
MELCHISEDEC[1]

The third person in the trio was Lottie. She was a small thing and could not understand why Sara looked different — why she wore an old black dress and came into the schoolroom only to teach instead of to sit in her place of honour and learn lessons herself. Lottie's main difficulty was that Sara said so little when one asked her questions.

"Are you very poor now, Sara?" she had asked the first morning her friend came to teach French. "Are you as poor as a beggar?" She opened round, tearful eyes. "I don't want you to be as poor as a beggar."

She looked as if she was going to cry.

"Beggars have nowhere to live," said Sara courageously. "I have a place to live in."

[1] ***Melchisedec*** — Мельхиседек (так звали ветхозаветного царя-священника)

"Where do you live?" asked Lottie. "The new girl sleeps in your room, and it isn't pretty any more."

"I live in another room," said Sara.

"Is it a nice one?" inquired Lottie. "I want to go and see it."

"You must not talk," said Sara. "Miss Minchin is looking at us. She will be angry with me for letting you whisper."

But Lottie was a ***determined*** little person. She decided to find out herself where Sara lived. She talked to her small companions and listened to the elder girls when they were gossiping. One afternoon she started on a voyage of discovery, and finally reached the attic floor. There she found two doors near each other, and opening one, she saw Sara standing upon an old table and looking out of a window.

"Sara!" she cried ***aghast***. "Mamma Sara!" She was aghast because the attic was so ugly, and seemed so far away from all the world.

Sara turned round at the sound of her voice. It was her turn to be aghast. What would happen now? She jumped down from her table and ran to the child.

"Don't cry and make a noise," she said. It's — it's not such a bad room, Lottie."

"Isn't it?" gasped Lottie. She was a spoiled child, but she was fond enough of her adopted parent to make an effort to control herself **for her sake**[1].

Sara hugged her close[2] and tried to laugh.

"You can see all sorts of things you can't see downstairs," she said.

"What sort of things?" demanded Lottie, with curiosity.

"***Chimneys*** — quite close to us — and sparrows ***hopping*** and talking to each other just as if they were people — and other attic windows."

"Oh, let me see it!" cried Lottie. "Lift me up!"

Sara lifted her up, and they stood on the old table together and looked out.

[1] **for her sake** — ради нее

[2] **Sara hugged her close** — Сара прижала ее к себе

The sky seemed so much nearer than when one saw it from the street, that Lottie was fascinated. From the attic window the things which were happening in the world below seemed almost unreal. One scarcely believed in the existence of Miss Minchin and Miss Amelia and the schoolroom.

"Oh, Sara!" cried Lottie. "I like this attic — I like it! It is nicer than downstairs!"

"Look at that sparrow," whispered Sara. "I wish I had some crumbs to throw to him."

"I have some!" cried Lottie. "I have part of a ***bun*** in my pocket; I bought it with my penny yesterday, and I ***saved*** a bit."

When they threw out a few crumbs the sparrow jumped and flew away to a chimney-top.

Then he saw that the thing which had alarmed him represented hospitality.

He flew down and hopped toward the crumbs, then he hopped nearer and nearer, seized the biggest crumb, and carried it away to the other side of his chimney.

"Now he *knows*," said Sara. "And he will come back for the others."

He did come back, and even brought a friend, and the friend went away and brought a relative, and among them they had a good dinner. Lottie was so delighted that she quite forgot her first shocked impression of the attic.

It's when Lottie left Sara sat down on the footstool and let her head drop in her hands. "It's a lonely place," she said. "Sometimes it's the loneliest place in the world."

She was sitting in this way when her attention was attracted by a sound near her. She lifted her head to see where it came from, and saw a large rat ***sniffing*** the air in an interested manner. Some of Lottie's crumbs had dropped upon the floor and their scent had drawn him out of his hole.

Sara had sat so quietly that the rat had begun **to take courage**[1]. He was very much afraid of her, but perhaps he had

[1] **to take courage** — набираться мужества

a heart like the sparrow and it told him that she couldn't hurt him. He was very hungry. He had a wife, and a large family in the wall, and they were very hungry too.

"Come on," said Sara. "I'm not a trap. You can have the crumbs! Prisoners in the Bastille used to make friends with rats. **Suppose I make friends with you.**[1]"

How it is that animals understand things I do not know, but it is certain that they do understand. The rat knew from that moment that he was safe even though he was a rat. He was really a very nice rat, and did not mean the least harm. He went toward the crumbs and began to eat them.

She sat and watched him without making any movement. One crumb was very much larger than the others. It was evident that he wanted that piece very much, but it lay quite near the footstool and he was still rather timid.

"I believe he wants to carry it to his family in the wall," Sara thought. "If I do not ***stir*** at all, perhaps he will come and get it."

The rat quickly ate a few more crumbs, then he seized the piece of bun and slipped down a crack in the wall.

"I knew he wanted it for his children," said Sara. "I do believe I could make friends with him."

A week or so afterward, on one of the nights when Ermengarde found it safe to come the attic, she heard Sara's voice.

"There!" Ermengarde heard her say. "Take it and go home, Melchisedec! Go home to your wife!"

When Sara opened the door, Ermengarde asked her.

"Who — who *are* you talking to, Sara?"

"You must promise not to be frightened — not to scream, or I can't tell you," she answered.

Ermengarde managed to control herself. She looked all round the attic and saw no one.

"Was it — a ghost?" she asked.

[1] **Suppose I make friends with you.** — А попробую я с тобой подружиться.

"No," said Sara, laughing. "It was my rat."

Ermengarde made one ***bound***, and landed in the middle of the little dingy bed.

"Oh! Oh!" she cried. "A rat! A rat!"

"I was afraid you would be frightened," said Sara. "But you needn't be. He actually knows me and comes out when I call him. Are you too frightened to want to see him?"

Sara told her the story of her friendship with Melchisedec. Then she stood on her knees near the wall and whistled.

Ermengarde thought she looked **as if she were working a spell**[1]. And at last, evidently in response to it, a bright-eyed head appeared out of the hole. Sara had some crumbs in her hand. She dropped them, and Melchisedec came and ate them. A piece of larger size than the rest he took and carried in the most business-like manner back to his home.

"You see," said Sara, "that is for his wife and children."

Ermengarde began to laugh.

"You talk about Melchisedec as if he was a person."

"He *is* a person," said Sara. "He gets hungry and frightened, just as we do; and he is married and has children. His eyes look as if he was a person. That was why I gave him a name."

"Besides," she said, "he is a Bastille rat sent to be my friend."

"Is it the Bastille yet?" asked Ermengarde, eagerly. "Do you always pretend it is the Bastille?"

"Nearly always," answered Sara. "Sometimes I try to pretend it is another kind of place; but the Bastille is generally easiest — particularly when it is cold."

Just at that moment Ermengarde almost jumped off the bed, she was so surprised to hear two knocks on the wall.

"What is that?" she exclaimed.

Sara answered quite dramatically: "It is the prisoner in the next cell."

"Becky!" cried Ermengarde.

---

[1] **as if she were working a spell** — как будто она колдует

"Yes," said Sara. "Listen; the two knocks meant, 'Prisoner, are you there?'"

She knocked three times on the wall herself, as if in answer.

"That means, 'Yes, I am here, and all is well.'"

Four knocks came from Becky's side of the wall.

"That means, 'Goodnight,'" explained Sara.

"Oh, Sara!" whispered Ermengarde joyfully, "it is like a story!"

"It is a story," said Sara. "*Everything*'s a story. You are a story — I am a story. Miss Minchin is a story."

And they talked until it was time for Ermengarde to go back to her bed.

Useful Words

determined *a* решительный
aghast *a* ошеломленный
chimney *n* дымовая труба
hop *v* прыгать, подпрыгивать
bun *n* сдобная булочка
save *v* спасти, сохранить
sniff *v зд.* нюхать, обнюхивать
stir *v* шевелиться
bound *n* прыжок

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) How did Lottie manage to find Sara's new room?
b) What was Lottie's first impression of the room and what did she think of it later?
c) Whom did Sara and Lottie give the crumbs to?
d) Who was Melchisedec? What is known about his family?
e) What code did Sara and Becky make up?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) The rat seized the piece of bun and slipped down a crack in the wall.
b) Sara knocked three times on the wall.
c) Sara lifted Lottie up on the table.
d) Sara lifted her head and saw a large rat sniffing the air in an interested manner.
e) Lottie saw her young adopted mother standing upon the old table and looking out of a window.
f) The girls threw crumbs to the sparrow.
g) Sara sat down on the footstool and let her head drop in her hands.

3 Suggest the Russian for the phrases.

a) Late one afternoon Lottie started a voyage of discovery.
b) Lottie was fond enough of her adopted parent to make an effort to control herself for her sake.
c) He was really a very nice rat, and did not mean the least harm.
d) Ermengarde managed to control herself.

4 Fill in the nouns from the box.

trap crack ghost bound bun hospitality

a) Lottie had part of a ___________ in her pocket.
b) The sparrow realized that the thing that had alarmed him was ___________ .
c) Ermengarde made one ___________ and landed in the middle of the bed.

d) "Come on," said Sara, "I'm not a ___________ ."
e) Melchisedec took the biggest crumb and disappeared in the ___________ in the wall.
f) Ermengarde was afraid that Sara had made friends with a ___________ .

5 Choose *Past Simple* or *Past Continuous.*

a) Lottie was a small thing and could not understand why Sara (looked, was looking) different.
b) Lottie listened to the elder girls when they (gossiped, were gossiping).
c) From the attic window the things which (happened, were happening) in the world below seemed almost unreal.
d) Sara (sat, was sitting) on the footstool when her attention was attracted by a sound near her.

6 Describe how:

a) Sara made Lottie believe that she had a wonderful room.
b) Sara made friends with Melchisedec.

7 Act out the dialogue between Sara and Ermengarde about Melchisedec.

8 It is said that animals understand things. Do you agree with that? Can you give examples?

9
THE INDIAN GENTLEMAN

It was dangerous for Ermengarde and Lottie to came often to the attic. So Sara lived a strange and lonely life. She had no one to talk to; and when she was sent out on errands and walked through the streets, a little figure carrying a basket or

a parcel, she felt as if the crowds hurrying past her made her loneliness greater.

In the evening, when she passed houses whose windows were lighted up, she used to look into the warm rooms and amuse herself by imagining things about the people she saw sitting before the fires or about the tables. There were several families in the square in which Miss Minchin lived, with which she had become quite familiar **in a way of her own**[1]. The one she liked best she called the Large Family. She called it the Large Family not because the members of it were big — for, indeed, most of them were little but because there were so many of them. There were eight children in the Large Family, and a ***stout***, rosy mother, and a stout, rosy father, and a stout, rosy grandmother, and any number of servants. The children were always doing something enjoyable and suited to the tastes of a large family. Sara was quite fond of them.

One evening a very funny thing happened, though, perhaps, in one sense it was not a funny thing at all.

Several children of the Large Family were evidently going to a children's party, and just as Sara was about to pass the door they were crossing the pavement to get into the carriage which was waiting for them. Two girls, in white dresses, had just got in, and a boy of five, was following them. He was such a pretty fellow and had such rosy cheeks and blue eyes, that Sara forgot her basket and shabby clothes — in fact, forgot everything but that she wanted to look at him for a moment. So she paused and looked.

It was Christmas time, and the Large Family had been hearing many stories **about children who were poor and had no mammas and papas to fill their stockings and take them to the pantomime**[2] — children who were, in fact, cold and hungry. In the stories, kind people — sometimes little boys and girls with ***tender*** hearts saw the poor children and gave them money or rich gifts, or took them home to beautiful dinners. The boy had read such a story, and was burning with a desire to find such a poor child and give her a ***sixpence*** he had in his pocket. An entire sixpence, he was sure, would mean a lot for this child. And just as he came up to the carriage, he saw Sara standing on the wet pavement in her shabby dress and hat, with her old basket on her arm, looking at him.

So he put his hand in his pocket and found his sixpence, and walked up to her.

"Here, poor little girl," he said. "Here is a sixpence. I will give it to you."

Sara at once realized that she looked exactly like poor children she had seen in her better days. Her face went red and then it went pale.

"Oh, no!" she said. "Oh no, thank you."

But the boy ***thrust*** the sixpence into her hand.

"Yes, you must take it!" he insisted. "You can buy things to eat with it. It is a whole sixpence!"

There was something so honest and kind in his face, and he looked so likely to be disappointed if she did not take it, that Sara knew she must not refuse him. To be as proud as that would be a cruel thing. So she actually put her pride in her pocket.

"Thank you," she said. "You are a kind, kind little darling thing." And she went away, trying to smile, though she was very sad. She had known that she looked odd and shabby, but until now she had not known that she might be taken for a beggar.

As the Large Family's carriage drove away, the children inside it were talking with interested excitement.

"Oh, Donald (this was the boy's, name)", said one of the girls, "why did you offer that little girl your sixpence? I'm sure she is not a beggar!"

"She didn't speak like a beggar!" said the other sister, "and her face didn't really look like a beggar's face!"

---

[1] **in a way of her own** — в своем воображении

[2] **about children who were poor and had no mammas and papas to fill their stockings and take them to the pantomime** — о бедных детях, у которых нет ни мамы, не папы, и поэтому никто не положит им подарки в чулок и никто не отведет на детское рождественское представление

Sara knew nothing about the fact, but from that time the Large Family was as much interested in her as she was in it.

And she was called by all of them, "The-little-girl-who-is-not-a-beggar", which was, of course, rather a long name, and sounded very funny sometimes when the youngest ones said it in a hurry.

Sara made a hole in the sixpence, and hung it on an old bit of narrow ribbon round her neck.

She had wished very much that someone would take the empty house next door. She wished it because of the attic window which was so near hers. She hoped to see someone in it someday.

One morning, on turning the corner of the square after a visit to **the butcher's**[1], and **the baker's**[2], she saw, to her great delight, that during her absence, a ***van*** full of furniture had stopped before the next house, and men were going in and out carrying heavy packages and pieces of furniture.

"It's taken!" she said. "It really *is* taken!

All the furniture of the new ***occupant*** was rich and beautiful, and a great deal of it was ***oriental***. Wonderful rugs, tables and chairs were taken from the vans, many pictures, and books enough for a library. Among other things there was a superb god Buddha.

"Someone in the family *must* have been in India," Sara thought. "They have got used to Indian things and like them. I *am* glad. I shall feel as if they were friends, even if a head never looks out of the attic window."

At night, after her work was done, Becky came in to see her fellow-prisoner and bring her news.

"An Indian gentleman is coming to live next door. He's very rich and he is ill and the gentleman of the Large Family is his lawyer," she said.

Becky sat and talked long that night of what he would be like, of what his wife would be like if he had one, and of what his children would be like if they had children.

---

[1] **the butcher's** — мясная лавка

[2] **the baker's** — булочная

It was several weeks before her curiosity was satisfied, and then it was ***revealed*** that the new occupant had neither wife nor children. He was a ***solitary*** man with no family at all, and it was evident that **he was shattered in health and unhappy in mind**[1].

A carriage drove up one day and stopped before the house. The father of the Large Family got out first. After him there got out a nurse in uniform, then came down the steps two menservants. They came to help their master. He was carried up the steps, and the head of the Large Family went with him, looking very anxious. Shortly afterward a doctor's carriage arrived, and the doctor went in — to take care of him.

That was the beginning of the story of the Indian gentleman.

Useful Words

stout *a* полный, толстый
tender *a* нежный, добрый
sixpence *n* серебряная монета в шесть пенсов
thrust *v* толкать
van *n* фургон
occupant *n* жилец
oriental *a* восточный
reveal *v* открывать, обнаруживать
solitary *a* одинокий

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What family attracted Sara's attention?
b) What did Sara call them and why?

---

[1] **he was shattered in health and unhappy in mind** — это больной и несчастный человек

c) What gift did the little boy from this family make to Sara?
d) What did Sara do with the sixpence?
e) What showed that the occupant of the next house was an Indian gentleman?
f) How was the father of the Large Family connected with the Indian gentleman?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Sara was fond of the Large Family because ________ ________.
b) Donald gave Sara a sixpence because ________.
c) Sara took the money because ________.
d) The Large Family called Sara "The-little-girl-who-is-not-a-beggar" because ________.
e) Sara was happy to see the next house taken because ________.

3 Suggest the Russian for the phrases.

a) The children were always doing something enjoyable and suited to the tastes of a large family.
b) Sara actually put her pride in her pocket.
c) As the carriage drove away the children inside it were talking with interested excitement.

4 Fill in the prepositions *in, round, of, with, on, for.*

a) You can buy things to eat ______ the sixpence.
b) Sara had not known before that she could be taken ______ a beggar.
c) From that Christmas the Large Family was much interested ______ Sara.
d) Sara wore the sixpence ______ a ribbon ______ her neck.
e) Before the next house Sara saw a van full ______ furniture.

5 Choose the right words and make up sentences.

Example: The butcher's is a shop where you can buy meat.

The baker's	vegetables
The grocer's	bread
The greengrocer's	groceries

6 Imagine that you are one of Donald's sisters. You saw him give the sixpence to the poor girl. Retell the episode as you saw it. Why are you sure that she is not a beggar?

7 What made Sara put her pride in her pocket and take the money from the boy? Describe her feelings. What would you do in her place?

8 Speak of the Indian gentleman. Describe his things and his first appearance.



10
RAM DASS

The attic window was the only place where one could see beautiful sunsets, full of colours. When it was at all possible to leave the kitchen without being missed or called back, Sara ***stole away*** to her attic and, ***climbing*** on the old table, got her head and body as far out of the window as possible. It used to seem as if she had all the sky and the world to herself. No one else ever looked out of the other attics.

There was such a sunset as this a few days after the Indian gentleman was brought to his new home; and, as it fortunately happened that the afternoon's work was done in the kitchen and nobody had ordered her to go anywhere or perform any task, Sara found it easier than usual to slip away and go upstairs.

She stood on the table looking out. It was a wonderful moment. A deep, rich yellow light filled the air; the birds flying across the tops of the houses looked black against it.

She suddenly turned her head because she heard a sound. It was an odd sound, like a little ***chattering***. It came from the window of the next attic. Someone had come to look at the sunset as she had. She saw a head and part of a body, but it was not the head or body of a little girl or a housemaid; it was the **picturesque white-turbaned head**[1] of a native Indian — "a ***lascar***", Sara said to herself quickly — and the sound she had heard came from a small monkey he held in his arms.

As Sara looked toward him he looked toward her. The first thing she thought was that his dark face looked ***homesick***. She felt absolutely sure he had come up to look at the sun, because he had seen it so seldom in England. She looked at him interestedly for a second, and then smiled.

He smiled back showing very white teeth.

At this moment **his monkey suddenly broke loose**[2], and actually ***leaped*** on to Sara's shoulder, and from there down into her attic room. It made her laugh, but she knew he must be ***restored*** to his master — and she wondered how this was to be done. Would he let her catch him, or would he refuse to be caught, and perhaps get away and run off over the roofs and be lost?

She turned to the man feeling glad that she remembered still some of the ***Hindustani*** she had learned when she lived with her father. She spoke to him in the language he knew.

"Will he let me catch him?" she asked.

She thought she had never seen more surprise and ***delight*** than the dark face expressed when he heard familiar words. At once Sara saw that he had been accustomed to European children. He said that he was grateful to **Missee Sahib**[3]. The mon-

---

[1] **white-turbaned head** — голова в белом тюрбане

[2] **his monkey suddenly broke loose** — обезьянка вдруг вырвалась у него из рук

[3] **Missee Sahib** — Маленькая госпожа

key was a good monkey, but, unfortunately, he was difficult to catch. If Missee Sahib would permit Ram Dass, he himself could cross the roof to her room, enter the window, and get the little animal.

"Then come," she said, "he is flying from side to side of the room as if he was frightened."

Ram Dass slipped through his attic window and crossed to hers as lightly as if he had walked on roofs all his life. He slipped through the window without a sound. It was not a very long ***chase***. A few minutes later he sat chattering on to Ram Dass's shoulder.

Ram Dass thanked Sara. She was sure that his quick native eyes had seen the shabbiness of the room, but he spoke to her as if he were speaking to the little daughter of a ***rajah***, and pretended that he observed nothing.

When he had gone Sara stood in the middle of her attic and thought of many things his face and his manner had brought back to her. It seemed a strange thing to remember that she had only a few years ago been surrounded by people who all treated her as Ram Dass had treated her; who were her servants and her slaves. It was like a sort of dream. It was all over, and it could never come back.

She knew what Miss Minchin intended that her future should be.[1] So long as she was too young to be used as **a regular teacher**[2], she would be used as an errand girl and servant, and yet expected to remember what she had learned and in some mysterious way to learn more. When she was older she would be expected to ***drudge*** in the schoolroom as she drudged now in various parts of the house; they would be obliged to give her more respectable clothes, but they would be sure to be ugly, and to make her look somehow like a servant.

[1] **She knew what Miss Minchin intended that her future should be.** — Она знала, как мисс Минчин намерена распорядиться ее судьбой.

[2] **a regular teacher** — постоянная учительница

Then a thought came back to her. She straightened her thin little body and lifted her head.

"Whatever comes," she said, "cannot change one thing. If I am a princess **in rags and tatters**[1], I can be a princess inside. It would be easy to be a princess if I were dressed in wonderful clothes, but it is a great deal more of a triumph to be one all the time when no one knows it."

Useful Words

steal away *phr v* незаметно ускользать
climb *v* забираться
chattering *n* болтовня
picturesque *a* живописный
lascar *n* матрос-индиец
homesick *a* тоскующий по дому или родине
leap *v* прыгать
restore *v* возвращать
Hindustani *n* язык хиндустани
delight *n* удовольствие, наслаждение
chase *n* погоня, охота
rajah *n* раджа (княжеский титул в Индии)
drudge *v* выполнять тяжелую, нудную, монотонную работу

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did Sara like to look at sunsets?
b) Who was Ram Dass?
c) Where and when did Sara meet him?
d) Who caught the monkey?

[1] **in rags and tatters** — в лохмотьях

e) How did Ram Dass treat Sara?
f) What kind of future did Miss Minchin intend for Sara?

2 Choose the right ending.

a) Ram Dass had come to look at the sunset because he
1. wanted to breathe fresh air.
2. seldom saw the sun in England.
3. wanted to talk to somebody.

b) It was necessary to catch the monkey because he
1. could damage Sara's things.
2. made terrible noise.
3. could run away and be lost.

c) Ram Dass spoke to Sara as if she were
1. an Indian girl.
2. the daughter of a rajah.
3. an old friend.

3 Match the verbs and their definitions.

a) to leap	1) to see and notice
b) to restore	2) to go up
c) to observe	3) to work hard at unpleasant tasks
d) to treat	4) to return
e) to drudge	5) to jump
f) to climb	6) to act or behave towards

4 Choose right.

a) *There/It* was not the head or body of a little girl or a housemaid.
b) *There/It* was such a sunset as this a few days after the Indian gentleman arrived at his new home.
c) *There/It* was an odd sound like a little chattering.
d) *There/It* was not a very long chase.

5 Complete the sentences.

Example: The English speak English.

a) The Indians speak ____________ .
b) ____________ speak French.
c) The Chinese speak ____________ .
d) ____________ speak Russian.

6 Imagine that you are Sara. Tell your friend Ermengarde about Ram Dass and the monkey.

7 Would you like to have a monkey as a pet animal? What pet animals do people keep at home? Do you have any pets at home?

8 Sara thought, "It would be easy to be a princess if I were dressed in wonderful clothes, but it is a great deal more of a triumph to be one all the time when no one knows it." What did Sara mean? Do you agree with her? Give your opinion.

11
THE OTHER SIDE OF THE WALL

When one lives in a row of houses, it is interesting to think of the things which are being done and said on the other side of the wall of the very rooms one is living in. Sara was fond of amusing herself by trying to imagine the things hidden by the wall which divided the Select Seminary from the Indian gentleman's house.

"I am growing quite fond of him," she said to Ermengarde. "**I have adopted him for a friend.**[1] You can do that with people you never speak to at all. You can just watch them, and

[1] **I have adopted him for a friend.** — Я считаю его своим другом.

think about them and be sorry for them, until they seem almost like relations."

She had become fond of the Large Family because they looked happy; but she had become fond of the Indian gentleman because he looked unhappy. He had evidently not fully recovered from some very severe illness. Sara learned from the servants that he was not an Indian gentleman really, but an Englishman who had lived in India. **He had met with great misfortunes**[1] and nearly lost his whole fortune. The shock had been so great that he had almost died of ***brain-fever***. His trouble had been connected with diamond mines.

"He felt as my papa felt," Sara thought. "He was ill as my papa was; but he did not die."

So her heart was more drawn to him than before. When she was sent out at night, she could look into the warm room and see her adopted friend.

Her sympathy was so strong that it seemed as if it *must* reach him somehow as he sat alone in his armchair by the fire, nearly always with his forehead resting in his hand as he gazed hopelessly into the fire.

"He always seems as if he were thinking of something that hurts him *now*," she said to herself, "but he has got his money back and he will ***get over*** his brain-fever in time. I wonder if there is something else."

The father of the Large Family went to see him, often, and his wife and all the little children went, too, though less often. He seemed particularly fond of the two elder little girls — the Janet and Nora who had been so alarmed when their small brother Donald had given Sara his sixpence.

Janet and Nora were as fond of him as he was of them, and ***looked forward*** with the greatest pleasure to their ***well-behaved*** little visits to him.

The Indian gentleman's real name was Mr Carrisford, and Janet told Mr Carrisford about the little-girl-who-was-not-

[1] **He had met with great misfortunes** — Он пережил много бед

a-beggar. He was very much interested, and all the more so when he heard from Ram Dass of the adventure of the monkey on the roof. Ram Dass made for him a very clear picture of the attic — of the bare floor and walls the ***rusty***, empty fireplace and the hard, narrow bed.

"Do you suppose," he said to the father of the Large Family whose name was Carmichael, "do you think it is possible that the other child — the child I never ***cease*** thinking of, I believe — could be — could *possibly* live in such condition as the poor little soul next door?"

"If the child at Madame Pascal's school in Paris was the one you are in search of," answered Mr Carmichael, "she would seem to be in the hands of people who can afford to take care of her. They adopted her because she had been the favourite companion of their little daughter who died. They had no other children, and Madame Pascal said that they were extremely ***well-to-do*** Russians."

"But you say *'if'* the child was the one I am in search of. You say 'if'. We are not sure. There was a difference in the name."

"Madame Pascal pronounced it Carew instead of Crewe — but **that might be merely a matter of pronunciation**[1]. The circumstances were curiously similar. An English officer in India had placed his motherless little girl at the school. He had died suddenly after losing his fortune." Mr Carmichael paused a moment, as if a new thought had occurred to him. "Are you sure it was Paris?"

"My dear fellow," said Carrisford, "I am *sure* of nothing. I never saw either the child or her mother. Ralph Crewe and I loved each other as boys, but we had not met since our school-days, until we met in India. And then we spoke only of the mines. **The whole thing was so huge and glittering that we half lost our heads.**[2] I know that her mother was a Frenchwom-

[1] **that might be merely a matter of pronunciation** — это могло быть связано просто с неправильным произношением

[2] **The whole thing was so huge and glittering that we half lost our heads.** — Это было грандиозное предприятие, подававшее блестящие надежды, и мы почти совсем потеряли головы.

an, and I had heard that she wished her child to be educated in Paris. I *must* find her. If she is alive, she is somewhere. If she is friendless and penniless, it is my fault. Poor Crewe's child may be begging in the street!"

"No, no," said Carmichael. "Try to be calm. Think that when she is found she will have a fortune."

"Poor Crewe had put into the scheme every penny that he owned. He trusted me — he *loved* me. And he died thinking I had ruined him!" exclaimed Carrisford.

"Don't ***reproach*** yourself."

"I reproach myself for losing my courage. I ran away like a ***swindler*** and a ***thief*** because I could not ***face*** my best friend and tell him I had ruined him and his child."

The good-hearted father of the Large Family put his hand on his shoulder.

"You ran away because you had a brain-fever," he said. "You were in a hospital two days after you left the place. Remember that."

Carrisford dropped his forehead in his hands.

"Come, come," said Carmichael. "We shall find her yet. We will continue to search for Madame Pascal's good-natured Russians. I will go to Moscow."

Useful Words

brain-fever *n* воспаление мозга
get over *phr v* преодолеть, справиться
look forward (to) *phr v* ожидать с нетерпением
well-behaved *a* отличающийся хорошим поведением
rusty *a* ржавый
cease *v* переставать (делать что-то)
well-to-do *a* богатый, обеспеченный
reproach *v* упрекать
swindler *n* мошенник
thief *n* вор
face *v* смотреть в лицо

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did Sara learn of the Indian gentleman?
b) What made Sara think that he had something else on his mind?
c) What were the relations between the elder girls from the Large Family and Mr Carrisford?
d) Where did Mr Carrisford and Mr Carmichael try to find Sara?
e) For what did Mr Carrisford reproach himself?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Sara was trying to imagine things because ____________ .
b) Sara was fond of the Indian gentleman because ____________ .
c) Mr Carrisford was touched by the story of the little-girl-who-was-not-beggar because ____________ .
d) Mr Carrisford searched for Sara in Paris because ____________ .
e) Mr Carmichael promised to go to Moscow because ____________ .

3 Suggest the Russian for the phrases.

a) Sara's heart was more drawn to the Indian gentleman than before.
b) The girls from the Large Family looked forward to their well-behaved little visits to him.
c) There was a difference in the name.

4 Use the verbs in the right form.

a) Mr Carrisford (to reproach) himself for losing his courage.

b) The girls from the Large Family (to look forward) to their visits to Mr Carrisford.
c) Mr Carrisford did not know how to tell his friend that he (to be ruined).
d) Mr Carrisford and his lawyer (to search) for Sara in Paris.
e) Mr Carrisford never (to cease) thinking of the daughter of Ralph Crewe.

5 **Choose the adverbs from the box and use them in the sentences.**

extremely hopelessly particularly fully

a) Mr Carrisford and his lawyer learned that the girl had been adopted by some ____________ well-to-do Russians.
b) Mr Carrisford sat all days long in his armchair gazing ____________ into the fire.
c) He had not ____________ recovered from his severe illness.
d) He seemed ____________ fond of the elder daughters of his lawyer.

6 **Tell the story of Mr Carrisford and his misfortunes.**

7 **Act out the dialogue between Mr Carrisford and Mr Carmichael about Sara.**

8 **Sara became fond of the Indian gentleman. What is the reason? Choose the answer you prefer and explain your choice.**

- Sara was very lonely and had no friends.

- Sara was a good-hearted girl and she felt sympathy for a sick and unhappy man.
- Sara made up a friend with a story.

12
ONE OF THE *POPULACE*

On a cold and rainy winter day Sara was sent out again and again to do long and ***tiresome*** errands. She got so cold and wet and hungry and tired that her face began to have an unhappy look. She hurried on, trying to make her mind think of something else. It was really very necessary. Her way of doing it was to "pretend" and "suppose" with all the strength that was left in her. But really this time it was harder than she had ever found it. But she ***obstinately*** walked on and talked to herself as she walked, though she did not speakaloud or even move her lips.

"Suppose just when I was near a baker's where they sold hot buns, I should find sixpence which belonged to nobody. Suppose, if I did, I should go into the shop and buy six of the hottest buns and eat them all without stopping."

Some very odd things happen in this world sometimes.

It certainly was an odd thing that happened to Sara. She had to cross the street just when she was saying this to herself. The ***mud*** was ***dreadful***. She had to look down at her feet and the mud, and in looking down — just as she reached the pavement — she saw something shining. It was actually **a piece of silver**[1]. Not quite a sixpence, but the next thing to it — a fourpenny piece. In one second it was in her cold little hand.

"Oh," she gasped, "it is true! It is true!"

And then, if you will believe me, she looked straight at the shop directly facing her. And it was a baker's shop, and a cheerful, stout, motherly woman with rosy cheeks was putting

[1] **a piece of silver** — серебряная монета

into the window newly-baked hot buns — large, plump, shiny buns.

She knew she need not hesitate to use the little piece of money.

So she crossed the pavement and put her wet foot on the step. As she did so she saw something that made her stop.

It was a little figure which was not much more than a **bundle of rags**[1], from which she could see small, bare, red, muddy feet. Above the rags appeared a dirty face with big, hungry eyes.

Sara knew they were hungry eyes the moment she saw them, and she felt a sudden sympathy.

"This," she said to herself, with a little sigh, "is one of the populace — and she is hungrier than I am."

Sara hesitated a few seconds. Then she spoke to her.

"Have you had dinner?" said Sara.

"No dinner," said the child ***hoarsely***. "No breakfast, no supper. No nothing."

Just to look at her made Sara more hungry.

"If I'm a princess," she was saying — "when they were poor and **driven from their thrones**[2] — they always shared — with the populace — if they met one poorer and hungrier than themselves."

"Wait a minute," she said to the beggar child. She went into the shop. It was warm and smelled ***deliciously***. The woman was just going to put some more hot buns into the window.

"Do you want to buy something?" she said, as she saw Sara glance at the buns.

"Four buns, if you please," said Sara. "Those at a penny each."

The woman went to the window and put some in a paper bag.

Sara noticed that she put in six.

"I said four, if you please," she explained. "I have only fourpence."

---

[1] **a bundle of rags** — куча тряпья

[2] **driven from their thrones** — в изгнании

"**I'll throw in two for makeweight**[1]," said the woman, with her good-natured look. "Aren't you hungry?"

"Yes," answered Sara. "I am very hungry, and I am much obliged to you for your kindness; and" — she was going to add — "there is a child outside who is hungrier than I am." But just at that moment two or three customers came in at once, and each one seemed in a hurry, so she could only thank the woman again and go out.

The beggar girl sat in the corner of the step.

Sara opened the paper bag and took out one of the hot buns, which had already warmed her own cold hands a little.

"See," she said, giving the bun to the girl, "this is nice and hot. Eat it, and you will not feel so hungry."

The child started and stared up at her, as if such sudden, amazing good luck almost frightened her; then she snatched up the bun and began to cram it into her mouth with great bites.

Sara took out three more buns and put them down.

"She is hungrier than I am," she said to herself. "She's starving." But her hand trembled when she put down the fourth bun. "I'm not starving," she said — and she put down the fifth.

The little London savage didn't even thank Sara. She was only a poor little wild animal.

"Good-bye," said Sara.

Sara found some comfort in her remaining bun.[2] At all events, it was very hot, and it was better than nothing.

It was dark when she reached the square where the Select Seminary was situated. The lights in the houses were all lighted. In the house of the Large Family there was a good deal of excitement. It was evident that the father was going to take a journey. A carriage stood before the door. The children were dancing about, chattering and hanging on to their father. The pretty rosy mother was standing near him, talking as if she was asking final questions.

---

[1] **I'll throw in two for makeweight** — Я положу еще две для ровного счета

[2] **Sara found some comfort in her remaining bun.** — Сара с удовольствием съела оставшуюся булочку.

"I wonder if he will stay away long," Sara thought. "Oh, dear, how they will miss him! I shall miss him myself even though he doesn't know I am alive."

When the door opened she moved away. The traveller came out followed by the older children.

"If you find the little girl, give her our love," shouted the little boy.

The father jumped into the carriage and the children went in and shut the door.

Sara crossed the square to Miss Minchin's area steps, feeling weak.

"I wonder who the girl is," she thought — "the little girl he is going to look for."

The father of the Large Family was driving quickly on his way to the station to take the train to Moscow, where he wanted to find the lost little daughter of Captain Crewe.

Useful Words

populace *n* простой народ
tiresome *a* утомительный
obstinately *adv* упрямо
mud *n* грязь, слякоть
dreadful *a* ужасный, страшный
hoarsely *adv* хрипло
deliciously *adv зд.* очень вкусно
cram *v* запихивать
savage *n* дикарь, дикарка

Exercises

1 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Sara saw the baker's shop in front of her.
b) The father of the Large Family came out of the door, followed by the older children.

c) The beggar girl snatched up the bun and began to cram it into her mouth.
d) Sara put out three more buns and then added the fifth bun.
e) The baker-woman went to the window and put some buns in a paper bag.
f) The father of the Large Family jumped into the carriage.
g) Sara saw a piece of silver in the mud.
h) Sara obstinately walked on and talked to herself as she walked.

2 Say who:

a) was putting into the window newly-baked hot buns.
b) was talking as if asking final questions.
c) sat in the corner of the step.
d) was going to take a journey to Moscow.
e) reached the square when it was dark.
f) crossed the pavement to go to the baker's.
g) had no dinner, no breakfast, no supper.

3 Choose the verbs from the box and use them in sentences in the right form.

to cram to tremble to warm to share to miss to starve

a) The hot buns had already ____________ Sara's cold hands a little.
b) Sara realized that the little girl was ____________ and gave her all the buns but one.
c) The little beggar ____________ the bun into her mouth with great bites.

d) Sara thought that she would ____________ the father of the Large Family.
f) Sara's hand ____________ when she put down the fourth bun.
g) The princesses always ____________ with the populace if they met someone who was poorer and hungrier than themselves.

4 Fill in the prepositions *above, to, without, for, in*.

a) Sara wanted to buy six hottest buns and eat them _______ stopping.
b) _______ looking down Sara noticed a piece of silver.
c) It was not a sixpence, but the next thing _______ it — a fourpenny piece.
d) _______ the rags appeared a dirty face with big hungry eyes.
e) Sara thanked the baker-woman _______ her kindness and went out of the shop.

5 Complete the chart.

long	*longer*	*the longest*
hungry		
good		
poor		
hot		
hard		

6 Retell the episode with the piece of silver. Would you share the buns with the little beggar if you were Sara?

7 Why do you think the little beggar didn't thank Sara for the buns? Give your opinion.

8 How else can you call this chapter?



13
WHAT MELCHISEDEC HEARD AND SAW

On this very afternoon, while Sara was out, a strange thing happened in the attic. Only Melchisedec saw and heard it; and he was so much alarmed that he hurried back to his hole and hid there, and really trembled as he ***peeped out*** to watch what was going on.

He had been ***rambling*** and sniffing about, and had just found a totally unexpected and unexplained crumb left from his last meal, when his attention was attracted by a sound on the roof. The sound suggested that something was moving there. The window was opened. A dark face appeared; then another

face and both looked in **with signs of caution and interest**[1]. Two men were outside on the roof, and were making preparations to enter through the window itself. One was Ram Dass, and the other was a young man who was the Indian gentleman's secretary; but of course Melchisedec did not know this. He was frightened to death, so he returned to his hole.

The secretary, who was light and young, slipped through the window as noiselessly as Ram Dass had done; and he noticed Melchisedec's tail.

"Was that a rat?" he asked Ram Dass, in a whisper.

"Yes; a rat," answered Ram Dass, also whispering. "There are many in the walls."

"Ugh!" exclaimed the young man, "it is a wonder the child is not terrified by them."

"The child is the little friend of all things," he answered. "She is not as other children. I watch her from my window when she does not know I am near. The sparrows come at her call. She has ***tamed*** a rat. The little maid comes to her **for comfort**[2]. There is a little child who comes to her in secret; there is one older who adores her. By the mistress of the house who is a bad woman — she is treated badly; but she behaves like a person who is of the blood of kings!"

"Are you sure that she will not return? She would be frightened if she found us here, and the **Sahib**[3] Carrisford's plan would be spoiled."

"She has gone out with her basket and may be gone for hours," said Ram Dass.

The secretary took a pencil and a notebook from his pocket.

[1] **with signs of caution and interest** — с осторожностью и с интересом

[2] **for comfort** — в поисках поддержки

[3] **Sahib** — сагиб, почтительное обращение к европейцу в колониальной Индии

"**Keep your ears open**[1]," he said; and he began to walk slowly round the little room, making notes as he looked at things.

First he went to the narrow bed. He pressed his hand upon the mattress and uttered an exclamation.

"As hard as a stone," he said. "That will have to be changed some day when she is out."

"What a bed for a child to sleep in — and in a house which calls itself respectable! There has not been a fire in that fireplace for many days," glancing at the rusty fireplace.

"It is a strange way of doing the thing," he said. "Who planned it?"

"It is true that the first thought was mine, Sahib," said Ram Dass ***apologetically***. I am fond of this child; we are both lonely. One night, I lay close to the open window listened. She described to her friend how to make this miserable room nice and comfortable. She seemed to see it as she talked, and she grew cheered as she spoke. The next day I told the Sahib of the thing to amuse him. It seemed then but a dream, but it pleased the Sahib. He became interested in her and asked questions. At last he began to please himself with the thought of making her visions real things. We will do it while she sleeps. When she awakens she will think a magician has been there."

He smiled, and the secretary smiled back at him.

The young secretary seemed interested in everything. He wrote down things about the floor, the fireplace, the broken footstool, the old table, the walls.

"I think I have made notes enough; we can go now," he said. "The Sahib Carrisford has a warm heart."

Then they slipped through the window as noiselessly as they had entered it. **Melchisedec was greatly relieved**[2], and in

[1] **Keep your ears open** — Будь начеку

[2] **Melchisedec was greatly relieved** — Мельхиседек ощутил сильное облегчение

the course of a few minutes felt it safe to leave his hole again and look for crumbs.

Useful Words

peep out *phr v* выглядывать
ramble *v* бродить без цели
tame *v* приручить
apologetically *adv* извиняющимся тоном

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Who came to Sara's attic?
b) What was the purpose of their visit?
c) What did the secretary do?
d) Who planned the changes in Sara's room?
e) When did Mr Carrisford and Ram Dass want to make the changes?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Melchisedec had been rambling and sniffing around the attic when ____________ .
b) Melchisedec was so frightened by the unexpected visitors that ____________ .
c) The secretary was afraid that Sara could find them in her room and ____________ .
d) Ram Dass told his master about his plan to amuse him but Mr Carrisford ____________ .
e) When the two men left Mechisedec felt greatly relieved and ____________ .

3 Find in the text the English for:

спросить шепотом
Воробьи слетаются на ее зов.
Она ведет себя как особа королевской крови.
волшебник
У сагиба Каррисфорда доброе сердце.

4 Use the verbs in the right form.

a) Melchisedec (to find) a totally unexpected crumb when his attention was attracted by a sound.
b) Two men were on the roof (to make) preparations to enter through the window.
c) The secretary slipped through the window as noiselessly as Ram Dass (to do).
d) She (to tame) the rat.
e) The secretary (to press) his hand upon the mattress.

5 Say which word does not go with the others and why.

a) fireplace, carriage, footstool, table, bed
b) see, hear, sniff, peep out, write
c) alarmed, worried, troubled, terrified, pleased
d) noiselessly, lonely, greatly, apologetically, totally

6 Imagine that you are the secretary. Describe your visit to the attic. Speak of your impressions.

7 Imagine that you are Ram Dass. Say:

- what you know about Sara.
- why you are fond of her.
- what your plan is.

8 Do you like surprises? Can you describe a surprise that impressed you most? Was it pleasant or unpleasant?

14
THE MAGIC

Sara was so tired that it seemed as if she would never reach her attic. When she finally stepped on the **top landing**[1], she saw the light coming from under the door. That meant that Ermengarde had managed to come to the attic. It was better than to go into the room alone and find it empty.

Yes; there Ermengarde was when she opened the door. She was sitting in the middle of the bed, **with her feet tucked under her**[2].

"I did not expect to see you tonight, Ermie," Sara said.

"Miss Amelia has gone out to spend the night with her old aunt," explained Ermengarde. "No one else ever comes and looks into the bedrooms after we are in bed. I could stay here until morning if I wanted to."

She pointed toward the table. A number of books were piled upon it.

"Papa has sent me some more books, Sara," she said. "There they are."

Sara ran to the table, and picking up the top book turned over its leaves quickly. For the moment she forgot her troubles.

"Ah," she cried out, "how beautiful! **Carlyle's *French Revolution***[3]. I have so much wanted to read that!"

"I haven't," said Ermengarde. "And papa will be so cross if I don't. What *shall* I do?"

Sara stopped turning over the leaves and looked at her.

"Look here," she cried, "if you'll lend me these books, I'*ll* read them — and tell you everything that's in them afterward."

"Do you think you can?' exclaimed Ermengarde.

"I know I can," Sara answered.

---

[1] **top landing** — верхняя площадка

[2] **with her feet tucked under her** — поджав ноги

[3] **Carlyle's *French Revolution*** — «Французская революция», сочинение английского историка Томаса Карлайла

"Sara," said Ermengarde, "if you'll do that, and make me remember I'll — I'll give you anything."

"I don't want you to give me anything," said Sara. "I want your books — I want them!" And her eyes grew big.

"Take them, then," said Ermengarde.

It was just at this minute that something happened at the window which neither of them saw. **Sara had keen ears**[1], so she suddenly turned a little and looked up at the roof.

"Didn't you think you heard something?" asked Sara.

"N-no," said Ermengarde. "Could it be a ***robber***?"

"No," Sara began. "There is nothing to steal — "

She ***broke off*** in the middle of her words. They both heard the sound. It was not on the roof, but on the stairs below, and it was Miss Minchin's angry voice.

"She is ***scolding*** Becky," whispered Sara.

"You dishonest child!" they heard her say. "Cook tells me **she has missed things repeatedly**[2]."

"You deserve to be sent to prison," said Miss Minchin's voice. "Half a meat-pie, indeed!"

"It wasn't me," said Becky. "I was hungry enough, but it wasn't me."

Miss Minchin was in rage. The meat-pie had been intended for her special late supper.

"Don't lie," she said. "Go to your room this instant."

Both Sara and Ermengarde heard the ***slap***, and then heard Becky run up the stairs and into her attic.

Sara stood in the middle of the room.

"The cruel thing!" she cried. "The cook takes things herself and then says Becky steals them. She *doesn't!* She *doesn't!* She's so hungry sometimes that **she eats crusts out of the ash-barrel**[3]!"

---

[1] **Sara had keen ears** — У Сары был тонкий слух

[2] **she has missed things repeatedly** — у нее часто пропадают продукты

[3] **she eats crusts out of the ash-barrel** — она ест корки из мусорного бака

She pressed her hands hard against her face and burst out crying. Ermengarde had never seen Sara cry. A new dreadful idea came to her kind, slow, little mind.

"Sara," she said in a timid voice, "are — are — you never told me — I don't want to be rude, but — are *you* ever hungry?"

It was too much just at that moment. The barrier broke down. Sara lifted her face from her hands.

"Yes," she said in a new ***passionate*** way. "Yes, I am. I'm so hungry now that I could almost eat you. And it makes it worse to hear poor Becky. She's hungrier than I am."

Ermengarde gasped.

"Oh, Sara!" she cried. 'What a silly thing I am!"

"Why?"

"This very afternoon my aunt sent me a box. It is full of good things," said Ermengarde. "It's got cake in it, and little meat-pies, and buns, and oranges, and **redcurrant wine**[1], and chocolate. I'll go back to my room and get it this minute, and we'll eat it now."

"Do you think — you *could*?" asked Sara.

"I know I could," answered Ermengarde. "Everybody's in bed. I can ***creep*** and creep — and no one will hear."

"Ermie!" said Sara. "Let us pretend it's a party! And oh, won't you invite the prisoner in the next cell?"

"Yes! Yes! Let us knock on the wall now. The jailer won't hear."

Sara went to the wall. She knocked four times.

"That means: 'Come to me through the secret passage under the wall'," she explained.

Almost immediately the door of the attic opened and Becky appeared. Her eyes were red.

"We're going to pretend a party. Miss Ermengarde will bring a box of good things here to us," said Sara.

"Oh, miss! oh, miss!" gasped Becky.

---

[1] **redcurrant wine** — сладкое вино из красной смородины

In Sara's hungry eyes the old light had begun to transform her world for her. "**It is as if the Magic did it**[1]," she thought.

They pulled the old table forward, and threw Ermengarde's shawl over it. Then Sara decorated it with flowers from her old summer hat and put white handkerchiefs pretending that they were ***napkins***. When Ermengarde returned the party started.

"It's like a real party!" cried Ermengarde.

"It's like a queen's table," sighed Becky.

They had barely had time to take their pieces of cake into their hands when they heard the steps. Someone was coming up the stairs. There was no mistake about it. Each of them knew that the end of all things had come.

"It's — the missus!" whispered Becky, and dropped her piece of cake upon the floor.

"Yes," said Sara, her eyes growing shocked and large in her small white face. "Miss Minchin has found us out."

Miss Minchin opened the door with a blow of her hand. She was pale and angry.

"Lavinia was telling the truth," she said.

So they knew that it was Lavinia who had somehow guessed their secret and had ***betrayed*** them. Miss Minchin came up to Becky and gate her a slap for a second time.

"You ***impudent*** creature!" she cried. "Go to your attic. You leave the house in the morning!"

Sara stood quite still, her eyes growing larger, her face paler. Ermengarde burst into tears.

"Oh, don't send her away," she sobbed. "My aunt sent me these things. We're only — having a party."

"So I see," said Miss Minchin. "With the Princess Sara at the head of the table." She turned on Sara. "It is your doing, I know," she cried. "You decorated the table, I suppose with this ***rubbish***. **I will attend to you tomorrow.**[2] You shall have neither breakfast, dinner, nor supper!"

---

[1] **It is as if the Magic did it** — Это произошло словно по волшебству

[2] **I will attend to you tomorrow.** — Я займусь тобой завтра.

"I have not had either dinner or supper today, Miss Minchin," said Sara.

"Then all the better. You will have something to remember."

She began to put the food off the table into the box herself, and saw Ermengarde's new books.

"And you" — to Ermengarde — "have brought your beautiful new books into this dirty attic. Take them up and go back to bed. You will stay there all day tomorrow, and I shall write to your papa."

She picked up the books, thrust them into Ermengarde's arms, pushed her before her towards the door, and left Sara standing quite alone.

The dream was quite at an end.

"There isn't any party left," said Sara. "And there isn't any princess. There is nothing left but the prisoners in the Bastille."

Then she got up and went slowly to the bed.

"I can't pretend anything else," she said. "If I go to sleep, perhaps a dream will come and pretend for me."

She suddenly felt so tired that she fell fast asleep.

When she awakened she was so warm and comfortable, indeed, that she did not believe she was really awake. Her eyes opened in spite of herself.

"Oh, I *haven't* awakened," she whispered. "I am dreaming yet." She knew it *must* be a dream.

In the fireplace there was a cheerful fire; on the ***hob*** was a little brass kettle boiling; on the floor there was a thick, warm red rug; before the fire a ***folding-chair***, and with cushions on it; by the chair a small folding-table, unfolded, covered with a white ***cloth***, and upon it small dishes, a cup, a saucer, a teapot; on the bed were new warm blankets. She saw a silk ***dressing-gown***, a pair of shoes, and some books. The room of her dream seemed changed into fairyland — and it was full of warm light, because a bright lamp stood on the table covered with a rosy ***shade***.

"Oh, it isn't true!" she said. "It *can't* be true! But oh, how true it seems!"

She got up, touched the table, the dishes, the rug. She took up the soft dressing-gown.

"It's all real!" she cried. "I am *not* — I am *not* dreaming!"

She opened the book which lay upon the top. Something was written on the first page — just a few words, and they were these:

"TO THE LITTLE GIRL IN THE ATTIC. FROM A FRIEND."

She burst into tears.

"I don't know who it is," she said, "but I have a friend."

She took her candle and stole out of her own room and into Becky's.

"Becky, Becky!" she whispered as loudly as she could. "Wake up!"

When Becky wakened, beside her stood a little figure in pink dressing-gown. The Princess Sara — as she remembered her — stood at her very bedside, holding a candle in her hand.

"Come," she said. "Oh, Becky, come!"

Becky got up and followed her, with her mouth and eyes open, and without a word.

"It's true!" she cried. "I've touched them all. They are as real as we are. The Magic has come and done it, Becky, while we were asleep."

Useful Words

robber *n* грабитель
break off *phr v* внезапно замолчать
scold *v* ругать
slap *n* сильный шлепок рукой, пощечина
passionate *a* пылкий
creep *v* красться
napkin *n* салфетка
betray *v* предавать
impudent *a* нахальный, дерзкий
rubbish *n* мусор
hob *n* крюк

folding-chair *n* складной стул
cloth *n* скатерть
dressing-gown *n* халат
shade *n* абажур

Exercises

1 Say who:

a) came to Sara's attic when she was out.
b) had gone out to spend the night with the old aunt.
c) wanted to have the meat-pie for supper.
d) had sent Ermengarde a box of good things.
e) offered to have a party.
f) had betrayed the girls.
g) put an end to the party.
h) touched the blankets.
i) followed Sara with the mouth open.

2 Answer the questions.

a) What did Ermengarde bring to Sara's room?
b) What did Sara propose to Ermengarde?
c) Why did Miss Minchin scold Becky?
d) What did Ermengarde understand when she saw Sara cry?
e) How did Sara and Becky decorate the table for the party?
f) Why did Miss Minchin give Becky a slap for the second time?
g) What did Sara think when she saw new things in her room?

3 Find in the text the English for:

пирожки с мясом
потайной проход

Это твоих рук дело.
Ошибки быть не могло.
Мисс Минчин нас поймала.
волшебная страна

4 Match the verbs and their definitions.

a) to scold	1) to allow a secret to become known
b) to creep	2) to take something that belongs to someone else
c) to betray	3) to move without making noise
d) to break off	4) to blame with angry words
e) to pick up	5) to stop suddenly
f) to steal	6) to take and lift up

5 Fill in the prepositions *with, on, into, of, up.*

a) Becky ran _______ the stairs and into her attic.
b) Let us knock _______ the wall and invite Becky.
c) The girls covered the table _______ Ermengarde's shawl.
d) The box was full _______ delicious things.
e) Sara's room seemed changed _______ fairyland.

6 Imagine that you are Ermengarde. Say:

- why you came to see Sara.
- why you offered to bring delicious things.
- what happened when you were having the party.

7 Draw a picture of Sara's magically changed room. Describe it.

8 Sara never let Ermengarde know that she was hungry. Why do you think she did that?

15
THE VISITOR

It was known in the morning that Sara Crewe was in horrible disgrace, that Ermengarde was under punishment. The servants also knew that Becky was allowed to stay because Miss Minchin could not easily find another creature helpless enough to work like a slave for so few shillings a week.

Miss Minchin had expected to see Sara broken down. Sara had always been an annoying ***puzzle*** to her, because severity never made her cry or look frightened. When she was scolded she stood still and listened politely with a ***grave*** face; when she was punished she performed her extra tasks or went without her meals, making no complaint.

Miss Minchin saw her for the first time when she entered the schoolroom to hear the little French class's lessons. And she came in **with a springing step**[1], colour in her cheeks, and a smile. It was the most astonishing thing Miss Minchin had ever known. It gave her quite a shock. What was the child made of? What could such a thing mean? She called her at once to her desk.

"You do not look as if you realize that you are punished," she said.

"I beg your pardon, Miss Minchin," said Sara. "I know that I am punished."

"Be good enough not to forget it and look **as if you had come into a fortune**[2]. And remember you are to have no food today."

"Yes, Miss Minchin," Sara answered; but as she turned away her heart leaped with the memory of what yesterday had been. "If the Magic had not saved me just in time," she thought, "how horrible it would have been!"

---

[1] **with a springing step** — вприпрыжку

[2] **as if you had come into a fortune** — как будто ты получила наследство

All through the day the light was in Sara's face, and the colour in her cheek. The servants looked at her, and whispered to each other, and Miss Amelia was puzzled. She thought that Sara was probably determined **to brave the matter out**.[1]

Sara realized that the wonders which had happened must be kept a secret. Ermengarde could be told the story and trusted to keep it secret. "But whatever happens," Sara kept saying to herself all day — "somewhere in the world there is a kind person who is my friend — my friend."

Sara's supper of the night before had given her strength, she knew that she should sleep well and warmly and, even though she had naturally begun to be hungry again before evening, she felt that she could bear it until breakfast-time on the following day. It was quite late when she was at last allowed to go upstairs.

She pushed the door open and went in.

The Magic had been there again. It actually had, and it had done even more than before. A number of new things had been brought into the attic. Upon the low table supper stood — with cups and plates for Becky as well as herself. Some materials of rich colours had been ***fastened*** against the wall. There were several large cushions, big enough to use as seats. A wooden box was covered with a rug, and some cushions lay on it, so that it looked like a sofa.

Sara slowly moved away from the door and simply sat down and looked and looked again.

"Is this my attic? Am I the same cold, ragged, damp Sara? The one thing I always wanted was to see a fairy story come true. I am *living* in a fairy story," said Sara.

From that time life became more wonderful day by day. The fairy story continued. Almost every day something new was done, until in a short time the attic was a beautiful little room full of all sorts of odd and nice things. When Sara went downstairs in the morning, the remains of the supper were on the

---

[1] **to brave the matter out** — терпеливо перенести наказание

table; and when she returned to the attic in the evening, the magician had removed them and left another nice little meal. Miss Minchin was as harsh and ***insulting***, as ever, and the servants were as vulgar and rude. Sara was sent on errands in all weathers, she was scarcely allowed to speak to Ermengarde and Lottie. But what did it all matter while she was living in this wonderful mysterious story? It was more romantic than anything she had ever invented to save herself from despair.

The comfort and happiness were making her stronger. In a very short time she began to look less thin. Colour came into her cheeks, and her eyes did not seem so much too big for her face.

Very naturally, even Becky was beginning to look plumper and less frightened. **She had her share in the secret fairy story too.**[1] She had two mattresses, two pillows, plenty of bed-covering, and every night a hot supper and a seat on the cushions by the fire. The Bastille had disappeared, the prisoners no longer existed.

Then another thing happened. A man came to the door and left several parcels. All were addressed in large letters: "To the Little Girl in the right-hand attic."

Sara herself was sent to open the door, and took them in. She laid the two largest parcels on the hall table, and was looking at the address, when Miss Minchin came down the stairs and saw her.

"Take the things to the young lady to whom they belong," she said severely.

"They belong to me," answered Sara quietly.

"To you?" exclaimed Miss Minchin. "What do you mean?"

"I don't know where they come from," said Sara, "but they are addressed to me. I sleep in the right-hand attic. Becky has the other one."

Miss Minchin came to her side and looked at the parcels with an excited expression.

---

[1] **She had her share in the secret fairy story too.** — Она тоже участвовала в волшебной сказке.

"What is in them?" she demanded.

"I don't know," replied Sara.

"Open them," she ordered.

Sara did as she was told. When the packages were opened they saw pretty and comfortable things: shoes, stockings, and gloves, and a warm and beautiful coat. There were even a nice hat and an umbrella. They were all good and expensive things.

Miss Minchin was worried. What if this neglected child had some powerful though eccentric friend — perhaps some previously unknown relation, who chose to help her in this mysterious and fantastic way? It would not be very pleasant if he learned all the truth about the thin, shabby clothes, the ***scant*** food, and the hard work.

"Well," she said, in a voice such as she had never used since the little girl lost her father, "someone is very kind to you. You may as well go and put these things on and look respectable. After that you may come downstairs and learn your lessons in the schoolroom. You need not go out on any more errands today."

When the schoolroom door opened and Sara walked in, the entire seminary was shocked.

"Look at the Princess Sara!" cried Jessie.

It was the Princess Sara indeed. At least, since the days when she had been a princess, Sara had never looked as she did now.

"Perhaps someone has left her a fortune," Jessie whispered.

"Perhaps the diamond mines have suddenly appeared again," said Lavinia.

That night, when she went to her room, after she and Becky had eaten their supper, she sat and looked at the fire seriously for a long time.

"I am thinking about my friend," Sara explained. "If he wants to keep himself a secret, it would be rude to try and find out who he is. But I do so want him to know how happy he has made me."

"Oh," she exclaimed, "why did I not think of that before?"

"I can write to him," she said, "and leave it on the table."

So she wrote a note, thanking her unknown friend for being kind to her and Becky.

The next morning she left this note on the little table, and in the evening it had been taken away with the other things; so she knew the Magician had received it. She was reading one of her new books to Becky, when her attention was attracted by a sound at the window.

She climbed on a chair and opened the window. It had been snowing all day, and on the snow, quite near her, she saw a tiny, shivering figure.

"It is the monkey," she cried out.

Becky ran to her side.

"Are you going to let him in, miss?" she said.

"Yes," Sara answered. "It's too cold for monkeys to be out."

She put a hand out, speaking in a friendly voice as she spoke to the sparrows and to Melchisedec.

"Come along, monkey darling," she said. "I won't hurt you."

He knew she would not hurt him. He let her take him and looked up into her face.

"Nice monkey! Nice monkey!" she kissed his funny head. "Oh, I do love little animal things."

"What shall you do with him?" Becky asked.

"I shall let him sleep with me tonight, and then take him back to the Indian gentleman tomorrow."

And when she went to bed he slept at her feet, much pleased with his place.

Useful Words

puzzle *n* загадка
grave *a* серьезный; мрачный
fasten *v* прикреплять

insulting *a* оскорбительный
scant *a* скудный, недостаточный

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did Miss Minchin feel a shock when she saw Sara next day?
b) How did Miss Amelia explain Sara's new look?
c) What other things appeared in Sara's attic?
d) What made Sara and Becky happy and strong?
e) What parcels did Sara get from her unknown friend?
f) How did Sara's life change after the story with the parcels?
g) How did Lavinia and Jessie explain the changes?
h) When and why did Sara help the monkey?

2 Correct the statements.

a) Becky was allowed to stay because she had no place to go.
b) Sara thought that Ermengarde could not be trusted to keep the wonders a secret.
c) The parcels were addressed to Sara and Becky.
d) Sara got so much food during the day that she did not touch the suppers prepared by her unknown friend.
e) Sara took the monkey because she liked it and wanted to make it stay with her.

3 Write the words in the plural form.

Example: *a shilling — shillings*

a meal	a class
a child	a day
a story	a sofa
an address	a shoe
a gentleman	a voice

4 Fill in the gaps with the attributes from the box.

scant insulting shivering mysterious annoying helpless

a) Miss Minchin was afraid that Sara's friend would learn about hard work and ____________ food.
b) Miss Minchin was as cruel and ____________ as ever.
c) Sara saw a small ____________ figure on the snow.
d) Sara wanted to thank her ____________ friend for saving her from despair.
e) Sara was an ____________ puzzle to Miss Minchin.
f) It was difficult to find such a ____________ little creature as Becky.

5 Choose right.

a) Sara (was reading, read) a new book when her attention was attracted by a sound.
b) When the packages were opened, they (had seen, saw) pretty and comfortable things.
c) Sara (looked, was looking) at the address when Miss Minchin saw her.
d) When Sara returned to the attic in the evening, the magician (had left, left) another nice meal.
e) Miss Minchin (had seen, saw) Sara for the first time that day when she entered the schoolroom.

6 Prove that the prisoners of Bastille no longer existed.

7 Imagine that you are Miss Minchin. Tell your sister the story with the parcels and describe your feelings about it.

8 Imagine that you are Sara. Write a note to your unknown friend and thank him for his kindness.

16
"IT IS THE CHILD!"

The next afternoon three members of the Large Family sat in the Indian gentleman's library, doing their best to cheer him up. He was waiting for a certain event very anxiously. This event was the return of Mr Carmichael from Moscow.

"Papa won't be very long now," said Janet. "May we talk about the lost little girl?"

"I don't think I could talk much about anything else just now," the Indian gentleman answered with a tired look.

"We like her so much," said Nora. "We call her the little unfairy princess."

"Why?" the Indian gentleman asked.

It was Janet who answered.

"It is because, though she is not exactly a fairy, she will be so rich when she is found that she will be like a princess in a fairy tale. We called her the fairy princess at first, but it didn't quite ***suit***."

"There's a cab!" exclaimed Janet. "It's stopping before the door. It is papa!"

They all ran to the windows to look out.

"Yes, it's papa," Donald ***proclaimed***. "But there is no little girl."

All three of them ran into the hall. It was in this way they always welcomed their father.

Mr Carmichael's voice approached the door.

"No, children," he was saying, "you may come in after I have talked to Mr Carrisford. Go and play with Ram Dass."

Then the door opened and he came in. He looked rosier than ever, and brought an atmosphere of freshness and health with him; but his eyes were disappointed.

"What news?" Mr Carrisford asked. "The child the Russian people adopted?"

"She is not the child we are looking for," was Mr Carmichael's answer. "She is much younger than Captain Crewe's little girl. Her name is Emily Carew. I have seen and talked to her."

How unhappy the Indian gentleman looked! His hand dropped from Mr Carmichael's.

"Then the search has to be begun over again," he said. "That is all. Please sit down."

Mr Carmichael took a seat. Somehow, he had gradually grown fond of this unhappy man. He was himself so well and happy, and so surrounded by cheerfulness and love, that suffering and broken health seemed ***unbearable*** things.

"Come, come," he said in his cheery voice, "we'll find her yet."

"We must begin at once. No time must be lost," Mr Carrisford said. "Have you any new suggestion to make — any whatsoever?"

Mr Carmichael rose with an uncertain face.

"Well, perhaps," he said. "The fact is, an idea occurred to me as I was thinking the thing over in the train."

"What was it?"

"We have searched the schools in Paris. Let us ***give up*** Paris and begin in London. That was my idea — to search London."

"There are schools enough in London," said Mr Carrisford. "By the way, there is one next door."

"Then we will begin there."

"No," said Carrisford. "There is a child there who interests me; but she is not a pupil. And she is a little lonely creature, as unlike poor Crewe as a child could be."

Perhaps the Magic was at work again at that very moment — the beautiful Magic. What was it that brought Ram Dass into the room with excitement in his dark eyes?

"Sahib," he said, "the child herself has come — the child the sahib felt pity for. She brings back the monkey, who had

again run away to her attic under the roof. It was my thought that it would please the sahib to see and speak with her."

"Who is she?" asked Mr Carmichael.

"God knows," Mr Carrisford answered. "She is the child I spoke of."

He addressed Ram Dass. "Yes, I should like to see her. Go and bring her in." Then he turned to Mr Carmichael. "Ram Dass told me of this child's hard life, and together we invented a romantic plan to help her. I suppose it was a childish thing to do; but it gave me something to plan and think of."

Then Sara came into the room. She carried the monkey in her arms, and he evidently did not intend to part from her.

"Your monkey ran away again," she said, in her pretty voice. "He came to my window last night, and I took him in because it was so cold. I didn't want to bring him back so late. I know you are ill."

The Indian gentleman looked at her with curious interest.

"**That was very thoughtful of you**[1]," he said.

Sara looked towards Ram Dass, who stood near the door.

"Shall I give him to the lascar? " she asked.

"How do you know he is a lascar?" said the Indian gentleman, smiling a little.

"Oh, I know lascars," Sara said. "I was born in India."

"You were born in India," exclaimed the Indian gentleman, "were you? You live next door?"

"Yes; I live at Miss Minchin's seminary."

"But you are not one of her pupils?"

Sara hesitated a moment.

"I don't think I know exactly *what* I am," she replied.

"Why not?"

---

[1] **That was very thoughtful of you** — Ты проявила большую заботу обо мне

"At first I was a pupil; but now — "

"You were a pupil! What are you now?"

"I sleep in the attic, next to the scullery-maid," she said. "I run errands for the cook — I do anything she tells me; and I teach the little ones their lessons."

"Question her, Carmichael," said Mr Carrisford in a weak voice. "Question her; I cannot."

The big, kind father of the Large Family knew how to question little girls.

"What do you mean by 'At first', my child?" he inquired.

"When I was first taken there by my papa."

"Where is your papa?"

"He died," said Sara, very quietly. "He lost all his money and there was none left for me. There was no one to take care of me or to pay Miss Minchin."

"Carmichael!" the Indian gentleman cried out, loudly. "Carmichael!"

"We must not frighten her," Mr Carmichael said to him in a quick, low voice.

"How did your father lose his money?" the Indian gentleman asked.

"He did not lose it himself," Sara answered, wondering still more each moment. "He had a friend he was very fond of — he was very fond of him. It was his friend who took his money. He trusted his friend too much."

"What was your father's name?" the Indian gentleman said. "Tell me."

"His name was Ralph Crewe," Sara answered, feeling worried. "Captain Crewe. He died in India."

"Carmichael," the man gasped, "it is the child — the child!"

For a moment Sara thought he was going to die. Ram Dass ***poured out*** drops from a bottle, and held them to his lips. Sara stood near, trembling a little. She looked **in a bewildered way**[1] at Mr Carmichael.

[1] **in a bewildered way** — в замешательстве

"What child am I?" she asked.

"He was your father's friend," Mr Carmichael answered her. "Don't be frightened. We have been looking for you for two years."

Sara put her hand up to her forehead, and her mouth trembled. She spoke as if she were in a dream.

"And I was at Miss Minchin's **all the while**[1]," she half whispered. "Just on the other side of the wall."

Useful Words

suit *v* подходить, соответствовать
proclaim *v* провозглашать
unbearable *a* невыносимый
give up *phr v* оставить, отказаться от чего-то
pour out *phr v* наливать
drops *n pl* капли

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What event was Mr Carrisford waiting for?
b) How did the children call the lost girl?
c) What was the result of Mr Carmichael's trip to Moscow?
d) What other idea did Mr Carmichael have?
e) What made Sara come to the house of the Indian gentleman?
f) What happened there?

[1] **all the while** — все это время

2 Match the two parts of the sentences.

a) Three members of the Large Family sat in Mr Carrisford's library,	1) and her mouth trembled.
b) Mr Carmichael looked rosier than ever,	2) and held them to his master's lips.
c) Sara carried the monkey in her arms,	3) but his eyed were disappointed.
d) Ram Dass poured out drops from the bottle,	4) and he evidently did not intend to part from her.
e) Sara put her hand up to her forehead,	5) doing their best to cheer him up.

3 Fill in the gaps with the attributes from the box.

frightened
cheery
thoughtful
childish
disappointed

a) It was a ____________ thing to help the girl in such a way, but Mr Carrisford liked it.
b) Sara was a ____________ girl and she did not want to come to Mr Carrisford's house late at night.
c) Sara was ____________ by strange events.
d) Mr Carrisford was ____________ , but he was determined to continue the search.
e) Mr Carmichael spoke to his friend in a ____________ voice.

4 Choose *make* or *do* in the right form.

a) The members of the Large Family were _______ their best to cheer their friend.

b) Mr Carmichael _______ a suggestion to give up the search in Paris.
c) Sara _______ anything the cook told her.
d) Mr Carrisford and his lawyer _______ a plan to look for Sara in London.

5 Fill in the prepositions *over, in, of, on, out, up.*

a) There was no one to take care _______ Sara.
b) All the while Sara was _______ the other side of the wall.
c) Mr Carmichael was thinking this thing _______ in the train to London.
d) The children ran to the window to look _______ .
e) The door opened and Mr Carmichael came _______ .
f) The man decided to give _______ Paris and look for Sara in London.

6 What does it mean? Explain in your own words.

a) Mr Carmichael brought an atmosphere of freshness and health with him.
b) I run errands for the cook.
c) Sara looked in a bewildered way at Mr Carmichael.
d) Sara spoke as if she were in a dream.

7 Say why:

a) the children from the Large Family came to Mr Carrisford's house.
b) the children did not call Sara the fairy princess.
c) Mr Carmichael grew fond of Mr Carrisford.
d) Mr Carrisford asked his lawyer to question Sara.

8 Imagine that you are Sara. Tell your friend Ermengarde the story that happened to you in Mr Carrisford's house.

17
"I TRIED NOT TO BE"

It was pretty, comfortable Mrs Carmichael who explained everything. She came across the square to take Sara into her warm arms and make clear to her all that had happened. The excitement of the totally unexpected discovery had been too strong for Mr Carrisford in his weak condition.

Sara could only think of one thing.

"Was he," she said, with a glance toward the closed door of the library — "was *he* the ***wicked*** friend?

"He was not wicked, my dear," answered the lady. "He did not really lose your papa's money. He only thought he had lost it; and because he loved him so much his grief made him ill and **for a time he was not in his right mind**[1]. He almost died of brain-fever, and before he began to recover your poor papa was dead."

"And he did not know where to find me," murmured Sara. "And I was so near."

"He believed you were in school in France," Mrs Carmichael explained. "He has looked for you everywhere. When he saw you looking so sad he was sorry for you, and wanted to make you happier. And he told Ram Dass to climb into your attic window and try to make you comfortable."

Sara's whole look changed.

"Did he make the dream that came true?"

"Yes, my dear — yes! He is kind and good, and he was sorry for you, **for little lost Sara Crewe's sake**[2]."

The library door opened and Mr Carmichael appeared.

"Mr Carrisford is better already," he said. "He wants you to come to him."

---

[1] **for a time he was not in his right mind** — он на время потерял рассудок

[2] **for little lost Sara Crewe's sake** — ради пропавшей маленькой Сары Кру

Sara did not wait.

She went and stood before his chair.

"You sent the things to me," she said, in a joyful emotional little voice, "the beautiful, beautiful things? You sent them!"

"Yes, poor dear little child, I did," he answered her.

"Then it is you who are my friend," she said. And she dropped her face on his thin hand and kissed it again and again.

Mr Carrisford was sure that Sara shouldn't return to school. He asked his lawyer to see Miss Minchin but oddly enough she came to them herself. One of the maids had seen Sara go up the steps of the next door. So Miss Minchin decided **to inquire into the matter**[1].

Sara was sitting on a footstool close to Mr Carrisford's knee when Ram Dass announced the visitor's arrival.

Sara became rather pale; but she showed no signs of child terror.

"I am sorry to disturb Mr Carrisford," said Miss Minchin, "but I have explanations to make. I am Miss Minchin, the owner of the Young Ladies' Seminary next door. I have discovered that one of my pupils — **a charity pupil**[2] — had ***intruded*** into your house without my knowledge." She turned upon Sara. "You shall be severely punished. Go home at once."

"No," said Mr Carrisford. "She is not going home — if you give your house that name. Her home for the future will be with me."

"With *you,* sir! What does this mean?"

"Kindly explain the matter, Carmichael," said the Indian gentleman.

Then Mr Carmichael explained.

"Mr Carrisford, madam," he said, "was an intimate friend of the late Captain Crewe. He was his partner in certain large

---

[1] **to inquire into the matter** — разузнать подробнее об этом деле

[2] **a charity pupil** — ученица, живущая у меня из милости

investments. The fortune which Captain Crewe supposed he had lost is now in Mr Carrisford's hands."

"The fortune! The diamond mines!" cried Miss Minchin. "Sara's fortune!"

"It *will* be Sara's fortune," said Mr Carmichael, rather coldly. "There are not many princesses, Miss Minchin, who are richer than your little charity pupil Sara Crewe, will be. Mr Carrisford has been searching for her for nearly two years; he has found her at last, and he will keep her."

Miss Minchin was not a clever woman, and in her excitement she was silly enough to make one last effort to ***regain*** what she had lost.

"**Captain Crewe left her in my charge**[1]," Miss Minchin argued. "She must return to school. She must finish her education."

"Come, come, Miss Minchin," Mr Carmichael interposed. "If Sara herself wishes to return to you, Mr Carrisford might not refuse to allow it. But that rests with Sara."

"Sara," said Miss Minchin, "I have not spoiled you, perhaps," she said awkwardly to the little girl, "but I have always been fond of you."

"*Have* you, Miss Minchin?" said Sara. "I did not know that."

Miss Minchin ***reddened***.

Sara was thinking of the day when she had been told that she belonged to nobody; she was thinking of the cold, hungry hours she had spent alone with Emily and Melchisedec in the attic.

"You know why I will not go home with you, Miss Minchin," she said. "You know quite well."

As Miss Minchin turned to leave the room she said to Sara, "I suppose that you feel now that you are a princess again."

---

[1] **Captain Crewe left her in my charge** — Капитан Кру оставил ее на моем попечении

Sara looked down.

"I — tried not to be anything else," she answered in a low voice, "even when I was coldest and hungriest — I *tried* not to be."

That evening, when the pupils were gathered together before the fire in the schoolroom before going to bed, Ermengarde came in with a letter in her hand and a an expression of delighted excitement on her face.

"I have just had this letter from Sara," she said.

"Where is she?" almost ***shrieked*** Jessie.

"Next door," said Ermengarde, still slowly, "with the Indian gentleman."

"Where? Where? Does Miss Minchin know? Why did she write? Tell us!"

Ermengarde answered them slowly.

"There *were* diamond mines," she said. "They were real. It was all a mistake about them. Something happened for a time, and Mr Carrisford thought they were ruined."

"Who is Mr Carrisford?" shouted Jessie.

"The Indian gentleman. And Captain Crewe thought so, too — and he died; and Mr Carrisford had brain-fever and ran away, and he almost died. And he did not know where Sara was. And Mr Carrisford found her this afternoon, and he has got her in his home and she will never come back — and she will be more a princess than she ever was. And I am going to see her tomorrow afternoon. There!"

So until almost midnight the entire seminary crowded round Ermengarde in the schoolroom and heard read and re-read the letter containing a story which was quite as wonderful as any Sara herself had ever invented.

Becky, who had heard it also, managed to creep upstairs earlier than usual. She wanted to look at the little magic room once more. There would be no fire tonight, and no rosy lamp; no supper, and no princess reading or telling stories — no princess!

When she opened the door the saw the fire and the supper and Ram Dass who was standing smiling.

"Missee sahib remembered," he said. "She has written you a letter. The sahib commands you to come to him tomorrow. You will be the maid of missee sahib. Tonight I take these things back over the roof."

And having said this, he slipped through the window so quickly and silently that Becky understood how easily he had done it before.

Useful Words

wicked *a* злой, бесчестный
intrude *v* вторгаться, входить без разрешения
investment *n* инвестиция
regain *v* возвращать себе
redden *v* покраснеть
shriek *v* пронзительно кричать; выкрикивать

Exercises

1 Say who:

a) explained everything to Sara.
b) almost died of brain-fever.
c) came to Mr Carrisford's house to inquire into Sara's matter.
d) refused to return to Miss Minchin's school.
e) crowded in the schoolroom.
f) received letters from Sara.
g) brought supper to Becky.

2 Complete the sentences.

a) It was Mrs Carmichael who explained everything to Sara because ____________ .

b) Miss Minchin went to Mr Carrisford's house because ____________ .
c) The whole school discussed the story of Sara because ____________ .
d) Becky wanted to look at Sara's magic room once more because ____________ .

3 Find in the text the English for:

выздоравливать
Я должна объясниться с вами.
без моего ведома
сделать последнюю попытку
баловать

4 Match the words and their definitions.

a) wicked	1) happy, glad
b) grief	2) to get without permission
c) joyful	3) to scream
d) to shriek	4) bad, immoral
e) to regain	5) to get again
f) to intrude	6) deep suffering

5 Fill in the gaps with prepositions *for, into, up, of, in.*

a) For some time Mr Carrisford was not ______ his right mind.
b) Mr Carrisford felt sorry for a poor lonely girl ______ the sake of his friend's daughter.
c) One of the housemaids saw Sara go ______ the steps of the next door.
d) Sara was thinking ______ cold, hungry hours she spent in the attic.
e) Mrs Carmichael took Sara ______ her warm hands and explained everything.

6 **Say why:**

a) Miss Minchin tried to make Sara return to her school.
b) Sara refused to return to school.

7 **Imagine that you are Ermengarde. Explain to little Lottie the story that happened to Sara.**

8 **What episodes prove that Sara was a grateful person and a good friend?**



18
"ANNE"

There never were such friends as Sara and the Indian gentleman became. Somehow, they seemed to suit each other in a wonderful way. The Indian gentleman had never had a companion he liked quite as much as he liked Sara. He tried to invent things to surprise her. She found beautiful new flowers growing in her room, little gifts under pillows, and once, as they sat together in the evening, they heard the ***scratch*** of a heavy ***paw*** on the door, and when Sara went to find out what it was, there stood a great dog with a ***grand*** silver and gold collar.

There was nothing the Indian gentleman loved more than **the recollection of the little princess in rags and tatters**[1]. The

[1] **the recollection of the little princess in rags and tatters** — воспоминания о маленькой принцессе в лохмотьях

afternoons in which the Large Family, or Ermengarde and Lottie, gathered were very pleasant. But the hours when Sara and the Indian gentleman sat alone and read or talked had a special charm of their own.

One evening, Mr Carrisford, looking up from his book, noticed that his companion sat gazing into the fire.

"What are you 'supposing', Sara?" he asked.

Sara looked up, with a bright colour on her cheek.

"I was supposing," she said, "I was remembering that hungry day, and a child I saw."

Then she told him the story of the bun-shop, and the fourpence she picked up out of the mud, and the child who was hungrier than herself. She told it quite simply, and in as few words as possible; but somehow the Indian gentleman found it necessary to look down at the carpet.

"And I was supposing a kind of plan," she said, when she had finished. "I was thinking I should like to do something."

"What was it?" said Mr Carrisford, in a low tone. "You may do anything you like to do, princess."

"I was wondering," hesitated Sara — "you know, you say I have so much money — I was wondering if I could go to see the bun-woman, and tell her that if, when hungry children come and sit on the steps, or look in at the window, she would just call them in and give them something to eat, and she might send the bills to me. Could I do that?"

"You shall do it tomorrow morning," said the Indian gentleman.

"Thank you," said Sara. "You see, I know what it is to be hungry."

The next morning his carriage ***drew up*** before the door of the baker's shop.

When they entered the shop the woman looked at Sara, and then she smiled.

"I'm sure that I remember you, miss," she said. "And yet — "

"Yes," said Sara, "once you gave me six buns for fourpence, and — "

"And you gave five of them to a beggar child," **the woman broke in on her**[1]. "I've always remembered. **Excuse the liberty**[2], miss" — to Sara — "but you look rosier and — well, better than you did that — that — "

"I am better, thank you," said Sara. "And — I am much happier — and I have come to ask you to do something for me."

"Me, miss!" exclaimed the woman, smiling cheerfully. "What can I do?"

And then Sara made her little proposal ***concerning*** the cold days and the hungry children and the hot buns.

The woman watched her, and listened with an astonished face.

"It'll be a pleasure to me to do it. I am a working-woman myself and cannot afford to do much myself, and **there's sights of trouble on every side**[3]; I've given away many buns since that day just thinking of you — how wet and cold you were, now hungry you looked, and yet you gave your buns to the beggar girl as if you were a princess."

The Indian gentleman smiled at this, and Sara smiled a little, too.

"She looked so hungry," she said. "She was even hungrier than I was."

"She was starving," said the woman. "She told me that."

"Oh, have you seen her since then?" exclaimed Sara. "Do you know where she is?"

"Yes, I do," answered the woman, smiling. "Why, she's in that back-room, miss, and has been for a month; and such a help to me in the shop and in the kitchen. Her name's Anne."

She stepped to the door of the little back room and spoke; and the next minute a girl came out. And actually it was the beggar-child, clean and in good clothes. She had a nice face, now that she was no longer a savage, and the wild look had gone from her eyes. She recognized Sara at once, and stood and looked.

---

[1] **the woman broke in on her** — женщина прервала ее

[2] **Excuse the liberty** — Простите мою вольность

[3] **there's sights of trouble on every side** — вокруг столько нужды

"I am so glad," Sara said. "And I have just thought of something. Perhaps Mrs Brown will let you give the buns and bread to the children. Perhaps you would like to do it because you know what it is to be hungry, too."

"Yes, miss," said the girl.

And, somehow, Sara felt that she understood her, though she said so little, and only stood still and looked after her as she went out of the shop with the Indian gentleman, and they got into the carriage and drove away.

Useful Words

scratch *n* царапанье
paw *n* лапа
grand *a* великолепный
draw up *phr v* останавливаться
concerning *prep* относительно

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) How did the Indian gentleman treat Sara?
b) When did Sara tell Mr Carrisford of the little beggar?
c) What kind of plan did she make up?
d) How did the bun-woman receive Sara?
e) What was her reaction to Sara's plan?
f) What happened to the beggar girl?
g) What did Sara propose to Anne?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) The bun-woman went to the door of the little back-room and spoke.

b) The Indian gentleman's carriage drew up before the door of the baker's shop.
c) Sara told Mr Carrisford the story of the bun shop and the beggar-child.
d) Mr Carrisford and Sara liked the hours when they read or talked to each other.
e) One evening Sara made up a plan to help hungry children.

3 Find in the text the English for:

чудесным образом
ошейник
особое очарование
посылать счета
помощница

4 Put as many questions as you can.

a) Sara made her little proposal concerning the awful days and the hungry children and the buns.
b) One evening Mr Carrisford, looking up from his book, noticed that his companion sat gazing into the fire.
c) Anne recognized Sara at once, and stood and looked at her.

5 Match the words and their definitions.

a) companion	1) a person who shares tastes and interests
b) charm	2) a quality that gives pleasure
c) trouble	3) a difficulty
d) savage	4) a bad-mannered, rude person
e) mud	5) soft, wet earth

6 Describe the new life of Sara, her activities.

7 Imagine that you are Anne. Speak about:

- the first meeting with Sara.
- your life after that.
- the second meeting with Sara and her proposal.

8 Final discussion.

a) Did you like the book? Which of the chapters did you like best of all?

b) What characters did you like best? Why?

c) What do you feel about Sara Crewe? Say what you like about her and why?

Содержание

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Elementary

Роалд Дал

Потрясающий мистер Фокс





Roald Dahl

Fantastic Mr Fox

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Роалд Дал

Потрясающий мистер Фокс

Адаптация текста, комментарий, упражнения, словарь Г. И. Бардиной

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2005

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Д15

Серия *«Английский клуб»* включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. Драгового*

Дал, Р.

Д15 Потрясающий мистер Фокс / Р. Дал; адаптация текста, коммент., упражнения, слов. Г. И. Бардиной. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2005. — 96 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб).

ISBN 5-8112-1192-9

Книга представляет собой адаптацию увлекательной повести известного английского писателя Р. Дала о приключениях хитрого и изобретательного лиса.

Пособие содержит упражнения для отработки и закрепления навыков речевой деятельности, а также перевод отдельных слов на русский язык и грамматический комментарий.

Книга предназначена учащимся школ, гимназий, лицеев, а также широкому кругу лиц, изучающих английский язык самостоятельно.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 5-8112-1192-9

Перевод заданий к упражнениям

1. **Act out the dialogue.** — Разыграйте диалог по ролям.
2. **Answer the questions.** — Ответьте на вопросы.
3. **Choose right.** — Выберите нужное слово.
4. **Choose the right words from the box and use them in the sentences.** — Выберите слова из рамки и употребите их в предложениях.
5. **Circle the odd word out.** — Обведите слово, не подходящее по смыслу.
6. **Complete the chart.** — Закончите таблицу.
7. **Complete the sentences.** — Закончите предложения.
8. **Correct the statements.** — Исправьте предложения.
9. **Draw a clock and speak of the race.** — Нарисуйте часы и расскажите о гонке.
10. **Fill in the prepositions.** — Вставьте предлоги.
11. **Follow-up.** — Дополнительное задание.
12. **Make up sentences out of these words.** — Составьте предложения из данных слов.
13. **Match the words and their definitions.** — Найдите соответствия между словами и их определениями.
14. **Match the two parts of sentences.** — Найдите соответствия между частями предложений.
15. **Prove that...** — Докажите, что...
16. **Put as many questions as you can.** — Поставьте как можно больше вопросов к предложению.
17. **Put the sentences in the right order.** — Расставьте предложения в правильном порядке.
18. **Role-play the conversation.** — Разыграйте разговор по ролям.
19. **Say as much as you can about the three farmers. Use the tips. Draw them, if you can.** — Дайте как можно больше информации о трех фермерах. Используйте подсказки. Нарисуйте их, если сможете.
20. **Say "true" or "false". If "false", give the right answer.** — Скажите, «верно» или «неверно». Если утверждение неверно, дайте правильный ответ.

21. **Think of another title to the chapter.** — Придумайте другое название главы.
22. **Tip.** — Подсказка, образец.
23. **Translate these words and use them in the sentences.** — Переведите эти слова и используйте их в предложениях.
24. **Use these exclamations in your mini-dialogues or sentences.** — Употребите данные восклицания в своих мини-диалогах или предложениях.
25. **Use these words in the sentences.** — Употребите данные слова в предложениях.
26. **Write the words in the plural form.** — Напишите эти слова во множественном числе.

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — прилагательное
adv adverb — наречие
compar comparative degree — сравнительная степень
conj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — существительное
past past tense — прошедшее время
phr v phrasal verb — фразовый глагол
pl plural — множественное число
p.p. past participle — причастие прошедшего времени
prep preposition — предлог
pron pronoun — местоимение
v verb — глагол
зд. — здесь



1. The Three Farmers

Down in the valley there were three farms. The owners of these farms were rich men. They were also nasty men. All three of them were as nasty and mean as any men could be. Their names were Farmer Boggis, Farmer Bunce and Farmer Bean.

Boggis was a chicken farmer. He kept thousands of chickens. He was very fat. This was because he ate three boiled chickens with dumplings every day for breakfast, lunch and supper.

Bunce was a duck-and-goose farmer. He kept thousands of ducks and geese. He was a kind of pot-bellied dwarf.[1] He was so short his chin would have been underwater in the shallow end of any swimming-pool in the

world.[2] His food was doughnuts and goose-livers. He made a disgusting paste from the livers and then put it into the doughnuts. This diet gave him a tummy-ache and a beastly temper.

Bean was a turkey-and-apple farmer. He kept thousands of turkeys in an orchard full of apple trees. He never ate any food at all. Instead, he drank gallons[3] of strong cider which he made from the apples in his orchard. He was as thin as a pencil and the cleverest of them all.

"Boggis and Bunce and Bean
One fat, one short, one lean.
These horrible crooks
So different in looks
Were none the less equally mean."

That is what the children round about usually sang when they saw them.

Words

valley ['vælɪ] *n* долина
owner ['əʊnə] *n* владелец, хозяин
nasty ['nɑ:stɪ] *a* противный, вредный
kept [kept] *past om* keep [ki:p] держать
dumplings ['dʌmplɪŋs] *n pl* клецки
doughnut ['dəʊnʌt] *n* пончик
geese [gi:s] *n pl* гуси (*om* goose [gu:s] гусь)
liver ['lɪvə] *n* печенка
disgusting [dɪs'gʌstɪŋ] *a* отвратительный
paste [peɪst] *n* паста; *зд.* паштет
tummy-ache ['tʌmɪeɪk] *n* боль в животе
beastly ['bi:stlɪ] *a* свирепый
temper ['tempə] *n* нрав
turkey ['tɜ:kɪ] *n* индейка

cider [ˈsaɪdə] *n* сидр (*алкогольный напиток*)
crook [krʊk] *n* разбойник

Notes

1. He was a kind of pot-bellied dwarf. — Он был похож на карлика с животом-бочонком.
2. He was so short his chin would have been underwater in the shallow end of any swimming-pool in the world. — Он был такой коротышка, что даже в самом мелком месте любого бассейна в мире его подбородок оказался бы под водой.
3. a gallon [ˈgælən] — галлон; мера жидкостей, равная 4,546 литрам

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What were the names of the three farmers?
b) What kind of men were they?
c) What did Boggis, Bunce and Bean do in their farms?
d) What did they usually eat?
e) How did they look like?
f) What song did the village kids sing about the three farmers?

2 Say "true" or "false". If "false", give the right answer.

a) The three farmers were very kind men.
b) The children liked the farmers very much.
c) The three farmers — Boggis, Bunce and Bean — lived in the valley.
d) Mr Boggis was a duck-and-goose farmer.

e) Mr Bean was a chicken farmer.
f) Mr Bean ate three boiled chickens with dumplings every day for breakfast.

3 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Bunce made a disgusting paste from the livers.
b) Down in the valley there lived three farmers.
c) Bean never ate any food at all. Instead he drank gallons of strong cider.
d) All three of the farmers were as nasty and mean as any men could be.
e) Boggis was a chicken farmer. He kept thousands of chickens.

4 Say as much as you can about the three farmers. Use the tips:

a) name;
b) what they did in their farms;
c) what they usually ate;
d) how they looked like.

Draw them, if you can.

5 Fill in the prepositions FROM, FOR, OF.

a) The owners ___ these farms were rich men.
b) Mr Boggis ate three boiled chickens with dumplings every day ___ breakfast, lunch and supper.
c) Mr Bean kept thousands ___ turkeys in an orchard full ___ apple trees.
d) He drank gallons ___ strong cider which he made ___ the apples in the orchard.

6 Say what farmers had for breakfast, lunch and supper and describe your meals. What do you like to eat best of all?

2. Mr Fox

On a hill above the valley there was a wood.

In the wood there was a huge tree.

Under the tree there was a hole.

In the hole lived Mr Fox and Mrs Fox and their four Small Foxes.

Every evening as soon as it got dark, Mr Fox said to Mrs Fox, "Well, my darling, what shall it be this time? A plump chicken from Boggis? A duck or a goose from Bunce? Or a nice turkey from Bean?" And when Mrs Fox told him what she wanted, Mr Fox crept down into the valley in the darkness of the night and stole there.

Boggis and Bunce and Bean knew very well what was going on, and it made them wild with rage[1]. They didn't like to give anything away. And they didn't like at all when somebody stole from them. So every night each of them took his shotgun and hid in a dark place somewhere on his own farm, hoping to catch the robber.

But Mr Fox was too clever for them. He always approached a farm with the wind blowing in his face, and this meant that if there was any man in the shadows ahead, the wind carried the smell of that man to Mr Fox's nose from far away. And if Mr Boggis was hiding behind his Chicken House Number One, Mr Fox could always smell him out from fifty yards off[2], quickly change direction and head for Chicken House Number Four at the other end of the farm.

"Dang and blast that lousy beast![3]" cried Boggis.

"I'd like to rip his guts out!" said Bunce.

"He must be killed!" cried Bean.

"But how?" said Boggis. "How on earth can we catch the robber?"

Bean picked his nose delicately with a long finger. "I have a plan," he said.

"You've never had a good, clever plan yet," said Bunce.

"Shut up and listen," said Bean. "Tomorrow night we will all hide just outside the hole where the fox lives. We will wait there until he comes out. Then . . . *Bang! Bang-bang-bang."*

"Very clever," said Bunce. "But first we shall have to find the hole."

"My dear Bunce, I've already found it," said the smart Bean. "It's up in the wood on the hill. It's under a huge tree . . ."

Words

plump [plʌmp] *a* пухлый, полный
crept [krept] *past* от creep [kri:p] ползти; *зд.* пробираться тайком
stole [stəʊl] *past* от steal [sti:l] воровать, красть
shotgun [ˈʃɒtgʌn] *n* двустволка, ружье
robber [ˈrɒbə] *n* вор, грабитель
to approach [əˈprəʊtʃ] *v* подходить, приближаться
to head for [ˈhedˈfɔ:] *phr v* направляться куда-либо
to carry [ˈkærɪ] *v* нести
to rip out [ˈrɪpˈaʊt] *phr v* вырвать
guts [gʌts] *n pl* кишки, внутренности
smart [smɑ:t] *a* умный, хитрый

Notes

1. it made them wild with rage — это приводило их в ярость
2. Mr Fox could always smell him out from fifty yards off — Мистер Фокс мог его почуять за 50 ярдов (a yard — мера длины, равная 0,91 метра)

3. Dang and blast that lousy beast! — Будь проклят этот гадкий зверь!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Who lived in a hole under the tree in the wood on a hill above the valley?
b) What did Mr Fox say every evening as soon as it got dark?
c) Boggis, Bunce and Bean didn't know what was going on, did they?
d) How did Mr Fox always approach a farm?
e) What did the three farmers decide to do to the Fox?

2 Say "true" or "false". If "false", give the right answer.

a) Mr Fox and his family lived in the valley.
b) Mr Fox never stole from the farms in the valley.
c) Boggis, Bunce and Bean knew very well what was going on.
d) Mr Fox was too clever for the three farmers.
e) Bean had a plan how to catch the Fox.
f) Bean didn't know where the Fox's hole was.

3 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) "Tomorrow night we will all hide just outside the hole, where the fox lives".
b) In the hole lived Mr Fox and Mrs Fox and their four small Foxes.
c) Mr Fox always approached a farm with the wind blowing in his face.

d) When Mrs Fox told him what she wanted, Mr Fox usually crept down into the valley and stole there.
e) Every night each of the three farmers took his shot-gun and hid in a dark place somewhere on his farm hoping to catch the robber.

4 Complete the sentences.

a) And Mrs Fox told her husband of what she wanted...
b) Boggis, Bunce and Bean knew very well what was going on...
c) And if Mr Boggis was hiding behind his Chicken House Number One...
d) Tomorrow night we will hide just outside the hole...

5 Match the words and their definitions.

plump	move closer
robber	someone who steals money or things from other people
approach	slightly fat in a pleasant way
smart	very large
huge	clever

Follow-up: Use these words in the sentences from Chapter 2.

a) In the wood there was a ___ tree.
b) "Well, my darling, what shall it be this time? A ___ chicken from Boggis?"
c) So every night the three farmers took their shot-guns and hid in a dark place on their farms in the hope to catch the ___ .
d) "How on earth can we catch the ___ ?"
e) He always ___ a farm with the wind blowing in his face.

f) "My dear Bunce, I've already found the hole," said the ___ Bean. "It's up in the wood on the hill. It's under a ___ tree."

6 **Role-play the conversation between Boggis, Bunce and Bean, discussing how to catch Mr Fox.**



3. The Shooting

"Well, my darling," said Mr Fox. "What shall it be tonight?"

"I think we'll have duck tonight," said Mrs Fox. "Bring us two fat ducks, if you please. One for you and me, and one for the children."

"Okay, it shall be ducks!" said Mr Fox. "Bunce's best!"

"But be careful," said Mrs Fox.

"My darling," said Mr Fox, "I can smell those stupid men a mile away. I can even smell one from the other.[1] Boggis smells of rotten chicken-skins, Bunce smells of goose-livers, and as for Bean, the fumes of apple cider hang around him like poisonous gases."

"Yes, but be careful," said Mrs Fox. "You know they'll be waiting for you, all three of them."

"Don't you worry about me," said Mr Fox. "I'll see you later."

But Mr Fox would not have been quite so cocky had he known exactly *where* the three farmers were waiting at that moment.[2] They were just outside the hole, behind a tree with their guns. And what is more, they had chosen their positions very carefully, so that the wind was not blowing from them towards the fox's hole. In fact, it was blowing in the opposite direction. And Mr Fox couldn't smell them out.

Mr Fox crept up the dark tunnel to the mouth of his hole. He put his long handsome face out into the night air and sniffed once.

He moved an inch[3] or two forward and stopped.

He sniffed again. He was always especially careful when he was coming out from his hole.

He moved forward a little more. The front half of his body was now in the open.

He sniffed and sniffed for the scent of danger. But he didn't smell anything and he was just about to go forward into the wood when he heard or thought he heard some noise, as though someone had moved a foot very gently through dry leaves.

Mr Fox lay very still. He pricked his ears[4] and waited a long time, but he heard nothing more.

"Probably, it was a field-mouse," he told himself, "or some other small animal."

He crept a little further out of the hole . . . then further still. He was almost right out in the open now. He took a last careful look around. The wood was dark and very still. Somewhere in the sky the moon was shining.

Just then, his sharp night-eyes saw something bright behind a tree not far away. It was some moonlight shin-

ing on a polished surface. Mr Fox lay still, watching it. What on earth was it? Now it was moving. It was coming up and up... *Great heavens! It was the barrel of a gun!* Vey quickly Mr Fox jumped back into his hole and at that same moment the entire wood seemed to explode around him. *Bang-bang! Bang-bang! Bang-bang!*

The smoke from the three guns went upward in the night air. Boggis and Bunce and Bean came out from behind their trees and walked towards the hole.

"Did we kill him?" said Bean.

One of them shone a flashlight on the hole, and there on the ground, in the circle of light, half in and half out of the hole, lay the poor bloodstained remains of... a fox's tail. Bean picked it up. "We got the tail but we missed the fox," he said, tossing the thing away.

"Dang and blast!" said Boggis. "We shot too late. We should have fired the moment he poked his head out.[5]"

"He won't be putting it out again in a hurry," Bunce said.

Bean pulled a flask from his pocket and drank some cider. Then he said, "It'll take three days at least before he gets hungry enough and comes out again. I'm not sitting around here waiting for that. Let's dig him out."

"Ah," said Boggis. "That's a clever plan. We can dig him out in a couple of hours. We know he's there."

"I think there's a whole family of them down that hole," Bunce said.

"Then we'll have them all," said Bean. "Get the shovels!"

Words

rotten [ˈrɒtn] *a* гнилой, тухлый
skin [skɪn] *n* кожа, кожица

fumes [fju:mz] *n pl* пары, испарения
poisonous [ˈpɔɪz(ə)nəs] *a* ядовитый
chosen [ˈtʃəʊz(ə)n] *p.p. от* choose [tʃu:z] выбирать
so that [ˈsəʊ ðæt] *conj* чтобы
to blow [bləʊ] *v* дуть
opposite [ˈɒpəzɪt] *a* противоположный
to sniff [snɪf] *v* нюхать
further [ˈfɜ:ðə] *adv compar от* far [fɑ:] далеко
barrel [ˈbærəl] *n* ствол ружья
to explode [ɪkˈspləʊd] *v* взрываться
flashlight [ˈflæʃlaɪt] *n* фонарик
shone [ʃəʊn] *past от* shine [ʃaɪn] светить, сверкать
bloodstained [ˈblʌdsteɪnd] *a* запачканный в крови
remains [rɪˈmeɪnz] *n pl* остатки
shovel [ˈʃʌv(ə)l] *n* лопата

Notes

1. I can even smell one from the other. — Я даже могу различать их по запаху.
2. But Mr Fox would not have been quite so cocky had he known exactly *where* the three farmers were waiting at the moment. — Но мистер Фокс не был бы таким самоуверенным, если бы точно знал, где в это время его ждали три фермера.
3. an inch [ɪntʃ] — дюйм; мера длины, равная 2,54 сантиметра
4. He pricked his ears. — Он навострил уши.
5. We should have fired the moment he poked his head out. — Мы должны были стрелять, как только он высунулся.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why wasn't Mr Fox afraid of the three farmers? How could he smell them?
b) Where were the farmers hiding when Mr Fox decided to go and get two fat ducks?
c) How did Mr Fox come out of the hole?
d) What happened when Mr Fox got out of the hole?
e) Did the farmers kill the fox or did they just get his tail?
f) The farmers decided to get a whole family of foxes, didn't they?

2 Say "true" or "false". If "false", give the right answer.

a) Mr Fox couldn't smell the three farmers at all.
b) When Mr Fox wanted to get out of the hole the three farmers were not waiting for him.
c) Mr Fox was always especially careful when he was coming out of the hole.
d) When Mr Fox was getting out of the hole he heard some noise.
e) The farmers didn't kill the fox, but they got his tail.
f) The farmers decided to kill a whole family of foxes.

3 Fill in the prepositions FOR, AWAY, OF, ABOUT, IN.

a) "Bring us two fat ducks. One for you and me, and one ___ the children."
b) "My darling," said Mr Fox, "I can smell those stupid men a mile ___."
c) Boggis smells ___ rotten chicken-skins, Bunce smells ___ goose-livers.

d) "Don't worry ___ me," said Mr Fox. "I'll see you later."
e) The wind was not blowing from the farmers. In fact it was blowing ___ the opposite direction.

4 Complete the chart.

hear	___	___	___	___
___	___	___	___	брать
___	was	___	___	___
___	___	drunk	___	___
go	___	___	going	___
___	___	got	___	___

5 What do people do with a SHOVEL, a FLASK, a FLASH-LIGHT?

Tip: *People usually dig in the garden with a shovel.*

4. The Terrible Shovels

Down the hole, Mrs Fox was licking the stump of Mr Fox's tail to stop the bleeding. "It was the finest tail for miles around," she said between licks.

"It hurts," said Mr Fox.

"I know it does, sweetheart. But it'll soon get better."

"And it will soon grow again, Dad," said one of the Small Foxes.

"It will never grow again," said Mr Fox. "I shall be whithout a tail for the rest of my life." He looked very sad.

There was no food for the foxes that night, and soon the children dozed off. Then Mrs Fox dozed off. But Mr Fox couldn't sleep because of the pain in the stump of his tail. "Well," he thought, "I think I'm lucky they haven't killed me. And now they know where our hole is, so we

must move out as soon as possible. They'll never leave us in peace if we . . . What was *that*?" He turned his head sharply and listened. The noise he heard now was the most frightening noise a fox can ever hear — the sound of shovels digging into the soil.

"Wake up!" he shouted. "They're digging us out!"

Mrs Fox woke up in one second. She was quivering all over. "Are you sure that's it?" she whispered.

"Yes! Listen!"

"They'll kill my children!" cried Mrs Fox.

"Never!" said Mr Fox.

"But darling, they will!" cried Mrs Fox. "You know they will!"

The shovels above their heads went on digging. Small stones and bits of earth began falling from the roof of the tunnel.

"How will they kill us, Mummy?" asked one of the Small Foxes. His round black eyes were huge with fright.[1] "Will there be dogs?" he said.

Mrs Fox began to cry. She gathered her four children close to her and held them tight.

Suddenly there was an especially loud crunch above their heads and the sharp end of a shovel came right through the ceiling. It was like an electric shock for Mr Fox. He jumped up and shouted, "Come on! We can't lose time! Why didn't I think of it before!"

"Think of what, Dad?"

"A fox can dig quicker than a man!" shouted Mr Fox, beginning to dig. "Nobody in the world can dig as quick as a fox!"

The soil began to fly out furiously behind Mr Fox as he started to dig for dear life[2] with his front feet. Mrs Fox and their four children ran forward to help him.

"Go downwards!" ordered Mr Fox. "We've got to go deep! As deep as we possibly can!"

The tunnel began to grow longer and longer. It went downward, deeper and deeper. The mother and the father and all four of the children were digging together. Their front legs were moving so fast you couldn't see them. And gradually the noise of the shovels became fainter and fainter.

After about an hour, Mr Fox stopped digging. "Hold it![3]" he said. They all stopped. They turned and looked back up the long tunnel they had just dug. All was quiet. "Phew!" said Mr Fox. "I think we've done it! They'll never get as deep as this. Well done, everyone![4]"

They all sat down, breathing hard. And Mrs Fox said to her children, "I should like you to know that your father has saved you. Your father is a fantastic fox."

Mr Fox looked at his wife and she smiled. He loved her more than ever when she said things like that.

Words

to lick [lɪk] *v* лизать
stump [stʌmp] *n* обрубок
bleeding [ˈbli:dɪŋ] *n* кровотечение
to doze off [ˈdəʊzˈɒf] *phr v* заснуть
to move out [ˈmu:vˈaʊt] *phr v* выезжать; *зд.* покинуть место
to leave [li:v] *v* оставлять, уходить
peace [pi:s] *n* мир; *зд.* покой
sharply [ˈʃɑ:plɪ] *adv* резко
to quiver [ˈkwɪvə] *v* дрожать
crunch [krʌntʃ] *n* хруст, скрежет
furiously [ˈfjʊ(ə)rɪəslɪ] *adv* энергично, с силой
gradually [ˈgrædʒʊəlɪ] *adv* постепенно
dug [dʌg] *past om* dig [dɪg] копать
to breathe [bri:ð] *v* дышать
fainter [feɪntə] *a compar om* faint [feɪnt] слабый

Notes

1. His round black eyes were huge with fright. — Его кругленькие черные глазки от ужаса стали огромными.
2. as he started to dig for dear life — когда он начал копать изо всех сил
3. Hold it! — Подождите!
4. Well done, everyone! — Вы все молодцы!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why was Mr Fox very sad when he got back to his family?
b) Mr Fox couldn't sleep that night, could he?
c) What kind of noise did he hear?
d) Why did Mrs Fox begin to cry?
e) Why were the Small Fox's eyes huge with fear?
f) What did the foxes begin to do?
g) Were the foxes safe in the tunnel, which they had dug?

2 Correct the statements.

a) Mr Fox was sure that his tail would grow again.
b) The foxes had a lot of food that night.
c) Mr Fox soon dozed off.
d) Mr Fox was sure that a man could dig quicker than a fox.
e) Mr Fox and his family didn't manage to dig a deep tunnel.

3 Make up sentences out of these words.

a) was licking; of Mr Fox's tail; to stop bleeding; Mrs Fox, the stump.
b) again; will never grow; my tail.
c) couldn't sleep; Mr Fox, of the pain; because; of his tail; in the stump.
d) he heard; the most frightening sound; was; the noise.
e) the soil; furiously; began flying; Mr Fox; behind.
f) is; a; fantastic; your father; fox.
g) she; Mr Fox; looked at; and; smiled; his wife.

4 Complete the chart.

fine	finer	....
deep	deeper	....
loud	....	....
sharp	....	(the) sharpest
faint	....	....
long	longer	....
frightening	more frightening	....
good	better	....

Follow-up: Translate these words into Russian and use them in the right form in the sentences from Chapter 4.

a) The tunnel began to grow ___ and ___ (long). It went ___ and ___ (deep).
b) And gradually the noise of the shovels became ___ and ___ (loud).
c) The noise he heard was ___ (frightening) noise a fox can hear — the sound of shovels digging into the soil.
d) "It hurts," said Mr Fox. "I know, sweetheart. But it'll soon get ___ (good)."
e) "I think we've done it! They'll never get as ___ (deep) as this," said Mr Fox.

5 Use these exclamations in your mini-dialogues.

Well done!	Hold it!	Come on!
	We can't lose time!	It hurts!

Tip: — *Hold it! Why is this rush?*
— *We can't lose time. It's evening already.*

6 Prove that Mr Fox was smart.

7 What do you think will happen in the next chapter?



5. The Terrible Tractors

As the sun rose the next morning, Boggis and Bunce and Bean were still digging. The hole was so deep you could put a house into it. But they had not yet come to the end of the foxes' tunnel. They were all very tired and angry.

"Dang and blast!" said Boggis. "Whose stupid idea was this?"

"Bean's idea," said Bunce.

Boggis and Bunce both looked at Bean. Bean took another drink of cider, then put the flask back into his pocket. He didn't offer it to the others. "Listen," he said angrily, "I want that fox! I'm going to get that fox! I'm not giving in till he is hanging up over my front porch, dead as a dumpling!"

"We can't get him by digging, that's for sure," said the fat Boggis. "I won't dig any more."

Bunce, the little pot-bellied dwarf, looked up at Bean and said, "Have you got any more stupid ideas, then?"

"What?" said Bean. "I can't hear you." Bean never took a bath. He never even washed. As a result, there were all kinds of muck and wax and bits of chewing-gum and dead flies and stuff like that in his earholes. Sometimes he didn't hear anything at all. "Speak louder," he said to Bunce, and Bunce shouted back, "Got any more stupid ideas?"

Bean rubbed the back of his neck with a dirty finger. He had a boil there and it itched. "What we need now," he said, "is machines . . . *mechanical* shovels. We'll have him out in five minutes with *mechanical* shovels."

This was a pretty good idea and the other two agreed with him.

"All right then," Bean said. "Boggis, you stay here so that the fox doesn't run away. Bunce and I will go and fetch our machinery. If he tries to get out, shoot him quick."

The long, thin Bean walked away. The tiny Bunce trotted after him. The fat Boggis stayed where he was, his gun at the fox-hole.

Soon, two huge caterpillar tractors with mechanical shovels on their front ends came into the wood. Bean was driving one, Bunce the other. The machines were both black. They looked like monsters.

"Here we go, then![1]" shouted Bean.

"Death to the fox!" shouted Bunce.

The machines went to work, biting huge mouthfuls of soil out of the hill[2]. The big tree under which Mr Fox had dug his hole fell like a matchstick. On all sides, rocks were sent flying and trees were falling and the noise was deafening.

Down in the tunnel the foxes sat, listening to the terrible noise overhead.

"What's happening, Dad?" cried the Small Foxes. "What are they doing?"

Mr Fox didn't know what was happening or what they were doing.

"It's an earthquake!" cried Mrs Fox.

"Look!" said one of the Small Foxes. "Our tunnel's got shorter! I can see daylight!"

They all looked round, and yes, the end of the tunnel was only a few feet[3] away from them now, and in the circle of daylight beyond they could see the two huge black tractors almost on top of them.

"Tractors!" shouted Mr Fox. "And *mechanical* shovels! Dig for your lives! *Dig, dig, dig!*"

Words

rose [rəʊz] *past om* rise [raɪz] подниматься
to offer [ˈɒfə] *v* предлагать
to give in [ˈgɪvˈɪn] *phr v* сдаваться
to hang [hæŋ] *v* висеть
porch [pɔ:tʃ] *n* крыльцо
muck [mʌk] *n* грязь
wax [wæks] *n* ушная сера
to rub [rʌb] *v* тереть
boil [bɔɪl] *n* фурункул, нарыв
to itch [ɪtʃ] *v* чесаться
to agree [əˈgri:] *v* соглашаться
to fetch [fetʃ] *v* приносить
machinery [məˈʃi:n(ə)rɪ] *n* техника, машины
to trot [trɒt] *v* идти быстрыми мелкими шажками, семенить
to point at [ˈpɔɪntˈæt] *phr v* указывать на что-либо

caterpillar ['kætə,pılə] *n* гусеница; *зд.* гусеничный
matchstick ['mætʃ,stık] *n* спичка
earthquake ['ɜ:θkweık] *n* землетрясение

Notes

1. Here we go, then. — Что ж, приступим!
2. The machines went to work, biting huge mouthfuls of soil out of the hill. — Тракторы принялись за работу, откусывая от горы огромные куски земли.
3. feet [fi:t] *n pl от* foot [fʊt] — *зд.* фут; мера длины, равная 30,48 сантиметра

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What were the three farmers doing as the sun rose?
b) Why were the farmers so angry?
c) Why couldn't Bean hear anything?
d) How did Bean decide to get out the foxes?
e) What machinery soon came into the wood?
f) Did the tractors look like monsters?
g) Why did one of the Small Foxes see light at the end of the tunnel?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) As the sun rose the next morning...
b) Bean never took a bath. He never even washed. As a result...
c) "Bunce and I will go and fetch...."
d) Soon two huge tractors with mechanical shovels...
e) The big tree under which Mr Fox had dug his hole...

f) The foxes looked round and yes, the end of the tunnel...

3 Match the words and their definitions.

to fetch	to let someone know that you will give them something if they want it
to itch	to use your teeth to cut or break something in order to eat
to bite	to say something in a loud voice
to shout	to go and get something
to offer	to walk with short, quick steps
to trot	to rub your skin with your nails

4 Fill in the prepositions WITH, AT, IN.

a) Boggis and Bunce both looked ___ Bean.
b) "I'm going to get that fox. I'm not giving ___ till he is hanging up over the front porch."
c) Bean rubbed the back of his neck ___ a dirty finger.
d) "We'll have him out ___ five minutes."
e) This was a pretty good idea and the other two agreed ___ him.
f) Soon two huge tractors ___ mechanical shovels on their front ends came into the wood.

5 Role-play the conversation the three farmers had at the hole, discussing their plan.

6. The Race

Now there began a desperate race, the machines against the foxes.

The machines bit away more and more soil from the hilltop.

Sometimes luck was with the foxes and the terrible noises grew fainter and then Mr Fox said, "We're going to make it![1] I'm sure we are!" But then, a few moments later, the machines started to come back at them and the crunch of the mighty shovels got louder and louder. Once the foxes even saw the sharp metal edge of one of the shovels as it bit away the earth just behind them.

"Keep going, my darlings!" panted Mr Fox. "Don't give up!"[2]

"Keep going!" the fat Boggis shouted to Bunce and Bean. "We'll get him any moment now!"

"Have you seen him yet?" Bean called back.

"Not yet," shouted Boggis. "But I think you're close!"

"I'll pick him up with my bucket!" shouted Bunce. "I'll chop him to pieces!"[3]

But by lunchtime the machines were still digging. And so were the poor foxes.

The farmers didn't stop for lunch; they wanted to finish the job.

"Hey there, Mr Fox!" yelled Bunce, leaning out of his tractor. "We're coming to get you now!"

"You've had your last chicken!" yelled Boggis. "You'll never come to *my* farm again!"

The three farmers acted like madmen. The tall skinny Bean and dwarfish pot-bellied Bunce were driving their machines like maniacs, and their shovels were digging very quickly. The fat Boggis was hopping about and shouting, "Faster! Faster!"

By five o'clock in the afternoon the hole the machines had dug was like the crater of a volcano. It looked so unusual that crowds of people came rushing out from the nearby villages to see it. They stood on the edge of the crater and looked down at Boggis and Bunce and Bean.

"Hey there, Boggis! What's going on?"
"We're after a fox!"
"You must be mad!"
The people shouted and laughed. But the three farmers only got more furious and more obstinate and more willing than ever to catch the fox.

Words

desperate [ˈdesp(ə)rɪt] *a* отчаянный
race [reɪs] *n* гонка, соревнование
bit [bɪt] *past om* bite [baɪt] кусать, откусывать
luck [lʌk] *n* удача, везение
even [ˈiːv(ə)n] *adv* даже
edge [edʒ] *n* край
skinny [ˈskɪnɪ] *a* худой
to hop [hɒp] *v* прыгать
crater [ˈkreɪtə] *n* кратер
volcano [vɒlˈkeɪnəʊ] *n* вулкан
furious [ˈfjʊ(ə)rɪəs] *a* разозленный
obstinate [ˈɒbstɪnɪt] *a* упрямый

Notes

1. We're going to make it! — Мы от них убежим!
2. "Keep going, my darlings!" panted Mr Fox. "Don't give up!" — «Продолжайте копать, мои дорогие, — тяжело дыша, говорил мистер Фокс. — Не останавливайтесь!»
3. I'll pick him up with my bucket! ... I'll chop him to pieces. — Я вытащу его своим ковшом! ... Я разрублю его на кусочки!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What began on the hill?
b) How did the three farmers act?
c) Why did crowds of people come to see the hole, the machines had dug?
d) Why did the people laugh?
e) Were the farmers more willing than ever to catch the fox?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Sometimes luck was with the foxes and...
b) The farmers didn't stop for lunch...
c) The tall skinny Bean and dwarfish pot-bellied Bunce were driving their machines like maniacs...
d) The hole looked so unusual that...
e) The people shouted and laughed, but the three farmers...

3 Make up sentences out of these words.

a) the machines; now; the foxes; there; a race; desperate; against; began.
b) the foxes; saw; the edge; sharp; of; once; even; of; one; the shovels; metal.
c) the machines; were; still; by; digging; lunchtime.
d) the machines; had dug; the hole; was; of; the crater; like; a volcano.

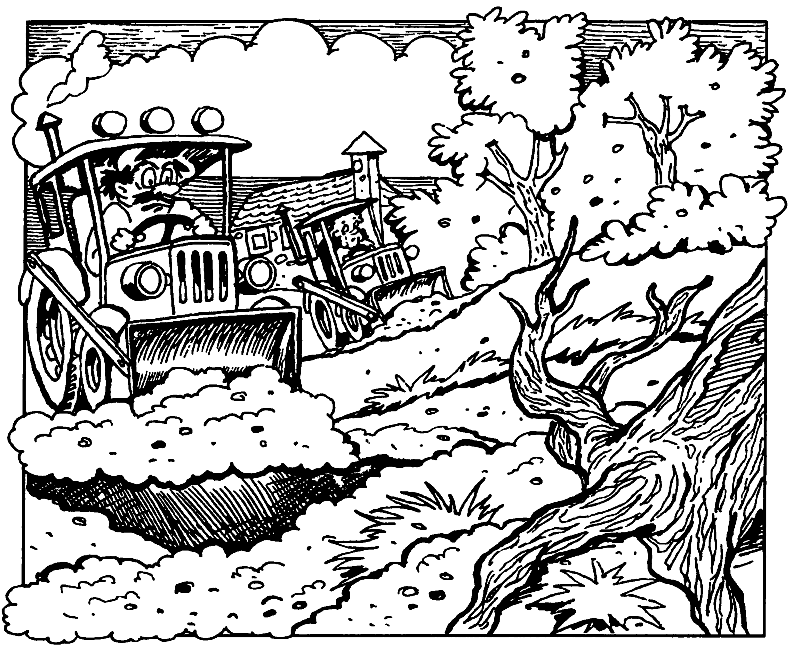
4 Fill in the prepositions IN, BY, ON, DOWN, AT.

a) ___ five o'clock in the afternoon the hole was like the crater of a volcano.

b) The people from the nearby village stood ___ the edge of the crater and looked ___ ___ Boggis and Bunce and Bean.

c) "Hey there, Boggis! What's going ___ ?"

5 **Role-play the conversation between Boggis, Bunce and Bean during that race.**



7. "We'll Never Let Him Go"

At six o'clock in the evening, Bean switched off the motor of his tractor and climbed down from the driver's seat. Bunce did the same. Both men were tired and stiff from driving the tractors all day. They were also hungry. Slowly they walked over to the small fox's hole in the bottom of the huge crater. Bean was angry and his face was red. Bunce was cursing the fox with dirty words that cannot be printed. Boggis came up to them. "Dang and blast that filthy fox!" he said. "What do we do now?"

"I'll tell you what we *don't* do," Bean said. "We don't let him go!"

"We'll never let him go!" Bunce declared.

"Never never never!" cried Boggis.

"Did you hear that, Mr Fox!" yelled Bean, bending low and shouting down the hole. "It's not over yet, Mr Fox! We're not going home till we've killed you!" And the three men all shook hands with one another and swore not to go back to their farms without the fox.

"What do we do now?" asked Bunce, the pot-bellied dwarf.

"We're sending you down the hole to fetch him up," said Bean. "Down you go, you miserable midget![1]"

"Not me!" screamed Bunce, running away.

Bean smiled. When he smiled you saw his scarlet gums. You saw more gums than teeth. "Then there's only one thing to do," he said. "We starve him out.[2] We camp here day and night watching the hole. He'll come out in the end. He has no way out."

So Boggis and Bunce and Bean sent people down to their farms to bring them tents, sleeping-bags and supper.

Words

stiff [stɪf] *a* оцепеневший, скованный, одеревенелый, негнущийся
to curse [kɜ:s] *v* ругаться, сквернословить
to print [prɪnt] *v* печатать
filthy [ˈfɪlθɪ] *a* мерзкий, гадкий
to declare [dɪˈkleə] *v* заявлять
to yell [jel] *v* орать, кричать
to bend [bend] *v* наклоняться
swore [swɔ:] *past от* swear [sweə] клясться
miserable [ˈmɪz(ə)rəb(ə)l] *a* жалкий
midget [ˈmɪdʒɪt] *n* карлик
to scream [skri:m] *v* кричать
scarlet [ˈskɑ:lɪt] *a* ярко-красный, багровый
gum [gʌm] *n* десна

sent [sent] *past om* send [send] посылать
tent [tent] *n* палатка
sleeping-bag ['sli:pɪŋbæg] *n* спальный мешок

Notes

1. Down you go, you miserable midget! — Ступай вниз, карлик несчастный!
2. We starve him out! — Мы заставим его голодать, и он сам выбежит оттуда!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did Bean and Bunce do at six o'clock in the evening?
b) Why were they so hungry?
c) What did they declare?
d) What did the three farmers swear to do at the fox's hole?
e) How did they decide to have the fox out?
f) Why did the three farmers send people down to their farms?

2 Match the two parts of the sentences.

1) We camp here day and night
2) When Bean smiled
3) We're not going home
4) The three farmers sent people down to their farms

a) to bring them tents, sleeping-bags and supper.
b) till we've killed you.
c) you saw his scarlet gums.

5) Slowly they walked over to the small fox's hole

d) in the bottom of the huge crater.

e) watching the hole.

3 Circle the odd word out.

Stiff, dirty, miserable, tractor.
Crater, midget, tent, scarlet.
Fetch, curse, declare, low.
Bending, shouting, running, gums.

4 Fill in the prepositions OFF, AT, FROM, IN, UP.

a) ___ six o'clock ___ the evening Bean switched ___ the motor of his tractor and climbed down ___ the driver's seat.
b) Both men were tired and stiff ___ driving the tractors all day.
c) Slowly they walked to the small fox's hole ___ the bottom of the huge crater.
d) Boggis came ___ to them.
e) "We're sending you down the hole to fetch him ___."
f) "He'll come out ___ the end."

5 Draw a clock and describe the race from the very start. Imagine it began at 7 o'clock in the morning. These phrases from Chapters 6 and 7 will help you to do it.

AT SEVEN O'CLOCK IN THE MORNING
AFTER ABOUT AN HOUR
BY LUNCHTIME
BY FIVE O'CLOCK IN THE AFTERNOON
AT SIX O'CLOCK IN THE EVENING

8. The Foxes Begin to Starve

That evening they put up three tents in the crater on the hill — one for Boggis, one for Bunce and one for Bean. The tents were round Mr Fox's hole. And the three farmers sat outside their tents eating their supper. Boggis had three boiled chickens with dumplings, Bunce had six doughnuts filled with disgusting goose-liver paste, and Bean had two gallons of cider. All three of them kept their guns beside them.

Boggis took a hot chicken and held it close to the fox's hole. "Can you smell this, Mr Fox?" he shouted. "Lovely tender chicken! Why don't you come up and get it?"

The rich scent of chicken went down the tunnel to where the foxes were hiding.

"Oh, Dad," said one of the Small Foxes, "can we just sneak up and snatch it out of his hand?"

"Don't you dare!" said Mrs Fox. "That's just what they want you to do."

"But we're so *hungry*!" they cried. "When will we get something to eat?"

Their mother didn't answer them. Nor did their father.[1] There was no answer to give.

As darkness fell, Bunce and Bean switched on the powerful headlamps of the two tractors and shone them on to the hole. "Now," said Bean, "we'll watch it in turn[2]. One watches while two sleep, and so on all through the night."

Boggis said, "What if the fox digs a hole right through the hill and comes out on the other side? You didn't think of that, did you?"

"Of course I did," said Bean, but he didn't.

"Go on, then, tell us the answer," said Boggis.

Bean picked something small and black out of his ear and threw it away. "How many men have you got on your farm?" he asked.

"Thirty-five," Boggis said.

"I've got thirty-six," Bunce said.

"And I've got thirty-seven," Bean said. "That makes one hundred and eight men altogether. We must order them to surround the hill. Each man will have a gun and a flashlight. Then Mr Fox won't run away."

So the order went down to the farms, and that night one hundred and eight men formed a tight ring around the bottom of the hill. They had sticks and guns and hatchets and pistols and all sorts of other horrible weapons. And it was impossible for a fox or for any other animal to escape from the hill.

The next day, the watching and waiting went on. Boggis and Bunce and Bean sat upon small stools, looking at the fox's hole. They didn't talk much. They just sat there with their guns and waited.

From time to time, Mr Fox crept a little closer towards the mouth of the tunnel to take a sniff. Then he crept back again and said to his family, "They're still there."

"Are you quite sure?" Mrs Fox asked.

"Yes," said Mr Fox. "I can smell that man Bean a mile away. He stinks."

Words

to put up [ˈpʊtˈʌp] *phr v зд.* устанавливать палатку
held [held] *past om* hold [həʊld] держать
tender [ˈtendə] *a* нежный
scent [sent] *n* запах
to sneak [sni:k] *v* пробираться тайком
to snatch [snætʃ] *v* хватать
to dare [deə] *v* осмеливаться
powerful [ˈpaʊəf(ə)l] *a* мощный
headlamp [ˈhedlæmp] *n* прожектор, фара

shone [ʃəʊn] *past om* shine [ʃaɪn] светить
threw [θruː] *past om* throw [θrəʊ] бросать
to surround [səˈraʊnd] *v* окружать
tight [taɪt] *a* плотный
hatchet [ˈhætʃɪt] *n* топор
weapon [ˈwepən] *n* оружие
to stink [stɪŋk] *v* вонять, дурно пахнуть

Notes

1. Their mother didn't answer them. Nor did their father. — Их мать ничего им не ответила. Отец тоже.
2. we'll watch it in turn — мы будем дежурить у норы по очереди

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did the three farmers do that evening in the crater on the hill?
b) What did each of them have for supper?
c) What did Boggis do to get the foxes out of the hole?
d) Bunce and Bean decided to watch the hole, didn't they?
e) What order went down to their farms?
f) Why was it impossible for any animal to escape from the hill?
g) What did Mr Fox try to do?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) That night one hundred and eight men formed a tight ring round the bottom of the hill.

b) From time to time Mr Fox crept a little closer towards the mouth of the tunnel to take a sniff.
c) That night they put up three tents in the crater on the hill.
d) As darkness fell Bunce and Bean switched on the powerful headlamps of the two tractors.
e) The rich sent of chicken went down the tunnel to where the foxes were hiding.
f) And it was impossible for a fox or for any other animal to escape from the hill.

3 Match the two parts of the sentences.

1) That evening they put up three tents
2) They had sticks and guns and hatches and pistols
3) The rich scent of chicken went down the tunnel
4) Boggis and Bunce and Bean sat upon small stools
5) What if the fox digs a hole right through the hill

a) to where the foxes were hiding.
b) looking at the fox's hole.
c) and comes out on the other side?
d) and all sorts of other horrible weapons.
e) one for Boggis, one for Bunce and one for Bean.

4 Fill in the prepositions TO or FOR.

a) That evening they put up three tents in the crater on the hill — one ___ Boggis, one ___ Bunce and one ___ Bean.
b) Boggis took a hot chicken and held it close ___ the fox's hole.

c) The rich scent of chicken went down the tunnel ___ where the foxes were hiding.
d) Bunce and Bean switched on the powerful head-lamps of the two tractors and shone them on ___ the hole.
e) So the order went ___ the farms and that night one hundred and eight men formed a tight ring around the bottom of the hill.
f) And it was impossible ___ a fox or ___ any other animal to escape from the hill.

5 Here is a plan to Chapter 8. Speak on its each point in detail.

1) The Farmers pitch camp round Mr Fox's hole.
2) The foxes are starving.
3) The farmers decide to watch the hole.
4) The farmers send for help.
5) Mr Fox checks if the farmers are still there.

6 Think of another title to Chapter 8 and explain why you want to call it so.

7 Role-play the conversation between the Small Foxes and their parents, hiding down in the hole.



9. Mr Fox Has a Plan

For three days and three nights this waiting-game went on.

"How long can a fox live without food or water?" Boggis asked on the third day.

"Not much longer now," Bean told him. "He'll run out soon. That's the only thing he can do now."

Bean was right. Down in the tunnel the foxes were slowly but surely starving to death.

"I want so much to have just a little water," said one of the Small Foxes. "Oh, Dad, can't you do *something*?"

"Can we try and get out of here, Dad? Maybe, we'll make it!"

"No chance at all," snapped Mrs Fox.[1] "I won't let you go up there and face those guns. We'll stay down here and die in peace."

Mr Fox didn't speak for a long time. He sat quite still, his eyes closed, not even hearing what the others were saying. Mrs Fox knew that he was trying to think of a way out. And now, as she looked at him, she saw that he stirred himself and got slowly to his feet. He looked back at his wife. There was a little spark of excitement in his eyes.

"What is it, darling?" said Mrs Fox quickly.

"I've just had a bit of an idea," Mr Fox said carefully.

"What?" they cried. "Oh, Dad, what is it?"

"Come *on*!" said Mrs Fox. "Tell us quickly!"

"Well . . ." said Mr Fox, then he stopped and sighed and sadly shook his head. He sat down again. "It's no good," he said. "It won't work after all."[2]

"Why not, Dad?"

"Because it means more digging and we are not strong enough for that after three days and nights without food."

"Yes we are, Dad!" cried the Small Foxes, jumping up and running to their father. "We can do it! And you can do it too!"

Mr Fox looked at the four Small Foxes and he smiled. What fine children I have, he thought. They are starving to death and they haven't had a drink for three days, but they are still undefeated. I must not let them down.

"I . . . I think we can try it," he said.

"Let's go, Dad! Tell us what you want us to do!"

Slowly, Mrs Fox got to her feet. She was suffering more than any of them from the lack of food and water. She was very weak. "I am so sorry," she said, "but I don't think I am going to be much help."

"You stay right where you are, my darling," said Mr Fox. "We can do this by ourselves."

Words

to refuse [rɪˈfju:z] *v* отказываться
way out [ˌweɪˈaʊt] *n* выход из создавшегося положения
to stir oneself [ˈstɜ: wʌnˈself] *v* встряхнуться
spark [spɑ:k] *n* искорка
to starve [stɑ:v] *v* страдать от голода
  to starve to death умирать от голода
undefeated [ˌʌndɪˈfi:tɪd] *a* непокоренный, непобежденный
to let down [ˈletˈdaʊn] *phr v* подводить
to suffer [ˈsʌfə] *v* страдать
lack [læk] *n* нехватка

Notes

1. "No chance at all," snapped Mrs Fox. — «У нас нет никаких шансов», — резко оборвала их миссис Фокс.
2. "It's no good," he said. "It won't work after all." — «Бесполезно, — сказал он. — Из этого вряд ли что-нибудь получится».

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) How long did the waiting game go on?
b) What was happening to the foxes down in the tunnel?
c) Did Mr Fox let his children go up there and face the guns?
d) Why didn't Mr Fox speak for a long time?

e) Why finally was there a spark of excitement in his eyes?
f) Were the Small Foxes ready to dig more?
g) Mr Fox was happy to have such fine kids, wasn't he?
h) Why couldn't Mrs Fox help her husband and her children to dig?

2 Put as many questions as you can.

a) Mr Fox sat quite still, his eyes closed, not even hearing what the others were saying.
b) And now as Mrs Fox looked at her husband, she saw that he stirred himself and got to his feet.
c) Mrs Fox was suffering more than any of them from the lack of food.

3 Complete the sentences.

a) Mr Fox sat quite still, his eyes closed...
b) What fine children I have, he thought. They are starving to death and...
c) Mrs Fox slowly got to her feet. She was suffering more than any of them...
d) Mrs Fox knew that he was trying desperately...
e) Down there in the tunnel the foxes were slowly but surely...

4 Choose the right words from the box and use them in the sentences.

spark	in peace	desperately
waiting-game	to death	the lack of food

a) There was a little ___ of excitement in his eyes.
b) For three days and three nights this ___ went on.

c) "We'll stay down here and die ___."
d) Mrs Fox knew that he was trying ___ to think of a way out.
e) They are starving ___ and they haven't had a drink for three days but they are ___ .
f) She was suffering more than any of them from ___ .

5 Role-play the conversation between Mr Fox and his family, discussing what to do.

6 Speak of Mr Fox's kids, how they acted in this situation, what kind of kids they were.

7 Speak of Mr Fox. Was he a loving father and a husband? Why?

10. Boggis's Chicken House Number One

"This time we must go in a very special direction," said Mr Fox and pointed sideways and downward.

So he and his four children started to dig once again. The work went much more slowly now. Yet they dug with great courage, and little by little the tunnel began to grow.

"Dad, tell us *where* we are going," said one of the children.

"I dare not do that," said Mr Fox, "because this place I am *hoping* to get to is so *marvellous* that if I describe it to you now you will go crazy with excitement[1]. And then, if we fail to get there, you will die of disappointment. I don't want to raise your hopes too much, my darlings."

For a long long time they kept on digging. For how long they did not know, because there were no days and no nights down there in the dark tunnel. But at last Mr Fox gave the order to stop. "I think," he said, "we must peep upstairs now and see where we are. I know where I *want* to be, but I am not sure we're anywhere near it."

Slowly, the tired foxes began to dig the tunnel up towards the surface. Up and up it went . . . until suddenly they came to something hard above their heads and they couldn't go up any further. Mr Fox examined this hard thing. "It's wood!" he whispered. "Wooden planks!"

"What does that mean, Dad?"

"It means, if I am not very much mistaken, we are right underneath somebody's house," whispered Mr Fox. "Be very quiet now while I take a look."

Carefully, Mr Fox began pushing up one of the floorboards. The board creaked most terribly and they all moved down, waiting for something awful to happen. Nothing did. So Mr Fox pushed up a second board. And then, very very carefully, he put his head up through the gap. He cried out with excitement.

"I've done it!" he yelled. "I've done *it first time!*[2] *I've done it! I've done it!"* He pulled himself up through the gap in the floor and started jumping and dancing with joy. "Come on up!" he sang out. "Come up and see where you are, my darlings! What a sight for a hungry fox! Hooray! Hooray!"

The four Small Foxes crept out of the tunnel and what a fantastic sight it was! They were in a huge shed and there were chickens everywhere. There were white chickens and brown chickens and black chickens. Thousands of chickens!

"Boggis's Chicken House Number One!" cried Mr Fox. "It's the place I wanted to get to! I've done it! First

time! Isn't that fantastic! *And,* if I may say so, rather clever!"

The Small Foxes were wild with excitement. They started running around in all directions, chasing the stupid chickens.

"Wait!" ordered Mr Fox. "Don't lose your heads! Stand back! Calm down! Let's do this properly![3] First of all, everyone have a drink of water!"

They all ran over to the chickens' drinking-trough and drank the lovely cool water. Then Mr Fox chose three of the plumpest hens, and killed them instantly.

"Back to the tunnel!" he ordered. "Come on! No fooling around![4] Get down quickly and you shall have something to eat!"

One after another, they climbed down through the hole in the floor and soon they were all standing once again in the dark tunnel. Mr Fox reached up and pulled the floorboards back into place. He did this with great care so that no one could tell somebody had moved them.

"My son," he said, giving the three plump hens to the biggest of his four small children, "run back with these to your mother. Tell her to prepare a feast. Tell her we will be back, as soon as we have done a few other little things."

Words

direction [d(a)ɪ'rekʃ(ə)n] *n* направление
sideways ['saɪdweɪz] *adv* в сторону
marvelous ['mɑ:v(ə)ləs] *a* замечательный
disappointment [ˌdɪsə'pɔɪntmənt] *n* разочарование
to peep [pi:p] *v* смотреть осторожно, украдкой
surface ['sɜ:fɪs] *n* поверхность
to whisper ['wɪspə] *v* шептать

plank [plæŋk] *n* доска
underneath [ˌʌndəˈni:θ] *adv* под, внизу
floorboard [ˈflɔ:bɔ:d] *n* половица
to creak [kri:k] *v* скрипеть
gap [gæp] *n* проем
shed [ʃed] *n* сарай
drinking-trough [ˈdrɪŋkɪŋtrɒf] *n* корыто, из которого пьет домашний скот и птица
feast [fi:st] *n* пиршество, пир

Notes

1. you will go crazy with excitement — вы от радости сойдете с ума
2. I've done it first time! — Мне это удалось с первого раза!
3. Calm down! Let's do this properly! — Успокойтесь! Давайте сделаем все как положено!
4. Come on! No fooling around! — Быстрей! Хватит вам дурачиться!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) In what direction did Mr Fox and his kids start to dig?
b) Why didn't Mr Fox want to tell his sons where they were going?
c) Why didn't they know for how long they kept on digging?
d) What did they find above their heads when they began to dig the tunnel towards the surface?

e) Were the foxes underneath somebody's house?
f) Why did Mr Fox cry out with excitement when he pushed up a second board?
g) Where did the foxes find themselves?
h) What did they see there?
i) What did Mr Fox ask his son to do?

2 Say "true" or "false". If "false", give the right answer.

a) Now the foxes dug very quickly.
b) Mr Fox didn't tell his kids where they were going.
c) Mr Fox didn't know himself where he wanted to get to.
d) Suddenly they came to something soft above their heads.
e) When Mr Fox pushed up a second board he cried out with excitement.
f) The foxes were in Mr Boggis's Chicken House Number One.
g) Now the foxes didn't have any food to eat.
h) Mr Fox forgot about his starving wife.

3 Complete the sentences.

a) Yet they dug with great courage...
b) Up and up the tunnel went until suddenly...
c) Mr Fox pushed up a second board and...
d) Mr Fox pulled himself up through the gap in the floor and...
e) The four Small Foxes crept out of the tunnel and...
f) Then Mr Fox chose three of the plumpest hens and...
g) "My son," he said giving the three plump hens to the biggest of his sons, "run back with these to your mother and...

4 Use these exclamations in your own situations.

Isn't it fantastic!
Wait!
Don't lose your heads.
Stand back!
Calm down!
Come on! No fooling around!
I've done it first time! Hooray! Hooray!

5 Draw a picture of Mr Boggis's Chicken House Number One and describe it.

6 Why do you think people say "as sly as a fox"? Does Mr Fox prove that it is true?

7 There are some other phrases with the names of animals:

AS BLIND AS A BAT
AS STRONG AS AN OX
AS QUIET AS A MOUSE

Why do you think people say so?



11. A Surprise for Mrs Fox

The Small Fox ran back along the tunnel as fast as he could, carrying the three plump hens. He was full of joy. "Just wait!" he thought. "Just wait till Mummy sees these!" He had a long way to run but he never stopped once on the way. "Mummy!" he cried, out of breath. "Look, Mummy, look! Wake up and see what I've brought you!"

Mrs Fox, who was very weak now from lack of food, opened one eye and looked at the hens. "I'm dreaming," she murmured and closed the eye again.

"You're not dreaming, Mummy! They're real chickens! We're saved! We're not going to starve!"

Mrs Fox opened both eyes and sat up quickly. "But, my *dear* child!" she cried. "Where on earth . . .?"

"Boggis's Chicken House Number One!" siad the Small Fox quickly. "We have made a tunnel right under the floor and you've never seen so many big fat hens in all your life! And Dad said to prepare a feast! They'll be back soon!"

The sight of food gave new strength to Mrs Fox. "It will be a feast!" she said, standing up. "Oh, what a fantastic fox your father is! Hurry up, child, and start plucking those chickens!"

Far away down in the tunnel, the fantastic Mr Fox was saying, "Now let's do one more little job, my darlings! This one will be as easy as pie![1] All we must do is dig another little tunnel from *here* to there!"

"To where, Dad?"

"Don't ask so many questions. Start digging!"

Words

to dream [dri:m] *v* сниться, видеть во сне
to murmur [ˈmɜ:mə] *v* бормотать
to save [seɪv] *v* спасать
strength [streŋθ] *n* сила
sight [saɪt] *n* вид, зрелище
fantastic [fænˈtæstɪk] *a* потрясающий
to pluck [plʌk] *v* ощипывать

Note

1. This one will be as easy as pie! — Это будет проще простого!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did the Small Fox run along the tunnel as fast as he could?
b) What did Mrs Fox say when she saw her son?
c) What did the Small Fox explain to her?
d) Was Mrs Fox happy to hear about the feast?
e) What were Mr Fox and his other sons doing at this time?
f) Did Mr Fox tell them of his new plan?

2 Fill in the prepositions ON, FROM, OUT, TO, OF, AT.

a) The Small Fox ran back along the tunnel as fast as he could. He was full ___ joy.
b) He had a long way to run but he never stopped ___ the way.
c) "Mummy," he cried, ___ ___ breath.
d) Mrs Fox, who was very weak now ___ lack ___ food opened one eye and looked down ___ the hens.
e) "But my dear child!" she cried. "Where ___ earth ___?"
f) "All we must do is dig another little tunnel ___ here ___ there!"

Follow-up: Translate the phrases from this exercise into Russian and use them in your sentences or situations

TO BE FULL OF
ON THE WAY
OUT OF BREATH
FROM LACK OF
WHERE (WHY, WHAT, WHEN) ON EARTH...
FROM HERE TO THERE

3 Match the words and their definitions.

starve	something unusual or unexpected
lack	a large meal for a lot of people
tunnel	to suffer or die because there is not enough food
feast	to see things in your mind while you're sleeping
surprise	an underground passage
dream	a situation when you do not have enough of something you need

4 Act out the dialogue between Mrs Fox and her son.

5 SURPRISES can be pleasant and unpleasant. Speak of any surprises you had in your life.

T i p: *Last year my parents gave me a kitten for my birthday. It was a pleasant surprise for me.*
O r: *Yesterday my teacher asked me to stay after school. It was an unpleasant surprise for me.*

12. Badger

Mr Fox and the three remaining Small Foxes dug fast and straight. They were all so excited now that they didn't feel tired or hungry. They knew they were going to have a great feast very soon and they laughed eveyr time they thought they were going to eat Boggis's chickens. It was lovely to know that while the fat farmer was sitting up there on the hill waiting for them to starve, he was also giving them their dinner without knowing it. "Keep digging," said Mr Fox. "It's very close allready."

All of a sudden a deep voice above their heads said, *"Who goes there?"* The foxes jumped. They looked

up quickly and saw through a small hole in the roof of the tunnel, a long black pointed furry face.

"Badger!" cried Mr Fox.

"Foxy!" cried Badger. "my goodness me, I'm glad I've found *someone* at last! I've been digging around in circles for three days and nights and I haven't the foggiest idea where I am!"

Badger made the hole in the ceiling bigger and dropped down beside the foxes. A Small Badger (his son) dropped down after him. "Haven't you *heard* what's happening up on the hill?" Badger said excitedly. "It's chaos! Half the wood has disappeared and there are men with guns all over the countryside! We cannot get out, even at night! We're all starving to death!"

"Who is *we*?" asked Mr Fox.

"All us diggers.[1] That's me and Mole and Rabbit and all our wives and children. Even Weasel, who can usually get out of the any mess, is right now hiding down my hole with Mrs Weasel and six kids. What on earth are we going to do, Foxy? I think we're finished![2]"

Mr Fox looked at his three children and he smiled. The children smiled back at him, as they shared his secret. "My dear old Badger," he said, "this mess you're in is all my fault . . ."

"I *know* it's your fault!" said Badger furiously. "And the farmers are not going to give up till they've got you. Unfortunately, that means *us* as well. It means everyone on the hill." Badger sat down and put a paw around his small son. "We're finished," he said softly. "My poor wife up there is so weak she can't dig another yard."

"My wife is very weak too," said Mr Fox. "And yet at this very minute she is preparing for me and my children the most delicious feast of plump juicy chickens . . ."

"Stop!" cried Badger. "Don't tease me! I can't stand it!"

"It's true!" cried the Small Foxes. "Dad's not teasing! We've got so many chickens now!"

"And because it is all my fault," said Mr Fox, "I invite you to share the feast. I invite *everyone* to share it — you and Mole and Rabbit and Weasel and all your wives and children. There'll be enough food for everybody, believe me."

"You mean it?" cried Badger. "You *really mean* it?"

Mr Fox pushed his face close to Badger's and whispered, *"Do you know* where we've just been?"

"Where?"

"Right inside Boggis's Chicken House Number One!"

"No!"

"Yes! But that is nothing to where we are going now.[3] You have come just at the right moment, my dear Badger. You can help us dig. And now, your small son can run back to Mrs Badger and all the others and tell them the good news." Mr Fox turned to the Small Badger and said, "Tell them I invite them to a Fox's Feast. Then bring them all down here and follow this tunnel back until you find my home!"

"Yes, Mr Fox!" said the Small Badger. "Yes, sir! Right away, sir! Oh, thank you, sir!" and he disappeared quickly through the hole in the roof of the tunnel.

Words

badger [ˈbædʒə] *n* барсук
to remain [rɪˈmeɪn] *v* оставаться
straight [streɪt] *adv* прямо
while [waɪl] *conj* в то время как

pointed [ˈpɔɪntɪd] *a* острый, остроконечный, заостренный
furry [ˈfɜ:rɪ] *a* мохнатый
chaos [ˈkeɪɒs] *n* хаос
countryside [ˈkʌntrɪsaɪd] *n* сельская местность
mole [məʊl] *n* крот
weasel [ˈwi:z(ə)l] *n* горностай, ласка
mess [mes] *n* неприятное положение
share [ʃeə] *v* разделять что -либо с кем-либо
fault [fɔ:lt] *n* вина
delicious [dɪˈlɪʃəs] *a* вкусный
juicy [ˈdʒu:sɪ] *a* сочный
to tease [ti:z] *v* мучить, *зд.* дразнить

Notes

1. All us diggers. — Все мы, живущие в норах под землей.
2. I think we're finished. — Я думаю, нам конец.
3. But that is nothing to where we are going now. — Но это ничто по сравнению с тем, куда мы сейчас отправимся.

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) How did Mr Fox and the three remaining Small Foxes dig?
b) Why didn't they feel tired or hungry?
c) Why did they laugh?
d) Whose face did they see through a small hole in the roof of the tunnel?

e) What news did Badger bring to Mr Fox?
f) What did Mr Fox say to it?
g) What did Mr Fox ask Badger and his son to do?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Badger made the hole in the ceiling bigger and dropped down beside the foxes.
b) They knew they were going to have a great feast very soon.
c) The children smiled back at him as they shared his secret.
d) Badger sat down and put a paw round his small son.
e) All of a sudden they heard a deep voice above their heads.

3 Match the two parts of the sentences.

1) Mr Fox and the three remaining sons were all so excited now
2) It was lovely to know that while the fat farmer was sitting up there on the hill waiting for them to starve
3) The foxes looked up and they saw, peeking through a small hole in the roof of the tunnel
4) Badger made the hole in the ceiling bigger
5) Half the wood has disappeared

a) a long black pointed funny face.
b) and dropped down beside the foxes.
c) that they didn't feel tired or hungry.
d) and there are men with guns all over the countryside!
e) he was giving them their dinner without knowing it.

4 Choose the right words from the box and use them in the sentences.

countryside	circles	mess	fault
unfortunately	paw	delicious	

a) Half the wood has disappeared and there are men with guns all over the ___ .
b) "My dear old Badger," he said, "this mess you're in is all my ___ ."
c) Badger sat down and put a ___ around his small son.
d) " ___ , that means us as well."
e) I've been digging around in ___ for three days and nights.
f) My wife is preparing for me and my children the most ___ feast of plump juicy chickens.

5 Act out the dialogue between Mr Fox and Badger.

6 What do you know about badgers who live in the wild?



13. Bunce's Giant Storehouse

"My dear Foxy!" cried Badger. "What in the world has happened to your tail?"

"Don't talk about it, *please*," said Mr Fox. "It's a painful subject."

They were digging the new tunnel. They dug on in silence. Badger was a great digger and the tunnel went forward at a terrific pace now that he was lending a paw.[1] Soon they were underneath yet another wooden floor.

Mr Fox grinned slyly, showing sharp white teeth. "If I am not mistaken, my dear Badger," he said, "we are now underneath the farm which belongs to that nasty little pot-bellied dwarf, Bunce. We are, in fact, directly underneath the most *interesting part* of that farm."

"Ducks and geese!" cried the Small Foxes, licking their lips. "Juicy tender ducks and big fat geese!"

"Ex-*actly*!" said Mr Fox.

"But how in the world can you know where we are?" asked Badger.

Mr Fox grinned again, showing even more white teeth. "Look," he said, "I can find my way around these farms with my eyes closed. For me it's just as easy below ground as it is above it." He reached high and pushed up one wooden floorboard, then another. He put his head through the gap.

"Yes!" he shouted, jumping up into the room above. "I've done it again! I've hit it right in the bull's-eye![2] Come and look!"

Quickly Badger and the three Small Foxes climbed up after him. They stopped and stared with their mouths wide open. They were so surprised they couldn't speak; as what they now saw was a kind of fox's dream, a badger's dream, a paradise for hungry animals.

"This, my dear old Badger," said Mr Fox, "is Bunce's Giant Storehouse! He stores here all of his finest stuff before he sends it off to market."

Against all the four walls of the big room, in cupboards and upon shelves reaching from floor to ceiling, there were thousands and thousands of the finest and fattest ducks and geese, plucked and ready for roasting! And up above, there hung at least a hundred smoked hams and fifty sides of bacon!

"Just feast your eyes on *that*!" cried Mr Fox, dancing up and down. "What d'you think of it, eh? Pretty good food!"

Suddenly, as though springs had been released in their legs, the three hungry Small Foxes and the hungry Badger sprang forward to grab the food.

"Stop!" ordered Mr Fox. "This is *my* party, so I shall do the choosing." The others fell back, licking their

chops. Mr Fox began moving around the storehouse examining the glorious display with an expert eye. A thread of saliva slid down one side of his jaw and hung suspended in mid-air, then snapped.

"We mustn't overdo it," he said. "Mustn't give the game away. Mustn't let them know what we've been up to. We must be neat and tidy and take just a few of the choicest pieces of food. So, to start with we shall have four plump young ducks." He took them from the shelf. "Oh, how lovely and fat they are! No wonder Bunce gets a special price for them in the market! . . . All right, Badger, lend me a hand to get them down . . . You children can help as well . . . There we go . . . And now . . . I think we had better have a few geese . . . Three will be quite enough . . . We'll take the biggest . . . Oh my, oh my, you'll never see finer geese than these in a king's kitchen . . . Easy, easy . . . that's the way . . . And what about a couple of nice smoked hams . . . I adore smoked ham, don't you, Badger? . . . Fetch me that step-ladder, will you please . . ."

Mr Fox climbed up the ladder and handed down three magnificent hams. "And do you like bacon, Badger?"

"I'm mad about bacon!" cried Badger, dancing with excitement. "Let's have a side of bacon! That big one up there!"

"And carrots, Dad!" said the smallest of the three Small Foxes. "We must take some of those carrots."

"Don't be so stupid," said Mr Fox. "You know we never eat things like that."

"It's not for us, Dad. It's for the Rabbits. They only eat vegetables."

"My goodness me, you're right!" cried Mr Fox. "What a thoughtful little fellow you are! Take ten bunches of carrots!"

Soon, all this lovely loot was lying in a neat heap upon the floor. The Small Foxes came close, their noses twitching, their eyes shining like stars.

"And now," said Mr Fox, "we shall have to borrow from our friend Bunce two of those useful push-carts over in the corner." He and Badger fetched the push-carts, and loaded the ducks and geese and hams and bacon on to them. They quickly lowered the push-carts through the hole in the floor. The animals slid down after them. When they were back in the tunnel, Mr Fox again pulled the floorboards very carefully into place so that no one could notice anything.

"My darlings," he said, pointing to two of the three Small Foxes, "take a cart each and run back as fast as you can to your mother. Give her my love and tell her we are having guests for dinner — the Badgers, the Moles, the Rabbits and the Weasels. Tell her it must be a truly great feast. And tell her the rest of us will be home as soon as we've done one more little job."

"Yes, Dad! Right away, Dad!" they answered, and they grabbed a trolley each and hurried off down the tunnel.

Words

giant [ˈdʒaɪənt] *a* гигантский
storehouse [ˈstɔːhaʊs] *n* склад
painful [ˈpeɪnf(ə)l] *a* болезненный
to lend [lend] *v* давать взаймы
to grin [ɡrɪn] *v* ухмыляться
slyly [ˈslaɪlɪ] *adv* хитро
paw [pɔː] *n* лапа
paradise [ˈpærədaɪs] *n* рай

to store [stɔ:] *v* хранить
to roast [rəʊst] *v* жарить
smoked [sməʊkt] *a* копченый
ham [hæm] *n* окорок
thoughtful [ˈθɔ:tf(ə)l] *a* предусмотрительный
loot [lu:t] *n* добыча
to borrow [ˈbɒrəʊ] *v* брать в займы
push-cart [ˈpʊʃkɑ:t] *n* тележка
to lower [ˈləʊə] *v* опускать
slid [slɪd] *past от* slide [slaɪd] соскальзывать, съезжать
to notice [ˈnəʊtɪs] *v* замечать
to grab [græb] *v* хватать
trolley [ˈtrɒlɪ] *n* тележка

Notes

1. Badger was a great digger and the tunnel went forward at a terrific pace now that he was lending a paw. — Барсук был отменным копателем, и с его помощью тоннель продвигался вперед гораздо быстрее.
2. I've hit it right in the bull's eye! — Я попал прямо в яблочко!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did Mr Fox ask Badger not to talk about his tail?
b) Was Badger a good digger?
c) Why did Mr Fox know that they were under Bunce's farm now?

d) Was what they saw a paradise for hungry animals? Why?
e) What did Mr Fox borrow from Bunce?
f) Where did Mr Fox ask his two sons to run with the cart full of food?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Mr Fox and Badger fetched pushcarts and loaded the ducks and geese and ham on to them.
b) Mr Badger and the three Small Foxes were so surprised they couldn't speak, as what they now saw was a kind of fox's dream, a badger's dream, a paradise for hungry animals.
c) Badger was a great digger and the tunnel went forward at a terrific pace.
e) Mr Fox again pulled the floorboard very carefully into place so that no one could see they had been moved.
f) Quickly Badger and the three Small Foxes climbed up after him.

3 Choose right.

a) The tunnel went forward at a terrific pace now that Badger was lending/borrowing a paw.
b) "And now," said Mr Fox, "we shall have to lend/borrow from our friend Bunce one of those useful pushcarts."
c) May I lend/borrow your pen?
d) You can lend/borrow this book from the library.
e) The local library lends/borrows books for three months.
f) Patricia is always ready to lend/borrow a helping hand.

4 Choose the right words from the box to and use them in the sentences.

for dinner	in the world	in silence
in fact	at a terrific pace	

a) What ___ has happened to your tail?
b) We are ___ directly underneath the most interesting part of that farm.
c) Badger was a great digger and the tunnel went forward ___ .
d) They dug on ___ .
e) "But how ___ can you know where we are?" asked Badger.
f) Give her my love and tell her we are having guests ___ .

5 Write the words in the plural form.

Tip: *a farm — farms*
A duck, a tooth, a goose, a floorboard, a fox, an animal, a thousand, a bunch, an eye, a carrot, a shelf.

6 Describe Bunce's Giant Storehouse.

7 Act out the dialogue between Mr Fox and Badger as they started to dig a new tunnel.

8 Draw a fox, a badger, a mole, a rabbit and a weasel. What do you know about these animals? Which of them can you keep at home? Do you have any pet animals?

14. Badger Has Doubts

"Just one more visit!" cried Mr Fox.

"And I'll bet I know where that'll be," said the only Small Fox now left. He was the Smallest Fox of them all.

"Where?" asked Badger.

"Well," said the Smallest Fox. "We've been to Boggis and we've been to Bunce but we haven't been to Bean. It must be Bean."

"You are right," said Mr Fox. "But what you don't know is which *part* of Bean's place we are going to visit."

"Which?" they said both together.

"Ah-ha," said Mr Fox. "Just you wait and see." They were digging as they talked. The tunnel was going forward fast.

Suddenly Badger said, "Doesn't this worry you just a little bit, Foxy?"

"Worry me?" said Mr Fox. "What?"

"All this . . . this *stealing.*"

Mr Fox stopped digging and stared at Badger as though he had gone completely dotty.[1] "My dear old furry friend," he said, "Do you know anyone in the *whole world* who can refuse to steal a few chickens if his children are starving to death?"

There was a short silence while Badger thought deeply about this.

"You are far too respectable[2]," said Mr Fox.

"There's nothing wrong with being respectable," Badger said.

"Look," said Mr Fox, "Boggis and Bunce and Bean are out to *kill* us. You realize that, I hope?"

"I do, Foxy, I do indeed," said the gentle Badger.

"But *we're* not going to be like them. We don't want to kill *them.*"

"I hope not," said Badger.

"We shall never do it," said Mr Fox. "We shall simply take a little food here and there to keep us and our families alive. Right?"

"I think we'll have to," said Badger.

"If *they* want to be horrible, let them," said Mr Fox. "We down here are decent peace-loving people."

Badger laid his head on one side and smiled at Mr Fox. "Foxy," he said, "I love you."

"Thank you," said Mr Fox. "And now let's dig."

Five minutes later, Badger's front paws hit against something flat and hard. "What on earth is this?" he said. "It looks like a solid stone wall." He and Mr Fox scraped away the soil. It *was* a wall. But it was built of bricks, not stones. The wall was right in front of them, blocking their way.

"Now who in the world would build a wall under the ground?" asked Badger.

"Very simple," said Mr Fox. "It's the wall of an underground room. And if I am not mistaken, it is exactly what I'm looking for."

Words

doubt [daʊt] *n* сомнение
to bet [bet] *v* спорить, держать пари
to worry [ˈwʌrɪ] *v* волноваться
stealing [ˈstiːlɪŋ] *n* воровство
to steal [stiːl] *v* воровать
realize [ˈrɪəlaɪz] *v* понимать
gentle [dʒentl] *a* мягкий, ласковый, кроткий
decent [ˈdiːs(ə)nt] *a* приличный
peace-loving [ˈpiːsˌlʌvɪŋ] *a* миролюбивый
laid [leɪd] *past om* lay [leɪ] класть
hit [hɪt] *past om* hit [hɪt] бить, ударять

to scrape [skreɪp] *v* скрести; *зд.* отгребать
brick [brɪk] *n* кирпич

Notes

1. Mr Fox stopped digging and stared at Badger as though he had gone completely dotty. — Мистер Фокс перестал копать и уставился на Барсука, словно тот совсем спятил.
2. You are far too respectable — Ты уж слишком порядочный

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Where were Mr Fox, Badger and the Smallest Fox digging a new tunnel to?
b) Was the tunnel going forward fast?
c) What did Badger suddenly ask Mr Fox?
d) How did Mr Fox explain all this stealing to Badger?
e) What did Badger's front paws hit against five minutes later?
f) What kind of wall was it?
g) How did Mr Fox explain this wall under the ground?

2 Choose right.

a) There/it must be Bean.
b) There/it was a short silence while Badger thought deeply about it.
c) There/it is nothing wrong with being respectable.
d) There/it looks like a solid stone wall.

e) There/it was a wall.
f) There/it is the wall of an underground room.

3 Fill in the prepositions FOR, TO, ON, AT.

a) And if I am not mistaken, it is exactly what I'm looking ___ .
b) We've been ___ Boggis and we've been ___ Bunce but we haven't been ___ Bean.
c) Mr Fox stopped digging and stared ___ Badger as though he had gone completely dotty.
d) Do you know anyone in the whole world who can refuse to steal a few chickens if his children are starving ___ death?
e) Badger laid his head ___ one side and smiled ___ Mr Fox.

4 Match the words and their definitions.

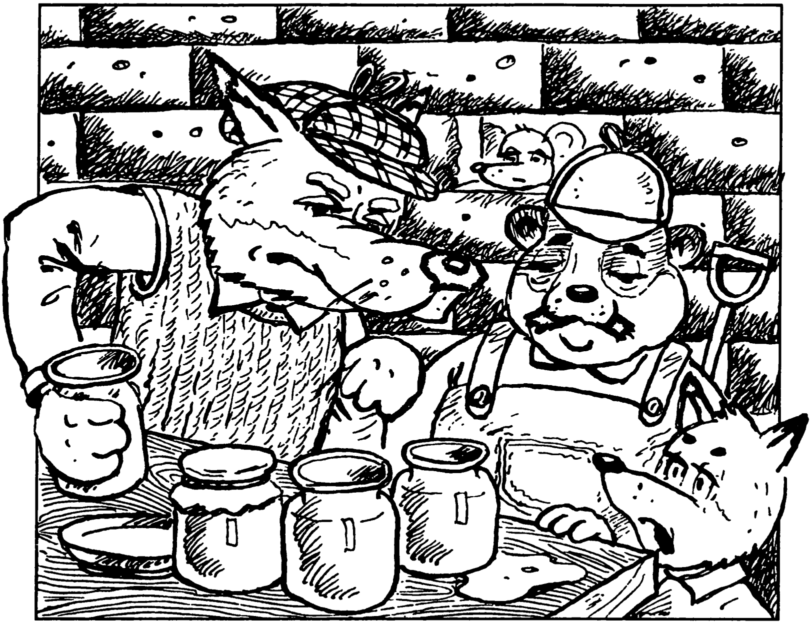
gentle	very unpleasant, terrible
stealing	taking something that belongs to someone else
horrible	honest, fair and nice towards other people
peace-loving	the foot of some animals such as cats, dogs and bears
decent	hating to fight
peace-loving	kind and calm

Follow-up: Use the words from the left-hand column in the sentences from Chapter 14. Translate them into Russian.

a) Five minutes later Badger's front ___ hit against something flat and hard.
b) We down here are ___ and ___ people.
c) If they want to be ___ let them.

d) "Doesn't it worry you just a little bit, Foxy?" "Worry me?" said Mr Fox. "What?" "All this . . . this ___."
e) "Look," said Mr Fox. "Boggis and Bunce and Bean are out to kill us. You realize that, I hope?" "I do, Foxy, I do indeed," said the ___ Badger.

5 Why is Chapter 14 called "Badger Has Doubts"? Do you think it is good to steal?



15. Bean's Secret Cider Cellar

Mr Fox examined the wall carefully. He saw that the cement between the bricks was old and crumbly, so he loosened a brick without much trouble and pulled it away. Suddenly, out from the hole where the brick had been, there popped a small sharp face with whiskers. "Go away!" it said. "You can't come in here! It's my place!"

"Good Lord!" said Badger. "It's Rat!"

"You saucy beast!" said Mr Fox. "I have forgotten that we can find you down here somewhere."

"Go away!" shrieked Rat. "This is my private cellar!"

"Shut up," said Mr Fox.

"I will not shut up!" shrieked Rat. "This is *my* place! I got here first!"

Mr Fox gave a brilliant smile, showing his white teeth. "My dear Rat," he said softly, "I am a hungry fellow and if you don't go away quickly I shall eat you up in one gulp!"

That worked. Rat disappeared quickly. Mr Fox laughed and began pulling more bricks out of the wall. When he had made a big hole, he crept through it. Badger and the Smallest Fox followed him in.

They found themselves in a large, damp, dark cellar. "This is it!" cried Mr Fox.

"This is *what*?" said Badger. "The place is empty."

"Where are the turkeys?" asked the Smallest Fox, staring into the dark. "I thought Bean was a turkey man."

"He is a turkey man," said Mr Fox. "But it's not turkeys that we need now. We've got plenty of food."

"Then what *do* we need, Dad?"

"Take a good look round," said Mr Fox. "Don't you see *anything* that interests you?"

Badger and the Smallest Fox looked into the half-darkness. As their eyes became accustomed to the gloom[1], they began to see what looked like big glass jars standing upon shelves around the walls. They went closer. They *were* jars. There were hundreds of them, and upon each one was written the word CIDER.

The Smallest Fox jumped high in the air. "Oh, Dad!" he cried out. "Look what we've found! It's cider!"

"Ex-*actly*," said Mr Fox.

"Great!" shouted Badger.

"Bean's Secret Cider Cellar," said Mr Fox. "But go carefully, my dears. Don't make a noise. This cellar is right underneath the farmhouse itself."

"Cider," said Badger, "is especially good for Badgers. We take it as medicine — one large glass three times a day with meals and another at bedtime."

"Now it will be a banquet and not just a feast," said Mr Fox.

While they were talking, the Smallest Fox took a gulp from a jar. "Wow!" he gasped. "Wow-*ee*!"

You must understand this was not the ordinary weak cider one buys in a store. It was the real stuff, that burned in your throat and boiled in your stomach.

"Ah-h-h-h-h-h!" gasped the Smallest Fox. "This is *some cider*![2]"

"That's quite enough of that," said Mr Fox, grabbing the jar and putting it to his own lips. He took a very big gulp. "It's fantastic!" he whispered, fighting for breath. "It's fabulous! It's beautiful!"

"It's my turn," said Badger, taking the jar and tilting his head back. The cider went noisily down his throat. "It's . . . it's like melted gold!" he gasped. "Oh, Foxy, it's . . . like drinking sunbeams and rainbows!"

"Put that down at once! There'll be none left for me!" Rat was on the highest shelf in the cellar, peering out from behind a huge jar. In the neck of the jar there was a small rubber tube, and Rat was using this tube to suck out the cider.

"You're drunk!" said Mr Fox.[3]

"Mind your own business![4]" shrieked Rat. "Now you great clumsy brutes have come in here and we'll all be caught! Get out and leave me to drink my cider in peace."

At that moment they heard a woman's voice calling out in the house above them. "Hurry up and get that cider, Mabel!" the voice called. "You know Mr Bean doesn't like to wait! Especially when he's been out all night in a tent!"

The animals froze. They stayed absolutely still. At the top of stone steps leading down from the house to the cellar there was a door.

And now someone opened the door and was starting to come down those steps.

Words

cellar [ˈselə] *n* подвал
crumbly [ˈkrʌmblɪ] *a* крошащийся
to loosen [ˈlu:s(ə)n] *v* ослаблять; *зд.* расшатывать
to pop [pɒp] *v* выскакивать
whiskers [ˈwɪskəz] *n pl* бакенбарды
rat [ræt] *n* крыса
saucy [ˈsɔ:sɪ] *a* дерзкий, вызывающий
to shriek [ʃri:k] *v* вопить, визжать
gulp [gʌlp] *n* глоток
    in one gulp залпом; *зд.* вмиг, враз
damp [dæmp] *a* сырой
jar [dʒɑ:] *n* банка
to gasp [gɑ:sp] *v* тяжело дышать, хватать ртом воздух
to tilt [tɪlt] *v* наклонять голову; *зд.* откинуть назад голову
melted [ˈmeltɪd] *a* расплавленный
gold [gəʊld] *n* золото
to suck [sʌk] *v* сосать
froze [frəʊz] *past от* freeze [fri:z] мерзнуть; *зд.* застыть на месте

Notes

1. As their eyes became accustomed to the gloom — Когда их глаза привыкли к темноте
2. This is *some* cider! — Вот это настоящий сидр!
3. You're drunk — Ты пьян
4. Mind your own business! — Это не твое дело!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did Mr Fox see when he examined the wall?
b) Who popped from the hole in the brick wall?
c) What did Rat order Mr Fox and Badger to do?
d) Why did Rat disappear quickly?
e) Where did Mr Fox, Badger and the Small Fox find themselves?
f) Was this place empty?
g) Why did the animals freeze?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Suddenly out from the hole where the brick had been...
b) When Mr Fox made a big hole...
c) Badger and the Smallest Fox looked into the semi-darkness. They began to see...
d) "Cider," said Badger, "is especially good for badgers, we take it as medicine..."
e) At that moment they heard a woman's voice...

3 Say "true" or "false". If "false", give the right answer.

a) In the cellar Mr Fox and Badger found a dog.
b) Rat was very nice and polite towards Mr Fox and Badger.
c) In the cellar Mr Fox and Badger saw shelves with turkeys.
d) Cider is especially good for badgers.
e) It was ordinary cider one buys in a store.
f) Now Mr Fox wanted to have a banquet and not just a feast.

4 Circle the odd word out.

Cement, glass, brick, cider
Store, farmhouse, tent, animal
Carefully, suddenly, quickly, hungry.

5 Act out a conversation between Mr Fox and Rat.

6 Make a plan to Chapter 15 and retell it, according to this plan.

7 Give a sketch-portrait of Rat. Do you like him or not? Why?

16. The Woman

"Quick!" said Mr Fox. "Hide!" He and Badger and the Smallest Fox jumped up on to a shelf and hid behind a row of big cider jars. Peering around the jars, they saw a huge woman coming down into the cellar. At the foot of the steps, the woman stopped, looking to right and left. Then she turned and went straight to the place where Mr Fox and Badger and the Smallest Fox were hiding. She stopped right in front of them. The only thing between her and them was a row of cider jars. She was so close, Mr Fox could hear the sound of her breathing. Peeping through the crack between two bottles, he noticed that she carried a big rolling-pin in one hand.

"How many will he want this time, Mrs Bean?" the woman shouted. And from the top of the steps the other voice called back, "Bring up two or three jars."

"He drank four yesterday, Mrs Bean."

"Yes, but he won't want that many today because he's not going to be up there more than a few hours

longer. He says the fox will get out this morning. It can't stay down that hole another day without food."

The woman in the cellar lifted a jar of cider from the shelf. The jar she took was next but one to the jar behind which Mr Fox was hiding.

"I'll be glad when they kill the brute and hang him up on the front porch," she called out. "And by the way, Mrs Bean, your husband promised I could have the tail as a souvenir."

"The tail's been all shot to pieces[1]," said the voice from upstairs. "Didn't you know that?"

"You mean it's *ruined*?[2]"

"Of course it's ruined. They shot the tail but missed the fox."

"Oh heck!" said the big woman. "I wanted that tail so much!"

"You can have the head instead, Mabel. You can stuff it and hang it on your bedroom wall. Hurry up now with that cider!"

"Yes, Ma'am, I'm coming," said the big woman, and she took a second jar from the shelf.

If she takes one more, she'll see us, thought Mr Fox. He could feel that the Smallest Fox's body was quivering with excitement.

"Will two be enough, Mrs Bean, or shall I take three?"

"My goodness, Mabel, I don't care, just be quick!"

"Then two it is," said the huge woman, speaking to herself now. "He drinks too much anyway."

Carrying a jar in each hand and with the rolling-pin under one arm, she walked away across the cellar. At the foot of the steps she paused and looked around, sniffing the air. "There's rats down here again, Mrs Bean. I can smell 'em."

"Then poison them, woman, poison them! You know where the poison's kept."

"Yes, Ma'am," Mabel said. She climbed slowly up the steps. The door shut.

"Quick!" said Mr Fox. "Grab a jar each and run!"

Rat stood on his high shelf and shrieked. "What did I tell you! She nearly found you, didn't she? You nearly gave away the secret! You keep out of here from now on![3] I don't want you around! This is my place!"

"*You*," said Mr Fox, "are going to be poisoned."

"Poppycock!" said Rat. "I sit up here and watch her putting the stuff down. She'll never get *me*."

Mr Fox and Badger and the Smallest Fox ran across the cellar carrying a gallon jar each. "Goodbye, Rat!" they called out as they disappeared through the hole in the wall. "Thanks for the lovely cider!"

"Thieves!" shrieked Rat. "Robbers! Bandits! Burglars!"

Words

row [rəʊ] *n* ряд
to peer [pɪə] *v* выглядывать
crack [kræk] *n* щелка
rolling-pin [ˈrəʊlɪŋpɪn] *n* скалка
drank [dræŋk] *past om* drink [drɪŋk] пить
heck [hek] *int* черт!
instead [ɪnˈsted] *prep* вместо
to stuff [stʌf] *v* наполнять, забивать; *зд.* делать чучело
to quiver [ˈkwɪvə] *v* дрожать
to poison [ˈpɔɪz(ə)n] *v* травить
poison [ˈpɔɪz(ə)n] *n* яд
found [faʊnd] *past om* find [faɪnd] находить
to give away [ˈɡɪvəˈweɪ] *phr v* выдавать
poppycock [ˈpɒpɪkɒk] *n разг.* чушь, чепуха
thieves [θi:vz] *n pl* воры
burglar [ˈbɜ:ɡlə] *n* грабитель

Notes

1. The tail's been all shot to pieces — Хвост выстрелом разнесло на мелкие кусочки
2. You mean it's *ruined*? — Вы хотите сказать, что он испорчен?
3. You keep out of here from now on! — Чтоб вашей ноги здесь больше не было!

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did Mr Fox, Badger and the Smallest Fox do when they heard a woman's voice?
b) Whom did they see from behind the jars?
c) What did the woman in cellar do?
d) What had Bean promised to give to Mabel?
e) What could Mabel smell in the cellar?
f) Who was going to be poisoned?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Carrying a jar in each hand and with the rolling-pin under one arm, Mabel walked away across the cellar.
b) The jar the woman took was next but one to the jar behind which Mr Fox was hiding.
c) Peering around the jars they saw a huge woman, coming down into the cellar.
d) Mr Fox and Badger and the Smallest Fox ran across the cellar carrying a gallon jar each.
e) He could feel that the Smallest Fox's body was quivering with excitement.

3 Fill in the prepositions AT, INTO, AROUND, BETWEEN, IN FRONT OF, TO.

Peering ___ the jars, they saw a huge woman, coming down ___ the cellar. ___ the foot of the steps the woman stopped, looking ___ right and left. Then she turned and went straight ___ the place, where Mr Fox and Badger and the Smallest Fox were hiding. She stopped ___ them. The only thing ___ her and them was a row of cider jars.

Follow-up: Retell this episode. How were the animals feeling at that moment? Can you speak of some episodes when you were very much frightened?

4 Say when you might exclaim:

My goodness!
Quick!
Poppycock!

Tip: *We are late. Let's go. Quick!*
Or: *My goodness! Is that you? I haven't seen you for so long!*

5 Why is this Chapter called "The Woman"? How else can you call it? Why?

6 Act out the dialogue between Mabel and Mrs Bean.



17. The Great Feast

Back in the tunnel they stopped so that Mr Fox could put the bricks back in place. He was humming to himself. "I can still taste that fantastic cider," he said. "What an impudent fellow Rat is."

"He has bad manners," Badger said. "All rats have bad manners. I've never met a polite rat yet."

"And he drinks too much," said Mr Fox, putting the last brick in place. "There we are.[1] Now, let's run home to the feast!"

They grabbed their jars of cider and off they went. Mr Fox was in front, the Smallest Fox came next and Badger last. Along the tunnel they flew . . . past the turning that led to Bunce's Mighty Storehouse . . . past

Boggis's Chicken House Number One and then towards the place where they knew Mrs Fox was waiting.

"Keep it up, my darlings!" shouted Mr Fox.[2] "We'll soon be there! Think what's waiting for us at the other end! And just think what we're bringing home with us in these jars! That will cheer up poor Mrs Fox." Mr Fox sang a little song as he ran:

> "Home again swiftly I glide,
> Back to my beautiful bride.
> She'll not feel so rotten
> As soon as she's gotten
> Some cider inside her inside."

Then Badger joined in:

> "Oh poor Mrs Badger, he cried,
> So hungry she very near died.
> But she'll not feel so hollow
> If only she'll swallow
> Some cider inside her inside."

They were still singing as they turned the final corner. The most wonderful and amazing sight any of them had ever seen opened before their eyes. The feast was just beginning. There was a large dining-room, and in the middle of it, seated around a huge table, were about twenty-nine animals. They were:

Mrs Fox and three Small Foxes.

Mrs Badger and three Small Badgers.

Mole and Mrs Mole and four Small Moles.

Rabbit and Mrs Rabbit and five Small Rabbits.

Weasel and Mrs Weasel and six Small Weasels.

The table was covered with chickens and ducks and geese and hams and bacon, and everyone was eating the lovely food.

"My darling!" cried Mrs Fox, jumping up and hugging Mr Fox. "We couldn't wait! Please forgive us!" Then she hugged the Smallest Fox of all, and Mrs Badger hugged Badger, and everyone hugged everyone else. Everybody shouted with joy, and the great jars of cider were placed upon the table, and Mr Fox and Badger and the Smallest Fox sat down with the others.

You must remember no one had eaten a thing for several days. They were very hungry. So for a while there was no conversation at all. There was only the sound of crunching and chewing as the animals attacked the food.

At last, Badger stood up. He raised his glass of cider and called out, "A toast! I ask you all to stand and drink a toast to our dear friend who has saved our lives this day — Mr Fox!"

"To Mr Fox!" they all shouted, standing up and raising their glasses. "To Mr Fox! Long may he live![3]"

Then Mrs Fox got shyly to her feet and said, "I don't want to make a speech. I just want to say one thing, and it is this: MY HUSBAND IS A FANTASTIC FOX." Everyone clapped and cheered. Then Mr Fox himself stood up.

"This delicious meal . . ." he began, then he stopped. In the silence that followed, he belched. There was laughter and more clapping. "This delicious meal, my friends," he went on, "is by courtesy of Messrs Boggis, Bunce and Bean.[4]" (More cheering and laughter.) "And I hope you have enjoyed it as much as I have." And he belched again.

"But now, my friends, let us be serious," said Mr Fox. "Let us think of tomorrow and the next day and the days after that. If we go out, we will be killed. Right?"

"Right!" they shouted.

"They'll shoot us before we've gone a yard," said Badger.

"Ex-*actly*," said Mr Fox. "But who *wants* to go out, anyway; let me ask you that? We are all diggers, every one

of us. We hate the outside. The outside is full of enemies. We only go out because we have to, to get food for our families. But now, my friends, the situation has changed. We have a safe tunnel leading to three of the finest stores in the world!"

"We do indeed!" said Badger. "I've seen 'em!"

"And you know what this means?" said Mr Fox. *"It means that we don't ever need to go out into the open again!"*

There was a buzz of excitement around the table.

"I therefore invite you all," Mr Fox went on, "to stay here with me for ever."

"For ever!" they cried. "My goodness! How marvellous!" And Rabbit said to Mrs Rabbit, "My dear, just think! They are never going to shoot at us again!"

"We will make," said Mr Fox, "a little underground village, with streets and houses on each side with houses for Badgers and Moles and Rabbits and Weasels and Foxes. And every day I will go shopping for you all. And every day we will eat like kings."

The cheering that followed this speech went on for many minutes.

18. Still Waiting

Outside the fox's hole, Boggis and Bunce and Bean sat beside their tents with their guns ready. It was beginning to rain. Water was running down the necks of the three men and into their shoes.

"He won't stay down there much longer now," Boggis said.

"The brute must be starving," Bunce said.

"That's right," Bean said. "He'll try to get out of the hole any moment. Keep your guns ready."

They sat there by the hole, waiting for the fox to come out.

And so far as I know, they are still waiting.

Words

to hum [hʌm] *v* (тихо) напевать
to taste [teɪst] *v* попробовать на вкус
impudent [ˈɪmpjʊd(ə)nt] *a* наглый
flew [flu:] *past от* fly [flaɪ] летать
turning [ˈtɜ:nɪŋ] *n* поворот
led [led] *past от* lead [li:d] вести
to cheer up [ˈtʃɪə ˈʌp] *phr v* подбадривать
to join in [ˈdʒɔɪn ˈɪn] *phr v* присоединяться
hollow [ˈhɒləʊ] *a* пустой, полый
to swallow [ˈswɒləʊ] *v* глотать
inside [ɪnˈsaɪd] *n* нутро; *adv* внутри
to enjoy [ɪnˈdʒɔɪ] *v* наслаждаться
to hug [hʌg] *v* обнимать
toast [təʊst] *n* тост
to clap [klæp] *v* хлопать
to belch [beltʃ] *v* рыгать
enemy [ˈenəmɪ] *n* враг
buzz [bʌz] *n* шум, шумок
therefore [ˈðeəfɔ:] *conj* поэтому

Notes

1. There we are. — Ну вот, готово!
2. Keep it up, my darlings! — Не отставайте, мои дорогие!
3. To Mr Fox! Long may he live! — За мистера Фокса! Желаем ему долгих лет!

4. “This delicious meal, my friends,” he went on, “is by courtesy of Messrs Boggis, Bunce and Bean.” — «Эта превосходная еда, друзья мои, — продолжал он, — любезно предоставлена господами Боггисом, Бансом и Бином».

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Where did Mr Fox and Badger hurry to from the cellar?
b) What places did they fly past?
c) What did they see when they turned the final corner of the tunnel?
d) Why was there no conversation at table at first?
e) How did Mrs Fox call her husband?
f) What did Mr Fox invite his friends to do?
g) He wanted to make a little underground village, didn’t he?
h) What was going on outside the fox’s hole at this time?

2 Choose right.

a) “Keep up, my darlings!” shouted Mr Fox. “And think what we’re bringing/taking with us in these jars.”
b) The feast was just ending/beginning.
c) At last Badger stood up. He raised/rose his glass of cider and called out “A toast”.
d) Then Mrs Fox got shyly to her foot/feet and said, “I don’t want to do/make a speech.”
e) We have a safe/safely tunnel leading to the three of the finest stores in the world.

3 Complete the chart.

wonderful	more wonderful	the most wonderful
amazing		
impudent		
fantastic		
delicious		

Follow-up: Translate these words into Russian and use them in the sentences from Chapters 17–18.

a) My husband is a ___ Fox!
b) "This is a ___ meal ___," he began then he stopped. In the sentence that followed he belched.
c) The most ___ and ___ sight any of them had ever seen opened before their eyes.
d) What an ___ fellow Rat is.

4 Say in several sentences what happened in Chapters 17–18.

5 Describe somebody who has bad manners and somebody who has good manners.

Final discussion

a) What does this story teach you?
b) Does this story have a happy end? Why? Do you like to read stories with a happy end or sad stories? Why?
c) Do you like Mr Fox? Why? Which of the characters of this book did you like best of all?
d) Which of the chapters of the book did you like best of all? Why?
e) Think of another title to the book. Why would you like to call it so?
f) Draw the cover to the whole book. Describe it.

Имена героев

Mr Fox [ˈmɪstə ˈfɒks] — Мистер Фокс
Boggis [ˈbɒgɪs] — Боггис
Bunce [bʌns] — Банс
Bean [biːn] — Бин
Mabel [ˈmeɪb(ə)l] — Мейбл

Содержание

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:
тел./факс: (095) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 106

Наш сайт: www.airis.ru

Вы можете приобрести наши книги
с 11[00] до 17[30], кроме субботы, воскресенья,
в киоске по адресу: пр. Мира, д. 106, тел.: 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «Айрис-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.
По всем вопросам обращаться
по тел.: (095) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

Учебное издание

Дал Роалд

ПОТРЯСАЮЩИЙ МИСТЕР ФОКС

Адаптация текста, комментарий,
упражнения, словарь *Г. И. Бардиной*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *М. А. Павлова*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *Г. А. Мацыгин*
Оформление обложки *А. М. Кузнецов*
Технический редактор *О. С. Александрова*
Компьютерная верстка *Е. Г. Иванов*
Корректор *В. М. Сизова*

Подписано в печать 06.01.05. Бумага газетная. Формат 60×90/16.
Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 6. Усл.-печ. л. 6.
Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 2845.

ООО «Издательство "Айрис-пресс"»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени
полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР»
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

Something was moving in the bushes. A great dark shadow hopped out into the moonlight. The beast moved like a kangaroo. It was of great size and power. When I saw its shape, I thought it was an iguanodon, but I soon saw that it was a very different creature. Instead of the gentle, deer-shaped head of the great three-toed leaf-eater, this beast had a broad toad-like face. It looked like the monster that had frightened us in our camp. It was a meat-eating dinosaur, the most terrible beast, which had ever walked this earth. From time to time the huge monster brought its nose to the ground. It was smelling out me.

- Beginner
- Elementary
- Для начинающих
- Pre-Intermediate
- Для продолжающих первого уровня
- Intermediate
- Для продолжающих второго уровня
- Upper Intermediate
- Для продолжающих третьего уровня
- Advanced
- Для совершенствующихся



9785811 231676

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

ЗАТЕРЯННЫЙ МИР • РАССКАЗЫ О ШЕРЛОКЕ ХОЛМСЕ • THE LOST WORLD • THE STORIES ABOUT SHERLOCK HOLMES

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

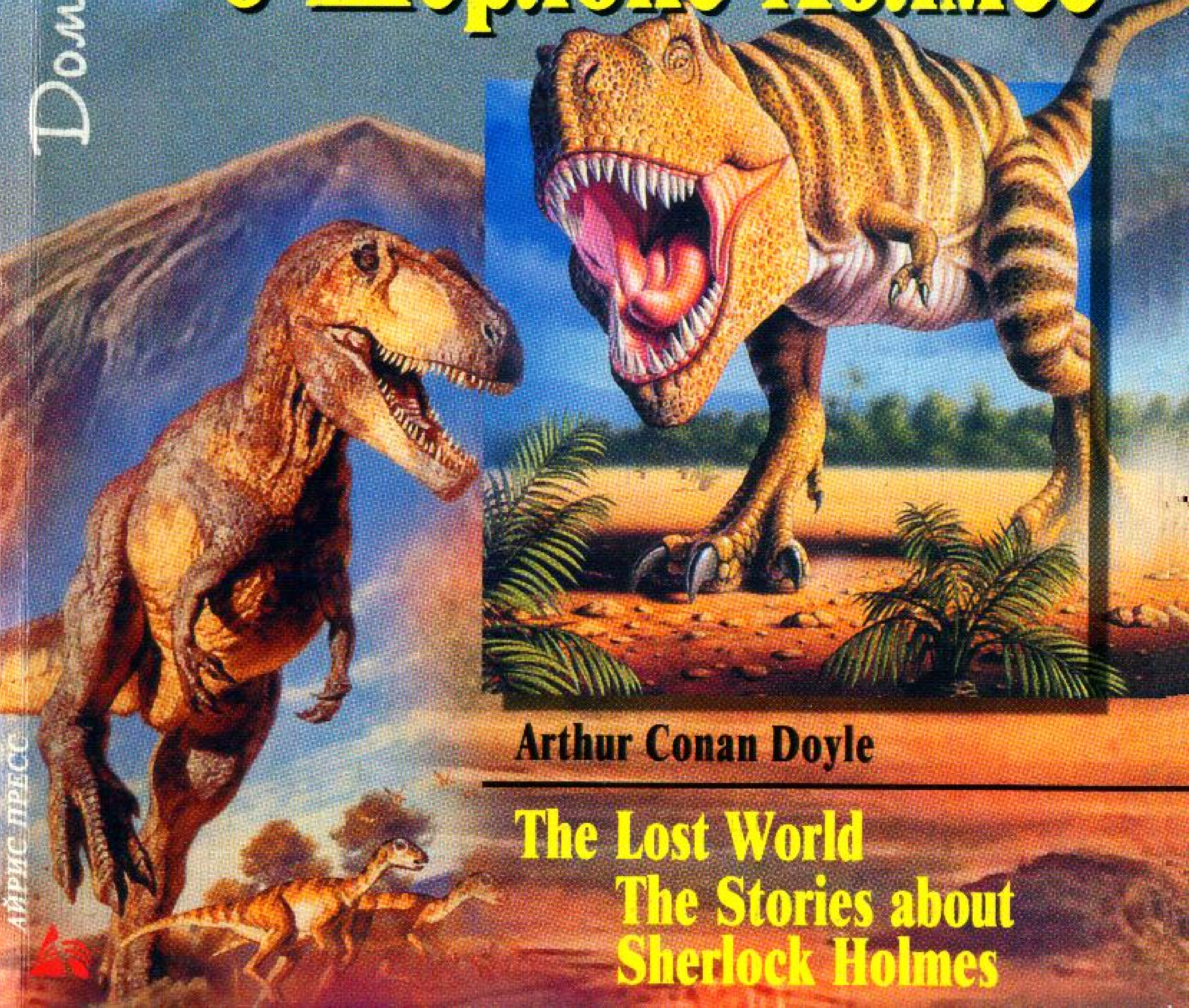
Домашнее чтение

Elementary

Английский клуб

Артур Конан Дойл

Затерянный мир
Рассказы о Шерлоке Холмсе



Arthur Conan Doyle

The Lost World
The Stories about Sherlock Holmes

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Артур Конан Дойл

Затерянный мир

Рассказы о Шерлоке Холмсе

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Д62

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. Драгового*

Составление, адаптация текста, комментарий, упражнения, словарь *Е. Г. Вороновой*

Дойл, Артур Конан

Д62 Затерянный мир. Рассказы о Шерлоке Холмсе = The Lost World. The Stories about Sherlock Holmes / Артур Конан Дойл; сост., адаптация текста, коммент., упражнения, слов. Е. Г. Вороновой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 224 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб).

ISBN 978-5-8112-3167-6

Книга знакомит читателя с творчеством известного английского писателя Артура Конан Дойла. Тексты его произведений — «Затерянный мир» и рассказы о Шерлоке Холмсе — адаптированы с учетом уровня владения языком учащихся 5–6 классов. На страницах книги вы встретитесь со знакомыми персонажами — профессором Челленджером и его командой, узнаете, где можно встретить настоящих динозавров, и сможете проследить за раскрытием таинственных преступлений.

Книга снабжена комментарием, упражнениями и словарем.

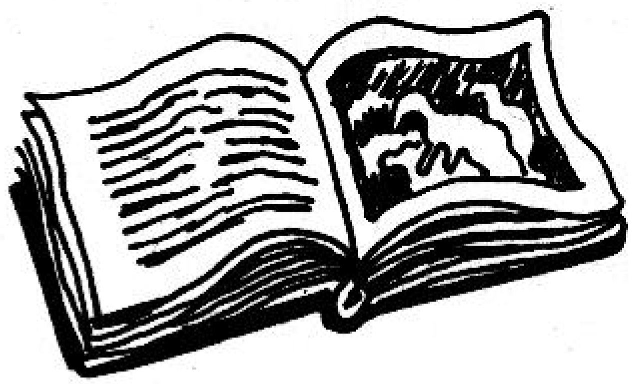
ББК 81.2Англ-93 93
УДК 811.111(075) 5)

ISBN 978-5-8112-3167-6

The Lost World

Chapter One

Try Your Luck With Professor Challenger



How beautiful Gladys was! I loved her but we were only friends. That day I decided that the time had come[1]! Would she say "yes" or "no" to me? When we were in her sitting-room near the warm fire in her house, she looked at me with her beautiful dark eyes and she said: "I think you are going to ask me to be your wife, Ned. Don't do it!"

"But why can't you love me, Gladys? Is it my face, my figure, or what?"

"No it isn't that," she said at last. "I'm in love with somebody else. It's nobody, only an ideal."

"What is your ideal?"

"Oh, he is much like you. Well, he is a strong man, a man who can look Death in the face."

[1] **the time had come** — время пришло

"We can't all be great heroes," said I, "besides, I have never had the chance. But I'll try to take it."

"You know, chances are all around you."

"Give me a chance! I'll do something in the world! And if I do..."

"Not another word, sir! Some day you will win your place in the world. Then we shall talk it over again."

I left her with my heart full of love. I wanted to find some heroic deed. When I came to my work (I worked at the Daily Gazette as a reporter), I asked Mr. McArdle, my boss, to send me to any dangerous place. I wanted it to be the most difficult one.

"Dear Mr. Malone, I'm afraid the time has gone. There's no place for romance anywhere. But wait a little bit!" he said, with a smile on his face. "What about a modern Munchausen[1]? I'm talking about Professor Challenger. Some people say he is a liar! You can have a chance to find out."

"Challenger!" I cried. "Professor Challenger, the famous zoologist! But I don't understand why I must interview this gentleman. What has he done?"

"He went to South America on expedition two years ago and came back last year. Then he began to talk about his adventures but he didn't tell everything. He didn't tell in detail. Something wonderful happened or the man is a champion liar. He has only got some bad photos. He gets so aggressive that he attacks anyone who asks questions. He often sends reporters down the stairs. That's your man, Mr. Malone. Now, off you go! And good luck!"

I left the office and went to have a drink in the cafe. There I met my friend Tarp Henry, a microbiologist. He was surprised:

"Challenger? The man who came with some silly stories from South America? As far as I can remember, he told about

[1] **Munchausen** — Мюнхаузен (*литературный персонаж, известный врун и фантазер*)

some strange animals. He gave an interview, and there was such a scandal! Now nobody believes him."

"Why?"

"Well, it is his impossible character. Well, besides, I have heard something of Challenger. They say he is a man nobody can ignore."

"What do you mean?"

"Would you like to come to my office? I've got something interesting to tell you."

Half an hour later I was in his office with a thick book in front of me. It was the Professor's lecture written for a scientific conference. I couldn't understand a word but it was clear that the Professor spoke to the audience in an unfriendly way. Then I had an idea to write a letter to the Professor and send it with my friend's address on it. When the letter was finished, I read it to Tarp. The letter said that a poor student of Nature (that was me!) asked for an interview with the Professor. He wanted to discuss some new scientific problems.

"Well, not bad, really. But what are you going to do then?" asked Tarp.

"To get there. When I am in his room..."

"When you are in his room, you need a gun or something like that to save your life. Remember, he is a dangerous character, everyone hates him."

On Wednesday I found a letter waiting for me. I took a taxi and in twenty minutes I was in front of a nice big house. An old servant opened the door and I came into the house. In the corridor I met a small bright woman with dark Italian eyes.

"One moment," she said. "May I ask a question? Have you met my husband before?"

"No, madam."

"Then I must tell you that he is an impossible person. Get quickly out of the room if he gets aggressive. I hope you are not going to speak about his expedition to South America?"

I could not lie to a lady.

"Oh, dear![1] It is very dangerous. You won't believe a word he says, I'm sure. But don't tell him so, because it makes him very angry[2]. Remember he believes it himself. If you find him dangerous — really dangerous — ring the bell!"

With these words the lady left me and the servant led me to Professor's study.

He was sitting at a large table, covered with books, maps, and diagrams. His head was very big, he had large black-blue beard, and his eyes were blue-grey under great black eyebrows, very clear and very critical. Besides, I noticed two big hands covered with long black hair.

"Well?" he said in a roaring voice, "What now?"

"Thank you for the chance to meet you, sir," I said quietly.

"Oh, you are the young person who agrees with my ideas, what is more, you've got something of great interest to tell me... That is a great help to me, isn't it? So, what would you like to tell me?"

"I am a poor student," I said, with a silly smile. "At the same time, I think that you were a little unfriendly to some other scientists."

"Unfriendly? Well, I think you know," he said, "that the cranial index is a constant factor?"

"Naturally," said I.

"And that telegony is still sub judice?"

"Certainly, sir."

"And that the germ plasma is different from the parthenogenetic egg?" That the cranial index is a constant factor?"[3]

"Why, surely!" I cried.

"But what does that prove?" he asked, in a gentle voice.

[1] **Oh, dear!** — Боже мой!

[2] **it makes him very angry** — он непременно сильно рассердится

[3] Профессор Челленджер специально использует бессмысленные, заумные выражения.

"Ah, what indeed?" I murmured. "What does it prove?"

"Shall I tell you?" he said in a low voice.

"If you please, sir."

"It proves," he roared with a sudden anger, "that you are the journalist, who has no more science in his head than he has truth in his reports!"

He jumped to his feet.

"Nonsense!" he cried. "That's what I told you, sir. Scientific nonsense! Did you think you could play a trick on me[1]? You played a dangerous game, and I think that you have lost it."

"Look here, sir," I said, "you can be as angry as you like. But you will not attack me."

"Will I not?"[2] He was slowly coming to me. "I have thrown some journalists out of the house. You will be the fourth. Get out of here!"

"Don't be such a fool, Professor!" I cried.

That moment he jumped at me. The door was opened and I was lucky not to go through it. We went to the front steps[3].

"Enough?" he asked when we went outside.

We shouted at each other and used the worst words we knew. Soon a policeman came to us.

"What's all this?" asked the policeman.

"This man attacked me," said I.

"Did you attack him?"

The Professor said nothing.

"It's not the first time," said the policeman. "You were in trouble last month for the same thing. Do you give him in charge, sir?"[4]

"No," said I, "I do not because he gave me a warning."

[1] **you could play a trick on me** — вы могли провести меня
[2] **Will I not?** — Неужели?
[3] **went to the front steps** — покатились вниз по ступенькам
[4] **Do you give him in charge, sir?** — Вы предъявляете ему обвинение?

The policeman closed his notebook and with the words of good-bye left.

The Professor looked at me, and there was something humorous in his eyes.

"Come in!" said he. "I've not done with you yet."

Chapter Two

It's Just the Very Biggest Thing in the World



"Now, Mr. Malone," he continued, "you are at my house... Your answer to the policeman was a surprise to me. It was so unnatural to a person of your profession. I really felt some good feeling on you. So I decided to continue our talk."

He turned away and started looking for something among papers on his desk. Then I saw a very old sketch-book in his hand.

"Now, I am going to tell you what happened to me in South America," said he. "You must stay quiet and listen carefully. And remember it is our private talk. Is that clear?"

"I can see it[1] and I have no choice."

"Well, you know that two years ago I visited South America. The banks of the Amazon are unknown land, and I had to

[1] **I can see it** — Я понимаю это очень хорошо

explore them and examine its fauna[1]. On my way back I spent a night at a small Indian village. The native people were Cucama Indians, very friendly indeed. They were really glad to see me back because I had helped some ill natives successfully. They explained to me that somebody needed my help. I followed the chief to one of his houses. When I came in, I found that the poor man was dead. It surprised me a lot that he was a white man, not an Indian. Some days ago he came to their village. He was dying of hunger. The man's bag was near him, and I examined it. His name was written on it — Maple White, Lake Avenue, Detroit. The man was an artist. There were some pictures, a paint-box, a box of coloured chalks, some brushes, that big bone, which you can see on my desk and a gun. Suddenly I saw something in his pocket. It was this sketch-book. I give it to you, and I ask you to examine it carefully."

I opened the book. On the first page there was a picture of a very fat man in a green jacket. Then small sketches of Indians and animals followed. I looked at Professor in surprise.

"Try the next page," said he.

It was a full-page sketch. I could see high hills covered with light-green trees. Above the hills there were dark red cliffs. They looked like an unbroken wall. Near the cliffs there was a pyramidal[2] rock. The was a great tree in its top. Above it all — a blue tropical sky.

"It looks nice," I said "but I can't say it is wonderful."

"Wonderful!" he cried. "Nobody on the earth has ever seen such a place. Now the next."

I turned the page, and gave a cry of surprise. There was a full-page picture of the most extraordinary[3] creature. It was a wild dream! The head was like that of a bird, the body that of a

[1] **fauna** — all the animals that live in the place

[2] **pyramidal** — in the form of a pyramid

[3] **extraordinary** — so unusual or surprising that nobody believes it to be real

large lizard. The tail was covered with sharp spikes. In front of this creature there was a little man who stood looking at it.

"Well, what do you think of that?" cried the Professor.

"It is monstrous!"

"But why did the artist draw such an animal?"

"Alcohol, I think."

"Oh, any more ideas?"

"Well, sir, what do you think of it?"

"The creature exists. The artist saw it with his own eyes."

"It is so difficult to agree with you but I think you are right." I said. I remembered our fight quite well. "However, this little man puzzles me."

"Look here!" he cried and pointed at the picture with a great hairy finger. "You see that plant behind the animal? It's not a small flower. It is a huge palm-tree. Don't you see that the artist sketched the man to give a scale[1]?"

"Oh dear!" I cried. "Then you think the monster was real..."

I turned over the pages but there was nothing more in the book.

"But we have got only one sketch by an American artist. And he is dead now. It proves nothing, does it?"

For an answer the Professor took a book from a shelf.

"There is a picture of great interest in this book. Ah, yes, here it is! Can you see the words: 'The Jurassic Dinosaur Stegosaurus. His leg is twice as tall as a man.' Well, what do you think of that?"

He gave me the book. The animal looked very much alike the monster from the sketch-book.

"Maybe, the American saw the same picture and carried it in his memory. Later, it appeared to him when he was ill."

"Very good," said the Professor, "I will now ask you to look at this bone."

[1] **to give a scale** — чтобы показать масштаб

He showed me the bone from the dead man's bag. It was about six inches long[1] and thicker than my finger.

"Whose bone is it?" asked the Professor.

I looked at it carefully.

"You don't need to be ashamed[2], young man. I think there is no zoologist who could name it," the Professor showed me a very little bone. "Look, this human bone looks the same but it is much smaller. Does it give you any idea of the size of the creature?"

"An elephant..."

"Don't! Don't talk of elephants in South America... Believe me, this is not a bone of a tapir or of any other living creature. It belongs to a very large, a very strong animal. You don't believe it, do you?"

"I am just very interested."

"Let's go on with my story. You see, I couldn't leave that land without getting an answer. I knew where the American came from. In Indian legends I found some stories of a strange land. You have heard of Curupuri? It is a terrible creature from the woods. Nobody can describe it, but it means terror along the Amazon. Now all natives name the same place where Curupuri lives. It was the same place from which the American came. I had to find out what it was."

"What did you do?"

"First, the natives didn't want to talk to me about that strange land. But with the help of presents, I got two natives to help me. After many adventures, we came to an unknown land. Would you look at this?"

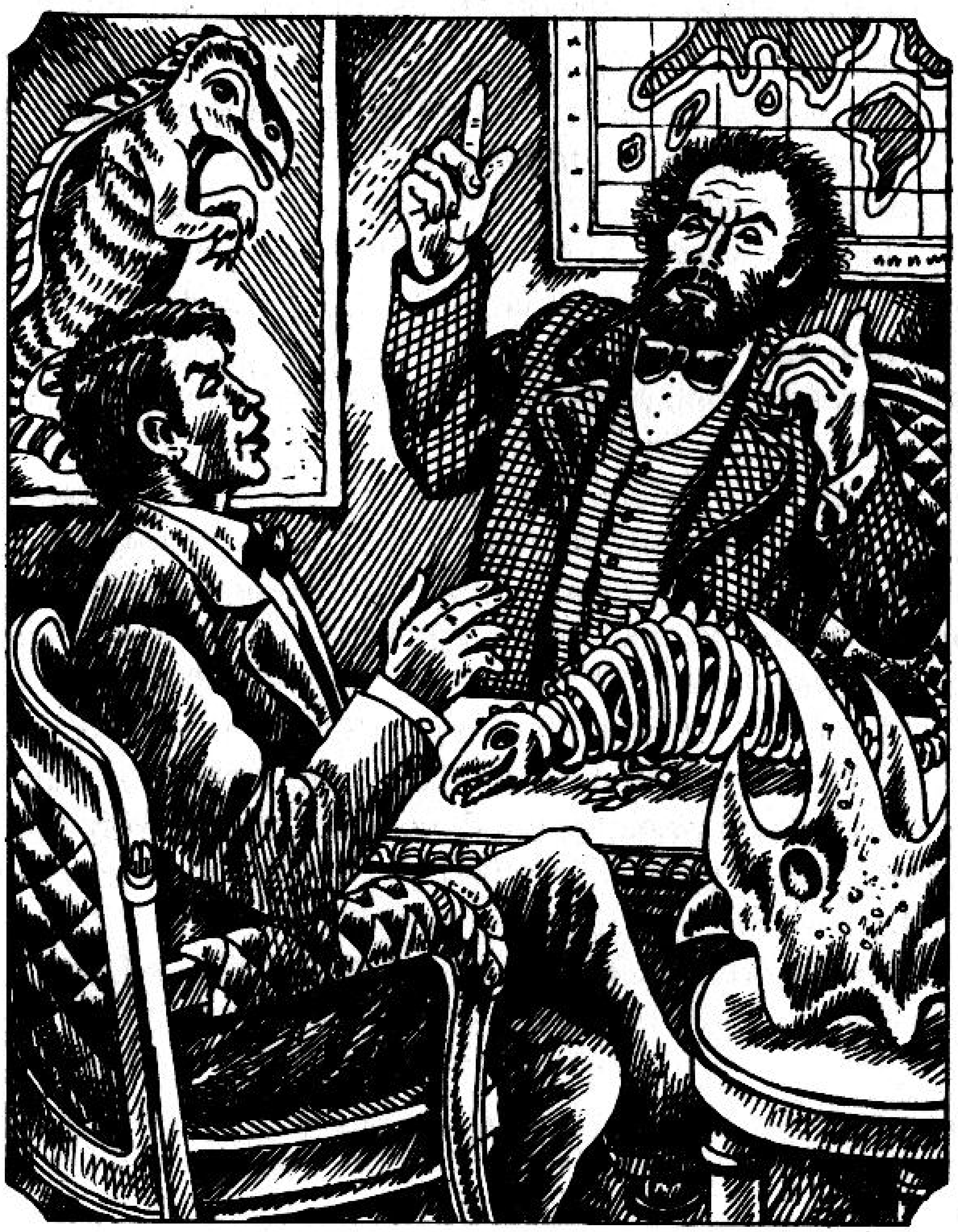
He gave me a photograph.

"It's not good because on our way back the boat was turned. This is the only photo I have got now."

[1] **six inches long** — примерно 17 сантиметров *(один дюйм равен 2,5 см)*

[2] **You don't need to be ashamed** — Вам нечего стыдиться





The photo was very bad and off-coloured[1]. I could hardly see anything in it. It was a dull grey landscape with a long and high wall of cliffs.

"I believe it is the same place as the picture from the sketch-book," I said.

"It is the same place," the Professor answered. "Now look here."

The next photo was very bad too. I could see a thin tall rock with a tall tree on its top. It was like the picture from the sketch-book.

"Now, will you please look at the rock more carefully? Do you see anything there, on the tree?"

"A large bird with a very big beak. Is it a pelican?"

"It is not a pelican. It's not a bird. You know, I shot that creature."

"You have it, then?"

"I had it. It was lost when our boat turned over. But I have got the part of its wing. Have a look!"

It looked like the wing of a large bat with a membrane[2].

"A monstrous bat!" I cried.

"Nothing of the sort," said the Professor. "The bats have three very long fingers with membranes between. Now, there is only one membrane here. So it cannot be a bat. But what is it?"

"I really do not know," said I.

"Here," he said and pointed to the picture of a flying monster, "is a nice picture of the pterodactyl, a flying reptile of the Jurassic period. Compare it with the picture in your hand."

The sketch, the photographs, the story, and now the bone.

[1] **off-coloured** — тусклый, бесцветный

[2] **membrane** — a very thin piece of skin that covers or connects parts of the body

"It's just the very biggest thing that I ever heard of!" cried I. "You are a Columbus of science[1] who has discovered a lost world. And then, sir, what did you do next?"

"It was the wet season, Mr. Malone, and I couldn't stay there longer. I explored some low parts of this cliff, but I couldn't find any way up. But I climbed the pyramidal rock. From its top I had a better idea of the plateau[2]. It was very large; I saw no end of it. Below, it is a jungly region, full of snakes and insects."

"Did you see any other living creatures?"

"No, sir, I did not; but at night we heard some very strange noises."

"But the creature that the American drew? How do you explain it?"

"We decided that he climbed the pyramidal rock and watched it from there. I am sure that it must be a very difficult way up. That's why we can't see the monsters walking around the country."

"But how did they come up there?"

"I'll try to explain it to you. South America is a granite continent. In this place, long time ago, there was a great, sudden volcanic upheaval. A large territory went up with all living creatures. What is the result? The laws of Nature stopped working. Those creatures still live there."

"You are absolutely right. Did you tell about your discovery to the scientists?"

"I did," said the Professor, "And their stupidity shocked me. I am not going to prove anything. When men like you came to me I couldn't meet them with a smile. I'm afraid you have noticed it," he smiled and continued.

[1] **Columbus of science** — Колумб науки *(человек, совершивший важнейшее открытие)*

[2] **plateau** — a large area of land that is higher than the land around it

"You know, tonight I'm going to try again. Mr. Waldron, a naturalist, will lecture at the Zoological Institute. They invited me to say some words of thanks to him. I hope I will be able to give a few ideas. Maybe, they would like to discuss them."

When I left Professor Challenger, I believed all his words. Besides, I knew I could make a sensational report for my newspaper.

When I arrived at the Institute, I could see a lot of people in the Great Hall. There were white-bearded professors, medical students and just ordinary people among them. It was rather noisy there, but what a roar of welcome broke[1] when Professor Challenger appeared!

Then Mr. Waldron, the famous lecturer, came onto the platform and the meeting began. That evening he spoke about the creation of the Earth. He told us of the Earth in its early days — a huge mass of hot gas high up the skies. Then he spoke of the cooling of our planet, the formation of the mountains and oceans. He told us of the mysterious origin of life. Did it appear from the elements of the planet? Did it arrive from outside? Even the best scientists knew nothing.

Then the lecturer told of animal life. He started with mollusks, other primitive sea creatures and fishes. He pictured the dramatic past: the drying of the seas, the lagoons full of sea animals, the first sea creatures coming out from the sea.

"That was the time, ladies and gentlemen, when a frightening family of monstrous reptiles came to life[2]. But they fortunately became extinct long before the first people."

"Question!" came a voice from the platform.

It surprised Mr. Waldron and he stopped his lecture for a moment, and then repeated slowly the words: "Which became extinct before the coming of man."

[1] **a roar of welcome broke** — разразился гром приветствий

[2] **came to life** — появилось

"Question!" he heard the voice again.

Waldron looked along the line of professors on the platform until he saw Professor Challenger.

"I see!" said Waldron, with a smile. "It is my friend Professor Challenger." And he went on and on. But when he spoke about extinct creatures, the audience heard the angry voice of the Professor.

"I must ask you to stop that!" said the lecturer and the hall got absolutely quiet.

Challenger stood up slowly.

"I must ask you, Mr. Waldron," the Professor said, "to stop saying what is against the facts[1]. Ladies and gentlemen, first of all I must thank Mr. Waldron for an interesting lecture, which we have just listened. But there are some ideas against the facts. He thinks some types of animal became extinct. Mr. Waldron is very wrong because he has never seen a prehistoric animal. They are not extinct. How do I know, you ask me? I know because I have visited their secret home. I know because I have seen some of them. Am I a liar? Did I hear someone say that I was a liar?"

Then the time of chaos came. The Professor cried:

"Well, you disagree with me. Will you choose one or more of you to go out and test my words? Would Mr. Summerlee take part in it?"

Mr. Summerlee, an old and famous Professor of Zoology, agreed.

I saw it was the right moment to take my chance. Suddenly I saw a tall, thin man, with dark red hair. He looked back at me with hard angry eyes.

"I will go, Mr. Chairman," I said. "My name is Edward Dunn Malone. I am the reporter of the Daily Gazette."

"What is your name, sir?" the chairman asked the man with dark red hair.

[1] **against the facts** — противоречит фактам

"I am Lord John Roxton. I have spent some years on the banks of the Amazon..."

"Lord John Roxton is a world-famous traveller," said the chairman; "at the same time we would like to have a member of the Press upon such an expedition."

"Then I can see," said Professor Challenger, "that these three gentlemen will start the expedition to test my words."

That was the end of the meeting and in a few minutes I left the hall. I was walking under the silvery lights of Regent Street, full of thoughts of Gladys and of my future, when suddenly somebody touched my shoulder. I turned and saw the tall, thin man, my companion on this strange expedition.

"Mr. Malone," said he. "Now we are companions. Perhaps you will visit me. There are one or two things that I'd like to discuss with you."

When I came into his house, I saw rich furs and strange carpets on the floor, expensive old and modern pictures, the heads of animals from every part of the world on the walls. Lord John Roxton was one of the greatest travellers of his day.

He sat opposite me and looked at me with his eyes of a cold light blue, the color of a mountain lake.

"By the way," he said, "what do you know of this Professor Challenger?"

"I never saw him till today."

"Well, neither did I[1]. It's funny that we will follow the orders from a man we don't know. He seemed an old bird.[2] His brothers of science don't like him. What is your interest in the expedition?"

I told him what had happened in the morning at the Professor's house. Roxton listened very carefully. Then he drew out a map of South America and put it on the table.

[1] **neither did I** — я тоже

[2] **He seemed an old bird.** — Я думаю, он стреляный воробей.

"I believe every word he said to you," said he. "South America is the greatest, richest, most wonderful land on this planet. People don't know it yet. I've been up and down it.[1] Well, I heard some Indian legends. Anything is possible in that country. There are some narrow waterways along which people travel. Outside that it is all darkness.[2] As the Professor said tonight, there are fifty thousand miles of waterway running through a forest. And that forest is as big as Europe. Why shouldn't something new and wonderful hide in such a country? And why shouldn't we find it out? Besides, there's a risk in every mile of it. We're all getting too soft nowadays. Give me the great land, with a gun in my hand and something to look for and I'll be the happiest man in the world!"

We had a long talk at his place. But I had to leave for work. When I came to the newspaper office, McArdle was waiting for me. We agreed that I should write at home full reports of my adventures.

[1] **I've been up and down it.** — Я исходил ее вдоль и поперек.
[2] **Outside that it is all darkness.** — Все, что за их пределами, — полная неизвестность.

Chapter Three

We Disappear into the Unknown



It was a wet, foggy morning in the late spring. Three people were walking to the big ship. Professor Summerlee walked slowly. He was already very sorry for himself.[1] Lord John Roxton walked bravely. His thin face looked really happy. As for myself, I hoped I looked happy too. Suddenly, there was a loud cry behind us.

It was Professor Challenger, he ran after us, red-faced and very angry.

"I have some words to tell you," he said. "Here is a letter. You will open it in the town Manaos, but not until the date and the hour written on it. Is that clear? Mr. Malone, I am not against your reports but I tell you to give no detail. You mustn't publish anything until your return. Good-bye."

[1] **He was already very sorry for himself.** — Ему уже было себя очень жаль.

We crossed the Atlantic without any problem. Then we started our way up the Amazon, a wide, slow river. At the town of Manaos we stayed at a hotel until the day marked on the letter. Before I reach the surprising events of that date I would like to say some words about my companions.

Professor Summerlee is a well-known scientist. He is tall and thin but he is never tired. He took part in some scientific expeditions, and the life of the camp and the canoe is not new to him. He is sixty-six but he is as strong as I am. In character he is always skeptical. From the beginning of our expedition he never stopped saying that Professor Challenger is an absolute liar. But when we landed from the ship, he forgot about Professor Challenger. He spends all days exploring the insect and bird world around. He is absolutely devoted to science.

Lord John Roxton always dresses very carefully and shaves at least once a day. Like most men of action, he is short in speech[1]. But he is always quick to answer a question or join a conversation. He talks in a quick and humorous way. His knowledge of South America is great. He believes Professor Challenger absolutely. He spoke little of his visits to Brazil and Peru, so I was very surprised that natives knew and loved him. They even told legends about him.

Lord John Roxton was a South Americomaniac[2]. He could not speak of that great country without great love, and this love was infectious[3].

"What is there?" he cried, pointing to the North. "Wood and swamps and jungle. Who knows what is over there? No white man has ever been there. The unknown is on every side. Who will say what is possible in such a country? Why should Challenger not be right?"

So, that's enough about my two white companions. Now

[1] **is short in speech** — говорит немного

[2] **was a South Americomaniac** — был абсолютно помешан на Южной Америке

[3] **infectious** — feelings that spread quickly

I'm going to tell you about the others. The first is a gigantic Negro named Zambo. He is a black Hercules, as strong as a horse, and about as intelligent[1]. At the town of Para two natives, Gomez and Manuel, joined us. They looked like two panthers: active and frightening. Both of them spent their lives in those places, which we were going to explore.

At last, after a week, the day had come and the hour. We were sitting round the table with the letter on it. Lord John put his watch on the table.

"We have seven more minutes," he said.

"Let's open it now!" said Summerlee.

"Oh, come, there must be rules in every game!" said Lord John. "It's old man Challenger's show![2]"

"I don't know what is inside this letter. If there is nothing important, I would catch the first ship and go back to England. I wouldn't like to follow the instructions of a London lunatic[3]. Now, Roxton, it is time."

Lord John opened the letter and took out a paper. It was as white as snow. Not a word on it. We looked at each other and Professor Summerlee went laughing.

"So," he cried. "he is a liar! We are returning home. Then we will report him as a champion liar."

"May I come in?" came a voice from the door. That voice! Professor Challenger, in a round, boyish hat — Challenger, with his hands in his pockets — came into the room.

"I'm sorry I am some minutes late," said he, looking at his watch. "But I was sure you would never open it[4]. I wanted to join you before the hour. Professor Summerlee, have you got a chance to laugh at me?"

[1] **about as intelligent** — почти такой же умный

[2] **It's old man Challenger's show!** — Парадом командует старик Челленджер!

[3] **lunatic** — someone who behaves in a crazy and stupid way

[4] **you would never open it** — вы не откроете его

Professor Challenger shook hands with me and Lord John, said "Hello" to Professor Summerlee, and sat into an arm-chair.

"As to the small trick, which I played on you... From the very beginning I decided to join you. I didn't tell you about it because I didn't want to travel with you. But from now on you are in safe hands. I'll be your guide. Get ready! We make an early start in the morning."

So we did. For three days we sailed up the Amazon. It was so wide that from its center we couldn't see its banks. On the fourth day we turned into a smaller river. After two days' voyage we came to an Indian village. Then the Professor sent back our ship, because there were rapids ahead. He also told us that we were coming to the door of the unknown country.

The very next day we made our start on two canoes. For two days we made our way up a river, dark in colour, but very clear. We could see the river bottom. Twice we came across rapids, and had to carry our luggage.

How shall I ever forget its mystery? The trees were the highest. They looked like Gothic cathedrals. Their branches formed the green roof. Sometimes golden sunshine went downwards among the darkness. We walked quietly on the thick, soft carpet of fallen leaves. We felt important as we feel in Westminster Abbey. The effect was as a dream of fairyland.

In these great woods the dark means death. And every plant makes its way up. Everything tries to get sunshine. Climbing plants are monstrous, but the others learn the art of climbing, too.

The animal life was rather poor. But above our heads there was a world of snake and monkey and bird. They lived in the sunshine, and looked down in wonder at our little dark figures. Early in the morning and in the evening the monkeys and parrots cried together. But during the hot hours of the day only the buzz of insects filled our ears.

About three o'clock in the afternoon we came to a very dangerous rapid. It was the place where the canoe of Professor

Challenger turned over.

Then we went more than ten miles. Suddenly Professor Challenger showed us a tree on the opposite bank of the river.

"What do you think of that?" he asked.

"It is a palm," said Summerlee.

"You are right. But it is not just a palm, it is my landmark[1]. There is a secret opening on the other side of the river. There is no break in the trees. That is the wonder and the mystery of it. That is my private gate into the unknown."

It was indeed a wonderful place. We went through that gate. We found ourselves[2] in a small quiet river, running over a sandy bottom.

The thick branches met over our heads, and through this tunnel in a golden light flowed the green, shiny river. It was as clear as crystal. It went under its leafy archway[3]. It was an avenue to a land of wonders.

Now we could see animals more often. We met hundreds of little black monkeys, with snow-white teeth and smiling eyes. Once a dark funny tapir looked at us from the bushes. Then he run away through the forest. Once the yellow puma appeared among the trees, and its green hateful eyes quickly looked at us. There were thousands of birds. Blue, red, and white, they were sitting on every branch along the river. For three days we went through the tunnel of green sunshine. The deep peace of this strange waterway was fantastic!

On the third day the river became so small that we couldn't go on our journey in the canoes. We drew the canoes up and hid them among the bushes. Then we packed our food and started on our way on foot.

Soon the small river disappeared in a great green swamp. Clouds of mosquitoes filled the air around. But we went on

[1] **landmark** — something that is easy to recognise, it will help you know where you are

[2] **We found ourselves** — Мы оказались

[3] **archway** — a passage under an arch

walking. On the second day after leaving our canoes we found that the country had changed. Our road was all way up, and the woods became thinner and lost their tropical beauty. The tall trees of the Amazonian forest gave place to[1] the coco palms.

On the ninth day, the trees became even smaller. The bamboo was so thick that we had to cut our way through it. It was very tiring and monotonous. Even at the most open places, I could only see the back of Lord John's cotton jacket in front of me. Yellow walls of bamboos were on either side. I do not know what kind of creatures lived there. Sometimes we heard large, heavy animals near us. Just as night fell we went out of bamboos, and formed our camp.

Early next morning we found that the character of the country had changed again. Tree ferns[2] were growing everywhere.

Suddenly Professor Challenger stopped and pointed to the right. And at the distance of a mile we saw something. It looked like a great grey bird. It was flying very low. Then it disappeared among the tree-ferns.

"Did you see it?" cried Challenger. "Summerlee, did you see it?"

"What it was?" he asked.

"A pterodactyl."

Summerlee laughed. "It was a stork!"

Challenger was too angry to speak. Lord John came to me and said:

"I am not sure, but it wasn't a bird."

Next day we came into a place covered with palm-trees, and then we could see the line of high red cliffs.

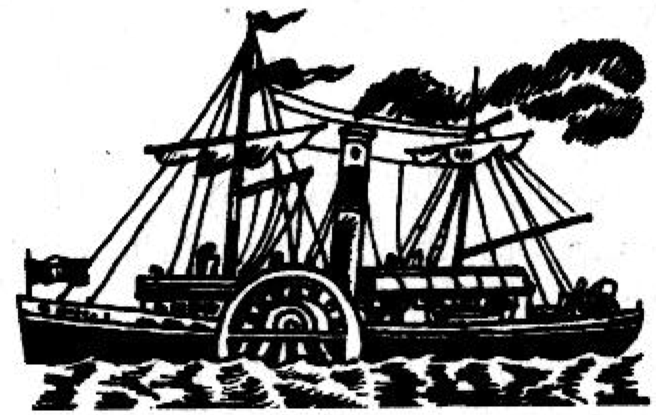
There it lies in front of my eyes. There can be no question that it is the same. Challenger looks proud, and Summerlee is silent, but still skeptical.

[1] **gave place to** — уступили место

[2] **Tree ferns** — древовидные папоротники

Chapter Four

Who Could Have Foreseen It?



A terrible thing has happened to us. I think our troubles will never end. We are as far from any human help as if we were on the moon. My three companions are men of great courage. There lies our one and only hope.[1]

When I finished my last letter, we were seven miles from red cliffs. That night we made our camp near them. The cliffs above us were too dangerous and high, so the way up was out of the question[2]. Close to us was the high thin rock. It was as high as the plateau, and there grew one large tree.

"That is the tree," said Professor Challenger, "where the pterodactyl was sitting. I climbed half way up the rock before I shot him."

[1] **There lies our one and only hope.** — В этом, и только в этом, вся наша надежда.

[2] **the way up was out of the question** — о подъеме мы и не думали

When Challenger was speaking of the pterodactyl, I looked at Professor Summerlee. For the first time I didn't see any skepticism in his eyes.

"Of course," said Challenger, "Professor Summerlee will understand that when I speak of a pterodactyl I mean a stork. You know, it is the kind of stork which has membranous wings and teeth in its beak."

All the morning we spent thinking over the way to climb the plateau.

"I think we will travel along the cliff to the west," said Challenger. "We shall travel round it until we find an easy way up it, or come back to our camp. I told you that there must be the way up."

"How do you know that, sir?" asked Summerlee.

"Because the American Maple White actually climbed it. Or where could he see the monster?"

"I have not seen any living monsters there."

The ground at the foot of the cliff was rocky and broken[1]. Suddenly we came up on an old camp.

"It must be Maple White's," said Challenger.

Along the cliff there grew a high bamboo. It was twenty feet high, with sharp, strong tops. It looked like a wall of spears. Suddenly I saw something white. I looked inside and found myself near a skeleton. There were only small pieces of clothes left, but it had boots on its bony feet. It was very clear that the dead man was a European.

"Who can he be?" asked Lord John. "Poor devil! Every bone in his body is broken."

"I know who he was — Maple White's companion, an American. And we are now looking at him," said Professor Challenger.

"And we know," said Lord John, "how he met his death."

[1] **rocky and broken** — каменистое и неровное

We stood silently round the skeleton and realized the truth of Lord John Roxton's words. No doubt, he had fallen from the top. But had he fallen? Or ..?

We continued our way along the cliffs in silence. In five miles we saw no break and no hole in them. And then suddenly we noticed something on the rocks. It filled us with new hope. That was an arrow drawn in chalk. It pointed westwards.

"Maple White again," said Professor Challenger. "He was sure the others would follow him."

In five more miles we saw another white arrow on the rocks. It pointed upward. We had had no food for many hours, and were very tired, but we couldn't stop now and started our way up the narrow tunnel. Suddenly we saw an opening of a cave.

When we reached it, we found another arrow near it. No doubt, here was the place, where Maple White and his companion started their way up. We were too excited to return to the camp and made our first exploration at once. Lord John had an electric light and we followed him. First the cave ran straight into the rock. Finally we found ourselves[1] climbing upon our hands and knees. Suddenly we heard a voice of Lord Roxton.

"It's blocked!" said he. "The roof has fallen in!"

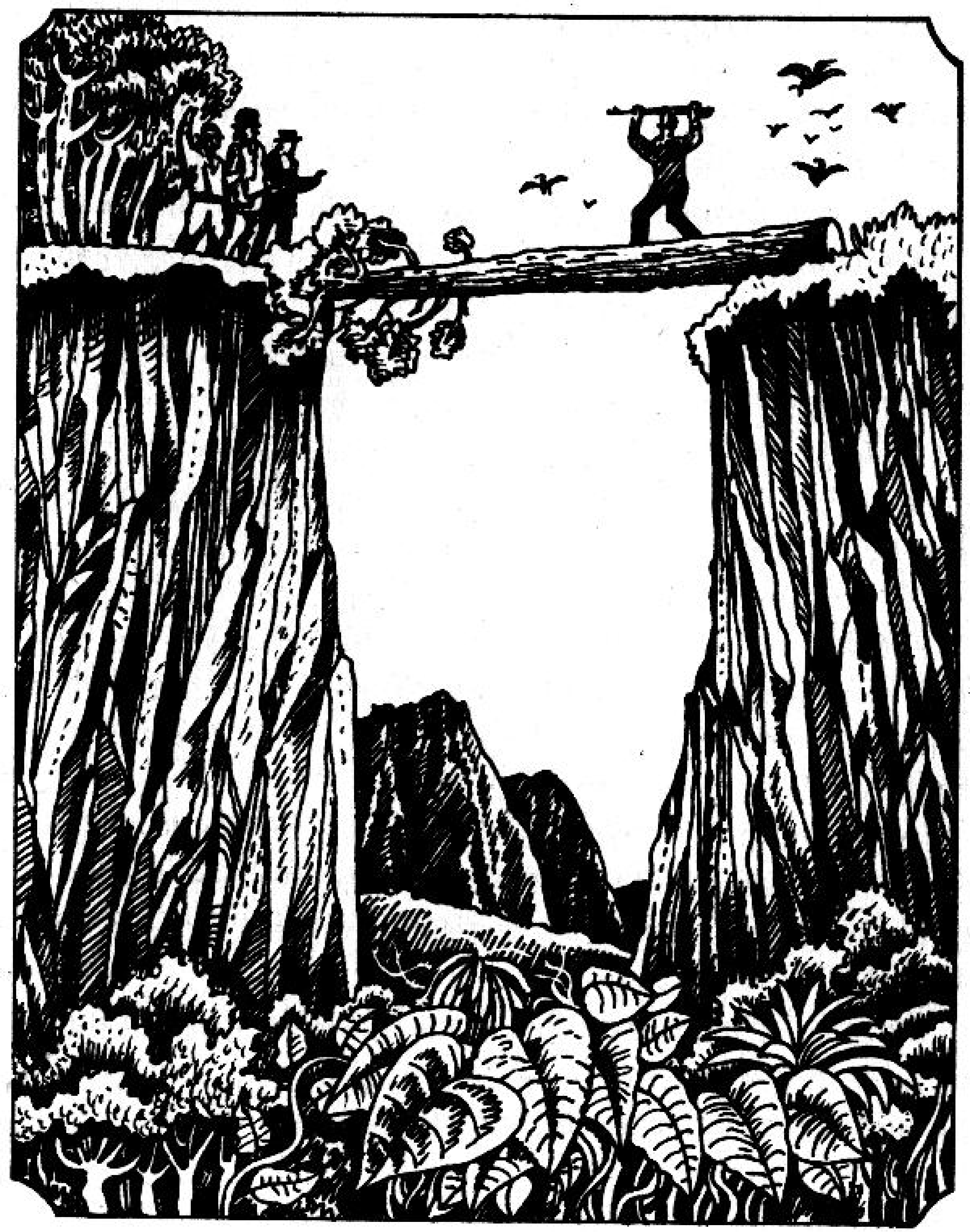
The way of Maple White didn't exist any more. So we had to get out of the cave. And yet, as we looked up at that beautiful green world only a few hundreds of feet above our heads, nobody thought of returning to London.

In our camp we discussed the situation and decided to continue out way round the plateau. We hoped to find some other way to the top. We made a long march that day but found nothing.

We noticed a great change both in the temperature and in the plants. Some of those horrible tropical insects disappeared. We could see few palms but many tree-ferns.

[1] **we found ourselves** — очутились





That night — I am still speaking of the first day near the plateau — it happened for the first time.

Well, that night Lord John killed an ajouti — which is a small, pig-like animal. We were sitting round the fire and cooking it. It was rather cold after dark and we got close to the fire. The night was moonless. Well, suddenly out of the darkness, out of the night, there appeared something with a sound like an aeroplane. We were covered for a moment by something. We felt leathery wings on our faces. I saw a long, snake-like neck, an angry, red, hungry eye, and a great sharp beak, filled with little teeth. The next moment it was gone — and so was our dinner. A huge black shadow flew up into the air. For a moment the monster wings covered the stars, and then it disappeared behind the cliff. We all sat in silence round the fire. It was Summerlee who was the first to speak.[1]

"Professor Challenger," said he, "sir, I hope that you will forget what is past[2]."

And the two men for the first time shook hands. We were so happy to see them smiling at each other. Soon we forgot about our stolen supper.

During the next three days we didn't see any prehistoric animals. We went on and on across the stony desert. Then it turned into green-grey swamps full of many wild birds. We saw many Jaracaca snakes, the most poisonous and aggressive in South America. They always attack man at first sight. Again and again these horrible creatures came towards us across the swamp and we could feel safe from them only because we kept our guns ready all the time. I will never forget the terrible place. There were too many of them, so we ran as fast as we could. I shall always remember as we looked back how far behind we

[1] **It was Summerlee who was the first to speak.** — Именно Саммерли заговорил первым.

[2] **you will forget what is past** — вы предадите прошлое забвению

could see the heads and necks of our horrible snakes among the reeds. Jaracaca Swamp we named it in the map.

On the sixth day we found ourselves back at the first camp, near the high thin rock. We were tired and unhappy. It was clear that there was no way up the plateau.

What should we do now? Our food will come to an end one day. In two or three months the rains will start and we will have to leave our camp. No wonder that we spent a sleepless night. I remember that when I was falling asleep I saw Challenger sitting by the fire. He was in the deepest thought. He didn't turn his head to my "good-night".

But it was a very different Challenger who said "good-morning" to us. His eyes were shining. He looked very excited and absolutely happy.

"Eureka![1] he cried. "Gentlemen, the problem is solved."

"You have found a way up?"

For answer he pointed to the high thin rock. Challenger told us that it was possible to climb that rock. But a horrible abyss was between it and the plateau.

"We can never get across," I said.

"We can at least reach the top of the rock," said he. "When we are up, I will show you that the resources[2] of my mind are endless."

After breakfast we started our way up. It was not a very difficult task, though there were moments that made my hair move on my head. I had never climbed rocks before. Challenger was a great help to us. He was the first to reach the top. Then he fixed the rope round the big tree. It helped us to climb that stony wall until we found ourselves upon the small grassy platform.

[1] **eureka** — you say this word to show how happy you are that you have discovered the answer to a problem, or found something

[2] **resources** — ability in dealing with practical problems

We were standing up there and looking around. There were endless tropical forests around us. The plateau was as high as the rock we were standing on. It seemed to be very near to us. But it was impossible to reach it.

"Just look at it," said Professor Summerlee.

I turned, and found that he was examining the tree with great interest. Its trunk, branches and small dark-green leaves.

"It is our one and only hope," said Challenger.

"A bridge!" cried Lord John, "a bridge!"

"Exactly, my friends, a bridge! I have already told to our young friend here that Challenger is at his best when his back is to the wall[1]. That's the best way to find the way out. We needed a bridge. Here it is!"

It was a brilliant idea. I made some deep cuts in the tree and the tree fell with a loud crash. That was our bridge to the unknown!

It didn't take Professor Challenger long to cross the abyss. As soon as he was at the other side, he cried: "At last!" Everything around him was quiet, only a strange, many-coloured bird flew up from under his feet and disappeared among the trees.

Summerlee was the second. I came next, and tried hard not to look down into the horrible abyss over which I was passing. As to Lord John, he walked across — actually walked! He must have nerves of iron.

And there we were, the four of us, in the dreamland, the lost world of Maple White. To all of us it seemed to be the moment of our triumph.

We started our way inside the thick bushes, when there came a terrible crash from behind us. We ran back. The bridge was gone!

Far down at the bottom of the cliff we saw it broken to pieces. In a moment we saw the face of Gomez, our servant.

[1] **when his back is to the wall** — когда его припирают к стенке

He was standing on the grassy platform across the abyss. But there was no smile but hatred on his face.

"Lord Roxton!" he shouted. "Lord John Roxton!"

"Well," said our companion, "here I am."

Laughter came across the abyss.

"Yes, there you are, you English dog, and there you will stay for ever! I have waited and waited, and now has come my chance. You found it hard to get up; you will find it harder to get down. When you are dying[1], think of Lopez, whom you shot five years ago. I am his brother." These were his last words, he disappeared and all was quiet.

We could see him getting down the rock; but before he could reach the ground Lord John had run along the abyss with the gun in his hands. Then we heard a sound of his gun and then the sound of the falling body.

"I have been a fool," Roxton said, "I have brought you all into this trouble. I have forgotten that these people have long memories."

Gomez was dead but we were in the greatest trouble. We had been natives of the world[2]; now we were natives of the plateau. We could see the way, which led to the canoes. Beyond the violet horizon was the river, which led back to civilization. But there was no bridge between them, between us and our past lives.

For the moment we could only sit among the bushes and wait for the coming of Zambo, our true servant. At last his figure appeared on the top of the rock. "What must I do now?" he cried. "Whenever you come, you will always find me here. But I can't keep Indians. They say Curupuri live here, and they will go home."

[1] **When you are dying** — Когда ты будешь умирать

[2] **We had been natives of the world** — Когда-то мы были частью целого мира

First of all, Zambo threw one end of the rope across the abyss. Then he brought up some food and some other necessary things. We got it across the abyss with the help of the rope.

We made our camp and had a cold supper. We decided not to make any fire. The next day we would start the exploration of this strange land. Our position is hopeless. I only hope you will get this letter one day.

Chapter Five

The Most Wonderful Things Have Happened



The most wonderful things have happened and are happening to us. I have only one pencil and five old note-books. But as long as I can move my hand, I will go on writing everything down. We are the only men to see such things.

Our first morning on the plateau came. First we had to choose the right place for our future camp. We found a small clearing with thick trees around. There were some big rocks in the center, with a small river near by. We cut down some bushes and tree branches and put them round in a circle. This was our camp. Fort Challenger, we called it.

It was before noon when we finished, but it wasn't very hot. One huge gingko[1] tree, the tallest of all, shot its great branches[2]

[1] **gingko** — a kind of a tropical tree
[2] **shot its great branches** — раскинуло свои огромные ветви

over our fort. In its shade we continued our discussion. Lord John gave us his ideas.

"We are safe, till nobody sees us," said he. "From the time they know we are here, our troubles will begin. So our game is to stay quiet for a time and explore the land. We should have a good look at our neighbours before they notice us."

"But we must go forward," I said.

"Oh yes, my boy! We will. But we must never go so far that we can't get back to our camp. And we must never, unless it is life or death[1], fire off our guns."

"But you fired yesterday," said Summerlee.

"Well, I had no choice. By the way, what shall we call this place? I think we must give it a name."

There were some ideas, more or less happy, but Challenger's was final. "It can only have one name," said he. "It is called after the man who discovered it. It is Maple White Land." Maple White Land it became, and so it is named in that map, which has become my special task.

We knew that some unknown creatures lived there, and the pictures from Maple White's sketch-book showed that more terrible and more dangerous monsters could appear. We also remembered the skeleton with broken bones and the bamboos gone through them[2]. Perhaps, there were some human beings here, on the plateau.

We left our camp and followed the little river, and very soon we came across some real wonders. We went through a thick forest, and the trees were unknown to me. Summerlee recognized them as forms, which disappeared long time ago.

Suddenly Lord John, who was walking first, stopped us.

"Look at this!" said he. "This must be the track of the father of all birds! And it is fresh! See, here is the track of a little one!"

[1] **unless it is life or death** — если только не идет речь о жизни и смерти
[2] **the bamboos gone through them** — пронзивший их бамбук

We saw a huge three-toed track in the soft ground before us. We all stopped to examine it. The foot was much larger than an ostrich's and the size of the monstrous creature must be enormous. We also saw smaller tracks of the same form running parallel to the large ones.

"But what do you think of this?" cried Professor Summerlee, pointing to the huge track.

"Wealden!" cried Challenger, in an ecstasy. "I've seen them in the Wealden clay[1]. This creature walks on three-toed feet, and from time to time puts one of its five-fingered front-feet on the ground. Not a bird, my dear Roxton — not a bird."

"A beast?"

"No; a reptile — a dinosaur."

His words died away, and we all stood silently. We followed the tracks and came to an opening, and in the middle there were five of the most extraordinary creatures. We hid among the bushes and watched the creatures with greatest interest.

There were five of them, two were big and three very young. The babies were as big as elephants. The large animals were much bigger. All five were sitting up, balancing on their wide, powerful tails and their huge three-toed hind-feet[2]. They pulled down the branches with their small five-fingered front-feet. They ate the leaves with great appetite. They looked like monstrous kangaroos, twenty feet in length, and with skins like black crocodiles.

I do not know how long we stayed looking at this wonderful spectacle. I looked at my friends. Lord John was standing near me. His hunter's soul was shining from his eyes. The two professors were silent. They took each other by the hand, and stood like two little children in the presence of a wonder.

"What will they say in England of this?" Summerlee cried at last.

[1] **Wealden clay** — Вельдский слой

[2] **three-toed hind-feet** — трехпалые задние ноги

"My dear Summerlee, I will tell you exactly what they will say in England," said Challenger. "They will say that you are a liar and a scientific charlatan, exactly as you and others said of me."

"Photographs?"

"They would call them fakes, Summerlee!"

"Species?"

"Ah, there we may have them![1] August the twenty-eighth — the day we saw five live iguanodons in an opening of Maple White Land. Write it down in your diary, my young friend, and send it to your newspaper."

"*What* did you say they were?" asked Lord John.

"Iguanodons," said Summerlee. "You can find their footmarks in Kent, and in Sussex. The South of England was full of them when there were a lot of green leaves there. The climate has changed, and the monsters died out. Not here."

"I'd like to have its head on my wall," said Lord John. "My God, how some of my friends will turn beautiful peagreen[2] when they see it!"

I had the feeling of mystery and danger around us. Those monstrous creatures — iguanodons — were not dangerous at all. But in this world of wonders what other creatures live? Peaceful ones? Or dangerous? I knew little of prehistoric life, but I remembered one book. It spoke of creatures that lived on our lions and tigers as a cat lives on mice.

In our first morning in the new country we learnt about great dangers around us. It was a dreadful adventure — the swamp of pterodactyls.

We went very slowly through the woods. Every moment our professors fell down with a cry of wonder, before some flower or insect of a new type. We travelled about two or three miles,

[1] **Ah, there we may have them!** — А, вот тут-то они не отвертятся!

[2] **will turn beautiful peagreen** — позеленеют от зависти

and then we came upon a large opening in the trees. Behind thick trees we could see a lot of grey rocks. We slowly started towards them, and suddenly heard a strange low sound. It came from some place right in front of us. Lord John held up his hand as a signal to stop. Then he came up to the rocks. I looked at his face and understood that he saw something wonderful but dangerous.

When we looked over the rocks we could see hundreds of pterodactyls. Some hundreds of yards below we noticed their young ones. Terrible mothers were sitting on their leathery, yellowish eggs[1]. From this noisy mass of dreadful reptiles came the shocking noise. It filled the air. The horrible smell turned us sick. But above, sitting on their own stone, tall, grey, more like dead and dried than alive, sat their horrible fathers, absolutely silent. From time to time they moved their red eyes and caught a dragon-fly with their sharp beaks. Their large, membranous wings were closed and they sat like gigantic old women covered with awful grey coats. Large and small, not less than a thousand of these ugly creatures were there.

Our professors would like to stay there all day. They got a chance to study the life of a prehistoric age. They pointed out the fish and dead birds lying about among the rocks. I heard them saying they had found at last why the bones of this flying dragon are found in such great numbers in the certain areas. It was now seen that, like penguins, they lived in great companies.

But the moment Challenger showed his head over the rock, he nearly brought the most terrible death on us all[2]. In a second the nearest creature gave a cry and flew up into the air. In a moment the whole circle of pterodactyls rose one after the other and sailed off into the sky. It was wonderful to see about a hun-

[1] **leathery, yellowish eggs** — кожистые, желтоватые яйца

[2] **he nearly brought the most terrible death on us all** — он едва не навлек на всех нас большую беду

dred of dreadful creatures above our heads. Soon we realized the danger. At first the pterodactyls flew round in a circle. Then, the flight grew lower and the circle was getting smaller, until the dry loud sound of their grey wings filled the air. The wings of those nearest to us nearly touched our faces. They attacked us. Summerlee gave a cry and put his hand to his face. I felt a strong pain at the back of my neck. At the same moment I heard the sound of Lord John's gun, and saw one of the creatures with a broken wing on the ground. With a wide-opened beak and bloody eyes it looked like a devil in an old picture. Other pterodactyls flew higher at the sound, and were circling above our heads.

"Now," cried Lord John, "now for our lives![1]"

We ran through the wood, and the pterodactyls attacked us again and again. Summerlee was tired out and fell on the ground. We put him up and ran to the trees. There we were safe, because the creatures couldn't fly among the trees. On our way back to the camp, we saw them for a long time. They were flying in the deep blue sky, round and round. Their eyes were following us.

"I was sorry to fire my gun," said Lord John. "But now, we should get back to our camp. I wonder if the monsters have poison in their beaks."

At last we reached our camp. We thought that our adventures were over. The entrance of Fort Challenger and the walls were unbroken, but we understood at once that some strange and powerful creature had visited it. All our things were around.[2] Again the feeling of horror came on us, and we looked round at the dark shadows. How good it was when we heard the voice of Zambo and saw him sitting and smiling at us.

[1] **now for our lives!** — бегите изо всех сил!

[2] **All our things were around.** — Все наши вещи были раскиданы повсюду.

"Everything is OK, Mr. Challenger!" he cried. "I will stay here. You will always find me when you want."

Late in the evening the professors started their scientific dispute again. I didn't want to listen to it and moved away. I was sitting smoking on a fallen tree, when Lord John came up to me.

"I say, Malone," he said, "Do you remember that place where those flying monsters live?"

"Very clearly."

"Did you notice ground round the water?"

"It was of blue colour. It looked like clay. What of that?" I asked.

"Oh, nothing, nothing," said he. Once again that night I heard him talking to himself: "Blue clay, blue clay!"

Chapter Six

For Once I Was the Hero



Lord John Roxton was right about the poison in pterodactyl's beaks. Next morning Summerlee and I were in great pain[1]. Challenger's leg hurt and he couldn't walk. We stayed in our camp all day. All day long Lord John was making our camp walls thicker and stronger. I remember that during the whole long day I felt somebody watching us. I was sure that something terrible was going to happen.

That night (our third night in Maple White Land) we were all sleeping round our fire when suddenly the most terrible cry woke us. It was as loud as the sound of train. It was filled with agony and horror. And then, under this high, ringing sound there was another, a low laugh. For three or four minutes the

[1] **Summerlee and I were in great pain** — Саммерли и я чувствовали себя полностью разбитыми

frightening duet[1] continued. Then it stopped as suddenly as it began. For a long time we sat in silence.

"What was it?" I asked.

"We shall know in the morning," said Lord John. "It happened near to our camp."

"A prehistoric tragedy has just finished. The greater dragon killed the smaller one," said Challenger.

Summerlee raised his hand. "Hush!" he cried. "Can you hear it?"

There came a deep sound. We could hear soft but heavy steps. An animal was slowly coming to our camp. Then it stopped near us.

In the deep shadow of the tree there was a deeper shadow. It was no higher than a horse, but we understood it was a monster. Once, I thought I saw two terrible, greenish eyes.

"I believe it is going to jump!" I said.

"Don't fire! Don't fire!" told Lord John. He picked up a burning branch, and ran towards it. He threw the burning wood into its face. For one moment I noticed a horrible mask of a giant toad. Its open mouth was covered with fresh blood. In a moment our terrible visitor was gone.

"I was sure it was afraid of the fire," said Lord John, laughing, as he came back.

"Well, I think that we are lucky! What was he, then?"

Our professors looked at each other. They couldn't name the creature but they were sure it was a meat-eater.

We decided to go to our broken sleep but from that time on we never did it without a watchman.

In the morning we discovered the reason of the dreadful cry. The iguanodon glade was the scene of a horrible tragedy. There was blood and great pieces of meet all over the green grass. We decided that some animals were killed, but

[1] **duet** — two people acting together

later we understood that one aggressive animal killed the weaker creature. All this blood and meat came from one iguanodon.

"These can be the marks of a sabre-toothed tiger, but that night we saw a creature of a larger size and more reptilian in character[1]. I think it was allosaurus," said Professor Challenger.

"Sh-h! The less noise the better," said Lord Roxton. "We don't know who or what is near us."

I have told you about the terrors of Maple White Land; but there was another side of this land[2]. In the morning we walked among lovely flowers. In many places the ground was covered with them. We walked on that wonderful flower carpet and the smell was so strong that we felt sick with its sweetness. Many of the trees had their branches filled with sweet juicy fruit. In the jungle we saw strange footmarks of the iguanodon. Once in a glade we saw some of these great creatures.

One evening we talked about our future.

"We must find a way out of this land. That's what we must be doing now[3], tomorrow and all the time," Summerlee said, "But I can see that you are all thinking about getting into this country. I am sure that we should be trying to get out of it[4]."

"I am surprised, sir," said Challenger, "that a man of science has such ideas. You are in a land, which is new to the whole world. Do you want to leave it before we have explored it? Shame on you, Professor Summerlee."

"I think," Lord John said, "it's not the right time for going back to London."

[1] **more reptilian in character** — похож скорее на рептилию

[2] **but there was another side of this land** — но было и нечто другое

[3] **That's what we must be doing now** — Вот чем мы сейчас должны быть заняты

[4] **that we should be trying to get out of it** — что нам следует попытаться выбраться отсюда





"I will never walk into the office of my paper," said I. "I won't leave this land behind me. But why are we discussing it? We can't get down, even if we wanted."

"There is no reason to go on exploration," Summerlee said. "Can you remember that we came here on a special mission? We know that Professor Challenger was right about the prehistoric animals. That means we have finished our work. As to the detail... I am sure that only a large expedition can be successful at it. Should we try to do it ourselves? The only result must be that we shall never return back home. We will never bring the important information to science. Professor Challenger found a way for getting us on to this plateau. Let's ask him to get us back to the world."

He was right and everybody knew it, even Challenger nodded his head.

"I agree with our colleague that we should think about our return. But I absolutely refuse to leave the Maple White land before we make its map."

"We have spent two long days here," Professor Summerlee said, "but we don't know anything about its geography. We know that it is covered with thick woods. It will take us months to cross it and to explore it. There is no mountain to climb and see the whole land."

Then a brilliant idea came to my mind. The large gingko tree was growing near us. It was the highest — so it was a watchtower! I have always been a good tree-climber.

"My God, young boy, you are a genius!" said Lord John. "Be quick! It will get dark in an hour. Don't forget to take your notebook. You will get a chance to make a sketch of the place."

It wasn't very difficult to climb that tree. There were a lot of thick branches and soon I was high up the tree and my friends were far below. There was nothing but green leaves around me. The tree was a real giant. I looked up and saw nothing but leaves above my head.

Suddenly I saw something thick and bush-like[1] on the branch. I tried to have a more careful look at it, and I nearly fell out of the tree in my surprise and horror.

A face was looking at me. It was a human face. It was a long, whitish face with a flat nose. The eyes were angry and frightening. For a moment I read hatred in its eyes, then fear followed. There came a crash of broken branches because the creature jumped wildly down the tree. I saw a hairy body like that of a pig.

"What's the matter?" shouted Roxton from below. "Anything wrong with you?"

"Did you see it?" I cried.

"We heard a sound. What was it?"

I was so shocked with that ape-man that I wanted to climb down and tell everything to my friends. But then I decided to go on my way up. The leaves were getting thinner around me. I learned, from the wind upon my face, that I was above all the trees. I looked down and saw the most wonderful panorama of this strange country.

The evening was bright and clear, so I could see the whole plateau. It was oval, about thirty miles long and twenty miles wide. There was a lake in the centre. It was green and beautiful in the evening light. The sandbanks looked golden in the soft sunshine. I saw something long and dark, too large for alligators and too long for canoes. With my glass I could see that they were alive.

In the wood I could see the glade of the iguanodons and the swamp of the pterodactyls. On the opposite side, the plateau looked different. There were basalt cliffs and along the base of these red cliffs I could see many dark holes, which looked like caves. At the opening of one of these there was something white. I sat on the branch making the plan. Then I climbed down to my friends.

[1] **bush-like** — похожее на куст

For once I was the hero[1] of the expedition. I had the plan, which would save us a month's blind walking among unknown dangers. Each of them shook my hand.

But before they discussed the details of my map I told them of the ape-man among the branches.

"He has been there all the time," I said.

"How do you know that?" asked Lord John.

"Because I have always had a feeling that something was watching us. I told you about it, Professor Challenger."

"Our young friend certainly said something of the kind. Tell me, now," he added, "did you notice if the creature had a tail?"

"No."

"Did it use its feet as hands?"

"I do not think it could move so fast among the branches without it..."

"In South America there are some thirty-six kinds of monkeys. But the ape is unknown here. It is clear that you have seen it. The question is whether he is more closely to the ape or the man. Maybe it is the 'missing link'[2]. This problem is of great importance."

"It is nothing of the sort," said Summerlee. "Now that, thanks to Mr. Malone, we have got our map. And now we must get out of this terrible place. We must leave the further exploration[3] to others."

"Well," said Challenger, "I'll feel much better when the results of our expedition reach England. I have no idea how we will get down. But I have never had any problem, which my brain couldn't solve. I promise you that tomorrow I will find the way out."

[1] **For once I was the hero** — Вот когда я стал героем

[2] **'missing link'** — an animal similar to humans that may have existed at the time when apes developed into humans

[3] **further exploration** — дальнейшее исследование

That evening the first map of the lost world was made. Every detail, which I had noticed from my watch-tower, was put down. Challenger's pencil stopped near the great spot — the lake.

"What shall we call it?" he asked. "It's up to you, young friend, to name the lake. You saw it first, and, if you choose to put 'Lake Malone' on it, no one has a better right."

"Then, let it be named Lake Gladys."

Challenger looked at me smiling, and shook his great head. "Boys will be boys[1]," said he. "Lake Gladys let it be."

[1] **Boys will be boys** — *зд.* Ах, молодость, молодость!

Chapter Seven

It Was Dreadful in the Forest



I was very excited by the adventure of the tree, and I couldn't fall asleep. The full moon was shining brightly, and the air was pleasantly cold. What a night for a walk! And then suddenly came the thought, "Why not to go down to the central lake and be back at breakfast with some new facts?" I thought of Gladys, with her "There are heroisms all round us." I seemed to hear her voice as she said it. I thought also of McArdle. What a three-column article for the paper! What a career! I took a gun and quickly went away.

In some minutes I realized how dreadful it was in the forest. The trees grew so thick that I could not see the moonlight. I thought of the dreadful scream of the iguanodon. I thought of that terrible monster near our camp. At any moment it could jump on me from the dark — this nameless and horrible monster.

The darkness of the forest was frightening, but even worse was the white moonlight in the open glade of the iguanodons. I hid among the bushes and looked out at it. There were no monsters there. Perhaps they all had gone. In the silvery night I could see no living thing. I found the small river and decided to follow it. It could lead me to the lake. It could also help me to find my way back.

On the way to the lake I tried not to get under the great moonlight. I was going in the dark. When I heard the crash of breaking branches my heart stopped beating. Now and then great shadows appeared for a moment and were gone — great, soundless shadows which seemed to walk on soft feet.

At last (my watch showed that it was one in the morning) I saw water, and ten minutes later I was on the banks of the central lake. I was very thirsty, so I lay down and drank fresh and cold water of the prehistoric lake. There was a wide path with many tracks on it. It was a drinking-place! Near the water there was a huge rock of lava. Up this I climbed, and, lying on the top, I looked around.

I was very surprised when I saw the mouths of caves[1]. Now, I saw light in every cave. Suddenly I realized that they were the fires burning inside the caves. The men lit them! There were people on the plateau! Here was news to bring back to London!

For a long time I watched the lights. What race was that?

Lake Gladys — my own lake — lay before me. It was not deep, in many places I could see signs of life, sometimes little rings in the water, sometimes a great silver fish in the air, sometimes the black back of a monster. Once on a yellow sand I saw a creature like a huge swan, with a high neck. For some time I could see it swimming. Then it dived, and I saw it no more.

Then I saw what was going near the water. Two creatures like large armadillos came to the drinking-place. A huge deer,

[1] **the mouths of caves** — входы в пещеру

with branching horns, a beautiful creature, which carried itself like a king, came down with its family and drank crystal water. Suddenly it gave a warning cry, and was off. A newcomer, a most monstrous animal, was coming down the path.

For a moment I thought: "Where did I see that back, that strange bird-like head?" It was the stegosaurus — the very creature that Maple White had in his sketch-book! There he was — perhaps the very creature which the American artist had met. The ground shook under him. Now he was so close to me that I could touch his back. He drank water and disappeared among the rocks.

I looked at my watch and saw that it was half-past two o'clock. It was high time to start on my way back. I was going to tell fine news to my friends.

I was on my way home, when I heard a strange noise behind me. It was low, deep, and frightening. A strange creature was near me, but I saw nothing. I walked faster. In some minutes I heard the sound again, but louder and more frightening. The beast was after *me*. My skin grew cold and my hair rose at the thought. I remembered the dreadful bloody face, which we saw near our camp. My knees were shaking. I stopped and looked down the moonlit path. All was quiet in a dream landscape. Then there came that low, throaty sound[1], far louder and closer. Something was hunting me.

Then suddenly I saw it. Something was moving in the bushes. A great dark shadow hopped out into the moonlight. The beast moved like a kangaroo. It was of great size and power. When I saw its shape, I thought it was an iguanodon, but I soon saw that it was a very different creature. Instead of the gentle, deer-shaped head of the great three-toed leaf-eater, this beast had a broad toad-like face. It looked like the monster that had frightened us in our camp. It was a meat-eating dinosaur,

[1] **throaty sound** — горловой звук

the most terrible beast, which had ever walked this earth. From time to time the huge monster brought its nose to the ground. It was smelling out me.[1]

What could I do? I looked round for some rock or tree, but there was no one around. I threw my useless gun away and ran. At last I stopped, I thought that I was safe. And then suddenly the monster was near me. He was just behind my back. I was lost.

The moonlight shone on his huge eyes and sharp teeth in his open mouth. With a cry of terror I turned and ran wildly down the path. Behind me the thick breathing of the creature sounded louder and louder. And then suddenly there came a crash. I was falling down.

When I opened my eyes, I felt the most dreadful smell. I stood upon my feet and came upon a big piece of meat. Then my hand touched a large bone. Up above me there was dark-blue sky. I realized that I was at the bottom of a deep pit. I was sore from head to foot[2], but my arms and legs were not broken. Then I looked up in terror. There was no sign of the monster and I began to walk slowly round. I tried to find out what this strange place was.

It was a pit. The bottom was covered with great pieces of meat. The atmosphere was poisonous and horrible. Suddenly I came against something hard, and I found that it was an upright post[3] in the center of the pit. It was so high that I could not reach the top of it with my hand.

Suddenly I remembered about a box of matches in my pocket. I lit the match and had a better look. It was a trap and it was made by the hand of man.

I remembered that Challenger said that man could not live on the plateau. With his weak weapons he could not survive

[1] **It was smelling out me.** — Он вынюхивал меня.
[2] **I was sore from head to foot** — Все тело у меня ныло
[3] **upright post** — вертикальный кол

among the monsters. But now I knew how they survived. In their caves the natives lived safe. With their developed brains they could make the traps to hunt monsters. Man was always the master.

I wasn't afraid to meet the monster. I remembered that both professors said that the monsters were very stupid. I was sure the monster wasn't waiting for me. I got out of the pit and started on my way back to the camp.

And suddenly I heard the sound of a gun. I stopped and listened, but there was nothing more. For a moment I was shocked at the thought of some sudden danger. So I hurried back home as fast as possible.

I was tired out, so I couldn't run very fast. At last I reached the places, which I knew. I shouted the names of my friends but no answer came back to me. I ran faster. Finally I reached the camp but the gate was open. I ran in. My friends disappeared, and near the fireplace there was blood.

I was so shocked that for a time I nearly lost my reason[1]. I ran all round the empty camp, calling for my friends. No answer came back. The horrible thought came: "I will never see them again. I will be left alone in that dreadful place. I will never return into the world below. I will live and die in that nightmare country." I realized that without my friends I was like a child in the dark, helpless and powerless. I did not know which way to turn or what to do first.

Some hours passed and I tried to discover what had happened to my friends. I was sure that somebody had attacked them. I heard only one gun shot. It showed that it had been all over in a moment[2]. The blankets of Challenger and of Summerlee near the fire showed that they had been asleep at the time. Our guns, cameras were in the right places but no food

[1] **I nearly lost my reason** — я едва не лишился рассудка
[2] **it had been all over in a moment** — все закончилось мгновенно

was left. They were animals, then, and not natives, who had made the attack.

But what happened to my friends? Did a monster kill them? There was a pool of blood. The monster that followed me during the night could carry away a person as easily as a cat could carry a mouse.

Suddenly a thought came to me. I was not alone in the world. Down at the bottom of the cliff was Zambo. I went to the edge of the plateau. Zambo was sitting near the fire in his little camp. But a second man was sitting in front of him. He was an Indian. I shouted loudly and Zambo looked up and climbed the rock. In a short time he was standing close to me and listening to the story, which I told him.

"Devil got them, Mister," he said. "You got into the devil's country and he will take you all to himself. Take my advice, Mister Malone, and come down quick, else he will get you as well."

"How can I come down, Zambo?"

"Send for ropes, Mister Malone."

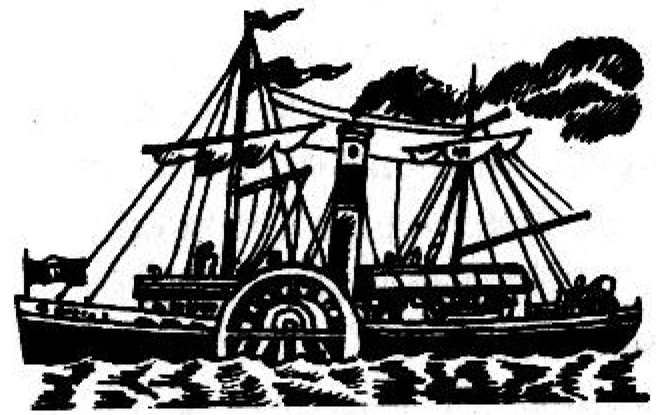
"Who can I send, and where?"

"Send to Indian villages. There is an Indian down below. He is one of our Indians. Other ones beat him and took away his money. He came back to us. Ready now to take letter, bring rope — anything."

A letter! Why not? Perhaps he will bring help; and the news can reach our friends at home. I had two finished letters. The Indian could take them to the world. I told Zambo to come again in the evening, and I spent my lonely day writing down my own adventures the night before. I threw the papers to Zambo in the evening, and also all English money I had.

Chapter Eight

I Shall Never Forget It



In the evening sun I watched an Indian until he disappeared. It was quite dark when I came to the camp. Now I felt happier. Our names would not die with our bodies.

But I couldn't fall asleep for a long time. I didn't feel safe so I made three fires and then fell into a heavy sleep. What a nice awakening I had in the morning! A hand touched my arm. I jumped up. In the cold grey light I saw Lord John Roxton.

But he looked different. Now his face was white and covered with blood. His eyes were wild, his clothes were dirty, and his hat was gone. I looked at him in surprise, but he gave me no chance for questions.

"Quick, young boy!" he cried. "Get our guns, both of them. Now, some food. That's all right! Quick, or we are done!"

I didn't understand anything. In a moment we were running through the wood. Suddenly he fell on the ground and pulled me down.

"What is going on?" I asked. "Where are the professors? Who is hunting us?"

"The ape-men," he cried. "My God, what creatures! Speak in a low voice, because they have long ears and sharp eyes. I don't think they can smell us out because they have no power of smell. Where have you been, young boy?"

In a few sentences I told him about my night adventure.

"Oh dear!" said he, when he had heard of the dinosaur and the pit. "It isn't quite the place for holidays."

"What happened in the camp?" I asked.

"Early in the morning we were sleeping peacefully. Suddenly it rained apes[1]. They came down as thick as apples out of a tree. I call them apes, but they carried sticks and stones in their hands. They talked to each other. They are cleverer than any creature that I have seen in my life. When I shot one of them, they carried him off. Then they sat around us. I saw death in their faces. They were big creatures, as big as a man and much stronger. Curious glassy grey eyes they have, under red eyebrows, and they just sat and looked carefully at us. Challenger is no chicken[2], but even he was frightened."

"Well, what did they do?"

"I thought it was the end of us. Suddenly they all started talking together. Then one of them came up to Challenger. You'll smile, young boy. This old ape-man — he was their chief — looked like Challenger. He had short body, big shoulders, no neck, a great red beard, large eyebrows, and the 'What do you want, damn you!'[3] look. Summerlee laughed till he cried. The ape-men laughed too. Then they took us and carried through the forest. Soon we were in their town near the cliffs. There were about a thousand houses. There we lay under

[1] **it rained apes** — обезьяны посыпались как из ведра

[2] **chicken** — *зд.* трус

[3] **'What do you want, damn you!'** — «Что тебе надо, черт побери!»

the tree, while a great ape-man stood near us with a thick stick in his hand. When I say 'we' I mean Summerlee and myself.

"Old Challenger was up in the tree. He was eating fruit and having the time of his life. Well, now, young boy, I'll tell you what will surprise you. You say you think there are people here. Well, we have seen the natives. Poor devils they were![1]

"I think one side of this plateau is theirs but this part of the plateau is ape-men's side. There is bloody war between them all the time. That's the situation, as I can see it. Well, yesterday the ape-men caught about ten natives."

Lord Roxton went on with his story.

"Of course, as you said, they watched us from the beginning. You remember the great bamboos where we found the skeleton of the American? Well, that is just under the ape-town, and that's the jumping-off place of their prisoners. I think there are hundreds of skeletons there. The ape-men have a parade ground in their town. They have a special ceremony there. One by one they push the poor prisoners down and see if the prisoners are broken to pieces or if they get the bamboos through them[2].

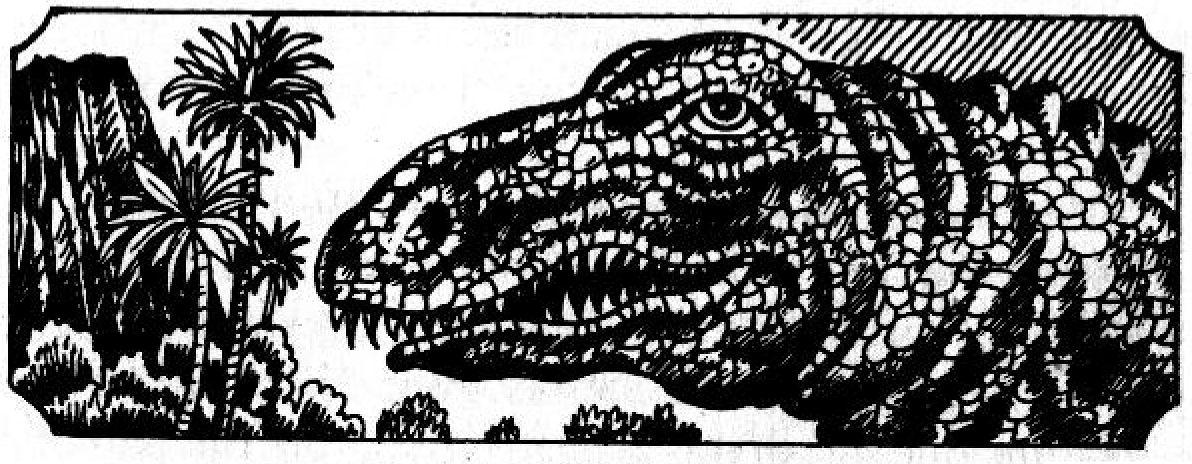
"In the morning the ape-men came to the edge of the cliff. They pushed four of the Indians, and the bamboos went through them like knives through butter. It was horrible — but it was exciting too.

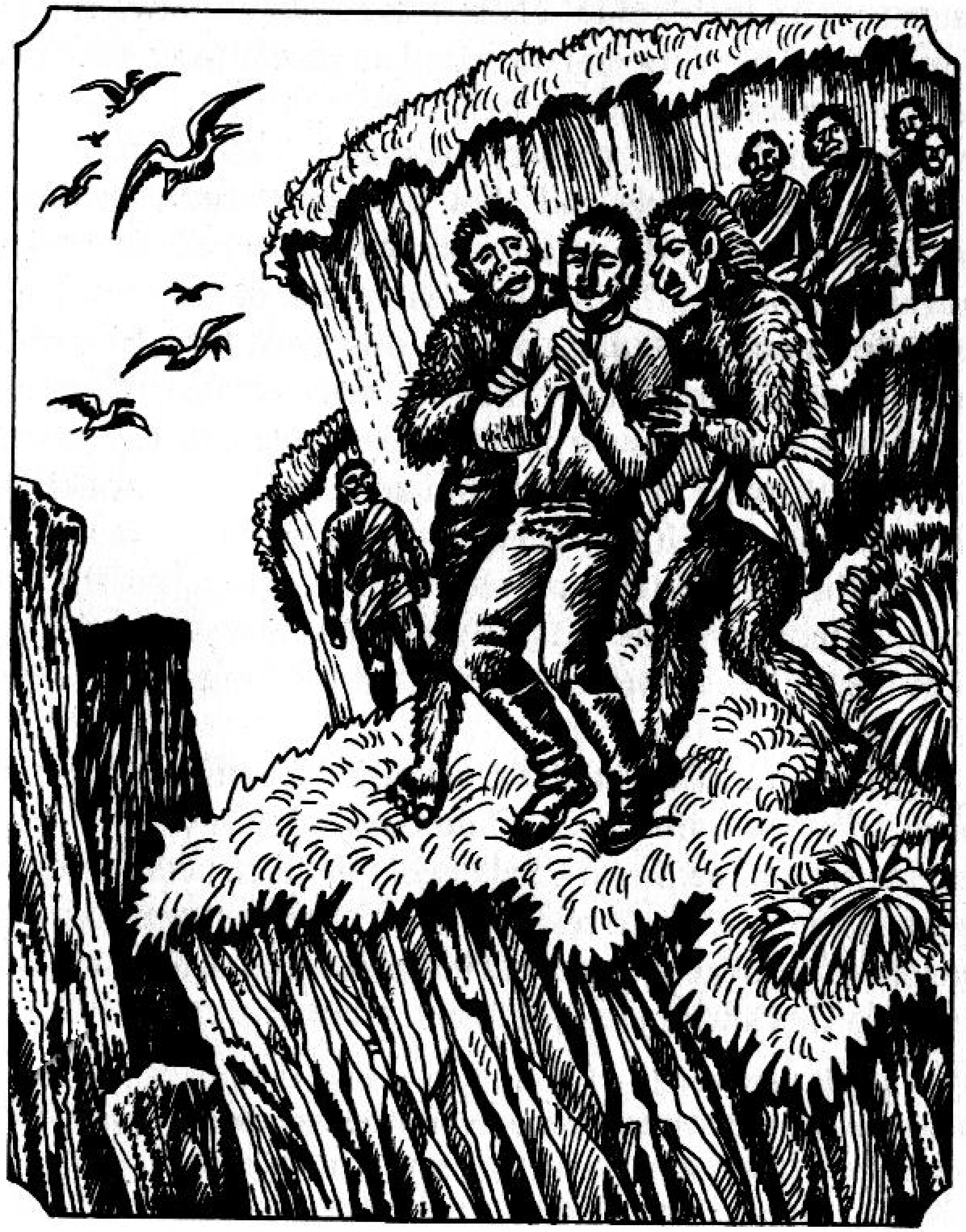
"Then we realized that we would be the next. It was time for us to escape. But I had to do everything myself, because Summerlee was weak and Challenger not much better. Besides, they still thought about science! They were having disputes all the time![3] Were the ape-men a kind of dryopithecus of Java or a kind of pithecanthropus? Madness, I call it!

[1] **Poor devils they were!** — Какими же жалкими они были!

[2] **if the prisoners are broken to pieces or if they get the bamboos through them** — разобьются ли пленники или напорются на бамбук

[3] **They were having disputes all the time!** — Они постоянно спорили!





"Well, I learnt some good things about the ape-men. They can't run as fast as we can. They have short legs and heavy bodies. They knew nothing about guns...

Then I ran away early this morning, got you and the guns, and here we are."

"But the professors!" I cried.

"Well, I couldn't bring them with me. Challenger was up the tree, and Summerlee was too weak for the escape. I had to get the guns. Of course, ape-men can kill them. I don't think they would touch Challenger, but I am not sure about Summerlee. Now we must go back and save them."

We went in silence until we came to the cliff near the old camp. There we stopped, and Lord John told me his plan.

"When we are in the wood, ape-men are our masters," he said. "They can see us but we cannot see them. But in the open[1] it is different. There we can move faster. So we must keep ourselves to the open. The edge of the plateau has fewer trees. So that's our way. Go slowly; keep your eyes open and your gun ready. Above all, never let them get you prisoner — that's my last word to you, young boy."

The woods were full of the ape-men. Again and again we heard their voices. We hid among the bushes and walked very carefully. It took us about two hours to get to the ape-men town.

"Come!" said Lord John. "Come quick! I hope we are not too late already!"

I shall never forget it — so impossible it was! It was a wide, open place covered with green grass. There were a lot of small houses. They were built of branches. I could see ape-mothers with their babies.

Near the edge of the cliff, there were those red-haired creatures, many of them of great size, and all of them horrible to

[1] **in the open** — на открытой местности

look on[1]. They were standing in a line. A small group of Indians were standing in front of them. The Indians were little people and their skins looked like polished bronze in the strong sunlight. A tall, thin white man was standing among them. That was Professor Summerlee.

Around this group of prisoners were some ape-men, who watched them. Near the edge of the cliff, there were two funny figures. One of them was our Professor Challenger. His shirt was dirty, he had lost his hat, and his hair was flying wildly. Close to him stood the king of the ape-men. They looked very much alike. The same short figure, the same heavy shoulders, the same long arms, the same hairy chest. He was an absurd parody of the Professor.

A drama was in progress. Two of the ape-men took one of the Indians out of the group and brought him to the edge of the cliff. The king gave a signal. They caught the man by his leg and arm, and threw him down the cliff. As he disappeared, the ape-men ran up to the cliff. There was a long pause of absolute silence. A mad cry followed! They jumped and clapped their long, hairy hands.

Summerlee was the next. Two ape-men caught him by the hands, Challenger turned to the king and asked to save his friend's life. But the ape-man just shook his head and it was his last movement. Lord John's gun fired, and the king fell down on the ground.

"Shoot, son, shoot!" cried my companion.

You know, I'm not aggressive by nature. But now I jumped on my feet and fired my gun again and again. Both guards were shot dead and Summerlee was walking about. He couldn't realize that he was free. The ape-men were running about in horror. They couldn't understand where this storm of death was coming from. They all ran to the trees.

[1] **all of them horrible to look on** — все они без исключения были отвратительны

Challenger took Summerlee by the arm, and they both ran towards us. Summerlee was at the end of his strength.[1] He could hardly walk. Challenger and I took Summerlee, one at each side. Lord John fired his gun again and again. We could see the ape-men's heads looking at us out of the bushes. For a mile or more they followed us. But finally they learned our power[2]. When we reached the camp, we looked back and found ourselves alone.

But we were mistaken. When we closed our gates, we heard somebody coming up and then a gentle crying from outside. Lord Roxton opened the gate and there, on the ground, lay the little red figures of the four Indians. One of them got up and pointed to the woods. He tried to explain that they were full of danger. He threw his arms round Lord John's legs.

"Oh dear!" cried Lord John, "What should we do with these people?"

"We must help them," said Summerlee. "I think we should take them home, but we don't know the way."

"There is no difficulty about that," said I. "They live in the caves on the other side of the central lake."

That moment, from the dark of the woods we heard a far-away cry of the ape-men. The Indians got very frightened.

"We must move, and move quick!" said Lord John. "You help Summerlee, young boy. The Indians will carry our food, cameras and everything. Now, come along before they can see us."

Deep in the wood we found a hiding place. All day we heard the cries of the ape-men, but none of them came our way, and we had a long; deep sleep.

[1] **Summerlee was at the end of his strength.** — У Саммерли заканчивались силы.

[2] **they learned our power** — они убедились в нашем превосходстве

Chapter Nine

Those Were the Great Victories



We thought that the ape-men knew nothing of our hiding-place, but we were wrong. I shall never be nearer death than I was that morning.

We woke tired out. Summerlee was very weak. It was difficult for him even to stand but he was full of courage. We decided to have our breakfast first, and then make our way across the plateau and round the central lake to the Indian caves. We hoped that the Indians would give us a warm welcome.

Then, we would think of our return. Even Challenger was sure that our mission was finished and we had to carry our discoveries to the civilization.

The Indians were small people, fit, active, and well-built, with straight black hair. Their faces were hairless, well formed, and good-humored. They pointed to each other and repeated

the word "Accala" many times. So we decided that it was the name of their people. From time to time, when their faces went white with fear and hatred, they pointed their hands at the wood and cried: "Doda! Doda!" It was their word for the ape-men.

"What do you think of them, Challenger?" asked Lord John. "The young man is a chief among them, isn't he?"

The young man was the youngest, but he looked very proud and when Challenger touched his head, he moved away from the Professor with a quick look of his dark eyes. Then he said the word "Maretas" some times.

Then Professor Challenger took the nearest Indian by the shoulder and started to lecture on him. "We must place these natives higher than many South American tribes. We can't explain the evolution of such a race in this place. But it is clear that all of them couldn't develop on the plateau."

"Then where did they come from?" asked Lord John.

"I am sure that we will discuss the question in Europe and America," the Professor answered. "In this unusual country old types of animals live in company with newer ones. So we find such modern creatures as the tapir, the great deer and the reptilian forms of Jurassic type. And now come the ape-men and the Indians. I believe they came from outside. Perhaps, there existed ape-men in South America. A long time ago they found the way to this place, and developed into these terrible creatures. As to the Indians, I think they are later immigrants. But we don't know what made them come up here. When they met dreadful creatures, living in this country, they hid in the caves. Now they have endless fights with them. That's why there are not many of them."

When the lecture was over I found that one Indian had left our hiding place.

"He has gone to bring some water," said Lord Roxton.

"To the old camp?" I asked.

"No, to the river. It's among the trees there."

"I'll go and look after him," said I.

I was making my way through the bushes, when I saw something red. When I came up to it, I found the dead body of the Indian. I gave a cry to warn my friends, and ran towards the body. The next moment, out of the thick green leaves two long muscular arms covered with reddish hair came out. I jumped backwards, but quick as I was[1], those hands were quicker. One hand caught the back of my neck and the other got my face. I looked up and saw a frightful face with cold light blue eyes. There was something hypnotic in those terrible eyes. The next moment the huge paw coved my face and little silvery bells sounded in my ears. Far off I heard the sound of a gun.

I woke up in our hiding place.

"You are safe, young boy," said Lord Roxton. "When I heard your cry I ran forward. But when I saw your head in its paws, I thought it was too late. The ape-man dropped you and was quickly off."

It was clear now that the ape-men knew our hiding place. So the sooner we got away from their neighbourhood, the better.

It was in the early afternoon that we started on our journey. The young chief was our guide. Behind him came the two Indians. Then we walked with our guns ready. As we started, we heard a sudden chorus of the ape-men. Looking back we saw only the trees, but that long cry told us how many of our enemies hid among the trees. They didn't follow us. Soon we got into more open country.

In the late afternoon we reached the lake and our native friends cried happily. Over the glassy water there was a great flotilla of canoes. They were coming straight for the shore. In a moment a cry of happiness came from the people in them. They flew across the water, took their boats on the sand and ran up to us. Finally one of them, an old man, with a bracelet of shiny

[1] **but quick as I was** — каким бы быстрым я ни был

glass and a skin of some beautiful yellow-coloured animal over his shoulders, ran forward and kissed the young man. He looked at us and asked some questions. Then he kissed each of us. Then all natives fell with their faces down. I felt uncomfortable, and I read the same feeling in the faces of Roxton and Summerlee, but Challenger looked like a flower in the sun[1].

The Indians were ready for the battle. Every man carried his spear and arrows. Their dark, angry looks at the woods, and the word "Doda," made it clear that this was a rescue party. The young man was the old chief's son.

In the evening they sat in a circle and had a council. Two or three natives spoke, and finally our young friend spoke. He used gestures and we could understand it all clearly.

"What is the use of returning home?" he said. "Sooner or later we'll have to do it. I have returned safe but there is no safety for any of us. We are armed now and ready." Then he pointed to us. "These strange men are our friends. They are great fighters, and they hate the ape-men as we do. They command," here he pointed up to the sky, "the thunder and the lightning. When shall we have such a chance again? Let us go forward, and either die now or live for the future in safety[2]!"

The red men listened to him very carefully. When he finished, the old chief came to us, and asked us some questions. He was pointing to the woods. Lord John made a sign to wait for an answer. Then he turned to us.

"Well, what are you going to do?" said he; "I will go with the Indians. What do you say, young boy?"

"Of course I will come."

"And you, Challenger?"

"I will."

[1] **Challenger looked like a flower in the sun** — Челленджер расцвел
[2] **either die now or live for the future in safety** — либо мы умрем, либо завоюем спокойную жизнь

"And you, Summerlee?"

"If you are all going, I hardly see how I can not."

"Then we are ready," said Lord John, and he nodded and touched his gun.

It was too late for a start that night, so the Indians made a camp. On all sides their fires began to smoke. Some Indians disappeared into the jungle and came back with a young iguanodon before them. When they killed the reptile, we understood that these great creatures were their domestic animals. In a few minutes great pieces of meat were cooking over a dozen fires.

Summerlee fell asleep on the sand, but we decided to have a walk near the lake. We wanted to learn something more of this strange country. Twice we found pits of blue clay that for some reason excited Lord John. Challenger got very interested in a geyser, where some strange gas formed great bubbles.

"Gas, lighter than the air. The resources of Professor Challenger are not limited, my young friend. I'll show you how a great mind puts all Nature to its use[1]." He smiled at us with some secret purpose, but would say no more.

There was nothing interesting for me on the shore. Our noises frightened all living creatures away. But it was different out on the water. It was full of strange life. Great black backs came up, and then down into the water. The sand banks were filled with ugly huge turtles, strange crocodiles, and one great flat creature like a moving carpet of black shiny leather. Here and there high snake heads went out of the water, rising and falling in graceful, swan-like movements. One of these creatures appeared on the sand bank a few hundred yards away and we could see its ball-like body behind the long snake neck.

"Plesiosaurus! A fresh-water plesiosaurus!" cried Summerlee. "We are the happiest zoologists!"

[1] **a great mind puts all Nature to its use** — великий ум заставляет Природу служить себе

Early in the morning we started on our expedition. Often in my dreams I wanted to be a war correspondent. But I have never imagined it would be such a war!

At night many natives joined us. There were four or five hundred of us when we started in the morning. A small group went first, and behind them in a column we made our way up. Near the forest we divided into spearmen and bowmen.

We didn't have to wait long for our enemy. A wild cry came from the wood and the ape-men ran out with sticks and stones. It was a foolish move, because the ape-men were slow of foot. The Indians were as active as cats. It was horrible to see the dreadful creatures with open mouths and shiny red eyes. They were running at their enemies, while arrow after arrow buried itself in their bodies[1].

But we were not so lucky when we came among the trees. The ape-men jumped out from the trees so quickly that the Indians often didn't have time to spear them. One of the ape-men broke Summerlee's gun into pieces and was going to attack Professor again. An Indian speared him into the heart. Other ape-men in the trees above us dropped down stones and wood.

Our guns were a great help to the natives. Then came the panic. Screaming wildly, the great creatures ran away in the wood. The natives cried in their wild voices and followed their enemies.

The ape-men were too slow to escape from the Indians, and from every side of the woods we heard their cries.

"It's over," said Lord John. "I think we can leave the tidying up to the Indians. Perhaps the less we see of it, the better we shall sleep."

When we were walking through the woods, we found the dead bodies of the ape-men.

[1] **while arrow after arrow buried itself in their bodies** — в то время как стрелы вонзались в них одна за другой

All the males were killed. The ape-town was destroyed, the females and the young were driven away, and the long war reached its bloody end.

For us the victory was very important. We visited our camp and talked with Zambo.

"Go away, Misters, go away!" he cried. "The devil will get you if you stay up there."

"It is the voice of a clever one!" said Summerlee. "We have had adventures enough. From now on you should use all your energy to get us out of this horrible country and back to civilization."

Chapter Ten

Escape



The victory over the ape-men was very important to us. We became the masters of the plateau. We were like gods for the Indians. As far as we could understand[1] their language, there was a tunnel down the cliffs. That was the way the ape-men, the Indians and Maple White with his friend reached the plateau. But the year before there was an earthquake, and a part of the tunnel fell in.

We returned with the Indians to their city and made our camp at the foot of their cliffs. The Indians were friendly but we had our guns ready.

We visited their caves, which were most wonderful places. We couldn't understand if the caves were made by man or by Nature. The openings were about eighty feet above the ground. And a large animal couldn't climb the long stone stairs that led

[1] **As far as we could understand** — Насколько мы могли понять

to the caves. Inside they were warm and dry with grey walls decorated with many pictures of different animals.

We knew the huge iguanodons were kept as domestic animals and we decided that man was the master of the plateau. Soon we discovered that it was not so.

The tragedy happened on the third day. Challenger and Summerlee went together to the lake where some of the natives were fishing. Lord John and I had stayed in our camp, while a number of the Indians were busy with their everyday business[1]. Suddenly there was a loud cry. We heard the word "Stoa" and saw men, women and children running wildly for their homes.

We looked up and saw the Indians waving their arms and asking us to come up to their caves, We took our guns and ran out to see what the danger could be.

Suddenly from the nearest trees there came a group of twelve or fifteen Indians, running for their lives[2], and after them two dreadful monsters. They were the monsters that came to our camp and frightened me on my night journey. They looked like horrible toads. They had ugly fish-like skins and moved in great jumps, but in size they were bigger than the largest elephant. We had never before seen them in the daylight. We stood shocked.

We had little time to watch them, because in a moment they got some Indians and killed them. The Indians were helpless.

We fired our guns but it had no effect on the monsters. They were reptiles and didn't care for pain[3]. But the noise of our guns slowed them and we had a little time to reach the stone steps leading to the caves.

When the two monsters reached the stairs, a rain of arrows came from every cave. In a minute they were feathered with

[1] **everyday business** — повседневные дела
[2] **running for their lives** — бегущих изо всех сил
[3] **didn't care for pain** — не обращали внимание на боль

them, but they didn't feel any pain and went on climbing the stairs. But at last the poison worked. One of the monsters gave a deep cry and dropped to the ground. Then the other followed it. With cries of triumph the Indians came down from their caves and had a dance of victory round the dead bodies. That night they cut up the bodies, but they were not going to eat the meat, because the poison was still active. The great reptilian hearts lay there, beating slowly in horrible independent life. It was only on the third day that[1] the dreadful things stopped beating.

We spent seven days in the Indian village. We never stopped thinking about the escape to the outer world. One fact we had discovered very quickly: the Indians didn't want to help us. In every other way they were our friends but when we asked them for help, we were met by a gentle "no". They smiled and shook their heads, and there was the end of it. It was only Maretas, the chief's son, who looked sadly at us and told us by his gestures that he wanted to help us. Since their triumph with the ape-men the Indians looked on us as supermen.

Challenger went walking every morning and returned only in the evening. One day he led us down to his secret place and told us about his plans.

It was a small clearing in the center of a palm forest. There was a geyser there. Near it we saw a large balloon — that was the dried stomach of a great fish lizard. It took Professor Challenger about half an hour to fill it with natural gas.

Challenger was like a happy father looking at his first-born child. It was Summerlee who first broke the silence[2].

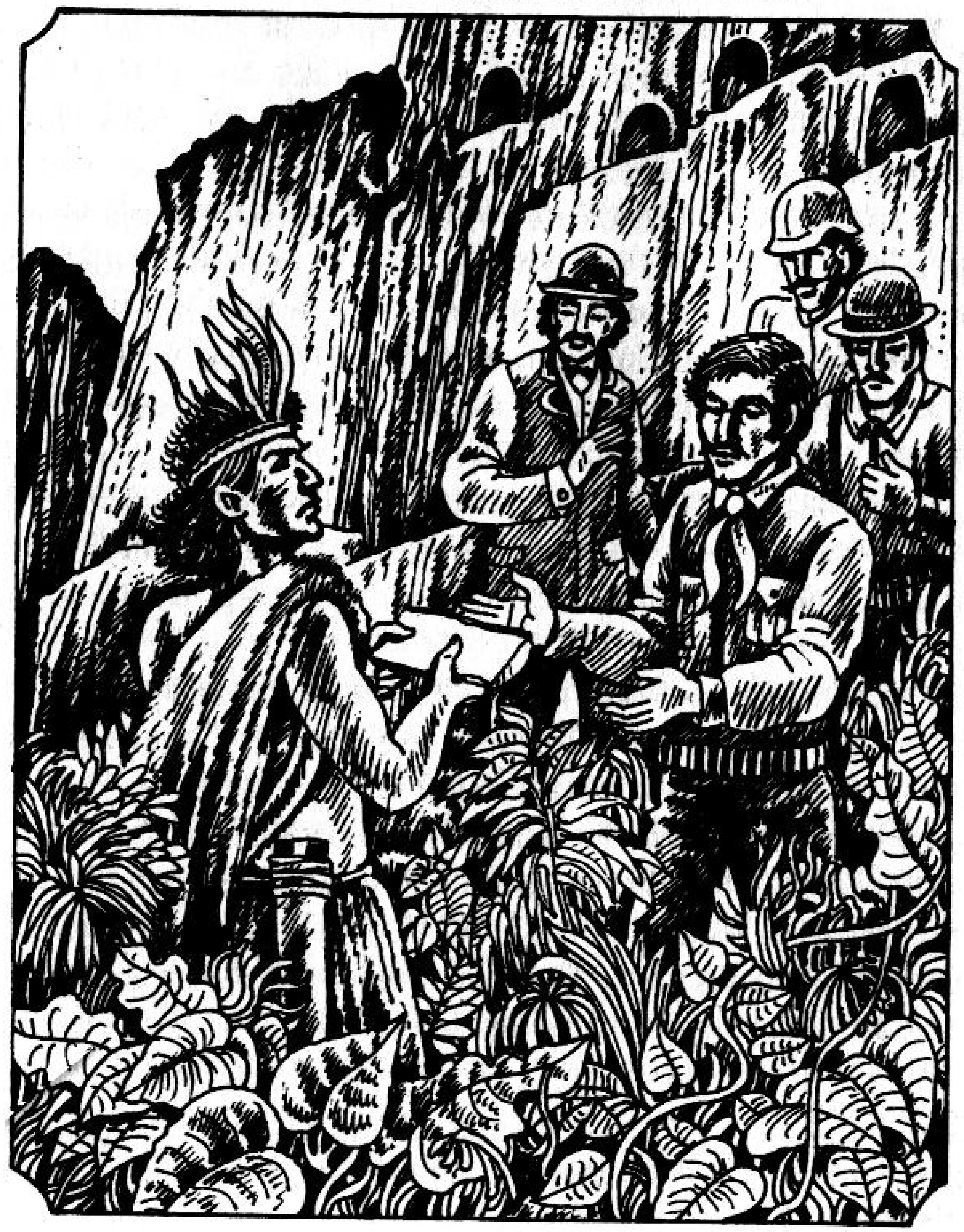
"You don't mean us to go up in that thing, Challenger?"

"I'd like to see how it works," said Lord John.

"So you will," said Challenger. "Well, we cannot climb down and there is no tunnel. We cannot construct any kind of

[1] **It was only on the third day that** — Только на третий день
[2] **broke the silence** — нарушил тишину





bridge. Once I found some free hydrogen coming from the geyser. Then I had an idea of a balloon. It took me some time to find a bag for the gas, but finally I found the solution! I will demonstrate my balloon."

Never was our expedition in greater danger.[1] The balloon flew up. In a moment Challenger went up after it. I had just time to throw my arms round his body. So I flew up into the air too. Lord John got my legs, but I felt that he also was coming off the ground. For a moment I imagined the four of us flying like sausages over the plateau. Then we heard a sharp crack, and we fell on the ground. When we got up, we saw our balloon far away in the deep blue sky.

I tried to write down all events as they happened. Now I am finishing my story from the old camp in company with Zambo. We came down in a most unexpected way.

It was in the evening of our risky adventure with Challenger's balloon. I told you that the young boy was the only person who wanted to help us. That evening he came down to our little camp. Suddenly he gave me a small piece of bark, and pointed up at the caves. Then he put his finger to his lips as a sign of secrecy[2].

I took the bark and we examined it together. It looked like a puzzle.

"My God!" Lord John cried. "I believe I've got it. See here! How many marks are on that paper? Eighteen. There are eighteen cave openings above us!"

"He pointed up to the caves when he gave it to me," said I.

"Well, this is a plan of the caves. What! Eighteen of them, some short, some deep, some branching. It's a map, and here's a cross on it. What's the cross for? I think it shows the deepest."

"Or one that goes through," I cried.

[1] **Never was our expedition in greater danger.** — Никогда еще наша экспедиция не была в большей опасности.

[2] **as a sign of secrecy** — в знак молчания

"I believe our young friend is right," said Challenger. "If the cave does not go through, I do not understand why the boy has drawn it. But if it does go through and comes out, we will have about a hundred feet way down[1]."

"Well, our rope is still more than a hundred feet long," I cried. "Surely we could get down."

"How about the Indians in the cave?" Summerlee asked.

"There are no Indians in any of the caves above our heads," said I. "They don't use those caves for living. Let's go up there now!"

We made our way up to the cave that was marked in the drawing. It was a beautiful dry tunnel. The grey walls were covered with native symbols. There was white sand on the floor. We went on and on until we came to a wall. There was no escape for us there.

"Never mind, my friends," said Challenger. "You have still my promise of a balloon."

"Not a word about the balloon! Can we be in the wrong cave?" I asked.

"No," said Lord John, with his finger on the plan. "Seventeenth from the right and second from the left. This is the right cave."

I looked at the mark to which his finger pointed, and I gave a sudden cry.

"I think I've got it! Follow me! Follow me! Look, it is marked as a forked cave[2], and in the darkness we didn't see it."

We went about thirty yards and a great black opening appeared in the wall. We turned into it and came into a much larger corridor. We went our way and suddenly, in the black

[1] **we will have about a hundred feet way down** — нам надо будет спуститься примерно на 30 метров вниз

[2] **a forked cave** — a cave that has one end divided into two or more parts

darkness in front of us we saw a dark red light. No sound, no warmth, no movement came from it, but still the great light was ahead.

"The moon!" cried Lord John. "We are through, boys! We are through![1]"

The full moon shone down on us. It was a small opening, not larger than a window. As we looked down, we could see that the way down was not very difficult. We understood that with the help of our rope we could find our way down. Then we returned to our camp.

We had to do everything quickly and secretly. We couldn't take everything we had, but Challenger had something that he wanted to take with him. When the darkness fell, we got our things up. Then we looked back and took one last long look at that strange land, our dreamland, a land where we had done much, suffered much, and learned much — *our* land, as we shall ever call it. When we were looking back, a call of some wild animal rang clear out of the darkness. It was the very voice of Maple White Land saying us good-bye. We turned and came into the cave that led to the outer world.

Two hours later, we were at the foot of the cliff. In the early morning we reached it and saw about ten fires, not just one. There were twenty Indians who came to save us. The next day we began our way back to the Amazon.

And so I finish my story. Our eyes have seen great wonders and each of us has become better in his own way. My dear Mr. McArdle, I hope very soon to shake you by the hand.

[1] **We are through!** — Мы вышли!

Chapter Eleven

A Procession! A Procession!



We couldn't imagine that we were so popular in Europe. On our way to England we started to get radio messages. They wanted to pay a lot of money for a short report about our expedition. But we decided to give no information to the Press before the meeting at the Zoological Institute.

And now I'm going to tell you about the last exciting moment of our adventure. I mean the meeting at the Zoological Institute. In front of me there is a newspaper report. I'll give you a chance to read it:

THE NEW WORLD
GREAT MEETING AT THE QUEEN'S HALL
WHAT WAS IT?
DEMONSTRATION IN REGENT STREET
(SPECIAL)

"The meeting at the Zoological Institute was held last night. It has become a red letter date[1] in the history of Science. Last year the Institute sent an expedition to South America. They had to test Professor Challenger's words about the existence of prehistoric life. The meeting was a sensation. Nobody will forget it.

"The Great Hall were full that night. About five thousand people came to see the travellers. At last they appeared and took their places in the front of a platform. In the Hall you could see the faces of famous scientists from all over the world.

"I'm not going to describe the heroes because their photographs are in all newspapers. When the audience took their seats, the Chairman addressed the meeting. He said: 'Professor Summerlee is going to tell us about the results. I know that the expedition was very successful. Fortunately the age of romance is not dead. Now the wildest imagination met the scientific results.'

"Professor Summerlee told the audience how it all began. He also said some nice and hearty words[2] about Challenger. Then he described their way from the Amazon to the base of the cliffs. It was very difficult to find the way up the plateau. The fall of their bridge was a real tragedy. Then the Professor described the horrors and the wonders of the Lost World. He told of the wonderful animal and plant life. The audience was very interested in the larger extinct animals. The Professor read a long list of their names. He and his companions saw about twenty creatures.

"He told about a snake, the skin of which, deep purple in colour, was fifty-one feet long. Professor told about a white creature which gave bright phosphorescence in the darkness; also a large black butterfly, the bite of which was deadly poisonous.

[1] **It has become a red letter date** — Это стало значительным событием

[2] **hearty words** — сердечные слова

The plateau was very rich in prehistoric forms of early Jurassic times. He also told about the gigantic stegosaurus (Malone had met the monster at a drinking-place near the lake); the iguanodon and the pterodactyl (two of the first of the wonders, which they had met); the terrible meet-eating dinosaurs (which had hunted them); about the huge and dreadful bird, the phororachus, and the great deer which still lives there. But the mysteries of the central lake were unbelievable! The Professor described the monstrous three-eyed fish-lizards and the huge water snakes, which live in this mysterious lake.

"Next he told about the Indians, and the colony of ape-men. Finally he described the genius but very dangerous invention of Professor Challenger. Finally he told about their way back to civilization.

"Some people thought that that was the end of the meeting. But suddenly Dr. James Illingworth stood up. First Dr. Illingworth thanked Professor Challenger and Professor Summerlee. But then he asked for the proofs. Some photographs. But they may be fakes. What more? A story of a quick escape by ropes. It was exciting, but it proves nothing. The audience heard that Lord John Roxton had the skull of a phororachus. Can the audience have a look at it?

"It is difficult to describe that chaos. A large part of the audience was shouting. Suddenly Professor Challenger was on his feet:

'I think you can remember, that the same foolish scenes happened at the last meeting. Now I'm going to show you some proofs. As Professor Summerlee explained, the ape-men destroyed our cameras. We couldn't bring a lot of luggage with us but we have Professor Summerlee's collections of butterflies and insects. There are many new species. Was it not a proof?' (Several voices, 'No.') 'Who said no?'

"Dr. Illingworth (rising): 'We think that you could make such a collection in any place.'

"Professor Challenger: 'I can show you a picture of pterodactyl taken from life... '

"Dr. Illingworth: 'No picture.'

"Professor Challenger: 'You would like to see the prehistoric thing with your own eyes?'

"Dr. Illingworth: 'Yes, Sir.'

"Professor Challenger: 'And then you will believe it?'

"Dr. Illingworth (laughing): 'You are right, sir.'

"It was the sensation! Professor Challenger gave a signal and at once Mr. Malone stood up and went to the back of the platform. A moment later two men carried in a large box. Finally they put it in front of the Professor. All sound stopped. Professor Challenger opened the box. He looked down into the box and said, 'Come, then, pretty, pretty!' in a sweet voice. A moment later, a most horrible creature appeared from it and sat on the box. Nobody noticed the fall of the Duke of Durham into the orchestra... The face of the creature was like the wildest dream. It was horrible, with two small red eyes. Its long half-opened beak was full of shark-like teeth. It was the devil of our childhood! Someone cried, two ladies fell from their chairs. For a moment there was danger of a general panic.

"Professor Challenger tried to quiet the audience, but his movement frightened the creature. The strange shawl round its shoulders suddenly spread. It was a pair of leathery wings. The Professor tried to catch it by its legs, but it was too late. The monster was flying slowly round the Hall with a dry, leathery sound of its wings. A dreadful smell filled the hall. The cries of the people frightened the creature. Faster and faster it flew. It got afraid and was beating against the walls and lamps. It was trying to escape. 'The window! Shut that window!' cried the Professor. But it was too late! In a moment the creature, like a huge butterfly, came to the open window and was gone.

"Then — oh! How can I describe what happened then — everyone was on his feet. Everyone was moving and shouting.

'Up with them! up with them!' cried a hundred voices. In a moment the four travellers were above the crowd. 'Regent Street! Regent Street!' cried the voices. The audience left the Hall, carrying the four on their shoulders. Out in the street a hundred thousand people were waiting. 'A procession! A procession!' was the cry. The whole central traffic of London was stopped. Finally, the four travellers were near Lord John Roxton's house. It was one of the most wonderful evenings!"

Some words about the London pterodactyl. Two women saw it sitting on the roof of the Great Hall. The creature stayed there like a statue for some hours. The next day a newspaper article told about an officer. He had left his post, and was sent to prison. He said that he had dropped his gun and left his post because he suddenly saw the devil between him and the moon. The judges didn't believe the poor. There is one more report. The captain of the "Start Point", an American ship, reported that when they had just left the port something between[1] a flying goat and a monstrous bat was flying very quickly southwest. The scientists believe that somewhere in the waters of the Atlantic the last European pterodactyl found its end.

And Gladys — oh, my Gladys! — Gladys of the mystic lake! Let me tell it in a few words. No letter or telegram waited for me, and I went to her house at my first night in England. Was she dead or alive? Where were all my dreams of the open arms, the smiling face, her sweet words for me? I ran down the garden, knocked at the door, heard the voice of Gladys inside, and ran into the sitting-room. She was sitting in the armchair.

"Gladys!" I cried, "Gladys!"

Her face was new to me.

"What do you mean?" she said.

"Gladys!" I cried. "What is the matter? You are my Gladys, are you not — little Gladys Hungerton?"

[1] **something between** — нечто среднее между

"No," said she, "I am Gladys Potts. Let me introduce you to my husband."

How absurd life is! I said "How do you do?" to a little red-haired man.

"You didn't get my letter at Para, then?" she asked.

"No, I got no letter."

"Oh, what a pity! Well, I told William all about you," said she. "We have no secrets. I am so sorry about it. But I think your feeling was not so deep. You left me and went to the other end of the world. You're not angry with me, are you?"

"No, no, not at all. I think I'll go."

I had already left the room but suddenly I came up to that little man.

"Will you answer a question?" I asked. "How did you do it? Have you found hidden treasure, or discovered a pole, or flown the Channel, or what? Where is the romance? How did you get it?"

He looked at me with a hopeless little face.

"Well, just one question," I cried. "What are you? What is your profession?"

"I am a clerk," said he. "Second man at Johnson and Merivale's, 41 Chancery Lane."

"Good-night!" said I, and came out, with hatred and laughter.

One more episode. Last night we all met at Lord John Roxton's house, and sitting together we talked our adventures over. It was strange to see the old, well-known faces in the old English house. After supper Lord John Roxton had something to say to us. From a cupboard he took an old cigar-box and put it on the table.

"There's one thing," said he, "that I would like to tell you. Can you remember the day we found the lake of pterodactyls? Well, something in that place seemed strange to me. It was blue clay."

The Professors nodded.

"Well, in the whole world I remembered only one place where you could find blue clay. That was the great Diamond Mine of Kimberley — what? So I risked my life and one night I spent with a spade in my hand among pterodactyls. This is what I got."

He opened his cigar-box, and we could see about twenty or thirty stones. They were of different sizes — from the size of beans to that of eggs.

"I brought them back, and on the first day in England I consulted about its price. It is minimum of two hundred thousand pounds. Of course they belong to all of us. Well, Challenger, what will you do with your fifty thousand?"

"I would like to found a private museum."

"And you, Summerlee?"

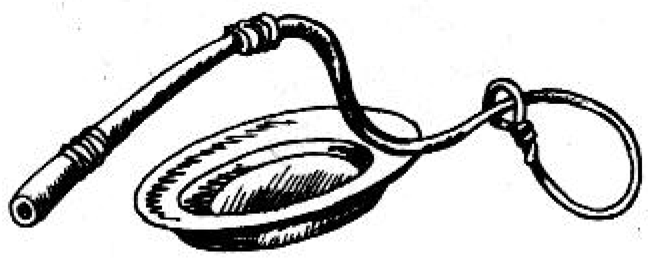
"I would retire from teaching."

"I'll start a new expedition," said Lord John Roxton, "to having another look at the dear old plateau. As to you, young boy, you will spend your money in getting married, won't you?"

"Not just yet," said I. "I think, I would go with you."

The Stories about Sherlock Holmes

The Adventure of the Speckled Band



Helen Stoner Tells Her Story

I studied the methods of my friend Sherlock Holmes during the last eight years and I was sure that he did his work for the love of his art — not for the love of money. Many cases were tragic, some were comic, some mysterious, but they were never ordinary. Of all cases this one was the most exciting.

It all began in those early days when I was living at Sherlock Holmes's flat in Baker Street in London.

It was early in April in the year 1883. I woke one morning and saw Sherlock Holmes standing, fully dressed, near my bed. He was a late riser and as the clock showed me that it was only a quarter past seven, I looked at him in some surprise.

"Very sorry to wake you up, Watson," said he.

"What is it ... a fire?"

"No, a client. I think this young lady has arrived too excited. She is waiting now in the sitting room. Now, when young ladies walk around London at this early hour, and knock sleepy people up out of their beds, I think that it is something very important which they have to tell. It is going to be a very interesting case! Would you like to come and listen to what she has got to say."

"My dear friend, I'll be down in a minute."

When I came into the sitting room, I saw a lady dressed in black standing by the window.

"Good-morning, madam," said Holmes. "My name is Sherlock Holmes. This is my true friend Dr. Watson. So, you can speak as freely as before myself[1] I can see that you are very cold. Move close to the fire and I'll ask to bring you a cup of hot coffee."

"I am not cold," said the woman in a low voice.

"What, then?"

"I'm afraid! Afraid to death!" She looked very tired and unhappy, and her face was very white. She had frightened eyes, like those of some hunted animal. She was a young woman of about thirty, but her hair was grey.

"Don't be afraid of anything in my house, just tell us everything you have got," said Sherlock Holmes. "We will help you. You have come by train this morning, I see."

"You know me, then?"

"No, but I noticed the second half of a return ticket in your hand when you took off your glove. You started your way early in the morning."

The lady looked at Holms surprisingly.

"Whatever your reasons are, you are absolutely right," said she. "I started from home before six. Sir, I shall go mad if I get no

[1] **you can speak as freely as before myself** — вы можете говорить совершенно откровенно.

help. I have heard of you, Mr. Holmes from Mrs. Farintosh, whom you helped a lot. It was from her that I had your address. Oh, sir, do you not think that you could help me, too? Can you explain some mysteries to me? Now I can't pay you but in a month or six weeks I shall be married, and will have my own money."

Holmes turned to his desk and opened it and looked through some papers.

"Farintosh," said he. "Ah yes, I can remember her case. I think it was before your time, Watson. I can only say, madam, that I shall be happy to do my beat to help you as I did to your friend. As for paying, you can do at the time, which you choose. And now tell us your story."

"Oh dear!" answered our visitor, "the very horror of my situation is that I have no facts to tell you. Nothing that will be of any help to you. I'm afraid you can think that I am just a nervous woman... But I have heard, Mr. Holmes, that you can see deeply into the human heart. You may advise me how to walk among the dangers around me."

"Tell me all you know, madam."

"My name is Helen Stoner, and I am living with my stepfather. He is the last member of one of the oldest Saxon families in England, the Roylotts of Stoke Moran."

"I know the name," said Holmes.

"The family was one of the richest in England but in the last century the family lost all their power. When my stepfather was born they had no money. Now nothing is left, only a small piece of land and an old house. When my stepfather was young he became a doctor, because he had to work. He went to India and worked there successfully. But one day a tragedy happened. Somebody got into his house and stole many things. My stepfather got so angry that beat his servant to death[1]. My stepfather spent many years in prison and returned to England an

[1] **beat his servant to death** — забил своего слугу до смерти





unhappy and angry man. When Dr. Roylott was in India he married my mother, Mrs. Stoner. Her husband — my father was dead at that time. My sister Julia and I were twins, and we were only two years old at the time of my mother's second marriage. After our return to England my mother died and left all her money to Dr. Roylott, our stepfather. He decided no to work any more and took us to live with him in the old country house. My mother ordered that when we got married he should give each of us money each year.

"But a terrible change came over our stepfather about this time. Instead of making friends with our neighbours, he shut himself up in his house and seldom came out. But when he did, he became very angry and violent. At last he became the terror of the village.

"Now he is more and more violent, and sometimes has fights with the people from the village. Everybody is afraid of him now, and they run away when they see him. His only friends are gypsies. My stepfather loves them and they can do whatever they want in our house.

"And he also loves Indian animals. His friend sends them to him from India. Now he has a cheetah and a baboon, which walk freely in our garden.

"You can imagine from what I say that my poor sister Julia and I had very unhappy lives. No servant stayed with us, and for a long time we did all the work in the house. She was thirty at the time of her death, and her hair was already grey, like my hair now."

"Your sister is dead, then?"

"She died two years ago, and that's why I'm here. Two years ago at Christmas time we were staying at our aunt's in London. There Julia met a young man who asked to marry her. My stepfather agreed. But two weeks before the wedding day a tragedy happened."

Sherlock Holmes was listening with his eyes closed but now he opened them and looked at Helen.

"Please tell us everything about her death in detail," said he.

"It is easy for me to do so, because I can remember it all very well. It was a terrible time. But first I'd like to tell you about our house. You can live only in one part of it, because it is very old and not comfortable. Our bedrooms are on the ground floor, the first is Dr. Roylott's bedroom, the second is my sister's, and the third is my bedroom. The rooms all have windows into the garden and their doors open into the corridor. Do you understand me?"

"Yes, madam."

"That terrible night Dr. Roylott went to his room early. Later we went to our bedrooms but suddenly my sister came into my room. She couldn't get to sleep because of the smell of the strong Indian cigars. My stepfather liked to smoke them. At eleven o'clock she left me, but she stopped at the door and looked back.

'Tell me, Helen,' said she, 'have you ever heard a whistle at night?'

'Never,' said I.

'It is strange, but about three in the morning, I hear a low whistle. I am a light sleeper[1] and it always wakes me. I cannot tell where it comes from, perhaps from the next room.'

'Gypsies?'

She smiled back at me, closed my door, and a few moments later I heard her key turn in the lock."

"Why did you lock your doors at night?" said Holmes.

"Our stepfather kept a cheetah and a baboon. We were afraid of them and of gypsies."

"Please go on."

"I could not sleep that night. It was a wild stormy night. The wind was blowing hard. Suddenly I heard the wild scream of a terrified woman. I knew that it was my sister's voice. I

[1] **I am a light sleeper** — Я очень чутко сплю

jumped from my bed, and ran into the corridor. When I opened my door I think I heard a low whistle, and a few moments later the sound of falling metal.

"I ran to my sister's door. By the light of the corridor-lamp I saw my sister appear, her face white with terror, her hands asking for help. I ran to her, but at that moment she fell to the ground. She was in terrible pain. She was crying: 'Help me, Helen! I am dying!' and then 'Oh, my God! Helen! It was the band! The speckled band!' She wanted to say something else, but she couldn't, only pointed her finger to the stepfathers' room. I called loudly for my stepfather, and he ran out of his room to help her. But we could do nothing. Such was the terrible end of my dear sister."

"One moment," said Holmes, "are you sure about this whistle and metallic sound?"

"I think I heard it, but the night was so stormy... Perhaps I made a mistake."

"Was your sister dressed?"

"No, she was in her night-dress. In her right hand there was found a match."

"It means that she tried to look about her. That is important. And what did the police find?"

"They tried but they couldn't understand why my sister had died. Nobody could get into her room and they didn't find any poison in her body."

"What do you think this unfortunate lady died of, then?"

"I think that she died of fear and nervous shock. What frightened her? I cannot imagine."

"Were there gypsies in the house?"

"Yes, they are always there."

"Ah, and what is 'speckled band'?"

"Perhaps she meant some band of people — gypsies. Perhaps she was talking about those bands which gypsies wear round their heads."

Holmes shook his head.

"Please go on your story."

"That was two years ago and I have been very lonely without my sister. A month ago a dear friend asked me to marry me. We are going to get married soon. Two days ago my stepfather asked me to move into my sister's room. He wanted to mend the bedroom wall and I had to sleep in my sister's bed.

"Can you imagine my terror when last night I suddenly heard the same low whistle? I jumped up and lit the lamp, but saw nothing. I was too afraid to go to bed again, so I dressed and ran out of the house and came to London to ask for your help."

"This is a very deep business.[1]" said my friend. "But we must act as quickly as possible. Can we look at all these rooms if we go to your house today, Miss Stoner? But your stepfather must not know."

"He is meeting some important people in London today, so he is out all day long."

"Excellent. You will come with me, Watson?"

"Thank you, sir."

Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson Visit the House

"And what do you think of it all, Watson?" asked Sherlock Holmes when Helen Stoner left the room.

"Dark, mysterious and frightening. What about low whistles and strange words of her dying sister?"

"If you think about the whistles at night and a band of gypsies who are friends to her stepfather, you will understand that we have every reason to believe[2] that the doctor doesn't want his stepdaughter's marriage."

[1] **This is a very deep business.** — Это очень сложное дело.

[2] **we have every reason to believe** — у нас есть все основания полагать

"But what, then, did the gypsies do?"

"I don't know. We cannot give answer to many questions, that's why we are going to visit the doctor's house today. What's that noise?"

Our door suddenly opened and a tall man came in.

"Which of you is Holmes?" he asked.

"My name, sir," said my friend.

"I am Dr. Grimesby Roylott of Stoke Moran."

"Will you sit down, Doctor?" said Holmes.

"I know that my stepdaughter has been here. What did she tell you?"

"It is a little cold for the time of the year," said Holmes.

"What did she tell you?" cried the doctor angrily.

"The flowers are starting to grow," said Holmes.

"I know you, Holmes trouble-maker! You try to look like a policeman and to work like a policeman, but you are just a trouble-maker!"

My friend smiled.

"When you go out close the door, there is a strong wind outdoors."

"I will go when I have finished. It's better for you to leave me alone. Remember I am a dangerous man!"

He left the room quickly.

"We mustn't be late. Now I see that Miss Stoner is in great danger. And now, Watson, we shall have breakfast, and then I try to find out more about this man."

It was nearly one o'clock when Sherlock Holmes came back.

"I have seen the will of his wife," said he. "Our dangerous friend needs the girls' money, because he has only 750 pounds a year from his dead wife. If the girls marry, they will ask for their money and he will have too little of it. And now the doctor knows that we are interested in him. So if you are ready, we are leaving for Stoke Moran. Don't forget to take your gun with

you, Watson. And the toothbrush — we are going to stay there for the night."

When we got to Stoke Moran, Miss Stoner met us and showed the house. The building was made of grey stone. One part of it was nearly ruined but the other was much better. Helen showed us the three bedrooms.

"Everything is OK with your bedroom, Miss Stoner! It doesn't need any mending, as I can see," said Holmes.

"I think my stepfather wanted me to move into my sister's room. It was his plan," said Helen.

"It sounds possible," said Holmes and looked at the windows carefully. "When you lock the windows, can anybody get inside from the garden?"

"No."

Holmes went into Julia's room and watched it. There was a table, two chairs and a bed there.

"Why is that bell-rope there, over the bed?" he asked.

"It goes into the servant's room. They put it here two years ago. But we never had servants here."

Holmes came up to the bell-rope and pulled it.

"But it doesn't work! This is very interesting! Look There is an air-vent near it! Isn't it strange too? Why have you got an air-vent that goes into another room, and not outside, Miss Stoner?"

"Very strange!" said Helen. "The bell-rope that doesn't ring, and a ventilator that does not ventilate."

We all went to the doctor's bedroom. There was not much furniture there. But Holmes looked at it very carefully. There was a bed, a round table, a comfortable arm-chair, and a big metal safe near the wall.

"What's in here?" he asked, touching the safe.

"My stepfather's business papers."

"Oh! you have seen inside, then?"

"Only once, some years ago. I remember that it was full of papers."

"There isn't a cat in it, for example?"

"No. What a strange idea!"

"Well, look at this!" He pointed at a small plate of milk on the top of the safe.

"No; we don't keep a cat. But there is a cheetah and a baboon but they don't drink from such small plates."

"Now, Miss Stoner," said Holmes. "I see that your life is in danger. It is very important and you must follow my advice. Tonight my friend Watson and I spend the night in your room."

Both Miss Stoner and I looked at him in surprise.

"Yes, we must. Let me explain. We will take a room in the village hotel. When your stepfather goes to bed, turn on the lamp in your sister's room as a signal to us. Then go to your bedroom and don't forget to leave the windows open. We'll get into your sisters' room and wait for the sound of falling metal and the whistle. I think we won't wait for a long time."

"Oh, Mr. Holmes, now I see that you know how my sister died. Tell me how it happened. Do you know?"

"I must get some more information but I think that I know. Now be brave and good-bye. Remember, if you do what I tell you, Miss Stoner, you will be out of danger for ever."

Holmes and I went to the village and took a room in a small hotel. From our window we could see the house well. Holmes said to me:

"It is going to be dangerous there, Watson. Doctor is an angry and clever man."

"My dear friend, if I can be of help, I will come with you."

"Thank you, Watson. I'll really need your help. Did you see the bell-rope and air-vent in the room? It means there is a hole between two bedrooms. I knew about it from the very beginning. Do you remember Helen told us about the smell of Dr. Roylott's cigarettes?"

"There is an air-vent between the bedrooms, there is a bell-rope that doesn't work and there is a lady who is in danger. I still cannot see..."

"What is more, the lady's bed is fixed to the floor[1]. It stays there, near the bell-rope and under the air-vent."

"Holmes!" I cried. "I begin to understand! We must stop him!"

Terrible Death

All was dark at the house. We were watching the windows and then suddenly we saw bright light.

"That is our signal," said Holmes. "It comes from the right window."

We left the hotel and went to the house. We walked quietly through the garden, and climbed into the bedroom through the open window.

When we were in Julia's bedroom, we closed the window and looked around the room. It looked just the same as before. Holmes said in a low voice, "We must make no noise." I showed him that I had heard. "We must sit without a light. He could see it through the air-vent."

I took out my pistol and put it on the corner of the table.

Holmes brought a long thin stick with him and put it near him — with a box of matches. Then he turned off the light and we were left in darkness[2].

How shall I ever forget those terrible hours?

I could not hear anything but I knew Holmes sat near, with open eyes, listening and watching.

[1] **the lady's bed is fixed to the floor** — кровать прикреплена к полу
[2] **we were left in darkness** — мы оказались в темноте

From outside we heard the cry of a night bird, and far away the church clock striking every quarter of an hour. Twelve o'clock — one — two and three, and still we sat waiting silently.

Suddenly there was a light showing through the air-vent. There was a sound of movement, and then another very small sound. Holmes jumped up from the bed, struck a match, and beat wildly with his stick.

"You see it, Watson?" he called. "You see it?"

I saw nothing. I heard a low whistle. But I could see that Holmes's face was white with terror.

I came up to the lamp and turned it on. Holmes looked at the air-vent. Suddenly there was the most terrible cry I have ever heard.

Then the house was silent again.

"What does it mean?" I asked.

"It means that it is all over," Holmes answered. "Take your pistol. We must go into Dr Roylott's room."

We took the lamp and came into the doctor's room. There was a lamp on the table. The iron safe was open. The doctor sat on a chair. His head was up and his eyes were fixed on the air-vent. Round his head there was a yellow band with brown spots. He did not move as we came in the room. He was dead.

"The band! The speckled band!" said Holmes in a low voice.

I took a step forward. At once the band moved, and I saw it was a snake.

The snake moved and began to turn its head.

"It's a very dangerous Indian snake. Its poison can kill anybody. Roylott died quickly. We must put the snake back in the safe." Very, very carefully, Holmes took the snake and threw it into the metal safe and quickly closed it.

These are the true facts of the death of Dr. Grimesby Roylott.

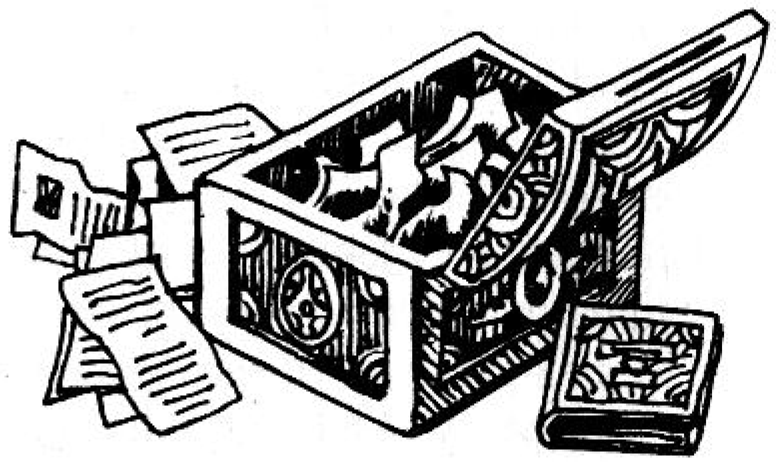
We went to Miss Stoner and told her everything. There was no danger for her but the next day she left for her aunt who

lived in Harrow. We called the police and they decided that the doctor met his death playing with his dangerous pet.

On our way back to London, I asked Holmes how he learned about the snake.

"At first, Watson, I thought that it was gypsies. But the danger couldn't get into the room through the window or the door. So I understood that the danger was in the ventilator and the bell rope — something came through the ventilator and down the rope. When I saw the milk I understood that it was a snake. It was easy for the doctor to get Indian animals. Of course, he knew that it was very difficult to find this snake's poison in the dead body. This clever and cruel man used his Indian knowledge to kill. He taught the snake to obey the whistle and return to its master. It was easy to put it through the ventilator. It climbed down the rope on the bed, and it bit the person there as soon as he or she moved. He kept the snake in the metal safe. The sound of falling metal was the door of the safe. Perhaps the snake came through the air-vent many times before it killed Julia. Helen, too, nearly dies because of this snake. But tonight when I beat the snake with his stick, it got afraid and went back through the air-vent. So I think I killed the doctor, but I can't say that I am sorry about it!" said Holmes.

The Five Orange Pips



Uncle Elias's Story

It is not easy to choose one of Sherlock Holmes's cases to tell you because they all are interesting or strange or mysterious. There is one of his last cases, which was so interesting in its details and surprising in its results that I'm going to tell you the story now.

It was the end of September 1887. My wife was visiting her aunt, so I was staying with my friend Sherlock Holmes in Baker Street. The weather was terrible that day. All the day the wind was blowing hard and it was raining heavily outside. Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson were spending a quiet evening together.

"Was that the door bell?" I asked. "Who can this be? Some friend of yours, perhaps?"

"No, I'm sure. If he comes on business in this weather, it's very important. Come in!" said Holmes.

A good-looking young man came in. He was wet, tired and worried.

"You have come far?[1]" asked Holmes.

"Yes, from Horsham. I have come for advice."

"You get it easily."

"And help."

"Ah — that is not always so easy."

"I have heard of you, Mr. Holmes, and a friend has sent me to you. He says that you know everything..."

"He said too much. Well, sit down and tell me, if you can, all I need to know."

The young man sat down, and put his wet feet near the fire.

"My name is John Openshaw. I think it is better to begin my story from some facts of my family. My father, Joseph, had a brother, Elias, who went to live in America when he was young. He became a planter in Florida and at the time of war he fought in Jackson's army. He didn't like the black Americans, but during the Civil War he fought against the men from the North, and with those from the South. When the war was over he returned to his plantation for three or four years. But the South lost the war, and there was equality for black people. About 1869 or 1870 he came back to England with a lot of money and bought a comfortable house near Horsham.

"He had no family and was a strange, unhappy man. He didn't want any friends and he often drank a lot. But he was kind to me and when I was twelve, I came to live with him. When I was sixteen, I was quite a master of the house. I kept all the keys and could go where I liked and do what I liked.

But there was one room in the house which was always locked. Nobody could go there. Sometimes I looked through the keyhole and could see nothing but old boxes[2].

[1] **You have come far?** — Вы приехали издалека?

[2] **could see nothing but old boxes** — не видел ничего, кроме старых ящиков

"One day Uncle Elias got a letter from the town of Pondicherry in India. 'Pondicherry stamp! What can this be? I have no friends there,' he said and opened the letter. Out there jumped five little dried orange pips. They fell on his plate. I began to laugh at this and stopped suddenly because I saw my uncle's white face. 'K.K.K.!' he cried. 'Oh my God, my God, they have found me!' 'What is it, uncle?' I cried. 'Death,' he said and ran upstairs.

"I looked at the envelope. It had three Ks on its back. There was no letter inside. Who sent it? And why was my uncle so frightened?

"I left the breakfast table. When I was going upstairs, I met my uncle coming down. He had a large key in one hand, and a small black box in the other.

'They may do what they like, but I will win in the end,' he said angrily. 'Tell Mary' — she was his servant — 'that I want her to light a fire in my room today, and send for Fordham, my lawyer.'

"When Fordham arrived, they both went up to uncle's bedroom. They spent there a lot of time and at last asked me to come in. The fire was burning brightly, and all around it there was black burnt paper. The small box with three Ks on it was open and there was nothing inside.

'John,' my uncle said, 'I know that I'm going to die soon. My brother, your father, will have all my money and my house after my death, and you will have it when he dies. I hope you can enjoy it. If you find you cannot, take my advice and leave everything to your worst enemy. I don't know what is going to happen... I'm afraid that my money brings death with it.'

"I couldn't understand what he meant, but I felt the danger. Surprisingly, nothing dangerous happened for a few weeks. Nothing happened to change our lives and we lived our usual quiet life. But I saw a change in my uncle. He started to drink a

lot and every day he shut himself away in his room, he didn't want to see anyone. One day he drank too much and ran wildly out of the house. He was running about the garden with a gun in his hand, shouting out that he was afraid of no man. Then, suddenly frightened, he ran back into the house, and into his room, locking himself in again.

"One night I heard a cry. I got up out of my bed and ran to my uncle's room. The door was open, the room was empty.

"In the morning we found him at the far end of the garden, face downwards[1], in a very small lake. He was dead. The police said he killed himself but I knew he was afraid to die, so I didn't think it was true."

Holmes stopped the young man for a minute.

"One moment," he said. "When did your uncle get a letter from India and when did he die?"

"The letter arrived on March 10, 1883. He died seven weeks later, upon the night of May 2nd."

"Thank you. Please, go on."

"After my uncle's death, my father moved into the house. Of course I asked him to look carefully at the locked room but we didn't find anything important. All we found was the small box. It was empty, and had a piece of paper with three Ks and the words 'Letters and Receipts' written on it."

Five More Pips

"So we lived in the uncle's house. On the fourth day after the New Year I heard my father's cry of surprise when we were sitting at the breakfast-table. I looked at him and saw five orange pips in his hand and an open letter.

[1] **face downwards** — лицом вниз





"He always laughed at my story of Elias and the five orange pips, but now he looked puzzled and even frightened.

'What does it mean, John?' he said in a low voice. His face was white.

'Look! There's K. K. K. on the letter,' he said. We were afraid.

'So the letter says. Here are the letters K. K. K. It also tells me to leave the papers in the garden. What papers?'

'The papers in the Uncle Elias's box. But he burnt them!'

'Well, where does the letter come from? From Dundee in Scotland,' he said. 'Why do they write to me about papers?' said my father.

'You must tell the police.'

'No, they will laugh at me. Let's forget about it.'

"Three days later my father went to see his friend who lived some miles away. I thought he would be safer away from home. But I was wrong.

"On the second day I got a letter from his friend asking me to come at once. The police said that my father was walking home in the dark when he fell down a hill. He was badly hurt and died soon after. They decided it was an accident, but I didn't agree.

"But I was sure it was not. I thought it was a murder, and I couldn't forget the five orange pips and the strange letters to my uncle and my father.

"Now I was the one to own the house. I have lived alone in that house for nearly three years now. Then yesterday I got this."

"The young man showed us the letter with K.K.K. on it and five small orange pips inside.

"You see? It comes from London, and it says 'Leave the papers in the garden.' Those are the words that were in the letter to my father."

"What did you do next?" asked Holmes.

"Nothing," answered John. "I don't know what to do. I am too afraid."

"Nothing?" cried Holmes. "Young man, you are in greatest danger!"

"I have talked to the police," said Openshaw sadly. "But they laughed at me. They say there is nothing to worry about."

"How stupid they are!" cried Holmes. "Why did you come to me and why did you not come at once? Haven't you found anything which can help us?"

"Well, I found this paper in the locked room," said John and gave us a small piece of half-burnt paper. It said:

4th. Hudson came. Same old platform.

7th. Set the pips on McCauley, Paramore, and John Swain, of St. Augustine.

9th. McCauley cleared.

10th. John Swain cleared.

12th. Visited Paramore. All well.

"Thank you," said Holmes as he gave the paper back to John. "And now, we haven't got time even to talk. You must go home at once and act."

"What shall I do?"

"There is only one thing to do. You must put this piece of paper that you've shown us into the box. You must also put in a note to say that your uncle burned all the other papers. Then leave the box in the garden. Do you understand?"

"Yes, yes."

"We must first get you out of danger."

"Thank you," said John. "I shall do as you say. I shall see you at Horsham, then?" said John.

"No. Your secret hides in London. It is there that I shall look for it."

"Then I shall call on you in a day, or in two days, with news of the box and papers." And with those words, John went out into the dark night, the wind and the rain.

Some More Deaths

Sherlock Holmes sat for some time in silence and watched the fire. Then he smoke his pipe and watched the blue smoke-rings as they came up to the ceiling.

"I think, Watson," he said at last, "that of all our cases, this is the most fantastic."

"Well, yes, John Openshaw is walking among great dangers, and we cannot say what these dangers are. Who is this K. K. K. and why does he hate this unhappy family?"

Holmes closed his eyes and said slowly: "The ideal reasoner[1] can guess what happens next after he studies just one episode carefully. He can also guess the result which would follow. He can work in his study but he has to use all the knowledge he can get from around. If I remember right, in the early days of our friendship, you made a document..."

"Yes, it was a wonderful document. Philosophy, astronomy, and politics were marked at zero, I remember. Botany — a little better, geology — rather deep (you know where each mud-stain comes from), chemistry — eccentric, anatomy — unsystematic, sensational literature and crime records[2] — unique, violin-player, boxer, lawyer, and smoker. Those, I think, were the main points."

Holmes smiled and said:

"Well, I say now, as I said then, that a man should keep in his head the information he needs every day, but the other knowledge he should put away, where he can get it if he wants it. Now, for this case we should use all our resources. Can you give me the American Encyclopedia which stands on the shelf

[1] **reasoner** — (*зд.*) человек, способный восстановить ход событий, понять причины происходящего

[2] **sensational literature and crime records** — уголовная литература и судебные отчеты

over there? First of all we may guess that Elias Openshaw had some very strong reason for leaving America. Men of his age do not change their way of life and leave the warm climate of Florida for the English one. It means that he was afraid of something. That's why he lived a lonely life and locked all his doors so carefully. But what was he afraid of? The only things that can help us are the letters. Now where did those letters come from? Did you see?"

"The first was from Pondicherry, the second from Dundee, and the third from London."

"Does that tell you anything?"

"They are all sea ports. Probably the writer was on a ship."

"Very good, my dear Watson. Elias got a letter from Pondicherry in India and seven weeks later he was killed. John's father got a letter from Dundee in Scotland and he was killed only three or four days later. What does that mean?"

"I can't see, my dear Watson."

"Well, I think that the letter came by steamship, but a sailing ship (that is much slower) brought the killer."

"It's possible," said I.

"Do you see why I'm worried now? And now you see the danger that John Openshaw is in. This letter comes from London and it means the killer is in London too."

"Oh!" cried I. "What can it mean, this endless killing?"

"The papers Elias Openshaw brought with him from America are very important to the killer or killers. I think that there are two or three people, and they want to get the papers back. So I think K. K. K. belong to the name of an organization, not the name of a person..."

"But of what organization?"

"Have you never..." Sherlock Holmes was talking in a low voice — "have you never heard of the Ku Klux Klan?"

"I never have."

Holmes opened the American Encyclopedia and said: "Here it is:

Ku. Klux. Klan. It sounds like the rifle getting ready to fire, This terrible secret organization started in the Southern States after the Civil War. They didn't want black Americans to have the same rights as white Americans. They killed anyone who didn't agree with them. To anyone who made them angry, they sent a warning. It usually was melon or orange pips. From then on he wasn't safe anywhere. He was waiting for death. Their way of working was so good that they were always successful. The American government couldn't end the years of terror until 1869."

"Yes," said I, "and 1869 was the year before Elias Openshaw came to England. He brought all their papers with him in the black box, so the organization could not go on. Of course they wanted to get the papers back. The burnt piece of paper we have seen, with its dates and names of when and to whom the orange pips were sent, are a great danger to the person who has it."

Holmes said, "We can do no more tonight. I believe that the only chance that Openshaw has is to do what I have told him."

The next morning the sun was shining, and Sherlock Holmes was at breakfast when I came down to him. I sat at the table and opened the newspaper.

"Holmes!" I cried and read to him:

"Between nine and ten last night a policeman heard a cry for help near Waterloo Bridge, Then he heard someone fall into the river. The people tried to help the poor but the night was too dark. Later the police took a body from the river. A letter found in his pocket showed that it was a man named Openshaw."

We sat in silence.

"That hurts me, Watson," Holmes said at last. "It really hurts me. That young man came to me for help, and I sent him away to his death! Now I'm going to find them, if it's the last thing I do!"

He walked up and down the room. Finally he went out of the house in a hurry and I didn't see him till evening. When Holmes came in, he was very tired and hungry but very pleased.

"Watson! I know the names of Openshaw's enemies! I'm going to send them a surprise! It will frighten them!"

"What do you mean?"

He had an orange in his hand. Holmes took out the pips and put five of them in a letter. On it he wrote:

Captain James Calhoun Sailing Ship "Lone Star", Georgia.

"And who is this captain?" I asked.

"He is the leader of these devils. I shall get the others too, but he is the first. I have spent all the day at the port of London and studied hundreds of the ship's papers. Only the *'Lone Star'* was in the three ports at the right times, and this morning she left London to sail back to Georgia.There are three Americans on board, I also found out that all three of them were away from the ship last night. They are the killers."

"When they arrive in Georgia, the steamship will be there and the American police will get the other letter and get them."

Poor Sherlock Holmes! His plans came to nothing. He could do nothing about the weather. The winter storms were worse than ever, so the "*Lone Star*" never arrived in America. And the killers of John Openshaw never got the orange pips, but, in the end, death came to them.

The Adventure of the Beryl Coronet[1]



New Visitor Tells His Story

"Holmes," I said looking out of the window down the road, "here is a madman coming along."

My friend left his armchair and came up to the window. It was a bright cold February morning. The snow was shining brightly in the winter sun. The strange man was coming along the road. He was about fifty years old and was wearing expensive clothes. He was running in a great hurry and his hands were moving up and down. He was shaking his head and making mad faces.

"What on earth is the matter with him?" I asked. "He is looking up at the number of the houses."

"I believe he is coming here, my dear Watson," said Holmes.

[1] **beryl coronet** — берилловая диадема

"Here?"

"Yes; I think he is coming to consult me professionally. Ha! Did I not tell you?"

As he spoke, the man ran up to our door and rang the bell, making a great noise.

A few minutes later he was in the room. He looked so worried and his face was so white that we were filled with pity. He was out of breath and for some time he could not speak. Sherlock Holmes made him sit down on the chair near the fire.

"Sir, you've come to tell me your story, haven't you?" he said. "You were in a hurry and have tired yourself. Have a rest and then I'll be most happy to look into your problem."

The man sat for a minute looking down, then he turned his face to us.

"You think I am mad, don't you?" he said.

"As far as I can see, you have some great trouble," answered Holmes.

"God knows I have![1] The trouble is so sudden and terrible. And it is not I alone. The most noble in the country will have great problems if I cannot find an answer to this terrible problem. You are my last hope, Mr. Holmes."

"Tell me who you are and what your problem is, sir, and I will try to help you," said Holmes.

"My name," answered the visitor, "is Alexander Holder. I am the head of the Bank of Holder and Stevenson in London."

The name was well known and we waited for an unusual story.

"I feel that there is no time to lose and that's why I was in a hurry on the way here. The police inspector advised me to come to you. Now when I feel better, I'm going to tell you my story as short and clear as I can.

"Yesterday morning I was sitting in my office. A bank officer came to say that a visitor wanted to see me. I was surprised

[1] **God knows I have!** — Одному только богу известно!

to hear the visitor's name: it was a very famous one, known all over the world — one of the highest and most noble names in England. When he came in I understood that he was in a hurry, and rather worried.

'Mr. Holder!' he said. 'I know that you often lend money to people. It is most important to have fifty thousand pounds at once.'

'Can you leave with me something of value[1] to keep until you bring the money back?' I said.

'Yes. Perhaps you have heard of the Beryl Coronet?'

'One of the most expensive things in the country? Certainly I have.'

"The visitor opened his case. Inside there lay the most beautiful piece of jewellery.

'There are thirty-nine large beryls,' he said. 'Its price is... I think it is twice more. So I will leave it with you.'

"I took the coronet in my hands and looked at the man.

'Ah, you think it is not mine. Well, I would certainly not do so if I were not sure that I shall be able to ask you for it in four days' time, when I am able to repay you the money. All I ask is that it be secret, and that you take care of the crown. There will be great trouble if anything wrong happens to it.'

"I called for his bank officer and ordered him to pay out fifty thousand pounds to the visitor. When this visitor left the bank, I looked at the coronet and thought: 'Why did I agree to keep it?' But it was too late to change anything, so I locked it up in my safe. When the evening came I decided that it was not clever to leave it at the bank. 'I'll carry the coronet in the case with me for the next few days,' I thought. So I went home, carrying the Beryl Coronet in the case. When I came home I took it upstairs and locked it in the desk of my dressing room.

"You know, Mr. Holmes, I am not a married man but in my house I have my son Arthur and a young girl Mary — my

[1] **something of value** — что-нибудь ценное





niece. There are two servants, who don't sleep in the house, and three women servants who I believe absolutely. My son is the only trouble-maker. People tell me I have spoiled him[1]. When my wife died he was all I had to love.

"Arthur doesn't want to work in the bank. He has an easy life with his rich friends. He enjoys parties and horses and playing cards. His friends are rich, and so he spends more money than I give him.

"Sir George Burnwell is one of his friends and he often comes to our house. He is much older than Arthur, one who has been everywhere and seen everything. He is a brilliant talker, and a man of great personal beauty. But I don't trust him.

"Mary is the daughter of my brother who died five years ago. She is sweet, loving and beautiful, and as quiet and gentle as a woman should be. I don't know what I would do without her. Twice Arthur asked her to marry him, but twice she said 'no' to him.

"Now, Mr. Holmes, you know the people who live under my roof, and I shall go on with my story.

"When we were having coffee that night after dinner, I told Arthur and Mary about the Beryl Coronet. 'What a day I've had! I have to look after it until next week. It's too expensive to leave at the bank, so I must keep it with me for a few days.' 'Where have you put it?' asked Arthur. 'In my dressing room upstairs, it is locked in the desk.' 'Well, I hope thieves won't get inside our house at night,' said Arthur. 'Oh, any old key will open it. When I was young, I often opened it myself.' When our dinner was over, Arthur followed me into my room.

'Look, father,' he said, 'can you let me have two hundred pounds?'

'No, I can't,' I answered angrily.

'You have been very kind,' said Arthur, 'but I must have the money, or I won't be able to meet my friends again.'

[1] **I have spoiled him** — я избаловал его

'I hope you will not!'

'All right, but you don't want me to bring shame on your name. I *must* have the money, and if you won't give it to me, I'll try to find it.'

"I was very angry because it was the third time during the month. Arthur left the room and I opened the desk, saw that the coronet was safe and closed it again. Then I started to go round the house and make sure that every door and every window was closed. Downstairs I saw Mary. She was standing near the window. When I came up to her she quickly closed and locked it.

'Tell me, dad,' said she, looking a little worried, 'did you let Lucy go out tonight?'

'Certainly not.'

'She came in just now by the back door. I am sure that she has been out to see someone, but I think that it is hardly safe and should be stopped.'

'You must speak to her in the morning, or I will. Are you sure that everything is locked?'

'Quite sure, dad.'

'Then, good-night.' I kissed her and went up to my bedroom again, where I was soon asleep."

Arthur! The Thief!

"I am not a heavy sleeper and about two o'clock in the morning I woke up. I was listening with all my ears. Suddenly I heard a small noise, there were footsteps about in the sitting room. Quietly I got up and went there.

'Arthur! You thief! How can you touch the crown!' My unhappy son was dressed only in shirt and trousers. He had the coronet in his hands. When he heard my words, he dropped the coronet and his face turned white.

'You have destroyed it! You have brought shame on me forever! Where are the beryls you have stolen?'

'Stolen!' cried Arthur.

'Yes, you thief! My own son is a thief!'

'But there is nothing missing[1], beryls cannot be missing.'

'There are three missing. And you know where they are. You are a liar as well as a thief! I saw it with my own eyes.'

'You have called me enough bad names. I won't say another word. I'll leave your house in the morning and you will never see me again.'

'You will get in the hands of the police!'

"At that time everyone in the house woke up. Mary was the first to run into the room, and when she saw the crown and Arthur, she went white and fell on the floor. I sent for the police. When they arrived, Arthur asked me if I wanted to ask the police to take him away. But I explained him that the Beryl Coronet belonged to the country.

'Let me leave the house for five minutes. It will help both of us — please believe me.'

'Then you will run away, or hide what you have stolen. Tell me what you have done with the beryls and I can save you from the shame. I have caught you with the coronet.'

"But all I could do then was to let the police take my son away. The police spent a lot of time looking for stolen beryls but they found nothing. They were puzzled, and did not know what to do.

'My advice to you, sir,' said the officer, 'is to go to Mr. Sherlock Holmes, who lives in Baker Street. He is a great detective, and this is the sort of case he has often helped the police with.'

"You can ask for as much money as you like. My God, what shall I do! I have lost my honour and my son in one night! Oh, what shall I do!"

[1] **But there is nothing missing** — Все на месте, ничего не исчезло

Holmes Asks Questions

Sherlock Holmes sat silent for some minutes watching the fire.

"Do many friends come to your house?" Holmes asked.

"Very few. They are my partner with his family and a friend of my son Arthur, Sir George Burnwell. No one else, I think."

"Well, do you often go out?"

"Arthur does. Mary and I always stay at home."

"That is not usual for a young girl."

"She is a quiet girl. Not so very young. She is twenty-four."

"That night was a shock to her, wasn't it?"

"Terrible! I think she feels worse than I do."

"Then you are both sure that your son has stolen the beryls?"

"I saw him myself, with the coronet in his hands."

"God bless you! You are trying hard to help him, and me. But it is too difficult. What was he doing there? And why didn't he make up a lie?[1] What did the police think about the noise that woke you?"

"They thought it was the noise of the Arthur's closing door."

"I don't think so. A thief never makes a noise loud enough to wake up all the people in the house. The beryls — what are the police doing about them?"

"They are looking everywhere — under the floors — in the furniture — hoping to find them in the house."

"Have they thought of looking outside the house?"

"Yes. In the garden."

"Now, my dear sir," said Holmes, "don't you see that this case is not so simple as you and the police think? You think

[1] **And why didn't he make up a lie?** — И почему он не придумал что-нибудь?

that your son came down from his bed, went to your dressing room, found the coronet, broke off a piece of it, then went somewhere to hide this piece — so cleverly indeed that no one can find it — and then returned to the room. Do you really believe it? I'd like to go with you to your house, and see everything with my own eyes."

Holmes asked me to go with them. I followed them with great pleasure because I wanted to see Holmes at work. When I was listening to Mr. Holder, I believed that Arthur had stolen the beryls. But deep in my heart I trusted Sherlock Holmes, and I was sure there was some hope for the boy, and another explanation for the missing beryls.

Mr. Holder was glad to have that small hope too.

Holmes Gets Answers

The house where Mr. Holder lived was made of white stone and rather big. A wide road led to the house, and on the right side there was a small path, leading from the road to the kitchen door. The other small path led to the stables. It was winter and white deep snow covered the big garden.

Holmes walked slowly all round the house again and again, and then he went down the small kitchen path, and through the garden to the back of the house. He walked so long that Mr. Holder and I went into the dining room and waited for him by the fire. We were sitting there in silence when the door opened and a young lady came in. She was not very tall, slim, with dark hair and dark eyes. I don't think I have ever seen such a pale white face. Her lips were colourless too and her eyes were red with crying. She didn't look at me but came up to her uncle.

"Have you told them to free Arthur, dad?"

"No, no, Mary. The police..."

"But I'm sure he has done nothing. I know it, and I know you'll be sorry for it."

"Why is he silent, then, if he didn't steal the beryls?"

"Who knows?"

"But I saw him with the coronet in his hand!"

"Oh, but perhaps he just wanted to look at it. It is so terrible to think of our dear Arthur in prison."

"Not until they find the beryls. I have brought a gentleman from London to look more deeply into the case."

"This gentleman?" she asked, looking at me.

"No. His friend. He wanted us to leave him alone. He is in the stable lane[1] now."

"What can he hope to find there? Ah! This, I think, is he. I believe, sir, that you will be able to prove that Arthur hasn't done anything."

"I agree with you, young lady and I think that we can prove it. I believe you must be Miss Mary Holder. May I ask you one or two questions?"

"Please do, sir, if it may be of any help."

"You heard nothing yourself last night?"

"Nothing, until my uncle here began to speak loudly. I heard that and came down."

"You locked the windows and doors the night before. Did you lock all the windows?"

"Yes."

"Were they all locked in the morning?"

"Yes."

"You have a girl servant who has a sweet-heart? I think that you told your uncle last night that she went to see him?"

"Yes, and she was the girl who waited in the drawing-room and who could hear uncle's story about the coronet."

[1] **in the stable lane** — на дорожке, ведущей к конюшне

"I see. You think that perhaps she went out to tell her sweetheart, and that the two had a plan."

"But what is the good of all these theories," cried the banker, "when I told you that I saw Arthur with the coronet in his hands?"

"Wait a little, Mr. Holder. We must come back to that. About this girl, Miss Holder. You saw her return by the kitchen door?"

"Yes; when I went to see if the door was locked for the night I saw her. I saw the man, too."

"Do you know him?"

"Oh, yes! he is the green-grocer who brings our vegetables. His name is Francis Prosper."

"He stood," said Holmes, "to the left of the door up the path."

"Yes, he did."

"And he is a man with a wooden leg?"

They saw something like fear in the young lady's expressive black eyes. "Why, you are like a magician," said she. "How do you know that?" She smiled, but there was no answering smile in Holmes's thin face and he said:

"I would like to go upstairs, then to go over the outside of the house again. But first I'll take a look at the windows on the ground floor."

Holmes walked quickly from window to window. He opened the large one which looked from the hall to the stable lane. He was watching outside.

"Now let's go upstairs," he said at last.

In the banker's sitting room, he came up to the case where the crown was. He studied the lock. He opened the case and took out the coronet. It was bent and one corner was missing.

"Now, Mr Holder," said Holmes, "will you try to break off the other corner of the coronet?"

The banker looked very surprised.

"I won't try," he said.

"Then I will." Holmes suddenly tried to break the coronet, but with no result.

"I feel it move a little," he said, "but I can't break it. I don't think anyone could."

"I don't know what to think. It is all dark to me[1]," said Holder.

"Your son had no shoes on when you saw him?"

"He had his trousers and a shirt."

"Thank you. Well, I think, now I'll go outside. Stay here because some extra footprints will make the task more difficult."

When Sherlock Holmes came back, about an hour later, his feet were white with snow, but he had nothing much to say.

"I think I have seen now all that there is to see, Mr. Holder. I'm going home now."

"But the beryls, Mr. Holmes. Where are they?"

"I cannot tell."

The banker looked very unhappy.

"I shall never see them again!" he cried. "And my son? Can you give me any hope?"

"I think he hasn't done anything."

"Then what happened in my house last night?"

"If you come to me tomorrow morning I'll be happy to do what I can to help you. Are you ready to spend a large sum of money?"

"Anything to get the beryls back!"

I was sure that Holmes knew the answer to all Holder's questions but what it was — that was a mystery to me. On our way home I tried to get the answer but Holmes was quiet and didn't say a word. When we were back home, he hurried to his room and was down again in a few minutes dressed like a beggar wearing old dirty clothes.

[1] **It is all dark to me** — Я совершенно ничего не понимаю

I was having my tea when he came back. He looked very pleased.

"I haven't finished yet. I'm going out again in a minute."

"Where to?"

"Oh, the other side of London. I'll be back late, so don't wait up for me."

"How are you getting on?[1] Are you having any luck?" I asked.

"Oh, so-so. I have been to Holder's house. Now I must change back to my own clothes." And off he went again dressed in his usual way.

I waited for him up to the midnight and then I went to my room. In the morning when I came down for breakfast in the morning, there he was with a cup of coffee in one hand and a newspaper in the other. He was quite fresh and pleased.

The Missing Beryls

In a minute Mr. Holder came into the room. I was shocked by the change, which had come over him. He looked very ill and tired out.

"I don't know what I have done to be so tired," he said. "Only two days ago I was a happy man without a trouble in the world. Now I am alone. My son is a thief and he is in prison and my niece Mary has left me too."

"Left you?"

"Yes. Her room was empty in the morning, and there was a letter for me on the hall table"

He gave the letter to Holmes and he read:

My dearest uncle:

I feel that I have brought trouble on you. Why did I not act differently? I can't, with this thought in my mind, stay in your

[1] **How are you getting on?** — Как идут дела?

house, so I must leave you forever. Don't worry about me. I can look after myself. Please don't look for me. In life or death I am your loving,

Mary

"What can she mean?" asked Holder.

"I don't know, sir, but I think it is very good that she has gone. Soon your troubles will end."

"Have you heard something, Mr. Holmes? You have learned something! Where are the beryls?"

"Are you ready to pay one thousand pounds for each of them?" Holmes asked quietly.

"I've got ten thousand with me."

"No. Three thousand will do, and I would like the money now."

When Holmes got the money, he came up to his desk and took out a little piece of gold with three beryls in it, and put it in front of Holder.

"You have it!" he cried. "I am saved! I am saved! Then it was not Arthur who took them? Then let us hurry to him at once, and let him know the truth."

"He knows it. I have told him. He didn't want to tell me, so I told him what had happened."

"What *is* this mystery, then?"

"First of all, I must tell you something that will hurt you very much. Your Mary and Sir George Burnwell have run away together."

"My Mary? Impossible!"

"It is true. You and your son did not know the true character of the man. He is one of the most dangerous men in England — a man without heart. Mary knew nothing of such men. She believed him when he told her that he loved her. The devil knows what he told her but she followed all his orders. They met every evening."

"I cannot believe you, I will not believe it!" cried the banker. His face was pale.

"I will tell you what happened in your house that night. When you went to bed, Mary came to the hall. She opened the big window and talked to Sir George Burnwell, who was outside. I saw his deep footmarks in the snow, and I am sure he was there for a long time. She told him about the coronet. He orders her to steal the coronet. Your son Arthur didn't sleep well that night, because of his quarrel with you. Then, in the middle of the night, he heard someone go quietly in the corridor. He looked out and saw Mary going into your dressing room. He waited in the dark watching.

"When Mary came out of the room with the coronet in her hands, he could hardly believe his eyes. He followed her quietly. She went downstairs, opened the window, and gave the coronet to someone outside. Then she closed the window and ran back to her room. At that moment your son was hiding behind the curtain.

"He loved Mary and he could do no harm to her. But when she left, he opened the window and jumped into the snow, where he could see a figure of a man in the moonlight. It was Sir George Burnwell. He tried to get away but Arthur caught him and there was a fight between them. Suddenly the coronet broke, and Arthur had it in his hands. He ran back, closed the window and went to your dressing room. He was going to put the coronet back into your desk when you found him there."

"Is it possible?" asked Mr. Holder.

"You made him angry. You called him bad names, when he saved the coronet, and he decided not to tell you the truth."

"So that was why Mary went white and fell down on the floor when she saw the coronet! What a fool I am! When Arthur asked to go out into the garden for five minutes, he wanted to go and find the missing piece of it."

Holmes said, "When I arrived at the house, I at once went into the garden, I watched the footprints in the snow. I saw Arthur's footmarks without shoes on. I saw the place where they

had a fight, so I knew I was right. Sir George Burnwell's footmarks went to the end of the lane."

"But how did you find out that it was Sir George?"

"You told me that you did not have many visitors in your house. I remembered only Sir George. I knew his name. I knew enough of him so at night I went to his house as a beggar, and asked his servant for some old clothes. What luck! He gave me some shoes (they were wet) and told me that his master had thrown them out that day. Then I took the shoes to your house and found they were the same size as the footmarks in the snow."

"I saw a beggar in my garden yesterday evening," said Mr. Holder.

"It was me. I found that I had my man. So I came home and changed my clothes. Now, I had to get the beryls back from him! At first he didn't want to listen to me. But when he saw that I knew everything, he took up a heavy stick and wanted to have a fight with me. I pointed my pistol at him and told that I could give him a lot of money for the beryls. That's how I got them back!

"Then I visited your son in the prison, and at last got to bed at two o'clock in the morning. A really hard day's work!"

"A day which has saved England from a great public shame," said the banker, and he rose from his chair. "Sir, I can't find the words to thank you. You are a greater detective than people have told me. I must go at once to my dear son. As for Mary, it goes to my very heart, but even you cannot tell me where she is now."

"I think that we may say," said Holmes, "that she is with Sir George Burnwell. And that, poor girl, is her punishment."

The Crooked Man



Colonel's Death

One summer night I was sitting near the fire and smoking. I was very tired after the busy day. Suddenly there was a bell. I looked at the clock. It was about midnight. Too late for a visitor. I went out into the hall and opened the door.

It was Sherlock Holmes.

"Ah, Watson," said he, "I hoped that you were not in bed."

"My dear friend, please, come in."

"You look surprised, and no wonder! Could you put me up tonight?[1]"

"With pleasure."

"You told me that you had a guest room. I see that you have no gentleman visitor tonight. Not a hat, not a coat in the hall."

"I'll be happy if you stay."

[1] **Could you put me up tonight?** — Вы меня приютите сегодня?

"Thank you. If you are not going to sleep right now, I'll smoke a pipe with you."

We sat down in the arm-chairs and smoked in silence. I knew that only a very important business could bring him to me at such an hour. So I waited. Suddenly Holmes said:

"Now, my dear Watson, I'm working at a very interesting case. I'll solve the problem, I am sure. But... Can I ask you for help? Could you go to Aldershot tomorrow?"

"Certainly," I answered.

"Then, if you are not too sleepy, I will give you a sketch of what has happened. And of what we are going to do. Have you read about murder of Colonel Barclay at Aldershot? I am investigating the case.[1]"

"I have heard nothing of it."

"The facts are only two days old. James Barclay was a brave and talented commander in India. Many years ago Colonel Barclay married a young and beautiful woman — Nancy Devoy. They were a happy family. Nobody heard of any misunderstanding between them. But some people say that Colonel loved his wife more than she loved him. But there was absolutely nothing to prepare people for the tragedy. Usually Colonel Barclay was a kind and pleasant man. Sometimes he became angry and aggressive, sometimes he was sad and silent. But he was never angry with his wife. When depression came on him, he spent all his days at home and never stayed in the dark room.

"Colonel Barclay and his wife lived in a big and nice house. There is a big garden around it. One side of the house is near the road. They had few servants and no children. They didn't often have visitors at their house.

"Mrs. Barclay was Catholic and she was often busy at the church meetings. She helped poor people to get clothes and

[1] **I am investigating the case.** — Я расследую дело.

food. Last Monday Mrs. Barclay was in a hurry for the meeting. She had a quick dinner and left home. Then she visited Miss Morrison, a young lady who lives in the next house. Then the two ladies went together to their meeting. It lasted forty minutes. At a quarter-past nine Mrs. Barclay returned home.

"Their sitting-room faces the road and has a large glass door. The big green lawn is in front of the house. It was into this room that[1] Mrs. Barclay came first. Then she asked her servant to bring a cup of tea there. When the Colonel heard his wife's voice, he came to the sitting room. The servant was the last person who saw the Colonel alive.

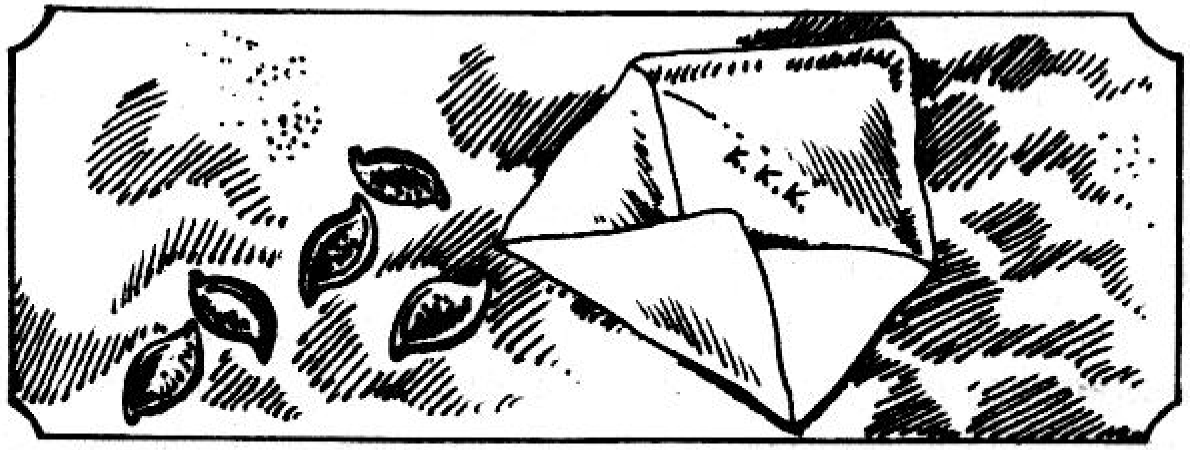
"Ten minutes later the tea was ready and the servant was on her way to the sitting-room. When she came up to the door, she heard the loud and angry voices of the Colonel and his wife. She knocked at the door but there was no answer. The servant wanted to open the door but it was locked. Naturally she ran down to tell the cook, and the two women with a man-servant came up into the hall. They could hear two angry voices — of Barclay and of his wife. Barclay's words were quick and quiet. The lady's words were clear and loud. 'You coward!' she said again and again. 'What can be done now?[2] What can be done now? Give me back my life.' Then there was a sudden dreadful man's cry, a crash, and a woman's scream. The man-servant understood that some tragedy had happened. The door was locked and he decided to get into the sitting room from outside — through the glass door.

"It was open. The servant ran inside and saw the lady lying on the sofa. Her eyes were closed but she was alive. On the floor, with his legs on the arm-chair, in the pool of blood, there lay the Colonel. He was dead.

"The servant couldn't do anything for his master, so he tried to open the room door. But he couldn't find the key. So

[1] **It was into this room that** — Именно в эту комнату

[2] **What can be done now?** — Что же теперь делать?





he went out again through the glass window and called a policeman and a doctor.

"The doctor asked the servants to carry the lady in the bedroom. She was still unconscious.[1] Then they put the Colonel's body on the sofa and examined it carefully.

"At the back of the Colonel's head there was a long cut. On the floor, near the body, was lying a club of hard wood with a bone handle[2]. The Colonel had a big collection of weapons. He brought them from different countries. But that club was not from his collection. The police found nothing interesting in the room. They also didn't find the key — it was gone.

"These are the facts I got on the Tuesday morning when I came to Aldershot."

Crooked Man and Strange Animal

"You can see, dear Watson, that the case is rather interesting, but when I learned the details I realized that it was extraordinary[3]!

"First I questioned to the servants, but they told me nothing new. Only one servant — Jane Stewart — remembered an interesting detail. She heard that the lady said the name 'David' twice. The colonel's name, you remember, was James.

"There was one more thing in the case. The servants and the police were shocked by the colonel's face. It had the most dreadful expression of fear and horror! The police had a theory that the Colonel' wife had killed him.

[1] **She was still unconscious.** — Она все еще была без сознания.

[2] **a club of hard wood with a bone handle** — дубинка из твердого дерева с костяной ручкой

[3] **extraordinary** — the most unusual

"But the poor woman couldn't explain anything. She was absolutely ill and nearly out of reason[1].

"From the police I learned that Miss Morrison said that she had no idea why Mrs. Barclay got angry with the Colonel.

"I had to smoke some pipes before I could put all the facts in order. The missing door key! That was the most important point. It didn't disappear, somebody had taken it. It means there was a third person in the room. And that third person came in through the window. You know my methods, Watson. I examined the traces on the lawn. Now I know there was a man in the room. I found his footmarks: one on the road, two on the lawn, and two near the window. But it was not the man who surprised me. It was his companion."

"His companion!" I cried.

Holmes took some cloth out of his pocket.

"What do you make of that?" he asked.

The paper was covered with footmarks of some small animal. It had long nails on its feet.

"It's a dog," said I.

"Did you ever hear of a dog running up a curtain? I found its marks on the curtains."

"A monkey, then?"

"But it is not the print of a monkey."

"What can it be, then?"

"Neither dog nor cat nor monkey nor any creature that people keep as a pet. I think the creature is about two feet long[2]. May be it has a tail. The animal has a long body and very short legs. What a pity I haven't found any of his hair! And it is a meat-eater."

"Why do you think so?"

"Because it ran up the curtain. A bird's cage was in the window, and it wanted to get the bird."

[1] **nearly out of reason** — на грани безумия

[2] **two feet long** — около 60 см длиной *(один фут равен 30,48 см)*

"Then what was the beast?"

"Ah, that's the problem."

"But why is it so important to you, Holmes?"

"I don't know the answer but I am sure of it. We have learnt a lot. We know that a man stood in the road. He was looking at the quarrel between the Barclays. We know, also, that he ran across the lawn, got into the room, had a strange animal with him. Then... Did he strike the colonel with his club? Did the Colonel fall down when he saw the stranger? I don't know yet. Finally we have the fact that the man carried away the key."

"I think your discoveries made the case more difficult, than it was before," said I.

"You are right. But it means that the case is much more difficult than I thought first. But really, Watson, it is too late. I'll tell you my ideas on our way to Aldershot tomorrow."

"Thank you, my dear friend. But you have stopped at the most interesting place. Can you tell me some more now?"

"Well, I am sure that when Mrs. Barclay left the house at half-past seven, she wasn't angry with her husband at all. The servants say that she was never angry and always spoke with her husband in a friendly way. But when she returned home, she went to the sitting room. It means she didn't want to see her husband. She asked for tea. It means she was unhappy. When the Colonel came into the sitting room, the scandal began. I can see that something happened between seven-thirty and nine o'clock. She turned into a different woman — angry and aggressive.

"But Miss Morrison was with the lady all the evening. She knew something but didn't want to tell. So I decided to talk to Miss Morrison. I was sure she knew something and explained to the young woman that Mrs. Barclay was in great danger. She is ill and even can't help herself.

'I promised my friend that I would say nothing, and a promise is a promise,' said she; 'but if I can really help her... I will tell you what happened on Monday evening.

'We were returning from the meeting. On our way we had to pass through Hudson Street. It is a very quiet place. There is only one lamp in it. When we came up to the lamp, I saw a man. He was coming to us with his back very bent[1]. He was carrying a box. His back was so deformed that we couldn't see his face and he could hardly walk. Suddenly he looked at us. He stopped and screamed in a dreadful voice, 'My God, it's Nancy!' Mrs. Barclay turned as white as death. I was going to call for the police, but she, to my surprise, spoke to the man.

'I thought you had been dead this thirty years, Henry,' she said in a shaking voice.

'So I have,' said he. He had a very dark face like in a bad dream. His hair were grey, and he looked like a very old man.

'Can you walk on a little way, dear?' said Mrs. Barclay to me; 'I want to have a word with this man. There is nothing to be afraid of.' She tried to speak quietly, but she was still white and trembling.

'I did as she asked me, and they talked together for a few minutes. She didn't say a word on our way home. At my door she took me by the hand and asked me not to tell what had happened.'

'I have known him for a long time. He has been so unlucky!' said she. I promised her I would say nothing. She kissed me, and I have never seen her since.'

"As you see, Watson, it was like a light on a dark night. I had to find the man. But was he still in Aldershot? I spent a day and by evening — this very evening, Watson, — I found him. His name is Henry Wood. He has only been five days in the town. The man is a travelling magician. In the evening he performs in the cafes and restaurants. He carries some strange creature in his box. He uses it in some of his tricks. Sometimes he speaks in a strange language and for the last two nights he had

[1] **with his back very bent** — сильно согнувшись

been heard crying[1] in his bedroom. The maid said he paid a strange coin for the room. It was an Indian rupee[2], Watson.

"So now, my dear friend, you know everything. You can see that after the ladies went home, this man followed them. He saw the quarrel between husband and wife through the window. Then he ran into the room and that creature escaped from the box. That is all very certain.[3] But he is the only person in this world who can tell us exactly what happened in that room."

"And are you going to ask him?"

"Yes, and I need a witness."

"But how do you know he'll be there?"

"I told one of my Baker Street boys to watch him. We shall find him in Hudson Street tomorrow, Watson. Now, let's go to sleep!"

Providence

We came to the town in the afternoon and at once went to Hudson Street.

"This is the street," said he at last. A boy ran up to us and said, "He's in, Mr. Holmes."

"Come along, Watson. This is the house."

In a moment we were face to face with the man. It was a warm day but he was sitting near the burning fire. The man's back was deformed and crooked. His face was worn[4] and dark, but it was clear that it was of great beauty long time ago. He pointed at two chairs.

[1] **he had been heard crying** — слышали, как он плачет

[2] **an Indian rupee** — индийская рупия *(национальная валюта Индии)*

[3] **That is all very certain.** — Все это не вызывает сомнений.

[4] **worn** — *зд.* изможденное

"Mr. Henry Wood, late of India[1], I believe," said Holmes. "I want to ask you some questions about Colonel Barclay's death."

"What should I know about that?"

"That's what I want to find out. I think you know that Mrs. Barclay will be tried for murder[2]."

"I don't know who you are," the man cried, "nor how you know about me, but will you tell me if it is true?"

"Why, the police are waiting for her to come to her senses[3]. Then they will arrest her."

"She didn't kill him."

"Then you did."

"No, I did not."

"Who killed Colonel James Barclay, then?"

"Nobody. It was the just Providence[4] that killed him. You want me to tell the story? Well, you see me now with my back like a camel. But there was a time when Corporal Henry Wood was handsome. That time we were in India. Barclay was sergeant in the same company. The most beautiful girl was Nancy Devoy. There were two men that loved her. She loved the one who is sitting in front of you. Well, I had her heart. But her father wanted her to marry Barclay. He was rich and well-educated. One day we got into a great trouble. It was a trap. In a week we ran out of water. We couldn't fight any more and the only chance was to get out of siege[5] and ask for help. I had to do my best. I talked it over with Sergeant Barclay, because he knew the country very well. He drew a map for me to follow. At ten o'clock I started on my journey. In ten minutes I walked into

[1] **late of India** — недавно прибывший из Индии
[2] **will be tried for murder** — будет обвинена в убийстве
[3] **waiting for her to come to her senses** — ждет, пока она придет в сознание
[4] **Providence** — провидение, судьба, злой рок
[5] **to get out of siege** — выбраться из осады

our enemies. They were waiting for me. I became their prisoner. From their words I understood that my friend had betrayed me[1]. I tried to get away, but they caught me. They tortured me again and again. My back and all my bones were broken. I could hardly learn to walk. Finally I got my chance and escaped. I went north and found myself in Afghanistan. There I travelled and learnt the art of travelling magicians. I didn't want to return to England. My friends and my family thought I was dead.

"But when you get old, you start thinking about home. I remembered the bright green fields of England and decided to see them. I saved some money, and then I came here. I know what soldiers like and can make enough money for living."

"Your story is most interesting," said Sherlock Holmes. "I have already heard of your meeting with Mrs. Barclay. Then you followed her home and saw the quarrel through the window. She told him everything she knew. You ran across the lawn and ran into the room."

"I did, sir, and when he saw me, his face turned into the mask of horror and he fell down. But he was dead before he fell. I read death on his face."

"And then?"

"Then Nancy fell unconscious, and I took the door key from her hand. I wanted to unlock it and get help. But then I decided to get away. I didn't want my secret to come out. In a hurry I put the door key in my pocket and lost my stick. Teddy ran up the curtain and I got him down. When I got him into his box, I was off as fast as I could run."

"Who's Teddy?" asked Holmes. The man opened the box and we saw a beautiful reddish-brown creature, thin and quick, with a long, thin nose, and a pair of the finest red eyes that ever I saw in an animal's head.

"It's a mongoose," I cried.

[1] **my friend had betrayed me** — мой друг предал меня

"Well, some call them that," said the man. "Snake-catcher is what I call them, and Teddy is quick on cobras. I have one, and Teddy catches it every night on the performance."

"Well, can we come to you again if Mrs. Barclay is in serious trouble?"

"In that case, of course."

We left him. When we were walking along the street a policeman came up to us.

"Ah, Holmes," he said, "I think you have heard about the case. It has come to nothing!" "What then?" "The doctors say he died of heart attack. You see it was a very simple case after all." "Oh, yes," said Holmes, smiling. "Come, Watson, I don't think we can return to London." "There's one thing," said I as we walked down to the station. "The husband's name was James, and the other was Henry, why did she say 'David'?" "She told about David from the Bible[1]!"

[1] **David from the Bible** — библейский Давид *(согласно библейской легенде, царь Давид, чтобы взять себе в жены Вирсавию, послал ее мужа-военачальника на верную смерть)*

A Scandal in Bohemia



Holmes' Method and the King's Mistake

To Sherlock Holmes she was always the Woman. He never told about her in any other words. Sherlock Holmes didn't feel any love for Irene Adler. He didn't feel love for anybody. He had too cold and too balanced mind. Sometimes he looked like a machine. He never spoke of love seriously. But there was one woman to him, and that woman was Irene Adler.

When I got married, I didn't see Holmes. My friend Sherlock Holmes went on living in his house in Baker Street. The study of crime — that interested him! Sometimes I heard about his work and success from the newspapers but I really knew little of my dear friend.

One night — it was on the 20th of March 1888 — I was coming home and my way led me through Baker Street. Suddenly I decided to see Holmes again. From the dark street I could see

that his windows were bright. I saw his tall figure in one of them. He was walking around the room quickly, with his head down and his hands behind him. He was at work again! I rang the bell and came in.

I couldn't say he was very happy to see me, but he was glad, I think. He pointed at the armchair near the fire and at the box of cigars. Then he stood before the fire and looked at me carefully, in his own special way.

"You are happy with your wife, Watson, aren't you?" he said at last. "I think that you have put on seven and a half pounds[1] since I saw you."

"Seven!" I answered.

"No, a little more. And you work again, I see. You did not tell me that you wanted to work."

"Then, how do you know?"

"I see it, I deduce it.[2] How do I know that you got very wet a day or two ago, and that your servant is not a good one?"

"My dear Holmes," said I, "this is too much. It is true that I had a country walk on Thursday. I came home absolutely wet. But now I am wearing different clothes. How do you deduce it? As to Mary Jane, my servant... my wife told me many times, but again I can't understand how you work it out[3]."

He smiled and rubbed his long, nervous hands together.

"It is easy, believe me," said he, "there are some parallel cuts on your left shoe. It means that the person who cleaned the shoes was careless. How did I work out that you started medical practice? Well, a gentleman walks into my rooms smelling of medicine, with a hidden stethoscope[4] in his hat. Who is he? It's not a difficult question."

[1] **you have put on seven and a half pounds** — вы поправились на 3,5 кг
[2] **I see it, I deduce it.** — Я вижу это, я делаю выводы.
[3] **how you work it out** — как вы догадались об этом
[4] **stethoscope** — стетоскоп *(медицинский прибор для прослушивания легких)*

I smiled because his explanation of his famous process of deduction was fantastic! "When I listen to you," I said, "I always think that it is very easy. And each next time I am always shocked with the way it works."

"You are right," he answered and sat down into an armchair with a cigarette. "You see, but you do not observe.[1] For example, you have often seen the steps from the hall to this room."

"Very often."

"How often?"

"Well, some hundreds of times."

"Then how many are there?"

"How many? I don't know."

"You have seen, but you have not observed. They are seventeen! You are interested in these little problems, aren't you? I think it will interest you." He gave me a thick, pink letter. "It came by the last post," said he. "Read it aloud."

It was a letter without a date, a name and an address.

"Tonight somebody will visit you, at a quarter to eight o'clock," it said, "a gentleman wants to consult you on a very secret business. You have helped some important people of royal families. You have shown that you are a noble man. We hope, you can help us, too. Get ready to see your visitor wearing a mask."

"This is a mystery," I said. "What do you think it means?"

"I have no idea because I have no facts. What do you deduce from it?"

I looked at the writing and the paper on which it was written.

"The man is rich," I said. "The paper is not cheap. It is very strong and white. It's strange paper. I have never seen such paper."

"It is not English paper at all. Look at it in the light! Can you see that it was made in Bohemia? I think that a German

[1] **You see, but you do not observe.** — Вы видите, но не наблюдаете.

wrote the letter. The word order is wrong, he put the words in the German way. Ah, here comes our visitor now."

"Shall I leave, Holmes?"

"No, no, I need your help. I think we'll hear something very interesting," said Holmes and we heard a strong knock at the door.

"Come in!" called Holmes.

A tall and strong man came into the room. He looked like Hercules in rich dress. "For an Englishman his dress is too rich and too bright," I thought. Besides, he was wearing a black mask.

"Have you got my letter?" he asked with a strong German accent.

"Please, take a seat," said Holmes. "I'm Sherlock Holmes. And this is my friend, Dr. Watson. He helps me a lot in my cases. How can I call you, please?"

"You can call me Count Von Kramm. I come from Bohemia. My case is a secret one and very important. Will you and your friend keep it in a secret?"

"I will," we said together.

"A noble and important person from a royal family has sent me to you. He asks for help. I'm wearing a mask because nobody must know about my visit. If you can't help, there will be a great scandal in the Bohemian Royal Family."

"I know, Your Majesty," said Holmes. He was sitting in his arm-chair smoking a cigarette.

Our visitor jumped up from his chair. He started to go up and down the room[1], then stopped, took off his mask and threw it on the floor.

"You are right," he cried, "I am the King. But how do you know who I am? Yes, I am the King of Bohemia. I have come to consult you."

[1] **to go up and down the room** — ходить взад-вперед по комнате

"Very well. Go on," said Holmes. He was sitting with his eyes closed and listening carefully.

"Five years ago I met Irene Adler. I think you know this name..."

"Let me see!" said Holmes. "Hum! Born in 1858. Famous singer, very beautiful, lives in London. Your Majesty, as I understand, loved her and wrote her some letters. Now you want to get them back."

"You are right. But how..."

"Did you marry here secretly?"

"No."

"I think, you can always say that you didn't write those letters, if she shows them."

"But my writing..."

"Copied.[1]"

"My paper."

"Stolen."

"My photograph."

"Bought."

"We were both in the photograph."

"Oh, dear![2] That is very bad! That was a mistake, Your Majesty."

"I was madly in love, I was so young... But now I must get it back."

"Did you try to buy it?"

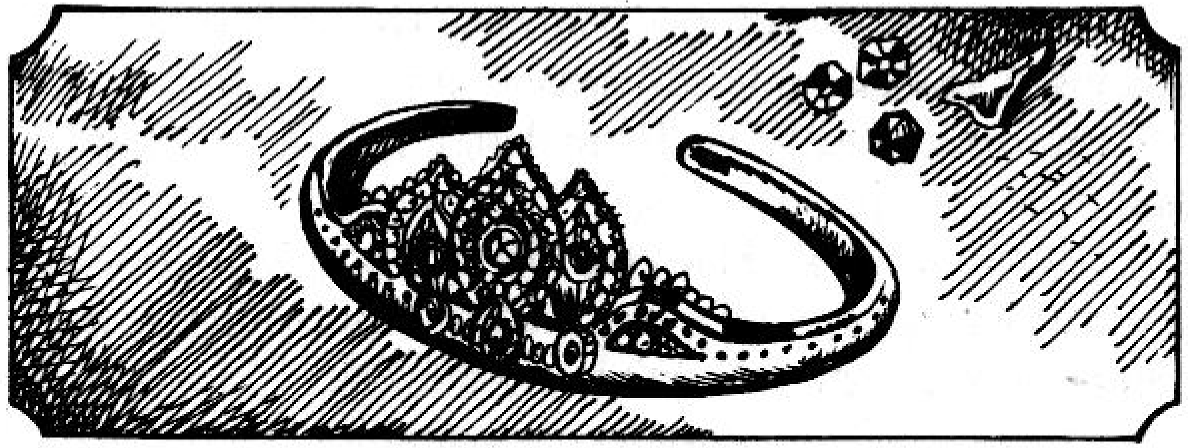
"She will not sell."

"Did you try to steal it?"

"We tried five times. But my men didn't find it."

Holmes laughed. "It is a very nice problem. What is she going to do with the photo?" said he.

[1] **Copied.** — *зд.* **Подделан** *(и далее* stolen, bought — *причастия прошедщего времени* — украдена, куплена*)*.
[2] **Oh, dear!** — Боже мой!





"You know, when I left Irene Adler, she was very angry with me. Now she has a chance to ruin me. Soon I am going to marry Clotilde Lothman. She is the second daughter of the King of Scandinavia. This marriage is very important because we are from the most important royal families in Europe. If Clotilde knows about Irene and me, that will be a great scandal."

"And Irene Adler?"

"She says she will send the photograph to Clotilde's family. I am afraid she will keep her promise. We must find the photo before she sends it! We have three days yet.[1]"

"Oh, I am sure that we will find," said Holmes with a yawn. "Your Majesty will, of course, stay in London?"

"Certainly. You will find me at the Langham Hotel under the name of Count Von Kramm."

"Then I'll write to you to tell you what happens. And her address?" Holmes asked.

"Is Briony Lodge, Serpentine Avenue, St. John's Wood."

"Then, good-night, Your Majesty," said Holmes. The King left and Holmes turned to me "Good-night, Watson. Please, come back tomorrow at 3 o'clock in the afternoon."

Secret Marriage

At 3 o'clock I was at Baker Street, but Holmes was not at home. So I waited him in his study. It was about 4 o'clock when the door opened and a very strange person walked into the room. He was an old man with a red face and he looked drunk. He was wearing poor and rather old clothes. He came up to me but I had to look at him three times before[2] I saw it was my friend — Holmes!

[1] **We have three days yet.** — У нас есть еще три дня.

[2] **I had to look at him three times before** — мне пришлось присмотреться, прежде чем

He smiled and went to the bathroom to change his clothes. Ten minutes later an English gentleman was sitting in front of the fire and telling me his story.

"It's very funny. I've had a nice time, really! I left home at 8 o'clock this morning. I was wearing a servant's dress. I wanted to become friends with her servants. Servants are always happy to talk. Soon I found her house and walked round it. It is a lovely big house, with a garden at the back. Large sitting-room on the ground floor, with long windows which are easy to open. I found some horsemen and heard a lot about the young woman — Miss Adler.

"And what of Irene Adler?" I asked.

"Oh, she lives quietly, sings at concerts. She doesn't go out often but she has got a friend. He is Godfrey Norton, the lawyer. He is dark and handsome and visits her every day. Is she his client or his friend? Do they love each other? If he is her lawyer, perhaps she has given him the photograph. If they are in love, she won't show it to him. I want you to know the story in detail."

"Very interesting, Holmes!" I said.

"When I was there, a cab drove up to Miss Adler's house. Mr. Norton jumped out of it. He was in a great hurry, shouted to the cabman to wait and came in the house. He was in the house about half an hour, and then came out even in a greater hurry. 'Drive like the devil,' he shouted, 'to the Church of St. Monica!' Some minutes later Miss Adler ran out of her home and jumped into a cab. 'To the Church of St. Monica!' she cried. I had to follow them and jumped into a cab. When I arrived, I came into the church. There were three people there: Mr. Norton, Miss Adler and a churchman. When Mr. Norton saw me he ran up to me.

"Thank God," he cried. "Come! Come!"

"What then?" I asked.

"Come, man, come, only three minutes."

"So I helped Mr. Norton to marry Miss Adler. They had to find a witnees and they found him. It was me, my dear Watson. A servant, a poor man was the best witness for their secret marriage. When they left the church he went to his work and she returned to her house. 'I'll be in the park at five as usual,' she said as she left him."

"So she married him! What shall we do now?" I said.

"First, we'll have something to eat. We are going to be very busy tonight. And I need your help, Watson. It is about 5 now. At 7 we must be there, near her house. Miss Irene returns from her drive at that time and we will meet her."

"And what then?"

"I'll do everything. But, remember, you must not interfere, come what may[1]. You understand?

"Perhaps something unpleasant will happen. Do not join in it. Then I'll get inside her house. You must wait outside near the sitting-room window. Then the sitting-room window will open."

"Yes."

"You must watch me."

"Yes."

"When I raise my hand — so — you will throw IT into the room and shout 'Fire!'"

I took the small thing out of his hand.

"What is it, Holmes?" I asked.

"Don't be afraid, it's not a bomb, just a smoke-stick. The room will quickly be full of smoke. Then you walk to the end of the street and wait for me there. Do you understand me?"

"OK, I'll do what you want," I said.

[1] **you must not interfere, come what may** — вам нельзя вмешиваться, что бы ни случилось

Fire! Fire!

That evening Holmes again was wearing different clothes. He had churchman clothes and a big black hat on. He changed his face, his hair, his manners — he was a different man! The stage lost a fine actor, when he became a detective.

At about 6 o'clock we were near Miss Adler's house. The street was rather busy. A lot of people were smoking, talking and laughing there.

"You see," said Holmes to me, "the case has become less difficult after their marriage. I don't think Irene wants her husband to see the photo, so it is in a secret place in her house. Now the question is, 'Where?' I am sure it is in her house."

"But the King's men tried to find it..."

"Yea, but they did not know how to look."

"But how will you look?"

"I will not look. She will show me. She will have to."

Then he suddenly stopped and pointed to the coming cab. One of the men in the street ran up to open the door. Perhaps, he wanted to get some money. Then another man ran up and pushed him away. They started shouting and fighting. Irene was in the middle of the fight. Holmes ran up to help the lady but suddenly he cried and fell to the ground. The blood was running down his face. Irene hurried to her house, but then stopped and looked back.

"How is the poor gentleman?" she asked.

"He is dead," cried some people.

"No, no, he is alive!" cried the others.

"Bring him into the sitting-room. There is a comfortable sofa. This way, please!" said Irene.

Some people carried Holmes into the sitting-room and put him on the sofa. I could see him through the window. I was watching him with the smoke stick in my hand.

Suddenly Holmes sat up on the sofa. He looked like a man who was in need of air. A servant ran to open the window. At

the same moment Holmes raised his hand and I threw the smoke-stick into the room with a cry of "Fire!" The people in the street joined the cry: "Fire!" Thick clouds of smoke filled the room. I walked away to the corner of the street. In ten minutes Holmes came to meet me there.

"You did it very nicely, Doctor," he said.

"You have the photograph?"

"I know where it is. She showed me."

"But why did she show it to you?"

"It is easy," said he, laughing. "You, of course, saw that everyone in the street was helping me. I paid them some money for their help."

Now I could see.

"It wasn't a real fight. It wasn't real blood — just some red paint. It is an old trick. Then I got in her sitting-room, asked for some fresh air and you had your chance."

"How did that help you?"

"You see, when a woman thinks that her house is on fire, she runs to the most important things — her baby, her gold, her... photo. That's where she ran.[1] The photograph is in a cupboard in her sitting-room. I saw the photo. But I couldn't take it because I wasn't alone in the sitting-room. I had nothing to do but[2] say some excuses and leave the house."

"And now?" I asked.

"I must send a telegram to the King right now. Tomorrow we'll come to the house with the King. We will come early when the lady is still in bed. When we are in the sitting room, the King will take the photo with his own hands. Then we will leave the house."

That time we were walking along Baker Street. When we stopped near Holmes' door, a thin young man was passing by[3].

[1] **That's where she ran.** — Именно туда она и побежала.
[2] **I had nothing to do but** — Мне ничего не оставалось делать, как
[3] **was passing by** — проходил мимо

"Good-night, Mister Sherlock Holmes," he said and hurried away.

"I've heard that voice before," said Holmes looking down the street. "But who was it?"

Photo

I slept at Baker Street that night, and we were having our toast and coffee in the morning when the King of Bohemia ran into the room.

"You have really got it!" he cried, happily.

"Not yet."

"But you have hopes?"

"I have hopes."

"Then, come!"

On the way to Irene's house Holmes said to the King:

"Irene Adler is married."

"Married! When?"

"Yesterday. Her husband is Mr. Norton, an English lawyer."

"But I hope she doesn't love him."

"I do hope that she does.[1]"

"I don't understand why."

"If the lady loves her husband, she does not love Your Majesty. If she does not love Your Majesty, she will not ruin Your Majesty's plan."

A servant opened the door and asked:

"Mr. Sherlock Holmes?"

"I am Mr. Holmes," answered my friend. He looked very sirprised.

"Mrs. Norton told me that you were going to come. She left this morning with her husband for the Continent."

[1] **I do hope that she does.** — *зд.* Я очень надеюсь, что любит.

"What!" Sherlock Holmes cried out. "Do you mean that she has left England?"

"You are right."

"What about the photo? All is lost!" cried the King.

"We shall see," said Holmes and we ran into the sitting-room. Holmes opened the cupboard and took out a photo and a letter. The photograph was of Irene Adler herself in evening dress, the letter was addressed to "Sherlock Holmes". My friend opened it and we read it together.

"My Dear Mr. Sherlock Holmes,

You really did it very well. I thought that it was a real fire, and that you were a kind old man. But when I ran up to the cupboard and opened it to take the photo out... I began to think. I remembered those wonderful stories that my friends told me about you, the famous detective in London. I thought it was your trick! You know, I had your address and decided to find everything out myself. I dressed like a young man. I followed you to your door. I wanted to find out if you were Mr. Sherlock Holmes. Then I said 'good-night' to you outside your door!

"My husband and I decided to leave England. The photo? Please, tell the King I will never show it to anybody. I love my husband and he loves me. Here is a different photo. The King can keep it, if he likes.

Irene Norton"

"What a woman!" cried the King of Bohemia, when we finished reading the letter. "Why didn't I marry her?"

"She is a very clever woman," said Holmes coldly. "I am sorry that I have not finished the case."

"No, no," cried the King. "The photo is safe now. I know that she never breaks her promises. I need nothing more than her word."

"I am glad to hear it."

"How can I thank you, dear Mr. Holmes?"

"Your Majesty, I would like to have just one thing," said Holmes.

"Tell me what it is."

"This photograph!"

The King looked at Holmes in surprise.

"Irene's photograph!" he cried. "Certainly, it is yours."

"I thank Your Majesty," Holmes turned away and we left.

And there was no scandal in the kingdom of Bohemia.

Holmes stopped telling jokes about woman's wit[1]. He always remembers Irene Adler — the woman who was cleverer than he was. And when he speaks of Irene Adler, he says she is the woman.

[1] **about woman's wit** — о женском уме

Activities

The Lost World

Before Reading

1) What do you know about prehistoric life? About dinosaurs? Are there any mysteries about them?

2) What were dinosaurs like? Were they alike? Were they different?

3) Have you seen any films or cartoons about dinosaurs? What are they? Were the creatures angry or friendly there?

While Reading

1) Read Chapter One "Try Your Luck With Professor Challenger". Do you know who said it? Gladys? Mr. McArdle? Mr. Malone? Professor Challenger? Mrs. Challenger? Why did this person say it?

1. "I am a poor student."
2. "Well, I think you know that the cranial index is a constant factor."
3. "You can be as angry as you like. But you will not attack me."
4. "Chances are around you."
5. "What about a modern Munchausen? You can show him up as a liar!"
6. "It proves that you are a journalist."
7. "Something wonderful happened or the man is a champion liar."
8. "Professor Challenger, the famous zoologist! But I don't quite understand why I must interview this gentleman. What has he done?"

9. "Challenger? He is the man who came with some silly stories from South America. As far as I can remember it was about some strange animals."
10. "Then I must tell you that he is an impossible person. Get quickly out of the room if he gets aggressive."

2) Read Chapter One "Try Your Luck With Professor Challenger" and Chapter Two "It's Just the Very Biggest Thing in the World". Can you prove that..? Say as much as you can.

1. Gladys was beautiful.
2. Malone loved Gladys.
3. Professor Challenger was an impossible man.
4. Professor Challenger's appearance was unusual.
5. Professor Challenger hated journalists.
6. Professor Challenger was a famous scientist and an explorer.
7. Malone didn't believe Professor Challenger at first.
8. Professor Challenger had enough proofs to make Malone believe his story.
9. The audience in the Zoological Institute didn't believe Professor Challenger.
10. Malone was happy to have Lord John Roxton as a companion in the expedition.

3) Read Chapter Three "We Disappear into the Unknown" and find the right answers.

1. How did the travellers — Professor Summerlee, Lord John and Malone — feel at the day of their departure?
    a) They looked happy and excited.
    b) Professor Summerlee was sorry for himself but the other two were happy.
    c) They were very sorry for themselves.
    d) Lord John and Professor Summerlee were happy to have an adventure ahead but Malone didn't want to leave the girl he loved.

2. Why did Professor Challenger come to the port when the expedition was sailing off?
   a) He wanted to wish good luck and say "good-bye" to the travellers.
   b) He brought them a detailed map of the Lost World
   c) He came there to tell Malone that he was against Malone's reports.
   d) He gave the letter with directions to the travellers to be opened at Manaos.
3. What is the wrong sentence about Malone's companions?
   a) Professor Summerlee was as old as Malone.
   b) Lord John liked nice clothes.
   c) Professor Summerlee had never been on expeditions before.
   d) Lord John had visited South America before.
4. Why did Lord John believe Challenger's words?
   a) He had known Professor Challenger for a long time.
   b) He knew the unknown was everywhere in South America.
   c) He had visited the Lost World before.
   d) He believed every word of a man of science.
5. Which of the following is not about Challenger?
   a) London lunatic
   b) champion liar
   c) South Americomaniac
   d) prize peacock
6. What was written in the letter that Challenger had given to the travellers in the port?
   a) detailed directions
   b) a map of the Lost World
   c) nothing
   d) some wishes of good luck
7. What sentence is not true about the days the four were travelling in canoes?

   a) The expedition came across rapids several times.
   b) The travellers enjoyed the beauty of the tropical forest.
   c) For three days the explorers made their way along a quiet stream that looked like a tunnel of green sunshine.
   d) The travellers never left canoes and walked into the tropical forest full of dangerous animals.
8. What place did they pass on their way to the plateau since the day they left their canoes?
   a) Indian village
   b) a great green swamp
   c) an open place covered with tree ferns
   d) the thickets of bamboos
9. Who was sure that the huge grey flying creature was a pterodactyl?
   a) Challenger
   b) Lord John
   c) Summerlee
   d) Malone
10. Why was Summerlee silent at the end of the Chapter?
   a) He got very tired after a long journey.
   b) He saw that the scenery looked like one in the picture.
   c) He was so surprised by the beauty of the place that he couldn't speak.
   d) He was either angry or sorry with himself.

4) Read Chapter Four "Who Could Have Foreseen It?" and say if the sentences are *True* (T) or *False* (F). Correct the false ones.

1. Professor Challenger was sure there was a way up the plateau.
2. On their way round the plateau the expedition found a skeleton of an Indian.

3. Everybody was afraid of the skeleton because they were sure that somebody had pushed the poor man down from the plateau.
4. The four found no signs of Maple White's expedition while they were on their way round the plateau.
5. The expedition followed the marks in the shape of arrows to find the way up.
6. They found the way of Maple White but it didn't exist any more.
7. For the first time the travellers saw a prehistoric animal early in the morning. It came up quietly to their camp near the plateau.
8. When Summerlee saw the flying dinosaur he lost his skepticism towards Challenger and they shook hands.
9. The expedition made the round-plateau journey but found no possible way up.
10. It was Lord John who had an idea to climb the high thin rock and make a bridge across the abyss.
11. All travellers were experienced mountain-climbers.
12. The tree on the top of the thin rock was too short to make a bridge.
13. The moment Challenger put his foot on the plateau a terrible monster came out of the forest.
14. They didn't hear the sound of the falling bridge. When they saw no bridge across the abyss, they were shocked.
15. The travellers had no idea why their bridge was gone.

5) Read Chapter Five "The Most Wonderful Things Have Happened" and put the sentences in the right order.

_____ They made a bridge across the abyss and reached the plateau without any troubles.
_____ Their bridge was gone and they were trapped.
_____ Some powerful creature visited the camp.

_____ The explorers found unusual tracks and Lord John decided that they belonged to an enormous bird.
_____ Lord John shot their enemy dead but their position was hopeless.
_____ On their first morning they made a camp and called it Fort Challenger.
_____ The expedition climbed the high thin rock that was near the plateau.
_____ In the opening they saw five iguanodons having their meal.
_____ They found a swamp of pterodactyls and had a good chance to study their way of life.
_____ The monsters attacked the explorers but the four fortunately escaped.

6) Read Chapter Six "For Once I Was the Hero" and complete the sentences.

1. In the morning the explorers felt bad because _____ .
   a) they had a flu
   b) the bites of the pterodactyls were poisonous
   c) they had no food
   d) the situation was hopeless
2. The whole day Malone had the feeling that _____ .
   a) somebody was watching them
   b) they would find a way down
   c) something wonderful was going to happen that day
   d) somebody would die
3. At night _____ woke them up.
   a) a sound of train
   b) pterodactyls' songs
   c) an iguanodon's steps
   d) a nerve-shaking scream

4. _____ visited their camp that night.
   a) A giant toad
   b) A meet-eating dinosaur
   c) A peaceful iguanodon
   d) An Indian with greenish eyes
5. In the morning the expedition went to the iguanodon glade. They saw _____ there.
   a) a megalosaurus
   b) pools of blood and large pieces of meet
   c) a sabre-toothed tiger
   d) an allosaurus
6. _____ inhabited the Maple White Land.
   a) Only unknown types of prehistoric animals
   b) Only frightening reptilian monsters
   c) Different types of extinct and present-day animals
   d) No man-like creatures
7. The explorers agreed that their first task was _____ .
   a) to find the way down
   b) to explore the Lost World carefully
   c) to kill all monstrous dinosaurs
   d) to strengthen their camp
8. Malone climbed the tree _____ .
   a) to get the ape-man hiding among the branches
   b) to get some sketch of the Lost World
   c) to get some juicy fruit
   d) to find the way out of the thick forest
9. When Malone saw an ape-man among the branches, he _____ .
   a) was shocked and frightened
   b) fell down from the tree
   c) dived wildly down the tree
   d) was a little surprised
10. Malone couldn't see _____ from the top of the gingko tree.
   a) his friends

   b) the whole plateau
   c) the swamp of pterodactyls
   d) any lake

7) Read Chapter Seven "It Was Dreadful in the Forest" and join the halves of the sentences from Malone's story.

1. I had not gone a hundred yards before _____ .
2. The darkness of the forest was frightening, but _____ .
3. I found a small river and _____ .
4. There were many tracks there and I understood that _____ .
5. I realized that people were living on the plateau, because _____ .
6. Suddenly a huge deer gave a warning cry and _____ .
7. For five minutes the stegosaurus was so close to my hiding place that _____ .
8. A strange creature was near me, but nothing could be seen, so _____ .
9. My skin grew cold and _____ .
10. I hoped that it was a peaceful iguanodon, but _____
   a) _____ even worse was the white flood of moonlight.
   b) _____ it was one of the drinking places of the animals.
   c) _____ was off among the trees.
   d) _____ by stretching out my hand I could touch his back.
   e) _____ I realized how dreadful it was in the forest.
   f) _____ fires could only be lit by the hand of a man.
   g) _____ decided to follow it.
   h) _____ I walked faster.
   i) _____ I soon saw that it was a very different creature.
   j) _____ my hair rose at the thought.

8) Read Chapter Eight "I Shall Never Forget It" and answer the questions. Try to say three sentences at least.

1. Why did Malone make three fires before going to sleep?
2. Who woke Malone up in the morning?
3. Who attacked the camp?
4. Could the ape-men talk to each other?
5. How did the ape-men look like?
6. Challenger looked like the king of the ape-men. Was it of great help for the explorers?
7. How did the native people look like?
8. What do you know about the ape-men town?
9. What special ceremony was held in that ape-men town?
10. How did Lord John escape?
11. How did Lord John and Malone rescue their friends?
12. Why did the Indians follow the expedition?

9) Read Chapter Nine "Those Were the Great Victories" and put the sentences in the right order.

_____ The explorers decided to take the Indians to their town because they hoped for their warm welcome.
_____ When they reached the lake, they saw a great flotilla of Indian canoes coming towards them.
_____ The explorers learned that the natives kept iguanodons as domestic animals.
_____ One Indian left the camp to bring some water and was killed by an ape-man.
_____ The Indians had a battle with the ape-men, won it and turned the ape-men into their slaves.
_____ The natives were ready for the battle and the explorers decided to join them in their war against the ape-men.
_____ Challenger found geysers and he got very excited.
_____ The explorers were watching the unusual life of the prehistoric lake.

_____ In the early morning the whole company started on their way to the Indian village.
_____ Malone was nearly killed by an ape-man near the river.

10) Read Chapter Ten "Escape" and explain why:

1. the victory of the Indians over the ape-men was very important for the explorers.
2. the expedition didn't use Maple White's way to come down.
3. the Indians didn't want to help the expedition to come down.
4. the explorers' guns had no effect on the monstrous reptiles.
5. the Indians didn't eat the reptile's meat.
6. Challenger made the balloon.
7. the young boy decided to help them.
8. the Indians didn't notice the expedition escape.
9. the explorers didn't take everything they had down.
10. there were many fires (not one) at the foot of the cliffs.

11) Read Chapter Eleven "A Procession! A Procession!" and do the final test.

1. Professor Challenger was _____ .
   a) very polite
   b) an impossible person
   c) a real English gentleman
   d) a professional journalist
2. When Challenger returned from his first expedition, his words were doubted because _____ .
   a) he had no proofs
   b) his proofs were not enough to make the scientists believe his unusual story
   c) South America was a fully explored region
   d) he was a well-known champion liar

3. Challenger was sure that the Lost World existed because he _____ .
   a) had seen the plateau with his own eyes and had shot a pterodactyl
   b) believed the drawings of Maple White absolutely
   c) had found some stories of a strange land in Indian legends
   d) had already visited it
4. The explorers started the expedition _____ .
   a) to test Professor Challenger's words
   b) to find the best place for hunting
   c) to make a map of South America
   d) to bring back a live pterodactyl
5. Before the explorers reached the Lost World, _____ .
   a) they hadn't seen any signs of prehistoric life
   b) they hadn't faced any troubles
   c) they had seen no signs of Maple White's expedition
   d) they had enjoyed the beauty of the tropical forests and streams
6. What is not true about iguanodons?
   a) They lived on grass and leaves and tree branches.
   b) They walked upright on three-toed hind-feet and from time to time put their five-fingered front-feet on the ground.
   c) They had powerful tails and balanced on them while eating.
   d) They were monstrous kangaroos.
7. What is true about pterodactyls?
   a) They lived in small families.
   b) They were of dark-red colour.
   c) They had sharp teeth in their beaks.
   d) They were birds.
8. What was the place where the explorers had a pleasant experience?

   a) the glade of iguanodons
   b) the swamp of pterodactyls
   c) the ape-men town
   d) the hunting-pit made by the natives
9. When did all the explorers agree that it was their first task to find the way down?
   a) after they finished all their food
   b) after the toad-faced bloody monster visited their camp
   c) after they escaped from the ape-men
   d) the moment their feet touched the plateau
10. The explorers learned about the ape-men when _____ .
   a) Malone was up the tallest gingko tree
   b) their camp was attacked by the ape-men
   c) the Indians defeated the ape-men and turned them into their slaves
   d) the expedition crossed the bridge over the abyss
11. What is true about the native Indians?
   a) They were red-haired.
   b) They were red-skinned.
   c) They couldn't run fast in the open.
   d) They couldn't make fires.
12. Who were the masters of the Lost World?
   a) ape-men
   b) Indians
   c) reptilian toad-faced monsters
   d) iguanodons
13. How did the explorers escape into the outer world?
   a) They travelled on the balloon that Challenger had constructed.
   b) They crossed the bridge over the abyss that had been made by the ape-men.
   c) They followed the stream that led them out.
   d) They followed the map the chief's son had given them.

14. What was the proof the explorers had shown at the meeting at the Zoological Institute?
    a) the live pterodactyl
    b) the diamonds
    c) the insect collections
    d) some photos

After Reading

Read the names of the Chapters and try to match them with short summaries:

Chapter One. **"Try Your Luck With Professor Challenger"**
Chapter Two. **"It's Just the Very Biggest Thing in the World"**
Chapter Three. **"We Disappear into the Unknown"**
Chapter Four. **"Who Could Have Foreseen It?"**
Chapter Five. **"The Most Wonderful Things Have Happened"**
Chapter Six. **"For Once I Was the Hero"**
Chapter Seven. **"It Was Dreadful in the Forest"**
Chapter Eight. **"I Shall Never Forget It"**
Chapter Nine. **"Those Were the Great Victories"**
Chapter Ten. **"Escape"**
Chapter Eleven. **"A Procession! A Procession!"**

_____ Finally the expedition found the way up the plateau that looked like the one from the picture by the dead American. That was the beginning of their troubles and wonders. Their bridge was gone — that was their first tragedy! They became the natives of the plateau because they had no way down

_____ Professor Challenger was very rude and aggressive. In one of his interviews he told about prehistoric animals that he had discovered in South America. A journalist came to interview him. Wasn't that visit dangerous?

_____ The expedition made its way across the Atlantic, up the Amazon and through the tropical jungle. They enjoyed its beauty and faced some troubles. The further they went, the more proofs of the Professor's words they found. Did they see a pterodactyl flying above? They were not sure that time.

_____ The expedition started the exploration of the Lost World. They saw iguanodons having their peaceful meal. They were attacked by the dreadful pterodactyls. At the end of their first day they learned that an unknown powerful creature had visited their camp.

_____ The expedition made their camp near an Indian village. They spent all their days studying the natives' way of life, the great wonders of the Lost World but never stopped thinking about finding their way to the outer world. A boy, whom they had rescued, gave them a map; they followed it and found the way out of the Lost World.

_____ After a great fight, Professor told the journalist about his wonderful discoveries. His story about the dead American artist, the drawing of dinosaur, the pterodactyl's bone and some photographs made the journalist believe the Professor. He called Challenger "a Columbus of science" and made a decision to follow the expedition to the unknown land.

_____ The explorers decided to make a map of the Lost World. It was the journalist's idea to climb the highest tree to get the whole view of the plateau. It was the journalist who did it. At last the expedition had the general idea of the plateau and the journalist was very proud of what he had done. What was the terrible creature that he had seen up the tree — an ape or a human?

_____ Two of the explorers were free, but the others were prisoners in the ape-town. No doubt they were going to face the death. They were rescued at the moment that might be their last one. A hundred of large red-haired ape-men stood near the edge of the plateau. In front of them there was a group of Indians. The

ape-men took the prisoners in turn and threw them down the cliff. A mad cry of delight followed the tragedy — the ape-men enjoyed the performance. One of the explorers was to be the next...

____ It was the most dreadful experience of his life! He left the camp at night to get some new facts about the Lost World. He got them (the humans lived on the plateau!) but nearly lost his life. A monstrous meet-eating dinosaur followed him until he found himself in a deep hunting pit. When he reached the camp, he was shocked: the whole company had disappeared! His position was hopeless!

____ When the expedition reached London, the time of their triumph had come! They had photos, insect collection, even a live pterodactyl with them. The whole central traffic of London was stopped and the explorers were carried around London streets.

____ The members of expedition escaped and some Indians were rescued with the help of the guns. They decided to take the Indians home and with the help of natives to defeat the ape-men completely. And so they did. But first they had a great battle. Many dead bodies were left behind but the ape-men were turned into slaves. At last man became the master of the Lost World.

The Stories about Sherlock Holmes

Before Reading

How much do you know about detective stories?

1. Have you read any stories about famous detectives? Who are they?
2. Have you seen any films about detectives? Which ones? Which film do you like best and why?
3. Does the detective always catch the criminal? Is the detective always "good" and the criminal always "bad"?
4. Have you ever heard about Sherlock Holmes? What is he like?

While Reading

The Speckled Band

1) Can you say who and why...

1. woke Dr. Watson
2. came to see Sherlock Holmes
3. lived in India
4. died two years before
5. rushed into Holmes's office
6. was frightened
7. stayed in Julia's room at night
8. frightened the snake
9. killed Dr. Roylott

2) Can you say which of the characters — Dr. Roylott, Mr. Holmes, Dr. Watson, Helen Stoner — was...

1. serious
2. rude
3. dangerous
4. strong
5. large
6. famous
7. unhappy
8. angry
9. frightened
10. unkind

The Five Orange Pips

Choose the best answer to each question:

1. What did Elias Openshaw get one day?
   a) five oranges
   b) five letters
   c) a letter with an orange
   d) a letter from India
2. Where did Elias Openshaw live after the Civil War?
   a) in England
   b) in America
   c) in India
   d) in Scotland
3. How did Elias Openshaw die?
   a) He was killed.
   b) He was poisoned.
   c) He fell down from a hill.
   d) He died in a fire.

4. Who got Elias's house after his death?
   a) his son
   b) his nephew
   c) his brother
   d) his wife
5. What happened to John's father during his visit to a friend?
   a) He died.
   b) He returned to his house.
   c) He visited Sherlock Holmes.
   d) He wrote a letter to his son.
6. Who or what made John go and see Sherlock Holmes?
   a) the police
   b) his father's death
   c) his uncle's and his father's deaths
   d) his anger
7. What were Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson doing when John came to their house?
   a) They were smoking.
   b) They were looking out of the window.
   c) They were spending a quiet evening together.
   d) They were talking about Openshaw's family.
8. What did John show to Sherlock Holmes?
   a) the American Encyclopedia
   b) a letter with five orange pips
   c) a piece of burnt paper with some words in it
   d) a photo of the K. K. K.
9. What did Sherlock Holmes advise John to do?
   a) to stay at his house in Baker Street
   b) to return home
   c) to go to America
   d) to look for a job on board the ship
10. How did the killers of Openshaw die?
    a) Sherlock Holmes killed them.
    b) They got five orange pips and died of fear.

c) They died in the storm.
d) They died in prison.

The Adventure of the Beryl Coronet

1) Answer the following questions in detail. Some of you can have different points of view.

1. Was Mr. Holder a noble man?
2. Was Mr. Holder a madman?
3. Did Arthur spend much money?
4. Was Sir George a man without heart?
5. Did Mary love her uncle?
6. Did Mary love Sir George?
7. Did Arthur love Mary?
8. Was Mr. Holder a kind and loving father?
9. Was Dr. Watson a great help to Holmes?
10. Will Mary be punished?

2) Put the sentences in the right order.

1. Sherlock Holmes visited Mr. Holder's house.
2. At night Holmes solved the problem and got the beryls back.
3. Mr. Holder called the police and they arrested Arthur.
4. In the morning when Mr. Holder came to Sherlock Holmes, the detective returned him the missing part of the Beryl Coronet
5. The police didn't find beryls in the house and Mr. Holder went to Sherlock Holmes.
6. An unusual visitor came to Mr. Holder's office to ask for money.
7. Sir George took the piece of the golden coronet with three beryls and ran away.

8. Mr. Holder woke up at night and found Arthur in his dressing room with the coronet in his hand.
9. Mr. Holder brought the coronet to his house.
10. Mary stole the coronet from her uncle's desk.
11. Arthur jumped out of the open window and had a fight with Sir George.
12. Mr. Holder told his son and his niece about the Beryl Coronet.
13. Mary told Sir George about the Beryl Coronet.

The Crooked Man

1) Who in this story...

1. spent most of his life in India
2. killed Colonel Barclay
3. loved Nancy Devoy
4. carried the door key
5. was crooked
6. was called David
7. told Holmes about the crooked man
8. performed in cafes
9. watched the quarrel between the Colonel and his wife through the window

2) Choose the right answer to the questions.

1. Why did Holmes visit Watson that night?
   a) Holmes needed a place to stay.
   b) Holmes got lost.
   c) Holmes needed a witness.
   d) Holmes didn't see Watson for a long time.
2. What is true about Colonel Barclay?
   a) He had a son and a daughter.
   b) He kept a mongoose as a pet.

c) He was married to a beautiful and kind woman.
d) He was never aggressive and angry.

3. Why did the servant get no answer from Mrs. Barclay when she brought her tea?
   a) Nancy and her husband were talking too loud to hear the knock.
   b) Nancy lay unconscious on the sofa and the Colonel was dead.
   c) There was nobody in the room.
   d) Nancy and her husband were listening to the crooked man's story.
4. What is true about Nancy?
   a) The Colonel Barclay was the only man she loved.
   b) She was a very angry and aggressive woman and they often had quarrels.
   c) She thought Henry Wood had been dead for a long time.
   d) She never lived in India.
5. Why could nobody find the door key?
   a) Nancy gave the key to the crooked man.
   b) Henry Wood carried the key away.
   c) The servant lost the key in the garden.
   d) The mongoose carried the key under the sofa and left it there.
6. What is true about the crooked man?
   a) He never left England.
   b) His name was David.
   c) He spoke several languages.
   d) He died in India.
7. How did it happen that Henry became crooked?
   a) Barclay broke his back in a fight.
   b) He fell down from a horse.
   c) He was born with his back bent.
   d) He became crooked after the tortures.

8. Why did the Colonel die?
   a) Henry Wood shot him dead.
   b) The mongoose killed him.
   c) He died of a heart attack.
   d) Nancy struck him with a wooden club.

A Scandal in Bohemia

1) Can you remember the characters of the story? Choose the true sentence about each one.

1. Sherlock Holmes _____
   a) loved Irene Adler.
   b) never met a woman cleverer than he was.
   c) wanted to be a theatre actor.
   d) could change his manners.
2. Dr. Watson _____
   a) lived in a house in Baker street.
   b) wasn't married.
   c) was a great help to Sherlock Holmes.
   d) was a detective.
3. The King of Bohemia _____
   a) married Irene Adler secretly some years before.
   b) was going to marry Irene.
   c) was tall and strong.
   d) finally got his photo back.
4. Irene Adler _____
   a) loved nobody but the King of Bohemia.
   b) was cleverer that Sherlock Holmes.
   c) was a famous ballet dancer.
   d) left England because she was afraid of Dr. Watson.

2) What were they like? How did they look like? Try and say as much as you can about the following things and characters. The words below can help you.

cold and balanced mind
married
put on seven pounds
medical practice
process of deduction
thick pink paper
a mask
rich clothes
wrong word order
strong German accent
tall and strong man
a royal family
very beautiful
a famous singer
both in the photo
a chance to ruin him
a great scandal
lived quietly
didn't see Holmes much
didn't have to interfere
changed his clothes and his manners
left England
keeps her photo
cleverer
the woman

1. Sherlock Holmes
2. Holmes's method
3. The letter Holmes got from the King of Bohemia
4. The King of Bohemia
5. The photo the King of Bohemia wanted to get back
6. Irene Adler
7. Dr. Watson

3) Put the sentences in the right order.

1. Holmes promised to help the King.
2. The King left Irene and she got angry with him.
3. Irene found out whom was the poor man whom she had saved.
4. Holmes changed his clothes and found out as much as he could about Irene and her house.
5. Holmes helped Mr. Norton to marry Irene.
6. The King was going to marry a girl from a royal family.

7. The King of Bohemia and Irene Adler were in love.
8. Holmes got Irene's photo.
9. Holmes asked Dr. Watson to help him with his plan.
10. Holmes found out where Irene kept the photo.
11. The King came to consult Holmes.
12. Irene and her husband left England.

After Reading

1) What do you think about Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson?

1. Do you think Sherlock Holmes was a real man or just an imaginary character?
2. Do you think Sherlock Holmes is a clever detective?
3. Why do people ask Holmes for help? Does he always get them out of danger?
4. Do you think Sherlock Holmes was a kind man? Was money important for him?
5. Did Holmes want to help people or was it his way of life?
6. What do you think about Dr. Watson? Is he as clever as Holmes? Does Holmes really need him?
7. Is Holmes ready to kill anyone who killed another person (like Dr. Roylott)? Is Holmes a killer himself?
8. Does Holmes always find the answer? Is he always cleverer than the other people in the stories?
9. Why do you think the stories about Sherlock Holmes are popular nowadays?

2) Which story did you like best and which did you like least? Can you explain why? Write a short review of one of the stories. Use these words in your review.

I liked / I didn't like this story because _____
_____ nobody died

_____ could / couldn't guess the answer
_____ the murderer(s) was (were) killed
_____ a good person was murdered
_____ somebody was cleverer than Sherlock Holmes
_____ happy / unhappy ending

Vocabulary

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — имя прилагательное
adv adverb — наречие
cj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — имя существительное
num numeral — числительное
p.p. past participle — причастие прошедшего времени
pl plural — множественное число
prep preposition — предлог
pron pronoun — местоимение
v verb — глагол
зд. здесь

A

able ['eɪb(ə)l] *a* умелый, умеющий, способный
above [ə'bʌv] *prep* над
absolute ['æbsəlu:t] *a* абсолютный, беспримерный
absolutely [ˌæbsə'lu:tlɪ] *adv* полностью, абсолютно
abyss [ə'bɪs] *n* пропасть, бездна
accident ['æksɪd(ə)nt] *n* случай, случайность; несчастный случай
across [ə'krɒs] *prep* сквозь, через
act [ækt] *v* действовать, поступать; вести себя
action ['ækʃ(ə)n] *n* действие, поступок
active ['æktɪv] *a* активный
actual ['æktʃʊəl] *a* действительный
actually ['æktʃ(ʊ)əlɪ] *adv* на самом деле
add [æd] *v* добавить
address [ə'dres] *n* адрес
adventure [əd'ventʃə] *n* приключение
advice [əd'vaɪs] *n* совет
aeroplane ['e(ə)rəpleɪn] *n* самолет
afraid [ə'freɪd] *a* испуганный
afternoon [ˌɑ:ftə'nu:n] *n* день (*время после полудня*)
afterwards ['ɑ:ftəwəd(z)] *adv* впоследствии, позже
again [ə'ge(ɪ)n] *adv* снова; опять
against [ə'ge(ɪ)nst] *prep* против
age [eɪdʒ] *n* возраст; долгий срок
aggressive [ə'gresɪv] *a* агрессивный; настойчивый
ago [ə'gəʊ] *adv* тому назад
  long ago давно
agony ['ægənɪ] *n* агония
agree [ə'gri:] *v* соглашаться

ahead [ə'hed] *adv* вперед
air [eə] *n* воздух
air-vent ['eəvent] *n зд.* вентиляционное отверстие
alcohol ['ælkəhɒl] *n* алкоголь
alive [ə'laɪv] *a* живой
alligator ['ælɪgeɪtə] *n* аллигатор
alone [ə'ləʊn] *a* одинокий
along [ə'lɒŋ] *prep* вдоль
aloud [ə'laʊd] *adv* громко, вслух
already [ɔ:l'redɪ] *adv* уже
always ['ɔ:lw(e)ɪz] *adv* всегда
Amazon ['æməz(ə)n] *n* Амазонка (*величайшая река в Южной Америке*)
among [ə'mʌŋ] *prep* среди, между
anatomy [ə'nætəmɪ] *n* анатомия
anger ['æŋgə] *n* гнев
angry ['æŋgrɪ] *a* сердитый
animal ['ænɪm(ə)l] *n* животное
anybody ['enɪ,bɒdɪ] *pron* кто-нибудь
anyone ['enɪwʌn] *pron* кто-нибудь
anything ['enɪθɪŋ] *pron* что-нибудь
anywhere ['enɪweə] *adv* где-нибудь
ape-man ['eɪp,mæn] *n* обезьяно-человек
appear [ə'pɪə] *v* появляться, показываться
appetite ['æpɪtaɪt] *n* аппетит
archway ['ɑ:tʃweɪ] *n* проход в виде арки
arm-chair ['ɑ:mtʃeə] *n* кресло
army ['ɑ:mɪ] *n* армия
around [ə'raʊnd] *adv* всюду; вокруг
arrival [ə'raɪv(ə)l] *n* прибытие, приезд
arrive [ə'raɪv] *v* прибывать, приезжать
arrow ['ærəʊ] *n* стрела
art [ɑ:t] *n* искусство
article ['ɑ:tɪk(ə)l] *n* статья
artist ['ɑ:tɪst] *n* художник
as [æz] *adv* как; *cj* в то время как
  as ... as так же ... как
  as soon as как только
  as far as I know насколько я знаю
ask [ɑ:sk] *v* спрашивать; осведомляться
  to ask for просить
astronomy [ə'strɒnəmɪ] *n* астрономия
ate *past от* **eat**
Atlantic (Ocean) [ət'læntɪk] *n* Атлантический океан
atmosphere ['ætməsfɪə] *n* атмосфера
attack [ə'tæk] *n* нападение, атака; *v* нападать, атаковать
audience ['ɔ:dɪəns] *n* публика, зрители (*в театре*)
aunt [ɑ:nt] *n* тетя
avenue ['ævɪnju:] *n* авеню (*широкая улица*)
awake (awoke, awoken) [ə'weɪk] ([ə'wəʊk], [ə'wəʊkən]) *v* разбудить
awful ['ɔ:f(ə)l] *a* ужасный, страшный

B

baboon [bə'bu:n] *n* бабуин (*вид обезьяны*)
back [bæk] *n* спина; обратная сторона
badly ['bædlɪ] *adv* сильно
baggage ['bægɪdʒ] *n* багаж
balance ['bæləns] *n* баланс
balloon [bə'lu:n] *n* воздушный шар
bamboo [,bæm'bu:] *n* бамбук
band [bænd] *n зд.* лента
bang [bæŋ] *v* ударить; стукнуть
bank [bæŋk] *n* банк; берег (*реки*)
banker ['bæŋkə] *n* банкир
bark [bɑ:k] *n* кора (*дерева*)
bat [bæt] *n* летучая мышь
bath [bɑ:θ] *n* ванна
  to have a bath принимать ванну
battle ['bætl] *n* битва; сражение
be (was, were; been) [bi:] ([wɒz], [wɜ:]; [bi:n]) *v* быть, являться
  to be afraid of бояться чего-л.
  to be angry with сердиться на кого-л.
  to be ashamed стыдиться кого-л.
  to be fond of любить
  to be good at быть способным к
  to be interested in интересоваться
  to be late for опаздывать
  to be lost потеряться
  to be out быть не дома
  to be sorry сожалеть
  to be up and down ходить туда-сюда
beak [bi:k] *n* клюв
bean [bi:n] *n* бобовое зернышко, боб
beard [bɪəd] *n* борода
beast [bi:st] *n* зверь; животное
beat (beat, beaten) *v* [bi:t] ([bi:t], ['bi:tn]) *v* ударять, колотить; бить
beautiful ['bju:tɪf(ə)l] *a* красивый, прекрасный; превосходный
beauty ['bju:tɪ] *v* красота
became *past от* **become**
because [bɪ'kɒz] *cj* потому что, так как
become (became, become) [bɪ'kʌm] ([bɪ'keɪm], [bɪ'kʌm]) *v* становиться
bedroom ['bedru:m] *n* спальня
been *p.p. от* **be**
beetle ['bi:tl] *n* жук
before [bɪ'fɔ:] *adv* впереди; вперед; раньше; *cj* прежде чем; скорее чем
began *past от* **begin**
beggar ['begə] *n* нищий
begin (began, begun) [bɪ'gɪn] ([bɪ'gæn], [bɪ'gʌn]) *v* начинать
beginning [bɪ'gɪnɪŋ] *n* начало
begun *p.p. от* **begin**
behind [bɪ'haɪnd] *prep* позади, сзади
believe [bɪ'li:v] *v* верить

bell [bel] *n* колокольчик; звонок
belong [bɪ'lɒŋ] *v* принадлежать
below [bɪ'ləʊ] *prep* под, ниже
beryl ['berɪl] *n* берилл (*драгоценный камень*)
beside [bɪ'saɪd] *prep* рядом
besides [bɪ'saɪdz] *adv* кроме того, сверх того
better ['betə] *adv* лучше
between [bɪ'twi:n] *prep* между
bird [bɜ:d] *n* птица
bit *past от* **bite**
bite (bit, bitten) [baɪt] ([bɪt], ['bɪtn]) *v* кусать
bitten *p.p. от* **bite**
blanket ['blæŋkɪt] *n* одеяло
blew *past от* **blow**
blind [blaɪnd] *a* слепой
block [blɒk] *v* блокировать, закрывать, преграждать
blood [blʌd] *n* кровь
bloody ['blʌdɪ] *a* кровавый
blow (blew, blown) [bləʊ] ([blu:], [bləʊn]) *v* дуть
blown *p.p. от* **blow**
blow up ['bləʊ'ʌp] *v* надувать; взрываться
board [bɔ:d] *n* борт (*корабля*)
on board на борту
boat [bəʊt] *n* лодка
body ['bɒdɪ] *n* тело; туловище
bone [bəʊn] *n* кость
bony ['bəʊnɪ] *a* костлявый
boot [bu:t] *n* ботинок, сапог
boring ['bɔ:rɪŋ] *a* скучный
boss [bɒs] *n* босс, начальник

botany ['bɒtənɪ] *n* ботаника
both [bəʊθ] *pron* оба
bottle ['bɒtl] *n* бутылка
bought *past и p.p. от* **buy**
bowman ['bəʊmən] *n* лучник
box [bɒks] *n* коробка
boxer ['bɒksə] *n* боксер
bracelet ['breɪslɪt] *n* браслет
brain [breɪn] *n* ум; мудрость; мозг
branch [brɑ:ntʃ] *n* ветка, ветвь; отделение, филиал
branching horns ветвистые рога
brave [breɪv] *a* храбрый, смелый
break (broke, broken) [breɪk] ([brəʊk], ['brəʊkən]) *v* ломать, разрушать
breakfast ['brekfəst] *n* завтрак
breath [breθ] *n* дыхание
to be out of breath задыхаться, запыхаться
bridge [brɪdʒ] *n* мост
bright [braɪt] *a* яркий; блестящий; светлый; умный, смышленый
brilliant ['brɪlɪənt] *a* блестящий, великолепный, сверкающий
bring (brought, brought) [brɪŋ] ([brɔ:t], [brɔ:t]) *v* приносить
broad [brɔ:d] *a* широкий; обширный, просторный
broke *past от* **break**
broken *p.p. от* **break**
bronze [brɒnz] *n* бронза
brought *past и p.p. от* **bring**

brush [brʌʃ] *v* чистить
bubble ['bʌb(ə)l] *n* пузырь; *v* пузыриться; бить ключом
build (built, built) [bɪld] ([bɪlt], [bɪlt]) *v* строить
built *past и p.p. от* **build**
bump [bʌmp] *n* глухой шум, удар; *v* ударить, биться о что-л.
burn (burnt, burnt) [bɜ:n] ([bɜ:nt], [bɜ:nt]) *v* сжигать; гореть, пылать
burnt *past и p.p. от* **burn**
bury ['berɪ] *v* хоронить; зарывать
bush [bʊʃ] *n* куст
business ['bɪznɪs] *n* дело, занятие, профессия
on business по делам, в командировке
busy ['bɪzɪ] *a* занятой
buy (bought, bought) [baɪ] ([bɔ:t], [bɔ:t]) *v* покупать, приобретать
butterfly ['bʌtəflaɪ] *n* бабочка
buzz [bʌz] *v* жужжать

C

cab [kæb] *n* кеб, повозка, экипаж
cabbage ['kæbɪdʒ] *n* капуста
call [kɔ:l] *v* звать, окликать; называть
came *past от* **come**
camera ['kæm(ə)rə] *n* фотоаппарат

camp [kæmp] *n* лагерь
can (could) [kæn] ([kʊd]) *v* мочь, уметь
candle ['kændl] *n* свеча
canoe [kə'nu:] *n* каноэ (*лодка*)
captain ['kæptɪn] *n* капитан
card [kɑ:d] *n* карта (*игральная*)
care [keə] *n* забота, попечение, уход; внимательность, осторожность
to take care of заботиться
career [kə'rɪə] *n* карьера
carefully ['keəf(ə)lɪ] *adv* внимательно, тщательно
carelessly ['keəlɪslɪ] *adv* небрежно
carpet ['kɑ:pɪt] *n* ковер
carry ['kærɪ] *v* носить; возить
case [keɪs] *n* случай, дело; судебное дело; ящик, футляр
in any case в любом случае
catch (caught, caught) [kætʃ] ([kɔ:t], [kɔ:t]) *v* ловить; поймать, схватить
caught *past и p.p. от* **catch**
cave [keɪv] *n* пещера
ceiling ['si:lɪŋ] *n* потолок
center ['sentə] *n* центр
century ['sentʃərɪ] *n* век, столетие
ceremony ['serɪmənɪ] *n* церемония
chair [tʃeə] *n* стул
chairman ['tʃeəmən] *n* председатель
chalk [tʃɔ:k] *n* мел
champion ['tʃæmpɪən] *n* чемпион

chance [tʃɑ:ns] *n* случай; шанс, возможность, вероятность
change [tʃeɪndʒ] *v* менять(ся)
to change clothes переодеваться
chaos ['keɪɒs] *n* хаос
character ['kærɪktə] *n* характер
charge [tʃɑ:dʒ] *n зд.* обвинение; поручение
to give smb. in charge сдавать кого-л. в руки полиции
charlatan ['ʃɑ:lət(ə)n] *n* шарлатан
cheer [tʃɪə] *v* приветствовать
cheese [tʃi:z] *n* сыр
cheetah ['tʃi:tə] *n* гепард
chemistry ['kemɪstrɪ] *n* химия
chest [tʃest] *n* грудная клетка; ящик
chicken ['tʃɪkɪn] *n* цыпленок
chief [tʃi:f] *n зд.* вождь
child [tʃaɪld] *n* ребенок
childhood ['tʃaɪldhʊd] *n* детство
choice [tʃɔɪs] *n* выбор
choose (chose, chosen) [tʃu:z] ([tʃəʊz], ['tʃəʊz(ə)n]) *v* выбирать
chorus ['kɔ:rəs] *n* хор
chose *past om* **choose**
church [tʃɜ:tʃ] *n* церковь
cigar [sɪ'gɑ:] *n* сигара
circle ['sɜ:k(ə)l] *n* круг
civilization [ˌsɪv(ə)laɪ'zeɪʃ(ə)n] *n* цивилизация
clap [klæp] *v* хлопать
clay [kleɪ] *n* глина
clean [kli:n] *a* чистый
clear [klɪə] *v* очищать; убирать
clearing ['klɪ(ə)rɪŋ] *n* просека, просветление
clerk [klɑ:k] *n* клерк
clever ['klevə] *a* умный
client ['klaɪənt] *n* клиент
cliff [klɪf] *n* утес
climate ['klaɪmɪt] *n* климат
climb [klaɪm] *v* лазить, взбираться
clock [klɒk] *n* часы
close [kləʊz] *v* закрывать
clothes [kləʊ(ð)z] *n* одежда
cloud [klaʊd] *n* облако
club [klʌb] *n* клуб
coat [kəʊt] *n* пальто
colleague ['kɒli:g] *n* коллега
collect [kə'lekt] *v* собирать
collection [kə'lekʃ(ə)n] *n* коллекция
colour ['kʌlə] *n* цвет, оттенок, тон
colourless ['kʌləlɪs] *a* бесцветный
column ['kɒləm] *n* колонна; колонка, столбец (*в газете*)
come (came, come) [kʌm] ([keɪm], [kʌm]) *v* приходить; прибывать, приезжать; происходить
to come across встретить
to come back вернуться
to come out выходить
to come over приезжать, приходить
to come up подходить
comfort ['kʌmfət] *n* комфорт

comfortable ['kʌmf(ə)təb(ə)l] *a* удобный
command [kə'mɑ:nd] *v* приказывать; командовать
companion [kəm'pænɪən] *n* компаньон
compare [kəm'peə] *v* сравнивать
complete [kəm'pli:t] *a* полный; завершенный
conference ['kɒnf(ə)rəns] *n* конференция
construct [kən'strʌkt] *v* сооружать
consult [kən'sʌlt] *v* советоваться, консультироваться
contain [kən'teɪn] *v* содержать
contents ['kɒntents] *n* содержание; содержимое
continent ['kɒntɪnənt] *n* континет
continue [kən'tɪnju:] *v* продолжать
conversation [ˌkɒnvə'seɪʃ(ə)n] *n* разговор
cook [kʊk] *v* готовить (пищу)
cooling ['ku:lɪŋ] *n* охлаждение
corner ['kɔ:nə] *n* угол
coronet ['kɒrənɪt] *n* корона; диадема
correspondent [ˌkɒrɪ'spɒnd(ə)nt] *n* корреспондент
corridor ['kɒrɪdɔ:] *n* коридор
cotton ['kɒtn] *n* хлопок
cough [kɒf] *v* кашлять
could *past om* **can**
council ['kaʊns(ə)l] *n* совет (*организация*)
count [kaʊnt] *v* считать
courage ['kʌrɪdʒ] *n* мужество
cousin ['kʌz(ə)n] *n* двоюродный брат
cover ['kʌvə] *v* покрывать
crack [kræk] *n* треск; трещина; щель; *v* раскалывать; трескаться
crash [kræʃ] *n* грохот, треск; *v* падать, рушиться с треском
creation [krɪ'eɪʃ(ə)n] *n* создание, сотворение
creature ['kri:tʃə] *n* существо, создание
crime [kraɪm] *n* преступление
critical ['krɪtɪk(ə)l] *a* критический
crook [krʊk] *v* сгибаться, искривляться
cross [krɒs] *n* крест; *v* переходить, пересекать
crowd [kraʊd] *n* толпа
crown [kraʊn] *n* корона
cry [kraɪ] *n* крик; *v* кричать; плакать
cry out выкрикивать
crystal ['krɪstl] *a* хрустальный; кристаллический
cunning ['kʌnɪŋ] *a* хитрый
cupboard ['kʌpbəd] *n* шкаф
curious ['kjʊ(ə)rɪəs] *a* любопытный
curtain ['kɜ:tn] *n* занавеска; штора
cut (cut, cut) [kʌt] ([kʌt], [kʌt]) *v* резать; рубить; *n* порез

D

dance [dɑ:ns] *v* танцевать
danger ['deɪndʒə] *n* опасность
dangerous ['deɪndʒərəs] *a* опасный, рискованный
dark [dɑ:k] *a* темный
darkness ['dɑ:knɪs] *n* темнота
dash [dæʃ] *n* порыв; удар; *v* бросать; разбивать; ринуться, броситься
date [deɪt] *n* дата, число
dawn [dɔ:n] *n* рассвет
dead [ded] *a* мертвый; умерший
death [deθ] *n* смерть
decide [dɪ'saɪd] *v* решать, принимать решение
decorate ['dekəreɪt] *v* украшать, наряжать
deduce [dɪ'dju:s] *v* выводить (*умозаключение*)
deep [di:p] *a* глубокий; низкий (*о голосе*)
deer [dɪə] *n* олень
defeat [dɪ'fi:t] *v* поражать, побеждать
deform [dɪ'fɔ:m] *v* деформировать
demonstrate ['demənstreɪt] *v* демонстрировать
depend [dɪ'pend] *v* зависеть
depression [dɪ'preʃ(ə)n] *n* депрессия, подавленное состояние
describe [dɪs'kraɪb] *v* описывать, изображать
desert ['dezət] *n* пустыня
destroy [dɪs'trɔɪ] *v* разрушать; портить; уничтожать
detail ['di:teɪl] *n* деталь, подробность
detective [dɪ'tektɪv] *n* детектив
develop [dɪ'veləp] *v* развивать
devil ['devl] *n* дьявол
devotion [dɪ'vəʊʃ(ə)n] *n* преданность
diagram ['daɪəgræm] *n* диаграмма
diamond ['daɪəmənd] *n* бриллиант; алмаз
diary ['daɪərɪ] *n* дневник
die [daɪ] *v* умереть, скончаться
difference ['dɪf(ə)rəns] *n* отличие; разница
different ['dɪf(ə)rənt] *a* другой; непохожий
difficult ['dɪfɪk(ə)lt] *a* трудный
difficulty ['dɪfɪk(ə)ltɪ] *n* трудность
dig (dug, dug) [dɪg] ([dʌg], [dʌg]) *v* копать, рыть
dining room ['daɪnɪŋru(:)m] *n* столовая (*комната в доме*)
dinosaur ['daɪnəsɔ:] *n* динозавр
direction [d(a)ɪ'rekʃ(ə)n] *n* направление
  in the direction of по направлению к чему-л.
dirty ['dɜ:tɪ] *a* грязный
disagree [,dɪsə'gri:] *v* не соглашаться
disappear [,dɪsə'pɪə] *v* исчезать
discover [dɪs'kʌvə] *v* открывать, обнаруживать, раскрывать

discovery [dɪs'kʌv(ə)rɪ] *n* открытие
discuss [dɪs'kʌs] *v* обсуждать, дискутировать
dispute [(')dɪs'pju:t] *n* диспут
distance ['dɪst(ə)ns] *n* расстояние; дистанция
  in the distance вдали
dive [daɪv] *v* нырять
divide [dɪ'vaɪd] *v* делить
document ['dɒkjʊmənt] *n* документ
domestic [də'mestɪk] *a* домашний (*о животных*)
donkey ['dɒŋkɪ] *n* осел
door [dɔ:] *n* дверь
doubt [daʊt] *n* сомнение; *v* сомневаться, колебаться, быть неуверенным
  no doubt без сомнения
downwards ['daʊnwədz] *adv* вниз
dragon ['drægən] *n* дракон
dragon-fly ['drægənflaɪ] *n* стрекоза
drama ['drɑ:mə] *n* драма
dramatically [drə'mætɪk(ə)lɪ] *adv* драматично
drank *past от* **drink**
draw (drew, drawn) [drɔ:] ([dru:], [drɔ:n]) *v* рисовать
drawing ['drɔ:ɪŋ] *n* рисунок
drawn *p.p. от* **draw**
dreadful ['dredf(ə)l] *a* страшный, ужасный
dream (dreamt, dreamt) [dri:m] ([dremt], [dremt]) *v* видеть во сне; мечтать; *n* сон; мечта
dreamland ['dri:mlænd] *n* сказочная страна; царство грез
dress [dres] *n* платье; *v* одеваться, наряжаться
dressing room ['dresɪŋru(:)m] *n* гардеробная, комната для одевания
drew *past от* **draw**
drink (drank, drunk) [drɪŋk] ([dræŋk], [drʌŋk]) *v* пить
drive [draɪv] *v* ехать; управлять
drop [drɒp] *n* капля; *v* капать; падать; ронять
drunk *p.p. от* **drink**
dry [draɪ] *a* сухой; *v* сушить; высушивать
duet [dju(:)'et] *n* дуэт
dug *past и p.p. от* **dig**
dull [dʌl] *a* скучный, пасмурный
during ['djʊərɪŋ] *prep* в течение; во время
duty ['dju:tɪ] *n* долг; обязанность

E

each [i:tʃ] *pron* каждый
  each other друг друга
ear [ɪə] *n* ухо
early ['ɜ:lɪ] *adv* рано
earth [ɜ:θ] *n* земля
earthquake ['ɜ:θkweɪk] *n* землетрясение
easy ['i:zɪ] *a* легкий
eat (ate, eaten) [i:t] ([et], ['i:tn]) *v* есть

eaten *p.p. от* **eat**
eccentric [ɪk'sentrɪk] *a* эксцентричный
edge [edʒ] *n* край, кромка
educate ['edjʊkeɪt] *v* давать образование
effect [ɪ'fekt] *n* эффект
egg [eg] *n* яйцо
electric [ɪ'lektrɪk] *a* электрический
element ['elɪmənt] *n* элемент
elephant ['elɪfənt] *n* слон
empty ['emptɪ] *a* пустой, бессодержательный
encyclopedia [ɪn,saɪklə'pi:dɪə] *n* энциклопедия
end [end] *n* конец, окончание
endless ['endlɪs] *a* бесконечный
enemy ['enəmɪ] *n* враг, противник
enjoy [ɪn'dʒɔɪ] *v* получать удовольствие; наслаждаться
enormous [ɪ'nɔ:məs] *a* огромный
enough [ɪ'nʌf] *adv* довольно; достаточно
enthusiasm [ɪn'θju:zɪæz(ə)m] *n* энтузиазм
entrance ['entrəns] *n* вход
envelope ['envələʊp] *n* конверт
episode ['epɪsəʊd] *n* эпизод
equality [ɪ'kwɒlɪtɪ] *n* равенство
escape [ɪ'skeɪp] *v* бежать (*из тюрьмы*); вырваться
especially [ɪ'speʃ(ə)lɪ] *adv* особенно
Europe ['jʊ(ə)rəp] *n* Европа
European [,jʊ(ə)rə'pɪən] *a* европейский
even ['i:v(ə)n] *adv* даже
event [ɪ'vent] *n* событие; случай
everything ['evrɪθɪŋ] *pron* всё
everywhere ['evrɪweə] *adv* везде
evolution [,i:və'lu:ʃ(ə)n] *n* эволюция
exactly [ɪg'zæktlɪ] *adv* точно
examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] *v* осматривать; исследовать
excellent ['eks(ə)lənt] *a* отличный, великолепный
except [ɪk'sept] *prep* исключая, кроме
excitedly [ɪk'saɪtɪdlɪ] *adv* возбужденно; взволнованно
exciting [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] *a* волнующий, захватывающий
exist [ɪg'zɪst] *v* существовать
existence [ɪg'zɪst(ə)ns] *n* существование
expedition [,ekspɪ'dɪʃ(ə)n] *n* экспедиция
expensive [ɪk'spensɪv] *a* дорогой
explain [ɪk'spleɪn] *v* объяснять
exploration [,eksplə'reɪʃ(ə)n] *n* исследование, изучение
explore [ɪk'splɔ:] *v* исследовать
explorer [ɪk'splɔ:rə] *n* исследователь
expression [ɪk'spreʃ(ə)n] *n* выражение
expressive [ɪk'spresɪv] *a* выразительный
extinct [ɪk'stɪŋkt] *a* вымерший; исчезнувший

eye [aɪ] *n* глаз; взгляд
eyebrow ['aɪbraʊ] *n* бровь

F

face [feɪs] *n* лицо; *v* сталкиваться лицом к лицу
fairyland ['fe(ə)rɪlænd] *n* сказочная страна
faithful ['feɪθf(ə)l] *a* верный, преданный
fake [feɪk] *n* подделка
fall (fell, fallen) [fɔ:l] ([fel], ['fɔ:lən]) *v* падать
to fall asleep уснуть
to fall in провалиться внутрь
fallen *p.p. от* **fall**
family ['fæm(ə)lɪ] *n* семья
famous ['feɪməs] *a* знаменитый, известный
fantastic [fæn'tæstɪk] *a* нереальный; удивительный
fast [fɑ:st] *a* быстрый
fat [fæt] *a* жирный; толстый
fault [fɔ:lt] *n* ошибка; вина
favourite ['feɪv(ə)rɪt] *a* любимый
fear [fɪə] *n* страх, боязнь; *v* бояться
feather ['feðə] *n* перо
feel (felt, felt) [fi:l] ([felt], [felt]) *v* чувствовать
to feel important ощущать собственную значимость
feeling ['fi:lɪŋ] *n* чувство
feet [fi:t] *pl от* **foot**
fell *past от* **fall**
felt *past и p.p. от* **feel**
female ['fi:meɪl] *n* самка
fern [fɜ:n] *n* папоротник
few [fju:] *a* немногие, мало, немного
a few несколько
quite a few довольно много
field [fi:ld] *n* поле
fight (fought, fought) [faɪt] ([fɔ:t], [fɔ:t]) *v* бороться; драться; сражаться; *n* борьба; схватка; драка
figure ['fɪgə] *n* фигура, внешний вид; цифра
fill [fɪl] *v* наполнять, заполнять
final ['faɪn(ə)l] *a* окончательный; последний
finally ['faɪnəlɪ] *adv* наконец, в заключение
find (found, found) [faɪnd] ([faʊnd], [faʊnd]) *v* находить
to find out выяснить
fine [faɪn] *a* отличный, замечательный
finger ['fɪŋgə] *n* палец (*руки*)
finish ['fɪnɪʃ] *v* заканчивать; завершать
fire ['faɪə] *n* пожар; огонь; *v* стрелять
to fire a gun выстрелить из ружья
fireplace ['faɪəpleɪs] *n* камин, очаг
first [fɜ:st] *a* первый
fish [fɪʃ] *n* рыба
fit [fɪt] *v* совпадать; соответствовать

fix [fɪks] *v* укреплять; устанавливать
flap [flæp] *v* махать, взмахивать
flat [flæt] *a* плоский
flew *past от* **fly**
float [fləʊt] *v* парить (*в воздухе*); плыть
floor [flɔ:] *n* пол
flotilla [flə'tɪlə] *n* флотилия
flower ['flaʊə] *n* цветок
flown *p.p. от* **fly**
fly (flew, flown) [flaɪ] ([flu:], [fləʊn]) *v* летать
foggy ['fɒgɪ] *a* туманный
follow ['fɒləʊ] *v* следовать
fond [fɒnd] *a* нежный; любящий
food [fu:d] *n* еда
fool [fu:l] *a* глупый
foot [fʊt] (*pl* **feet**) *n* нога; фут (*англ. мера длины*)
footmark ['fʊtmɑ:k] *n* след
footsteps ['fʊtsteps] *n* шаги
forest ['fɒrɪst] *n* лес
forget (forgot, forgotten) [fə'get] ([fə'gɒt], [fə'gɒtn]) *v* забывать
forgot *past от* **forget**
forgotten *p.p. от* **forget**
form [fɔ:m] *v* формировать
formation [fɔ:'meɪʃ(ə)n] *n* образование
fortunately ['fɔ:tʃ(ə)nətlɪ] *adv* к счастью
fought *past и p.p. от* **fight**
found *past и p.p. от* **find**
France [frɑ:ns] *n* Франция
free [fri:] *a* свободный
fresh [freʃ] *a* свежий
friend [frend] *n* друг
friendly ['frendlɪ] *a* дружелюбный
friendship ['frendʃɪp] *n* дружба
frightened ['fraɪtnd] *a* испуганный
frightening ['fraɪtnɪŋ] *a* пугающий, страшный
front [frʌnt] *a* передний
  in front of впереди
  front-feet передние ноги
full [fʊl] *a* полный
funny ['fʌnɪ] *a* забавный
fur [fɜ:] *n* мех
furniture ['fɜ:nɪtʃə] *n* мебель
future ['fju:tʃə] *n* будущее

G

game [geɪm] *n* игра
gas [gæs] *n* газ
gate [geɪt] *n* ворота; калитка
gave *past от* **give**
genius ['dʒi:nɪəs] *n* гений
gentle [dʒentl] *a* мягкий, добрый; тихий, спокойный; нежный
gentleman ['dʒentlmən] *n* господин, джентльмен
geography [dʒɪ'ɒgrəfɪ] *n* география
geology [dʒɪ'ɒlədʒɪ] *n* геология
Germany ['dʒɜ:mənɪ] *n* Германия
gesture ['dʒestʃə] *n* жест
get (got, got) [get] ([gɒt], [gɒt]) *v* получать; становиться, стать
  to get across перебраться

  to get away уходить, выбираться
  to get down спуститься
  to get lost потеряться
  to get off снимать
  to get out выходить
  to get out of выбираться
  to get up вставать
geyser ['gi:zə] *n* гейзер
giant ['dʒaɪənt] *n* гигант, великан
gigantic [dʒaɪ'gæntɪk] *a* гигантский
give (gave, given) [gɪv] ([geɪv], ['gɪv(ə)n]) *v* давать
  to give a party устраивать вечеринку; приглашать гостей
given *p.p. от* **give**
glad [glæd] *a* довольный; радостный, веселый
glade [gleɪd] *n* полянка
glassy ['glɑ:sɪ] *a* стеклянный
gloomy ['glu:mɪ] *a* грустный, мрачный, печальный
glove [glʌv] *n* перчатка
go (went, gone) [gəʊ] ([went], [gɒn]) *v* ходить; уходить, уезжать
  to go away уходить
  to go off уходить
  to go on продолжать
goat [gəʊt] *n* коза; козел
God [gɒd] *n* Бог
gold [gəʊld] *n* золото; *a* золотой (*о цвете*)
golden ['gəʊld(ə)n] *a* золотой (*о цвете*)
good [gʊd] *a* хороший
good-humoured [ˌgʊd'hju:məd] *a* веселый
good-looking [ˌgʊd'lʊkɪŋ] *a* красивый, симпатичный
got *past и p.p. от* **get**
graceful ['greɪsf(ə)l] *a* изящный
granite ['grænɪt] *n* гранит
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
grassy ['grɑ:sɪ] *a* травянистый
great [greɪt] *a* великий; большой; замечательный, прекрасный
green-grocer ['gri:nˌgrəʊsə] *n* продавец фруктов
grew *past от* **grow**
grey [greɪ] *a* серый; седой (*о волосах*)
grip [grɪp] *v* схватить
ground [graʊnd] *n* земля
  ground floor первый этаж
grow (grew, grown) [grəʊ] ([gru:], [grəʊn]) *v* расти; выращивать
grown *p.p. от* **grow**
guard [gɑ:d] *n* охранник
guess [ges] *v* догадаться; угадать, отгадать
guide [gaɪd] *n* гид; проводник
gun [gʌn] *n* ружье
Gypsy ['dʒɪpsɪ] *n* цыган; цыганка

H

had *past и p.p. от* **have**
hairy ['he(ə)rɪ] *a* волосатый
half [hɑ:f] *n* половина

hall [hɔ:l] *n* холл, прихожая
hand [hænd] *n* рука (*кисть*)
hang (hung, hung) [hæŋ] ([hʌŋ], [hʌŋ]) *v* вешать, подвешивать; развешивать; висеть
happen ['hæpən] *v* случаться, происходить
happy ['hæpɪ] *a* счастливый; довольный
hard [hɑ:d] *a* твердый; усердный, упорный; жесткий; *adv* настойчиво, упорно; тяжело, трудно
hardly ['hɑ:dlɪ] *adv* едва
harm [hɑ:m] *n* вред, ущерб
hate [heɪt] *v* ненавидеть
hateful ['heɪtf(ə)l] *a* ненавидящий, полный ненависти
hatred ['heɪtrɪd] *n* ненависть
have (had, had) [hæv] ([hæd], [hæd]) *v* иметь
to have smth. for breakfast есть что-л. на завтрак
head [hed] *n* голова
hear (heard, heard) [hɪə] ([hɜ:d], [hɜ:d]) *v* слышать
heard *past и p.p. от* **hear**
heart [hɑ:t] *n* сердце
by heart наизусть
heavy ['hevɪ] *a* тяжелый, трудный; сильный
height [haɪt] *n* высота; рост
held *past и p.p. от* **hold**
help [help] *v* помогать
here [hɪə] *adv* здесь; тут; сюда
hero ['hɪ(ə)rəʊ] *n* герой
heroic [hɪ'rəʊɪk] *a* героический
hid *past от* **hide**
hidden *p.p. от* **hide**
hide (hid, hidden) [haɪd] ([hɪd], [hɪdn]) *v* прятаться
hiding-place ['haɪdɪŋpleɪs] *n* потайное место
high [haɪ] *a* высокий
high voice громкий голос
hill [hɪl] *n* холм, горка
hind-feet ['haɪndfi:t] *n* задние ноги
history ['hɪst(ə)rɪ] *n* история (*наука*)
hit (hit, hit) [hɪt] ([hɪt], [hɪt]) *v* ударить
hold (held, held) [həʊld] ([held], [held]) *v* держать; проводить (*о собрании*)
hole [həʊl] *n* дыра; нора
honey ['hʌnɪ] *n* мед
honeycomb ['hʌnɪkəʊm] *n* соты
honour ['ɒnə] *n* честь; *v* почитать, чтить
hop [hɒp] *v* прыгать
hope [həʊp] *n* надежда; *v* надеяться; уповать; предвкушать
horizon [hə'raɪz(ə)n] *n* горизонт
horn [hɔ:n] *n* рог
horrible ['hɒrəb(ə)l] *a* ужасный
horror ['hɒrə] *n* ужас
hot [hɒt] *a* жаркий, горячий; разгоряченный
hotel [həʊ'tel] *n* гостиница
hour ['aʊə] *n* час
house [haʊs] *n* дом
how [haʊ] *adv* как? каким образом?

however [haʊ'evə] *cj* однако
huge [hju:dʒ] *a* огромный
human ['hju:mən] *a* человеческий
humorous ['hju:m(ə)rəs] *a* юмористический
hundred ['hʌndrəd] *num* сто
hung *past и p.p. от* **hang**
hunger ['hʌŋgə] *n* голод
hungry ['hʌŋgrɪ] *a* голодный
hunt [hʌnt] *v* охотиться
hurry ['hʌrɪ] *n* спешка; *v* торопиться, торопить
hurt (hurt, hurt) [hɜ:t] ([hɜ:t], [hɜ:t]) *v* болеть; причинять боль
husband ['hʌzbənd] *n* муж
hush [hʌʃ] *int* тише!
hydrogen ['haɪdrədʒ(ə)n] *n* водород (*газ, легче воздуха*)
hypnotic [hɪp'nɒtɪk] *n* гипнотический

I

ice [aɪs] *n* лед
idea [aɪ'dɪə] *n* идея; понятие, представление
ideal [aɪ'dɪəl] *n* идеал
ignore [ɪg'nɔ:] *v* игнорировать
ill [ɪl] *a* больной, нездоровый
imagine [ɪ'mædʒɪn] *v* воображать, представлять себе
immigrant ['ɪmɪgrənt] *n* иммигрант
importance [ɪm'pɔ:t(ə)ns] *n* важность
important [ɪm'pɔ:t(ə)nt] *a* важный, значительный
impossible [ɪm'pɒsəb(ə)l] *a* невозможный, невыполнимый
impulse ['ɪmpʌls] *n* импульс
inch [ɪntʃ] *n* дюйм (*английская мера длины*)
incident ['ɪnsɪd(ə)nt] *n* случай, происшествие
indeed [ɪn'di:d] *adv* действительно, в самом деле
independent [ˌɪndɪ'pendənt] *a* независимый
Indian ['ɪndɪən] *a* индийский
infectious [ɪn'fekʃəs] *a* инфекционный; заразный
insect ['ɪnsekt] *n* насекомое
inside [ɪn'saɪd] *adv* внутри, изнутри
instant ['ɪnstənt] *n* момент
institute ['ɪnstɪtju:t] *n* институт
instruction [ɪn'strʌkʃ(ə)n] *n* инструкция
intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt] *a* умный
interested ['ɪntrɪstɪd] *a* заинтересованный
interesting ['ɪntrɪstɪŋ] *a* интересный
interview ['ɪntəvju:] *n* интервью; *v* брать интервью
introduce [ˌɪntrə'dju:s] *v* представлять, знакомить
invention [ɪn'venʃ(ə)n] *n* изобретение
invitation [ˌɪnvɪ'teɪʃ(ə)n] *n* приглашение

invite [ɪn'vaɪt] *v* приглашать
iron ['aɪən] *n* железо; *a* железный
island ['aɪlənd] *n* остров

J

jacket ['dʒækɪt] *n* куртка
jewellery ['dʒu:əlrɪ] *n* драгоценности; ювелирные изделия
join [dʒɔɪn] *v* присоединяться
joke [dʒəʊk] *n* шутка
journalist ['dʒɜ:n(ə)lɪst] *n* журналист
journey ['dʒɜ:nɪ] *n* поездка; путешествие
judge [dʒʌdʒ] *n* судья
jump [dʒʌmp] *v* прыгать, подпрыгивать
jungle ['dʒʌŋg(ə)l] *n* джунгли
just [dʒʌst] *adv* точно, как раз, именно

K

kangaroo [ˌkæŋgə'ru:] *n* кенгуру
keep (kept, kept) [ki:p] ([kept], [kept]) *v* держать, сохранять, хранить
kept *past и p.p. от* **keep**
key [ki:] *n* ключ
keyhole ['ki:həʊl] *n* замочная скважина
kill [kɪl] *v* убивать
killer ['kɪlə] *n* убийца
kind [kaɪnd] *a* добрый; *n* вид, разновидность
king [kɪŋ] *n* король
kiss [kɪs] *v* целовать
kitchen ['kɪtʃɪn] *n* кухня
knee [ni:] *n* колено
knew *past от* **know**
knife [naɪf] *n* нож
knock [nɒk] *v* ударять; бить; стучать
know (knew, known) [nəʊ] ([nju:], [nəʊn]) *v* знать; быть знакомым; узнавать; отличать
knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] *n* знание
known *p.p. от* **know**

L

lady ['leɪdɪ] *n* дама, леди; госпожа
lagoon [lə'gu:n] *n* лагуна
lake [leɪk] *n* озеро
land [lænd] *n* земля
landscape ['lændskeɪp] *n* пейзаж
lane [leɪn] *n* проход
language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] *n* язык
large [lɑ:dʒ] *a* огромный
last [lɑ:st] *a* последний
  at last наконец
  last year в прошлом году
late [leɪt] *a* поздний, запоздалый
laugh [lɑ:f] *v* смеяться
laughter ['lɑ:ftə] *n* смех
law [lɔ:] *n* закон
lawn [lɔ:n] *n* газон
lawyer ['lɔ:jə] *n* юрист
lay *past от* **lie**
lazy ['leɪzɪ] *a* ленивый

lead (led, led) [li:d] ([led], [led]) *v* вести; руководить
leaf [li:f] (*pl* **leaves**) *n* лист
leafy ['li:fɪ] *a* покрытый листьями
learn (learnt, learnt) [lɜ:n] ([lɜ:nt], [lɜ:nt]) *v* учить; узнавать
learnt *past и p.p. от* **learn**
least [li:st] *a* малейший; *adv* менее всего
  at least по крайней мере
leather ['leðə] *n* кожа (*материал*)
leathery ['leð(ə)rɪ] *a* кожистый
leave (left, left) [li:v] ([left], [left]) *v* покидать; оставлять
lecture ['lektʃə] *n* лекция
lecturer ['lektʃ(ə)rə] *n* лектор
led *past и p.p. от* **lead**
left[1] [left] *a* левый
left[2] *past и p.p. от* **leave**
legend ['ledʒ(ə)nd] *n* легенда
lend [lend] *v* давать взаймы, давать на время
length [leŋθ] *n* длина
let (let, let) [let] ([let], [let]) *v* оставлять; позволять, разрешать
  to let go отпустить
  let us (let's us) давайте, дайте
letter ['letə] *n* письмо; буква
liar ['laɪə] *n* лгун
lie[1] [laɪ] *v* лгать; обманывать
lie[2] **(lay, lain)** ([leɪ], [leɪn]) *v* лежать
lift [lɪft] *v* поднимать
light [laɪt] *a* легкий; светлый
lightning ['laɪtnɪŋ] *n* молния
like [laɪk] *v* любить, нравиться
  to like best любить больше всего
  like you как ты
limit ['lɪmɪt] *n* предел; *v* ограничивать
lion ['laɪən] *n* лев
lip [lɪp] *n* губа
listen ['lɪs(ə)n] *v* слушать
little ['lɪtl] *a* маленький, небольшой; незначительный; *adv* мало
live [laɪv] *a* живой
live [lɪv] *v* жить
  live on ['lɪv'ɒn] *v* питаться
lizard ['lɪzəd] *n* ящерица
lock [lɒk] *n* замок; *v* закрывать
lonely ['ləʊnlɪ] *a* одинокий; грустный
long [lɒŋ] *a* длинный; долгий
look [lʊk] *v* смотреть
  to look after присматривать
  to look at смотреть на
  to look for искать
  to look like быть похожим
  to look very much alike быть очень похожим
lose (lost, lost) [lu:z] ([lɒst], [lɒst]) *v* терять
lost *past и p.p. от* **lose**
lot of ['lɒt 'ɒv] *adv* очень много
loud [laʊd] *a* громкий
lovely ['lʌvlɪ] *a* чудесный
loving ['lʌvɪŋ] *a* любящий
low [ləʊ] *a* низкий; тихий (*о голосе*)

luck [lʌk] *n* удача; везение
good luck! удачи!
lucky ['lʌkɪ] *a* везучий, удачный
luggage ['lʌgɪdʒ] *n* багаж
lunatic ['lu:nətɪk] *a* сумасшедший

M

mad [mæd] *a* сумасшедший, безумный
made *past и p.p. от* **make**
madman ['mædmən] *n* сумасшедший, безумец
madness ['mædnɪs] *n* безумие
magician [mə'dʒɪʃ(ə)n] *n* волшебник
main [meɪn] *a* главный
make (made, made) [meɪk] ([meɪd], [meɪd]) *v* делать
to make smb. do smth. заставлять кого-л. делать что-л.
to make faces корчить гримасы, строить рожи
to make up сочинять
male [meɪl] *n* самец
map [mæp] *n* карта, план
march [mɑ:tʃ] *v* маршировать
mark [mɑ:k] *n* след, отметка; *v* отмечать
marriage ['mærɪdʒ] *n* брак, замужество
mask [mɑ:sk] *n* маска
mass [mæs] *n* масса; груда, куча
master ['mɑ:stə] *n* хозяин, владелец
match [mætʃ] *n* спичка
matter ['mætə] *n* дело, суть; *v* значить, иметь значение
what's the matter? в чем дело?
may (might) [meɪ] ([maɪt]) *v* мочь, иметь возможность
meal [mi:l] *n* еда (*прием пищи*)
mean (meant, meant) [mi:n] ([ment], [ment]) *v* значить
what do you mean? что ты хочешь этим сказать?
meant *past и p.p. от* **mean**
meat-eater ['mi:t,i:tə] *n зд.* хищник
medicine ['meds(ə)n] *n* лекарство
meet (met, met) [mi:t] ([met], [met]) *v* встречаться; знакомиться
meeting ['mi:tɪŋ] *n* встреча; собрание
melon ['melən] *n* дыня
member ['membə] *n* член (*семьи*)
membrane ['membreɪn] *n* мембрана
memory ['mem(ə)rɪ] *n* память, воспоминание
mend [mend] *v* чинить
mention ['menʃ(ə)n] *n* упоминание; *v* упоминать, ссылаться на что-л.
message ['mesɪdʒ] *n* сообщение; письмо, послание; поручение
met *past и p.p. от* **meet**
method ['meθəd] *n* метод

microbiologist [,maɪkrə(ʊ)baɪ'ɒlədʒɪst] *n* микробиолог
middle ['mɪdl] *n* середина
midnight ['mɪdnaɪt] *n* полночь
mile [maɪl] *n* миля; расстояние
milk [mɪlk] *n* молоко
mind [maɪnd] *n* ум, рассудок; *v* возражать, иметь что-л. против
mine [maɪn] *pron* мой, моя, мое
minute ['mɪnɪt] *n* минута
miss [mɪs] *v* промахнуться; пропустить что-л.
missing link ['mɪsɪŋ 'lɪŋk] *n* отсутствующее звено
mission ['mɪʃ(ə)n] *n* миссия; задание
mistake[1] [mɪ'steɪk] *n* ошибка
mistake[2] **(mistook, mistaken)** [mɪ'steɪk] ([mɪ'stʊk], [mɪ'steɪkən]) *v* ошибаться
misty ['mɪstɪ] *a* туманный
misunderstanding [,mɪsʌndə'stændɪŋ] *n* неправильное понимание
modern ['mɒdn] *a* современный
mollusk [mɒ'lʌsk] *n* моллюск
money ['mʌnɪ] *n* деньги
mongoose ['mɒŋgu:s] *n* мангуст
monkey ['mʌŋkɪ] *n* обезьяна
monotonous [mə'nɒt(ə)nəs] *a* монотонный
monster ['mɒnstə] *n* монстр
monstrous ['mɒnstrəs] *a* монстрообразный
moon [mu:n] *n* луна
moonless ['mu:nlɪs] *a* безлунный
moonlight ['mu:nlaɪt] *n* лунный свет
more [mɔ:] *adv* больше
what is more более того
morning ['mɔ:nɪŋ] *n* утро
mosquito [mə'ski:təʊ] *n* комар
mountain ['maʊntɪn] *n* гора
mouth [maʊθ] *n* рот
mouth of the cave вход в пещеру
move [mu:v] *v* двигаться; шевелиться; сдвинуться с места
movement ['mu:vmənt] *n* движение
muddy ['mʌdɪ] *a* грязный
murder ['mɜ:də] *n* убийство
murmur ['mɜ:mə] *v* бормотать
muscular ['mʌskjʊlə] *a* мускулистый
museum [mju:'zɪəm] *n* музей
must [mʌst] *v* должен
mysterious [mɪ'stɪ(ə)rɪəs] *a* таинственный
mystery ['mɪst(ə)rɪ] *n* тайна, секрет

N

nail [neɪl] *n* ноготь
name [neɪm] *v* называть
narrow ['nærəʊ] *a* узкий; тесный
native ['neɪtɪv] *n* коренной житель

natural ['nætʃ(ə)rəl] *a* естественный
it was very natural это было совершенно естественно
naturalist ['nætʃ(ə)rəlɪst] *n* натуралист
nature ['neɪtʃə] *n* природа
nearly ['nɪəlɪ] *adv* близко; почти
necessary ['nesɪs(ə)rɪ] *a* необходимый
neck [nek] *n* шея
need [ni:d] *v* нуждаться
neighborhood ['neɪbəhʊd] *n* соседство
neighbour ['neɪbə] *n* сосед
nervous ['nɜ:vəs] *a* нервный
never ['nevə] *adv* никогда
new [nju:] *a* новый
newcomer ['nju:kʌmə] *n* новичок
next [nekst] *a* следующий
niece [ni:s] *n* племянница
night-dress ['naɪtdres] *n* ночная рубашка
nightmare ['naɪtmeə] *n* ночной кошмар
noble ['nəʊb(ə)l] *a* благородный
nobody ['nəʊbədɪ] *pron* никто
nod [nɒd] *v* кивать
noise [nɔɪz] *n* шум
noisy ['nɔɪzɪ] *a* шумный
nonsense ['nɒns(ə)ns] *n* бессмыслица; чепуха
noon [nu:n] *n* полдень
north [nɔ:θ] *a* северный
North pole Северный полюс
note [nəʊt] *n* записка; заметка, запись
notebook ['nəʊtbʊk] *n* тетрадь для записей
nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] *pron* ничто; ничего
notice ['nəʊtɪs] *n* объявление, вывеска; *v* замечать, примечать
nowadays ['naʊədeɪz] *adv* в наши дни
nowhere ['nəʊweə] *adv* нигде; никуда
number ['nʌmbə] *n* номер; число; *v* нумеровать

O

obey [ə(ʊ)'beɪ] *v* подчиняться, слушаться
ocean ['əʊʃ(ə)n] *n* океан
office ['ɒfɪs] *n* офис, учреждение, кабинет
once [wʌns] *adv* один раз, однажды
at once немедленно, сразу же
once more еще раз
only ['əʊnlɪ] *adv* только
the only единственный
opposite ['ɒpəzɪt] *prep* напротив
orange ['ɒrɪndʒ] *n* апельсин
orchestra ['ɔ:kɪstrə] *n* оркестр
order ['ɔ:də] *n* приказ; *v* приказывать
ordinary ['ɔ:d(ə)nrɪ] *a* обычный
organization [,ɔ:gənaɪ'zeɪʃ(ə)n] *n* организация

organize ['ɔ:gənaɪz] *v* организовывать
origin ['ɒrɪdʒɪn] *n* происхождение
ostrich ['ɒstrɪtʃ] *n* страус
other ['ʌðə] *a* другой, иной
outside [aʊt'saɪd] *adv* снаружи
oval ['əʊv(ə)l] *n* овал
ovation [əʊ'veɪʃ(ə)n] *n* овация
over ['əʊvə] *prep* над; через
to be over закончиться
own [əʊn] *a* собственный; *v* владеть, иметь, обладать

P

pack [pæk] *v* складывать, упаковывать
page [peɪdʒ] *n* страница
pain [peɪn] *n* боль; страдание
paint ['peɪnt] *n* краска; *v* красить; рисовать красками
pale [peɪl] *a* бледный
palm-tree ['pɑ:mtri:] *n* пальма
panic ['pænɪk] *n* паника
panorama [,pænə'rɑ:mə] *n* панорама
panther ['pænθə] *n* пантера
paper ['peɪpə] *n* бумага; документ; газета
parallel ['pærəlel] *a* параллельный; *n* параллель
parasite ['pærəsaɪt] *n* паразит
parody ['pærədɪ] *n* пародия
parrot ['pærət] *n* попугай
part [pɑ:t] *n* часть
partner ['pɑ:tnə] *n* партнер
party ['pɑ:tɪ] *n* вечеринка
pass [pɑ:s] *v* проводить время; проходить, проезжать
past [pɑ:st] *n* прошлое
path [pɑ:θ] *n* тропинка; дорожка
pause [pɔ:z] *n* пауза; *v* останавливаться; делать паузу
paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа (*животного*)
pay (paid, paid) [peɪ] ([peɪd], [peɪd]) *v* платить
peaceful ['pi:sf(ə)l] *a* мирный
peacock ['pi:kɒk] *n* павлин
pelican ['pelɪkən] *n* пеликан
pencil ['pens(ə)l] *n* карандаш
penguin ['peŋgwɪn] *n* пингвин
perhaps [pə'hæps] *adv* возможно, может быть
person ['pɜ:s(ə)n] *n* человек
philosophy [fɪ'lɒsəfɪ] *n* философия
photo ['fəʊtəʊ] *n* фотография
pick [pɪk] *v* подбирать; собирать; срывать
picture ['pɪktʃə] *n* картина; зрелище
piece [pi:s] *n* кусочек
pink [pɪŋk] *a* розовый
pip [pɪp] *n* косточка; зернышко
pipe [paɪp] *n* трубка
pit [pɪt] *n* яма
pity ['pɪtɪ] *n* жалость
what a pity! как жаль!
place [pleɪs] *n* место
plant [plɑ:nt] *v* сажать (*о растениях*)
plantation [plæn'teɪʃ(ə)n] *n* насаждения; плантация

planter ['plɑ:ntə] *n* плантатор
plate [pleɪt] *n* тарелка
plateau ['plætəʊ] *n* плато
platform ['plætfɔ:m] *n* платформа
pleasantly ['plez(ə)ntlɪ] *adv* приятно, мило
please [pli:z] *v* нравиться; угождать, доставлять удовольствие
plesiosaurus [ˌpli:sɪə'sɔ:rəs] *n* плезиозавр (динозавр)
pocket ['pɒkɪt] *n* карман
poem ['pəʊɪm] *n* стихотворение
poetry ['pəʊɪtrɪ] *n* поэзия
point [pɔɪnt] *n* пункт, вопрос; *v* указывать
poison ['pɔɪz(ə)n] *n* яд
poisonous ['pɔɪz(ə)nəs] *a* ядовитый
pole [pəʊl] *n* столб
police [pə'li:s] *n* полиция
policeman [pə'li:smən] *n* полициейсикий
politics ['pɒlɪtɪks] *n* политика
poor [pʊə] *a* бедный, неимущий; несчастный
popular ['pɒpjʊlə] *a* популярный
porridge ['pɒrɪdʒ] *n* каша
port [pɔ:t] *n* порт
portrait ['pɔ:trɪt] *n* портрет
post [pəʊst] *n* почта; *v* отправлять по почте
pot [pɒt] *n* горшок
pound [paʊnd] *n* фунт (*мера веса*); фунт стерлингов (*денежная единица Великобритании*)
power ['paʊə] *n* власть, сила, мощь
powerful ['paʊəf(ə)l] *a* сильный, мощный
practical ['præktɪk(ə)l] *a* практичный
practise ['præktɪs] *v* тренироваться, упражняться
prehistoric [ˌpri:hɪ'stɔ:rɪk] *a* доисторический
presence ['prez(ə)ns] *n* присутствие
present ['prez(ə)nt] *n* подарок
pretty ['prɪtɪ] *a* хорошенький
price [praɪs] *n* цена
primitive ['prɪmɪtɪv] *a* примитивный
print [prɪnt] *v* печатать
prisoner ['prɪz(ə)nə] *n* заключенный
private ['praɪvɪt] *a* частный; личный
prize [praɪz] *n* приз, награда
probably ['prɒbəblɪ] *adv* возможно
profession [prə'feʃ(ə)n] *n* профессия
professor [prə'fesə] *n* профессор
progress ['prəʊgres] *n* прогресс
to be in progress развиваться
promise ['prɒmɪs] *v* обещать
proof [pru:f] *n* доказательство
proud (of) [praʊd] *a* гордый
prove [pru:v] *v* доказывать
providence ['prɒvɪd(ə)ns] *n* провидение, судьба, рок

pterodactyl [ˌterə'dæktɪl] *n* птеродактиль (*летающий ящер*)
publish ['pʌblɪʃ] *v* опубликовывать
pull [pʊl] *v* тянуть, тащить; вытаскивать
puma ['pju:mə] *n* пума
punishment ['pʌnɪʃmənt] *n* наказание
purpose ['pɜ:pəs] *n* цель
push [pʊʃ] *v* толкать
put (put, put) [pʊt] ([pʊt], [pʊt]) *v* положить, поставить
puzzle ['pʌz(ə)l] *n* загадка

Q

quarrel ['kwɒrəl] *n* ссора; *v* ссориться
quarter ['kwɔ:tə] *n* четверть
queen [kwi:n] *n* королева
question ['kwestʃ(ə)n] *n* вопрос
quickly ['kwɪklɪ] *adv* быстро
quiet ['kwaɪət] *a* тихий
quite [kwaɪt] *adv* вполне; совершенно

R

race [reɪs] *n* раса
rain [reɪn] *n* дождь
raise [reɪz] *v* поднимать; повышать
rang *past от* **ring**
rapid ['ræpɪd] *n* порог (*реки*)
rather ['rɑ:ðə] *adv* достаточно
reach [ri:tʃ] *v* достигать, добираться
ready ['redɪ] *a* готовый
realize ['rɪəlaɪz] *v* осознавать
really ['rɪ(ə)lɪ] *adv* действительно
reason ['ri:z(ə)n] *n* причина; повод
recognize ['rekəgnaɪz] *v* узнавать
red [red] *a* красный
reed [rɪd] *n* тростник, камыш
region ['ri:dʒ(ə)n] *n* регион
relation [rɪ'leɪʃ(ə)n] *n* родственник
remain [rɪ'meɪn] *v* оставаться
remember [rɪ'membə] *v* помнить
remind [rɪ'maɪnd] *v* напоминать
repeat [rɪ'pi:t] *v* повторять
report [rɪ'pɔ:t] *n* доклад; *v* сообщать
reporter [rɪ'pɔ:tə] *n* репортер
reptile ['reptaɪl] *n* рептилия
rescue ['reskju:] *n* спасение; *v* спасать
resources [rɪ'zɔ:sɪz] *n* ресурсы
rest [rest] *v* отдыхать
result [rɪ'zʌlt] *n* результат
retire [rɪ'taɪə] *v* уходить на пенсию
return [rɪ'tɜ:n] *v* возвращать(ся)
return ticket [rɪ'tɜ:nˌtɪkɪt] *n* обратный билет
rhyme [raɪm] *n* рифма; маленькое рифмованное стихотворение

rhythm ['rɪð(ə)m] *n* ритм
rich [rɪtʃ] *a* богатый
rifle ['raɪf(ə)l] *n* винтовка
right [raɪt] *a* правый; правильный; *n* право
that's right! верно!
ring (rang, rung) [rɪŋ] ([ræŋ], [rʌŋ]) *v* звонить; звенеть
rise (rose, risen) [raɪz] ([rəʊz], ['rɪz(ə)n]) *v* подниматься; вставать; возвышаться
risk [rɪsk] *n* риск
risky ['rɪskɪ] *a* рискованный
river ['rɪvə] *n* река
road [rəʊd] *n* дорога
roar [rɔ:] *n* рычание; *v* рычать
rock [rɒk] *n* большой камень; скала
roll [rəʊl] *v* катиться
roof [ru:f] *n* крыша
room [ru:m] *n* комната
rope [rəʊp] *n* веревка
rose *past от* **rise**
round [raʊnd] *a* круглый
rub [rʌb] *v* тереть; растирать
rubber ['rʌbə] *n* резинка
ruin ['ru:ɪn] *v* разрушать; разорять; губить
rule [ru:l] *n* правило
run (ran, run) [rʌn] ([ræn], [rʌn]) *v* бежать
rung *p.p. от* **ring**

S

sabre-toothed tiger [ˌseɪbə'tu:θt 'taɪgə] *n* саблезубый тигр
sad [sæd] *a* грустный, печальный
safe [seɪf] *a* безопасный; *n* сейф
said *past и p.p. от* **say**
sail [seɪl] *n* парус; плавание под парусами; *v* плыть (*о корабле*); управлять судном
sand [sænd] *n* песок
sandwich ['sænwɪdʒ] *n* бутерброд
sandy ['sændɪ] *a* песчаный
sang *past от* **sing**
sausage ['sɒsɪdʒ] *n* колбаса
save [seɪv] *v* спасать; экономить; сохранять
saw *past от* **see**
say (said, said) [seɪ] ([sed], [sed]) *v* сказать
scale [skeɪl] *n* чешуйка, чешуя; масштаб
scandal ['skændl] *n* скандал
scarf [skɑ:f] *n* шарф
scene [si:n] *n* сцена; место действия
science ['saɪəns] *n* наука
scientific [ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk] *a* научный
scientist ['saɪəntɪst] *n* ученый
scream [skri:m] *n* крик, вопль; *v* пронзительно кричать, визжать
sea [si:] *n* море
search [sɜ:tʃ] *v* искать; обыскивать
season ['si:z(ə)n] *n* время года; сезон
secret ['si:krɪt] *n* секрет

see (saw, seen) [si:] ([sɔ:], [si:n]) *v* видеть
seem [si:m] *v* казаться
seen *p.p. от* **see**
seldom ['seldəm] *adv* редко
send (sent, sent) [send] ([sent], [sent]) *v* отправлять, посылать
sensation [sen'seɪʃ(ə)n] *n* сенсация
sensational [sen'seɪʃ(ə)nəl] *a* сенсационный
sentence ['sentəns] *n* предложение; изречение
separate ['sep(ə)rɪt] *a* отдельный; особый; *v* разделять; отделять; разлучать
serious ['sɪ(ə)rɪəs] *a* серьезный
servant ['sɜ:v(ə)nt] *n* слуга
serve [sɜ:v] *v* служить; обслуживать
shade [ʃeɪd] *n* тон, оттенок
shadow ['ʃædəʊ] *n* тень
shake (shook, shaken) [ʃeɪk] ([ʃʊk], ['ʃeɪkən]) *v* трясти
shake hands пожать руку, здороваться
shaken *p.p. от* **shake**
shame [ʃeɪm] *n* стыд; позор; *v* пристыдить
shame on you! тебе должно быть стыдно!
shape [ʃeɪp] *n* форма, очертание
shark [ʃɑ:k] *n* акула
sharp [ʃɑ:p] *a* острый
shave [ʃeɪv] *v* бриться
shawl [ʃɔ:l] *n* шаль, большой платок
sheet [ʃi:t] *n* простыня; большой лист (*бумаги*)
shelf [ʃelf] *n* полка
shine (shone, shone) [ʃaɪn] ([ʃəʊn], [ʃəʊn]) *v* светить; сверкать
ship [ʃɪp] *n* корабль
shirt [ʃɜ:t] *n* рубашка
shock [ʃɒk] *n* шок, потрясение; *v* шокировать, поражать, потрясать
shoe [ʃu:] *n* ботинок
shone *past от* **shine**
shook *past от* **shake**
shoot (shot, shot) [ʃu:t] ([ʃɒt], [ʃɒt]) *v* стрелять; застрелить
shore [ʃɔ:] *n* берег (моря)
short [ʃɔ:t] *a* короткий
for short короче, для краткости
shot [ʃɒt] *n* выстрел
shot *past и p.p. от* **shoot**
shoulder ['ʃəʊldə] *n* плечо
shout [ʃaʊt] *v* кричать
show [ʃəʊ] *n* зрелище, показывание; *v* показывать, демонстрировать
shut (shut, shut) [ʃʌt] ([ʃʌt], [ʃʌt]) *v* закрывать
sick [sɪk] *a* больной, чувствующий тошноту
side [saɪd] *n* сторона
sight [saɪt] *n* вид, зрелище
sign [saɪn] *n* знак
signal ['sɪgn(ə)l] *n* сигнал
silence ['saɪləns] *n* тишина

silent ['saɪlənt] *a* тихий; молчаливый
silly ['sɪlɪ] *a* глупый
silvery ['sɪlv(ə)rɪ] *a* серебристый
sing (sang, sung) [sɪŋ] ([sæŋ], [sʌŋ]) *v* петь
sit (sat, sat) [sɪt] ([sæt], [sæt]) *v* сидеть
sitting room ['sɪtɪŋru:m] *n* гостиная
situation [ˌsɪtʃʊ'eɪʃ(ə)n] *n* ситуация
size [saɪz] *n* размер
skeleton ['skelɪtn] *n* скелет
skeptical ['skeptɪk(ə)l] *a* скептический
skepticism ['skeptɪsɪz(ə)m] *n* скептицизм
sketch [sketʃ] *n* набросок
sketch-book ['sketʃbʊk] *n* альбом для зарисовок
skin [skɪn] *n* кожа, шкура
skip [skɪp] *v* прыгать
skull [skʌl] *n* череп
sky [skaɪ] *n* небо
sleep (slept, slept) [sli:p] ([slept], [slept]) *v* спать
sleepy ['sli:pɪ] *a* сонный
slept *past и p.p. от* **sleep**
slope [sləʊp] *n* склон
slow [sləʊ] *a* медленный
slowly ['sləʊlɪ] *adv* медленно
smell (smelt, smelt) [smel] ([smelt], [smelt]) *v* нюхать; пахнуть
to smell out вынюхивать
smile [smaɪl] *n* улыбка
smoke [sməʊk] *n* дым; *v* курить; дымить
smoke-stick ['sməʊkstɪk] *n* дымовая шашка
smoker ['sməʊkə] *n* курильщик
snake [sneɪk] *n* змея
sneeze [sni:z] *v* чихать
snow [snəʊ] *n* снег
so [səʊ] *adv* так, таким образом
so as чтобы
so that для того чтобы
soap [səʊp] *n* мыло
soft [sɒft] *a* мягкий
solution [sə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] *n* решение
solve [sɒlv] *v* решать
some [sʌm] *pron* несколько; некоторое количество
somebody ['sʌmbədɪ] *pron* кто-то, кто-нибудь
sometimes ['sʌmtaɪmz] *adv* иногда
somewhere ['sʌmweə] *adv* где-то; куда-нибудь
song [sɒŋ] *n* песня
soon [su:n] *adv* вскоре
sore [sɔ:] *a* болезненный; больной; воспаленный
sorry ['sɒrɪ] *a* полный сожаления
I'm so sorry! мне так жаль!
soul [səʊl] *n* душа
sound [saʊnd] *n* звук; *v* звучать, издавать звук
South America ['saʊθə'merɪkə] Южная Америка

south-west [ˌsaʊ(θ)'west] *n* юго-запад
spade [speɪd] *n* лопата
speak (spoke, spoken) [spi:k] ([spəʊk], ['spəʊkən]) *v* говорить
spear [spɪə] *n* копье
special ['speʃ(ə)l] *a* особенный
species ['spi:ʃi:z] *n* вид, разновидность
speckle ['spek(ə)l] *n* пятнышко
speckled ['spek(ə)ld] *зд.* пестрая
spectacle ['spektək(ə)l] *n* спектакль
speech [spi:tʃ] *n* речь
spelling ['spelɪŋ] *n* орфография, правописание
spend (spent, spent) [spend] ([spent], [spent]) *v* тратить; проводить
spent *past и p.p. от* **spend**
spike [spaɪk] *n* острие; шип
splash [splæʃ] *n* всплеск; *v* плескать, плескаться
spoil (spoilt, spoilt) [spɔɪl] ([spɔɪlt], [spɔɪlt]) *v* портить
spoilt *past и p.p. от* **spoil**
spoke *past от* **speak**
spot [spɒt] *n* пятно; место
spread (spread, spread) [spred] ([spred], [spred]) *v* распространять (*информацию*)
spring [sprɪŋ] *n* весна
squeak [skwi:k] *v* пищать; пропищать
stable ['steɪb(ə)l] *n* конюшня
stair ['steə] *n* лестница
stamp [stæmp] *n* марка; штамп; топанье; *v* штамповать; топать (*ногой*)
stand (stood, stood) [stænd] ([stʊd], [stʊd]) *v* стоять
star [stɑ:] *n* звезда
start [stɑ:t] *n* начало; *v* начинать
statue ['stætʃu:] *n* статуя
stay [steɪ] *v* оставаться
steal (stole, stolen) [sti:l] ([stəʊl], ['stəʊlən]) *v* красть
steamship ['sti:mˌʃɪp] *n* пароход
stegosaurus [ˌstegə'sɔ:rəs] *n* стегозавр
step [step] *n* шаг; ступенька; *v* отступить, шагнуть
stepfather ['stepˌfɑ:ðə] *n* отчим
stick[1] *n* палка
stick[2] **(stuck, stuck)** [stɪk] ([stʌk], [stʌk]) *v* застрять; торчать
stole *past от* **steal**
stolen *p.p. от* **steal**
stomach ['stʌmək] *n* желудок; живот
stone [stəʊn] *n* камень
stony ['stəʊnɪ] *a* каменный
stood *past и p.p. от* **stand**
stork [stɔ:k] *n* журавль
storm [stɔ:m] *n* шторм
stormy ['stɔ:mɪ] *a* штормовой
story ['stɔ:rɪ] *n* рассказ
straight [streɪt] *a* прямой; *adv* прямо
strange [streɪndʒ] *a* странный
strength [streŋθ] *n* сила

strike (struck, struck) [straɪk] ([strʌk], [strʌk]) *v* ударять, бить
string [strɪŋ] *n* веревка; шнур
strong [strɒŋ] *a* сильный
stuck *past и p.p. от* **stick**
student ['stju:d(ə)nt] *n* студент
study ['stʌdɪ] *n* кабинет
stupid ['stju:pɪd] *a* глупый
stupidity [stju:'pɪdɪtɪ] *n* глупость
successful [sək'sesf(ə)l] *a* удачный
such [sʌtʃ] *a* такой
sudden ['sʌdn] *a* внезапный
suddenly ['sʌd(ə)nlɪ] *adv* вдруг
suffer ['sʌfə] *v* страдать
sum [sʌm] *n* сумма
sung *p.p. от* **sing**
sunset ['sʌnset] *n* закат
sunshine ['sʌnʃaɪn] *n* солнечный свет
sure [ʃʊə] *a* верный, надежный; уверенный
surprise [sə'praɪz] *n* сюрприз; *v* удивлять
surround [sə'raʊnd] *v* окружать
survive [sə'vaɪv] *v* выживать
swam *past от* **swim**
swamp [swɒmp] *n* болото
swan [swɒn] *n* лебедь
Sweden ['swi:dn] *n* Швеция
sweet [swi:t] *a* сладкий; милый
sweetheart ['swi:thɑ:t] *n* дорогой, любимый
swim (swam, swum) [swɪm] ([swæm], [swʌm]) *v* плавать
swum *p.p. от* **swim**
symbol ['sɪmb(ə)l] *n* символ

T

tablecloth ['teɪb(ə)lklɒθ] *n* скатерть
tail [teɪl] *n* хвост
take (took, taken) [teɪk] ([tʊk], ['teɪkən]) *v* брать, взять
  to take away уносить; уводить
  to take hold держать
  to take medicine принимать лекарство
  to take part in smth принимать участие в чем-л.
  to take smb home отводить кого-л. домой
taken *p.p. от* **take**
talk [tɔ:k] *n* разговор, беседа; *v* разговаривать, беседовать
tall [tɔ:l] *a* высокий
tapir ['teɪpə] *n* тапир
task [tɑ:sk] *n* задача, задание; *v* давать задание
taste [teɪst] *n* вкус; *v* пробовать на вкус
taxi ['tæksɪ] *n* такси
teach (taught, taught) [ti:tʃ] ([tɔ:t], [tɔ:t]) *v* учить
  to teach smb. a lesson проучить кого-л.
tell (told, told) [tel] ([təʊld], [təʊld]) *v* рассказывать
temperature ['temp(ə)rətʃə] *n* температура
terrible ['terəb(ə)l] *a* страшный
terrify ['terɪfaɪ] *v* ужасать
territory ['terɪt(ə)rɪ] *n* территория

terror ['terə] *n* террор
test [test] *n* проверка, испытание; *v* проверять, испытывать; тестировать
thank [θæŋk] *v* благодарить
that [ðæt] *pron* тот, та, то
these [ði:z] *pron* те
thick [θɪk] *a* толстый
thief [θi:f] *n* вор
thin [θɪn] *a* тонкий
thing [θɪŋ] *n* вещь; предмет
think (thought, thought) [θɪŋk] ([θɔ:t], [θɔ:t]) *v* думать
  to think over обдумывать
thirsty ['θɜ:stɪ] *a* испытывающий жажду
this [ðɪs] *pron* этот, эта, это
thistle ['θɪs(ə)l] *n* чертополох
those [ðəʊz] *pron* те
though [ðəʊ] *cj* хотя
thought[1] [θɔ:t] *n* мысль
thought[2] *past и p.p. от* **think**
thousand ['θaʊz(ə)nd] *n* тысяча
threw *past от* **throw**
throaty ['θrəʊtɪ] *a* гортанный
through [θru:] *prep* сквозь
throw (threw, thrown) [θrəʊ] ([θru:], [θrəʊn]) *v* бросать, кидать
thrown *p.p. от* **throw**
thunder ['θʌndə] *n* гром
Thursday ['θɜ:zdɪ] *n* четверг
tiger ['taɪgə] *n* тигр
tight [taɪt] *a* тугой; тесный
time [taɪm] *n* время
tired ['taɪəd] *a* уставший
  tired out очень уставший
tiring ['taɪ(ə)rɪŋ] *a* утомительный
toad [təʊd] *n* жаба
toadstool ['təʊdstu:l] *n* поганка
toe [təʊ] *n* палец ноги
together [tə'geðə] *adv* вместе, сообща
told *past и p.p. от* **tell**
tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ] *adv* завтра
tonight [tə'naɪt] *adv* сегодня вечером
took *past от* **take**
tooth [tu:θ] (*pl* **teeth**) *n* зуб
top [tɒp] *n* вершина; верхушка
torture ['tɔ:tʃə] *v* пытать
touch [tʌtʃ] *v* дотронуться
towards [tə'wɔ:dz] *prep* по направлению к
towel ['taʊəl] *n* полотенце
trace [treɪs] *n* след
track [træk] *n* след
traffic ['træfɪk] *n* дорожное движение
tragedy ['trædʒɪdɪ] *n* трагедия
tragic ['trædʒɪk] *a* трагический
train [treɪn] *n* поезд
tremble ['tremb(ə)l] *v* дрожать
trap [træp] *n* ловушка
travel ['træv(ə)l] *v* путешествовать
traveller ['træv(ə)lə] *n* путешественник
treasure ['treʒə] *n* сокровище
tree [tri:] *n* дерево
tribe [traɪb] *n* племя
trick [trɪk] *n* хитрость, обман
  to play a trick on smb. сыграть с кем-л. шутку

triumph ['traɪəmf] *n* триумф
tropical ['trɒpɪk(ə)l] *a* тропический
trouble ['trʌb(ə)l] *n* огорчение, беспокойство
to be in trouble попасть в беду
trouble-maker ['trʌb(ə)l,meɪkə] *n* нарушитель спокойствия; смутьян
trousers ['traʊzəz] *n* брюки
true [tru:] *a* правдивый, настоящий
trust [trʌst] *n* вера, доверие; *v* доверять, верить
truth [tru:θ] *n* правда
try [traɪ] *v* пытаться, стараться
Tuesday ['tju:zdɪ] *n* вторник
tunnel ['tʌnl] *n* туннель
turn [tɜ:n] *n* поворот; *v* поворачивать
to turn into превратиться
to turn round обернуться; повернуться
to turn to обратиться к кому-л.
to turn white побелеть
turtle ['tɜ:tl] *n* черепаха
twenty ['twentɪ] *num* двадцать
twice [twaɪs] *adv* дважды
twin [twɪn] *n* близнец

U

ugly ['ʌglɪ] *a* безобразный; уродливый
umbrella [ʌm'brelə] *n* зонтик
underground [,ʌndə'graʊnd] *adv* под землей
understand (understood, understood) [,ʌndə'stænd] ([,ʌndə'stʊd], [,ʌndə'stʊd]) *v* понимать
understood *past и p.p. от* **understand**
unfavourable [ʌn'feɪv(ə)rəb(ə)l] *a* неблагоприятный; невыгодный
unique [ju:'ni:k] *a* уникальный
unknown [ʌn'nəʊn] *a* неизвестный
unnatural [ʌn'nætʃ(ə)rəl] *a* неестественный
until [ʌn'tɪl] *conj* до тех пор, пока
upheaval [ʌp'hi:v(ə)l] *n зд.* поднятие, смещение пластов
upright ['ʌpraɪt] *a* прямой; вертикальный; *adv* стоймя
upstairs [,ʌp'steəz] *adv* наверху (*в доме*)
upwards ['ʌpwədz] *adv* наверх, вверх
useful ['ju:sf(ə)l] *a* полезный
useless ['ju:slɪs] *a* бесполезный
usual ['ju:ʒʊəl] *a* обычный

V

vary ['ve(ə)rɪ] *v* отличаться; разниться
vase [vɑ:z] *n* ваза
vegetable ['vedʒ(ɪ)təb(ə)l] *a* растительный
ventilator ['ventɪleɪtə] *n* вентилятор

very ['verɪ] *adv* очень
the very тот самый
victory ['vɪkt(ə)rɪ] *n* победа
village ['vɪlɪdʒ] *n* деревня
violent ['vaɪələnt] *a* жестокий
violet ['vaɪəlɪt] *a* фиолетовый
violin [,vaɪə'lɪn] *n* скрипка
visit ['vɪzɪt] *n* визит; *v* посещать
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос
volcanic [vɒl'kænɪk] *a* вулканический
voyage ['vɔɪɪdʒ] *n* поездка; путешествие

W

wait [weɪt] *v* ждать
wake (woke, woken) [weɪk] ([wəʊk], ['wəʊkən]) *v* просыпаться
walk [wɔ:k] *v* ходить, идти; гулять
walk into натолкнуться
wall [wɔ:l] *n* стена
want [wɒnt] *v* хотеть
war [wɔ:] *n* война
warm [wɔ:m] *a* теплый
warning ['wɔ:nɪŋ] *n* предупреждение
was *past от* **be**
wash [wɒʃ] *v* мыть
to wash one's face умываться
waste [weɪst] *v* тратить, расточать
watch [wɒtʃ] *n* дозор; наблюдение; часы (*наручные*); *v* наблюдать, следить
watchman ['wɒtʃmən] *n* сторож (*ночной, в дозоре*)
watchtower ['wɒtʃ,taʊə] *n* сторожевая башня
water ['wɔ:tə] *n* вода
waterways ['wɔ:təweɪz] *n* водные пути
wave [weɪv] *n* волна; *v* размахивать
way [weɪ] *n* путь, дорога; способ
it is a good way to do smth неплохой способ сделать что-л.
on the way по пути
a way out выход
weak [wi:k] *a* слабый
weapon ['wepən] *n* оружие
wear (wore, worn) [weə] ([wɔ:], [wɔ:n]) *v* носить (*об одежде*)
weather ['weðə] *n* погода
went *past от* **go**
west [west] *n* запад
westwards ['westwədz] *adv* на запад
wet [wet] *a* сырой, влажный
whatever [wɒ'tevə] *pron* какой бы ни; что бы ни
whenever [we'nevə] *cj* когда бы ни
whistle ['wɪs(ə)l] *v* свистеть
white [waɪt] *a* белый
whole [həʊl] *a* целый, весь
whom [hu:m] *pron* кого; кому
why [waɪ] *adv* почему
wide [waɪd] *a* широкий
wife [waɪf] *n* жена
wild [waɪld] *a* дикий

will [wɪl] *n* завещание
win (won, won) [wɪn] ([wʌn], [wʌn]) *v* побеждать; выигрывать
wind [wɪnd] *n* ветер
window ['wɪndəʊ] *n* окно
wing [wɪŋ] *n* крыло
winter ['wɪntə] *n* зима
without [wɪ'ðaʊt] *prep* без
witness ['wɪtnɪs] *n* свидетель; *v* выступать в роли свидетеля
woke *past от* **wake**
woken *p.p. от* **wake**
woman ['wʊmən] *n* женщина
won *past и p.p. от* **win**
wonder ['wʌndə] *v* удивляться; интересоваться
wonderful ['wʌndəf(ə)l] *a* удивительный
wood [wʊd] *n* лес
wooden ['wʊdn] *a* деревянный
word [wɜ:d] *n* слово
world [wɜ:ld] *n* мир
worried ['wʌrɪd] *a* обеспокоенный
write (wrote, written) [raɪt] ([rəʊt], ['rɪtn]) *v* писать
to write down записывать
written *p.p. от* **write**
wrong [rɒŋ] *a* неправильный, неверный
wrote *past от* **write**

Y

year [jɪə] *n* год
yellowish ['jeləʊɪʃ] *a* желтоватый
yesterday ['jestədɪ] *adv* вчера
young [jʌŋ] *a* молодой

Z

zero ['zɪ(ə)rəʊ] *n* ноль, худшая оценка в школе
zoologist [z(ə)ʊ'ɒlədʒɪst] *n* зоолог

Contents

The Lost World

The Stories about Sherlock Holmes

Activities

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:
тел./факс: (495) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 104

Наш сайт: www.airis.ru

Вы можете приобрести наши книги с 11[00] до 17[30],
кроме субботы, воскресенья, в киоске по адресу:
пр. Мира, д. 104, 4 этаж, тел. (495) 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.
По всем вопросам обращаться
по тел.: (495) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

Учебное издание

Дойл Артур Конан

ЗАТЕРЯННЫЙ МИР.
РАССКАЗЫ О ШЕРЛОКЕ ХОЛМСЕ
The Lost World. The Stories about Sherlock Holmes

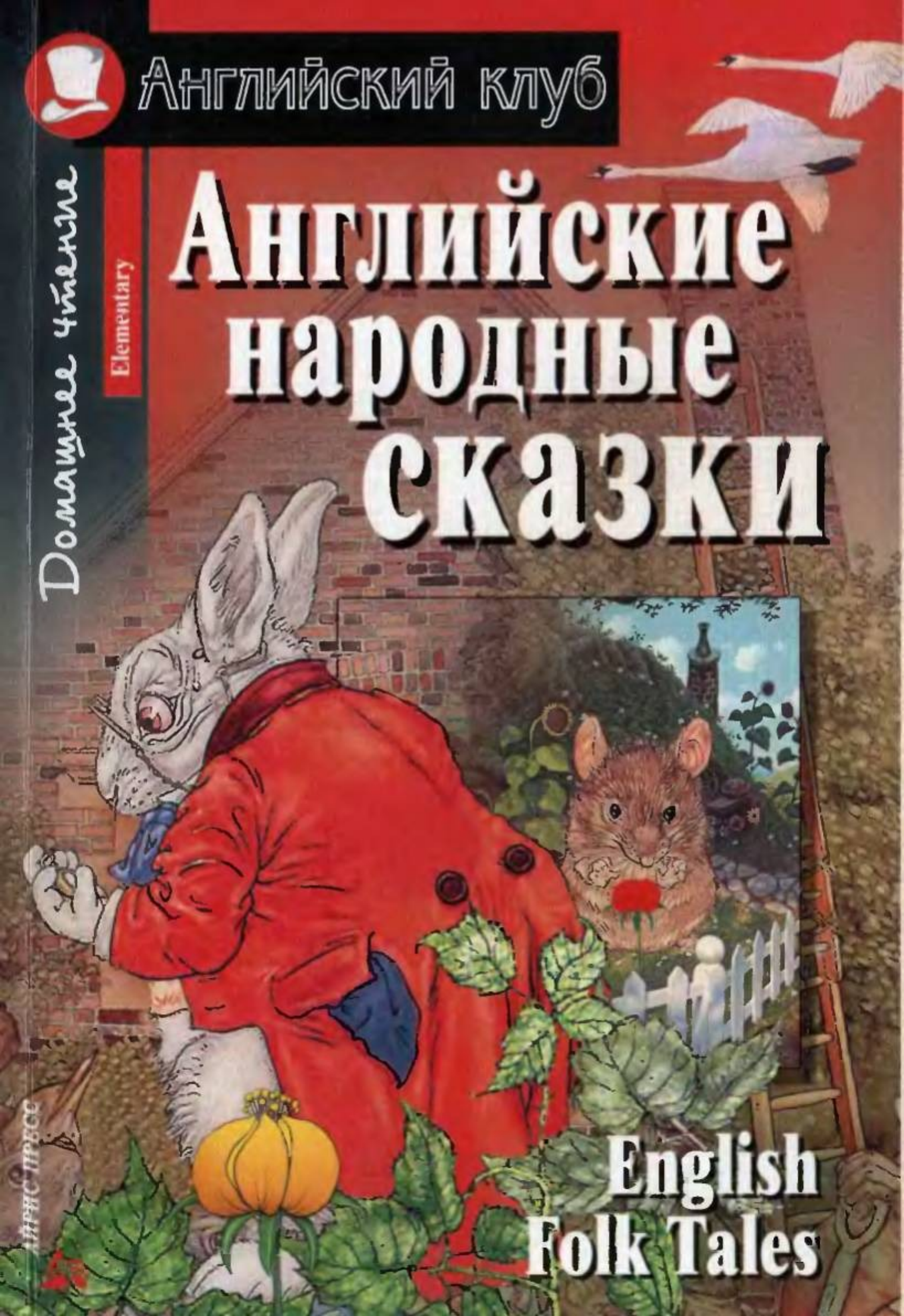
Составление, адаптация текста,
комментарий, упражнения, словарь *Е. Г. Вороновой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *Е. В. Гвоздкова*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *В. Н. Фекляев*
Иллюстрации на обложку *А. М. Драговой*
Оформление *А. М. Кузнецов*
Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*
Компьютерная верстка *Е. Г. Иванов*
Корректор *Е. В. Никонова*

Подписано в печать 14.02.08. Формат 60×90/16.
Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 14. Усл.-печ. л. 14.
Тираж 6000 экз. Заказ № 3074.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

Отпечатано в ОАО «Можайский полиграфический комбинат»
143200, г. Можайск, ул. Мира, 93


Английский клуб
Домашнее чтение
Elementary
Английские народные сказки
English Folk Tales

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

АНГЛИЙСКИЕ НАРОДНЫЕ СКАЗКИ

Составление, адаптация текста и комментарий В. А. Верхогляд

Упражнения, словарь Л. Т. Добровольской

МОСКВА

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2007

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
А64

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Английские народные сказки / сост., адаптация текста и коммент. В. А. Верхогляд; упражнения, слов. Л. Т. Добровольской. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2007. — 128 с.
А64 ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-2843-0

Сборник включает 11 английских народных сказок (сказок о животных и волшебных сказок). Тексты адаптированы и сопровождаются постраничным комментарием и упражнениями. Книга содержит словарь.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-2843-0



THE THREE LITTLE PIGS

There was once a mother pig who had three little pigs. When they were old enough to leave home, she sent them into the world to seek their fortune.[1]

The first pig met a man who was carrying a bundle of straw, and he said to him:

"Please may I have some of your straw to build a house?"

The man gave him some straw, and the little pig built a nice little straw house.

---

[1] to seek their fortune ['fɔ:tʃən] — искать своё счастье

Soon the wolf came up to the house. He knocked at the door and said:

"Little pig, little pig, let me come in."

The little pig answered:

"No, no, by the hair on my chinny chin chin."[1]

"Then I'll huff and I'll puff, and I'll blow your house in."[2]

So he huffed and he puffed and he blew the house in and ate up the little pig.

The second little pig met a man who was carrying a bundle of furze, and he said to him:

"Please may I have some of your furze to build a house?"

The man gave him some furze, and the little pig built the nice little house. Soon the wolf came up to the house. He knocked at the door and said:

"Little pig, little pig, let me come in."

The little pig answered:

"No, no, by the hair on my chinny chin chin."

"Then I'll huff and I'll puff, and I'll blow your house in."

So he huffed and he puffed, and he huffed and he puffed, and in the end he blew the house in and ate up the little pig.

The third little pig met a man who was carrying a load of bricks,[3] and he said to him:

---

[1] No, no, by the hair on my chinny chin chin. — Не пущу, клянусь моей бородой-бородищей.

[2] Then I'll huff and I'll puff, and I'll blow your house in. — Тогда я как дуну, как налечу — сразу снесу твой дом.

[3] met a man who was carrying a load [loud] of bricks [brɪks] — встретил человека, везущего кирпичи

"Please may I have some of your bricks to build a house?"

The man gave him some bricks, and the little pig built a nice little house. Soon the wolf came up to the house. He knocked at the door and said:

"Little pig, little pig, let me come in."

The little pig answered:

"No, no, by the hair on my chinny chin chin."

"Then I'll huff and I'll puff, and I'll blow your house in."

So he huffed and he puffed, and he huffed and he puffed, but he could not blow the house down because it was made of bricks. He had to think of some other way[1] to get the little pig, so he said:

"Little pig, I know where there is a nice field of turnips."

"Where?" asked the little pig.

"In Mr. Smith's field. At six tomorrow morning I'll call for you[2] and we'll go together and get some turnips for dinner."

But the little pig got up at five o'clock and got the turnips before the wolf came. And when the wolf called at six and asked, "Are you ready?" the little pig said:

"I have already been to the field and I already have a pot of turnips on the fire. I am cooking them for dinner."

The wolf was very angry, but he still wanted to get the little pig, and he said:

"Little pig, I know where there is a nice apple-tree with ripe apples on it."

---

[1] think of some other way — придумать какой-нибудь другой способ

[2] I'll call for you — я зайду за тобой

"Where?" asked the little pig.

"Down at Merry-garden. I'll call for you at five o'clock tomorrow morning and we'll go and get some apples."

But the little pig got up at four o'clock and went to Merry-garden. He hoped to be back with the apples before the wolf came. But he was still up in the tree, when he saw the wolf was coming. The little pig was very frightened.

"Little pig! So you are here before me! Are the apples nice?" said the wolf.

"Yes, very nice," answered the little pig. "I'll throw you one to taste,"[1] and he threw an apple as far away as he could. While the wolf was hurrying to pick it up, the little pig jumped down out of the tree and ran home.

The next day the wolf called again, and said to the little pig:

"Little pig, there is a fair at Shanklin this afternoon. Do you want to go? We can go together."

"Oh, yes," said the little pig. "What time will you be ready?"

"At three," answered the wolf.

So the little pig went off early, as before, and bought a butter churn[2] at the fair. As he was on his way home, he saw the wolf on the road. He did not know what to do, so he got inside the churn. Then the churn began to turn over, and it rolled down the hill with the little pig inside it. This frightened the wolf so much that he did not

---

[1] I'll throw [θrou] you one to taste [teɪst]. — Я брошу тебе одно (яблоко) попробовать.

[2] a (butter) churn — маслобойка

go to the fair, but ran home. Then he went to the little pig's house and said:

"Oh, little pig, I got such a fright[1] as I was going to the fair. A great round thing rolled down the hill past me."

The little pig said:

"Ha, ha, I frightened you, then. I went to the fair and bought a butter churn. When I saw you, I got into it, and rolled down the hill."

Now the wolf was very angry indeed. He decided to climb down the chimney and eat up the little pig. When the little pig heard a noise on the roof, he put his biggest pot on the fire to boil, and took the lid off just as the wolf was coming down. The wolf fell in, and the little pig boiled him. The little pig lived happily ever afterwards[2] in his safe little house of bricks.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 a) Say who:

1) met a man who was carrying a bundle of straw.
2) met a man who was carrying a bundle of furze.
3) met a man who was carrying a load of bricks.

---

[1] I got such a fright [fraɪt] — я так испугался

[2] lived happily ever ['evə] afterwards ['ɑːftəwədz] — жил да поживал счастливо (*концовка сказок*)

b) Say whose house:

1) the wolf blew in.
2) the wolf could not blow down.

c) Say where:

1) there was a nice field of turnips.
2) there was a nice apple-tree with ripe apples on it.
3) there was a fair.

2 Match two parts of the sentences.

1) The mother pig sent the three little pigs into the world	to get some turnips for dinner.
2) "Please, may I have some of your straw	to taste".
3) The wolf had to think of some other way	to get some apples.
4) "We'll go together to Mr. Smith's field	to boil".
5) "We'll go to Merry-garden	to get the little pig".
6) "I'll throw you one apple	to build a house".
7) The wolf hurried	to seek their fortune.
8) The little pig put his biggest pot on the fire	to pick up the apple.

3 The wolf had to think of some other ways to get the little pig. Pick up the sentences which describe these ways.

1) The wolf invited the little pig to go together to Merry-garden to get some apples.

2) The little pig got up earlier and got the turnips before the wolf came.
3) The wolf invited the little pig to a fair at Shanklin.
4) The little pig threw the wolf one apple to taste, and while the wolf was hurrying to pick it up, the little pig jumped down and ran home.
5) The wolf decided to climb down the chimney of the little pig's house and eat him up.
6) When the little pig saw the wolf on the road, he got inside the butter churn and rolled down the hill past him.
7) The wolf invited the little pig to Mr. Smith's field to get some turnips for dinner.
8) The little pig put his biggest pot on the fire to boil, took the lid off and the wolf fell into the pot.

4 Answer the questions.

1) Where did the mother pig send the three little pigs when they were old enough to leave home?
2) Whom did the first little pig meet?
3) What did he build his house of?
4) What did the wolf do with the first little pig and his nice straw house?
5) Whom did the second little pig meet?
6) What did he build his house of?
7) What did the wolf do with the second little pig and his nice house of furze?
8) Whom did the third little pig meet?
9) What did he build his house of?
10) Could the wolf blow down the house and eat up the little pig?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Complete the sentences. The words and phrases from the box will help you.

ate up call for fortune was made of think of built took the lid off frightened boiled on the way

1) The mother pig sent the three little pigs to seek their ________________ .
2) The first little pig ________________ a nice straw house.
3) The wolf blew the house in and ________________ the little pig.
4) The wolf could not blew down the house of the third little pig because it ________________ bricks.
5) The wolf had to ________________ some other way to get the little pig.
6) "At six tomorrow morning I'll ________________ you and we'll go together to Mr. Smith's field and get some turnips for dinner".
7) When the little pig was ________________ home, he saw the wolf on the road.

8) "A great round thing rolled down past me and it _______________ me," said the wolf.

9) The little pig put his biggest pot on the fire and _______________ .

10) The wolf fell into the pot and the little pig _________________ him.

2 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

1) to knock _________ the door
2) to get some turnips _________ dinner
3) to put a pot _________ the fire
4) to get _________ the butterchurn
5) the churn turned _________
6) the churn rolled _________ the hill
7) to climb _________ the chimney
8) to hear a noise _________ the roof

3 **Use *a* or *the*.**

1) The first pig met _______ man who was carrying a bundle of straw.
2) _______ man gave him some straw.
3) The little pig built _______ nice little straw house.
4) Soon the wolf came up to _______ house.
5) The little pig bought _______ butter churn at the fair.
6) He didn't know what to do, so he got inside _______ churn.

4 **Match three parts of the sentences. Say what there was / were in these places.**

	a pot	on the roof.
There was	ripe apples	in the butter churn.
	some turnips	on the road.
There were	a fair	on the fire.
	a pig	in Mr. Smith's field.
	a wolf	at Shanklin.
	a noise	on the apple-tree.

5 What does the wolf say he will do? What did / didn't he do? Follow the model.

Model: to huff and to puff — *I'll huff and I'll puff. He huffed and he puffed.*

1) to blow the straw house in
2) to eat up the little pig
3) to blow down the brick house
4) to call for the little pig
5) to go to Mr. Smith's field together
6) to get some turnips for dinner
7) to go down the chimney
8) to get the little pig

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 What's your opinion?

1) When the three little pigs were old enough to leave home, their mother pig sent them into the world to seek their fortune. Which of the three little pigs found his fortune? What fortune was that?

2) Why didn't the first and the second pigs find their fortune?

2 Prove that the third little pig was a clever animal.

3 What part of the fairy-tale did you like best? Why? Tell it to your classmates.

4 Of course, you know another fairy-tale about three little pigs. Is it different from this fairy-tale? What is the difference? Which fairy-tale do you like better? Why?



JACK AND HIS FRIENDS

Once upon a time there was[1] a boy whose name was Jack. One day Jack set out[2] to seek his fortune.

He hadn't gone very far when he met a cat.

"Good morning, Jack," said the cat. "Where are you going?"

"I'm going to seek my fortune," said Jack.

"May I go with you?"

---

[1] once [wʌns] upon a time there was — жил-был (*начало сказок*)

[2] Jack set out — Джек отправился

"Yes, if you like."

So Jack and the cat went on.

They hadn't gone very far when they met a dog.

"Oh, good morning, Jack," said the dog. "Where are you going?"

"I'm going to seek my fortune," said Jack.

"May I go too?"

"Yes, certainly."

So Jack and the cat and the dog went on.

They hadn't gone very much farther when they met a cow.

"Hello, Jack," said the cow. "Where are you going?"

"I'm going to seek my fortune."

"May I go with you?"

"Certainly, you may."

So Jack and the cat and the dog and the cow went on.

They hadn't gone very far when they met a goat.

"Good morning, Jack," said the goat. "Where are you going?"

"I'm going to seek my fortune."

"May I go too?"

"Yes, if you like."

So Jack and the cat and the dog and the cow and the goat went on.

They hadn't gone much farther when they met a cock.

"Good morning, Jack," said the cock. "Where are you going?"

"I'm going to seek my fortune."

"May I go with you?"

"Certainly," said Jack.

So Jack and the cat and the dog and the cow and the goat and the cock went on.

They walked and they walked until it got dark, but

they couldn't find a place to spend the night. At last they came to a house. Jack told his friends not to talk or to make a noise while he peeped through the window. And do you know what he saw in that house? Some men round a table, and they were counting their money!

"Robbers," said Jack to his friends. "Now, when I say 'Go!' make as much noise as you can, and we'll frighten them away." So in a minute Jack said, "Go!" And the cat mewed, "Miaow, miaow," and the dog barked, "Woof! Woof!" And the cow mooed, "Moooo, moooo," and the goat bleated, "Me-e-e, me-e-e." And the cock crowed, "Cock-a-doodle-doo! Cock-a-doodle-doo!" And they all together made such a dreadful noise that it frightened the robbers and they all ran away.

Then Jack and his friends went inside the house to have a good sleep. The cat lay down on the rocking-chair, and the dog lay under the table, and the goat lay down at the top of the stairs, and the cow went into the cellar where it was nice and cool, and the cock settled down on the roof, and Jack blew out the lamp[1] and went to bed.

Now the house was dark and in a little while[2] everything was quiet. Then the robbers decided to return to their house. So they told one man to go back and see if everything was all right.

He went on tiptoe[3] to the house, as quietly as he could. But soon he came running back, all out of breath[4] and very frightened. "Don't send me there again!" he said. "It's a dreadful place! I tried to sit down in the

---

[1] blew out the lamp — потушил (задул) лампу

[2] in a little while — через некоторое время

[3] on tiptoe ['tɪptou] — на цыпочках

[4] all out of breath [breθ] — запыхавшись

rocking-chair, but an old woman stuck her knitting-needles into me."[1] (*That wasn't an old woman. That was the cat!*) "And I went to the table and looked under it, and there was and old man under the table, and he stuck his pincers into me." (*That wasn't an old man with pincers under the table. That was the dog!*) "And I went up the stairs and an old woman with a sweeping-brush knocked me right down again." (*Oh, the silly! That was the goat!*) "Then I ran down to the cellar, but there was a man there chopping wood, and he hit me on the head with his axe." (*That wasn't a man with an axe. That was the cow!*) "But the worst one of all," said the robber, "was on the roof. There was a dreadful little old man up there who shouted, 'Throw him up to me! Throw him up to me!'" (*The silly! That was the cock!*) "I didn't want to be thrown up to him,[2] so I ran right out of the house! And I'll never go there again!"

So the robbers never went there again. And Jack and his friends stayed in the house as long as they liked.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Say who:

1) went to seek his fortune in this fairy-tale.

---

[1] stuck her knitting-needles ['nɪtɪŋˌni:dlz] into me — вонзила в меня вязальные спицы

[2] to be thrown [θroun] up to him — чтобы меня ему бросили

2) Jack met on his way.

2 Say how the animals frightened the robbers; which of them:

barked / bleated / mewed / mooed / crowed

3 Match two parts of the sentences. Say where Jack and his friends settled in the house.

1) The cat	lay down at the top of the stairs.
2) The dog	settled down on the roof.
3) The cow	lay on the rocking-chair.
4) The goat	went to bed.
5) The cock	lay under the table.
6) Jack	went into the cellar where it was nice and cool.

4 Match two parts of the sentences. Say what the robber "saw" in the house.

1) There was an old woman with knitting-needles	on the roof.
2) There was an old man with pincers	in the cellar.
3) There was an old woman with a sweeping-brush	in the rocking-chair.
4) There was a man with an axe	on the stairs.
5) There was a dreadful little old man	under the table.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) They hadn't gone very far when they met a dog.
2) And they all together made such a dreadful noise that it frightened the robbers, and they all ran away.
3) But soon he came running back very frightened. "Don't send me there again" he said.
4) One day Jack set out to seek his fortune.
5) When Jack peeped through the window, he saw some men counting their money.
6) So the robbers never went to the house again.
7) Then Jack and his friends went inside the house to have a nice sleep.
8) They walked and they walked until it got dark, but they couldn't find a place to spend the night.
9) The robbers told one man to go back and see if everything was all right.

6 Answer the questions.

1) Where did Jack set out one day?
2) Who wanted to go together with him?
3) Whose house did they come to when it got dark?
4) What did Jack ask his friends to do to frighten the robbers?
5) Did the robbers run away or did they stay in the house?
6) Did every animal find a comfortable place to spend the night?
7) When did the robbers decide to return to their house? Whom did they send there first?

8) Did the robber think there were animals or dreadful people in the house?
9) The robbers never went to the house again, did they?

🕮 *Working with Vocabulary and Grammar*

1 Find a word in the right column that can help you to read a word in the left column.

goat	grow
peep	soon
mew	boast
bark	new
moo	eat
bleat	boot
crow	dark
woof	sleep

2 a) Match the words in two columns to make phrases.

to make	the night
to have	a good sleep
to stick	wood
to chop	a noise
to spend	the knitting-needles

b) Use these phrases in sentences to describe the events in the fairy-tale.

3 Choose the right tense.

went
'll go
are going

1) "Where you ______________ , Jack?"
2) The robber ______________ into the house as quietly as he could.
3) "I never ______________ there again," said the robber.

is lying
'll lie
lay

4) "I ______________ down under the table", said the dog.
5) The cat ______________ down in the rocking-chair.
6) "Look, the goat ______________ at the top of the stairs".

4 Say that the robber is wrong. Follow the model.

Model: There was an old woman in the rocking-chair. — *That was not an old woman.*
There were knitting-needles in her hands. — *Those were not knitting-needles.*

1) There was an old man under the table.
2) There were pincers in his hands.
3) There was an old woman at the top of the stairs.
4) There was a sweeping-brush in her hands.
5) There was a man chopping wood in the cellar.
6) There was an axe in his hands.

5 Here are the answers. What are the questions?

1) I'm going to seek my fortune.
2) Certainly, you may.
3) Oh, I see some men in the house.
4) They are counting their money.
5) I'll go into the cellar where it is nice and cool.
6) The worst man was on the roof.

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 Say why:

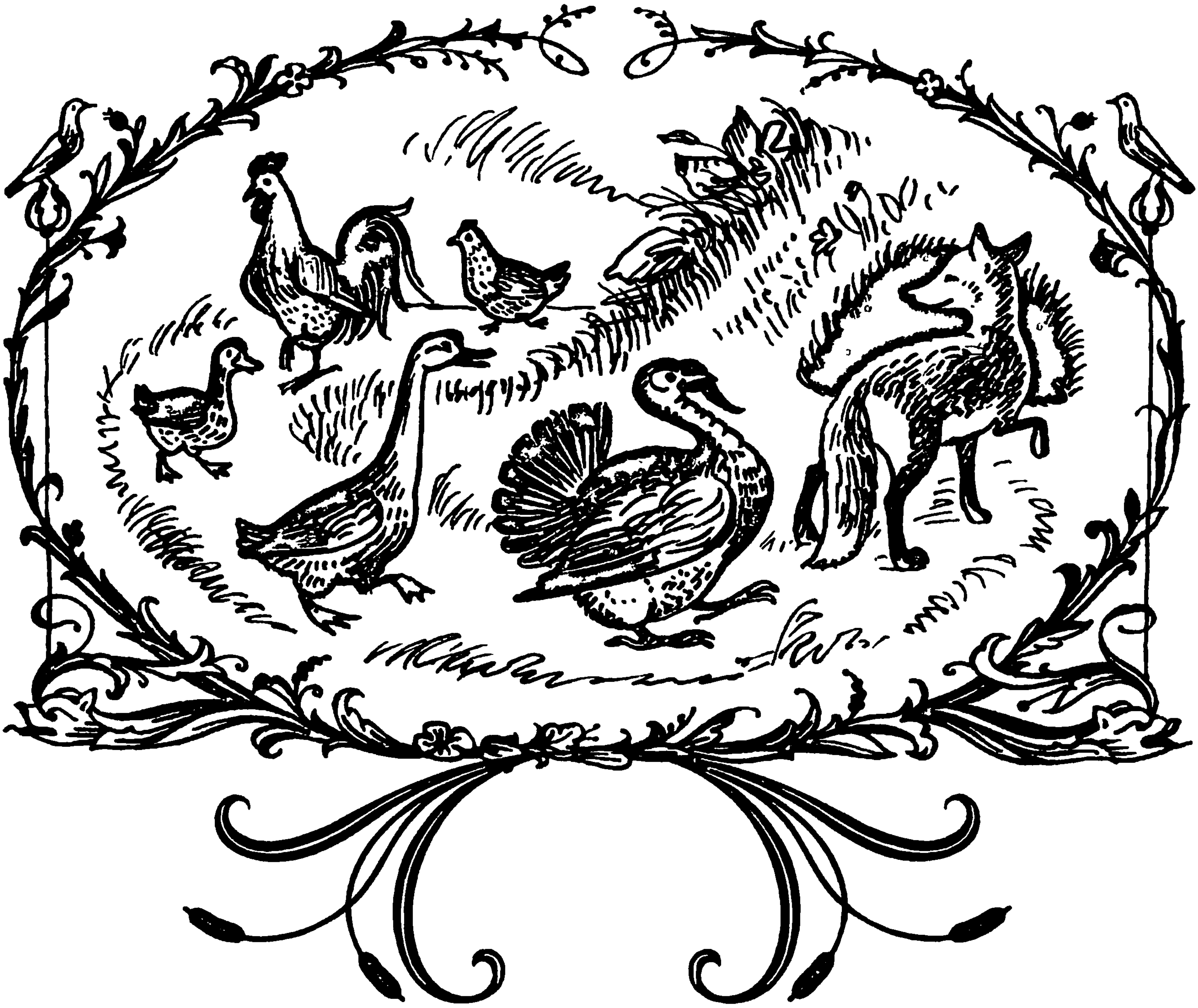
1) Jack and the animals became friends.
2) Jack thought that the men in the house were robbers.
3) Jack and his friends were not afraid of them.
4) the robbers were frightened.
5) the robbers never went to the house again.

2 What's your opinion?

1) Jack and his friends stayed in the house as long as they liked. How long do you think they stayed? What happened next?
2) Of course, you know the German fairy-tale by the Brothers Grimm. Is it different from this fairy-tale? What is the difference? Which fairy-tale do you like better? Why?

3 Tell your classmates how Jack and his friends found a house and frightened away the robbers. Use the outline below.

a) Jack and his friends find a house to spend the night in.
b) Jack and his friends frighten away the robbers.
c) Jack and his friends go inside the house to have a good sleep.
d) One of the robbers goes to the house to see if everything is all right.
e) The robbers decide never to go to the house again.



HENNY-PENNY[1]

One day Henny-penny was picking up corn[2] in the farm-yard when suddenly an acorn fell and hit her on the head. "Dear me!"[3] said Henny-penny. "The sky is falling. I must go and tell the king."

So she set out to tell the king, and she went along till she met Cocky-locky.[4]

---

[1] Henny-penny — *зд.* Курица (hen — курица)

[2] was picking up corn — клевала зерно

[3] Dear me! — Ox! (*междометие, выражающее удивление*)

[4] Cocky-locky — *зд.* Петух (cock — петух)

"Where are you going, Henny-penny?" said Cocky-locky.

"I'm going to tell the king the sky is falling," said Henny-penny.

"May I go with you?" said Cocky-locky.

"Certainly," said Henny-penny.

So they went along together to tell the king the sky was falling.

They went along till they met Ducky-daddles.[1]

"Where are you going, Henny-penny and Cocky-locky?" said Ducky-daddles.

"We're going to tell the king the sky is falling," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky.

"May I go with you?" said Ducky-daddles.

"Certainly," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky.

So they went along together to tell the king the sky was falling.

They went along till they met Goosey-poosey.[2]

"Where are you going, Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles?" said Goosey-poosey.

"We are going to tell the king the sky is falling," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles.

"May I go with you?" said Goosey-poosey.

"Certainly," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles.

So they went along together to tell the king the sky was falling.

They went along till they met Turkey-lurkey.[3]

"Where are you going, Henny-penny and Cocky-

---

[1] Ducky-daddles — *зд.* Утка (duck — утка)

[2] Goosey-poosey — *зд.* Гусь (goose — гусь, гусыня)

[3] Turkey-lurkey — *зд.* Индюк (turkey — индюк, индейка)

locky and Ducky-daddles and Goosey-poosey?" said Turkey-lurkey.

"We are going to tell the king the sky is falling," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles and Goosey-poosey.

"May I go with you?" said Turkey-lurkey.

"Certainly," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles and Goosey-poosey.

So they went along together to tell the king the sky was falling.

They went along till they met Foxy-woxy.[1]

"Where are you going, Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles and Goosey-poosey and Turkey-lurkey?" said Foxy-woxy.

"We are going to tell the king the sky is falling," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles and Goosey-poosey and Turkey-lurkey.

"But you are all going the wrong way," said Foxy-woxy. "Shall I show you the right way?"

"Yes, please," said Henny-penny and Cocky-locky and Ducky-daddles and Goosey-poosey and Turkey-lurkey.

They followed Foxy-woxy till they came to a dark hole. This was the front door of Foxy-woxy's cave.

"Follow me," said Foxy-woxy. "This is a short way to the king's palace. You'll soon get there if you follow me. I shall go first and you come after."

Foxy-woxy went into his cave, but he did not go very far in. He hid a little way inside[2] and waited.

Soon Turkey-lurkey went in and Foxy-woxy bit off

---

[1] Foxy-woxy — *зд.* Лиса (fox — лиса, лисица)

[2] hid a little way inside — спрятаться недалеко от входа

his head and threw his body over his shoulder. Then Goosey-poosey went in and Foxy-woxy bit off her head and threw her body over his shoulder. Then Ducky-daddles went in and Foxy-woxy bit off her head and threw her body over his shoulder. Then Cocky-locky went in and Foxy-woxy bit off his head too.

But Cocky-locky just had time to crow first[1] and Henny-penny knew something was wrong. She turned round and ran home as fast as she could, so she never told the king the sky was falling.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Say what:

1) Henny-penny was picking up in the farm-yard one day.
2) fell and hit her on the head.
3) she decided to go and tell the king.

2 Henny-penny met different animals. Say who was:

a)
- Ducky-daddles
- Turkey-lurkey
- Cocky-locky

---

[1] but Cocky-locky just had time to crow [krou] first — но Петух успел прокричать кукареку

- Goosey-poosey
- Foxy-woxy

b)
- the first
- the second
- the third
- the fourth
- the fifth

3 Say what Foxy-woxy did with Turkey-lurkey, Goosey-poosey, Ducky-daddles and Cocky-locky. Use the verbs:

- went into
- hid
- waited
- bit off
- threw

4 Say *true* or *false*.

1) All the animals were going the wrong way.
2) They followed Foxy-woxy.
3) They soon came to a dark hole.
4) It was a short way to the king's palace.
5) Henny-penny went into the hole and Foxy-woxy bit off her head.
6) Henny-penny never told the king the sky was falling.

5 Answer the questions:

1) What did Henny-penny say when an acorn fell and hit her on the head?

2) Where did she set out?
3) Who went together with her?
4) What did Foxy-woxy tell them?
5) Where did Foxy-woxy take them?
6) The dark hole was Foxy-woxy's cave, wasn't it?
7) It wasn't a short way to the king's palace, was it?
8) Did they all go into the cave, or did Foxy-woxy go in first?
9) How did Henny-penny know something was wrong?
10) What did she do?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 a) Match the words in two columns to make phrases.

to pick up	the right way
to tell	the body
to go	Foxy-woxy
to show	the King
to follow	the wrong way
to bit off	corn
to throw	the head

b) Use these phrases in sentences and describe the events in the fairy-tale.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) One day Henny-penny was picking up corn _______ the farmyard.
2) Suddenly an acorn fell and hit her _______ the head.

3) The sky is falling. I must go and tell ______ the king.
4) But you are all going ______ the wrong way.
5) They followed Foxy-woxy till they came ______ a dark hole.
6) This is a short way ______ the king's palace.
7) Foxy-woxy went ______ his cave.
8) Foxy-woxy bit off Turkey-lurkey's head and threw his body ______ his shoulder.

4 Say the same in a different way. Follow the model.

Model: the field of Mr. Smith — *Mr. Smith's field*

1) the house of the little pig
2) the money of the robbers
3) the knitting-needles of the old man
4) the axe of the old man
5) the cave of Foxy-woxy
6) the palace of the king

5 Use *a / an* or *the*.

1) Suddenly ______ acorn fell and hit her on ______ head.
2) "Oh, ______ sky is falling," said Henny-penny.
3) "But you are going ______ wrong way," said Foxy-woxy.
4) "Shall I show you ______ right way?"
5) They followed Foxy-woxy till they came to ______ dark hole.
6) This was ______ front door of Foxy-woxy's cave.

7) "This is ______ short way to the king's palace," said Foxy-woxy.

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 Say why:

1) Henny-penny thought the sky was falling when an acorn hit her on the head.
2) Cocky-locky, Ducky-daddles, Goosey-poosey and Turkey-lurkey went together with Henny-penny to the king's palace.
3) they believed Foxy-woxy and followed him into the cave.
4) Henny-penny never told the king the sky was falling.

2 What's your opinion?

1) Do you know the expression *cunning as a fox*? How do you understand it?
2) Is Foxy-woxy cunning? Prove it.

3 Tell your classmates:

1) what lies Foxy-woxy told Henny-penny and her friends to make them follow him into his cave.
2) how he bit off the heads of Henny-penny's friends.
3) why he didn't bite off Henny-penny's head.

4 Do you know any Russian tales about a cunning fox? What tricks does he play in them?



THE LITTLE RED HEN AND THE GRAIN OF WHEAT

One day as the Little Red Hen was scratching in a field, she found a grain of wheat.

"This grain of wheat should be planted,[1]" she said. "Who will plant this grain of wheat?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

---

[1] should [ʃud] be planted ['plɑːntɪd] — (*пшеничное зерно*) должно быть посажено

"Then I will,"[1] said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

Soon the wheat grew tall and yellow.

"The wheat is ripe," said the Little Red Hen. "Who will cut the wheat?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

When the wheat was cut, the Little Red Hen said, "Who will thresh this wheat?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

When the wheat was all threshed, the Little Red Hen said, "Who will take this wheat to the mill?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

She took the wheat to the mill, and it was made into flour.[2] Then she said, "Who will make this flour into bread?"

"Not I," said the Duck.

"Not I," said the Cat.

"Not I," said the Dog.

"Then I will," said the Little Red Hen. And she did.

---

[1] Then I will. — Тогда я это сделаю. (*Здесь и далее модальный глагол* will *выражает желание, намерение, решимость.*)

[2] and it was made into flour ['flaʊə] — и её перемололи в муку

She baked the bread. Then she said, “Who will eat this bread?”

“Oh! I will,” said the Duck.

“And I will,” said the Cat.

“And I will,” said the Dog.

“No, no!” said the Little Red Hen. “I will do that.” And she did.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Say *true*, *false* or *I don’t know.*

1) The Little Red Hen found an acorn in a field.
2) She asked the Duck, the Cat and the Dog to plant the grain.
3) They didn’t plant the grain because they didn’t know how to do it.
4) The Little Red Hen did all the work herself.
5) When the Little Red Hen baked the bread, the Duck, the Cat and the Dog ate it.
6) The Little Red Hen didn’t want to give any bread to the Duck, the Cat and the Dog because she was greedy.

2 Put the Little Red Hen’s questions in the right order.

1) “Who will take the wheat to the mill”?
2) “Who will cut the wheat?”

3) "Who will make the flour into bread?"
4) "Who will eat the bread?"
5) "Who will plant this grain of wheat?"

3 Answer the questions.

1) What did the Little Red Hen find in a field?
2) What did she decide to do with the grain?
3) Whom did she ask to plant the grain?
4) Did the Duck, the Cat and the Dog want to do any work?
5) The Duck, the Cat and the Dog wanted to eat the bread, didn't they?
6) Did the Little Red Hen eat the bread herself or did she give it to the Duck, the Cat and the Dog?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 a) Say which of the words is the Odd One Out.

1) wheat, bread, flour, grain, mill
2) plant, find, cut, bake, grow

b) Use these words in sentences to describe how bread is made.

2 Use *a*, *the* or no article.

1) One day the Little Red Hen was scratching in _______ field.
2) She found _______ grain of _______ wheat.

3) Soon _______ wheat grew tall and yellow.
4) It was made into _______ flour.
5) "Who will make _______ flour into _______ bread?"
6) She baked _______ bread.

3 **What does the Little Red Hen say she will do? What did she do? Follow the model.**

Model: to plant — *I'll plant the grain. She planted the grain.*

1) to cut
2) to thresh
3) to take it to the mill
4) to bake bread
5) to eat the bread

4 **Put as many questions as you can to the sentence below.**

One day the Little Red Hen found a grain of wheat in a field.

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 **Say why:**

1) the Little Red Hen asked the Duck, the Cat and the Dog to help her.
2) they didn't want to do anything.
3) they wanted to eat the bread when the Little Red Hen baked it.

4) the Little Red Hen didn't give the Duck, the Cat and the Dog any bread but ate it herself.

2 **Read the proverbs below. Which of them do you think suits the fairy-tale best?**

1) It's never too late to learn.
2) Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
3) A friend in need is a friend indeed.
4) They must hunger in winter that will not work in summer.

3 **Act out the fairy-tale.**



THE OLD WOMAN AND HER PIG

Once an old woman was sweeping her house, and she found a little crooked sixpence.[1] "What shall I do with this little sixpence?" she said. "I will go to the market, and buy a little pig." And the old woman did so.

[1] a little crooked ['krukɪd] sixpence — маленький погнутый шестипенсовик (sixpence — серебряная монета в 6 пенсов)

As she was coming home, she came to a stile, but the pig wouldn't go over the stile.[1]

The old woman went a little farther, and she met a dog. So she said to him, "Dog! Dog! Bite the pig, the pig won't[2] go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the dog wouldn't.

She went a little farther, and she met a stick. So she said, "Stick! Stick! Beat the dog, the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the stick wouldn't.

She went a little farther and she met a fire. So she said, "Fire! Fire! Burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the fire wouldn't.

She went a little farther, and she met some water. So she said, "Water! Water! Put out the fire;[3] the fire won't burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the water wouldn't.

She went a little farther, and she met an ox. So she said, "Ox! Ox! Drink the water; the water won't put out the fire; the fire won't burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the ox wouldn't.

She went a little farther, and she met a butcher.

---

[1] but the pig wouldn't ['wudnt] go over the stile — но поросёнок не захотел перелезать через перелаз (stile — ступеньки для перехода через забор или стену; перелаз)

[2] the pig won't — поросёнок не хочет

[3] put out the fire — погаси огонь

So she said, "Butcher! Butcher! Kill the ox; the ox won't drink the water; the water won't put out the fire; the fire won't burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the butcher wouldn't.

She went a little farther; and she met a rope. So she said, "Rope! Rope! Bind the butcher; the butcher won't kill the ox; the ox won't drink the water; the water won't put out the fire; the fire won't burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the rope wouldn't.

She went a little farther, and she met a rat. So she said, "Rat! Rat! Gnaw the rope; the rope won't bind the butcher; the butcher won't kill the ox; the ox won't drink the water; the water won't put out the fire; the fire won't burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight." But the rat wouldn't.

She went a little farther; and she met a cat. So she said, "Cat! Cat! Kill the rat; the rat won't gnaw the rope; the rope won't bind the butcher; the butcher won't kill the ox; the ox won't drink the water; the water won't put out the fire; the fire won't burn the stick; the stick won't beat the dog; the dog won't bite the pig; the pig won't go over the stile; and I shan't get home tonight."

Then the cat said to her, "If you go to the cow and fetch me a saucer of milk, I will kill the rat." So the old woman went away to the cow.

But the cow said to her, "If you go to the haystack and fetch me a bundle of hay, I'll give you the milk." So the old woman went away to the haystack; and she brought the hay to the cow.

As soon as[1] the cow had eaten the hay, she gave the old woman the milk; and the old woman gave the milk in a saucer to the cat.

As soon as the cat had lapped up the milk,[2] the cat began to run after the rat; the rat began to gnaw the rope; the rope began to bind the butcher; the butcher began to kill the ox; the ox began to drink up the water; the water began to put out the fire; the fire began to burn up the stick; the stick began to beat the dog; the dog began to bite the little pig; the little pig in a fright jumped over the stile; and so the old woman got home that night.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Say what:

1) the old woman was sweeping one day.
2) she found.
3) she bought.
4) the pig wouldn't jump over.

2 Say who wouldn't:

1) bite the pig.
2) beat the dog.

---

[1] as soon as — как только

[2] the cat had lapped up the milk — кошка вылакала молоко

3) burn the stick.
4) put out the fire.
5) drink the water.
6) kill the ox.
7) bind the butcher.
8) gnaw the rope.

3 Put the sentences from the box into the right places and make the tale complete.

The ox began to drink water. The cow ate the hay and gave the old woman the milk. The rat began to gnaw the rope. The dog began to bite the pig.

1) The old woman went to the haystack and brought the hay to the cow.
2) ______________________
3) The old woman gave the milk in a saucer to the cat.
4) The cat lapped up the milk and began to run after the rat.
5) ______________________
6) The rope began to bind the butcher.
7) The butcher began to kill the ox.
8) ______________________
9) The water began to put out the fire.
10) The fire began to burn up the stick.
11) The stick began to beat the dog.
12) ______________________
13) The little pig in a fright jumped over the stile.
14) The old woman got home that night.

📖 *Working with Vocabulary and Grammar*

1 Choose the right word.

1) The old woman went to the _______ .
   a) fair
   b) market
   c) cellar

2) The dog wouldn't _______ the pig.
   a) beat
   b) bind
   c) bite

3) "Stick! Stick! _______ the dog," said the old woman.
   a) burn
   b) beat
   c) bite

4) The fire wouldn't _______ the stick.
   a) put out
   b) bite
   c) burn

5) The old woman asked the _______ to kill the ox.
   a) rope
   b) butcher
   c) fire

6) The cat said, "Go to the cow and fetch me some _______".
   a) hay
   b) water
   c) milk

7) The cow ate the __________ and gave the old woman the milk.
   a) hay
   b) rope
   c) water

2 Put in *a / an* or *some*.

1) The old woman decided to buy __________ little pig.
2) She went a little farther and met __________ water.
3) Soon the old woman met __________ rope.
4) The cow said, "Go to the haystack and fetch me __________ hay."
5) The cow ate the hay and gave the old woman __________ milk.
6) The old woman gave the cat __________ saucer of milk.

3 a) Circle the past indefinite forms of the verbs *to buy, to go, to begin, to come, to drink, to run.*

c	l	i	b	o	u	g	h	t
r	s	w	e	n	t	x	b	z
r	a	n	g	a	d	h	i	k
l	n	c	a	m	e	o	g	r
d	r	a	n	k	s	u	v	a

b) Use the verbs you've circled in sentences to describe the events in the fairy-tale.

4 **The old woman met: a butcher, a dog, a cat, a stick, a fire, an ox, some water, a rope, a rat, a cow. Say who was the first, the second, the third, ect. Follow the model.**

Model: *The dog was the first.*

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 **Say why:**

1) the old woman bought a little pig.
2) the pig wouldn't go over the stile.
3) the dog, the stick, the fire and others wouldn't help the old woman.
4) the cat and the cow helped her.

2 **Read the proverbs below. Which of them do you think suits the fairy-tale best? Why?**

1) Better late than never.
2) A friend in need is a friend indeed.
3) All is well that ends well.
4) There is no place like home.

3 **You remember the fairy-tale well, don't you? Try and tell your classmates how the old woman got home that night.**



GOLDILOCKS AND THE THREE BEARS

Once upon a time there were three bears. There was a great big father bear, a middle-sized[1] mother bear, and a little baby bear. They lived together in a house in a wood.

One morning Mother Bear made porridge for breakfast and filled three bowls with it. There was a great big bowl for Father Bear, a middle-sized bowl for herself, and a little bowl for Baby Bear. At first the porridge was

---

[1] middle-sized — среднего размера

too hot to eat. The bears did not want to burn their mouths, so they went for a little walk in the wood while their porridge cooled.

That day a little girl went for a walk in the same wood. She had golden curls and everybody called her Goldilocks. Sometimes she stopped to pick a flower or to listen to a bird. Soon she came to the house where the three bears lived.

"Oh, what a lovely little house!" said Goldilocks. "I wonder[1] who lives here?"

She knocked at the door, and as there was no answer, she knocked again and again. Then she peeped through the keyhole. But of course the three bears were out for a walk. There was no one to open the door.

"I'll just look inside," thought Goldilocks. "The door is not locked." So she lifted the latch, opened the door and went in.

The first thing she saw was the bears' three chairs. She climbed into Father Bear's great big chair.

"Oh, it's too hard!" she said.

Then she tried Mother Bear's middle-sized chair.

"Oh, it's too soft!"

Then she sat down in Baby Bear's little chair.

"Oh, it isn't too hard and it isn't too soft. It's just right!"

But Goldilocks was too heavy for the little chair and she broke the bottom out of it.[2]

Then Goldilocks smelt porridge and she saw the three bowls of porridge on the table. She was very hungry as she had not had any breakfast.

---

[1] I wonder ['wʌndə] — интересно знать

[2] she broke the bottom ['bɔtəm] out of it — и сиденье под ней проломилось

"I'll eat a little," she said.

First she tried the porridge in Father Bear's great big bowl. But it was too hot. Next she tried the porridge in Mother Bear's middle-sized bowl. But that was too cold. Then she tried the porridge in Baby Bear's little bowl. It wasn't too hot and it wasn't too cold. It was just right. And Goldilocks ate up all the porridge in Baby Bear's little bowl.

Then Goldilocks decided to go upstairs to see what was there. She saw three beds; Father Bear's great big bed, and Mother Bear's middle-sized bed, and Baby Bear's little bed. They were all neat and tidy.

First she lay on the great big bed.

"Oh, it's too hard!"

Then she lay on the middle-sized bed.

"Oh, it's too soft!"

Then she lay on the little bed.

"Oh, this bed isn't too hard and it isn't too soft. It's just right!"

Goldilocks was so comfortable that she soon fell fast asleep[1] with her head on Baby Bear's pillow.

After a while the three bears came back from their walk. They thought their porridge would now be cool enough to eat. As soon as they entered the house, Father Bear saw that his chair was not in its right place.

"Someone has been sitting on my chair!"[2] he said in a great big voice.

---

[1] she soon fell fast asleep — вскоре она крепко заснула

[2] Someone has been sitting on my chair! — Кто-то сидел на моём стуле! (*Здесь и далее в этой сказке используется грамматическое время Present Perfect Continuous Tense; оно обозначает действие, которое началось в прошлом и продолжалось в течение определённого времени до момента речи.*)

Mother Bear saw that her cushion was rumpled.[1]

"Someone has been sitting on my chair!" she said in a middle-sized voice.

Then Baby Bear had a look at his chair.

"Someone has been sitting on my chair and has broken the bottom right out!" he said in his little baby voice.

Then they looked at their bowls of porridge on the table. Father Bear saw that his spoon was not in its place.

"Someone has been eating my porridge," he said in a great big voice.

Mother Bear noticed that her spoon was in the bowl.

"Someone has been eating my porridge," she said in a middle-sized voice.

Baby Bear looked at his bowl.

"Someone has been eating my porridge and has eaten it all up![2]" he said in a little baby voice.

"Let's go upstairs and look at the bedroom," said Father Bear, and they all went upstairs. Father Bear saw that his blanket was rumpled.

"Someone has been lying on my bed!" he said in his great big voice.

Mother Bear saw that her pillow was not quite in its place.

"Someone has been lying on my bed!" she said in a middle-sized voice.

Then Baby Bear looked at his bed.

"Someone has been lying on the bed and she's lying there still!" he cried in a little baby voice.

Now when Father Bear was speaking, his great voice

---

[1] that her cushion ['kuʃən] was rumpled ['rʌmpld] — что её подушка (на стуле) была смята

[2] and has eaten it all up — и всю её съел

sounded deep like thunder,[1] but Goldilocks did not wake up. When Mother Bear was speaking in her middle-sized voice, it sounded like the wind in the trees, but Goldilocks did not wake up. Only when Baby Bear cried in his shrill baby voice, Goldilocks woke and sat up in bed. She was very surprised and frightened to see three bears in the room with their little eyes on her.

She was out of bed in a moment, and down the stairs, and out of the door, and she never stopped running till she got back to her own home. She had got such a fright that she never went for a walk in the wood again to look for the little house.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Say who:

1) lived together in a house in a wood.
2) made porridge for breakfast one morning.
3) came to the house where the three bears lived.
4) Goldilocks saw when she peeped through the keyhole.

2 Say what in the fairy-tale was:

lovely / neat and tidy / hard / soft / cool / golden

---

[1] his great voice sounded ['saundɪd] deep like thunder — его сильный голос был подобен раскатам грома

3 **Say *true* or *false*:**

1) Father Bear's chair was not in its right place.
2) Mother Bear's chair was broken.
3) Baby Bear's cushion was rumpled.
4) Father Bear's spoon was in the bowl.
5) There was no porridge in Baby Bear's bowl.
6) Father Bear's blanket was rumpled.
7) Mother Bear's pillow was not in its place.
8) There was somebody on Baby Bear's bed.

4 **Match two parts of the sentences.**

1) The three bears went for a little walk in the forest	because it wasn't too hot and it wasn't too cold.
2) Everybody called her Goldilocks	because Baby Bear cried in his shrill baby voice.
3) She knocked at the door but there was no answer	because she had got such a fright.
4) She broke the bottom of Baby Bear's chair	because she was so comfortable.
5) She ate up Baby Bear's porridge	because they didn't want to burn their mouths.
6) She fell fast asleep on Baby Bear's bed	because the three bears were out for a walk.
7) Goldilocks woke and sat up in bed	because she had golden curls.
8) She never went for a walk in the wood	because she was too heavy for the little chair.

🕮 *Working with Vocabulary and Grammar*

1 Complete the sentences. The words from the box will help you.

pick up climbed peeped was frightened inside lay down ate

1) First Goldilocks ____________ on the great big bed.
2) "I'll just look ____________", thought Goldilocks.
3) Then Goldilocks ____________ through the keyholes.
4) Goldilocks ____________ into Father Bear's great big chair.
5) Goldilocks ____________ all the in baby bear's little bowl.
6) Sometimes Goldilocks stopped to ____________ a flower.
7) Goldilocks ____________ when she saw three bears in the room.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

When Baby Bear cried ________ his shrill baby voice, Goldilocks woke up. She jumped ________ the bed ________ a moment, ran ________ the stairs and

________ the door, and she never stopped running till she got back ________ her own home. She never went ________ a walk ________ the wood again to look ________ the little house.

3 What could Goldilocks say when she saw the following. Follow the model.

Model: a lovely house — *What a lovely house!*

1) a hard cushion
2) a soft pillow
3) hot porridge
4) neat beds
5) a little bowl

4 After Goldilocks gets back to her own home, her mother asks her questions. Answer them for Goldilocks.

1) Was there any answer when you knocked at the door of the house?
2) Was there anybody in the house when you came in?
3) Was there any furniture in the room?
4) Were there any bowls on the table?
5) Was there anything in the bowls?
6) Was there anything in Baby Bear's bowl after you tried his porridge?
7) Were there any beds upstairs?
8) Were there any pillows and blankets on the beds?
9) Was there anybody in the bedroom when you fell asleep?
10) Was there anybody when you woke up?

5 Choose the right tense.

broke
has broken

1) When Goldilocks sat down in Baby Bear's little chair she ____________ it.
2) When Baby Bear looked at his chair, he said in his little voice, "Oh, someone ____________ my chair"

put
has put

3) After Goldilocks tried the porridge in Father Bear's great big bowl, she ____________ his spoon in it.
4) When Father Bear saw that his spoon was not in its place, he said in a great big voice, "Look, someone ____________ my spoon in the bowl"

has eaten up
ate up

5) The porridge in Baby Bear's bowl was just right and Goldilocks ____________ it.
6) When Baby Bear saw there was no porridge in his bowl, he said in his little baby voice, "Oh, someone ____________ my porridge"

has rumpled
rumpled

7) When Goldilocks lay on Father Bear's great big bed, she ____________ his blanket.
8) When Father Bear saw that his blanket was rumpled, he said, "Look, someone ____________ my blanket"

✋ *Discussing the Fairy-tale*

1 Speak about the three bears: Father Bear, Mother Bear and Baby Bear. Describe their house. Prove that it was nice and tidy.

2 Speak about Goldilocks. Say why:

1) everybody called her so.
2) she went for a walk in the wood.
3) she went into the three bears' house, sat in their chairs, ate their porridge and lay on their beds.

3 What is your opinion?

1) Did Goldilocks do any wrong things?
2) What wrong things did she do?
3) Why did she never go for a walk in the wood again?
4) Did she learn anything from her adventure?

4 Of course you know the Russian fairy-tale told by Leo Tolstoy.

Is it different from this fairy-tale? What is the difference? Which fairy-tale do you like better? Why? Tell your classmates the part of the fairy-tale you like best.



RED RIDING-HOOD[1]

Once upon a time there was a little girl who was loved by all who knew her. Her grandmother made her a little red cloak with a red hood. The cloak was so nice and warm that she often wore it. She wore it so often that people called her Red Riding-Hood.

One day, her mother said to her:

---

[1] Red Riding-Hood — *зд.* Красная Шапочка (*букв.* riding-hood — капюшон, шапочка для верховой езды) (*Особой известностью пользуется французский вариант этой сказки, принадлежащий Шарлю Перро.*)

"Red Riding-Hood, I want you to take a basket of good things to your grandmother, who isn't very well; some bread, a cake, and a piece of fresh butter."

Her mother put the things in a basket. "Don't run," she said, "or you may fall down with your basket. But don't go too slowly or you will be too late. Just go quickly and carefully. And don't talk to any strangers you may meet."

"I will do just as you tell me, Mother," said Red Riding-Hood, and she put on her red cloak and left the house.

Her grandmother lived in a wood about half-an-hour's walk away from the village. Red Riding-Hood went carefully; she didn't run and she didn't walk too slowly. When she was going through the wood, she met a wolf. Red Riding-Hood had no idea what a wicked and cruel animal the wolf was, so she was not afraid of him. She quite forgot that her mother had told her not to speak to strangers.

"Good morning, Red Riding-Hood," said the wolf.

"Good morning, wolf," said Red Riding-Hood.

"Where are you going so early?" asked the wolf.

"I am going to visit my grandmother who is not very well," answered Red Riding-Hood.

"What have you in your basket?"

"I have some bread, a cake, and a piece of fresh butter."

"Where does your grandmother live?"

"She lives in the wood. Her house is under three oak-trees and there are nut bushes beside it."

"This pretty little girl will be a tasty dinner for me!" thought the wolf, and he looked hungrily at Red Riding-Hood. "She will be more tasty than the old

woman. But if I am careful, perhaps I can eat them both up."

He would have eaten[1] Red Riding-Hood at once, but he could hear the sound of an axe nearby. That meant that there were men not far away, and he did not want to be caught.[2] So the wolf walked along with Red Riding-Hood for a while. Then he said:

"Look at the pretty flowers, Red Riding-Hood! Why don't you gather some flowers for your grandmother? She will be very pleased with some fresh flowers if she is not well and cannot go out."

"What a good idea! It is quite early. I have time to pick flowers," said Red Riding-Hood. She looked around and saw many lovely bright flowers. So she walked under the trees and picked the flowers. Each time she picked one, she always saw another prettier flower farther on. She went deeper and deeper into the wood. At the same time she listened to the birds in the trees as they sang their sweet songs.

But the wolf went straight to the grandmother's house. When he reached the house, he knocked at the door. Toc! Toc!

"Who is there?" asked the grandmother in a weak voice.

"It is Red Riding-Hood," said the wolf, and he tried to make his gruff voice sound soft.[3] "I have brought you some bread, a cake, and a piece of fresh butter."

---

[1] he would have eaten — он бы съел

[2] he did not want to be caught — он не хотел, чтобы его поймали

[3] he tried to make his gruff voice sound soft — он старался, чтобы его грубый голос звучал как можно мягче

"Lift the latch and walk in," said the grandmother. "I am too weak to get up."

The wolf lifted the latch, and he walked into the house.

The old lady was lying in bed. The wolf went straight up to the bed and swallowed her up. Then he put on a nightdress and a nightcap, got into the grandmother's bed and drew the curtains.[1]

When Red Riding-Hood had gathered as many flowers as she could carry, she hurried on to her grandmother's house.

She was very surprised when she got to the house and found the door open. And when she entered the room, everything seemed so strange.[2] She felt quite frightened, but she did not know why.

"Good morning, Grandmother," she cried. But she received no answer.

Then she went up to the bed and drew the curtains back. There lay her grandmother, but she had pulled her nightcap over her face, and she looked very strange.

"Oh, Grandmother, what big ears you have!" said Red Riding-Hood.

"The better to hear you with, my dear," said the wolf.

"Oh, Grandmother, what big eyes you have!"

"The better to see you with, my dear."

"Oh, Grandmother, what big hands you have!"

"The better to hug you with, my dear."

"Oh, Grandmother, what big teeth you have!"

"The better to eat you with, my dear." With these

---

[1] drew the curtains ['kə:tnz] — задёрнул занавески (*около кровати*)

[2] everything seemed so strange — всё показалось таким необычным

words, the wicked wolf jumped out of bed and swallowed poor little Red Riding-Hood. Then, after such a good meal, he went back to bed for a rest. Soon he was asleep and snoring loudly.

Later on,[1] a hunter went past the house and he heard the wolf's loud snores. Of course he thought it was the grandmother.

"How loudly the old lady is snoring," he thought. "Perhaps she is not well. I'll just open the door and see if she is all right." So he went into the house and saw the wolf asleep in the old lady's bed.

"I know who you are," said the hunter. "You've done bad things for years. Well, you'll never have a chance to kill anyone else."

He raised his gun to shoot,[2] when he thought that perhaps the wolf had swallowed the old lady, and that she might still be saved.[3]

So he took a knife and carefully cut open the wolf[4] as he lay asleep. The little girl jumped out and cried, "Oh, how frightened I was! It was so dark inside the wolf." Next the old grandmother came out, alive but very weak after her horrible adventure.

They were quite happy now. The hunter took the wolf's skin home. The grandmother ate all the good things which Red Riding-Hood brought, and she soon felt quite

---

[1] later on — позднее

[2] he raised his gun to shoot — он поднял своё ружьё, чтобы выстрелить

[3] she might still be saved — её можно ещё спасти

[4] carefully cut open the wolf — осторожно распорол живот волку

strong. As for Red Riding-Hood, she decided always to follow her mother's advice.[1]

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I want you to take a basket of good things to your grandmother, who isn't very well."
2) "I'll do just as you tell me."
3) "Where are you going so early?"
4) "What a good idea!"
5) "Lift the latch and walk in."
6) "You've done bad things for years."

2 Match three parts of the sentences. Say what there was / were in these places.

	some bread	under the trees.
	a cake and a piece of fresh butter	in the basket.
There was	nut bushes	not far away.
There were	men	in the trees.
	lovely bright flowers	in the basket.
	birds	beside the house.

[1] As for... always to follow her mother's advice [əd'vaɪs] — Что касается... всегда следовать маминым советам.

3 What did the mother tell Red Riding-Hood to do? Choose the sentences you need.

1) "Don't run."
2) "Listen to the birds in the trees."
3) "Don't go too slowly."
4) "Don't go deep into the wood."
5) "Go quickly and carefully."
6) "Gather some fresh flowers for your grandmother."
7) "Don't talk to any strangers you may meet."

4 Put the phrases below in the right order. Say what the wolf did in the grandmother's house.

The wolf:
1) walked into the house.
2) got into the old lady's bed.
3) jumped out of bed.
4) lifted the latch.
5) put on a nightdress and a nightcap.
6) swallowed the old lady.
7) knocked at the door.
8) drew the curtains.
9) swallowed Red Riding-Hood.

5 Put the phrases below in the right order. Say what the hunter did.

The hunter:
1) went into the house.
2) took a knife.
3) saw the wolf asleep in the old lady's bed.

4) went past the house.
5) took the wolf's skin home.
6) heard the wolf's loud snores.
7) cut open the wolf.

6 Answer the questions:

1) What did Red Riding-Hood often wear?
2) Where did her mother send her once?
3) What advice did she give her?
4) Did Red Riding-Hood follow her mother's advice?
5) Who did she talk to in the wood?
6) Why didn't the wolf eat Red Riding-Hood at once?
7) Where did the wolf go?
8) What did he do after he swallowed the old lady?
9) Why did Red Riding-Hood think that her grandmother looked strange?
10) The wolf went back to bed for a rest after he swallowed Red Riding-Hood, didn't he?
11) Who heard the wolf's loud snores?
12) Did the hunter shoot the wolf or did he cut him open?
13) What did Red Riding-Hood decide always to do after she got out of the wolf?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 a) Match the words in two columns to make phrases.

nice and warm	voice
fresh	dinner
wicked cruel	cloak
tasty	butter
lovely bright	animal
weak	snores
loud	flowers

b) Use these phrases in sentences and describe the characters and events in the fairy-tale.

2 Choose the right word.

wore
put on

1) The cloak was so nice and warm that Red Riding-Hood often ________________ it.
2) Then the wolf ________________ a nightdress and a nightcap.

carry
take

3) "Red Riding-Hood, I want you to ________________ a basket of good things to your grandmother."
4) When Red Riding-Hood had gathered as many flowers as she could ________________, she hurried on to her grandmother's house.

talk
tell

5) "I'll do just as you ________________ me, Mother", said Red Riding-Hood.

6) “Don’t ________________ to any strangers you may meet.”

3 Use *who* or *which* to make the sentences complete.

1) Once there was a girl __________ was loved by everybody __________ knew her.
2) Her grandmother made Red Riding-Hood a cloak __________ was very nice and warm.
3) “Why don’t you gather some flowers __________ you may give your grandmother?”
4) “I’m going to visit my grandmother __________ is not very well.”
5) “You’ll never have a chance to do bad things __________ you’ve done for years”, said the hunter.
6) The grandmother ate all the good things ________ Red Riding-Hood brought.

4 What did the mother tell Red Riding-Hood to do / not to do? What did Red Riding-Hood do / didn’t do? Use the model.

Model: to take — *Take a basket to your grandmother. Red Riding-Hood took it to her grandmother.*

1) to run
2) to fall down
3) to go slowly
4) to be late
5) to go quickly
6) to talk

5 Adjective or adverb? Make the right choice.

hungry
hungrily

1) The wolf was very ____________ .
2) He looked at Red Riding-Hood ____________ .

careful
carefully

3) Red Riding-Hood went ____________ .
4) "If I'm ____________ enough, perhaps, I can eat them both."

loud
loudly

5) Soon the wolf was asleep and snoring ____________ .
6) The hunter heard the wolf's ____________ snores.

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 Say why:

1) everybody called Red Riding-Hood so.
2) she was not afraid of the wolf.
3) she spoke to him.
4) she decided to pick up flowers.
5) the grandmother told the wolf to lift the latch and walk in.
6) Red Riding-Hood thought her grandmother looked strange.
7) the hunter decided to go into the grandmother's house.

8) he knew the wolf.
9) he didn't shoot him.
10) Red Riding-Hood decided always to follow her mother's advice.

2 What's your opinion?

1) Red Riding-Hood was loved by everybody. Why? Do you like her?
2) What things did she do right and what things did she do wrong?
3) Who is good and who is bad in the fairy-tale? For whom does it end happily? Why?
4) Red Riding-Hood decided always to follow her mother's advice. Do you always follow your mother's advice? Why should children follow their mother's advice?

3 Act out the fairy-tale.



THE GINGERBREAD MAN[1]

Once upon a time there was a little old man and a little old woman, and they lived in a little old house. They hadn't any children, so one day the little old woman made herself a little boy out of gingerbread. She gave him a chocolate jacket and raisins for buttons[2], and he

---

[1] The Gingerbread ['dʒɪndʒəbred] Man (Boy) — Пряничный человечек

[2] she gave him a chocolate ['tʃɔkəlɪt] jacket and raisins ['reɪznz] for buttons — она сделала ему курточку из шоколада, вместо пуговиц на курточке были изюминки

had currants for eyes and a cherry for a mouth.[1] When he was finished, she put him in a tin in the oven to bake.

"Now I have a little boy of my own," she thought.

When it was time to take the Gingerbread Boy out of the oven, she opened the oven door, and took out the tin. But in a moment the Gingerbread Boy jumped on to the floor, and ran out of the back door and down the road.

The little old man and the little old woman ran after him, but he ran faster than they, and shouted:

"Run! Run! as fast as you can,
You can't catch me, I'm the Gingerbread Man!"

And they couldn't catch him.

The little Gingerbread Boy ran on till he came to a cow. The cow was eating grass by the roadside.

"Stop, little Gingerbread Boy," said the cow. "I want to eat you."

The little Gingerbread Boy laughed and said:

"I have run away from a little old woman,
And a little old man,
And I can run away from you, I can!"

As the cow ran after him, he looked back and cried:

"Run! Run! as fast as you can,
You can't catch me, I'm the Gingerbread Man!"

---

[1] he had currants for eyes and a cherry for a mouth [mauθ] — вместо глаз у него были ягоды чёрной смородины, а вместо рта — вишенка

And the cow couldn't catch him.

The little Gingerbread Boy ran on till he came to a horse in a meadow.

"Stop, little Gingerbread Boy," said the horse. "I want to eat you."

The little Gingerbread Boy laughed and said:

"I have run away from a little old woman,
And a little old man,
A cow,
And I can run away from you, I can!"

As the horse ran after him, he looked back and cried:

"Run! Run! as fast as you can,
You can't catch me, I'm the Gingerbread Man!"

And the horse couldn't catch him.

The little Gingerbread Boy ran on till he came to a barn full of threshers.[1]

"Stop, little Gingerbread Boy," said the threshers. "We want to eat you up."

The little Gingerbread Boy laughed and said:

"I have run away from a little old woman,
And a little old man,
A cow,
A horse,
And I can run away from you, I can!"

---

[1] to a barn full of threshers ['θreʃəz] — *зд.* к сараю, в котором работали молотильщики

As the threshers ran after him, he looked back and cried:

"Run! Run! as fast as you can,
You can't catch me, I'm the Gingerbread Man!"

And the threshers couldn't catch him.

The little Gingerbread Boy ran on till he came to a field full of mowers.[1]

"Stop, little Gingerbread Boy," said the mowers. "We want to eat you up."

The little Gingerbread Boy laughed and said:

"I have run away from a little old woman,
And a little old man,
A cow,
A horse,
A barn full of threshers,
And I can run away from you, I can!"

As the mowers ran after him, he looked back and cried:

"Run! Run! as fast as you can,
You can't catch me, I'm the Gingerbread Man!"

And the mowers could not catch him.

By now, the little Gingerbread Boy was so pleased with himself that he was quite sure that nobody could ever catch him. So when he met a fox, he called out to him:

---

[1] to a field full of mowers ['mouəz] — *зд.* к полю, на котором работали косцы

"I have run away from a little old woman,
And a little old man,
A cow,
A horse,
A barn full of threshers,
A field full of mowers,
And I can run away from you, I can!"

"I don't want to catch you," said the fox.

Just then, the little Gingerbread Boy reached a wide river. He could not swim, but he wanted to get across the river.

"I'll take you across," said the fox. "Jump on my tail."

So the little Gingerbread Boy sat on the fox's tail and the fox began to swim. When the fox had gone a little way, he said:

"You are too heavy for my tail, and you may get wet. Jump on to my back."

The little Gingerbread Boy jumped on to the fox's back.

When he had gone a little farther, the fox said:

"You may get wet where you are. Jump on to my shoulder."

So the little Gingerbread Boy jumped on to the fox's shoulder.

When the fox had gone still farther, he said:

"My shoulder is getting wet. Jump on to my nose. You will keep dry there.[1]"

So the little Gingerbread Boy jumped on to the fox's nose.

---

[1] You will keep dry there. — Там ты останешься сухим.

As soon as the fox reached the bank of the river, his teeth snapped at the Gingerbread Boy!

"Oh, I'm a quarter gone!"[1] said the little Gingerbread Boy.

"Oh, I'm half gone!" he said a minute later.

"Oh, I'm three quarters gone!" he said the next minute.

And he never said anything else because he was all gone.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Say what:

1) the little old woman made herself one day.
2) she made the little boy out of.
3) she gave him.
4) the little boy had for eyes.
5) he had for a mouth.

2 Say who did the following: the little old lady or the little boy.

1) jumped on the floor.
2) opened the oven door.

---

[1] Oh, I'm a quarter gone! — Ой, я стал на четверть меньше!

3) ran faster.
4) put the tin in the oven.
5) ran out of the back door.
6) took out the tin.

3 Say whom the Gingerbread Boy met:

1) in a field
2) in a barn
3) by the roadside
4) in a meadow

4 Put the Fox's sentences in the right order.

1) "Jump on my tail."
2) "You may get wet where you are. Jump on to my shoulder."
3) "I don't want to catch you."
4) "You are too heavy for my tail, and you may get wet. Jump on to my back."
5) "I'll take you across the river."
6) "My shoulder is getting wet. Jump on to my nose. You will keep dry there."

5 Answer the questions.

1) Why did the old little woman make herself a little boy out of gingerbread?
2) What did the boy look like?
3) What did he do after the little old woman baked him?
4) Who wanted to catch and eat the Gingerbread Boy? Could they do it?

5) What did the Gingerbread Boy always tell those who wanted to catch him?
6) Why was he pleased with himself?
7) Who said, "I don't want to catch you"?
8) Could the Gingerbread Boy get across the river?
9) How did the fox take him across the river?
10) What did the fox do when they reached the bank of the river?
11) What were the last words of the Gingerbread Boy?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Complete the sentences. The words and phrases from the box will help you.

fast
to get across
have run away
looked back
was sure
heavy
get wet
reached

1) As the cow ran after him he ________________ and cried,
   "Run! Run! As ________________ as you can,
   You can't catch me."
2) By now the Gingerbread Boy ________________ that nobody could ever catch him.
3) The Gingerbread Boy could not swim, but he wanted ________________ the river.

4) The fox said, "You are too ______________ for my tail, and you may ______________ ."
5) The Gingerbread Boy laughed and said, "I ______________ from a little old woman and a little old man."
6) As soon as the fox ______________ the bank of the river, his teeth snapped at the Gingerbread Boy.

2 **a) Say what the little old woman had and what she didn't have. Use the nouns below.**

- an oven
- a tin
- a little house
- gingerbread
- children
- children's clothes

b) Say what the Gingerbread boy had and what he didn't have. Use the nouns below.

- shoes
- a chocolate jacket
- trousers
- eyes
- a mouth

3 **Write the missing forms of the verbs.**

give		
	put	

		thought
take		
	ran	
		met
swim		
	began	

4 **Say what the Gingerbread Boy could do and what he couldn't do. Use the verbs and phrases below:**

- swim
- jump out of the oven
- get across the river
- run faster than a horse
- run away from the little old woman
- run away from the fox

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 **Say why:**

1) the little old woman made the Gingerbread Boy.
2) he ran away from her.
3) nobody could catch him.

2 **What is your opinion?**

1) When somebody ran after the Gingerbread Boy, he always laughed and said,

"Run! Run! as fast as you can,
You can't catch me. I'm the Gingerbread Man."

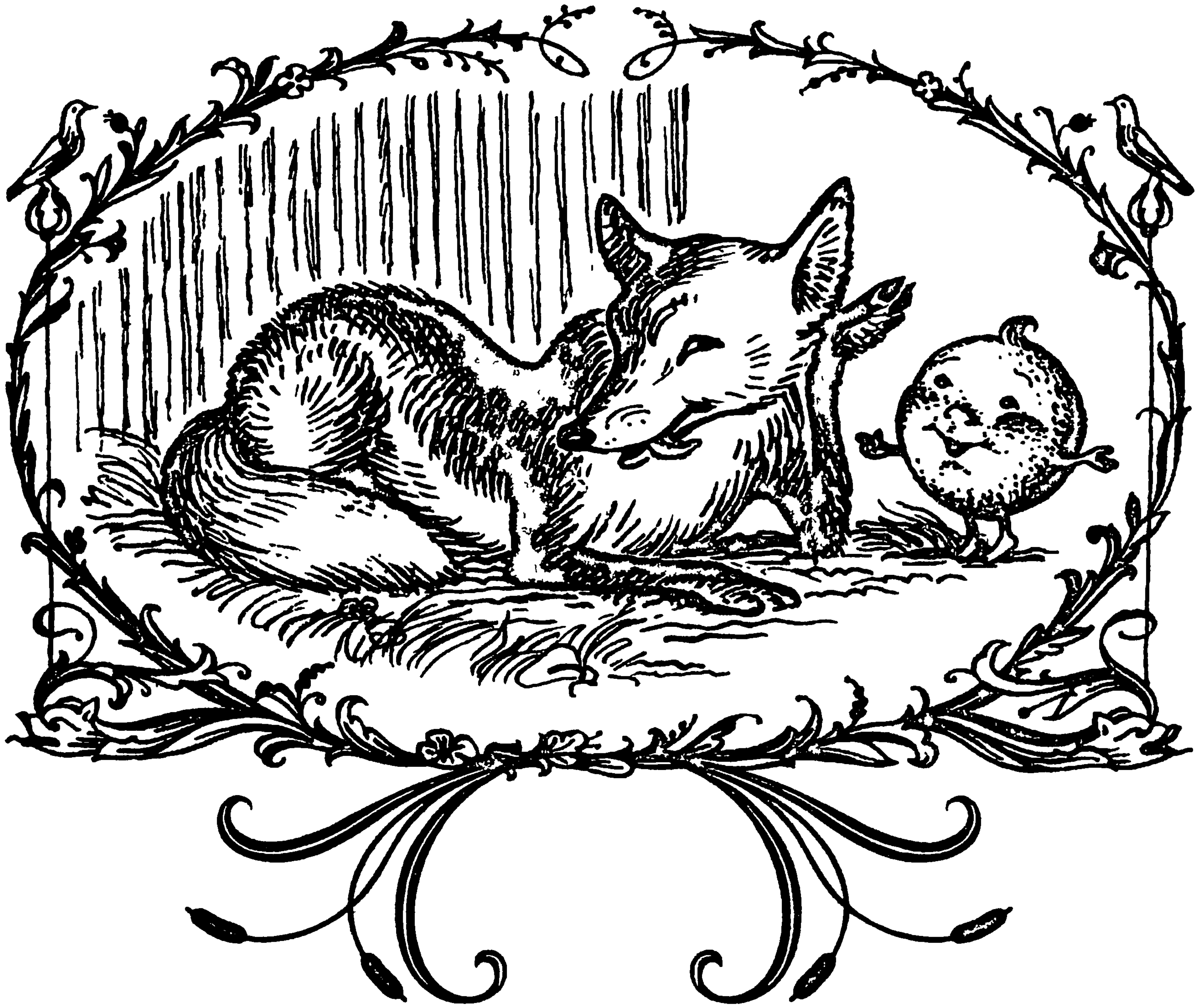
Why did he do it?

2) Why was the Gingerbread Boy sure that nobody could ever catch him? Was he a silly little boaster?
3) "I don't want to catch you," said the fox. Why did he say it? Did he want to catch the Gingerbread Boy?
4) "I'll take you across the river," said the fox. "Jump on my tail."
   Why did the fox tell the Gingerbread Boy to jump on his tail but not on his nose at once? Was he a clever and cunning animal?
5) Why is the end of the tale not happy? What was the Gingerbread Boy punished for?

3 Tell your classmates about the Gingerbread Boy. Use the outline below.

a) The little old woman makes herself a little boy.
b) The Gingerbread Boy runs away from her.
c) The cow, the horse, the threshers and the mowers want to eat the Gingerbread Boy but cannot catch him.
d) The fox takes the Gingerbread Boy across the river.
e) The Gingerbread Boy is gone.

You are going to read another fairy-tale about a little boy who was also made by an old woman.
Get ready to compare the fairy-tales.



JOHNNY-CAKE[1]

Once upon a time there was an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy. One morning the old woman made a Johnny-cake, and put it in the oven to bake.

"You watch the Johnny-cake while your father and I go out to work in the garden," said the old woman to the boy.

So the old man and the old woman went out and

---

[1] Johnny-cake ['dʒɔnɪkeɪk] — *зд.* Джонни-пончик (*В современном английском языке существует слово* johnnycake — лепёшка.)

began to hoe potatoes,[1] and left the little boy to look after the oven. But he didn't watch it all the time, and suddenly he heard a noise. The boy looked up. The oven door had opened itself. Then Johnny-cake jumped out of the oven, and rolled towards the open door of the house. The little boy ran to shut the door, but Johnny-cake was too quick for him, and rolled through the door, down the steps, and out into the road. The little boy cried out to his father and mother and ran after Johnny-cake as fast as he could. When the parents heard the noise, they threw down their hoes and gave chase too.[2] But Johnny-cake outran all three a long way, and was soon out of sight,[3] while they had to sit down, all out of breath, on a bank to rest.

On went Johnny-cake,[4] and soon he came to two well-diggers,[5] who were digging a well. They looked up from their work and called out, "Where are you going, Johnny-cake?"

He said, "I've outrun an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy, and I can outrun you too — o — o!"

---

[1] to hoe [hou] potatoes — окучивать картофель

[2] and gave chase too — тоже пустились в погоню

[3] outran all three a long way [weɪ], and was soon out of sight [saɪt] — намного обогнал всех троих и вскоре скрылся из виду

[4] on went Johnny-cake — дальше покатился Джонни-пончик (*Здесь и далее в сказках для усиления смысла используется инверсия, т. е. изменение обычного порядка слов в предложении.*)

[5] well-diggers — землекопы, роющие колодец; *далее*: ditch-diggers — землекопы, роющие канаву

"You can, can you? We'll see about that!" said they, and they threw down their picks and ran after him. But they couldn't catch up with him, and soon they had to sit down by the roadside to rest.

On ran Johnny-cake, and soon he came to two ditch-diggers who were digging a ditch. "Where are you going, Johnny-cake?" asked they.

He said, "I've outrun an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy, and two well-diggers, and I can outrun you too — o — o!"

"You can, can you? We'll see about that!" said they, and they threw down their spades, and ran after him too. But Johnny-cake soon outran them also, so they gave up the chase[1] and sat down to rest.

On went Johnny-cake, and soon he came to a bear. The bear asked, "Where are you going, Johnny-cake?"

He said, "I've outrun an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy, and two well-diggers, and two ditch-diggers, and I can outrun you too — o — o!"

"You can, can you?" said the bear in his gruff voice. "We'll see about that!" And the bear ran as fast as his legs could carry him after Johnny-cake, who never stopped to look behind him. But soon the bear was left so far behind that he gave up the chase at last, and he lay down by the roadside to rest.

On went Johnny-cake, and soon he came to a wolf. The wolf asked, "Where are you going, Johnny-cake?"

He said, "I've outrun an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy, and two well-diggers, and

[1] they gave up the chase — они прекратили погоню

two ditch-diggers, and a bear, and I can outrun you too — o — o!"

"You can, can you?" said the wolf in his horrible angry voice. "We'll see about that!" And he ran after Johnny-cake, who went on and on so fast that the wolf too saw that he could not hope to catch him, and he too lay down to rest.

On went Johnny-cake, and soon he came to a fox that lay quietly in a corner by a fence. The fox called out in a sharp voice, "Where are you going, Johnny-cake?" But the fox did not get up.

Johnny-cake said, "I've outrun an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy, and two well-diggers, and two ditch-diggers, a bear and a wolf, and I can outrun you too — o — o!"

"I can't quite hear you, Johnny-cake, won't you come a little closer?" said the fox and turned his head a little to one side.

Johnny-cake stopped running for the first time. Then he went a little closer, and called out in a very loud voice, *"I've outrun an old man, and an old woman, and a little boy, and two well-diggers, and two ditch-diggers, and a bear, and a wolf, and I can outrun you too — o — o!"*

"I can't quite hear you; won't you come *a little* closer?" said the fox in a weak voice, as he turned his head towards Johnny-cake, and put one paw behind his ear.

Johnny-cake came up close. He leaned towards the fox and screamed out,[1] "I'VE OUTRUN AN OLD

---

[1] He leaned towards [tə'wɔ:dz] the fox and screamed out. — Он наклонился к лисе и пронзительно закричал.

MAN, AND AN OLD WOMAN, AND A LITTLE BOY, AND TWO WELL-DIGGERS, AND TWO DITCH-DIGGERS, AND A BEAR, AND A WOLF, AND I CAN OUTRUN YOU TOO — O — O!"

"You can, can you?" cried the fox, and he snapped up the Johnny-cake in his sharp teeth in the twinkling of an eye.[1]

Exercises

Comparing the Fairy-tales

1 Say whom the Gingerbread Boy met and whom Johnny-cake met. Use the nouns:

- a cow
- ditch-diggers
- mowers
- a horse
- a bear
- well-diggers
- a wolf
- threshers

2 Read the sentences from the fairy-tale "The Gingerbread Man". Answer the questions to the fairy-tale "Johnny-cake".

---

[1] in the twinkling of an eye — в мгновение ока

"The Gingerbread Man"	*"Johnny-cake"*
1) The little old woman had no children.	Did the old woman have any children?
2) The little old woman made herself a little boy out of gingerbread?	What did the old woman make one day?
3) The little old woman opened the oven and took out the tin.	Who opened the door of the oven?
4) The Gingerbread Boy jumped on to the floor and ran out of the back door and down the road.	What did Johnny-cake do?
5) The little old man and the little old woman ran after him.	Who ran after Johnny-cake?
6) The Gingerbread Boy ran faster than they, and they couldn't catch him.	Did Johnny-cake outrun the little boy, his father and mother?

As soon as the fox reached the bank of the river, his teeth snapped at the Gingerbread Boy. Answer the questions and say how the fox snapped up Johnny-cake in his sharp teeth.

1) Where did the fox lie quietly when Johnny-cake saw him? Did the fox get up?
2) What did the fox ask Johnny-cake to do?

3) How did Johnny-cake speak when he went a little closer to the fox?
4) How did the fox show that he couldn't quite hear Johnny-cake?
5) What did Johnny-cake do when he came close to the fox? What did the fox do?

4 What's your opinion?

1) Why did the old woman make Johnny-cake one morning?
2) Why didn't the old woman look after the oven herself but left the little boy to do it? Did Johnny-cake run away because the little boy didn't look after the oven all the time?
3) Did the door of the oven open itself?
4) When the cow, the horse, the threshers and the mowers met the Gingerbread Boy, they said, "Stop, little Gingerbread Boy, we want to eat you."
   Why did the well-diggers, the ditch-diggers, the bear and the wolf ask Johnny-cake: "Where are you going, Johnny-cake?" Did they want to go together with him?
5) Is there much difference between the Gingerbread Boy and Johnny-cake? Why did they both get into the teeth of the fox? Which of them is more like Kolobok from the Russian fairy-tale?
6) Which fairy-tale do you like best? Which of them would you like to tell your classmates?



THE COCK, THE MOUSE AND THE LITTLE RED HEN

Once upon a time there was a hill, and on the hill there was a lovely little house. It had one little green door, and four little windows with green shutters, and in it there lived a Cock, and a Mouse and a little Red Hen.

On another hill not very far away on the other side of a small river, there was another little house. It was a very bad little house. It had a door that didn't shut, and two broken windows. And in this house there lived a bad big Fox and four bad little foxes.

One morning these four bad little foxes came to the big bad Fox, and said, "Oh, Father, we're so hungry!"

"We had nothing to eat yesterday," said one.

"And almost nothing the day before,[1]" said another.

"And only half a chicken the day before that,[2]" said the third.

"And only two little ducks the day before that,[3]" said the fourth.

The big bad Fox shook his head for a long time, for he was thinking. At last he said in a big gruff voice, "Over the hill there I see a house. And in that house there lives a Cock."

"And a Mouse," screamed two of the little foxes.

"And a little Red Hen," screamed the other two.

"And they are nice and fat," went on the big bad Fox. "I'll take my sack, and I'll go up that hill, and in that house, and I'll put the Cock, and the Mouse and the little Red Hen into my sack. I'll do it today."

So the four little foxes jumped for joy,[4] and the big bad Fox went to get his sack.

But what was happening to the Cock and the Mouse and the little Red Hen all this time?

That morning the Cock and the Mouse had both got out of bed on the wrong side.[5] The Cock said the day was too hot, and the Mouse said it was too cold.

They came grumbling down to the kitchen, where

---

[1] the day before — *зд.* позавчера

[2] the day before that (day) — *зд.* два дня тому назад

[3] the day before that (day) — *зд.* три дня тому назад

[4] jumped for joy [dʒɔɪ] — запрыгали от радости

[5] had both [bouθ] got out of bed on the wrong side — оба встали с левой ноги (были в плохом настроении)

the good little Red Hen was working happily about the house.

"Who'll get some sticks for the fire?" she asked.

"*I* shan't," said the Cock.

"*I* shan't," said the Mouse.

"Then I'll do it myself," said the little Red Hen. So off she ran to get the sticks.

"And now, who'll fill the kettle from the spring?" she asked.

"*I* shan't," said the Cock.

"*I* shan't," said the Mouse.

"Then I'll do it myself," said the little Red Hen. And off she ran to the spring to fill the kettle.

"And who'll get the breakfast ready?" she asked, as she put the kettle on to boil.

"*I* shan't," said the Cock.

"*I* shan't," said the Mouse.

"Then I'll do it myself," said the little Red Hen.

All breakfast time the Cock and the Mouse quarrelled and grumbled.

"Who'll clear the table?" asked the poor little Red Hen.

"*I* shan't," said the Cock.

"*I* shan't," said the Mouse.

"Then I'll do it myself," said the little Red Hen. So she cleared everything away, swept up the floor and brushed up the fire-place.

"And now, who'll help me to make the beds?"

"*I* shan't," said the Cock.

"*I* shan't," said the Mouse.

"Then I'll make the beds by myself," said the little Red Hen. And she went away upstairs.

But the lazy Cock and the lazy Mouse each sat down

in a comfortable armchair by the fire, and soon fell fast asleep.

Just at this time the big bad Fox was going up the hill. Then he walked into the garden of the lovely little house and peeped in at the window. "Rat-tat-tat. Rat-tat-tat," the Fox knocked at the door.

"Who can that be?" said the Mouse and half opened his eyes.

"Go and look for yourself, if you want to know," said the rude Cock.

"It's the postman perhaps,"[1] thought the Mouse, "and he may have a letter to me." So he did not wait to see who it was, but lifted the latch and opened the door.

As soon as he opened it, the big bad Fox jumped in, with a cruel smile upon his face!

"Oh! oh! oh!" squeaked the Mouse, and he tried to run up the chimney.

"Doodle doodle do!"[2] screamed the Cock, as he jumped on the back of the biggest arm-chair.

But the Fox only laughed. He caught the little Mouse by the tail, and pooped him into the sack, then he caught the Cock by the neck and pooped him in too.

Then the poor little Red Hen ran quickly downstairs to see what all the noise was about, and the Fox caught her and put her into the sack with the others. Then he took a long piece of string out of his pocket and tied the sack with it. After that he threw the sack over his back, and off he went down the hill.

---

[1] it's the postman ['poustmən] perhaps [pə'hæps] — может быть, это почтальон

[2] Doodle doodle do! — *зд.* Кукареку!

"Oh, I wish I hadn't been so rude,"[1] said the Cock.

"Oh, I wish I hadn't been so lazy,"[2] said the Mouse.

"It's never too late to mend,"[3] said the little Red Hen. And don't be too sad. See, I have my little workbag here, and in it there is a pair of scissors, a little thimble, and a needle and a thread.[4] Very soon you will see what I am going to do."

Now the sun was very hot, and soon Mr. Fox began to feel that his sack was very heavy. At last he decided to lie down under a tree and sleep for a little while. So he threw the sack down and very soon fell fast asleep.

As soon as the little Red Hen heard that the Fox was snoring, she took out her scissors, and cut a little hole in the sack.

"Quick," she whispered to the Mouse, "creep through this hole, then run as fast as you can and bring back a stone just as large as yourself."

Out went the Mouse, and soon he came back with the stone. It was heavy, and he had to drag it after him.

"Push it in here," said the little Red Hen, and the Mouse quickly pushed it into the sack.

---

[1] Oh, I wish I hadn't been so rude [ru:d]. — Ох, как жаль, что я был таким грубым.

[2] Oh, I wish I hadn't been so lazy. — Ох, как жаль, что я был таким ленивым.

[3] It's never too late to mend. — Исправиться никогда не поздно (*англ. пословица*).

[4] a pair [pɛə] of scissors ['sɪzəz], a little thimble ['θɪmbl], and a needle and a thread [θred] — ножницы, маленький напёрсток, иголка с ниткой

Then the little Red Hen cut the hole larger, and soon the Cock was able to creep through it.[1]

"Quick," she said, "run and get a stone as big as yourself."

Out flew the Cock, and soon he came back with a big stone, which he pushed into the sack.

Then the little Red Hen crept out, got a stone as big as herself, and pushed it into the sack. Next she put on her thimble, took out her needle and thread, and sewed up the hole as quickly as ever she could.

When that was done, the Cock, and the Mouse and the little Red Hen ran home very fast. They shut the door after them, locked it and shut the shutters.[2]

The big bad Fox lay fast asleep under the tree for some time, but at last he woke up.

"Dear, dear!"[3] he said, "I have slept a long time. I must hurry home."

The big bad Fox grumbled to himself as he went down the hill, till he came to the river. Splash! One foot went in. Splash! The other foot went in, but the stones in the sack were so heavy that at the very next step Mr. Fox fell down into a deep pool. He couldn't get out of it, so he was never seen again. And the four bad little foxes had to go to bed without any supper.

But the Cock and the Mouse never grumbled again. They lit the fire, filled the kettle, made the breakfast, and did all the work, while the good little

---

[1] the Cock was able to creep through it — Петух смог пролезть через неё (*дырку*)

[2] shut the shutters [ˈʃʌtəz] — закрыли ставни

[3] Dear, dear! — *зд.* Ох! (*междометие, выражающее огорчение и удивление*)

Red Hen had a holiday. She sat resting in the big armchair.

No foxes ever troubled them[1] again, and they are still living happily in the little house with the green door and the green shutters, which stands on the hill.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "We had nothing to eat yesterday."
2) "Over the hill there I see a house."
3) "Then I'll do it myself."
4) "Go and look for yourself if you want to know."
5) "It's never too late to mend."
6) "Run and get a stone as big as yourself."
7) "Dear, dear I have slept a long time."

2 Say *true* or *false*.

1) One morning the four bad little foxes came to the lovely little house on the hill.
2) The lovely little house had two broken windows.

---

[1] no foxes ever troubled ['trʌbld] them — никакие лисы их больше не беспокоили

3) These four bad little foxes said, “Oh, Father, we are so hungry.”
4) The big bad Fox got out of the bed on the wrong side that morning.
5) He said in a big gruff voice, “I’ll take my sack, and I’ll go to that house, and put the Cock, and the Mouse and the Little Red Hen into my sack.”
6) That morning the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen were working happily in the kitchen.

3 Put the Little Red Hen’s questions in the right order.

1) “Who’ll fill the kettle from the spring?”
2) “Who’ll help me to make the beds?”
3) “Who’ll get some sticks for the fire?”
4) “Who’ll clear the table?”
5) “Who’ll get the breakfast ready?”

4 Match three parts of the sentences. Say what the big bad Fox did in the lovely little house.

The big bad Fox	peeped in	into the sack with the others.
	knocked	with a long piece of string.
	jumped	by the neck.
	caught the Mouse	at the window.
	caught the Cock	over the back.
	put the Little Red Hen	at the door.
	tied the sack	by the tail.
	threw the sack	in.

5 Match two parts of the sentences. Say how the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen got out of the bad big Fox's sack.

1) The little Red Hen took out her scissors	and the Cock crept through it.
2) The Mouse crept through the hole	and the Little Red Hen had a holiday.
3) The Little Red Hen made the hole larger	and came back with a big stone.
4) The Cock flew	and shut the door after them, locked it and shut the shutters.
5) The Little Red Hen crept out	and cut a little hole in the sack.
6) The Little Red Hen took out her needle and thread	and got a stone as big as herself.
7) They ran home very fast	and came back with a heavy stone.
8) The Cock and the Mouse did all the work,	and sewed up the hole.

6 Say what happened to the bad big Fox. Complete the sentences.

1) At last the big bad Fox woke up and said, "Dear, dear! I've slept _______ ."
   a) a little
   b) a long time
   c) very well

2) He grumbled as he came _______ .

a) to the hill,
b) home
c) to the river

3) Mr. Fox fell down and into a deep pool and couldn't ______ .
a) swim
b) stand up
c) get out

4) The four bad little foxes had to ______ .
a) go to bed without supper
b) go and look for their Father
c) ask the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen to give them something to eat

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Find the words opposite in meaning to the italicized words. Complete the sentences.

1) The four bad little foxes were hungry and *thin*, and the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen were nice and ____________ .
2) The Little Red Hen was *hardworking*, and the Cock and the Mouse were ____________ .
3) The Little Red Hen was *polite*, and the Cock was ____________ .
4) When the sack was empty, it was *light* but when there were big stones in it, it was ____________ .
5) The Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen couldn't run *slowly* because the big bad Fox could catch them. They had to run ____________ .

2 **Complete the sentences. The words word from the box will help you.**

some something somebody any anything anybody no nothing nobody

1) The big bad Fox peeped in at the window to see if there was ____________ in the lovely little house.
2) The four bad little foxes had to go to bed without ____________ supper.
3) "There are ____________ sticks for the fire. Who will get ____________ sticks?"
4) "Is there ____________ to eat today? We had ____________ to eat yesterday," said one bad little fox.
5) ____________ wanted to help the Little Red Hen about the house.
6) "I'll take my sack and I'll go up that hill and into that house. You will have ____________ to eat today."
7) "There is ____________ at the door. Who can that be?" said the Mouse.

3 **Match three parts of the sentences.**

1) Red Riding-Hood's grandmother		in a gruff voice.

2) Baby Bear		in a horrible angry voice.
3) Johnny-cake	spoke	in a weak voice.
4) The wolf Johnny-cake met		in a very loud voice.
5) The bad big Fox		in a shrill voice.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) "I'll put the Cock and the Mouse and the Little Red Hen ______ my sack."
2) But what was happening ______ the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen all this time?
3) The good Little Red Hen was working happily ______ the house.
4) The big bad Fox took a piece of string ______ his pocket and tied the sack ______ it.
5) "Creep ______ this hole", said the Little Red Hen.
6) Next she put ______ her thimble, took ______ her needle and thread and sewed up the hole.

5 Working about the house. Match questions with answers.

What did the Little Red Hen do with:	She:
1) the sticks?	swept it.
2) the kettle?	sewed up the hole.
3) the breakfast?	filled and boiled it.
4) the table after breakfast?	made a fire.
5) the floor?	cut a hole.
6) the beds?	got it ready.
7) the scissors?	made them.
8) the needle and thread?	cleared it.

6 Choose the right tense.

works
is working

1) Look! The Little Red Hen ______________ happily about the house.
2) But she always ________________ about the house.

are grumbling and quarrelling
grumble and quarrel

3) Listen! The Cock and the Mouse ______________ .
4) Oh, they often _____________ , especially if they get out of bed on the wrong side.

make the beds
is making the beds

5) Who ______________ now?
6) The Cock and the Mouse never ______________ .

are sitting
sit

7) Breakfast is over. The Cock and the Mouse ______________ in a comfortable chair.
8) They always ______________ in a comfortable chair after breakfast.

7 Which of the verbs in each line is the Odd One Out?

1) came, made, walked, had
2) got, caught, went, decided
3) screamed, ran, heard, woke up
4) said, lifted, took, cut

✋ *Discussing the Fairy-tale*

1 Say why:

1) the house of the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen was lovely, and the house of the big bad Fox was very bad.
2) the Cock didn't open the door when the big bad Fox knocked.
3) the Mouse opened the door.
4) the big bad Fox laughed when he caught the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen.
5) the Little Red Hen had her little workbag with her.
6) the four bad little foxes had to go to bed without supper that night.

2 Prove that:

1) the Cock was rude.
2) the Cock and the Mouse were lazy.
3) the Little Red Hen was kind and hard-working.

3 What's your opinion?

1) Why did the Cock and the Mouse always quarrel and grumble?
2) Why did the Little Red Hen work happily about the house?
3) "It's never too late to mend," said the Little Red Hen. What did she mean? Did the Cock and the Mouse mend?
4) Why did foxes never trouble the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen?

4 Tell your classmates the fairy-tale. Use the outline below.

a) The four little foxes in their bad house are hungry.
b) The big bad Fox takes his sack and goes to the lovely little house.
c) The Little Red Hen works happily about the house.
d) The Cock and the Mouse quarrel and grumble.
e) The Mouse opens the door to the big bad Fox.
f) The big bad Fox puts the Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen into his sack.
g) The Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen get out of the big bad Fox's sack.
h) The big bad Fox can't get out of the deep pool.
i) The Cock, the Mouse and the Little Red Hen come back home and live happily.



MR. MIACCA

Tommy Grimes was sometimes a good boy and sometimes a bad boy, and when he was a bad boy, his mother often said to him:

"Now Tommy, be a good boy and please don't go out of the street,[1] or Mr. Miacca will catch you and take you away."

But one day Tommy was a very bad boy and he went out of the street. He turned the corner, and there was Mr.

[1] don't go out of the street — *зд.* не уходи никуда с нашей улицы

Miacca! Mr. Miacca caught him and popped him into his bag, upside down,[1] and carried him away to his house.

When Mr. Miacca came home, he pulled Tommy out of the bag and felt his arms and legs.[2]

"You're not fat enough," he said, "but you're all I've got for supper, so I'll eat you. But, oh dear, I haven't any herbs to put in the water, and you'll not be tasty without herbs. I'll call my wife." He called to Mrs. Miacca, "Sally, come here for a minute."

Mrs. Miacca came in from the next room and said:

"What do you want, my dear?"

"Oh, here's a little boy I've brought home for supper," said Mr. Miacca, "but I've forgotten the herbs. I'll just go out and fetch them while you look after him for me."

"All right, my love," said Mrs. Miacca.

Tommy Grimes looked at Mrs. Miacca and asked:

"Does Mr. Miacca always have little boys for supper?"

"Mostly, my dear, if the little boys are bad enough and he can catch them," said Mrs. Miacca.

"Don't you have anything else except boys?" asked Tommy. "Don't you ever have any pudding?"

"Ah, I love pudding," said Mrs. Miacca, "but I don't often get any."

"My mother is making a pudding today," said Tommy Grimes, "and I'm sure she'll give you some if I ask her. Shall I run home and get some?"

"That's a kind boy," said Mrs. Miacca, "only don't be too long away and be sure to be back before suppertime.[3]"

---

[1] upside ['ʌpsaɪd] down — вниз головой

[2] felt his arms and legs — ощупал ему руки и ноги

[3] be sure to be back before suppertime — *зд.* (ты) должен вернуться до ужина

So Tommy ran off and soon was safe at home. He was very glad that he had run away from Mr. Miacca. For many days he was as good as could be, and never went round the corner of the street.

But Tommy Grimes couldn't always be good, and one day he went round the corner of the street again. Mr. Miacca caught him again and popped him into his bag, upside down.

When Mr. Miacca got home, he pulled Tommy out of the bag. "I remember you," said Mr. Miacca. "You're the little boy who played a trick on me[1] and my wife. You left us without any supper. Well, you will not do it again. I'll keep an eye on you myself.[2] Creep under the sofa and I'll sit on it, and watch the pot till it boils."

So poor Tommy Grimes crept under the sofa and Mr. Miacca sat on it and watched the pot till it boiled. They waited and waited and waited, Mr. Miacca on the sofa and Tommy under it, but still the pot didn't boil. At last Mr. Miacca got tired of waiting,[3] and he said:

"Here, you under the sofa. I'm not going to wait any longer.[4] Put out your leg, and I'll see that you don't run away."

But Tommy guessed what Mr. Miacca was going to do, and he took the leg of the sofa, which was loose,[5] and stuck it out. Mr. Miacca took an axe, chopped the leg

---

[1] who played a trick on me — который сыграл со мной шутку (обманул меня)

[2] I'll keep an eye on you myself. — Я сам за тобой послежу.

[3] got tired of waiting — (ему) надоело ждать

[4] to wait any longer — больше ждать

[5] took the leg of the sofa, which was loose — взял ножку дивана, которая слабо держалась (шаталась)

off and threw it in the pot. Then he went into the next room to look for Mrs. Miacca. While he was there, Tommy crept from under the sofa and ran out of the door and straight home.

This time Tommy had had such a fright that he was always a good boy after it. He never went round the corner again till he was old enough to go alone.

Exercises

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "Now, be a good boy and please don't go out of the street."
2) "But, oh dear, I haven't any herbs to put in the water."
3) "I love pudding but I don't often get any."
4) "Shall I run home and get some?"
5) "You left us without supper."

2 Say *true*, *false* or *I don't know*.

1) Mr. Miacca always had boys for supper.
2) Mr. Miacca didn't like pudding.
3) Tommy's mother was making a pudding when Tommy was in Mr. Miacca's house.
4) Tommy wanted to run home and get some pudding for Mrs. Miacca.

5) Tommy was back in Mr. Miacca's house before supper.
6) Tommy played a trick on Mrs. Miacca.

3 **Put the phrases below in the right order. Say what Mr. Miacca did after he caught Tommy.**

Mr. Miacca:
1) pulled Tommy out of his bag.
2) went out to fetch some herbs.
3) felt Tommy's arms and legs.
4) called his wife.
5) popped Tommy into his bag.
6) asked his wife to look after Tommy.
7) carried Tommy to his house.

4 **Match two parts of the sentences. Say how Tommy ran away from Mr. Miacca again.**

1) Poor Tommy crept under the sofa and	Tommy crept from under the sofa and ran straight home.
2) The pot didn't boil and	Mr. Miacca sat on it.
3) Tommy guessed what Mr. Miacca was going to do and	chopped the leg off and threw it in the pot.
4) Mr. Miacca took an axe and	took the leg of the sofa and stuck it out.
5) Mr. Miacca went into the next room and	Mr. Miacca got tired of waiting.

5 Answer the questions:

1) What kind of boy was Tommy Grimes?
2) What did his mother ask him not to do?
3) One day Mr. Miacca caught him, didn't he?
4) What did Mr. Miacca want to put in the water to make Tommy tasty?
5) Whom did he ask to look after Tommy while he went out to fetch the herbs?
6) What did Tommy promise to bring Mrs. Miacca?
7) Could Tommy always be good or did he go round the corner of the street again?
8) Did Mr. Miacca remember Tommy when he caught him again?
9) Where did Mr. Miacca sit while he watched the pot till it boiled. Where was Tommy?
10) What did Mr. Miacca ask Tommy to do when he got tired of waiting? What did Tommy stick out?
11) What did Mr. Miacca do with the leg of the sofa?
12) When did Tommy creep from under the sofa and run home?
13) Tommy was always a good boy after it, wasn't he?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Find a word in the right column that can help you to read a word in the left column.

herb	guest
trick	right
guess	full
pull	her
fright	stick

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box will help you.

carried safe look after fat creep tasty boil fright

1) Tommy ran home and soon was ___________ at home.
2) " ___________ under the sofa and I'll sit on it", said Mr. Miacca.
3) They waited and waited, Mr. Miacca on the sofa and Tommy under it, but still the pot didn't ___________ .
4) Mr. Miacca caught him and popped him into his bag and ___________ him to his house.
5) The time Tommy had had such a ___________ that he was always a good boy after it.
6) Mr. Miacca felt Tommy's arms and legs and said, "You are not ___________ enough."
7) "You'll not be ___________ without herbs", Mr. Miacca said.
8) "I'll just go and fetch the herbs while you ___________ him", said Mr. Miacca.

3 Say what Mr. Miacca was going to do. Use the phrases:

- to call his wife

- to fetch some herbs
- to put the herbs in the water
- to eat Tommy
- to keep an eye on Tommy
- to sit on the sofa and watch the pot till it boiled

4 Use the verbs in brackets in the proper tense.

1) Tommy's mother often said to him, "Now Tommy, don't go out of the street, or Mr. Miacca (catch) you.
2) Mr. Miacca (catch) him and (carry) him away to his house.
3) "Here's a little boy I (bring) home for supper", said Mr. Miacca.
4) "My mother (make) a pudding today", said Tommy.
5) "I love pudding", said Mrs. Miacca, "but I (not make) it often".

5 Complete the sentences. Put the adverbs in the right place.

1) When Tommy was a bad boy, his mother said to him, "Now Tommy, be a good boy". (often)
2) "Does Mr. Miacca have boys for supper?" (always)
3) "Ah, I love pudding", said Mrs. Miacca, "but I don' t get any". (often)
4) For many days he was as good as could be, and he went round the corner of the street. (never)
5) But Tommy Grimes couldn't be good. (always)

6 Use *a / an, the.*

1) Mr. Miacca called to Mrs. Miacca, "Sally, come here for _______ minute."
2) "Here's _______ little boy I've brought home for _______ supper."
3) "You are _______ little boy who left us without _______ supper."
4) "You'll not be tasty without _______ herbs."
5) Tommy took _______ leg of the sofa, which was loose, and stuck it out.
6) Mr. Miacca took _______ axe, chopped _______ leg off and threw it in _______ pot.

Discussing the Fairy-tale

1 Say why:

1) Tommy went out of the street.
2) Mr. Miacca popped Tommy into his bag.
3) Mrs. Miacca came into the room.
4) she didn't often get any pudding.
5) she allowed Tommy to run home.
6) Mr. Miacca caught Tommy again.
7) he put him under the sofa.
8) Mr. Miacca asked Tommy to put out his leg.
9) Tommy never went round the corner again.

2 What's your opinion?

1) Mrs. Miacca said, "My dear, my love". Was she kind or cruel? Why could Tommy play a trick on her?

2) Why did Mr. Miacca catch bad boys? Why could Tommy play a trick on him too?
3) Tommy was always a good boy after it. Is it difficult to be always good? What does your mother say when you are not good? What may happen if you don't do what your mother says?

3 **Tell your classmates how Tommy Grimes became a good boy.**

Список личных имён и географических названий

Goldilocks ['gouldɪlɔks] Златовласка
Grimes [graɪmz] Граймс
Jack [dʒæk] Джек
Miacca [mɪ'ækə] Майка
Shanklin ['ʃæŋklɪn] Шэнклин
Smith [smɪθ] Смит
Tommy ['tɔmɪ] Томми

VOCABULARY

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — прилагательное
adv adverb — наречие
cj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — существительное
num numeral — числительное
pl plural — множественное число
pron pronoun — местоимение
prep preposition — предлог
v verb — глагол

A

acorn ['eɪkɔ:n] *n* жёлудь
across [ə'krɔs] *adv* на ту сторону; на той стороне
adventure [əd'ventʃə] *n* приключение
afterwards ['ɑ:ftəwədz] *adv* впоследствии, потом, позже
alive [ə'laɪv] *a* живой
alone [ə'loun] *a* один, одинокий
asleep [ə'sli:p] *a* спящий
fall asleep заснуть
axe [æks] *n* топор

B

baby ['beɪbɪ] *n* малютка, детёныш
back [bæk] *n* спина
bake [beɪk] *v* печь(ся)
bank [bæŋk] *n* вал, насыпь; берег (реки)
bark [bɑ:k] *v* лаять
barn [bɑ:n] *n* амбар; сарай; гумно
basket ['bɑ:skɪt] *n* корзина
beside [bɪ'saɪd] *prep* рядом с; около, близ
bind (bound, bound) [baɪnd] ([baund], [baund]) *v* связывать
bite (bit, bitten) [baɪt] ([bɪt], [bɪt(ə)n]) *v* кусать(ся)
bite off откусывать
blanket ['blænkɪt] *n* шерстяное одеяло
bleat [bli:t] *v* блеять
boil [bɔɪl] *v* кипятить(ся), варить(ся)
bottom ['bɔtəm] *n* дно; низ

bowl [boul] *n* миска, чаша, чашка

breath [breθ] *n* дыхание

be out of breath запыхаться, задыхаться

brick [brɪk] *n* кирпич

broken ['broukən] *n* сломанный, разбитый

brush [brʌʃ] *v* чистить

brush up приводить в порядок

bundle [bʌndl] *n* связка, вязанка, охапка

burn (burnt, burnt) [bə:n] ([bə:nt], [bə:nt]) *v* гореть; сжигать

butcher ['butʃə] *n* мясник

C

call [kɔ:l] *v* называть, давать имя; заходить, навещать; звать, окликать

call for заходить за

call out выкрикивать, кричать

careful ['kɛəful] *a* бережный, внимательный, осторожный

carefully ['kɛəfulɪ] *adv* бережно, внимательно, осторожно

carry ['kærɪ] *v* нести, относить

cave [keɪv] *n* пещера

cellar ['selə] *n* погреб; подвал

chase [tʃeɪs] *n* преследование, погоня; *v* гнаться, преследовать

give chase гнаться, преследовать

give up the chase прекратить погоню

chance [tʃɑ:ns] *n* случай; случайность

cherry ['tʃerɪ] *n* вишня

chimney ['tʃɪmnɪ] *n* труба, дымоход

chocolate ['tʃɔkəlɪt] *n* шоколад; *a* шоколадный

chop [tʃɔp] *n* удар; *v* рубить

chop off отрубить

clear [klɪə] *v* очищать(ся), расчищать

clear the table убирать со стола

cloak [klouk] *n* мантия, плащ

comfortable ['kʌmfətəbl] *a* удобный, уютный; довольный

cook [kuk] *n* кухарка, повар; *v* жарить(ся), варить(ся); стряпать, приготовлять пищу

cool [ku:l] *v* охлаждать(ся); остывать; *a* прохладный

corn [kɔ:n] *n* зерно; зёрнышко

creep (crept, crept) [kri:p] ([krept], [krept]) *v* ползать; красться, подкрадываться

creep out выползать

crow [krou] *v* кричать кукареку

cry [kraɪ] *v* кричать, плакать

cry out восклицать, выкликать, объявлять во всеуслышание

cunning ['kʌnɪŋ] *a* хитрый, коварный

curl [kə:l] *n* локон, завиток; *pl* вьющиеся волосы

current ['kʌrənt] *n* смородина

cut (cut, cut) [kʌt] ([kʌt], [kʌt]) *v* резать; косить, жать; убирать урожай

cut open распороть

D

dark [dɑ:k] *a* тёмный

get dark темнеть

dear [dɪə] *a* дорогой, милый; *int* выражает сожаление, огорчение, удивление

decide [dɪ'saɪd] *v* решать

deep [di:p] *a* глубокий

dig (dug, dug) [dɪg] ([dʌg], [dʌg]) *v* копать, рыть; выкапывать, раскапывать

downstairs ['daun'stɛəz] *adv* вниз (по лестнице); внизу, в нижнем этаже

drag [dræg] *v* (с усилием) тащить(ся), волочить(ся); тянуть

dreadful ['dredful] *a* ужасный, страшный

E

eat (ate, eaten) [i:t] ([et], ['i:t(ə)n]) *v* есть

ever ['evə] *adv* всегда, когда-либо

for ever навсегда, навечно

except [ɪk'sept] *prep* исключая, кроме

F

fair [fɛə] *n* ярмарка

far [fɑ:] *adv* далеко

far away далеко

farther ['fɑ:ðə] *adv* дальше, далее

farm-yard ['fɑ:mjɑ:d] *n* двор фермы

fast [fɑ:st] *adv* крепко, сильно, прочно; быстро, скоро

fat [fæt] *a* жирный; упитанный, толстый; откормленный

feel (felt, felt) [fi:l] ([felt], [felt]) *v* чувствовать; ощупывать, трогать

fence [fens] *n* забор, изгородь, ограда

fetch [fetʃ] *v* принести; достать; сходить за

fill [fɪl] *v* наполнять, заполнять

fire-place ['faɪəpleɪs] *n* камин, очаг

first [fə:st] *n* начало; *adv* сперва, сначала

at first сперва, сначала

flour ['flauə] *n* мука

fly [flaɪ] *v* летать
follow ['fɔlou] *v* следовать
follow smb's advice следовать совету
fortune ['fɔːtʃən] *n* счастье, удача
fox [fɔks] *n* лиса
fresh [freʃ] *a* свежий
fright [fraɪt] *n* испуг
get a fright напугаться
in a fright с испугу
frighten ['fraɪtn] *v* пугать
furze [fəːz] *n зд.* хворост

G

get (got, got) [get] ([gɔt], [gɔt]) *v* становиться, делаться; добираться
get angry (рас)сердиться
get up вставать
gingerbread ['dʒɪnʒəbred] *n* пряник
gnaw [nɔː] *n* грызть, глодать
golden ['gouldən] *a* золотой, золотистый
grass [grɑːs] *n* трава
grain [greɪn] *n* зерно, зёрнышко
great [greɪt] *a* большой, великий
grow (grew, grown) [grou] ([gruː], [groun]) *v* расти
gruff [grʌf] *a* грубый, хриплый (*о голосе*)
grumble ['grʌmbl] *v* ворчать
guess [ges] *n* предположение, догадка; *v* угадывать, отгадывать; предполагать

H

happen (to) [hæp(ə)n] *v* случаться с кем-то / чем-то
hard [hɑːd] *a* жёсткий, твёрдый; трудный, тяжёлый
hay [heɪ] *n* сено
haystack ['heɪstæk] *n* стог сена
hear (heard, heard) [hɪə] ([həːd], [həːd]) *v* слышать
heavy ['hevɪ] *a* тяжёлый
herb [həːb] *n* трава, растение
hide (hid, hidden) [haɪd] ([hɪd], ['hɪd(ə)n]) *v* прятаться
hit (hit, hit) [hɪt] ([hɪt], [hɪt]) *v* ударять
hoe [hou] *n* мотыга; *v* мотыжить, разрыхлять (землю)
hole [houl] *n* дыра, отверстие; нора
hood [hud] *n* капюшон, шапочка
holiday ['hɔlədɪ] *n* праздник; отпуск, каникулы
horrible ['hɔrɪbl] *a* страшный, ужасный; противный, отвратительный
horse [hɔːs] *n* лошадь
huff [hʌf] *v* дуть; раздуваться
hug [hʌg] *v* крепко обнимать
hunter ['hʌntə] *n* охотник

hurry ['hʌrɪ] *n* спешка; *v* спешить

I

idea [aɪ'dɪə] *n* мысль
instead [in'sted] *adv* вместо; взамен
instead of this вместо этого

J

jacket ['dʒækɪt] *n* куртка, жакет
joy [dʒɔɪ] *n* радость, удовольствие
just [dʒʌst] *adv* точно, как раз

K

kettle ['ketl] *n* чайник
keyhole ['ki:houl] *n* замочная скважина
kill [kɪl] *v* убивать
king [kɪŋ] *n* король
knife [naɪf] *n* нож
knock [nɔk] *v* стучать(ся), ударять(ся); бить, сбивать

L

lady ['leɪdɪ] *n* дама, госпожа
lap [læp] *v* лакать
last ['lɑ:st] *a* последний, прошлый
at last наконец
latch [lætʃ] *n* щеколда, задвижка
late [leɪt] *a* поздний
be late опоздать
later on позднее, после
laugh [lɑ:f] *v* смеяться
lazy ['leɪzɪ] *a* ленивый
lean [li:n] *v* наклонять(ся)
leave (left, left) [li:v] ([left], [left]) *v* покидать, уходить, уезжать
leg [leg] *n* нога (*от ступни*)
let (let, let) [let] ([let], [let]) *v* позволять, разрешать
lid [lɪd] *n* крышка
lie (lay, lain) [laɪ] ([leɪ], [leɪn]) *v* лежать
lift [lɪft] *v* поднимать
light[1] (lit, lit) [laɪt] ([lɪt], [lɪt]) *v* зажигать, освещать
light[2] [laɪt] *a* лёгкий
load [loud] *n* груз
lock [lɔk] *v* запирать, закрывать на ключ
look [luk] *v* смотреть
look around оглядываться
look for искать
loose [lu:s] *a* шатающийся; просторный, широкий
loud [laud] *a* громкий, звучный
lovely ['lʌvlɪ] *a* красивый, прекрасный

M

make (made, made) [meɪk] ([meɪd], [meɪd]) *v* делать; заставлять

be made of быть сделанным из

market ['mɑ:kɪt] *n* базар, рынок

meal [mi:l] *n* трапеза, еда

mean (meant, meant) [mi:n] ([ment], [ment]) *v* значить; иметь в виду

mew [mju:] *v* мяукать

miaow [mɪ(i:)'au] *n* мяуканье; *v* мяукать

mill [mɪl] *n* мельница

money ['mʌnɪ] *n* деньги

moo [mu:] *n* мычание; *v* мычать

most [moust] *n* наибольшее количество, большая часть

mostly ['moustlɪ] *adv* по большей части, главным образом

mouse [maus] *n* мышь

mouth [mauθ] *n* рот

mower ['mouə] *n* косец

N

neck [nek] *n* шея

needle ['ni:dl] *n* игла

knitting-needle вязальная игла; спица

nightcap ['naɪtkæp] *n* ночной колпак

night-dress ['naɪtdres] *n* ночная рубашка (*женская или детская*)

noise [nɔɪz] *n* шум, гам, грохот

make a noise поднимать шум; шуметь

nose [nouz] *n* нос

O

oak-tree ['ouktri:] *n* дуб

often [ɔ:fn] *adv* часто

once [wʌns] *adv* однажды

at once сразу

other ['ʌðə] *a* другой, другие

outrun (outran, outrun) [aut'rʌn] ([aut'ræn], [aut'rʌn]) *v* перегнать, опередить, обогнать

oven [ʌvn] *n* духовой шкаф, духовка

over ['ouvə] *prep* над

own [oun] *a* свой, собственный; родной

ox [ɔks] *n* бык

P

past [pɑ:st] *prep* мимо

paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа

peep [pi:p] *v* заглядывать; смотреть сквозь маленькое отверстие

perhaps [pə'hæps] *adv* возможно

pick[1] [pɪk] *v* собирать, снимать (плоды); срывать (цветы, фрукты)

pick[2] [pɪk] *n* кирка

piece [pi:s] *n* кусок

pig [pɪg] *n* поросёнок

pillow ['pɪlou] *n* подушка

pincers ['pɪnsəz] *n pl* клещи

please [pli:z] *v* нравиться; делать приятное, доставлять удовольствие
be pleased with smb / smth быть довольным кем-то / чем-то
pocket ['pɔkɪt] *n* карман
pool [pu:l] *n* омут; заводь
poor [pu:ə] *a* бедный, неимущий; плохой
pop [pɔp] *v* совать, всовывать
porridge ['pɔrɪdʒ] *n* каша (*овсянка*)
postman ['poustmən] *n* почтальон
pot [pɔt] *n* котелок, горшок
potato (potatoes) [pə'teɪtou] *n* картофелина (картофель)
pretty ['prɪtɪ] *a* хорошенький, прелестный
pudding ['pudɪŋ] *n* пудинг
puff [pʌf] *v* дуть
pull [pul] *v* тянуть, тащить
pull over натягивать
push [puʃ] *v* толкать; подвигать
put (put, put) [put] ([put], [put]) *v* класть, положить
put off откладывать
put out тушить (огонь)

Q

quarrel ['kwɔrəl] *v* ссориться
quarter ['kwɔ:tə] *n* четверть
quick [kwɪk] *a* быстрый, проворный; *adv* быстро, скоро; скорей
quiet ['kwaɪət] *a* спокойный, тихий

R

raise [reɪz] *v* поднимать
rat [ræt] *n* крыса
reach [ri:tʃ] *v* достигать
receive [rɪ'si:v] *v* принимать, получать
rest [rest] *n* отдых; *v* отдыхать
right [raɪt] *adv* прямо; точно, как раз
ripe [raɪp] *a* спелый
road [roud] *n* дорога
roadside ['roudsaɪd] *n* край дороги, обочина
robber ['rɔbə] *n* грабитель, разбойник
rocking-chair ['rɔkɪŋtʃɛə] *n* качалка
roll [roul] *v* катить(ся), вертеть(ся), вращать(ся)
roof [ru:f] *n* крыша, кровля
rope [roup] *n* верёвка, канат
rude [ru:d] *a* грубый
rumple ['rʌmpl] *v* мять, приводить в беспорядок

S

sack [sæk] *n* мешок
safe [seɪf] *a* надёжный; невредимый; сохранный; в безопасности
saucer ['sɔ:sə] *n* блюдце

save [seɪv] *v* спасать
scissors ['sɪzəz] *n pl* ножницы
scratch [skrætʃ] *v* царапать(ся); рыть когтями
scream [skri:m] *v* пронзительно кричать, вопить
seek (sought, sought) [si:k] ([sɔ:t], [sɔ:t]) *v* искать, разыскивать
seek one's fortune искать счастья
seem [si:m] *v* казаться
send (sent, sent) [send] ([sent], [sent]) *v* посылать, отправлять
set (set, set) [set] ([set], [set]) *v* помещать; устанавливать; усадить
set out отправиться, намереваться
sew (sewed, sewn) [sou] ([soud], [soun]) *v* шить, сшивать, пришивать, зашивать
shake (shook, shaken) [ʃeɪk] ([ʃuk], [ʃeɪk(ə)n]) *v* трясти(сь), встряхивать
sharp [ʃa:p] *a* острый; резкий (*о звуке*)
shoot (shot, shot) [ʃu:t] ([ʃɔt], [ʃɔt]) *v* стрелять
shoulder ['ʃouldə] *n* плечо; лопатка, лопаточная часть (*мясной туши*)
show (showed, shown) [ʃou] ([ʃoud], [ʃoun]) *v* показывать
shrill [ʃrɪl] *a* пронзительный, резкий
shut (shut, shut) [ʃʌt] ([ʃʌt], [ʃʌt]) *v* закрывать
shutter ['ʃʌtə] *n* ставень
side [saɪd] *n* сторона
sight [saɪt] *n* вид, зрелище
silly ['sɪlɪ] *a* глупый
since [sɪns] *prep* с
skin [skɪn] *n* кожа, шкура
sky [skaɪ] *n* небо
smell (smelt, smelt) [smel] ([smelt], [smelt]) *v* чувствовать запах, чуять; обонять
snap [snæp] *v* цапнуть, укусить; ухватиться
snore [snɔ:] *n* храп; *v* храпеть
soft [sɔft] *a* мягкий, нежный, ласковый; тихий (*о звуке*)
somewhere ['sʌmwɛə] *adv* где-нибудь
song [sɔŋ] *n* песня
sound [saund] *n* звук; *v* звучать
spade [speɪd] *n* лопата, заступ
splash [splæʃ] *n* плеск, всплеск
spoon [spu:n] *n* ложка
spring [spri:ŋ] *n* родник, ключ
squeak [skwi:k] *v* пищать; скрипеть
stairs [stɛəz] *n* лестница
start [sta:t] *v* начинать; открывать; отправляться, пускаться в путь
step [step] *n* ступенька; шаг; *v* шагать, ступать

stick [stɪk] *n* палка; *v* **(stuck, stuck)** ([stʌk], [stʌk]) втыкать, вкалывать, вонзать

stile [staɪl] *n* ступеньки для перехода через забор или стену; перелаз

straight [streɪt] *adv* прямо; *a* прямой

stranger ['streɪndʒə] *n* незнакомец, незнакомка

straw [strɔ:] *n* солома; *a* соломенный

string [strɪŋ] *n* верёвка, бечёвка

sure [ʃuə] *a* верный, несомненный; уверенный

be sure of быть уверенным в

surprise [sə'praɪz] *n* удивление; *v* удивлять, поражать

swallow ['swɔlou] *v* глотать, проглатывать

sweeping-brush ['swi:pɪŋbrʌʃ] *n* швабра

T

tap [tæp] *v* стучать, постукивать

taste [teɪst] *v* иметь вкус; пробовать (*на вкус*)

tasty ['teɪstɪ] *a* вкусный

thimble ['θɪmbl] *n* напёрсток

thread [θred] *n* нитка

thresh [θreʃ] *v* молотить

thresher ['θreʃə] *n* молотильщик

through [θru:] *prep* через, сквозь, по

throw (threw, thrown) [θrou] ([θru:], [θroun]) *v* бросать

thud [θʌd] *n* глухой звук, стук

thunder ['θʌndə] *n* гром

tidy ['taɪdɪ] *a* аккуратный, опрятный

tie [taɪ] *v* завязывать

tin [tɪn] *n* форма для печенья; противень

tiny ['taɪnɪ] *a* очень маленький, крошечный

tiptoe ['tɪptou] *n* кончики пальцев ног, цыпочки

on tiptoe на цыпочках, украдкой

tired ['taɪəd] *a* усталый, утомлённый

get tired уставать

tonight [tə'naɪt] *adv* сегодня вечером

top [tɔp] *n* верхушка, вершина (*горы*); верхний конец, верх

towards [tə'wɔ:dz] *prep* к, по направлению к

trick [trɪk] *n* шалость; выходка; трюк

play a trick on smb сыграть шутку, обмануть кого-то

trouble ['trʌbl] *n* неприятности, горе, беда; *v* беспокоить(ся), тревожить(ся), мучить

turn [tə:n] *v* вращать(ся), вертеть(ся)

turn over перевёртываться

turnip [tə:nɪp] *n* репа
twinkle [twɪŋkl] *v* мигать
twinkling ['twɪŋklɪŋ] *n* мгновение

U

upstairs ['ʌp'stɛəz] *adv* вверх (по лестнице), наверх; вверху

V

village ['vɪlɪdʒ] *n* деревня

W

weak [wi:k] *a* слабый
well [wel] *adv* хорошо; *a* здоровый
wet [wet] *a* мокрый, влажный
wheat [wi:t] *n* пшеница
while [waɪl] *cj* пока, в то время как
for a little while недолго
whisper ['wɪspə] *v* говорить шёпотом, шептать
whole [houl] *a* весь, целый
wicked ['wɪkɪd] *a* злой
wide [waɪd] *a* широкий; *adv* широко
will [wɪl] *v модальный глагол; выражает намерение, решимость, обещание*
wish [wɪʃ] *v* желать
wonder ['wʌndə] *v* удивляться
wood [wud] *n* лес, роща; дрова
workbag ['wə:kbæg] *n* рабочая сумка; мешочек с рукоделием

Contents

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:
тел./факс: (495) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 104

Наш сайт: www.airis.ru

Вы можете приобрести наши книги
с 11[00] до 17[30], кроме субботы, воскресенья,
в киоске по адресу: пр. Мира, д. 106, тел.: (495) 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.
По всем вопросам обращаться
по тел.: (495) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

Учебное издание

АНГЛИЙСКИЕ НАРОДНЫЕ СКАЗКИ

Составление, адаптация текста и комментарий *В. А. Верхогляд*
Упражнения, словарь *Л. Т. Добровольской*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *О. В. Рыбакова*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *О. Б. Рытман*
Оформление обложки *В. В. Самсонов*
Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректоры *Е. Г. Богачева, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 08.08.07. Формат 60×90/16. Гарнитура «Таймс».
Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 8. Усл.-печ. л. 8.
Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 1431.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

Отпечатано в ОАО «Можайский полиграфический комбинат»
143200, г. Можайск, ул Мира, 93

You know funny adventures of a cheerful little boy, made of wood, don't you?
He is so much like Buratino from the famous book by A. Tolstoy!
This fascinating fairy tale by K. Kollodi is for you, boys and girls.
It's for your parents, too, if they wish to study English together with you.

Beginner
Elementary
Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate
Для продолжающих первого уровня

Intermediate
Для продолжающих второго уровня

Upper Intermediate
Для продолжающих третьего уровня

Advanced
Для совершенствующихся



9785811230839

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Английский клуб

Elementary

Карло Коллоди

Приключения ПИНОККИО



Karlo Kollodi

THE ADVENTURES OF PINOCCHIO

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Карло Коллоди

ПРИКЛЮЧЕНИЯ ПИНОККИО

Рекомендовано Управлением развития общего среднего образования Министерства Образования Российской Федерации

Книга для чтения на английском языке в 3—6 классах средних школ, лицеях, гимназиях, для начинающих самостоятельно изучать английский язык

МОСКВА

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
К60

Адаптация текста: *Г. К. Магидсон-Степанова*
Упражнения к тексту, словарь: *С. В. Монахов*
Иллюстрации: *Н. А. Савицкий*

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Коллоди, К.
К60 Приключения Пиноккио [= The Adventures of Pinocchio] / Карло Коллоди; [адаптация текста Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой; упражнения к тексту, слов. С. В. Монахова]. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 144 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-3083-9

Книга предназначена для домашнего чтения и рассчитана на учащихся 3–6 классов средних школ, лицеев, гимназий, а также может быть использована начинающими изучать английский язык самостоятельно. Книга содержит текст, упражнения и словарь.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-3083-9

THE ADVENTURES OF PINOCCHIO

СПИСОК ИМЕН СОБСТВЕННЫХ

Alidoro [əlɪˈdɒrəʊ] Алидоро (*кличка собаки*)
Antonio [ənˈtəʊnɪəʊ] Антонио (*мужское имя*)
Gepppetto [ʤəˈpetəʊ] Джеппетто (*мужское имя*)
Harlequin [ˈhɑ:lɪkwɪn] Арлекин (*персонаж кукольной комедии*)
Medoro [mɪˈdɒrəʊ] Медоро (*кличка собаки*)
Pinocchio [pɪˈnɒkɪəʊ] Пиноккио
Punchinello [ˌpʌntʃɪˈneləʊ] Полишинель (*персонаж кукольной комедии*)



MASTER ANTONIO FINDS A PIECE OF WOOD

All fairy-tales begin with the words: "Once upon a time there was..." This story also begins with the words: "Once upon a time there was a..."

"A king," my little readers will say.

No, children, not a king!

Once upon a time there was a piece of wood!

I can't say where the old man found this piece of wood, but it was in his room when our story began. The old man's name was Master Antonio.

Master Antonio wanted to make a new leg for his table. He took his axe and began to cut the piece of wood with the axe. Suddenly he heard a very small voice: "Do not hit me so hard!"

Master Antonio looked round the room. There was nobody there. He looked under the table — nobody. He looked under the bed — nobody. He opened the door of his room and looked into the street — there was nobody in the street. Again he took the axe and began to work with it.

"Oh! oh! Don't hit me, stop hitting me!" cried the same voice.

Master Antonio opened his mouth, he did not know what to do or what to say.

✌ ***Agree or disagree.***

1) All fairy-tales begin with the words: "Once upon a time there was a piece of wood".
2) Master Antonio wanted to make a new leg for his chair.
3) Master Antonio took his axe and began to cut the piece of wood.
4) When Master Antonio looked into the street, he saw nobody.

✍ ***Complete the sentences.***

1) Once upon a time there...
2) Master Antonio wanted...
3) Suddenly he heard...
4) Master Antonio opened his mouth...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did Master Atonio want to do?
2) What did Master Antonio hear suddenly?
3) What did he do when he heard the voice?
4) Why did Master Antonio open his mouth?



MASTER ANTONIO GIVES HIS PIECE OF WOOD TO HIS FRIEND GEPPETTO

At that moment his friend Geppetto came in.

"Good afternoon, Master Antonio," said Geppetto. "What do you want to make with that piece of wood?"

"A new leg for my table. What brought you to me, Geppetto?"

"My legs," said Geppetto. "Master Antonio, I came to ask something of you."

"I'm ready to help you!" answered Antonio.

"Will you give me a piece of wood? I want to make a nice wooden puppet. It must know how to dance and jump like an acrobat. I'll go from one town to another and show my puppet to the people. They will give me money to buy bread and milk. What do you think of my plan?"

Master Antonio was a kind old man. “Take this piece of wood,” he said to Geppetto, and gave it to him. Geppetto thanked Master Antonio and went home with the piece of wood.

Agree or disagree.

1) Master Antonio went to his friend Geppetto.
2) Geppetto wanted to make a new leg for his wooden puppet.
3) Geppetto wanted to go from one town to another and show his puppet to the people.
4) Master Antonio thanked Geppetto and went home.

Complete the sentences.

1) At that moment...
2) Geppetto wanted...
3) Master Antonio was a kind man and he...
4) Geppetto thanked Master Antonio and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Who came to Master Antonio one day?
2) What did Geppetto want to do with a piece of wood?
3) What did Geppetto want to do with his puppet?
4) Why did Geppetto thank Master Antonio?



GEPPETTO MAKES A WOODEN PUPPET

Geppetto lived in a small room. There were not many things in it. He had only one chair, a bed and an old table.

He put the piece of wood on the table, then he took a knife and began to make his puppet.

“What name shall I give him?” he said. “I think I’ll give him the name of Pinocchio. It is a very nice name.”

At first Geppetto made the puppet’s hair. Then he made his head and then his eyes.

When the eyes were ready, they looked at Geppetto. Then he began to make the nose. Suddenly the nose began to grow. And it grew, and grew, and grew. It became a very, very long nose. He cut the nose off, but it grew again. He cut it off again, and it grew again.

"This puppet wants a long nose," he said. Then he began to make the mouth. When the puppet's mouth was ready, it began to laugh at him.

"Stop it!" said Geppetto. But the mouth laughed and laughed.

"Stop it, I say!" cried Geppetto. The mouth stopped laughing, but the puppet put out its tongue. The tongue was very long.

Geppetto worked and worked. When the face was ready, he made the body, then the arms and the hands.

Suddenly somebody took Geppetto's cap off his head. He looked round and what did he see? He saw his cap on the puppet's head.

"Pinocchio! Give me back my cap, do you hear?"

But the cap was on Pinocchio's head, and he didn't want to give it back to his father Geppetto.

Geppetto was very angry with him, but he could do nothing. So he began to make the puppet's legs.

When the puppet's legs and feet were ready, Pinocchio hit his father on the nose with his foot.

"You are a very bad boy!" said Geppetto to him. "You are very, very bad!"

Then Geppetto began to teach him to walk. He showed him how to put one foot before the other.

Soon Pinocchio began first to walk and then to run round the room. Then he jumped into the street through the window and ran away from his father Geppetto.

Geppetto ran after him.

"Stop him, stop him!" cried Geppetto. A policeman tried to catch Pinocchio. But Pinocchio ran too fast.

Agree or disagree.

1) Geppetto lived in a small room.
2) Geppetto took an axe and began to make his puppet.
3) At first Geppetto made the body, then the arms and the legs.
4) When the puppet's mouth was ready it began to laugh at Geppetto.
5) Pinocchio ran away from his father.

Complete the sentences.

1) Geppetto took a knife and...
2) Suddenly the nose...
3) When the puppet's mouth was ready...
4) Pinocchio jumped into the street and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why did Geppetto give his puppet the name of Pinocchio?
2) What did Geppetto make first?
3) What happened when Geppetto made the puppet's mouth?
4) Why was Geppetto angry with Pinocchio?
5) What did Geppetto do when Pinocchio jumped into the street through the window?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 1).***

1 What did Master Antonio want to do?

a) Master Antonio wanted to make a new leg for his puppet.
b) Master Antonio wanted to make a wooden puppet.
c) Master Antonio wanted to make a new table.
d) Master Antonio wanted to make a new leg for his table.

2 What did Master Antonio do when he heard a small voice?

a) He looked for his axe.
b) He looked round the room.
c) He jumped into the street through the window.
d) He began to cut the piece of wood with his axe.

3 What did Geppetto want Master Antonio to do?

a) Geppetto wanted Master Antonio to make a new leg for his table.
b) Geppetto wanted Master Antonio to give him a piece of wood.
c) Geppetto wanted Master Antonio to give him an axe.
d) Geppetto wanted Master Antonio to go with him from one town to another.

4 Why did Geppetto want to have a wooden puppet?

a) He wanted to teach the puppet to walk.
b) He wanted to have a wooden puppet because he didn't have any children.
c) He wanted to go from one town to another and show the puppet to the people.
d) He wanted to show the puppet how he could dance and jump like an acrobat.

5 What did Geppetto have in his room?

a) There were many things in his room.
b) He had a chair, a bed and a table in his room.
c) He had an old bed, a table and two chairs in his room.
d) He had old chairs, a table and a bed in his room.

6 Why was Geppetto angry with Pinocchio?

a) Pinocchio took his cap and didn't want to give it back.
b) Pinocchio's nose began to grow.
c) Pinocchio began to laugh at him.
d) Pinocchio didn't know how to walk.

7 What did Pinocchio do when Geppetto taught him to walk?

a) Pinocchio took his cap and didn't want to give it back.
b) Pinocchio began to dance and jump like an acrobat.
c) Pinocchio hit Geppetto on the nose with his foot.
d) Pinocchio ran away from Geppetto.



PINOCCHIO WALKS ABOUT THE TOWN

Pinocchio walked about the town all day. When night came, it began to rain. Pinocchio was very cold. He was very hungry, too. There was not a man, a woman or a child in the street. There was not even a dog.

At last Pinocchio went to a house in the street and knocked at the door. "Somebody will open it," he thought.

A little old man looked out of the window and cried out to him:

"What do you want at this late hour?"

"Oh, please, please!" said Pinocchio. "Give me a little piece of bread!"

"Wait there, I'll be back in a minute," said the little old man. He thought: "It is one of those boys who like to knock at the doors of the houses and then run away."

Soon the window opened again and Pinocchio heard the voice of the same little old man:

"Come up to the window and hold out your cap."

Pinocchio took off his cap and held it out. And what do you think? A lot of water came down on him from the window.

✌ ***Agree or disagree.***

1) When night came, Pinocchio began to walk about the town.
2) When night came, Pinocchio was very cold and hungry.
3) A little old man opened the door and asked Pinocchio to come in.
4) Pinocchio held out his cap and the old man put some bread into the cap.

✍ ***Complete the sentences.***

1) When night came...
2) Pinocchio went to a house...
3) Pinocchio asked the old man...
4) When Pinocchio held out his cap...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did Pinocchio do all day?
2) Where did Pinocchio go at last?
3) What did Pinocchio ask the old man to do?
4) What happened when Pinocchio held out his cap?



PINOCCHIO'S FEET BURN AWAY

At last he found Geppetto's house. He went in and closed the door. He was cold and hungry. He was so hungry that he could not stand. So he sat down near the warm fireplace. He was very cold, so he put his feet near the fire. Soon he was warm, and he fell asleep. But his wooden feet were so near the fire that they burnt away. Pinocchio felt nothing; he slept and slept. Suddenly somebody knocked at the door. Pinocchio opened his eyes.

"Who is there?" asked Pinocchio.

"Me," answered a voice.

It was Geppetto's voice.

Pinocchio wanted to jump up and open the door, but he fell down.

"Open the door!" cried Geppetto from the street.

"Oh, Papa, I can't," answered the puppet.

"Why can't you?"

"Because I have no feet."

"Open the door, I tell you!" said Geppetto.

"I can't stand up! Oh, what shall I do? What shall I do?"

At last Geppetto jumped into the room through the window. He was very angry at first. But when he saw his Pinocchio without feet, he was very sorry for him. He took him in his arms and kissed him.

Agree or disagree.

1) When Pinocchio found Geppetto's house, he was very cold and hungry.
2) Pinocchio sat at the table and began to eat.
3) Pinocchio's feet were so near the fire that they burnt away.
4) Geppetto was very angry because he saw his Pinocchio without feet.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio couldn't stand up because...
2) Pinocchio's feet burnt away because...
3) Pinocchio opened his eyes because...
3) Geppetto was very sorry for Pinocchio because...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why couldn't Pinocchio stand up?
2) Why did Pinocchio's feet burn away?
3) Why did Pinocchio fall down?
4) Why was Geppetto very sorry for Pinocchio?



GEPPETTO SELLS HIS COAT AND BUYS A SCHOOL-BOOK FOR PINOCCHIO

Next morning Geppetto made new feet for Pinocchio. The puppet was very happy; he began to jump and dance round the room.

"I want to show you that I'm a good boy," he said to his father. "Tomorrow I'll go to school!"

"Good boy!" said Geppetto.

"But I must have some clothes."

Geppetto had no money. So he made Pinocchio nice clothes out of paper.

"I look like a gentleman now," said Pinocchio.

"Yes, you do," answered Geppetto. "But you know this: it is not good clothes but clean clothes that make the gentleman."

"Papa," said the puppet, "I can't go to school, I have no school-book."

"And I have no money," answered Geppetto. "I can't buy you a school-book. But wait a little, I'll be back in a minute."

Geppetto put on his old coat and ran out of the house. Soon he came back without the coat. But in his hand there was a school-book for Pinocchio.

"Where is your coat, Papa?" asked the puppet. "It's a very cold day."

"I sold it, because it was too warm for me," answered Geppetto. Pinocchio saw that his father was very kind. So he jumped up and kissed the old man again and again.

Agree or disagree.

1) Next morning Pinocchio made new feet for Geppetto.
2) Geppetto sold his coat because he had no money to buy a school-book for Pinocchio.
3) When Geppetto came home he had a school-book in his hand.
4) When Pinocchio saw that his father was very kind, he began to jump and dance round the room.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio was so happy that...
2) Geppetto put on his old coat and...
3) When Geppetto came back home he...
4) Gepetto said that he sold his coat because...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why was Pinocchio very happy next morning?
2) Why did Geppetto make Pinocchio's clothes out of paper?
3) Why couldn't Pinocchio go to school?
4) Why did Geppetto sell his coat?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 2).***

1 What happened when the night came?

a) It began to rain.
b) It began to snow.
c) An old man gave some bread to Pinocchio.
d) Pinocchio jumped into the room through the window.

2 What happened when Pinocchio held out his cap?

a) An old man put some bread into the cap.
b) It began to rain.
c) A lot of water came down on him from the window.
d) Pinocchio heard a very small voice.

3 What did Pinocchio do when he came back home?

a) He was so happy that he began to jump and dance round the room.
b) He was so happy that he jumped up and kissed his father.
c) He jumped out of the room through the window.
d) He fell asleep.

4 Why was Geppetto very sorry for Pinocchio?

a) Pinocchio's feet burnt away.
b) Pinocchio didn't have nice clothes.
c) Pinocchio was very cold and hungry.
d) A lot of water came down on Pinocchio.

5 Why did Pinocchio begin to jump and dance round the room next morning?

a) Geppetto bought a school-book for Pinocchio.
b) Geppetto made new feet for Pinocchio.
c) Geppetto made nice clothes for Pinocchio.
d) Geppetto put on his coat and ran out of the house.

6 Why did Geppetto sell his coat?

a) Geppetto's coat was too warm for him.

b) Geppetto's coat was very old and he wanted to buy a new one.
c) Geppetto didn't have money to buy nice clothes for Pinocchio.
d) Geppetto didn't have money to buy a school-book for Pinocchio.

7 What did Pinocchio do when he saw that his father was very kind?

a) Pinocchio jumped up and kissed Geppetto.
b) Pinocchio jumped into the room through the window.
c) Pinocchio began to jump and dance round the room.
d) Pinocchio took off his cap and held it out.



PINOCCHIO GOES TO THE THEATRE

Next morning Pinocchio went out of the house with the school-book under his arm. He wanted to go to school.

"At school today I'll learn to read," he thought. "Tomorrow I'll learn to write. And after that I'll learn how to count. When I know how to read, write and count, I'll begin to work. I'll soon have a lot of money. With my first money I'll buy a beautiful new coat for my Papa. He was so kind to me, he sold his coat and bought a school-book for me. I'll be kind to him, too."

Suddenly Pinocchio heard music at the end of the street. He stopped and listened.

He didn't know what to do. "Shall I go to school, or shall I go and listen to the music?" he thought. "Today I'll listen to the music and tomorrow I'll go to school," said the lazy boy. He

came up to a big wooden house. There was a big placard near the door. There were many people there. A man read the placard to the people:

"GREAT PUPPET THEATRE"

Pinocchio wanted to go to the puppet theatre but he had no money. How could he get money for a ticket? He wanted to see the show very much. He thought and thought. At last he knew what to do. He sold his school-book to one of the boys in the street and bought a ticket.

Pinocchio liked Harlequin and Punchinello very much. He laughed all the time. Suddenly Harlequin stopped and looked at Pinocchio.

"Is that Pinocchio?" he said to Punchinello.

"Yes, it's Pinocchio," cried Punchinello.

"It's Pinocchio! It's Pinocchio!" cried all the puppets. "It's our brother Pinocchio!"

Agree or disagree.

1) Next morning Pinocchio wanted to go to school.
2) Suddenly Pinocchio heard music at the end of the street.
3) Pinocchio didn't have money to buy a ticket.
4) Pinocchio sold his school-book to buy a coat for his father.

Complete the sentences.

1) Next Morning Pinocchio...
2) With his first money Pinocchio...
3) Suddenly he heard...
4) Pinocchio sold his school-book and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Who went out of the house with a school-book under his arm?

2) Who was so kind to Pinocchio?
3) Who read the placard to the people?
4) Who bought Pinocchio's school-book?



THE MASTER OF THE THEATRE WANTS TO BURN PINOCCHIO

At that moment the showman came in. He was a very big man. His beard was as black as ink. His mouth was big and round like a ball. His eyes were like two big red plates. He had a big whip in his hand. The puppets were very frightened.

"What is all this noise?" he cried.

"Please, please, sir!" said Pinocchio. "I am sorry! It wasn't me..."

"Stop talking! We'll talk to you after the show," said the showman.

After the show he said to Harlequin and Punchinello:

"Bring that puppet into the kitchen. I'll put him on the fire and make a good dinner."

The puppets brought Pinocchio to the kitchen.

"Papa, oh, Papa, come, oh, come, and save your Pinocchio!" he cried. "I don't want to burn. I don't want to burn in the fire!"

Agree or disagree.

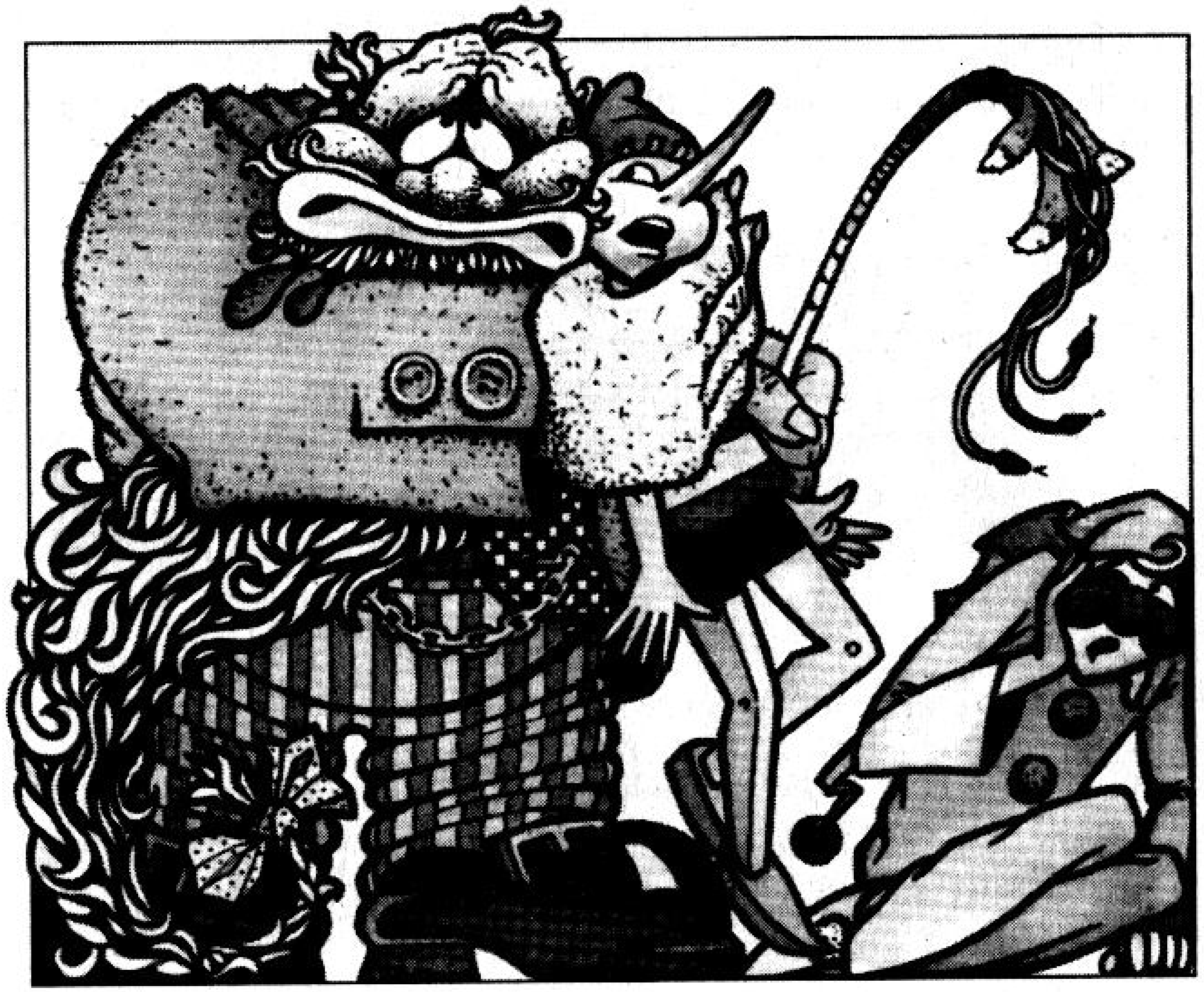
1) The showman's beard was as green as grass.
2) The showman had a school-book under his arm.
3) The showman asked Harlequin and Punchinello to bring Pinocchio to the kitchen.
4) The showman wanted to put Pinocchio on the fire and make a good dinner.

Complete the sentences.

1) The showman's mouth was...
2) The showman's eyes were...
3) The showman's beard was...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Was the showman's beard as black as ink or as green as grass?
2) Were the showman's eyes blue or red?
3) Did the showman speak to Harlequin and Punchinello before or after the show?
4) Did Pinocchio cry or laugh when the puppets brought him to the kitchen?



PINOCCHIO SAVES HIS FRIEND HARLEQUIN

The showman with the black beard was not a bad man. When he heard poor Pinocchio's cries: "I don't want to burn, I don't want to burn!" he was very sorry for him.

"Don't cry!" he said to Pinocchio. "Where are your papa and your mamma?"

"Papa is at home; but I have no Mamma," said Pinocchio.

"You poor little thing, you poor little thing!" said the showman. "But I have no wood, I can't make my dinner. What shall I do? I'll burn one of the puppets of my theatre. Come here, soldiers."

The door opened and two wooden soldiers came in.

The showman said to them:

"Take Harlequin and throw him on the fire."

Oh, that poor Harlequin! He was so frightened. He fell with his face to the ground. Pinocchio saw this and began to cry. The showman looked at Pinocchio and said:

"Stop crying! What do you want now?"

"Don't burn poor Harlequin, dear sir!"

"But I want to make my dinner."

"Then," cried Pinocchio, "Throw me on the fire!"

All the puppets heard Pinocchio's words and began to cry. The wooden soldiers cried, too.

At first the showman said nothing. Then suddenly he said to Pinocchio:

"You are a good boy! Come here and kiss me."

Pinocchio ran up to him and kissed him on the nose.

"Thank you, thank you very much!" said Pinocchio.

Harlequin jumped up from the floor and began to dance. When the puppets saw this, they all began to dance. And they danced and danced all night.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio said that he didn't want to burn.
2) Pinocchio said to the showman that he had no Mamma and no Papa.
3) The showman looked at Pinocchio and told him to stop crying.
4) The showman told Pinocchio that he was a good boy.

Complete the sentences.

1) The door opened and...
2) Pinocchio saw that Harlequin fell...
3) Pinocchio ran up to the showman and...
4) When the puppets saw that Pinocchio ran up to the showman and kissed him...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) The showman was a very bad man, wasn't he?
2) Ten soldiers came into the room, didn't they?

3) Pinocchio ran up to the showman and kissed him on the nose, didn't he?
4) When the puppets saw that, they all began to dance, didn't they?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 3).***

1 In the morning Pinocchio...

a) went out of the house with the school-book under his arm.
b) went to the theatre.
c) came up to the showman and kissed him.
d) sold his father's coat.

2 With his first money Pinocchio wanted...

a) to buy a school-book.
b) to buy a ticket to the theatre.
c) to buy a beautiful new coat for his father.
d) to buy a big placard for the theatre.

3 Pinocchio couldn't go to the theatre because...

a) he wanted to go to school.
b) he was afraid of the showman.
c) he had no money to buy a ticket.
d) there were many people there.

4 When the showman came, the puppets...

a) were very frightened.
b) were very sorry for him.
c) began to laugh.
d) ran up to him and kissed him.

5 The showman wanted to put Pinocchio on fire because...

a) he was very cold.
b) Pinocchio was very cold.
c) he wanted to make a good dinner.
d) he was frightened.

6 Pinocchio told the showman that...

a) he wanted to make a good dinner.
b) he had no Mamma.
c) he had no money to buy a ticket to the theatre.
d) he liked Harlequin and Punchinello very much.

7 Pinocchio ran up to the showman and...

a) hit him on the nose with his foot.
b) began to dance.
c) began to cry.
d) kissed him on the nose.



THE SHOWMAN MAKES PINOCCHIO A PRESENT OF FIVE GOLD PIECES FOR GEPPETTO

The next day the showman asked Pinocchio:

"What is your father's name?"

"Geppetto."

"Has he much money?"

"Oh, no, he is very poor. He sold his coat to buy a school-book for me."

"Poor old man," said the showman. "I am sorry for him. Here are five gold pieces. Go and give them to him."

Pinocchio thanked the showman many, many times. Then he kissed the puppets and the soldiers, and ran into the street.

On the way home he met a Fox who was lame and a Cat who was blind.

"Good afternoon, Pinocchio!" said the Fox.

"You know my name, but I don't know you," said Pinocchio.

"I know your father well."

"Where did you see him?"

"I saw him yesterday at the door of his house."

"And how was he?"

"He had no coat on, and he was cold."

"Poor Papa! Soon he won't he cold."

"Why not?"

"Because I have a lot of money now."

"A lot of money — you?" said the Fox, and he began to laugh. The Cat began to laugh, too.

"Don't laugh," cried Pinocchio. "Look at these five gold pieces."

And he showed them the money.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio told the showman that his father was a poor man.
2) The showman told Pinocchio to give six gold pieces to his father.
3) The Fox told Pinocchio that Geppetto had no coat and was cold.
4) Pinocchio told the Fox and the Cat that he had no money.

Complete the sentences.

1) The showman gave Pinocchio...
2) Pinocchio kissed the puppets and...
3) On his way home Pinocchio met...
4) Pinocchio showed...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did the showman give to Pinocchio?
2) What did Pinocchio do before he ran into the street?
3) What did the Fox say about Geppetto?
4) What did Pinocchio show to the Fox and the Cat?



PINOCCHIO GOES WITH THE FOX AND THE CAT

The Fox was lame, but he ran up to Pinocchio. The Cat was blind, but he opened two large eyes. They looked like two green lamps. He shut them quickly again, so quickly that Pinocchio understood nothing.

"And now," asked the Fox, "what do you want to do with all that money?"

"First," answered Pinocchio, "I want to buy a new coat for my Papa. Then I'll buy a schoolbook."

"What for?"

"I want to go to school."

"Look at me!" said the Fox. "I lost my leg because I learned at school."

"Look at me!" said the Cat. "I lost my eyes because I learned at school."

Suddenly a little bird began to sing. It said: "Pinocchio, don't listen to them—they are bad friends!" Poor little bird! The Cat jumped at it and ate it up. Then he shut his eyes again.

"Poor bird!" said Pinocchio to the Cat. "Why did you eat it up?"

"Because it listened to our talk."

Suddenly the Fox said to Pinocchio:

"Do you want to have a lot of money?"

"Oh, yes, but how?"

"Don't go home. Come with us and we'll show you how."

"Where shall we go?"

"You'll see," answered the Fox.

Pinocchio thought a little and then he said:

"No, I won't go with you. I'll go home to my Papa. He wants to see me."

"Well, then," said the Fox, "go home with your five gold pieces. But if you want to have two hundred gold pieces, come with us."

"But how can I get them?"

"I'll tell you," said the Fox. "We'll go to a field. In the field you must make a little hole and put into it one gold piece. Then you must throw some earth into the hole and make a little hill. After that throw water on the hill. At night you can go to bed. And the gold piece will grow. In the morning you get up and come back; and what will you find? You'll find a beautiful tree with many gold pieces on it."

"Oh! How nice!" cried Pinocchio. He forgot his Papa, the new coat, and the school-book. He said to the Fox and the Cat: "I'll go with you."

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio said to the Fox and the Cat that he wanted to buy a school-book for his father.
2) Pinocchio said to the Fox and the Cat that he didn't like to go to school.

3) The Cat said to Pinocchio that he lost his eyes because he read many books.
4) The Cat said that he ate up the bird because he was very hungry.

Complete the sentences.

1) The Cat was blind, but...
2) When the bird began to sing, the Cat...
3) The Cat said that he ate up the bird because...
4) Pinocchio forgot his Papa because...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Was the Cat blind?
2) What did Pinocchio want to do with his five gold pieces?
3) What did the bird say to Pinocchio?
4) Why did Pinocchio forget about his Papa, the new coat, and the school-book?



THE HOUSE OF THE RED CRAWFISH

They walked, and walked, and walked. In the evening they came to the house of the Red Crawfish. "Let us stop here a little," said the Fox. "We'll eat and rest for an hour or two. Then we'll start. We must be in the field early tomorrow morning."

They went into the house and sat down to dinner.

The Cat and the Fox ate very much. But Pinocchio only took a piece of bread. The poor boy thought about the tree with gold pieces on it and could not eat.

After dinner the Fox said to the Crawfish:

"Give us two good rooms: one for Pinocchio and the other for me and my friend. We'll sleep a little and then we'll start."

Pinocchio got into bed and fell asleep at once. In his sleep he saw a field. A lot of trees grew in the field. A lot of

gold pieces grew on the trees. He wanted to take those beautiful gold pieces and put them in his pocket. Then somebody knocked at the door of his room and he opened his eyes.

It was the Crawfish. He said:

"It's time to get up."

"Are my friends ready?" asked Pinocchio.

"Ready? They went away two hours ago."

"Why did they go away?"

"Because the Cat's kitten is ill."

"And where will my good friends wait for me?"

"At the field, in the morning. They told me to ask you for the money for your dinner."

Pinocchio gave the Crawfish one gold piece for the dinner, said good-bye to him and took the road to the field.

It was very dark on the road.

Agree or disagree.

1) In the evening they came to the Cat's house.
2) Pinocchio was very hungry and he ate much.
3) In his sleep Pinocchio saw a field with a lot of trees with gold pieces on them.
4) In the morning Pinocchio and his friends went to the field.

Complete the sentences.

1) In the evening they came...
2) Poor Pinocchio thought about...
3) Pinocchio got into bed and...
4) In the morning Pinocchio...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did they come in the evening?
2) Why didn't Pinocchio eat much?
3) What did Pinocchio see in his sleep?
4) What did Pinocchio do in the morning?

☑ *Check yourself (Quiz 4).*

1 The showman told Pinocchio...

a) to kiss the puppets and run home.
b) to give three gold pieces to Harlequin.
c) to buy a warm coat for Geppetto.
d) to give five gold pieces to his father.

2 On his way home Pinocchio...

a) met a bird who was blind.
b) met his old friends.
c) met Punchinello and Harlequin.
d) met a Fox and a Cat.

3 The Cat was blind, but...

a) he sang a song.
b) he went to school.
c) he had two large green eyes.
d) he was hungry.

4 The bird said to Pinocchio that...

a) the Fox wasn't lame.
b) the Cat saw very well.
c) the Fox and the Cat didn't go to school.
d) the Fox and the Cat were bad friends.

5 The Fox and the Cat wanted Pinocchio...

a) to go to a field.
b) to go to school.
c) to buy a new warm coat for his Papa.
d) to give them five gold pieces.

6 Poor Pinocchio couldn't eat because he...

a) thought about the poor bird.
b) thought about his father.
c) thought about the showman's theatre.
d) thought about the tree with gold pieces on it.

7 In the morning Pinocchio...

a) saw a tree with gold pieces on it.
b) saw his friends at the table.
c) gave his gold pieces to the Crawfish.
d) took the road to the field.



PINOCCHIO MEETS ROBBERS

Pinocchio walked and walked along the dark road. Then he saw two black figures. They had black masks on the faces. Pinocchio put his gold pieces into his mouth and tried to run away. But suddenly he heard:

"Your money or your life!"

Pinocchio could not answer, because he had the gold pieces in his mouth.

"Give us your money!" cried the two figures. Pinocchio showed with his hands: "I have no money!"

"Give us your money or we'll kill you!" said one of them.

"Kill you!" said the other.

"And then we'll kill your father."

"Your father, too."

"No, no, no, not my poor Papa!" cried Pinocchio, and one of the gold pieces fell out of his mouth.

The robbers saw it and cried:

"Oh! Your money is in your mouth! Wait a minute and you'll see how we'll get it."

One of them took Pinocchio by the end of his nose. He began to pull the nose up and down. But Pinocchio didn't open his mouth.

The other robber took out a big knife. Suddenly Pinocchio caught the robber's hand with his teeth and bit it off. It fell on the ground.

And what did he see on the ground? He saw a cat's paw.

The robber cried out. Pinocchio ran away and the robbers ran after him.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio walked and walked along the dark road and then he saw the Fox and the Cat.
2) Pinocchio put his gold pieces into his mouth and ran to his friends.
3) One of the robbers began to pull Pinocchio's ears up and down.
4) The other robber took the gold pieces out of Pinocchio's mouth.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio saw two black figures, they had...
2) Pinocchio couldn't answer because...
3) Suddenly Pinocchio caught...
4) Pinocchio ran away and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Whom did Pinocchio see?
2) What did the robbers want?
3) What did the robbers do?
4) What did Pinocchio do suddenly and what did he see?



THE ROBBERS RUN AFTER PINOCCHIO

Pinocchio ran and ran. Then he looked back. He saw the two robbers behind him.

"What can I do?" he thought.

Suddenly he saw a small house. It was as white as snow. He ran to the door of the house and knocked.

Nobody answered. He knocked again. Then the window opened, and a beautiful child looked out of it. She had blue hair and a face as white as snow.

"There is nobody in this house," she said and shut the window.

"Oh, Beautiful Child with the Blue Hair," cried Pinocchio. "Open the door! Open the door! Please!"

But the robbers caught him and hung him on a big tree in the forest.

Then they sat down on the grass and waited. They waited and waited, but Pinocchio's eyes were open and his mouth was shut.

The robbers didn't want to stay so long. They looked at Pinocchio and said:

"We shall come back tomorrow. Then you'll be dead, and your mouth will be open."

And they went away.

Nobody came to save Pinocchio. He waited and waited, but nobody came. Then he thought of his poor father, shut his eyes and opened his mouth.

Did the gold pieces fall out of Pinocchio's mouth? What do you think, my little readers?

Agree or disagree.

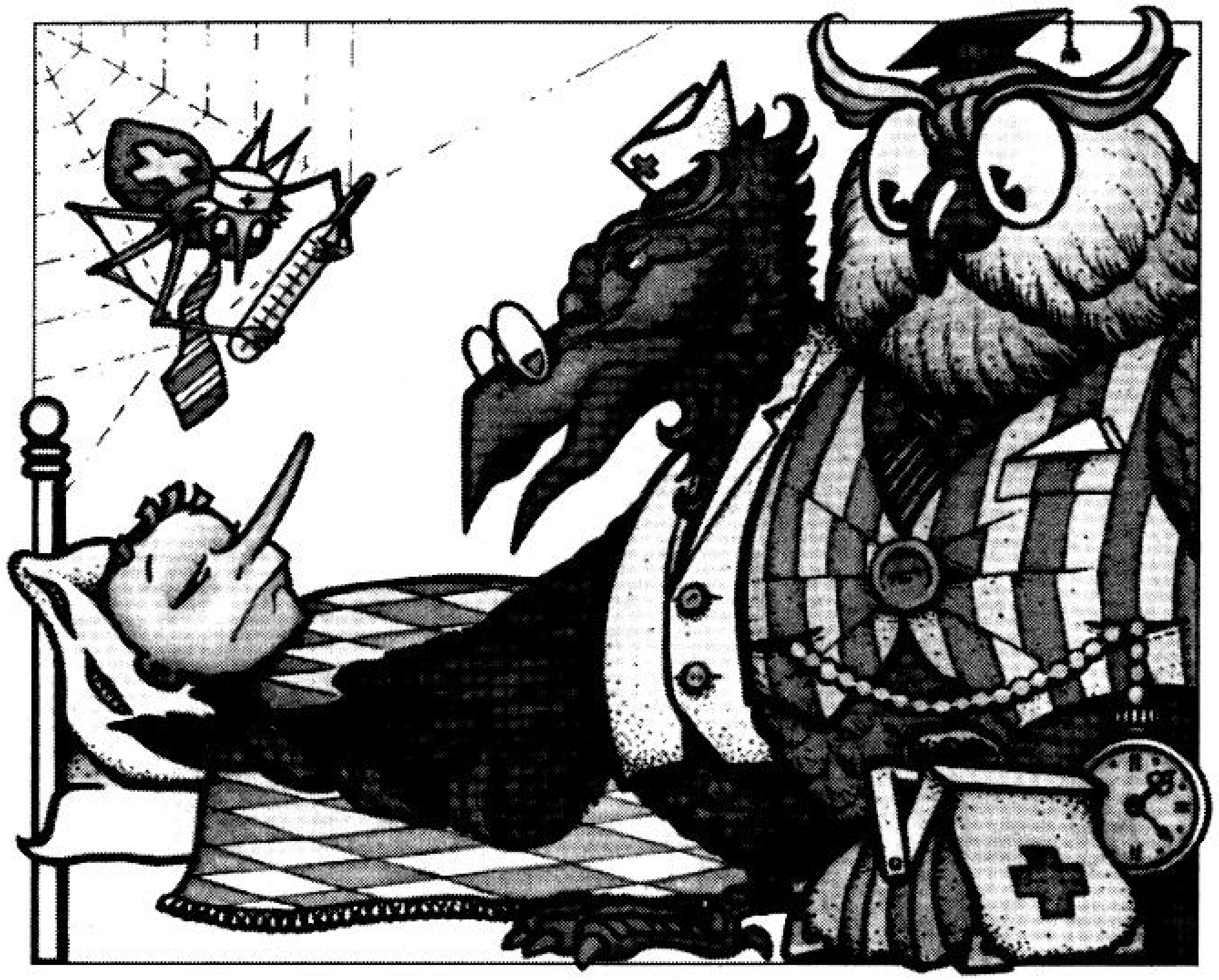
1) Suddenly Pinocchio saw a small house that was as green as grass.
2) The Beautiful Child had blue hair and a face as white as snow.
3) The robbers caught the Beautiful Child and hung her on a big tree.
4) A big dog saved Pinocchio.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio looked back and...
2) The window opened and...
3) The robbers waited and waited, but...
4) Pinocchio thought about...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Who ran after Pinocchio?
2) What did the Beautiful Child say when she looked out of the window?
3) What did the robbers do?
4) What did Pinocchio do?



THE BEAUTIFUL CHILD WITH THE BLUE HAIR SAVES PINOCCHIO

The Beautiful Child with the Blue Hair came again to the window. She saw poor Pinocchio on the big tree and was very sorry for him. She said to her dog:

"Be quick, Medoro, and go to the forest. Go to the Big Tree and you will see a puppet on it. Bring him here."

The Child was at the door of the house when the dog brought her the poor puppet. She took Pinocchio into a little room and put him on the bed.

Then two doctors came: a Raven and an Owl.

"Is this poor puppet alive or dead?" asked the Child.

"I think," said the Raven, "that the puppet is dead; but if he is not dead, then he is alive."

"I think," said the Owl, "that the puppet is alive; but if he is not alive, he is dead!"

Then the doctors went away.

Agree or disagree.

1) When the Beautiful Child saw poor Pinocchio, she was angry with him.
2) The Beautiful Child asked her dog to bring Pinocchio to her house.
3) The Beautiful Child took Pinocchio into the kitchen and put him on the fire.
4) Then a doctor came.

Complete the sentences.

1) When the Beautiful Child came to the window...
2) Medoro went to the forest and...
3) The Beautiful Child took Pinocchio into...
4) The Raven thought that...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did the Beautiful Child see when she came to the window?
2) Who brought Pinocchio to the Beautiful Child's house?
3) Where did the Beautiful Child take Pinocchio?
4) What did the doctors say?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 5).***

1 Whom did Pinocchio see when he walked along the dark road?

a) He saw a beautiful child with blue hair...
b) He saw a big dog.
c) He saw the Fox and the Cat.
d) He saw two black figures with masks on their faces.

2 **What did the robbers want Pinocchio to do?**

a) They wanted Pinocchio to give them his money.
b) They wanted Pinocchio to go to the field with them.
c) They wanted Pinocchio to hang the Beautiful Child on a big tree.
d) They wanted Pinocchio to put his money into his mouth.

3 **What did one of the robbers do?**

a) He took Pinocchio's money out of his mouth.
b) He took out a big knife and cut off Pinocchio's nose.
c) He took Pinocchio by the end of his nose and began to pull the nose up and down.
d) He showed a big knife to Pinocchio.

4 **What did the robbers do when Pinocchio ran away from them?**

a) They took out big knives.
b) They cried, "Your money or your life!"
c) They ran after Pinocchio.
d) They went to the Beautiful Child's house.

5 **What did the robbers do when they caught Pinocchio?**

a) They cut off his nose.
b) They hung him on a big tree in the forest.
c) They took him into the kitchen and put him on fire.
d) They put him on the bed and waited.

6 **Who brought Pinocchio to the Beautiful Child's house?**

a) The Beautiful Child brought Pinocchio to her house.
b) The dog brought Pinocchio to the Beautiful Child's house.
c) The Owl brought Pinocchio to the Beautiful Child's house.
d) The robbers brought Pinocchio to the Beautiful Child's house?

7 **What did the Beautiful Child do when Medoro brought Pinocchio?**

a) She took him into the kitchen and put him on fire.
b) She opened his mouth and took his money.
c) She hung him on a big tree in the forest.
d) She took him into a small room and put him on a bed.



PINOCCHIO EATS SUGAR AND TAKES MEDICINE

The Child with the Blue Hair came up to Pinocchio with some medicine in her hand.

"Drink it," she said. "I'll give you a piece of sugar with it."

"Where is the piece of sugar?"

"Here it is," said the Child and took a piece of sugar from a gold plate.

"First give me the piece of sugar and then I'll drink the medicine."

The Child gave him the sugar and Pinocchio ate it very quickly. Then he drank the medicine.

Suddenly Pinocchio jumped down from the bed. He was well again. The Child was very glad.

Agree or disagree.

1) The Child with the Blue Hair came up to Pinocchio with a big knife in her hand.
2) Pinocchio didn't like sugar.
3) First Pinocchio drank the medicine and then he ate a piece of sugar.
4) The Child was very glad because Pinocchio was well again.

Complete the sentences.

1) The Child with the Blue Hair came up to...
2) First Pinocchio...
3) Then Pinocchio...
4) Suddenly Pinocchio...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did the Child with the Blue Hair want Pinocchio to do?
2) Did Pinocchio like sugar?
3) Did Pinocchio drink medicine or eat a piece of sugar first?
4) Why was the Child with the Blue Hair very glad?



PINOCCHIO'S NOSE GROWS

"Now come here to me," said the Child, "and tell me your story."

And Pinocchio told her everything.

"And the four pieces of gold — where are they?" asked the Child.

"I lost them yesterday!" said Pinocchio, but that was a lie: he had them in his pocket.

Suddenly his long nose began to grow longer.

"And where did you lose them?"

"In the forest near your house."

At this second lie his nose again grew longer.

"If you lost them near my house," said the Child, "we'll look for them. We'll find them. We always find what we lose in that forest."

"Oh!" said the puppet. "I didn't lose the four gold pieces. I swallowed them with your medicine."

At this third lie his nose again grew longer. It was so long now that the Child looked at him and laughed.

"What's the matter?" asked the puppet. "Why did you laugh?"

"I laughed at the lie that you told me a minute ago."

"But how do you know that I told a lie?"

"My dear boy, I am a fairy and we fairies know lies at once. There are lies which have short legs, and there are lies which have long noses. Your lies have long noses."

Pinocchio tried to run out of the room, but he couldn't. His nose was so long, that it couldn't go through the door.

Agree or disagree.

1) First Pinocchio told the Child that he lost his money.
2) Suddenly Pinocchio's ears began to grow.
3) Pinocchio's nose was so long that when the Child looked at it, she began to cry.
4) Pinocchio couldn't run out of the room because the door was closed.

Complete the sentences.

1) Suddenly Pinocchio's nose...
2) At the second lie...
3) Pinocchio's lies had...
4) Pinocchio's nose was so long, that...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did Pinocchio put his money?
2) What was Pinocchio's third lie?
3) Why did the Child laugh?
4) Why did the Child know that Pinocchio told her a lie?
5) Why couldn't Pinocchio run out of the room?



PINOCCHIO MEETS THE FOX AND THE CAT AGAIN

Pinocchio cried and cried over his nose, and he cried because he could not go through the door of the room.

The Child with the Blue Hair made Pinocchio's nose grow longer, because she wanted to teach him a good lesson. Children mustn't tell lies. But he cried so much that she was sorry for him. She asked a large bird to come and help Pinocchio. The bird came and began to work at Pinocchio's nose. Soon it was the same as it was before.

"What a good Fairy you are!" said the puppet. "I like you so much!"

"I like you, too!" answered the Fairy. "Stay with me! You'll be my playmate, my little brother, and I'll be your little sister."

"But my poor Papa?"

"He'll be here today."

"Oh!" cried Pinocchio and jumped up. "Little Fairy, may I go and meet him?"

"Yes, go! Go through the forest, and you'll meet him."

Pinocchio went into the forest. In front of the Big Tree he stopped, because he saw somebody behind it. Two figures came out on to the road. And who were they? His two "friends", the Fox and the Cat.

Agree or disagree.

1) The Child made Pinocchio's nose grow longer.
2) Pinocchio taught the Child a good lesson.
3) Pinocchio cried so much that the fairy got very angry with him.
4) Pinocchio went into the forest to meet his Papa.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio cried and cried over his nose because...
2) The fairy made Pinocchio's nose grow longer because...
3) The fairy asked the large bird to help Pinocchio because...
4) Pinocchio stopped in front of the Big Tree because...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why did Pinocchio cry over his nose?
2) Why did the fairy want to teach Pinocchio a good lesson?
3) Why did Pinocchio go into the forest?
4) Why did Pinocchio stop in front of the Big Tree?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 6).***

1 What did the Child want Pinocchio to do?

a) She wanted him to eat sugar.

b) She wanted him to drink medicine.
c) She wanted him to make a good dinner.
d) She wanted him to jump down from the bed.

2 What did Pinocchio do first?

a) First he ate a piece of sugar and then drank the medicine.
b) First he drank the medicine and then he ate a piece of sugar.
c) First he jumped down from the bed and then ate a piece of sugar.
d) First he jumped down from the bed and then drank the medicine.

3 Why was the Child very glad?

a) The Child was very glad because Pinocchio drank a lot of medicine.
b) The Child was very glad because Pinocchio wanted to eat.
c) The Child was very glad because Pinocchio ate sugar very quickly.
d) The Child was very glad because Pinocchio was well again.

4 Why did Pinocchio's nose begin to grow suddenly?

a) The nose began to grow suddenly because Pinocchio wanted to teach the Child a good lesson.
b) The nose began to grow suddenly because the Child wanted to teach Pinocchio a good lesson.
c) The nose began to grow suddenly because Pinocchio ate a lot of sugar.
d) The nose began to grow suddenly because Pinocchio drank the medicine.

5 Why couldn't Pinocchio run out of the room?

a) The fairy made his nose grow very long.

b) Pinocchio wanted to eat some more sugar.
c) The door was closed.
d) Pinocchio wanted to teach the Child a good lesson.

6 Why did Pinocchio go into the forest?

a) He wanted to meet his friends.
b) He wanted to look for his money there.
c) He wanted to meet his father.
d) He wanted to thank the large bird.

7 Whom did Pinocchio meet in the forest?

a) Pinocchio met the Fox and the Cat there.
b) Pinocchio met Geppetto in the forest.
c) Pinocchio met robbers in the forest.
d) Pinocchio met two doctors there.



PINOCCHIO GOES WITH THE FOX AND THE CAT AND PUTS HIS MONEY IN THE FIELD

"Oh! Here is our dear Pinocchio!" cried the Fox and kissed him. "How is it that you are here?"

"How is it?" said the Cat.

"It is a long story," answered the puppet. "I'll tell you. When you went away from the house of the Red Crawfish, I met the robbers on the road..."

"Robbers! Oh, poor Pinocchio! And what did they want?"

"They wanted to take my gold pieces."

"Oh!" said the Fox.

"Oh!" said the Cat.

"But I ran away from them," said the puppet. They ran after me and caught me and hung me on that tree..."

"Oh!" said the Fox.

"Oh!" said the Cat.

Then Pinocchio saw the Cat's paw. It was very short. He asked him:

"Why is your paw so short?"

The Cat tried to answer but couldn't. But the Fox said at once:

"I'll answer for my friend. An hour ago we met an old wolf on the road. He was very hungry and asked us to give him something to eat. But we had nothing. And what did my friend do? He bit off the end of his paw and threw it to that poor wolf."

And the Fox began to cry. He was sorry for the Cat. Pinocchio cried too. Then he said to the Cat:

"You are a good Cat, I like you!"

"And now, why are you here?" asked the Fox.

"My Papa will be here in a minute."

"And your gold pieces?"

"I have them in my pocket."

"You can have one hundred or two hundred gold pieces. I told you to put your gold pieces in the field and I told you how to do it. Why didn't you listen to me? Why don't you go now and put them in the field?"

"Today I can't. I shall go another day."

"Another day will be too late!" said the Fox.

"Why?"

"Because a man bought that field yesterday. After tomorrow nobody will put money there."

"Is the field far from here?"

"No, it isn't. We can show you where it is. Will you come with us? You can put your money in the field at once. Then you'll have two hundred gold pieces. Will you come with us?"

Pinocchio thought of the good Fairy and of his old father, but not very much. He said to the Fox and the Cat:

"All right, I'll come with you."

And they went.

"Here's the field," said the Fox to the puppet. "Make a little hole in the ground with your hands and put your gold pieces into it."

Pinocchio did so.

"Now," said the Fox, "bring some water."

Pinocchio brought some water in his old shoe. He threw it on the earth over the hole.

"Now we can go away," said the Fox. "You can come back after twenty minutes, and you will find a tree with very many gold pieces on it."

The puppet thanked the Fox and the Cat a hundred times.

"I'll make you a present," he said.

"We don't want any presents," answered the Fox and the Cat. "We taught you how to get money without hard work. Good-bye!"

And the Fox and the Cat went away.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio told the Fox and the Cat that he met with the robbers in the house of the Red Crawfish.
2) One of the Cat's paws was very short.
3) Pinocchio put his gold pieces under a tree.
4) Pinocchio thought about a tree with gold pieces on it and forgot to thank the Fox and the Cat.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio said that when he went away from the house of the Red Crawfish, he...
2) When Pinocchio came to the field, he...
3) The puppet thanked...
4) The Fox and the Cat said that they taught Pinocchio how...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why was Pinocchio very sorry for the Cat?

2) Where did Pinocchio go with the Fox and the Cat and why?
3) What did Pinocchio do with his gold pieces when he came to the field?
4) What did he do then?



A BIRD TELLS PINOCCHIO THAT THE FOX AND THE CAT TOOK HIS MONEY

Pinocchio went back to the town and waited there for twenty minutes. Then it was time to go back. But when he came to the field, he saw nothing. There was no tree there with gold pieces on it.

Suddenly somebody laughed. Pinocchio looked up and saw a bird in a tree.

"Why did you laugh?" asked Pinocchio. "What's the matter?"

"I laughed at those silly boys who think that money can grow on trees in the fields."

"I don't understand you," said the puppet.

"Then listen to me," said the bird. "When you were in the town, the Fox and the Cat came back to the field. They took your money and ran away. Try and catch them if you can."

Pinocchio stood there in the field with his mouth open.

Then he took the earth out of the hole with his hands, but there was no money there.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio sat under a tree and waited for fifteen minutes.
2) When Pinocchio came to the field he saw no tree there with gold pieces on it.
3) When Pinocchio was in town the Fox and the Cat came back to the field.
4) The bird took Pinocchio's money and flew away.

Complete the sentences.

1) When Pinocchio came to the field...
2) Pinocchio looked up and...
3) When Pinocchio was in town...
4) Pinocchio took the earth out of the whole, but...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) When did Pinocchio go back to the field?
2) Whom did the bird laugh at and why?
3) What did the Fox and the Cat do when Pinocchio was in the town?
4) What did Pinocchio find when he took the earth out of the hole?



PINOCCHIO FALLS INTO A TRAP

"I am a bad puppet," he thought. "I do not listen to anybody. But now I shall be good. Where is my poor Papa? Shall I find him in the Fairy's house? I want to see him. I want to kiss him."

So poor Pinocchio started to go to the Fairy's house.

He ran and ran, because he wanted to get to the Fairy's house quickly. He was very hungry. He was so hungry, that he went into a garden near the road and got some apples. But suddenly he got into a trap. It was a trap for little foxes, and the poor puppet was in the trap.

Pinocchio began to cry, but nobody heard him. There were no houses there and nobody walked along the road.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio thought that he was a bad puppet because he didn't listen to the Fox and the Cat.
2) Pinocchio wanted to see his Papa and kiss him.
3) Pinocchio ran to the Fairy's house.
4) Pinocchio was so angry that he made a trap for the Fox.

Complete the sentences.

1) Poor Pinocchio started...
2) He was so hungry that...
3) Suddenly Pinocchio...
4) He began to cry, but...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did Pinocchio run and why?
2) Why did Pinocchio go into a garden near the road?
3) Where did Pinocchio get into?
4) Did anybody help him? Why?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 7).***

1 What did Pinocchio say to the Fox and the Cat when he met them in the forest?

a) Pinocchio said that he lost one gold piece.
b) Pinocchio said that he met the robbers on the road.
c) Pinocchio said that Medoro saved him.
d) Pinocchio said that the Fairy was very kind to him.

2 Why was Pinocchio so sorry for the Cat?

a) Pinocchio thought that the Cat was cold and hungry.
b) Pinocchio thought that the Cat was blind.
c) Pinocchio thought that the Cat had no Papa.
d) Pinocchio thought that the Cat bit off his paw and threw it to a hungry wolf.

3 **What did the Fox and the Cat want Pinocchio to do?**

a) They wanted him to meet his father.
b) They wanted him to take them to the Fairy's house.
c) They wanted him to go to the field.
d) They wanted him to give something to eat to the hungry wolf.

4 **What did Pinocchio do in the field?**

a) Pinocchio put his money under a tree and went away.
b) Pinocchio brought some water in his old shoe and put his money into the water.
c) Pinocchio made a little hole in the ground ant put his money into it.
d) Pinocchio sat under a tree and waited.

5 **Whom did the bird laugh at?**

a) The bird laughed at Pinocchio.
b) The bird laughed at the Fox and the Cat.
c) The bird laughed at the Fairy.
d) The bird laughed at the hungry wolf.

6 **What did the Fox and the Cat do when Pinocchio went to the town?**

a) They made a trap for Pinocchio.
b) They went to the garden near the road.
c) They took Pinocchio's money and ran away.
d) They brought some water and threw it over the hole.

7 **Why did Pinocchio go to a garden near the road?**

a) He was very hungry.
b) He was very angry with the Fox and the Cat.
c) He wanted to make a trap for the Fox and the Cat.
d) He thought he could meet the Fox and the Cat there.



A FARMER FINDS PINOCCHIO AND MAKES HIM HIS WATCH-DOG

At night a man came. He had a large stick in his hand. It was the farmer. He wanted to look at the trap. When he saw Pinocchio in the trap, he said:

"Now I know who takes my chickens!"

"It isn't me, it isn't me," cried Pinocchio. "I only came to take some apples."

"But are they your apples? Did you work in the garden?"

"No, I didn't!"

"I'll teach you a lesson. You won't forget it for a long time."

He took Pinocchio out of the trap, put him under his arm and took him to the farmhouse. "It is late," he said, "I want to go to bed. I have no watch-dog, you'll be my watch-dog. If

robbers come, knock at the door and say 'wow-wow' like a dog. I'll know what to do then."

The farmer went into the house, and Pinocchio stayed in the yard. He was cold, hungry and frightened. At last he fell asleep.

Suddenly he heard voices in the yard. He got up and saw black figures. They were martens. One of them saw Pinocchio and said:

"Who are you?"

"I am Pinocchio."

"And why are you here?"

"I must do the work of the watch-dog."

"Oh, so you are a dog?"

"No, I'm not a dog, I'm a puppet."

"Help us to get some chickens; we'll give you one chicken."

"Wow-wow!" cried Pinocchio. "Wow-wow!"

The farmer, who was asleep in the house, jumped out of bed and caught the robbers.

"You are a good boy!" he said to Pinocchio. "Thank you very much! Now you can go home!"

Agree or disagree.

1) At night a farmer came to look for Pinocchio.
2) The farmer was very sorry for Pinocchio.
3) The farmer wanted to teach Pinocchio a lesson.
4) The farmer helped Pinocchio to catch the robbers.

Complete the sentences.

1) At night a farmer came, he wanted...
2) The farmer was angry with Pinocchio because...
3) Suddenly Pinocchio heard...
4) The farmer jumped out of bed and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did the farmer want to do at night?

2) Why did the farmer want to teach Pinocchio a lesson?
3) What did Pinocchio do at night?
4) How did the farmer catch the martens?



PINOCCHIO DOES NOT FIND THE HOUSE OF THE BEAUTIFUL CHILD WITH THE BLUE HAIR

Pinocchio ran quickly to the forest where the Beautiful Child with the Blue Hair lived. He saw the Big Tree and the field, but the little white house was not there. Suddenly he saw a white stone and on it he read these words:

HERE LIES
THE CHILD WITH THE BLUE HAIR.
SHE COULD NOT LIVE WITHOUT HER
LITTLE BROTHER PINOCCHIO

Pinocchio fell with his face to the ground and began to cry. He cried all night. "Oh, little Fairy, you were so good!" he

cried "Why are you dead? And my Papa? Where is he? I want to be with him. I am afraid the robbers will come and hang me up again. What shall I do? Where shall I sleep at night?"

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio ran quickly to Geppetto's house.
2) Soon he found the little white house.
3) Pinocchio fell with his face to the ground and began to cry.
4) Pinocchio was afraid of the robbers.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio ran quickly...
2) Soon Pinocchio found the Big Tree, but...
3) Suddenly Pinocchio saw...
4) Pinocchio fell...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did Pinocchio run?
2) What did he see?
3) What was there on a white stone?
4) Why did Pinocchio cry all night?



PINOCCHIO MEETS THE PARROT, WHO TAKES HIM TO THE SEA

Suddenly Pinocchio heard a voice:

"Stop crying, child! Tell me, why are you here?"

Pinocchio saw the Parrot over his head.

"Don't you know? I came to find the Beautiful Fairy and she is dead. I can't stop crying," said Pinocchio.

"Tell me," said the Parrot. "Do you know Pinocchio? He is a puppet."

The puppet jumped to his feet. "I am Pinocchio!"

"Do you know Geppetto?" asked the Parrot.

"Do I know him? He's my poor Papa! Will you take me to him? Is he alive?"

"I saw him three days ago by the sea," answered the Parrot. "The poor man looked for you, but could not find

you. So he made a little boat to go to another country to look for you."

"How far is it from here to the sea?" asked Pinocchio.

"If you want to go, I can take you there."

"How?"

"Sit on my back!"

"Oh, thank you!" cried Pinocchio and jumped on the Parrot's back.

The next morning they got to the sea. There were many people by the sea. "Oh, poor man! Poor man!" Pinocchio heard.

"What's the matter?" asked Pinocchio.

"A poor father can't find his boy. He wants to look for him on the other side of the sea. So he made a little boat," answered an old woman.

"Where is the little boat?"

"There it is," said the old woman.

Pinocchio saw a little boat with a very little man in it far out on the sea.

"It's my Papa! It's my Papa!" he cried.

Soon nobody could see the boat: it was too far away.

"Poor man!" said the people, and they went away.

Then they heard a cry. They looked round and saw a little boy in the sea.

"I'll save my Papa!" he cried.

"Poor boy!" said the people.

Agree or disagree.

1) The Parrot told Pinocchio about Geppetto.
2) Geppetto looked for the Child with the Blue Hair, but he couldn't find her.
3) Geppetto wanted to go to another country to look for Pinocchio.
4) Pinocchio saw a boat with many people in it far out on the sea.

Complete the sentences.

1) The Parrot said that he saw...

2) The Parrot said that Pinocchio's father...
3) Pinocchio jumped on the Parrot's back and...
4) Gepetto made...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did the Parrot see Geppetto?
2) How did Pinocchio get to the see?
3) Where did Geppetto want to go and why?
4) What did Pinocchio do when he saw his father in a little boat far out on the sea?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 8).***

1 **Why was the farmer angry with Pinocchio?**

a) Pinocchio didn't want to be his watch-dog.
b) Pinocchio took some apples in the farmer's garden.
c) Pinocchio made a little hole in the farmer's garden and put his money into it.
d) Pinocchio wanted to teach the farmer a good lesson.

2 **What did the farmer want Pinocchio to do?**

a) The farmer wanted Pinocchio to make a trap for the robbers.
b) The farmer wanted Pinocchio to sleep in his house.
c) The farmer wanted Pinocchio to be his watch-dog.
d) The farmer wanted Pinocchio to teach the robbers a good lesson.

3 **Who caught the robbers?**

a) Pinocchio caught the robbers.
b) The farmer caught the robbers.
c) The Child with the Blue Hair caught the robbers.
d) Gepetto caught the robbers.

4 **What did Pinocchio find near the Big Tree?**

a) He found a white stone.

b) He found a house that was as white as snow.
c) He found a little house.
d) He found a little boat.

5 **What did Pinocchio do all night?**

a) He read the words on the white stone.
b) He made a little boat.
c) He laughed.
d) He cried.

6 **What did Geppetto want to do?**

a) Geppetto wanted to go to another country to make a boat there.
b) Geppetto wanted to catch the robbers.
c) Geppetto wanted to look for Pinocchio.
d) Geppetto wanted to teach the farmer a good lesson.

7 **What did Pinocchio see far out on the sea?**

a) He saw the Parrot with a man on his back.
b) He saw a boat with a man in it.
c) He saw a little boat with the farmer and his watch-dog in it.
d) He saw many people.



PINOCCHIO COMES TO AN ISLAND AND FINDS THE FAIRY AGAIN

Pinocchio wanted to help his father, so he swam all night. In the morning he saw an island in the sea. He swam to the island. The sun was bright and the sky was blue. The puppet put his clothes in the sun: he wanted to dry them. Then he began to look at the sea. Where was the little boat? He looked and looked but could see nothing — only the blue sky and the blue sea. There was no little boat with a little man in it. He began to cry. But at that moment he saw a big fish in the sea.

"Are there any towns on this island, sir Fish?" asked Pinocchio.

"Yes, there are," answered the Fish. "You'll find a town not far from here."

"And how can I get there?"

"You must go to your left."

"You swim about the sea all day and all night. Didn't you see a little boat with my Papa in it yesterday?"

"I think the Dogfish ate him up last night," said the Fish.

"Is the Dogfish very big?" asked Pinocchio.

"Big! He is as big as a house!"

"Oh!" cried the poor puppet. Then he put on his clothes quickly and said:

"Good-bye, sir Fish, thank you very much."

He went to the left and soon came to a little town. There were many people in the town. They were all very busy. Everybody was at work.

"Oh!" said lazy Pinocchio at once. "I see that this town is not for me. I don't like to work."

But he was very hungry. How could he get some food? He could ask for a little work or he could beg. But his father always said to him, "It is very bad to beg, everybody must work."

Then Pinocchio saw a man with a small cart. Pinocchio went up to him and said:

"Will you give me some money? I'm very hungry."

"Help me to pull this cart, and I'll give you some money. It isn't very heavy," said the man.

"Oh, no! I won't do the work of a donkey!" cried the puppet.

"Then, my boy," said the man, "if you are so hungry, eat your laziness."

Pinocchio begged and begged, but the people all said:

"How can you beg? Go and look for work!"

At last he saw a nice little girl with two jugs of water.

"Will you give me some water to drink?" asked Pinocchio.

"Drink, my boy, if you want to!" said the girl.

Pinocchio drank some water. Then he said:

"Thank you, I don't want to drink now, but I'm so hungry."

The girl said at once:

"Help me to carry home these two jugs of water, and I'll give you a piece of bread."

Pinocchio looked at the jugs and didn't answer.

"Then you'll have some nice soup," said the kind girl.

Pinocchio looked at the jugs again, but said nothing.

"And after the soup I'll give you some nice sweets."

When Pinocchio heard this, he cried:

"I'll carry the jugs to your house!"

The jugs were heavy, so the puppet carried them on his head.

They went into the house. Pinocchio sat down at a small table, and the girl put bread, soup and sweets in front of him.

Agree or disagree.

1) In the morning Pinocchio saw a little house that was as white as snow.
2) The big fish thought that the Dogfish ate up Geppetto.
3) Pinocchio wasn't a lazy boy and he worked much that day.
4) The girl put some sweets and water in front of Pinocchio.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio wanted to help his father, so...
2) Pinocchio came...
3) Everybody in the town...
4) Pinocchio begged and begged, but...

? *Answer the questions.*

1) Where did Pinocchio come?
2) Did Pinocchio ask for work or did he beg?
3) Did Pinocchio like to work?
4) Why did the girl give some food to Pinocchio?



THE GIRL IS THE FAIRY; PINOCCHIO SAYS HE WILL BE GOOD

Pinocchio ate up everything. Then he wanted to thank the girl. He looked at her and — oh-h-h! What did he see?

"What's the matter?" asked the girl and laughed.

"Oh, little Fairy!" cried Pinocchio. "I didn't know you at first! Oh, I am so happy to see you again! Little Fairy, little Fairy! I want to have a mamma like other boys! Will you be my Mamma? And I don't want to be a puppet any more, I want to be a boy. Can you make me a boy?"

"All right! You'll be a boy. But you must learn to be a good boy," said the Fairy.

"Do you think I'm not a good boy?"

"Good boys like to learn and to work, and you..."

"And I'm lazy."

"Good boys don't tell lies..."

"And I always tell lies."

"Good boys like to go to school."

"I'll be a good boy, I'll be a good little boy. Now, please, tell me, where is my poor Papa?"

"I don't know."

"Shall I see him and kiss him again?"

"I think so. Now listen, Pinocchio. Tomorrow you'll go to school."

"I think that it's too late for me to go to school now," said Pinocchio.

"No, it isn't. It's never too late to learn. You must learn and then work. Every man must work. Children must work, too."

"I'll learn and I'll work. But, please, tell me, shall I be a boy?" cried the puppet.

"Yes, you'll be a boy," answered the Fairy.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio wanted to have a school-book like all other boys.
2) Pinocchio wanted to be a fairy.
3) The Fairy said that good boys liked to eat sweets and tell lies.
4) Pinocchio said that he was a lazy boy.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio was so happy to...
2) Pinocchio didn't want to be...
3) Pinocchio said that he always...
4) It's never too late...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why was Pinocchio happy?
2) What did Pinocchio want to be?
3) What must every man do?
4) When is it too late to learn?



PINOCCHIO GOES WITH HIS SCHOOLMATES TO SEE THE DOGFISH

The next day Pinocchio went to school. The schoolboys began to laugh at him. They laughed at him all the time.

But one day Pinocchio hit one of them. After that they all began to like him and made friends with him.

And the teacher liked him, too, because Pinocchio always did his homework.

But some of his friends didn't like to learn. They were lazy boys.

The good Fairy often said to Pinocchio:

"They are bad schoolmates. They will do something bad to you."

Pinocchio only laughed.

One day on his way to school he met some of his schoolmates. They came up to him and said:

"There is a big Dogfish in the sea, not far from here. We want to see him. Will you come with us?"

"No, I want to go to school."

"We can go to school tomorrow."

"But what will the teacher say?"

"The teacher will say what he likes."

"And my Mamma?"

"Mammas know nothing," answered those bad little boys.

"I'll go and see the Dogfish after school."

"Do you think that the Dogfish will wait for you?" said one of the boys.

"How far is it from here to the sea?" asked the puppet.

"We can go there and be back very quickly."

"Then let's go!" cried Pinocchio.

And the boys with their books and note-books under their arms ran to the sea.

Agree or disagree.

1) The teacher liked Pinocchio because Pinocchio always did his homework.
2) Pinocchio's friends liked to learn too.
3) One day on his way to school Pinocchio met some of his schoolmates.
4) The boys with their books and note-books under their arms ran to school.

Complete the sentences.

1) After that Pinocchio's schoolmates...
2) The teacher liked Pinocchio because...
3) Some of Pinocchio's friends...
4) One day Pinocchio and his friends...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Who laughed at Pinocchio?

2) Did all schoolboys like to learn?
3) Why did the teacher like Pinocchio?
4) Did Pinocchio go to see the Dogfish?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 9).***

1 Why did Pinocchio swim all night?

a) He wanted to get to the island.
b) He wanted to eat.
c) He wanted to help his father.
d) He wanted to see the town on the island.

2 Who told Pinocchio that the Dogfish ate up his father?

a) The Fish.
b) His schoolmates.
c) A girl.
d) A man with a small cart.

3 What did Geppetto always say to Pinocchio?

a) He said that it was very bad to work.
b) He said that it was never too late to learn.
c) He said that it was very bad to beg.
d) He said that it was very good to be a lazy boy.

4 Who gave money to Pinocchio?

a) The Fish.
b) Nobody.
c) The man with a small cart.
d) The little girl with two jugs of water.

5 Why did the girl give Pinocchio bread, soup and sweets?

a) She liked Pinocchio very much.
b) Pinocchio was a very good boy.
c) Pinocchio helped her to carry home two jugs of water.
d) Pinocchio helped her to pull her cart.

6 **What did Pinocchio want to be?**

a) He wanted to be a teacher.
b) He wanted to be a boy.
c) He wanted to be a fairy.
d) He wanted to be a robber.

7 **Why did the teacher like Pinocchio?**

a) Pinocchio was a lazy boy.
b) Pinocchio always did his homework.
c) Pinocchio hit one of the boys.
d) Pinocchio made friends with his schoolmates.



PINOCCHIO FIGHTS WITH HIS SCHOOLMATES

When they came to the sea, Pinocchio saw no Dogfish.

"Where is the Dogfish?" he asked.

"He is busy," said one of the boys.

The boys all laughed. Pinocchio was angry and said: "Why did you tell me this story about the Dogfish?"

"We don't like the boys who like to go to school."

Pinocchio was very angry with the boys. And soon they began to fight with him. They threw their note-books and school-books at him. But Pinocchio was very quick: the books all fell into the sea. Suddenly one book hit a boy's head, and he fell down on the ground.

"He is dead!" cried the other boys and ran away.

Poor Pinocchio stayed with his schoolmate. He cried: "Open your eyes and look at me! Why don't you answer? I didn't do it! I didn't hit you! What shall I do now? Why did I listen to my bad schoolmates? The teacher and my Mamma often said to me: "Don't make friends with bad boys!" But I didn't listen to them. What shall I do now?"

Agree or disagree.

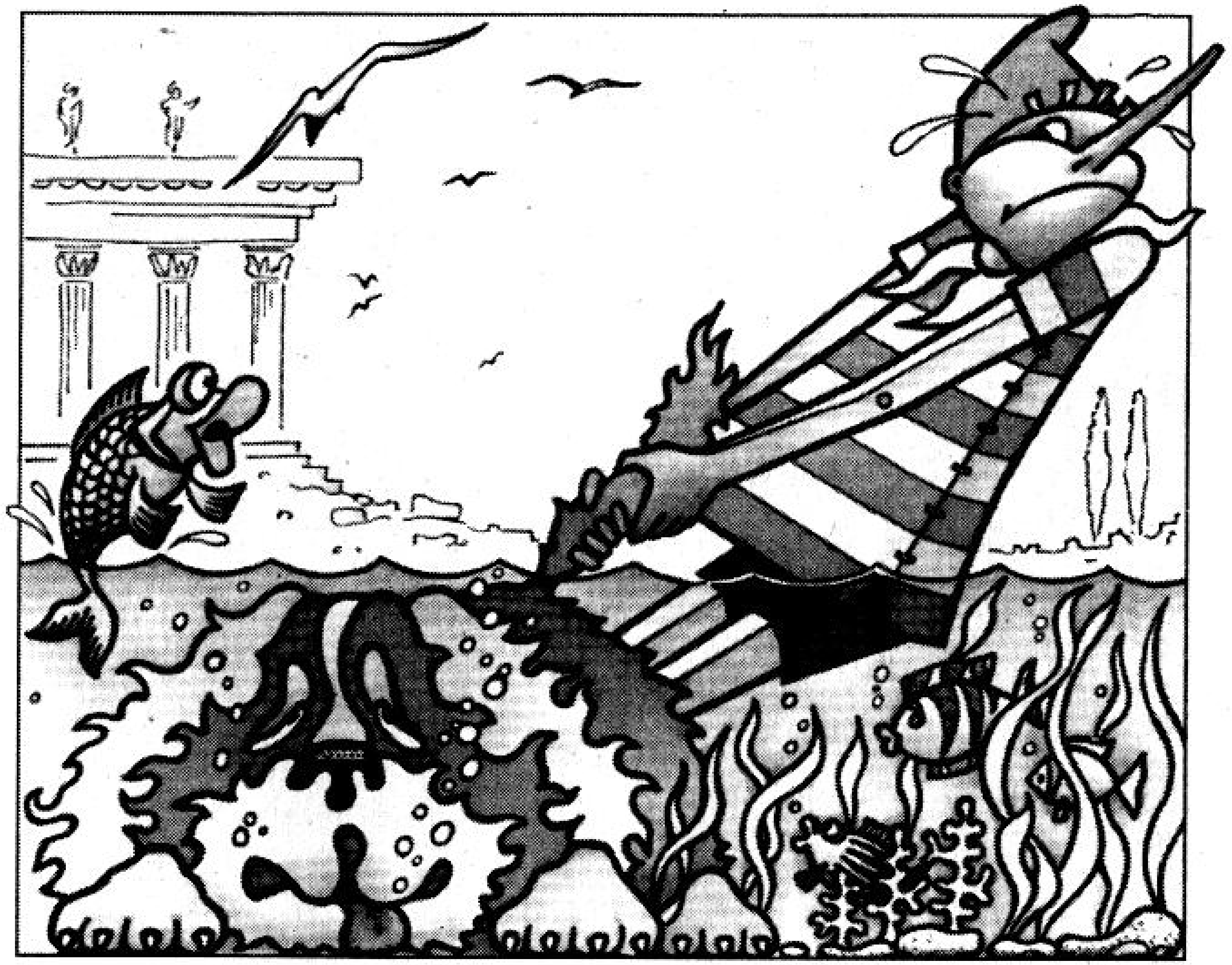
1) Pinocchio liked the Dogfish very much.
2) Pinocchio was very sorry for the boys.
3) The boys threw their note-books and school-books at Pinocchio.
4) One of the books hit a boy's head and the boy began to cry.

Complete the sentences.

1) When they came to the sea...
2) Pinocchio was very angry with the boys, and soon...
3) Suddenly one of the books...
4) The boys thought...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did Pinocchio see when they came to the sea?
2) Why did the boys tell a lie to Pinocchio?
3) Was Pinocchio angry with the boys or sorry for the boys?
4) What did Pinocchio do when all the boys ran away?



PINOCCHIO SAVES THE DOG ALIDORO

After this the boys caught a big dog. They pulled him to the place where Pinocchio was and cried: "Catch him, catch him!" And the dog ran after Pinocchio. Pinocchio ran away.

The dog was very, very big; Pinocchio was frightened and ran to the sea.

He could hear the dog behind him. The sea was near. The puppet jumped — one, two, three — and fell into the water. The dog couldn't stop and ran into the water. But the dog couldn't swim well. Soon his head went under the water.

When it came up, the dog cried:

"Help! Help! Save me, Pinocchio!"

The puppet was sorry for the dog, so he said:

"All right, I'll save you. But you mustn't run after me."

"I won't run after you, but be quick, Pinocchio!"

The puppet caught the dog's tail with his hands and pulled him out of the water.

"Good-bye, Alidoro!" cried Pinocchio.

"Good-bye, Pinocchio!" cried the dog. "Thank you very much. You saved my life. I won't forget that."

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio was so afraid of the dog that he could not run.
2) Pinocchio jumped into the water.
3) Pinocchio couldn't swim well.
4) Alidoro saved Pinocchio.

Complete the sentences.

1) The boys pulled the dog...
2) Pinocchio was very frightened, and...
3) The dog couldn't...
4) Pinocchio caught the dog's tail and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why did Pinocchio run to the sea?
2) What did Pinocchio do when he heard the dog behind him?
3) Could Pinocchio or Alidoro swim very well?
4) How did Pinocchio save Alidoro?



A FISHERMAN CATCHES PINOCCHIO IN HIS NET

Pinocchio jumped into the water again. He swam and swam. Suddenly he saw an island in front of him and a cave.

"I'll go into the cave," he thought. But suddenly something carried him up into the air. He was in a great net in which there were very many fish.

Then a fisherman came out of the cave. There was green grass on his head. His face was green, and his eyes were green. His long beard was green too.

He pulled his net out of the sea and cried:

"I'll have a nice dinner of fish today."

"I'm so glad that I'm not a fish," thought Pinocchio.

The fisherman carried the net with the fish into the cave.

It was dark in the cave. In the middle of the cave Pinocchio saw a large fire. There was a frying-pan on the fire.

"Now we'll see what fish we have!" said the green fisherman. He put his hand into the net and pulled out some fish. Then he pulled out Pinocchio.

"What is this?" he cried. "A fish?"

"I'm a puppet!" said Pinocchio.

"A puppet?" said the fisherman. "That's a new fish. I'll eat you and see if you are a good fish."

"Eat me? But I'm not a fish. I can talk like you."

"Very well. Then you are a fish which can talk. I'll put you in the frying-pan with the other fish."

Poor Pinocchio began to cry. The fisherman took some fish and threw them into the frying-pan. Pinocchio couldn't speak, he was so frightened. The green fisherman took him by the head and...

Agree or disagree.

1) Suddenly the fisherman carried Pinocchio up in the air.
2) The fisherman's face, his eyes and beard were blue.
3) The fisherman thought that Pinocchio was a fish that could talk.
4) The fisherman wanted to eat Pinocchio.

Complete the sentences.

1) Suddenly something carried Pinocchio...
2) The fisherman carried the net and...
3) In the middle of the cave Pinocchio...
4) The fisherman took some fish and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did Pinocchio see suddenly?
2) Where did the fisherman take the net?
3) What was there in the middle of the cave?
4) What did the fisherman want to do with Pinocchio?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 10).***

1 What did Pinocchio see when they came to the sea?

a) Pinocchio saw no Dogfish.
b) Pinocchio saw a very big Dogfish.
c) Pinocchio saw some of his friends.
d) Pinocchio saw his teacher.

2 Why did the boys tell a lie to Pinocchio?

a) The boys told a lie because they wanted to fight with him.
b) The boys told the story about the Dogfish because they wanted to teach Pinocchio a lesson.
c) The boys told a lie because they didn't like those boys who liked to go to school.
d) The boys liked to tell stories to everybody.

3 Was Pinocchio angry with the boys or sorry for the boys and why?

a) He was sorry for the boys because they didn't like to go to school.
b) He was sorry for the boys because they didn't see the Dogfish.
c) He was angry with the boys because they told a lie to him.
d) He was angry with the boys because they never told a lie to him.

4 How did Pinocchio help Alidoro?

a) Alidoro was very hungry, and Pinocchio gave him some bread.
b) Alidoro fought with the boys, and Pinocchio helped him.
c) Alidoro lost his tail, and Pinocchio found it.
d) Alidoro couldn't swim, and Pinocchio pulled him out of the water.

5 Where did the fisherman live?

a) He lived in a little house not far from the sea.
b) He lived in a field.
c) He lived in the sea.
d) He lived in a cave.

6 What was there in the middle of the cave?

a) There was a net.
b) There was a large fire.
c) There was an island.
b) There was a stone with some words on it.

7 What did the fisherman want to do?

a) He wanted to help Pinocchio.
b) He wanted to teach Pinocchio a good lesson.
c) He wanted to eat Pinocchio.
d) He wanted to save Pinocchio.



ALIDORO SAVES PINOCCHIO

Suddenly a big dog ran into the cave.
"Get out!" cried the fisherman.
But the poor dog was very hungry.
"Give me some fish and I'll go!" he said.
"Get out, I tell you!" cried the fisherman.
Then the dog heard a voice:
"Save me, Alidoro! He wants to eat me! Save me!"

The dog knew Pinocchio's voice, which came from the frying-pan.

What do you think he did? He jumped up, caught Pinocchio in his mouth and ran out of the cave.

The fisherman ran after him, but he couldn't catch him. The dog was too quick.

Alidoro ran and ran. But he stopped at last and put his friend Pinocchio on the ground.

"Thank you, thank you very much, Alidoro!" said the puppet.

"We must all help each other. You saved me, and I saved you."

Then the dog went home.

Agree or disagree.

1) Alidoro was hungry, and he wanted to eat the fisherman.
2) The fisherman gave a big fish to Alidoro.
3) The fisherman wasn't too quick, and Alidoro caught him.
4) Alidoro saved Pinocchio.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio asked Alidoro...
2) Alidoro jumped up, caught...
3) The fisherman couldn't catch Alidoro because...
4) At last Alidoro stopped and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did Alidoro hear in the cave?
2) What did Alidoro do?
3) Why couldn't the fisherman catch Alidoro?
4) What did Alidoro say to Pinocchio?



PINOCCHIO'S NOSE GROWS AGAIN

Pinocchio saw a small house and an old man in front of it.

"Tell me, good man, do you know anything about the poor boy that another boy hit and who fell down?" asked Pinocchio.

"A fisherman brought him to the house, and now..." answered the man.

"And now is he dead?"

"No, he is alive, he went home."

Pinocchio was so happy that he began to jump and dance. Then he asked the old man:

"Do you know who hit the boy?"

"One of his schoolmates — Pinocchio..."

"And who is this Pinocchio?" asked the puppet.

"He is a bad boy. Do you know him?"

"A little," answered the puppet.

"And what do you think of him?" asked the old man.

"I think that he is a very good boy. He wants to learn, he listens to his father."

When the puppet told all these lies, his nose began to grow. Then he cried:

"Good man, I told you a lie. I know Pinocchio very well. He is a very bad boy. He is lazy. He doesn't listen to anybody. He doesn't go to school. He goes away with his schoolmates and plays."

At that moment his nose became the same as it was before.

"Now I'll go to my good little Fairy," he thought.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio saw the fisherman in front of the house.
2) The fisherman told Pinocchio that the boy was alive.
3) Pinocchio was so happy that he jumped up and kissed the old man.
4) When Pinocchio told all these lies, his nose became the same size as it was before.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio saw...
2) When the puppet told all those lies...
3) The puppet said that Pinocchio was...
4) At that moment his nose...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Whom did Pinocchio see in front of the house?
2) What did the old man say about Pinocchio?
3) What did the puppet say about Pinocchio first?
4) What happened to his nose?



PINOCCHIO GOES BACK TO THE FAIRY'S HOUSE

Pinocchio came to the Fairy's house and knocked at the door.

He waited and waited. At last a window opened, and Pinocchio saw a big Snail.

She said to him:

"Who is there at this late hour?"

"Is the Fairy at home?" asked the puppet.

"The Fairy is asleep. But who are you?"

"Pinocchio."

"And who is Pinocchio?"

"The puppet who lives in the Fairy's house."

"Oh," said the Snail. "Wait for me there. I shall come down and open the door."

"Be quick! I am very cold!"

"My boy, I am a snail, and snails can't be quick."

The night was very bad. It rained cats and dogs. Poor Pinocchio was very cold and wet. He waited an hour for the Snail, then two hours. He waited all night. Only in the morning the Snail opened the door.

"The Fairy is asleep," she said.

"I am so hungry," cried Pinocchio. "Bring me something to eat!"

"At once," said the Snail.

Pinocchio waited three hours for the Snail. At last she came back with a gold plate on her head. There was bread, a chicken and four apples on the plate.

"This is your breakfast," she said.

The puppet was very glad to see these good things. He began to eat.

Suddenly the Fairy came into the room.

"You were a bad boy again," the Fairy said. "But I think it will be the last time."

"I'm very sorry," said Pinocchio. "I'll be a good boy and I'll learn well."

The Fairy was very glad.

At the end of the year she said to Pinocchio:

"Tomorrow you won't be a wooden puppet, you will be a boy! Tell your schoolmates to come here tomorrow. They will have breakfast in our house, I'll make two hundred cups of milk. I'll buy a hundred cakes and five hundred sweets. We'll sing, dance and play!"

Pinocchio was very happy, but there is always a "but".

Then the Fairy said to Pinocchio:

"Now go and ask your schoolmates to come for breakfast tomorrow. Come back home at once."

"I'll be back very soon," answered the puppet.

Pinocchio said good-bye to his good Fairy and went out of the house.

When Pinocchio's friends heard about the cakes and sweets, they all said:

"We'll come tomorrow, thank you very much!"

Agree or disagree.

1) The weather was nice that night.
2) In the morning the Snail opened the door.
3) At last the Snail brought Pinocchio three apples, bread and some sweets.
4) Pinocchio wasn't glad to see the Snail with a gold plate on her head.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio waited and waited, and at last...
2) The weather that night...
3) Only in the morning...
4) At last she came back with...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did Pinocchio come?
2) What was the weather like that night?
3) How long did Pinocchio wait for the Snail?
4) What did the Snail bring to Pinocchio?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 11).***

1 What did Alidoro do?

a) He began to fight with the fisherman.
b) He took the net and ran out of the cave.
c) He threw Pinocchio into the frying-pan.
d) He caught Pinocchio in his mouth and ran out of the cave.

2 Why couldn't the fisherman catch Alidoro?

a) Alidoro was too quick.
b) The fisherman was lame.
c) The fisherman was afraid of Alidoro.
d) The fisherman was blind.

3 Why did Alidoro save Pinocchio?

a) Alidoro saved Pinocchio because he was afraid of Geppetto.
b) Alidoro saved Pinocchio because he wanted to eat him.
c) Alidoro saved Pinocchio because Pinocchio saved Alidoro.
d) Alidoro saved Pinocchio because the Fairy asked Alidoro to do so.

4 What did Pinocchio do when he knew that the boy was alive?

a) Pinocchio saved Alidoro.
b) Pinocchio was so happy that he began to dance.
c) Pinocchio went to the Fairy's house.
d) Pinocchio told a lie to the old man.

5 What was the weather like that night?

a) The weather was warm, it didn't rain.
b) It was cold, but it didn't rain.
c) It rained cats and dogs.
d) It was very warm, but it rained.

6 How long did Pinocchio wait for the snail?

a) He waited all night.
b) He waited all day.
c) He waited for two hours.
d) He waited for some minutes.

7 What did the Snail bring to Pinocchio?

a) The Snail brought some bread and butter.
b) The snail brought a gold plate with some apples.
c) The Snail brought a chicken and some apples.
d) The Snail brought bread, a chicken and four apples.



PINOCCHIO GOES WITH HIS FRIEND CANDLEWICK TO BOOBIE-LAND

Now I must tell you that Pinocchio's best friend was a bad boy. His name was Romeo, but he was as long and thin as a candlewick, so his friends called him "Candlewick". He was the laziest boy in the school, but Pinocchio liked him very much.

When Pinocchio came to Candlewick's house, he said to him:

"Tomorrow you must come to breakfast at our house."

"Why?"

"Tomorrow will be a great day for me. I'll not be a puppet tomorrow. I'll become a boy like you and all the other boys."

"I am sorry," said Candlewick, "but I want to go away!"

"Go away where?"

"Very far, very far, very far away; to Boobie-land. Come with me, Pinocchio! That's the best country for us boys. There are no schools there! There are no teachers! There are no books! Nobody learns in that country. Only think, the autumn holidays begin on the first of January and are over on the last day of December. That is the country for me!"

"But what do the boys do in Boobie-land?" asked Pinocchio.

"They play games and dance all the time. When night comes, they go to bed. In the morning they begin to play and dance again. Will you come with me?"

"No, no, no and again no," said Pinocchio. "I must be a good boy. I must go home now. Good-bye, Candlewick!"

"Wait for two minutes, Pinocchio. Think well! Do you know that there will be more than a hundred of us? An old man will take us all to that country. He has a lot of donkey carts."

"I am very sorry, but I can't go with all the boys to that great country. I must go home now," said Pinocchio.

But he didn't go home. He thought a little and then asked:

"Do the holidays there really begin on the first of January and are they over on the last day of December?"

"Oh, yes, oh, yes!" cried Candlewick.

"Then I'll go with you to Boobie-land."

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio's best friend was the best boy in the school.
2) Pinocchio didn't like Candlewick because he was the laziest boy in the school.
3) There was only one school in Boobie-land.
4) In Boobie-land the autumn holidays were over on the last day of December.

Complete the sentences.

1) Romeo was as long and thin as...
2) Candlewick said that there were no...

3) First Pinocchio didn't...
4) The holidays in Boobie-land...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Who was Pinocchio's best friend?
2) Why did they call Romeo "Candlewick"?
3) What did Candlewick tell Pinocchio about Boobie-land?
4) Why did Pinocchio want to go to Boobie-land?



PINOCCHIO IN BOOBIE-LAND

In the morning they came to Boobie-land! The old man stopped his donkeys, and the boys got out of the carts. Only boys lived in the country. The oldest were fourteen and the youngest were seven or eight years old. They made a great noise in the streets. They sang and danced. Some boys played the drums; others ran up and down. Some walked on their hands with their feet in the air: other boys laughed and jumped. In every street there were theatres, and boys could stay there all day. On the walls of the houses Pinocchio saw the words: "Long live playgrounds! Down with arithmetic, down with schools!"

Pinocchio soon made friends with everybody. He was so happy!

So the hours, the days, the weeks and the months passed.

Five months passed, and the happy days of the puppet were over.

"How?" my readers will ask me. I'll tell you at once, my little readers.

Agree or disagree.

1) Only boys lived in Boobie-land.
2) The oldest were fifteen and the youngest were four or five years old.
3) Some of the boys went to school on their hands.
4) Pinocchio didn't like the boys, he felt very sorry for them.

Complete the sentences.

1) The old man stopped his donkeys, and...
2) The boys made...
3) In every street...
4) Pinocchio soon made...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) How did Candlewick and Pinocchio get to Boobie-land?
2) What did the boys do in Boobie-land?
3) What was there in every street?
4) Did Pinocchio find any friends in Boobie-land?



PINOCCHIO BECOMES A LITTLE DONKEY

It was morning. The sun was bright and the day was warm. Pinocchio jumped out of bed and went up to the mirror. And what did he see?

He saw two long ears on his head! And they were donkey's ears! He began to cry, but it didn't help. Then he began to pull at his ears. He pulled and pulled but his ears only grew and grew!

The little Puppy who lived in the next room heard his cries. He came into Pinocchio's room. He saw the donkey's ears on the puppet's head and asked him:

"What's the matter with you?"

"I'm ill, my dear little Puppy, very ill."

"I'm very sorry for you," said the Puppy. "But I must tell you that very soon you'll not be a puppet and you'll not be a boy!"

"Then what shall I be?"

"You'll be a little donkey."

"Oh, poor little Pinocchio, poor little Pinocchio," cried the puppet. He tried to pull his ears out of his head, but they only grew longer and longer.

"My dear boy," said the Puppy, "what can you do? Nothing! I must tell you this. All boys who are lazy and don't want to go to school become little donkeys."

"Oh, what shall I do? What shall I do?" cried the poor puppet. "I'll find Candlewick and break his bones, because he brought me to this town!"

When Pinocchio got to his door, he thought of his donkey's ears. The other boys mustn't see them. He put his cap on his head, pushed his ears into it and pulled it well down over his nose.

Agree or disagree.

1) In the morning Pinocchio jumped out of bed and ran to the sea.
2) Pinocchio saw two long donkey's ears on his head.
3) Pinocchio pulled at his ears, but they only grew longer and longer.
4) Pinocchio wanted to show his ears to Candlewick.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio looked in the mirror and...
2) Pinocchio tried to pull his ears out, but...
3) The Puppy said to Pinocchio that all the boys who were lazy...
4) Pinocchio put his cap on...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) What did Pinocchio do in the morning?
2) What was the matter with his head?
3) What did he try to do?
4) Did Pinocchio want to thank Candlewick?

☑ *Check yourself (Quiz 12).*

1 Why did Romeo's friends call him "Candlewick"?

a) Romeo looked like a candle.
b) Romeo was a very tall boy.
c) Romeo was as long and thin as a candlewick.
d) Romeo sold candles.

2 How many schools were there in Boobie-land?

a) There were not many schools there.
b) There were no schools there.
c) There was one school only.
d) There were three schools there.

3 How long were the holidays in Boobie-land?

a) The holidays were three months long.
b) The holidays were six months long.
c) The holidays were nine months long.
d) The holidays were twelve months long.

4 Who lived in Boobie-land?

a) Many people lived in Boobie-land.
b) Boys and girls lived in Boobie-land.
c) Only boys lived in Boobie-land.
d) Only schoolchildren lived in Boobie-land.

5 What did Pinocchio see in the morning?

a) He saw donkey's ears on his head.
b) He saw some bad boys in the mirror.
c) He saw a very long nose in the mirror.
d) He saw a donkey in the mirror.

6 What did Pinocchio try to do?

a) Pinocchio tried to make friends with everybody in Boobie-land.
b) He tried to go to school on his hands.

c) He tried not to be a lazy boy.
d) He tried to pull the ears out of his head.

7 Why did Pinocchio put his cap on?

a) He didn't want anybody to see his ears.
b) It was very cold that morning.
c) He liked his cap very much.
d) He wanted everybody to see his cap.



PINOCCHIO BEGINS TO BRAY LIKE A DONKEY

When Pinocchio came to the house where Candlewick lived, he knocked at the door.

"Who's there?" asked Romeo.

"Me, Pinocchio!" answered the puppet.

"Wait a minute and I'll open the door."

At last Candlewick opened the door.

And do you know what Pinocchio saw? He saw his friend Candlewick with a cap on his head. The cap came down over his nose.

"Is my friend ill like I am?" thought Pinocchio.

"What's the matter with you, my dear Candlewick?" he asked. "Why have you that cap on your head? Why does it come down to your nose?"

"Well, you see," answered Candlewick, "I fell down and broke my leg, so the doctor told me to put on the cap as medicine. And you, dear Pinocchio, why did you pull your cap down over your nose?"

"I fell down and broke my arm, so the doctor told me to put on this cap as medicine."

"Oh, poor Pinocchio!"

"Oh, poor Candlewick!"

Then they said nothing for a long time. They only looked at each other.

At last the puppet said to his friend:

"Can you show me your ears?"

"Why not?" answered Candlewick. "But first, my dear Pinocchio, please, show me your ears."

"No! First you and then me."

"Well," said the puppet. "Let us take off our caps at the same time."

"All right!" answered Candlewick.

"Listen!" said Pinocchio. "I'll count!"

And Pinocchio began to count quickly:

"One! Two! Three!"

At the word "three" the two boys took off their caps and threw them into the air. When Pinocchio and Candlewick looked at each other, they began to laugh.

And they laughed and laughed.

Suddenly Candlewick stopped and said to his friend :

"Help me, help me, Pinocchio!"

"What's the matter with you?"

"I can't stand on my feet."

"And I can't stand on my feet. I can only stand on my feet and on my hands," said Pinocchio and began to cry.

He and Candlewick began to run round the room on their hands and feet.

And after that? What must a donkey have? Do you know? Yes, a tail. Soon Pinocchio had a tail, and Romeo had a tail. Their tails grew and grew, and the two boys became real donkeys. They couldn't talk now, they could only bray like real donkeys:

"Hee-haw! Hee-haw!"

Suddenly they heard a voice:

"Open the door! I'm the old man who brought you to this country. Open the door at once, I tell you!"

They opened the door, and the old man came into the room and said to the little donkeys:

"Good, boys! You bray very well! Come with me now, I'll sell you for good money!"

The poor donkeys stood there with their heads down and their tails between their legs. What could they do? Nothing! Nothing! Nothing!

Agree or disagree.

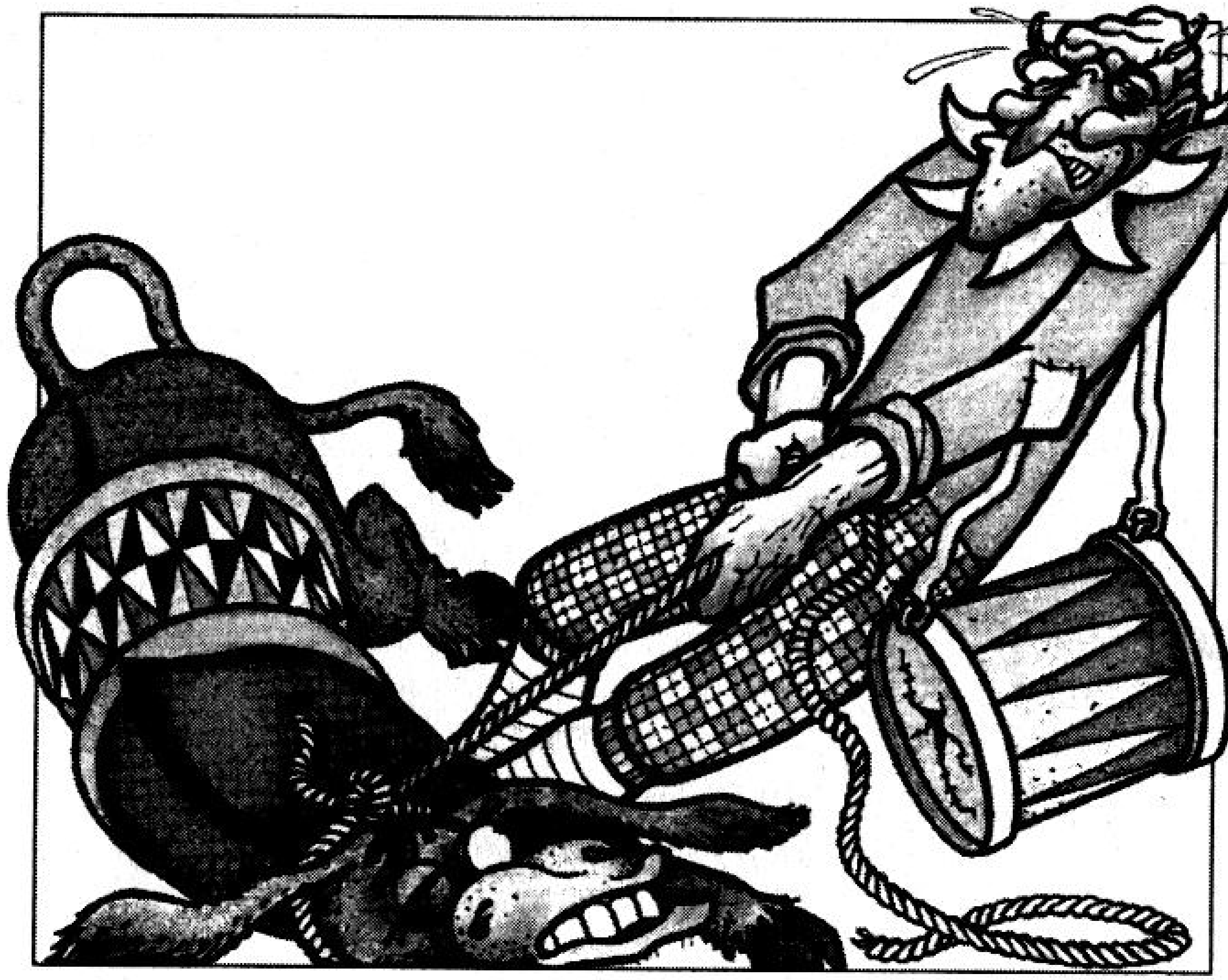
1) When Pinocchio came to his friend, he saw that Candlewick had no cap on.
2) Pinocchio said that the doctor told him to put the cap on as medicine.
3) First Candlewick took off his cap.
4) Pinocchio and Candlewick began to run round their room on their hands and feet.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio saw that his friend Candlewick...
2) Candlewick said to Pinocchio that he fell down and...
3) At the word "three"...
4) The poor donkeys stood...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did Pinocchio go?
2) What did Pinocchio see when he came to Candlewick?
3) What did Candlewick say about his cap?
4) What happened to Pinocchio and Candlewick when they began to run round the room?



PINOCCHIO DANCES IN THE CIRCUS

Now, my little readers, I must tell you all about this old man. He went from town to town and looked for boys who didn't want to go to school. He took them to Boobie-land. There they did not learn anything but only played and played, and then became donkeys. When they were donkeys, the old man sold them for good money.

Soon he sold Candlewick to a farmer and Pinocchio to the director of a circus. This man wanted to teach Pinocchio to jump and dance with his other animals. From the first day Pinocchio had a very, very hard life. He couldn't eat the grass which his master gave him for breakfast and for dinner. So he was always very hungry. At last he learned to eat grass. At first he couldn't dance the dances which his master tried to teach

him. His master beat him every day. At last he learned to dance many dances.

Then a day came when people saw placards on the street corners:

DO NOT FORGET TO COME
TO OUR CIRCUS
TOMORROW!

YOU WILL SEE
ALL THE ACROBATS
AND ALL THE HORSES
OF THE CIRCUS.

YOU WILL SEE
THE STAR OF THE DANCE —
LITTLE DONKEY PINOCCHIO!

COME! COME! COME!

Everybody wanted to see "the star of the dance". A lot of people stood near the circus every day and bought tickets.

Everything went well at first: Pinocchio jumped and danced. The children laughed and laughed, they liked him very much.

But one night he fell down and broke his leg. He couldn't get up for a long time. When he got up, he was lame.

"Pinocchio! Pinocchio! We want the little donkey! We want Pinocchio!" the people cried.

But the little donkey couldn't do anything for them. Next morning the animal doctor came to see him. When he saw Pinocchio's lame foot, he said:

"I'm sorry for you! You'll be lame all your life."

The director said to Pinocchio:

"What can I do with a lame donkey? Nothing! You will eat a lot of food and you can't work for it. I must sell you."

He found a man who wanted to buy a donkey. This man asked him:

"How much do you want for that lame donkey?"

"Two gold pieces," said the director.

"I'll give you one gold piece," answered the man. "He can't work. I want him only for his skin. I see that it is very hard. I want to make a drum for my children."

The man took the donkey to the sea. There he tied a stone round the donkey's neck. Then he tied a rope round the donkey's legs. He held the end of the rope in his hand and threw the donkey into the water. Then he sat down on the ground and waited.

Agree or disagree.

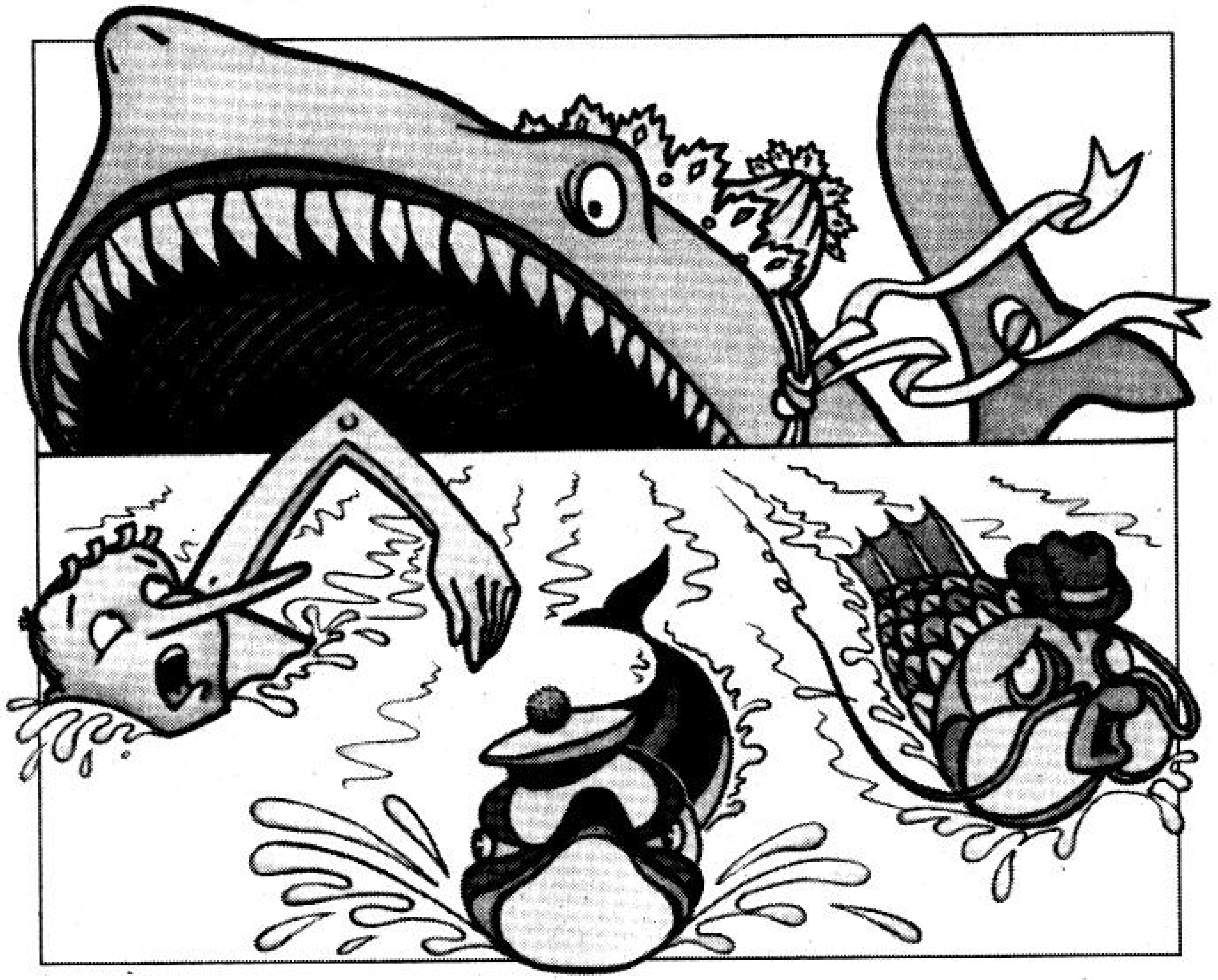
1) The old man looked for the boys who didn't like to go to school.
2) The old man sold Candlewick to the director of a circus and Pinocchio to a farmer.
3) Pinocchio's life at the circus wasn't very hard.
4) At last Pinocchio learned to dance two dances.

Complete the sentences.

1) When the lazy boys became donkeys, the old man...
2) Pinocchio couldn't eat...
3) At first Pinocchio couldn't dance...
4) One night Pinocchio fell down and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why did the old man go from town to town?
2) Whom did everybody want to see?
3) Why did the director of the circus sell Pinocchio?
4) What did that man do with Pinocchio?



PINOCCHIO BECOMES A PUPPET AGAIN; A DOGFISH SWALLOWS HIM

Fifty minutes passed and the man thought: "My poor little lame donkey is dead now. I'll pull him out of the water, and then I'll make a good drum out of his skin."

So he began to pull at the rope. He pulled and pulled and pulled, and at last — what do you think he pulled out of the water? A little dead donkey? No, not a donkey! He pulled a little wooden puppet out of the water! When he saw the wooden puppet, the poor man opened his mouth and didn't know what to say. Then he asked Pinocchio:

"And where is the little donkey that I threw into the sea?"

"I am the little donkey," said Pinocchio and laughed.

"You?"

"Yes, me."

"How can that be? You were a little donkey when I bought you!"

"Well, master, if you want to know, I'll tell you. Once I was a puppet. I went to school like other boys. But I was lazy and didn't want to learn. Then I ran away from home. One day I became a donkey with long ears and a long tail! Then a circus man bought me. He taught me to dance. But one night I fell and broke my leg. I became lame. So the director sold me to you and you bought me."

"And I gave him a gold piece for you. Now, who will give me back my gold piece?"

"And why did you buy me?" asked Pinocchio. "You bought me to make a drum out of my skin! A drum!"

"Yes! And now where shall I find another skin?"

"There are so many other little donkeys!" said Pinocchio.

"Tell me, you bad boy," said the man. "Is that the end of your story?"

"No," answered the puppet. "It isn't! When you threw me into the water, a lot of fish began to eat me. Some ate my ears, others my neck. Some fish ate the skin on my legs and one fish ate my tail. They ate up all the meat on the donkey's body. Then they tried to eat the wood. They couldn't do that because my wood is very hard. So they swam away. And now you know all my story. You know why you pulled a puppet out of the wafer and not a donkey."

"I can laugh at your story," cried the man, "but I know that I bought you for one gold piece. I must have my money back. Shall I tell you what I'll do? I'll sell you again for a gold piece."

"All right, sell me if you can!"

With these words Pinocchio jumped into the water and swam away.

He swam and swam. Suddenly he saw... Do you know what he saw? He saw the great head of the Dogfish! Only think how frightened Pinocchio was when he saw his great open mouth. Pinocchio tried to swim away from the Dogfish. He worked with his arms, his legs and his feet. He swam quicker and quicker. But nothing could help him! The Dogfish swam quicker than

the puppet. He swam up to Pinocchio, opened his great mouth with its great teeth and swallowed him.

It was very dark all round. Pinocchio could see nothing. He listened, but he could hear nothing. Suddenly he saw a light far away and he began to walk to it. The light became brighter and brighter. He walked and walked — and at last he found... What do you think he found?

Read the next chapter, and you will know what Pinocchio found in the body of the Dogfish.

Agree or disagree.

1) The man pulled a dead donkey out of the water.
2) When Pinocchio finished his story, he thanked the man and went away.
3) The Dogfish swam quicker than Pinocchio.
4) The Dogfish tried to eat Pinocchio, but the wood was very hard, so the Dogfish swam away.

Complete the sentences.

1) When the man saw a wooden puppet, he...
2) With these words Pinocchio...
3) The Dogfish swam up to...
4) Suddenly Pinocchio saw a light...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Why did the man buy Pinocchio?
2) What did Pinocchio do when he finished his story?
3) Why couldn't Pinocchio swim away from the Dogfish?
4) What happened to Pinocchio?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 13).***

1 Why did Candlewick have a cap on?

a) It was very cold that day.
b) Candlewick didn't want anybody to see his ears.

c) The doctor told him to put the cap on as medicine.
d) Candlewick always had his cap on.

2 Who took off his cap first?

a) Candlewick took off his cap first.
b) Pinocchio took off his cap first.
c) They took off their caps at the same time.
d) At the word "three" the old man took off his cap.

3 What did the old man do?

a) He went from town to town with his circus.
b) He went from town to town and looked for the boys who didn't like to go to school.
c) He made drums and sold them.
d) He bought donkeys and taught them to dance.

4 Why were the first days at the circus very hard for Pinocchio?

a) He couldn't eat the grass the master gave him for breakfast and dinner.
b) He didn't like the director of the circus.
c) He couldn't dance many dances.
d) Everybody wanted to see "the star of the dance".

5 What happened to Pinocchio one night?

a) The Dogfish swallowed him.
b) The children saw his long ears and began to laugh at him.
c) The master beat him because he couldn't dance well.
d) He fell down and broke his leg.

6 Why did the director of the circus sell Pinocchio?

a) Pinocchio ate very much.
b) Pinocchio couldn't dance because he was lame.
c) Pinocchio didn't learn to dance many dances.
d) The director wanted to get some money to buy a new drum for his circus.

7 **What happened to Pinocchio then?**

a) The man made a drum out of Pinocchio's skin.
b) Pinocchio became the director of the circus.
c) The Dogfish swallowed Pinocchio.
d) Pinocchio broke his leg again.



NOW YOU WILL KNOW EVERYTHING

Pinocchio walked and walked and suddenly he saw a little table with a lamp on it. There was a little old man at the table. The old man was Geppetto, Pinocchio's father. Pinocchio was so happy that he wanted to laugh, and he wanted to cry at the same time. He ran up to the table and kissed the old man.

"Oh, my dear Papa! I'm with you at last! Now we'll always be together, always, always!"

"Oh, are you really my dear Pinocchio?" said the little old man.

"Yes, yes, I am Pinocchio, really Pinocchio! And you are not angry with me. Oh, my dear Papa, how good you are!"

Then Pinocchio began to tell his story. And Geppetto said:

"I saw you too when I was on the sea. But I could not come back. Then the big Dogfish swallowed me. It was two years ago."

"But how could you live here all that time?" asked Pinocchio. "What do you eat here? Where did you get the lamp?"

"I'll tell you everything," answered Geppetto. "On the day when the Dogfish swallowed me, he swallowed a big ship, too. There were many things in it: meat and chickens, sugar and sweets. I am not hungry."

"But, dear Papa," said Pinocchio, "now we must get out of here."

"How?"

"We must go through the mouth of the Dogfish, jump into the sea, and swim away."

"You talk well, my dear Pinocchio, but I can't swim."

"I am a good swimmer," said Pinocchio. "You can get on my back."

They began to walk back. At last they came to the mouth of the Dogfish. It was open, because the Dogfish was asleep, and he always slept with his mouth open. "This is a good time to run away," said Geppetto. They began to walk down the great tongue of the Dogfish. When they came to the end of it, the puppet said to his father:

"Get on my back and put your arms round my neck."

Pinocchio jumped into the water with his father on his back and began to swim. He swam and swam and at last they came home.

Agree or disagree.

1) Pinocchio was so happy that he began to cry.
2) The mouth of the Dogfish was closed, because the Dogfish always slept with his mouth closed.
3) Geppetto jumped into the water with Pinocchio on his back and began to swim.
4) Geppetto and Pinocchio jumped into the water and swam and swam and at last they came home.

Complete the sentences.

1) Pinocchio was so happy that...
2) Geppetto was not hungry because...
3) The mouth of the Dogfish was open because...
4) Pinocchio jumped into...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Where did Pinocchio see Geppetto?
2) Why was Pinocchio so happy?
3) Why wasn't Geppetto hungry?
4) How did Pinocchio and his father swim away from the Dogfish?



PINOCCHIO BECOMES A BOY AT LAST

Well, my dear little readers, this is the last chapter of my story. Pinocchio became a very good puppet. He began to make little baskets and sell them to people: he wanted to buy a new coat for his father.

Once he met the Snail on the road. The Snail lived with the Fairy. Pinocchio was very glad to see her.

"Tell me quickly, my dear little Snail," said Pinocchio. "Where is my Mamma, where is my good Fairy? Is she far from here? Can I go to see her?"

"My dear Pinocchio, the poor Fairy is ill."

"Is she in hospital?"

"Yes, she is in hospital! And she has no money to buy a piece of bread."

"Is that so?" cried Pinocchio. "Oh, poor Fairy! Poor Fairy! I have only one gold piece. Here it is. Take it, Snail, and carry it at once to my good Fairy!"

The Snail took the gold piece and went to the Fairy with it as quickly as she could.

That night when Pinocchio was asleep he saw the Fairy. She kissed him and said:

"Very good, Pinocchio! You are a good boy, and I'll give you a present. You'll know tomorrow what that present is. Good night, dear boy! Try to be good and you'll be happy!"

At that moment Pinocchio opened his eyes. It was morning. When he sat up, he saw that he was not a wooden puppet, but a boy like all other boys. He jumped out of bed and found a new shirt, new trousers, a new cap and new shoes ready for him. He put on his new clothes. Then he put his hands in his pockets and pulled out a little purse. On the purse were these words: "The Fairy with the Blue Hair gives this money back to her dear Pinocchio. She thanks him very much." He opened the purse and found... one gold piece? No, children, he found a hundred gold pieces there.

Then he looked in the mirror. He didn't see a wooden puppet. He saw a boy with black hair, blue eyes and a nice mouth.

How happy Geppetto was when he saw him!

"Father, where is the old wooden puppet?" asked Pinocchio.

"Here it is," answered Geppetto and looked at a big puppet on a chair. Pinocchio looked at it and then said:

"How bad I was when I was a puppet, and how glad I am to be a boy!"

Agree or disagree.

1) At last Pinocchio became a very good puppet.
2) Once Pinocchio met the Fairy on the road.
3) On the purse there were the words: "It is never too late to learn".
4) This is the last chapter of the story.

✍ ***Complete the sentences.***

1) Pinocchio wanted...
2) The Snail told Pinocchio that the Fairy had no...
3) The Snail took the gold piece and...
4) Pinocchio jumped out of bed and...

? ***Answer the questions.***

1) Whom did Pinocchio meet on the road?
2) What did the Snail tell Pinocchio about the Fairy?
3) What did Pinocchio find in one of his pockets?
4) What did Pinocchio say when he looked in the mirror in the morning?

☑ ***Check yourself (Quiz 14).***

1 Pinocchio was so happy that...

a) he began to cry.
b) he began to laugh.
c) he wanted to laugh and to cry at the same time.
d) he didn't know what to do.

2 When Pinocchio and his father came to the mouth of the Dogfish, it was open because...

a) Geppetto asked the Dogfish to open the mouth.
b) Pinocchio made the Dogfish open the mouth.
c) The Dogfish always slept with his mouth open.
d) The mouth of the Dogfish was always open.

3 Pinocchio jumped into the water...

a) with his father on his back and began to swim.
b) and swam away from his father.
c) and swam and at last he came home.
d) and Geppetto jumped into the water too, and they swam away from the Dogfish.

4 The Snail told Pinocchio that...

a) the Fairy wanted to see him very much.
b) the Fairy had no money to buy a piece of bread.
c) the Fairy worked in a hospital.
d) the Fairy bought some new clothes for Pinocchio.

5 Pinocchio became a very good boy and he...

a) began to go to school every day.
b) began to make baskets and sell them to people.
c) began to carry water in jugs.
d) began to make shoes and sell them to people.

6 Pinocchio gave a gold piece to the Snail and asked her...

a) to carry it at once to the Fairy.
b) to buy a piece of bread for the Fairy.
c) to buy a warm coat for Geppetto.
d) to buy some meat for Alidoro.

7 When Pinocchio looked in the mirror in the morning, he saw...

a) long ears on his head.
b) a little donkey with blue eyes.
c) a big wooden puppet with blue eyes and a nice nose.
d) a boy with black hair and blue eyes.

Quiz 1.

1. d; 2. b; 3. b; 4. c; 5. b; 6. a; 7. d.

Quiz 2.

1. a; 2. c; 3. d; 4. a; 5. b; 6. d; 7. a.

Quiz 3.

1. a; 2. c; 3. c; 4 a; 5 c; 6. b; 7. d.

Quiz 4.

1. d; 2. d; 3. c; 4. d; 5. a; 6. d; 7. d.

Quiz 5.

1. d; 2. a; 3. c; 4. c; 5. b; 6. b; 7. d.

Quiz 6.

1. b; 2. a; 3. d; 4. b; 5. a; 6. c; 7. a

Quiz 7.

1. b; 2. d; 3. c; 4. c; 5. a; 6. c; 7. a.

Quiz 8.

1. b; 2. c; 3. b; 4. a; 5. d; 6. c; 7. b.

Quiz 9.

1. c; 2. a; 3. c; 4. b; 5. c; 6. b; 7. b.

Quiz 10.

1. a; 2. c; 3. c; 4. d; 5. d; 6. b; 7. c.

Quiz 11.

1. d; 2. a; 3. c; 4. b; 5. c; 6. a; 7. d.

Quiz 12.

1. c; 2. b; 3. d; 4. c; 5. a; 6. d; 7. a.

Quiz 13.

1. b; 2. c; 3. b; 4. a; 5. d; 6. b; 7. c.

Quiz 14.

1. c; 2. c; 3. a; 4. b; 5. b; 6. a; 7. d.

VOCABULARY

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — имя прилагательное
adv adverb — наречие
conj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — имя существительное
num numeral — числительное
p.p. past participle — причастие прошедшего времени
pl plural — множественное число
prep preposition — предлог
pron pronoun — местоимение
v verb — глагол
зд. здесь
мн. число — множественное число
см. смотри
сравнит. степень — сравнительная степень

A

a [eɪ (*полная форма*); ə (*редуцированная форма*)] неопределенный артикль;
an — *перед гласными*
about [ə'baʊt] *prep* о, об, относительно; около, приблизительно; по; *adv* вокруг, кругом
adventure [əd'ventʃə] *n* приключение
afraid [ə'freɪd] *a* испуганный;
be afraid of smth. бояться чего-л.
after ['ɑ:ftə] *prep* после; по; за; позади
afternoon [ˌɑ:ftə'nu:n] *n* время после полудня
good afternoon добрый день *(при встрече во второй половине дня)*
again [ə'geɪn] *adv* снова, опять
ago [ə'gəʊ] *adv* тому назад
air [eə] *n* воздух
alive [ə'laɪv] *a* живой
all [ɔ:l] *prep* весь, вся, всё; всякий, каждый
all right *a* в порядке; *adv* как нужно; *int* хорошо, согласен
along [ə'lɒŋ] *prep* вдоль, по; *adv* вперёд
always ['ɔ:lweɪz] *adv* всегда
and [ænd] *conj* и, а
angry ['æŋgrɪ] *a* сердитый, раздражённый
be angry with smb. сердиться на кого-л.
another [ə'nʌðə] *prep* другой, ещё один
answer ['ɑ:nsə] *v* отвечать
any ['enɪ] *pron* какой-нибудь *(в вопросительном и отрицательном предложениях)*
anybody ['enɪbɒdɪ] *pron* кто-нибудь
anything ['enɪθɪŋ] *pron* что-нибудь
apple ['æpl] *n* яблоко

arithmetic [ə'rɪθmətɪk] *n* арифметика

arm [ɑ:m] *n* рука *(от кисти до плеча)*

as [æz (*полная форма*); əz (*редуцированная форма*)] *conj* как, так как

as ... as также ... как

ask [ɑ:sk] v спрашивать, просить, попросить

asleep [ə'sli:p] *a* спящий

be asleep спать

fall asleep заснуть

at [æt (*полная форма*); ət (*редуцированная форма*)] *prep* в, у, при; на; за

ate [et] *см.* **eat**

autumn ['ɔ:təm] *n* осень

away [ə'weɪ] *adv* обозначает удаление данного места далеко; обозначает движение, удаление прочь

axe [æks] *n* топор

B

back [bæk] *n* спина; *adv* назад; обратно

bad [bæd] *a* плохой

basket ['bɑ:skɪt] *n* корзина

be [bi: (*полная форма*); bɪ (*редуцированная форма*)] **(was, were)** *v* быть, существовать, находиться; являться

beard [bɪəd] *n* борода

beat [bi:t] (beat) *v* бить, ударять

beautiful ['bju:tɪful] *a* красивый, прекрасный

became [bɪ'keɪm] *см.* **become**

because [bɪ'kɔ:z] *conj* потому что, так как

become [bɪ'kʌm] **(became)** *v* становиться, сделаться

bed [bed] *n* кровать, постель

before [bɪ'fɔ:] *prep* перед, до; *adv* раньше, прежде

beg [beg] *v* просить, попрошайничать

began [bɪ'gæn] *см.* **begin**

begin [bɪ'gɪn] **(began)** *v* начинать(ся)

behind [bɪ'haɪnd] *adv* сзади, позади

best [best] *a* лучший; *adv* лучше всего

better ['betə] *a* лучше; *adv* лучше, больше

be better чувствовать себя лучше, выздоравливать

between [bɪ'twi:n] *prep* между

big [bɪg] *a* большой

bird [bɜ:d] *n* птица

bit [bɪt] *см.* **bite**

bite [baɪt] **(bit)** *n* укус; *v* кусать(ся)

bite off откусить

black [blæk] *a* черный

blind [blaɪnd] *a* слепой

blue [blu:] *a* голубой

boat [bəʊt] *n* лодка

body ['bɒdɪ] *n* тело, туловище

bone [bəʊn] *n* кость

Boobie-land ['bu:bɪ'lænd] *n* страна дураков

bought [bɔ:t] *см.* **buy**

boy [bɔɪ] *n* мальчик

bray [breɪ] *v* реветь (*об осле*)

bread [bred] *n* хлеб

break [breɪk] **(broke)** *v* ломать

breakfast ['brekfəst] *n* завтрак

bright [braɪt] *a* блестящий, яркий

brightly ['braɪtlɪ] *adv ярко*

bring [brɪŋ] **(brought)** v приносить

broke [brəʊk] *см.* **break**

brother ['brʌðə] *n* брат

brought ['brɔ:t] *см.* **bring**

burn [bɜ:n] **(burnt)** *v* (с)гореть; жечь, сжигать

burn away сгореть, сгорать

burnt [bɜ:nt] *см.* **burn**

busy ['bɪzɪ] *a* занятой

but [bʌt] *conj* но, а, однако, тем не менее

buy [baɪ] **(bought)** *v* покупать

by [baɪ] *prep* у, при, около, по, к

C

cake [keɪk] *n* пирожное

call [kɔ:l] *v* называть

came [keɪm] *см.* **come**

can [kæn (*полная форма*); kən (*редуцированная форма*)] **(could)** *v* мочь

candlewick ['kændl,wɪk] *n* фитиль, фитилёк

cannot ['kænət] *v* не могу, не можешь, не может, не можем, не можете, не могут

can't [kɑ:nt] *v* = **cannot**

cap [kæp] *n* шапка, шапочка

carry ['kærɪ] *v* нести, носить; везти, возить

cart [kɑ:t] *n* повозка, фургон

catch [kætʃ] **(caught)** *v* ловить, поймать, схватить.

cat [kæt] *n* кошка

caught [kɔ:t] *см.* **catch**

cave [keɪv] *n* пещера

chair [tʃeə] *n* стул

chapter ['tʃæptə] *n* глава *(в книге)*

check [tʃek] *v* проверять, контролировать

chicken ['tʃɪkɪn] *n* цыпленок

child [tʃaɪld] *(мн. число* **children)** *n* ребенок, дитя

circus ['sɜ:kəs] *n* цирк

clean [kli:n] *a* чистый

clothes [kləʊðz] *n* одежда

coat [kəʊt] *n* пальто

cold [kəʊld] *a* холодный; *n* холод

he is cold ему холодно

come [kʌm] **(came)** *v* приходить, приезжать

come down спуститься, спускаться

come in входить

come up to подходить к

complete [kəm'pli:t] *v* заканчивать, завершать

corner ['kɔ:nə] *n* угол

could [kʊd] *см.* **can**

count [kaʊnt] *v* считать

country ['kʌntrɪ] *n* страна

crawfish ['krɔ:fɪʃ] *n* речной рак

cry [kraɪ] *n* крик; *v* кричать; плакать

cup [kʌp] *n* чашка

cut [kʌt] **(cut)** *v* резать, вырезать

cut off отрезать, обрезать

cut out вырезать

D

dance [dɑ:ns] *n* танец; *v* танцевать

dark [dɑ:k] *a* темный

day [deɪ] *n* день

dead [ded] *a* мертвый

be dead умереть

dear [dɪə] *a* дорогой, милый

December [dɪ'sembə] *n* декабрь

did [dɪd] *см.* **do**
dinner [ˈdɪnə] *n* обед
do [du:] **(did)** *v* делать, выполнять
doctor [ˈdɒktə] *n* доктор
dog [dɒg] *n* собака
dogfish [ˈdɒgfɪʃ] *n* морская собака (акула)
donkey [ˈdɒŋkɪ] *n* осел
door [dɔ:] *n* дверь
down [daʊn] *adv* вниз(у)
drank [dræŋk] *см.* **drink**
drink [drɪŋk] **(drank)** *n* питьё; *v* пить
dress [dres] *n* платье; *v* одеваться
drum [drʌm] *n* барабан
dry [draɪ] *a* сухой; *v* сушить

E

each other [ˌi:tʃˈʌðə] *pron* друг друга
ear [ɪə] *n* ухо
early [ˈɜ:lɪ] *a* ранний; *adv* рано
earth [ɜ:θ] *n* земля
eat [i:t] (ate) *v* есть, кушать
  eat up съесть, съедать
end [end] *n* конец; *v* кончаться
evening [ˈi:vnɪŋ] *n* вечер
every [ˈevrɪ] *pron* каждый
everybody [ˈevrɪbɒdɪ] *pron* каждый, всякий, все
everything [ˈevrɪθɪŋ] *pron* всё
eye [aɪ] *n* глаз

F

face [feɪs] *n* лицо
fact [fækt] *n* факт
fairy [ˈfeərɪ] *n* волшебница, фея; *a* волшебный
fairy-tale [ˈfeərɪteɪl] *n* сказка
fall [fɔ:l] **(fell)** *v* падать
  fall down упасть
  fall ill заболеть
  fall out of выпасть из
far [fɑ:] *a* далекий, дальний; *adv* далеко
  far away вдали, далеко
farm [fɑ:m] *n* ферма
farmer [ˈfɑ:mə] *n* фермер
farmhouse [ˈfɑ:mhaʊs] *n* жилой дом на ферме
fast [fɑ:st] *adv* быстро, скоро
father [ˈfɑ:ðə] *n* отец
feel [fi:l] **(felt)** *v* чувствовать (себя)
feet [fi:t] *(мн. число от* **foot)** *n* ноги
fell [fel] *см.* **fall**
felt [felt] *см.* **feel**
few [fju:] *pron* мало
  a few несколько, немного
field [fi:ld] *n* поле
fight [faɪt] **(fought)** *v* драться, бороться
figure [ˈfɪgə] *n* фигура
find [faɪnd] **(found)** *v* находить, найти
fire [ˈfaɪə] *n* огонь; камин
fireplace [ˈfaɪəpleɪs] *n* очаг; камин
first [fɜ:st] *num* первый; *adv* сначала, сперва
  at first сначала
fish [fɪʃ] *n* рыба, рыбы
fisherman [ˈfɪʃə mən] *n* рыбак
five [faɪv] *num* пять
floor [flɔ:] *n* пол
food [fu:d] *n* пища
following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] *a* следующий
foot [fʊt] *(мн. число* **feet)** *n* нога, ступня

for [fɔ:] *prep* для, ради, за, на, в течение, в продолжение
forget [fəˈget] **(forgot)** *v* забывать
forgot [fəˈgɒt] *см.* **forget**
forty [ˈfɔ:tɪ] *num* сорок
fought [fɔ:t] *см.* **fight**
found [faʊnd] *см.* **find**
four [fɔ:] *num* четыре
fourteen [ˌfɔ:ˈti:n] *num* четырнадцать
fox [fɒks] *n* лиса
friend [frend] *n* друг, подруга
frightened [ˈfraɪtnd] *a* испуганный
  be frightened бояться, (ис)пугаться
from [frɒm (*полная форма*); frəm (*редуцированная форма*)] *prep* от, из, с
front [frʌnt] *n* передняя сторона чего-л.
  in front of перед кем-л. (чем-л.)
frying-pan [ˈfraɪɪŋˌpæn] *n* сковорода

G

game [geɪm] *n* игра
  play games играть в игры
garden [gɑ:dn] *n* сад
gave [geɪv] *см.* **give**
gentleman [ˈdʒentlmən] *n* джентельмен
get [get] **(got)** *v* получать, доставлять; становиться, делаться; добираться
  get in (into) попадать (в)
  get up вставать
  get out (of) уходить, уйти (из)
  get out! убирайся!
girl [gɜ:l] *n* девочка
give [gɪv] **(gave)** *v* давать
  give back отда(ва)ть
glad [glæd] *a* радостный
  be glad радоваться
go [gəʊ] **(went)** *v* идти, ходить, пойти; ехать, уходить; уезжать; отправляться
  go away уйти, уходить
  go in (into) войти, входить (в)
  go out (of) выйти, выходить (из)
  go to bed ложиться спать
  go to see smbd пойти к кому-л., навестить кого-л.
gold [gəʊld] *n* золото
good [gʊd] *a* хороший; добрый
good-bye [gʊdˈbaɪ] *int* до свидания
  say good-bye проститься, прощаться
got [gɒt] *см.* **get**
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
great [greɪt] *a* большой; великий
green [gri:n] *a* зеленый
grew [gru:] *см.* **grow**
ground [graʊnd] *n* земля
grow [grəʊ] **(grew)** *v* (с)делаться, становиться; расти

H

had [hæd (*полная форма*); həd (*редуцированная форма*)] *см.* **have**
hair [heə] *n* волосы
hand [hænd] *n* рука (кисть руки)
hang [hæŋ] *v* повесить (кого-л.)
hang [hæŋ] **(hung)** *v* висеть, повесить (что-л.)
happy [ˈhæpɪ] *a* счастливый, довольный

hard [hɑ:d] *adv* упорно, усердно; сильно; тяжело; *a* твердый; трудный; тяжелый
have [hæv (*полная форма*); həv (*редуцированная форма*)] **(had)** *v* иметь
he [hi: (*полная форма*); hɪ (*редуцированная форма*)] *pron* он
head [hed] *n* голова
hear [hɪə] **(heard)** *v* слышать, услышать
heard [hɜ:d] *см.* **hear**
heavy [ˈhevɪ] *a* тяжелый (*о весе*)
held [held] *см.* **hold**
help [help] *v* помогать
her [hə:] *pron* её, свой (*чей?*); ей, её (*кого?*)
here [hɪə] *adv* здесь, сюда
  from here отсюда
hid [hɪd] *см.* **hide**
hide [haɪd] **(hid)** *v* прятаться
hit [hɪt] **(hit)** *v* ударять
hold [həʊld] **(held)** *v* держать
  hold out протягивать
hole [həʊl] *n* ямка; дыра
holidays [ˈhɒlɪdɪz] *n* каникулы
home [həʊm] *n* дом, жилище; *adv* домой
homework[ˈhəʊmwɜ:k] *n* домашнее задание
hospital [ˈhɒspɪtl] *n* больница
hot [hɒt] *a* горячий, жаркий
hour [ˈaʊə] *n* час
how [haʊ] *adv* как, каким образом
  how much сколько
hundred [ˈhʌndrəd] *num* сто; *n* сотня
hung [hʌŋ] *см.* **hang**
hungry [ˈhʌŋgrɪ] *a* голодный
  be hungry быть голодным, хотеть есть

I

I [aɪ] *pron я*
if [ɪf] *conj* если
ill [ɪl] *a* больной
  be ill болеть
  fall ill заболеть
in [ɪn] *prep* в (внутри)
into [ˈɪntu: (*полная форма*); ˈɪntə (*редуцированная форма*)] *prep* в (внутрь)
island [ˈaɪlənd] *n* остров
it [ɪt] *pron* он, она, оно; его, ему, её, ей *(о неодушевленных предметах и животных)*
its [ɪts] *pron* его, её; свой *(о неодушевленных предметах и животных)*

J

January [ˈdʒænjʊərɪ] *n* январь
jug [dʒʌg] *n* кувшин, банка
jump [dʒʌmp] *v* прыгать
  jump down спрыгнуть
  jump into вскочить в
  jump out (of) выскочить (из)
  jump up вскочить, подпрыгнуть

K

kill [kɪl] *v* убить, убивать
kind [kaɪnd] *a* добрый, любезный
king [kɪŋ] *n* король
kiss [kɪs] *v* целовать
kitchen [ˈkɪtʃɪn] *n* кухня
kitten [kɪtn] *n* котёнок
knew [nju:] *см.* **know**
knife [naɪf] *n* нож

knock [nɒk] **(at)** *v* стучать (в)
know [nəʊ] **(knew)** *v* знать; узна(ва)ть

L

lame [leɪm] *a* хромой
large [lɑ:dʒ] *a* большой
last [lɑ:st] *a* последний, прошлый
  at last наконец
  last night вчера вечером
late [leɪt] *a* поздний
laziness [ˈleɪzɪnɪs] лень
lazy [ˈleɪzɪ] *a* ленивый
lay [leɪ] *см.* **lie**
learn [lɜ:n] *n* учить(ся), учить что-л.; научиться чему-л.; узнавать (о чем-л.)
left [left] a левый
  to the left налево
leg [leg] *n* нога; ножка
lesson [ˈlesn] *n* урок
  teach a lesson проучить
let [let] *v* позволять
  let us go пойдём(те)
lie [laɪ] *n* ложь, неправда
  tell a lie (lies) говорить неправду
lie [laɪ] **(lay)** *v* лежать
life [laɪf] *n* жизнь
light [laɪt] *n* свет, огонь
like [laɪk] *v* любить, нравиться
like [laɪk] *prep* подобно, как; *a* похожий
  be like быть похожим
  look like походить на
listen [ˈlɪsn] *v* **(to)** слушать, прислушиваться
little [ˈlɪtl] *a* маленький; *adv* мало
  a little немного

live [lɪv] *v* жить
long [lɒŋ] *a* длинный, долгий; *adv* долго
  long live да здравствует
look [lʊk] *v* смотреть, глядеть; казаться, выглядеть
  look at смотреть на
  look back оглянуться
  look for искать
  look like быть похожим, походить на
  look out (of) выглядывать (из)
  look round осматриваться
  look up взглянуть, поднять голову
lost [lɒst] *см.* **lose**
lose [lu:z] **(lost)** *v* (по)терять
lot [lɒt] *n* большое количество
  a lot of много

M

made [meɪd] *см.* **make**
make [meɪk] **(made)** *v* делать, сделать; заставить
mamma [məˈmɑ:, ˈmɑ:mə] *n* мама, мамочка
man [mæn] *n* человек; мужчина
many [ˈmenɪ] *pron* много, многие
marten [ˈmɑ:tɪn] *n* куница
mask [mɑ:sk] *n* маска
master [ˈmɑ:stə] *n* хозяин, господин
matter [ˈmætə] *n* дело, вопрос
  what's the matter? в чем дело? что случилось?
may [meɪ] v могу, можешь, может, можете, могут
  may I? можно (мне)?
me [mi:] *pron* мне, меня; *разг.* я
medicine [ˈmedsɪn] *n* лекарство

take medicine принимать лекарство
meet [mi:t] (**met**) *v* встречать, встретить
middle [mɪdl] *n* середина
in the middle посередине
milk [mɪlk] *n* молоко
minute[ˈmɪnɪt] *n* минута, мгновение, момент
mirror [ˈmɪrə] *n* зеркало
moment [ˈməʊmənt] *n* миг, мгновение, момент, минута
at that moment в это время (в этот момент)
money [ˈmʌnɪ] n деньги
month [mʌnθ] *n* месяц
more [mɔ:] *(сравнит. степень от* **much, many***)* больше, более; ещё
morning [ˈmɔ:nɪŋ] *n* утро
mouth [maʊθ] *n* рот
much [mʌtʃ] *adv* много
music [ˈmju:zɪk] *n* музыка
must [mʌst] *v* должен, должна, должно, должны
my [maɪ] *pron* мой, моя, моё, мои

N

name [neɪm] *n* имя, название
near [nɪə] *prep* около, близко к; *a* близкий
nearest [ˈnɪərɪst] *a* ближайший
neck [nek] *n* шея
net [net] *n* сеть
never [ˈnevə] *adv* никогда
new [nju:] *a* новый
next [nekst] *a* следующий; ближайший
nice [naɪs] *a* хороший, красивый
night [naɪt] *n* ночь; вечер
at night ночью
good night доброй ночи
no [nəʊ] *pron* никакой
nobody [ˈnəʊbədɪ] *pron* никто, никого
noise [nɔɪz] *n* шум
note-book [ˈnəʊtbʊk] *n* тетрадь
nothing [ˈnʌθɪŋ] *pron* ничего
now [naʊ] *adv* теперь, сейчас

O

off [ɒf] *prep* с, от
often [ɒfn] *adv* часто
oh [əʊ] *int* о!, ох!
old [əʊld] *a* старый
old man старик
old woman старуха
on [ɔn] *prep* на, по
once [wʌns] *adv* однажды, один раз, когда-то
once upon a time жил-был когда-то (*начало сказок*)
at once немедленно, сразу, сейчас же
only [ˈəʊnlɪ] *adv* только
open [ˈəʊpən] *v* откры(ва)ть(ся); *a* открытый
other [ˈʌðə] *pron* другой
out (of) [ˈaʊt əv] *prep* из
over [ˈəʊvə] *prep* над, сверх
over [ˈəʊvə] *adv* указывает на окончание действия
be over кончаться, проходить
owl [aʊl] *n* сова

P

page [peɪʤ] *n* страница
papa [pəˈpɑ:, ˈpɑ:pə] *n* папа, папочка

paper [ˈpeɪpə] *n* бумага
parrot [ˈpærət] *n* попугай
pass [pɑ:s] *v* пройти, проходить
paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа
people [pi:pl] *n* люди, народ
piece [pi:s] *n* кусок
placard [ˈplækɑ:d] *n* афиша
plate [pleɪt] *n* тарелка
play [pleɪ] *n* представление, пьеса; *v* играть
play the drum играть на барабане
play games играть в игры
playground [ˈpleɪgraʊnd] *n* площадка для игр
playmate [ˈpleɪmeɪt] *n* товарищ (по играм)
please [pli:z] *int* пожалуйста
policeman [pəˈli:smən] *n* полицейский
poor [puə] *a* бедный
present [ˈprezənt] *n* подарок
pull [pul] *v* тащить
pull out вытаскивать
puppet [ˈpʌpɪt] *n* кукла
puppy [ˈpʌpɪ] *n* щенок
purse [pɜ:s] *n* кошелёк
push [pʊʃ] *v* толкать
put [pʊt] (**put**) *v* класть, положить, ставить, поставить
put aside откладывать, отложить
put on надеть, надевать

Q

quick [kwɪk] *a* быстрый
be quick! скорей!, живей!
quickly [ˈkwɪklɪ] *adv* быстро, скоро
quiz [kwɪz] *n* проверочные вопросы; опрос; контрольная работа
question [ˈkwestʃn] *n* вопрос

R

rain [reɪn] *v* проливаться дождем
it began to rain начался дождь
ran [ræn] *см.* **run**
raven [ˈreɪvn] *n* ворон
read [ri:d] (**read**) *v* читать
reader [ˈri:də] *n* читатель
ready [ˈredɪ] *a* готовый
real [rɪəl] *a* настоящий
red [red] *a* красный
rest [rest] *v* отдыхать, отдохнуть
right [raɪt] *a* правильный
all right! хорошо!
road [rəʊd] *n* дорога
rob [rɒb] *v* красть, грабить
robber [ˈrɒbə] *n* грабитель
rope [rəʊp] *n* веревка
round [raʊnd] *a* круглый
round [raʊnd] *prep* кругом, вокруг
run [rʌn] (**ran**) *v* бежать, бегать
run round бегать по
run after бежать за
run away выбегать, выбежать
run up (to) подбегать (к)

S

said [sed] *см.* **say**
same [seɪm] *pron* тот (же) самый
sang [sæŋ] *см.* **sing**
sat [sæt] *см.* **sit**
save [seɪv] *v* спасать, спасти
saw [sɔ:] *см.* **see**
say [seɪ] *v* (**said**) сказать, говорить

school-book [ˈsku:lbʊk] *n* учебник; *здесь* букварь
schoolboy [ˈsku:lbɔɪ] *n* школьник
schoolmate [ˈsku:lmeɪt] *n* товарищ по школе, соученик
sea [si:] *n* море
second [ˈsekənd] *num* второй
see [si:] **(saw)** *v* видеть
sell [sel] **(sold)** *v* прода(ва)ть
send [send] **(sent)** *v* пос(ы)лать
sent [sent] *см.* **send**
sentence [ˈsentəns] *n* предложение
shall [ʃæl (*полная форма*); ʃəl, ʃl (*редуцированные формы*)] *v вспомогательный глагол для образования будущего времени*
shine [ʃaɪn] **(shone)** *v* светить, сиять, блестеть
ship [ʃɪp] *n* корабль
shirt [ʃɜ:t] *n* рубашка
shoe [ʃu:] *n* ботинок, башмак
shone [ʃəʊn] *см.* **shine**
short [ʃɔ:t] *a* короткий
show [ʃəʊ] *n* представление; *v* показ(ыв)ать
showman [ˈʃəʊmən] *n* балаганщик
shut [ʃʌt] **(shut)** *v* закрывать(ся), запирать; *a* закрытый
side [saɪd] *n* сторона
silly [ˈsɪlɪ] *a* глупый
sing [sɪŋ] **(sang)** *v* петь
sir [sɜ:] *n* сэр, господин, сударь *(как обращение)*
sit [sɪt] **(sat)** *v* сидеть
  sit down садиться
skin [skɪn] *n* кожа; шкура
sky [skaɪ] *n* небо
sleep [sli:p] **(slept)** *v* спать; *n* сон
slept [slept] *см.* **sleep**

small [smɔ:l] *a* маленький, небольшой
snail [sneɪl] *n* улитка
snow [snəʊ] *n* снег
  it is snowing идет снег
so [səʊ] *adv* так, таким образом, поэтому
  so... that так..., что
sold [səʊld] *см.* **sell**
soldier [ˈsəʊldʒə] *n* солдат
some [sʌm] *pron* некоторый, какой-то, какой-нибудь; некоторое количество; несколько, некоторые
somebody [ˈsʌmbədɪ] *pron* кто-то, кто-нибудь
something [ˈsʌmθɪŋ] *pron* что-то, что-нибудь
song [sɒŋ] *n* песня
soon [su:n] *adv* скоро, вскоре
sorry [ˈsɒrɪ] *a* огорченный, сожалеющий
  I am sorry виноват, простите
  be sorry for жалеть, пожалеть (кого-л.)
soup [su:p] *n* суп
speak [spi:k] **(spoke)** *v* говорить, разговаривать
spoke [spəʊk] *см.* **speak**
stand [stænd] **(stood)** *v* стоять
  stand up встать
star [stɑ:] *n* звезда
statement [ˈsteɪtmənt] *n* утверждение
stay [steɪ] *v* оста(ва)ться
stone [stəʊn] *n* камень
stood [stʊd] *см.* **stand**
stop [stɒp] *v* останавливать(ся)
story [ˈstɒrɪ] *n* история; рассказ
suddenly [ˈsʌdnlɪ] *adv* внезапно, вдруг

sugar [ˈʃʊgə] *n* сахар
sun [sʌn] *n* солнце
swallow [ˈswɒləʊ] *v* проглотить
swam [swæm] *см.* **swim**
sweet [swi:t] *n* конфета
swim [swɪm] **(swam)** *v* плавать
  swim away уплыть
  swim up подплыть
swimmer [ˈswɪmə] *n* пловец

T

tail [teɪl] *n* хвост
take [teɪk] **(took)** *v* брать, взять
  take off снимать (одежду)
  take out of вынуть из
  take to отвести
tale [teɪl] *n* рассказ
  fairy-tale сказка
talk [tɔ:k] *n* беседа, разговор; *v* беседовать, говорить
  have a talk поговорить
taught [tɔ:t] *см.* **teach**
teach [ti:tʃ] **(taught)** *v* (на)учить (кого-л.); преподавать
  teach a lesson проучить
teeth [ti:θ] *n pl (мн. число от* **tooth)** зубы
tell [tel] **(told)** *v* говорить, рассказывать, сообщать
  tell a lie (lies) лгать, говорить неправду
than [ðæn (*полная форма*), ðən (*редуцированная форма*)] *conj* чем *(при сравнительной степени)*
thank [θæŋk] *v* благодарить
  thank you (very much) большое спасибо
that [ðæt (*полная форма*); ðət (*редуцированная форма*)] *conj* что

that [ðæt (*полная форма*); ðət (*редуцированная форма*)] *pron* тот, та, то; который
theatre [ˈθɪətə] *n* театр
then [ðen] *adv* тогда, потом, затем
there [ðeə] *adv* там, туда
there [ðeə (*полная форма*); ðə (*редуцированная форма*)] *лишенное лексического значения слово, употр. в основном с гл.* to be (-is, -are) есть, имеется, имеются
these [ði:z] *pron (мн. число от* **this)** эти
thin [θɪn] *a* худой
thing [θɪŋ] *n* вещь, предмет; дело
  poor thing бедняжка
think [θɪŋk] **(thought)** *v* думать
third [θɜ:d] *num* третий
this [ðɪs] **(these)** *pron* этот, эта, это
those [ðəʊz] *pron (мн. число от* **these)** те
thought [θɔ:t] *см.* **think**
threw [θru:] *см.* **throw**
through [θru:] *prep* через, сквозь
throw [θrəʊ] **(threw)** *v* бросать, кидать, швырять
ticket [ˈtɪkɪt] *n* билет
tie [taɪ] **(tied)** *v* завязать, обвязать
time [taɪm] *n* время; раз
  it is time... пора
tired [taɪəd] *a* усталый, утомленный
  be (get) tired уставать, устать
to [tu: (*полная форма*), tʊ (*редуцированная форма, употр. перед гласными*), tə (*редуцированная форма, употр.*

перед согласными)] prep указывает на направление к, в, на; *указывает на лицо по отношению к которому или в интересах которого совершается действие, передается дательным падежом*
to [tə] *частица при инфинитиве*
together [tə'geðə] *adv* вместе
told [təʊld] *см.* **tell**
tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ] *adv* завтра
tongue [tʌŋ] *n* язык
too [tu:] *adv* также, тоже; слишком, очень
took [tʊk] *см.* **take**
tooth [tu:θ] *n* зуб
town [taʊn] *n* город
trap [træp] *n* ловушка
tree [tri:] *n* дерево
tried [traɪd] *см.* **try**
trousers ['traʊzəz] *n* брюки
true [tru:] *a* правильный, настоящий, истинный
try [traɪ] **(tried)** *v* стараться, пытаться, пробовать
twenty ['twentɪ] *num* двадцать

U

under ['ʌndə] *adv* под
understand [ˌʌndə'stænd] **(understood)** *v* понимать, понять
understood [ˌʌndə'stʊd] *см.* **understand**
up [ʌp] *adv* вверх(у), наверх(у)
up and down взад и вперёд, вверх и вниз
upon [ə'pɒn] **(= on)** *prep* на
us [ʌs] *pron* нас, нам

V

very['verɪ] *adv* очень
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос

W

wait [weɪt] *v* ждать, ожидать
walk [wɔ:k] *v* идти, ходить (пешком)
want [wɒnt] *v* хотеть; нуждаться
warm [wɔ:m] *a* тёплый
watch-dog ['wɒtʃdɒg] *n* сторожевая собака
water ['wɔ:tə] *n* вода
way [weɪ] *n* путь, дорога
weather ['weθə] *n* погода
week [wi:k] *n* неделя
well [wel] *adv* хорошо; *a* здоровый
be well быть здоровым, чувствовать себя хорошо
well [wel] *int* итак
went [went] *см.* **go**
were [wɜ:] *см.* **be**
wet [wet] *a* мокрый
be wet промокнуть
what [wɔt] *pron* что; такой
what for для чего
which [wɪtʃ] *pron* который, какой
will [wɪl] *v вспомогательный глагол для образования будущего времени*
white [waɪt] *a* белый
wind [wɪnd] *n* ветер
window ['wɪndəʊ] *n* окно
winter ['wɪntə] *n* зима
without [wɪ'ðaʊt] *prep* без
woman ['wʊmən] *n* женщина
won't [wəʊnt] = **will not**

wood [wʊd] *n* дрова; дерево (*материал*)
wooden ['wʊdn] *a* деревянный
word [wɜ:d] *n* слово
work [wɜ:k] *v* работать; *n* работа
write [raɪt] **(wrote)** *v* писать
wrote [rəʊt] *см.* **write**

Y

yard [jɑ:d] *n* двор
year [jɪə] *n* год
yesterday ['jestədɪ] *adv* вчера
yourself [jə'self] *pron* себя, -ся, -сь; себе

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

Учебное издание

Коллоди Карло

ПРИКЛЮЧЕНИЯ ПИНОККИО

Адаптация текста *Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой*
Упражнения к тексту, словарь *С. В. Монахова*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Оформление *А. М. Кузнецов*
Иллюстрации *Н. А. Савицкий*
Иллюстрации на обложку *Н. А. Сафронова*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректор *И. С. Борисова*

Подписано в печать 18.12.07. Формат 60×90/16.
Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 9. Усл.-печ. л. 9.
Тираж 10 000 экз. Заказ № 2624.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

Отпечатано в ОАО «Можайский полиграфический комбинат»

'Sheriff,' said Robin, 'I shall keep all this money and divide it among my men. It is not half as much as you stole from them. I always punish people who tell lies. You do so many evil deeds,' he went on, 'that you deserve to be hanged. But your wife was kind to me yesterday. For her sake, I let you go. But if you are not kind to my people I will not let you off so easily another time.'

- Beginner
- Elementary
- Для начинающих
- Pre-Intermediate
- Для продолжающих первого уровня
- Intermediate
- Для продолжающих второго уровня
- Upper Intermediate
- Для продолжающих третьего уровня
- Advanced
- Для совершенствующихся



ISBN 978-5-8112-3272-7

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

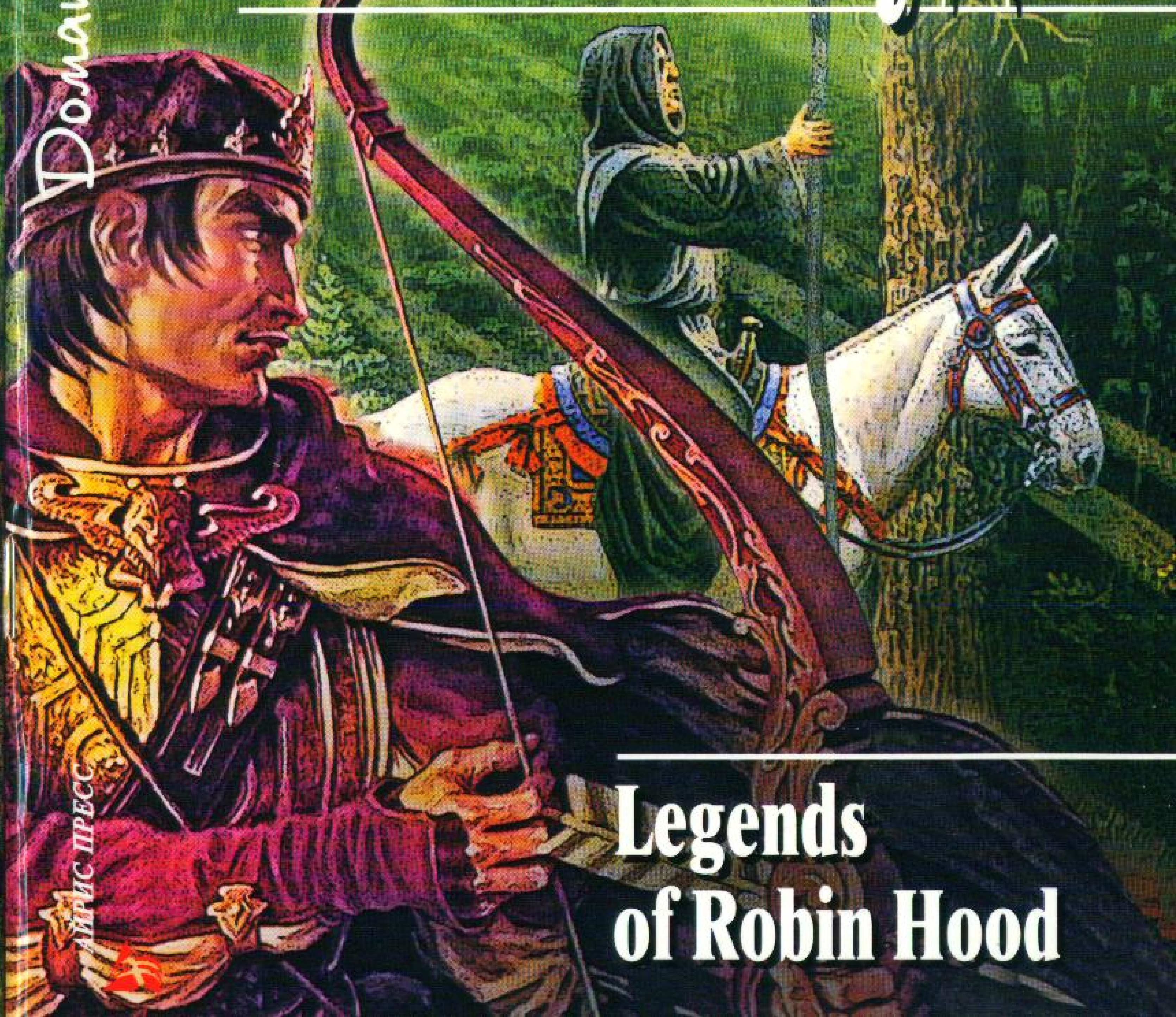
Домашнее чтение

Elementary

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Английский клуб

Легенды о Робин Гуде



Legends of Robin Hood

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Легенды о Робин Гуде

Адаптация текста, комментарий, упражнения, словарь
Н. Н. Чесовой

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Л38

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Легенды о Робин Гуде / адаптация текста, коммент., упражнения, словарь Н. Н. Чесовой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 80 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

Л38

ISBN 978-5-8112-3272-7

В книгу вошли легенды о Робин Гуде, которые можно использовать для чтения и обсуждения на занятиях в школе и для самостоятельного изучения дома. Тексты рассказов адаптированы и снабжены комментарием, а также заданиями для отработки и закрепления навыков владения лексикой и грамматикой.

Книга адресована учащимся младших классов школ, лицеев и гимназий. Уровень адаптации позволяет также студентам неязыковых вузов использовать книгу для самостоятельного чтения.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-3272-7

Предисловие

Данное учебное пособие является сборником рассказов о Робин Гуде.

Рассказы подобраны с учетом интересов средних школьников для создания мотивации чтения.

Тексты адаптированы, снабжены словарем и комментариями. Они служат более адекватному пониманию лингвострановедческих, лексических и грамматических понятий и избавляют от необходимости отвлекаться на поиски нужного значения слова или фразеологизма, из-за чего теряется целостность восприятия и чтение становится скучным.

К каждому тексту предлагается ряд заданий для отработки и закрепления навыков владения грамматическим (Grammar) и лексическим (Vocabulary) материалом, для развития навыков чтения (Reading), говорения (Speaking) и письма (Writing).

Уровень адаптации (Elementary) соответствует грамматическому и лексическому уровню УМК 3–4 класса общеобразовательной школы и 2–3 класса школ с углубленным изучением английского языка.

Объем каждого текста оптимально рассчитан на уровень навыков чтения младших школьников, что позволяет использовать пособие как на уроке в качестве проверочных работ по чтению, так и в качестве заданий для самостоятельного домашнего чтения, а также как «летнее» чтение.

Книга адресована изучающим английский язык ученикам младших классов школ, лицеев и гимназий для развития навыков речевой деятельности на уроках в школе, как задание по домашнему чтению, для подготовки к экзаменам.

Данный сборник станет незаменимым помощником преподавателя при подготовке экзаменационного материала по чтению.

Уровень адаптации и тематический подбор текстов позволяет использовать книгу для самостоятельного чтения студентам неязыковых вузов и взрослым читателям, которым необходима практика такого рода.

Пособие прошло апробацию в гимназии 1526 ЮАО г. Москвы.



HOW ROBIN HOOD CAME TO LIVE IN THE GREEN WOOD

Many years ago, there lived a king in England. His name was **Richard Coeur de Lion**. Coeur de Lion is French. It means lion-hearted. It is strange that an English king had a French name. More than a hundred years before this king, a French duke named William came to England. He defeated the English, and became the king of England.

He took many Frenchmen or Normans with him. These Normans were all poor but very proud. They came with William to help him fight. He promised to give them money and lands.

So Duke William stole lands, houses and money from the Saxon nobles and gave them to the Normans. The Saxon nobles became the servants of the proud Normans. So, there were two races in England. Each spoke their own language. Each hated the other.

When Richard became king there was still a great hatred between the two races.

Richard Coeur de Lion was a brave and noble man. He loved brave men and **noble deeds**. He hated all mean and cruel, and the cowards who did them. He was ready to help the weak.

Richard himself was not gentle. He was very angry and terrible in battle. He loved to fight with people who were stronger or better armed than himself and never hurt the weak.

But Richard did not stay in England. Far over the seas there is a country of Palestine. Christian people in all ages think gratefully of that country. But at that time it was in the hands of the enemies. So Christian people gathered big armies of brave men from every country and sent them to try to win it back.

Brave King Richard too fought for this city. So he gathered as much money and brave men as he could, and **set out for** the Holy Land. Before he went away he called two bishops. He thought they were good and wise men, and said to them: 'Take care of England while I am away. Rule my people wisely and well, and I will reward you when I return.' The bishops promised to do as he asked.

King Richard had a brother. His name was Prince John. He was different from King Richard **in every way**. He was **not at all** a nice man. He was jealous of Richard because he was king. He was angry because he wanted to rule while Richard was away. John said to the bishops, 'You must let me rule while the king is away.' And the bishops let him to do so. Deep down in his wicked heart John meant to make himself king and never let Richard come back any more.

A sad time began for the Saxons. John tried to please the Normans. He hoped they could help to make him king. He gave them land and money. He took it from the Saxons and gave it

to the Normans. Many of the Saxons became homeless. They lived a wild life in the forests.

One of the few Saxon nobles was Robert, Earl of Huntingdon. He had one son. His name was Robert too, but people called him Robin. He was **a favourite** with everyone. He was tall, strong, handsome, and full of fun. He was brave and fearless too. He was the best archer in all the countryside. He never hurt the weak and poor.

Robert of Huntingdon had a bitter enemy. One day this enemy came with many soldiers to kill the earl and take all his goods and lands. There was a terrible fight. In the end, Robert and all his men were killed. His house was burned and all his money stolen. Only Robin was saved. He was the best archer and no soldier could go near him. He fought bravely till the last. But when he saw that his father was dead and his home in flames, he didn't fight any longer. He took his bow and arrows and went to the forest of Sherwood.

Prince John's men were close behind him. On and on he went, deeper and deeper into the trees. **At last** he sat under a great tree.

His heart was full of anger and thoughts of revenge. Cruel men in one day took everything. His father, his home, servants, land, money and his name.

Robin loved the forest. Soon it comforted him. At last the tears came hot and fast, and sobs shook him. The bitterness and anger went out of his heart; only unhappiness was there.

In the evening Robin said his prayers and **swore an oath**. This was the oath: —

'I swear to honour God and the King,
To help the weak and fight the strong,
To take from the rich and give to the poor,
So God will help me with His power.'

Then he lay down on the grass under the trees and fell asleep.

And this is how Robin Hood first came to live in the Green Wood and have all his wonderful adventures.

Helpful Words & Notes

noble deeds — благородные поступки
set out for — отправляться
in every way — во всех отношениях
not at all — вообще, совсем
a favourite — любимчик
at last — наконец
swear an oath — приносить клятву

'I swear to honour God and the King,
To help the weak and fight the strong,
To take from the rich and give to the poor,
So God will help me with His power.' —
«Клянусь перед Богом и Королем
Помогать слабым и бороться с сильными;
Забирать у богатых и отдавать бедным;
Да поможет мне Бог!»

Richard Coeur de Lion — Ричард Львиное сердце; английский король из рода Плантагенетов, правивший в 1189–1199 гг.

Activities

Reading

Who in the text did the following?

1) defeated the English	
2) became the servants of the proud Normans	
3) hated all mean and cruel	
4) tried to please the Normans	
5) fought bravely till the last	

Vocabulary

Find in the text the words with the opposite meaning.

calm	
far	
tame	
alive	
last	

Speaking

Comment on the character of the story (*Richard Coeur de Lion, Duke William, Prince John, Robin of Huntingdon*). The following words can help you.

brave
noble
strong
handsome
full of fun
wicked
poor
proud
jealous

Grammar

Make up the words according to their Russian meaning.

	-ly, -less, -ness	
bitter		горечь
brave		смело
home		бездомный
grateful		благодарно
unhappy		несчастье

Writing

Describe the characters of the story.

- Richard Coeur de Lion
- Duke William
- Prince John
- Robin of Huntingdon

THE MEETING OF ROBIN HOOD AND LITTLE JOHN

When Robin came to live in Sherwood Forest he was rather sad. He could not forget all he lost. But he was not long lonely. Other poor men joined him. They soon formed a band, the Merry Men.

Robin Hood was captain of the band of Merry Men. **Next to** him came Little John.

Robin loved Little John best of all his friends. Little John loved Robin better than any one else in the world. Yet the first time they met, they fought awfully.

This morning Robin took his bow and arrows, and went to the forest.

He came to a river. It was wide and deep and crossed by a small bridge. It was very narrow. If two people tried to pass each other on it, one would certainly fall into the water.

Robin began to cross the bridge and noticed a tall man.

'Go back and wait,' he called out.

The stranger laughed, **'I have as good a right** to the bridge as you. *You* can go back till *I* get across.'

This made Robin very angry.

He took an arrow and called out again, 'If you don't go back I'll shoot.'

'You talk like a coward,' said the stranger. 'Is it fair to stand with your bow and arrow when I have only a stick? You are a coward. You are afraid of the beating I would give you.'

Robin was not a coward, and he was not afraid. So he threw his bow and arrows.

'You are a big **bully**,' he said. 'Wait until I get a stick.'

The stranger laughed.

Robin Hood cut himself a thick stick. He saw that the stranger was much stronger than himself.

That did not frighten Robin. He wanted to prove that he was not a coward. Robin Hood **was fond of** fighting.

'We will fight on the bridge,' said he, 'and he who first falls into the river will lose the battle.'

'All right,' said the stranger. 'I'm not afraid.'

It was very difficult to fight on a narrow bridge. First Robin gave the stranger a bang.

'Ah, ha!' said he, 'I'll give you as good as I get,' and crack went at Robin's head.

Bang, smash, crack, bang, they went at each other. Their blows fell fast.

The stranger felt he could not stand it much longer. With all his strength he sent Robin right into the river. **Head over heels** he went, and disappeared under the water.

The stranger fell in after him. He was so surprised at Robin's sudden disappearance. He knelt down on the bridge, and looked into the water. 'Hallo, **my good man**,' he called. 'Where are you?'

He **could not help laughing**. Robin looked so funny in the water.

'I'm here,' called Robin. 'I'm all right. I'm just swimming.'

'You are not an easy man to beat,' he said with a laugh and helped Robin.

'Well,' said Robin, laughing too, 'you are a brave man and a good fighter. It was a fair fight, and you won the battle. I don't want to quarrel with you. Will you **shake hands** and be friends with me?'

'With all my heart,' said the stranger. 'It is a long time since I met any one who could use a stick as you can.'

So they shook hands like the best of friends.

Then Robin blew his horn loudly.

The stranger saw many men dressed in green.

'It is nothing,' laughed Robin. 'This young fellow and I had a fight.'

When Robin's men heard that, they were very angry. 'If he fought our master, we will fight him,' said they. But Robin called out, 'Stop, stop, it was a fair fight. He is a brave man, and we are very good friends now.'

Robin bowed politely to him, 'I beg you to forgive my men. They will not harm you now they know that you are my friend, for I am Robin Hood.'

The stranger was very much surprised when he heard that he fought Robin Hood. He heard so many tales about him.

'If you come and live with me and my Merry Men,' said Robin, 'I will give you a green suit.'

'I'd like it,' said the stranger. 'My name is John Little. I promise to serve you truly.'

'John Little!' said Will Stutely laughing. 'John Little! What a name for a man that height!'

'Well,' said Robin at last, 'if we don't get some dinner I think we will all grow very thin. Come along, my little John, I'm sure you must be hungry too.'

'Little John,' said Will Stutely, 'that's **the very name for** him. We must christen him again, and I will be his godfather.'

They had a very merry dinner. Robin found that John had a wise head and a witty tongue. He was more and more pleased with his new friend.

But Will and the others did not forget that they wanted to christen John Little again. Seven of them came behind him, wrapped him up in a long, green cloak, pretending he was a baby.

It was a very noisy christening. The men all shouted and laughed. John Little laughed in turn.

'**Hush, baby, hush**,' they said.

Then Will stepped up beside him and began to speak.

They had some buckets of water and poured it over poor Little John. He was as wet as Robin after he fell into the river. Little John looked so funny.

At last the christening was over. Then all the men **gave three cheers** for Little John.

They sang, danced, and played the whole afternoon.

From that day Little John always lived with Robin. They became very, very great friends.

Helpful Words & Notes

next to — рядом
I have as good a right — я имею такое же право
bully — забияка
be fond of — увлекаться, любить
bang — удар, стук
smash — грохот

crack — треск
head over heels — вверх тормашками
my good man — здорово!
could not help laughing — не мог не рассмеяться
shake hands — пожать руки
the very name for — самое подходящее имя для
Hush, baby, hush — Тише, малыш, тише
three cheers — троекратное «Ура!»
Sherwood Forest — Шервудский лес; находился в тридцати милях от города Ноттингем в графстве Ноттингемшир в Англии

Activities

Reading

Connect the two parts of the sentences to make them true to the text.

1) If two people tried to pass each other on it,	a) John had a wise head and a witty tongue.
2) Robin found that	b) Robin's sudden disappearance.
3) So they shook hands like	c) was much stronger than himself.
4) He was so surprised at	d) one would certainly fall into the water.
5) He saw that the stranger	e) the best of friends.

Vocabulary

Read the definitions and connect them with the corresponding adjectives: *wise, witty, merry, pleased, fair.*

1) laughingly happy; joyful; cheerful	
2) to feel enjoyment, pleasure, or satisfaction; glad or contented	
3) free from dishonesty or injustice	
4) judging properly as to what is true or right	
5) intelligent; clever	

Speaking

1. Explain why:

a) Robin was sad.
b) Robin was very angry when started crossing the bridge.
c) they poured some buckets of water over poor Little John.

2. Prove that:

a) Robin was a good fighter.
b) Little John was a good man.

The following words and phrases may help you:

As far as I can see, in my opinion, as the author put it, to my mind.

Writing

Write down a story as if you were:

a) Robin
b) Little John
c) Merry Man

Grammar

Complete the table with the adjectives from the text.

wet		
		best
	stronger	
long		
	angrier	



THE WEDDING OF ALLAN-A-DALE

One day Robin met a gay young knight. The knight was dressed in scarlet and a hat with feathers. He sang a merry song.

Robin wondered who the knight could be, but he did not stop him.

The next day Little John and Much went for a walk.

As they walked along they met the same knight. But how different he looked! It was difficult to believe that he was the same man.

He was dressed in grey. His head hung down. So sad was he that he did not see Little John and Much. They led him to Robin Hood.

Robin welcomed him to the Green Wood. Then very politely he asked if the stranger had any money to give for Robin Hood and his Merry Men.

When Robin heard that the knight was poor, he was very sorry for him. He asked him to sit down and tell him why he was so sad. So the young man told his tale.

'My name is Allan-a-Dale,' he said. 'Seven years ago I fell in love with the most beautiful lady in the world. She loved me too and we were very happy. But her father was very angry. I was poor, and we were too young to marry. He promised that in seven years and a day we should be married. The seven years are over. Yesterday should have been our wedding day. **But alas!** The old knight didn't speak to me. He said his daughter was not for such a poor man as I. To-morrow she will marry another. He is old and ugly, but he has much money. I lost my love, and my heart is broken.'

Then poor Allan-a-Dale dropped his head in his hands and cried.

'No,' said Robin, 'do not suffer. A girl who changes her mind is not worth so much sadness.'

But Allan-a-Dale shook his head. 'Alas!' he said, 'she loves me. It is the old knight, her father, who forces her to do this thing.'

'Then what will you give to me,' said Robin Hood, 'if I help you to get your true love again?'

'**Why**,' said Allan, 'I have no gold. But if you bring my true love back to me, I swear to serve you truly **for ever and a day**. I can make and sing sweet songs and **play upon the harp**.'

Robin was very glad to hear that. He said, 'to-morrow is your wedding day.' He asked where the church where this wedding was to take place was. Allan told him it was to be at Dale Abbey.

Very early next morning Robin Hood rose. He dressed like an old harper, took a harp, set off for Dale Abbey. He left orders with Little John to follow with twenty-four good men in Lincoln green. Also he was to bring with him Allan-a-dale.

Robin Hood arrived to the Abbey.

'What do you do here, my good man?' said the Bishop.

'Why,' replied Robin, 'I am a minstrel. There is to be a great wedding to-day, I came to see it. Afterwards I can make a song about it.'

'That is well,' said the Bishop, 'I love the sound of the harp and you can play some sweet music to us.'

'I should like to see the bride and bridegroom first, before I play any music,' replied Robin. He went into the church, and sat down not far from the altar.

Soon the wedding guests began to arrive. Robin could hear what they said.

'Poor girl,' said one, 'so young and pretty.'

'And he so old and ugly.'

'Not to say wicked.'

'And she loves some one else, I hear.'

'Yes, Allan-a-Dale.'

'What! The handsome young man who sings so beautifully?'

'Then why does he not carry her off?'

'Oh, he is too poor.'

'Oh, pity!'

Robin was glad. From all he heard, he learned that every one in the church was sorry for poor Christabel.

At last the bridegroom came. **So old and ugly he was!**

Suddenly there was a little move at the door. All heads turned. The bride arrived.

She was so beautiful. Her face was sad, her eyes down.

The Bishop opened his book to begin the service.

At that moment Robin jumped and stood beside the bride.

'Stop!' he cried, 'I do not like this wedding. The bridegroom is too old and ugly for such a lovely bride.'

'Who are you who disturb the peace of our holy service?' asked the Bishop.

'I am Robin Hood,' replied he.

When they heard that, every one stopped screaming and wanted to see the wonderful man of whom they heard so much.

'Now,' said Robin, 'Let the lady choose of all these men which she will have.'

The Lady Christabel's face was pink. She saw that Allan-a-Dale was standing beside her. She put her hand into his. He kissed it tenderly. She was no longer like a lily, but a queen with shining, happy eyes.

'Now,' said Robin, 'we can have the wedding. Sir Bishop, do the duty.'

'No, I will not,' said the Bishop.

'If you will not we must get some one else,' said Robin. 'Come along, Friar Tuck.'

So Friar Tuck put on the Bishop's clothes and took his big book.

He began the marriage service. 'Who gives this girl to be married?'

'That do I,' said Robin.

Christabel's father wanted to stop the wedding, but he could not. Two of Robin's men kept their hands over his mouth. So he could not make a sound. The Bishop and the old knight were so angry that they could not speak. Besides they were both so old that they could do nothing.

So Christabel and Allan-a-Dale were married. They went to live with Robin Hood in Sherwood Forest.

The people talked much about this wedding. They said it was the prettiest and the merriest wedding. And to this day, if you go to Derbyshire, you can still see the ruins of the great abbey.

Helpful Words & Notes

But alas! — но, увы!
Why — как!

for ever and a day — навсегда
play upon the harp — играть на арфе
So old and ugly he was! — Какой же он был старый и страшный!

Activities

Reading

Circle 'T' if the sentence is true. Circle 'F' if the sentence is false.

1)	The knight was really very poor.	T	F
2)	Everyone in the church was happy for Christabel because she married an old and rich man.	T	F
3)	Christabel's face was sad, her eyes down because she didn't want to marry Allan.	T	F
4)	The Bishop and the old knight were very happy.	T	F
5)	Christabel and Allan went to live with Robin Hood in Sherwood Forest.	T	F

Grammar

Complete the table with the sentences according to their Tense forms.

1) The people talked much about this wedding.
2) You can still see the ruins of the great abbey.
3) I do not like this wedding.
4) What will you give to me?
5) The Bishop opened his book to begin the service.
6) I will not do it.

Present Simple	Past Simple	Future Simple

Speaking

1. Are the following sentences true or false? Prove your point of view using the facts from the text. Use the words and phrases given below.

1. Allan loved Christabel very much.
2. Robin helped those people who were honest and true.

I feel...
I doubt...
I am sure that...
I suppose that...
To my mind...
As far as I can see...
I believe that...

2. Retell the story as if you were:

a) Christabel
b) The old knight
c) the girl's father

Writing

Imagine that you saw this story happen and now you are writing a letter to your friend about it. Don't forget to:

- describe the time, the place

- describe the main characters
- mention your feelings

While making up your letter use the following linking words:

Firstly, first of all, before, after, then, finally, but, on the one hand, on the other hand, nevertheless, however.

ROBIN HOOD AND THE BUTCHER

The Sheriff of Nottingham hated Robin and wanted to kill him.

The Sheriff was a very unkind man. He treated the poor Saxons very badly. He often took away all their money and their houses. Sometimes he cut off their ears or fingers. The poor people went into the wood, and Robin gave them food and money. Sometimes they went home again, but very often they stayed with him, and became his men.

The Sheriff knew this, so he hated Robin more.

But he could not catch Robin. Robin **used to** go to Nottingham very often. But the Sheriff never knew him. So he always escaped.

The Sheriff was much afraid to go into the forest to take him. Robin's men fought for him because they loved him. The Sheriff's men only served him because they were afraid of him.

One day Robin met a butcher in the forest.

This butcher was going to the market at Nottingham.

'What have you there, my man?' he asked.

'Butcher meat for Nottingham Market,' replied the man. 'Do you want to buy some?'

'Yes, I do,' said Robin. 'I'll buy it all and your horse too. I'd like to go to Nottingham and see what kind of butcher I will make.'

So the butcher sold his horse, all his meat and clothes to Robin.

Then Robin went to Nottingham to sell his meat at the market.

In those days there were very few shops, so every one used to go to market to buy and sell.

Robin began to cry.

'Prime meat, ladies. Come and buy. Cheapest meat in all the market. **Twopence a pound**, ladies. Come and buy.'

'What!' said every one, 'beef at twopence a pound! Why, it is usually tenpence.'

Robin knew nothing about selling meat, he never bought any. He used to live on what they shot in the forest.

Every one came round his stall to buy.

The butchers began to talk among themselves and say, 'Who is this man?'

'Do you think he stole the meat?'

'Perhaps his father died and left him a business.'

'The sooner he loses it all, the better for us.'

'It is silly,' said one old man. He was the chief butcher.

Laughter came from Robin's corner. He was not only selling meat, but making jokes about it all the time.

'I tell you what,' said the old butcher, 'We'd better go talk to him, and find out who he is. We must ask him to come and have dinner with us and the Sheriff to-day.' On market days, the butchers used to have dinner together, after market was over, and the Sheriff used to come and have dinner with them.

'Thank you,' said Robin. 'I should like it. I am very hungry and thirsty.'

'Come, then,' said the butchers.

The old butcher began asking Robin questions, to try and find out something about him.

'You have not been here before?' he said.

'**Have I not?**' replied Robin.

'I have not seen you, at least.'

'**Have you not?**'

'You are new to the business?'

'**Am I?**'

'Well, you seem to be,' said the old butcher.

'**Do I?**' replied Robin laughing.

The old butcher got nothing.

The Sheriff's wife was very kind, and was interested in Robin when she heard that he was the new butcher. Robin had such pleasant manners. She thought he was a very nice man. She was quite sorry when the Sheriff came and took him away for dinner.

'I hope to see you again, kind sir,' she said saying goodbye. 'Come to see me next time you have meat to sell.'

'Thank you, lady, I will not forget your kindness,' replied Robin.

At dinner the Sheriff sat at one end of the table and the old butcher at the other. Robin, as the greatest stranger, had the place of honour on the Sheriff's right hand.

The Sheriff was thinking hard. He was a greedy old man. He said to himself, 'This silly young fellow does not know the value of things. If he has any cattle I might buy it for very little. I could sell it again to the butchers for a good price. In that way I should make a lot of money.'

After dinner he led Robin aside.

'**See here**, young man,' he said, 'I like your looks. You are new to this business. Don't trust these men,' he pointed to the butchers. 'Take my advice. If you have any cattle to sell, come to me. I'll give you a good price.'

The Sheriff was happy when he heard that Robin had so many cattle for sale. He made up his mind that it would be easy to cheat this silly young man. He began to count the money. He was such a greedy old man. But there was a twinkle in Robin's eye.

'Now, young man, when can I see these cattle of yours?' asked the Sheriff. 'I can't **buy a pig in a poke**, you know. I

must see them first. And the land too, and the land too,' he added.

'The sooner the better,' said Robin. 'I start for home to-morrow morning. If you like to ride with me I will show you the cattle and the land too.'

'Fine,' said the Sheriff. 'To-morrow morning then, after breakfast, I go with you. And see here, young man,' he added, 'you won't sell to any one else. **It is a bargain**, isn't it?'

'Oh, certainly. I won't even speak of it to any one,' replied Robin; and he went away, laughing to himself.

That night the Sheriff counted out three hundred **pounds** in gold.

'It's a lot of money,' he said to himself, 'a lot of money. Still I must pay him something for his cattle.'

He put the gold under his pillow. Then he went to bed and tried to sleep. But he was too excited.

In the morning when the Sheriff saw that they were going to Sherwood Forest, he began to feel nervous.

'There is a bold, bad man in these woods,' he said. 'He is called Robin Hood. He robs people, he — do you think we will meet him?'

'I am sure we won't meet him,' replied Robin with a laugh.

'Well, I hope not, I am sure,' said the Sheriff. 'I never dare to ride through the forest unless I have my soldiers with me. He is a bold, bad man.'

Robin only laughed, and they rode on right into the forest.

'Look there,' he cried, 'look! What do you think of my cattle?'

'I think,' said the Sheriff, 'I think I should go back to Nottingham.'

'What! and not buy any cattle? What is the matter? Come, come, Sheriff and besides, you have money for it.'

At the mention of money the Sheriff turned pale. 'Young man,' he said, 'I don't like you at all. I want to go back to Nottingham. This isn't money I have in my bags, it is only stones.'

Robin blew his horn three times and Little John and all the company came out.

'Good morning, Little John,' said Robin.

'Good morning, Master Robin,' he replied. 'What orders have you for to-day?'

'Well, in the first place I hope you have something nice for dinner. I took the Sheriff of Nottingham to dine with us,' answered Robin.

'Yes,' said Little John, 'the cooks are busy. But we didn't wait for so fine a guest as the Sheriff of Nottingham,' he added. 'I hope he will pay honestly.'

Robin Hood always gave these men who stole money from poor people a very fine dinner and then he made them pay much money for it.

The Sheriff was very much afraid. He knew he was in the hands of Robin Hood. He was angry too.

They had a very fine dinner. The Sheriff began to feel comfortable and to think he was going **to get off** easily, when Robin said, 'Now, Master Sheriff, you must pay for your dinner.'

'Oh! I am a poor man,' said the Sheriff, 'I have no money.'

'No money! What have you in your bags, then?' asked Robin.

'Only stones, nothing but stones, I told you before,' replied the Sheriff.

'Little John, go and look in the Sheriff's bags,' said Robin.

Little John counted out three hundred pounds.

'Sheriff,' said Robin, 'I shall keep all this money and divide it among my men. It is not half as much as you stole from them. I always punish people who tell lies. You do so many evil deeds,' he went on, 'that you deserve to be hanged. But your wife was kind to me yesterday. **For her sake**, I let you go. But

if you are not kind to my people I will not let you off so easily another time.'

And Robin called for the Sheriff's horse.

Helpful Words & Notes

used to — иметь обыкновение
two pence a pound — два пенса за фунт
Have I not?, Have you not?, Am I?, Do I? — Правда? Да?
See here — Послушай
buy a pig in a poke — покупать кота в мешке
It is a bargain — По рукам (Согласен)
get off — отделаться
for her sake — ради нее
pound — фунт; мера веса в Англии, равная 453,6г
pound — фунт стерлингов; денежная единица в Англии, равная 100 пенсам

Activities

Reading

Circle 'T' if the sentence is true. Circle 'F' if the sentence is false.

1) The Sheriff of Nottingham liked Robin very much.	T	F
2) One day Robin went to a butcher.	T	F
3) The butcher sold his horse, all his meat and clothes to Robin.	T	F
4) The Sheriff felt comfortable at dinner in Sherwood Forest.	T	F
5) The Sheriff didn't want to go back to Nottingham.	T	F

Grammar

Translate the sentences and compare their meaning depending on the word order.

1) The Sheriff was hard thinking. The Sheriff was thinking hard.	
2) He was not selling meat only. He was not selling only meat.	
3) I always punish people who tell lies. I punish people who always tell lies.	

Speaking

Retell the story as if you were:

a) Sheriff of Nottingham
b) Robin
c) the butcher
d) Sheriff's wife

Writing

Imagine that you are the Sheriff. Write a report of the events in Sherwood Forest.



ROBIN HOOD AND THE BISHOP

Part I

The Bishop of Hereford was very angry with Robin Hood for Allan-a-Dale's wedding. He was so angry that he wanted to kill Robin. But no one did. The wicked people were all afraid of Robin and his brave men. The people who were kind and good loved him.

One day the Bishop took much money to a monastery. In those days the men who lived in the monasteries were not always good. Sometimes they were very wicked.

The Bishop had to pass through Sherwood Forest. He gathered his servants, and many soldiers. He hoped to kill Robin or to take him prisoner.

He hoped most to take him prisoner. He knew his friend, the Sheriff of Nottingham, was Robin's greatest enemy. He promised to give much money to any one who takes Robin prisoner.

It was a bright, sunny day in June when the Bishop **set out**. It was cool and shady under the great trees of the forest. Wild roses and honeysuckle smelt so sweet. Birds sang. The world was full of beauty.

Soon the wood was filled with the noise. Many soldiers in shining amour rode along with the Bishop in the middle.

Robin loved to walk in the forest alone.

Suddenly he saw the Bishop and his men. They, too, saw him looking up into a tree.

One man **however brave**, could not fight against all these soldiers. Robin couldn't call his men. They were so far away. Robin knew that they would kill him or taken prisoner.

It was a terrible moment. With wild shouts the Bishop and his men ran upon him. There was only one thing to do. And Robin did it. He ran away.

Fast and faster he ran, closely followed by the Bishop's men.

Closer and closer grew the trees; narrower and narrower the pathways. Horses **stumbled over** roots.

It was a mad hunt. Robin knew every path and secret way in the woods. The trees seemed to hide him and spread out their roots to trip up the horses of the Bishop's men.

Robin's suit was the colour of the leaves, and that helped him. The men found it more and more difficult to run. **At last** they lost him.

He knew the danger was not yet over. In the far part of the wood he came to an old woman's cottage. He often sent presents to this poor old woman.

He called out, 'Open quickly and let me in.'

The old woman opened it as fast as she could.

'Come in,' said the old woman, 'Come in quickly. I am Robin Hood.'

'If you are really Robin Hood,' said she, 'I'll do anything to hide you from the Bishop and his men.'

'I swear to you, my good woman, that I am truly Robin Hood. If you help me, my men and I will never forget it.'

'I believe you, sir. You have an honest face,' answered the old woman. 'Where will you hide?'

'In your grey dress,' said Robin with a laugh.

The old woman looked at him in surprise. 'In my grey dress?' she said.

'Yes,' said Robin; 'give me a grey dress and a big white cap. Dressed in them I can go through the wood. If I meet Bishop and his soldiers I will look like any old woman. They will never stop to look at me. Then you put on my suit of Lincoln green. If the Bishop follows me here, he will mistake you for me. Let him take you prisoner, and do not be afraid. My men and I will soon be back to rescue you.'

'**Bless your life**, sir, what a head you have,' said the old woman laughing.

When he was dressed, she gave him a spindle and flax in one hand and a walking stick in the other.

When he met several of the Bishop's men, he bent his back and went slowly along like a very old woman. So he got safely past.

It took him a long time to get to his own men. He found it was very difficult to walk in a dress.

Little John was looking out for him.

Robin waved his stick and shouted, but even his great friend did not know him.

'Look at that woman,' said Little John to Will Scarlet. 'I believe it's a witch. I'll shoot an arrow at her and see.'

Little John knew that if it was a witch she could fly away over the trees. He wanted to see her do it.

But Robin cried out, 'Stop, Little John. It is Robin Hood.'

Robin told his tale. Then he said, 'Now gather all our men. We must fight the Bishop and help this good old woman.'

Very soon, Robin, dressed in green, went at the head of his men, through the forest.

Helpful Words

set out — отправиться
however brave — каким бы смелым не был
stumble over — спотыкаться
At last — Наконец
Bless your life — Храни вас бог
It took him a long time — Ему потребовалось много времени

Activities

Reading

Who in the text did the following?

1) was very angry with Robin Hood	
2) promised to give much money to any one who takes Robin prisoner	
3) loved to walk in the forest alone	
4) knew every path and secret way in the woods	
5) wanted to see a witch fly away	

Vocabulary

Use the words in the sentences of your own; mind that they should be used like both verbs and nouns.

1) to mistake; a mistake
2) to dress; a dress
3) to fly; a fly

Speaking

Choose the right word and prove your choice.

1) Do you think the Bishop is a ______ man?
   a) kind
   b) mean
   c) sick
2) Was the Bishop ______ when he wanted to take Robin a prisoner?
   a) happy
   b) sorry
   c) frightened
3) Was the Bishop ______ to meet Robin in the forest?
   a) angry
   b) happy
   c) lucky
4) Did the Bishop give Robin a chance ______ ?
   a) to escape
   b) to eat
   c) to fight

Writing

Describe the events that happened in the forest as if you were:

a) Robin

b) the Bishop
c) one of the Bishop's solders

Part II

The old woman got into Robin's clothes. The Bishop arrived. He was sure that Robin could hide in her cottage.

The old woman didn't say a word. With Robin's hat down over her face, she stood in a dark corner and waited. They shouted with triumph when they saw the figure in green standing in the corner.

The old woman had a good stick. She fought with it. She gave one or two of the Bishop's men smacks on the head.

Outside she could hear the Bishop shouting, 'Gently, my men, gently. Take him alive, take him alive.'

After a little she pretended **to give in**. They led her out to the Bishop. So glad was he to see Robin Hood, as he thought.

'Aha, my man,' he cried, 'we have you at last. Say farewell to your Green Wood. You will never see it again.'

The old woman held her head down.

But the Bishop was so old and blind that he could not tell that it was not Robin. He thought Robin was hanging his head in shame.

'**Ho** there,' he cried, 'honour to the prince of thieves. The finest horse in the company for the King of Sherwood Forest.'

'He is so ugly,' said one man, looking at the old woman.

'As ugly as sin,' said another.

'Ah, my children,' said the Bishop, 'you see what sin does. This man has a wicked life, and it left its mark on his face.'

When the old woman heard that, she shook with anger. It was so untrue.

The Bishop thought that Robin was trembling in fear. 'Ah, you may well tremble my man,' he said. 'The punishment is near.' But the old woman never answered.

They set off, the old woman on her beautiful white horse riding beside the Bishop.

The Bishop laughed and sang. He was so glad. But his laughter did not last long.

Suddenly they saw men riding.

'Who are these,' said the Bishop, 'and what man is that who leads them?'

For the first time the old woman spoke. 'I think it is Robin Hood.'

The Bishop stopped and looked to her with a pale face. 'Who are you, then?' he asked.

'Only an old woman, my Lord Bishop.' she replied.

'My Lord Bishop,' said Robin, taking his hat off, 'You gave us the trouble.'

Then he went to the old woman, lifted her gently to the ground. 'I thank you, dame,' he said, 'for your kindness to me. Robin Hood will never forget it. If you follow Much the Miller's son he will take you to Maid Marian. She is waiting for you.'

'Thank you kindly,' said the old woman.

The Bishop's men did not fight. They saw it was useless. Robin and his brave men could easily kill all the Bishop's men.

Robin helped the Bishop to get off his horse. 'Now, my Lord Bishop, how much money have you?'

'The money which I have with me is not mine,' replied the Bishop.

'Very true it is not yours,' agreed Robin.

'It belongs to the monastery of St. Mary,' said the Bishop.

'Pardon me, it belongs to the poor people from whom you stole it,' said Robin, 'Little John, bring the Bishop's money bags.'

Little John brought the Bishop's money bags and counted out five hundred pounds.

'Now let him go,' said Robin.

'Master,' said Little John, 'May the Bishop **sing Mass** before he goes?'

'You are right,' said Robin, 'I have to-day much to thank for. The Bishop shall sing Mass before he goes.'

So in the wood Robin and his men, and the Bishop and his men, friend and enemy, knelt together **side by side** while the Bishop sang Mass.

Then Robin called for the Bishop's horse. He led him and his men back to the path through the woods.

'Go,' he said to the Bishop, 'thank God for this day, and in your prayers forget not Robin Hood.'

Helpful Words

to give in — сдаваться
Ho — Эй! *(оклик; выражает удивление, радость и т. п.);*
sing Mass — читать мессу
side by side — плечо к плечу

Activities

Reading

Connect the two parts of the sentences to make them true to the text.

1) The Bishop was so old and blind that	a) Robin was trembling in fear.
2) The Bishop thought that	b) she shook with anger.
3) When the old woman heard that,	c) he could not tell that it was not Robin.

☞ Vocabulary

Read the definitions and connect them with the corresponding adjectives: *true, brave, useless, beautiful, blind.*

1) unable to see; lacking the sense of sight; sightless	
2) of no use; not serving the purpose or any purpose	
3) having qualities that give great pleasure or satisfaction to see, hear, think about	
4) real; genuine; authentic	
5) having or showing courage	

Speaking

1. Explain why:

a) the Bishop couldn't understand that it was not Robin.
b) the Bishop's soldiers didn't fight with Robin's men.
c) everybody knelt together for the Mass.

2. Prove that:

a) Robin was fair.
b) the old woman was brave.
c) Little John was kind.

The following words and phrases may help you:

As far as I can see, in my opinion, as the author put it, to my mind.

Writing

Write down a story as if you were:

a) Little John
b) The old lady
c) The Bishop



ROBIN HOOD AND MAID MARIAN

Long before Robin came to live in Sherwood Forest he used often to go there to hunt. There were many wild animals, which people could shoot. Only the deer belonged to the king. No one could hunt or kill them.

One day while Robin was hunting in the forest he met a most beautiful lady. She was dressed in green velvet. He thought she looked like a queen. He never saw any one so lovely.

He loved her from the very first moment.

He soon found that her name was Marian.

After this, Marian and Robin met each other very often. They used to hunt together in the forest, and came to love one

another very much. They loved each other so much, that Robin asked Marian to marry him.

Marian said 'yes.' Robin thought he was the happiest man in the world. She went back home with her father, to prepare for the wedding. It **was to be** in a few days. But just then a terrible trouble happened to Robin. He lost everything that he had.

So, Robin lived in the Green Wood. He said to himself: 'I cannot ask a lady to come and live this life with me. I must say good-bye to my dear Marian for ever.'

He wrote a sad letter. 'I shall love you always,' he said, 'but this life is too hard for a sweet lady, so I will never see you more. Good-bye.'

Marian was very, very sad. She cried all day long.

She was very lonely now. The world seemed dark and lifeless.

At last she became so unhappy that she **could bear it no longer**. 'I must go into the Green Wood to look for Robin,' she said. 'If I see him again the pain will go out of my heart.'

It was a long way to Sherwood Forest. Marian knew that it was not safe for a beautiful lady to travel so far by herself. She feared the wild, wicked men. So she dressed like a knight. Over her lovely face she drew a steel chain cover, which knights used to wear.

Robin was very fond of disguising himself. He was very clever at it too.

One day he dressed himself as a Norman knight and went out into the forest.

He met another knight and called out in Norman French, 'Stop, Sir Knight. I give leave only to those who are noble and whose name is fair. What is your name and where are you going?'

Marian (for of course it was she) was very frightened. Robin's voice sounded so terrible that she did not know it, and she could not see his face.

She thought he was some wicked Norman knight. Without saying a word, she drew her sword and prepared to fight.

'Ah,' said Robin, 'you refuse to answer. Your must be evil if you cannot tell what it is. Fight then, false knight.'

He drew his sword, and the fight began. Robin was taller and stronger than Marian. But she used her sword very cleverly. He found it hard to get the better of her. He could not but admire the skill and grace with which she defended herself. 'It is wonderful that a knight so young and so slim should have such strength and quickness,' he said to himself. 'I'd like he were one of my men.'

They fought for more than an hour. Marian was wounded in the arm. Robin had a cut in his cheek. Marian was tired. Robin began to feel sorry for the young knight who fought so skillfully and well.

Robin forgot that he was pretending to be a Norman knight, and spoke in his own voice. When Marian heard it she dropped her sword with a cry of happiness. 'Robin, Robin,' was all she could say.

'Marian,' he said full of wonder, 'Marian can it be you? Oh, why did you not speak before? I hurt you,' he added. Marian took off her helmet. Her face was pale, but there was a smile on her lips, and her eyes were full of happy tears.

How they laughed and cried.

'Sweetheart,' he said when she had finished her story, 'I do not know how I shall live in the Green Wood when you go away again.'

'But I never go away again. I am going to stay with you always,' she said.

'Dearest, you must not. It is an uncomfortable life, not fit for a gentle lady like you.'

'Oh Robin, do not be so unkind. The sun does not shine and the birds forget to sing when I am away from you. Let me stay.'

So Robin let her stay.

As they walked they met Little John. He was very much surprised to see his master and a strange young knight, laughing gaily.

'Ho, Little John,' called out Robin, 'come, help me. This fair knight has pierced my heart, so that I fear I shall never recover.'

Little John turned pale. 'Master,' he said, 'are you indeed wounded? If it is so, this false knight has not long to live,' and he looked angrily at Marian.

She drew closer to Robin, saying, 'This big man frightens me.'

But Robin laughed. 'Friend,' he said, 'This is no knight, but my own fair love, Maid Marian. If my heart is wounded, it is only with the bright glances from her eyes. Marian,' he went on, 'this is my friend Little John. He is the tallest and the bravest of my men, the wisest head among us.'

Little John knelt on one knee, and, kissed Marian's hand. 'Lady,' he said, 'be our queen, as Robin is our king, I swear to serve you faithfully and well, as I do him.'

Marian smiled. Her heart was so full, she could not speak.

'Now, master,' said Little John, 'we must have a feast today, for this must be a great day in the Green Wood.'

'Robin,' said Marian, 'I wish I had a dress to wear instead of this armour.'

'Sweetheart,' replied Robin, 'you are lovely as you are. If you want a dress you can have one. There are several fine dresses, of which you can choose. Come, I will show you where they are.'

Robin sat down outside to wait for Marian. When he opened his eyes, he saw Marian. She looked like a fairy princess.

Slowly they walked through the Green Wood together. They had so much to say to each other, the time went all too quickly.

Then, Robin blew his horn. In answer to it all, all his men came. As they passed Robin, every man bowed. Then each one knelt on one knee, kissed Marian's hand.

Then the merry dinner began. The cooks did their best. The sun shone, the birds sang.

'**Here's a health to** Maid Marian, Queen of the Green Wood.'

'Here's to fair Maid Marian and bold Robin Hood,' they cried. '**Long may they live**, and happy may they be.'

Then came fat and jolly Friar Tuck and the great forest, as Robin and Marian were married.

Every one was happy. Only Little John felt the least bit sad. 'Now Robin has such a lovely wife, he will not need his friends any more,' he said to himself.

But Maid Marian saw that he looked sad, and guessed why. She talked kindly to him, and soon he was as merry as the rest. They sang, and danced, and played, and no one seemed to tire.

So this happy day came to an end. The red sun sank behind the trees. The birds slept, and all the forest was silent, only the bright stars were awake, and watched over Robin and his band.

Robin and Marian lived together for a long time. They were very, very happy. They lived so happily together, and loved each other so much. 'To love like Robin Hood and Maid Marian' came to be a proverb. And to this day, in the place where Maid Marian lived and where she was buried when she died, they give a prize each year to the man and wife who lived most happily together.

Helpful Words

was to be — должна была быть
could bear it no longer — не могла больше
Here's a health to — За здоровье
Long may they live — Да здравствуют

Activities

Reading

Circle 'T' if the sentence is true. Circle 'F' if the sentence is false.

1)	Robin never asked Marian to marry him.	T	F
2)	Robin lived in the Green Wood because he didn't want to see Marian.	T	F
3)	Sherwood Forest was near Marian's house.	T	F
4)	Robin couldn't recognize Marian.	T	F
5)	Marian liked to live in Sherwood Forest.	T	F

Vocabulary

Read the definitions of the following words and put the right word into the gaps.

merry — *causing happiness; pleasant; delightful*
happy — *delighted, pleased, or glad*
cheerful — *full of cheer; in good spirits*
joyful — *showing or expressing joy, in looks, actions, or speech*

1) They were so _______ to see us.
2) He heard a _______ song and felt _______.
3) A _______ child made everyone _______.

Grammar

Make the sentences negative.

1) The cooks did their best.

2) Robin sat down outside to wait for Marian.
3) Marian took off her helmet.
4) They laughed and cried.
5) She was very lonely.

Speaking

Agree or disagree. Prove your point of view.

1) Marian was very lonely because Robin left her.
2) Robin was happy to fight a young knight.
3) Marian couldn't fight at all.
4) Everyone was happy to see Marian in Sherwood Forest.
5) Marian and Robin lived happily together.

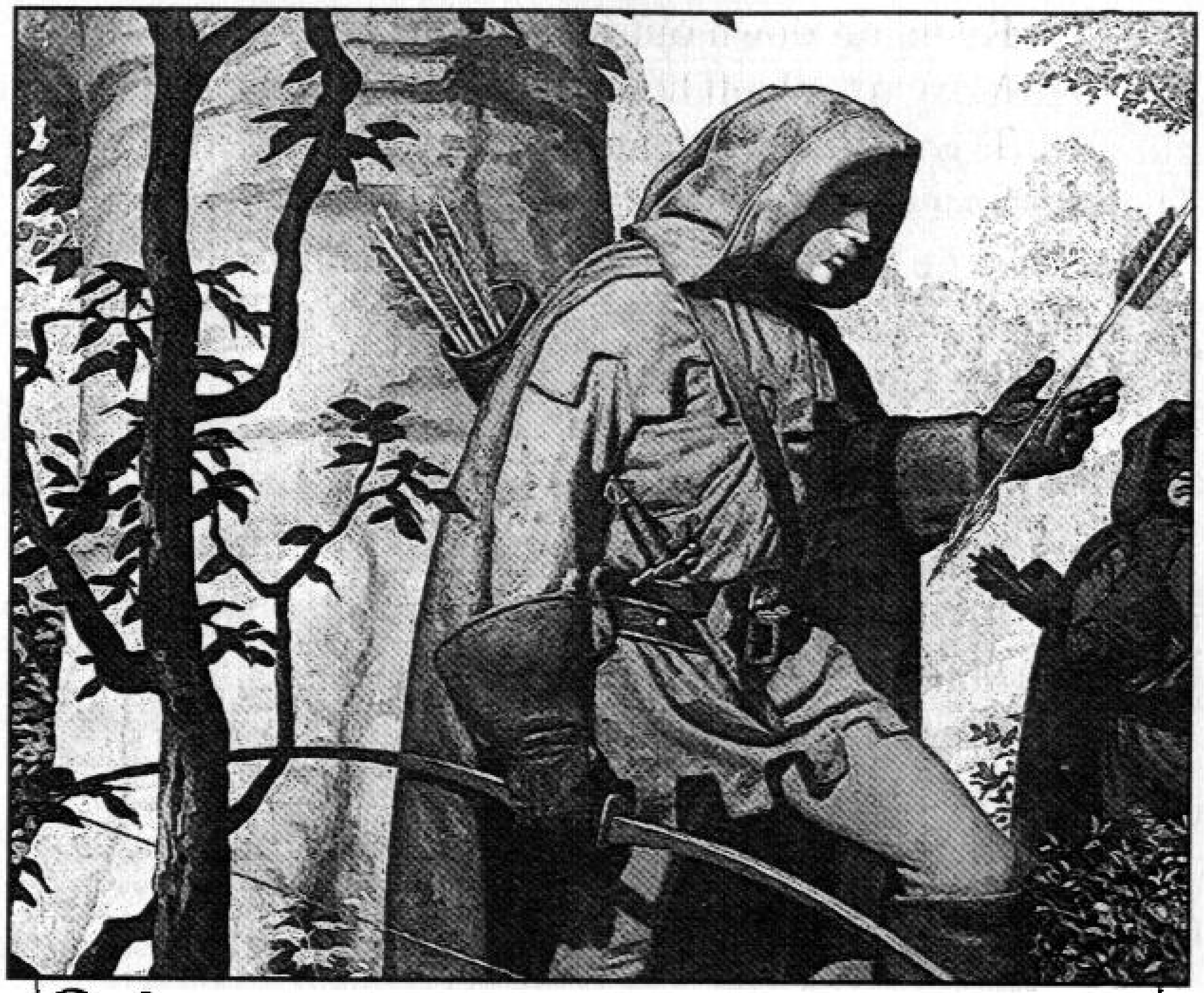
Writing

Write a story about the meeting in Sherwood Forest as if you were:

a) Robin
b) Marian

While making up your story use the following linking words:

Firstly, first of all, before, after, then, finally, but, on the one hand, on the other hand, nevertheless, however.



ROBIN HOOD AND THE SILVER ARROW

Over and over again the Sheriff of Nottingham tried to catch Robin Hood. Over and over again he failed. Each time he grew angrier. He could think of nothing else.

At last he said to himself, 'I will go to the King, and ask him to give me many soldiers, so that I can fight, Robin and his men, and kill them all.'

So one fine day the Sheriff of Nottingham went to London to visit the King. It took him many days to reach London. He took many servants with him, and soldiers too.

Late evening he arrived in London, very tired.

Next day, after some rest, he put on his best clothes. He put a thick gold chain round his neck. He looked very fine. Then he went to visit the King in his palace.

There he told his tale — how Robin robbed the rich Norman nobles, helped the poor Saxons. Above all, he killed and ate the King's deer in Sherwood Forest.

'Why, and what shall I do?' said the King. 'Are you not Sheriff? Are there no laws? If you cannot make people keep the laws you are no good Sheriff. Go back to Nottingham, and if, when I come, I find that you do not keep good order, and acted justly, I will make a Sheriff a better man.'

All the long way home he kept thinking and thinking how he might get Robin into his power. At last he had a plan.

He thought he would have a beautiful silver arrow made with a golden head. This arrow he would offer as a prize to the man who could shoot best. He knew Robin would hear about this shooting-match. He would come to try to win the prize. He would have many soldiers ready. As soon as Robin and his men came into the town, the soldiers would catch them and put into prison.

Long ago when people went to battle they had no guns. Instead, they fought with swords and spears, or bows and arrows. The English archers were the best in the world. And of all the English archers Robin Hood was the best. He could shoot further and straighter than any one in the whole world.

When the Sheriff arrived home he sent for a man who made arrows. He told him to make the most beautiful arrow, as he was going to have a grand shooting-match, and must have a very super prize.

Then he sent messengers into the towns and villages to tell all the archers about it. Next he sent for the captain of his soldiers. He told him that he hoped to catch Robin Hood at the shooting-match. 'We must have two for every one of Robin Hood's men,' he said. 'There must be no mistake this time.'

Everything was arranged and the day fixed.

There was a brave young man called David of Doncaster among Robin's men. He had a sister who lived in Nottingham. She was a servant in the Sheriff's house.

One day she met him with a pale face. 'David,' she said, 'you must not come here any more. Go, tell your master Robin Hood that the Sheriff means to kill him and all his men at the great shooting-match.'

'What shooting-match?' asked David.

'Oh, you did not hear?' said his sister. 'There is to be a great shooting-match next Tuesday. The prize is a silver arrow. But it is all a trick of the Sheriff's to catch Robin Hood. I heard him talking about it to the captain of the soldiers last night.'

'Good-bye,' said David, 'I must go back to the forest to warn Robin as quickly as possible.'

When he got back to the Green Wood he saw that Robin knew about the match. The men were all together **talking it over**. They already prepared their bows and arrows.

David asked Robin not to go.

'You talk like a coward,' said Robin. 'If you are afraid, stay home with the women. As for me, I want to try for this prize.' Robin was so brave, and careless of danger.

David was hurt and turned away without a word.

But in a minute Robin was sorry. 'Ho there! David,' he called out. 'I didn't mean it, **my lad**. Come back and tell us what you know.'

David told them all he knew.

'Well I don't see why we should not go,' said Little John. 'Of course not dressed in Lincoln green. But why not dress ourselves each as differently as possible? No one would notice us then. We could go and come quite safely.

'That is a very good plan,' said Robin. 'Do you not think so, David?'

'Why, yes, master, I think it will be very good fun,' replied David, laughing, 'May I come too?'

'Yes, lad,' said Robin. 'You shall come with me. We must not go all together,' he continued, 'We must go in twos and threes, and mix with the other people.'

Early on Tuesday morning they set off in twos and threes. They went to Nottingham by different roads. They were soon lost among the crowds. All sorts of people were hurrying along. They tried for the prize, others to look on. Men, women, and children, old and young, rich and poor, were there. Every one had a holiday, even the schoolgirls and boys, and dressed in their best, went towards Nottingham.

From a window in his house the Sheriff was looking for Robin and his men. He could not see Lincoln green. He was disappointed. 'Surely he will come yet. Surely he will come.'

The Master of the Lists, came to him and said, 'Will you come now please, your honour, for it is time the match began? Every one is waiting for you and your lady.'

'How many men came to try for the prize?' asked the Sheriff.

'About eight hundred,' replied the Master of the Lists.

'Is Robin Hood there, and any of his men, think you?'

'No,' said the Master of the Lists, 'not a man of his. There are many strangers, and a good number of King's foresters, but not a man in the Lincoln green of Robin Hood.'

The Sheriff sighed. 'He will surely come,' he said. 'Wait for a few minutes.'

So the Master of the Lists waited for a few minutes. Then he came again to the Sheriff, and said, 'We must indeed begin now. The people grow impatient. There are so many men to try for the prize, that if we do not begin at once, we cannot finish to-day.'

'I suppose we must begin,' sighed the Sheriff. 'But I thought he would surely come.'

The match began. It was a fine sight. At one end were set up fifty targets for the men to shoot at. These were painted

different colours. The middle of the target was painted white. Then came a red ring, then a black one, and last a yellow one.

At the opposite end stood the archers. They had to try to send their arrows right into the middle of the target, and hit the white spot.

It was very exciting. All round, the people stood or sat. Whenever any one hit the white, they cheered loudly. Those who missed the target were not allowed to shoot any more. The man who hit the white most often won the prize.

Robin and his men shot very well. Every time, Robin sent his arrow right into the very middle of the white part. His men sometimes hit the white, sometimes the red, but never the black or yellow.

Robin was standing very close to where the Sheriff and his wife were sitting. He wanted to tell the Sheriff **there and then** that Robin Hood was standing beside him. He made up his mind to win the prize. He wanted let the Sheriff know **somehow or other** that he did so.

The shooting went on, and the people grew more and more excited.

The man in red was Robin Hood himself. The man they called Brave Yellow was brave David of Doncaster. He shot nearly as well as Robin Hood.

At last the shooting came to an end. Of course Robin won the prize. The people cheered loudly when he went up to the Sheriff's wife. She presented him the arrow. She made a little speech to him, and he thanked her politely, as he always did.

Then every one went home again. Robin and his men went back by twos and threes, and by different roads. No one suspected who they were.

That night the Sheriff's wife said to him, 'What a nice-looking man that was who won the prize to-day. How well he shot too! Do you know, he reminded me very much of that

pleasant young butcher you brought to see me some time ago.'

'Eh! What!' said the Sheriff, 'I hope not.'

The Sheriff never told his wife that the pleasant butcher man was really Robin Hood.

When Robin and his men met, they had a merry time. They looked at the beautiful silver arrow and admired it very much.

Then Little John said, 'You took my advice about going to the match, perhaps you will let me give you a little more.'

'I advise you then,' said Little John, 'to write a letter to the Sheriff. Tell him that we were all there, and that you were the man in red who got the prize. Then send it to Nottingham.'

'Very good advice,' replied Robin; 'but how are we going to send it? Our messenger could not get out of the town before the Sheriff read the letter. He would certainly send after him to catch him and shut him up in prison. I cannot allow any of my men to put himself in danger.'

In those days, you see, there were no posts, or postmen. If you wanted to send a letter to any one, you had to pay a special messenger to carry it for you. It cost much, so people didn't write letters often. Many people could not read or write them.

'It is easy. Write your letter, address it to the Sheriff. I will stick it on to the end of an arrow, and shoot it into the town.'

'Bravo! Bravo!' shouted every one. 'Hurrah for Little John, clever Little John.'

Helpful Words

Over and over again — Снова и снова
talk it over — обговорить

my lad — *разг.* парень *(о взрослом мужчине)*
there and then — там и тогда
somehow or other — так или иначе

Activities

Reading

Circle 'T' if the sentence is true. Circle 'F' if the sentence is false.

1) The Sheriff decided to make the arrow to catch Robin.	T	F
2) Robin was afraid to take part in the competition.	T	F
3) Robin was the best archer and got the prize.	T	F
4) The Sheriff's wife didn't like the winner.	T	F
5) Little John had a very good idea.	T	F

Vocabulary

Read the definitions and connect them with the corresponding adjectives: *different, loud, quickly, pleasant, super.*

1) strongly audible; having exceptional volume or intensity	
2) with speed; rapidly; very soon	
3) fair and comfortable	
4) not alike in character or quality; differing; dissimilar	
5) of the highest degree, power	

Grammar

Make the sentences interrogative.

1) There were no posts, or postmen. *(What)*
2) Robin and his men went back by twos and threes. *(How)*
3) It was very exciting. *(How)*
4) It was a fine sight. *(What kind of)*
5) They already prepared their bows and arrows. *(What)*

Speaking

Make up a dialogue; imagine the situation when the Sheriff got the letter from Robin with the arrow and discussed it.

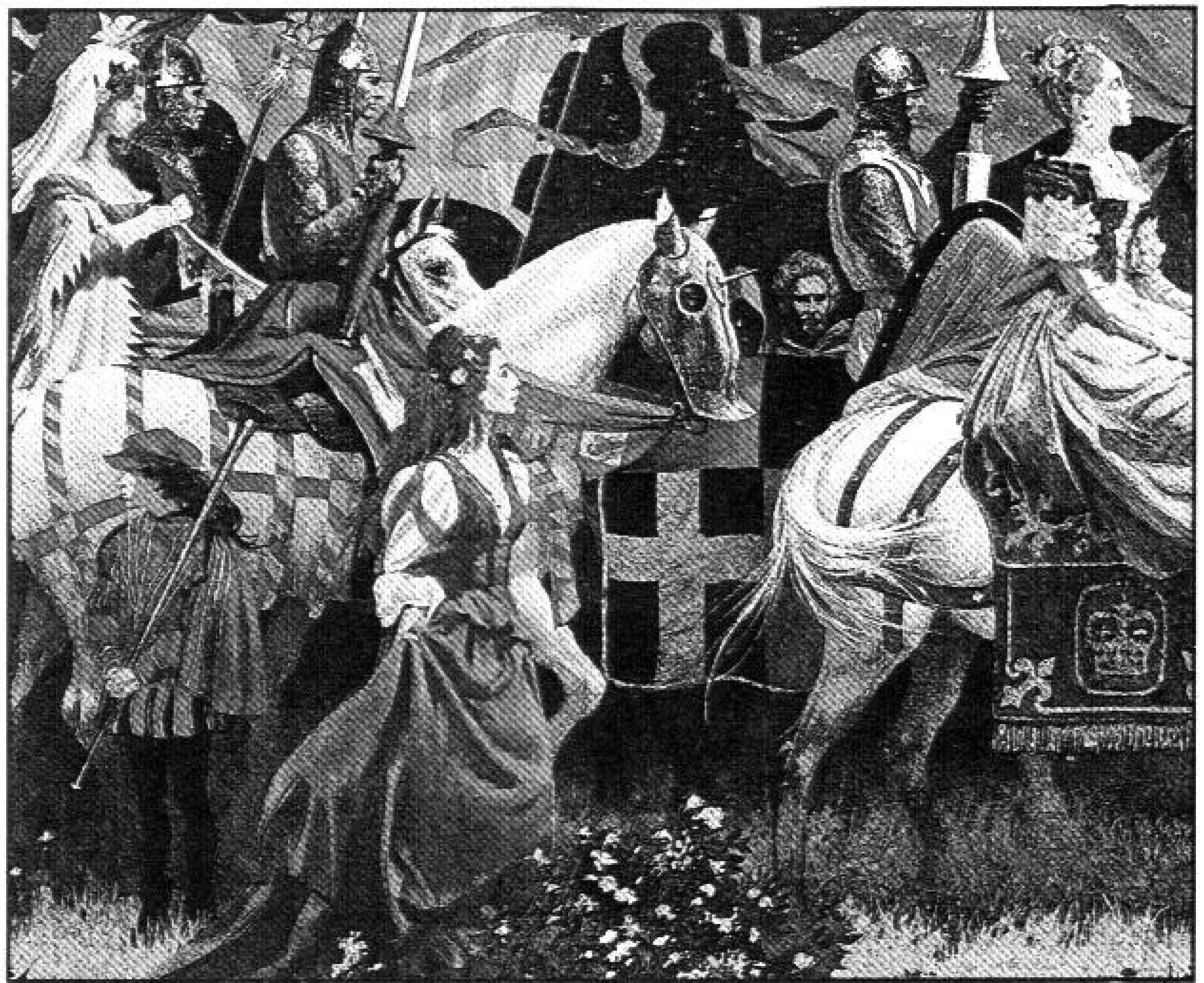
Writing

Write a story about the competition as if you were:

a) Robin
b) The Sheriff
c) The Sheriff's wife
d) David

While making up your story use the following linking words:

Firstly, first of all, before, after, then, finally, but, on the one hand, on the other hand, nevertheless, however.



ROBIN HOOD AND KING RICHARD

When Richard Coeur de Lion came back from the Holy Land, he found England in a sad state. Prince John ruled very badly. He made the people very unhappy. So people were happy when the King returned.

He tried to put things right again. He decided to go to Nottingham to **find out** the truth about Robin Hood.

With a dozen of his lords he rode to Nottingham. He went to his castle. There were balls and parties in honour of the King.

He went to hunt in Sherwood Forest. But he never met Robin Hood. And he wanted to meet Robin Hood most of all.

Other people came to Nottingham with tales about Robin. But King Richard never met him.

But Robin often saw the King. He was near him many times. But when Richard came into the forest, Robin and his men hid. They thought he would be very angry with them for killing his deer, and for taking so much money from the Norman nobles and priests. So they kept out of the way.

Because they loved the King, they never dreamed of stopping him, and taking money from him. Robin gave orders to follow the King, in dangerous part of the wood and protect him, and fight for him if needed. There were many other robbers in Sherwood who were wicked men.

One day the King said that he wanted to see Robin. The Bishop heard him, and said, '**If you were but** a Bishop, your Majesty, you can meet him oftener than you want to.'

The King laughed and said nothing. The next day he and his twelve nobles dressed as monks went into the forest.

They came not far before they met Robin.

The King was very fine looking. He was much taller than his nobles. Robin thought he must be an abbot. He was very glad to see him. Abbots always had much money, and Robin wanted some very much.

'We are messengers from the King,' said the King. 'He sent us to say he want to see you. As a sign he sends you this ring.'

He held out his hand and Robin saw that he had the King's ring.

These rings were called signet rings. There was a sign which only the King can use.

Every one knew the King of England's ring. When Robin saw it he knew it is a messenger from Richard.

'God bless the King,' said he and took his hat off. 'God bless all those who love him. **Cursed be** all those who hate him, and revolt against him.'

'Then you curse yourself,' said the King, 'for you are a traitor.'

'I am not a traitor,' replied Robin, 'and if you were not the King's messenger you should pay for that lie. I never yet hurt any man, that honest is and true. I fight most against monks and abbots, and take as much money as I can from them, because they steal it from poor people. They must live good lives, and show others a good example. But they do not. They live wicked lives, and they must be punished. If they ruled England well, while King Richard was away, we should not have to live in the woods as we do. But come,' added Robin, smiling again, 'you are the King's messengers and are welcome to all we have. You must come and have dinner with us. We will make you as comfortable as we can.'

The King wanted to see more of Robin. He thanked him and said they were very glad to come.

'If you were not the King's messengers,' he said with a laugh, 'I fear we would not treat you so kindly.'

The King saw that dinner was prepared for many people. It looked like a large picnic, for everything was on the grass.

Then boys, dressed in green, came with silver cups full of clean, fresh water. They knelt on one knee, before each guest to wash his hands. The King was surprised to find everything so comfortable.

The King saw that every man passed in front of Robin, and bowed to him before he went to his place. He was very much surprised. He said to himself, 'These men honour their master as if he were a King.'

When they were all in their places, Friar Tuck said grace in Latin. Then every one sat down and dinner began.

It was a very fine dinner indeed with much flesh of deer.

'You say you are no traitor,' said he, 'yet you shoot the King's deer.'

'I cannot starve my men,' replied Robin. 'Were Richard himself here I think he would let these fine men have their food.'

'Perhaps not,' replied the King with a laugh; 'but it is a bold thing to do. However, it is well cooked. I never liked a meal better, so I at least must forgive you.'

When dinner was over, Robin took a can of ale in his hand and stood up. 'Let every man fill his can,' said he. 'Here's a health to the King.'

'God save the King.'

The King himself drank to the King. He knew he must, or Robin could understand who he was. So he stood up with the rest, and drank his own health.

'Now,' said Robin, 'we must entertain our guests. Get your bows and arrows and we will show what we can do in the way of archery. Shoot your very best. Shoot as if King Richard himself were here. These gentlemen are his friends. They will tell him if you shot well or ill when they see him again.'

'Well, Robin,' said Richard, 'if I could **get your pardon** from the King, do you want to serve him and leave this wild life in the woods? Richard needs true and good men.'

'Yes, with all my heart,' said Robin Hood.

'Men, he called out, 'do you want to serve King Richard of England — Richard Coeur de Lion?'

'Yes, with all our hearts,' they shouted.

'You see, Sir Abbot,' said Robin, turning to him, 'we are all loyal people here.'

'So I see,' replied the King.

'If you will be so kind to ask the King to forgive me,' went on Robin, 'I think I will begin to love monks again. A Bishop was the first cause of our troubles. That is what makes me hate them all. But from this day I shall try to like them again.'

Then the King felt he could not keep his secret. He took off the monk's hood and said: —

> 'I am thy King, thy sovereign King,
> That appears before you all;
> When Robin saw that it was he,
> Straight then he down did fall.'

'Stand up again,' said the King, 'I give you your pardon gladly. Stand up, my friend, I doubt if in all England I have more true followers than you and your men.'

'It's the King,' said one man.

'It's the King,' said the next one. 'The King, the King.'

Every man in Robin's band knew that King Richard himself was standing before them.

Richard turned to the men and said, 'I am King Richard. Are you ready to keep the oath you swore a few minutes ago? Are you ready to follow me as your master is, and be my men?'

'That we are!' they all shouted. 'That we are! Long live King Richard! Three cheers for Richard Coeur de Lion!'

Robin and his men went to the town. Some people wanted to run away, but they did not know where to run to.

Everybody wanted to see the sight. They came out of their houses and stood in the streets.

'They killed the King,' some said.

'They are coming to take the town.'

'They want to hang the Sheriff.'

'And all the Normans too.'

'They are going to beat all the monks.'

'They will pull the monastery down.'

'The King is riding at the head of them along with Robin Hood. Long live King Richard. Long live Robin Hood. Hurrah! Hurrah!'

The only person who was sorry was the Sheriff. 'What! Robin Hood,' said he, 'the one whom I hate?'

But Robin Hood came to him and said, 'Let us be friends. I want to be friends with every one to-day. See, I brought you back the money you paid me for your dinner in the forest.'

The Sheriff was happy to get his three hundred pounds again.

'Now,' said Robin, 'I gave you back your money, so you give me a dinner for that one I gave you in the forest. Ask the

King if he will honor you by coming to supper. If he does, I will come too.'

The Sheriff said, 'If I ask the King to supper it will cost me three hundred pounds and more.'

'Of course it will,' replied Robin. 'See that it is a fine supper for a king.'

So the poor Sheriff asked the King to supper. He came, **and so did** Robin Hood. It was a very fine supper. But the poor Sheriff could hardly eat anything. It made him unhappy to see the King and his enemy Robin Hood such friends.

But very soon Richard Coeur de Lion died. Prince John became King as Richard had no sons.

Prince John hated Robin. So he had to go to the Green Wood with all his Merry Men.

Helpful Words

find out — выяснить
If you were but — Если бы вы были никем иным, а...
Cursed be — будь проклят
God save the King — Да здравствует король
get pardon — получить прощение
That we are! — И мы!
and so did — и то же самое сделал

Activities

Reading

Circle 'T' if the sentence is true. Circle 'F' if the sentence is false.

1) King Richard didn't want to meet Robin. | T F
2) Robin wanted to meet Richard very much. | T F
3) Robin and his men attacked King Richard. | T F

4) King Richard told Robin who he was. | T F
5) King Richard didn't forgive Robin and his men. | T F

Vocabulary

Read the definitions and connect them with the corresponding adjectives: *poor, ready, glad, true, comfortable.*

1) contented and undisturbed; at ease	
2) having little or no money, goods, or other means of support	
3) real; genuine; authentic	
4) completed, adjusted, or arranged	
5) feeling joy or pleasure; delighted; pleased	

Grammar

Make the sentences interrogative (Tag-questions).

1) The Sheriff could hardly eat anything.
2) He had to go to the Green Wood.
3) It will cost me three hundred pounds.
4) A Bishop was the first cause of our troubles.
5) He was very much surprised.

Speaking

Tell the story of the meeting in Sherwood Forest as if you were:

a) Robin Hood
b) King Richard

Write the story of the adventures of Robin Hood and his friends as if you were a historian. While making up your story use the following linking words:

Firstly, first of all, before, after, then, finally, but, on the one hand, on the other hand, nevertheless, however.

THE DEATH OF ROBIN HOOD

Robin Hood became very old. His hair was white, but he was strong, and brave as an old lion.

Little John and he loved each other more. They were always together.

At last Robin felt weak and ill. He said to Little John, 'I am not able to shoot any more; my arrows will not fly. I do not know **what the matter with me is**. Let us go to my cousin the Prioress of Kirkley Abbey. Perhaps she can cure me.'

In those days there were no doctors. When people were ill they go to clever women like the Prioress of Kirkley Abbey.

They made a cut in the person's arm and let the blood flow out. After a few minutes it was bound up to stop the blood flowing. This was called **'bleeding.'**

Sometimes people got well after this. Sometimes they died.

Little John and Robin went to Kirkley Abbey. It was a difficult journey. It was a few days before Christmas. The snow was thick. On the journey Robin became very ill. He could not sit on his horse. Little John carried him in his arms through the deep snow.

They arrived at Kirkley Abbey on **Christmas Eve**. The Prioress said she was very happy to see them. 'But, good cousin Robin, what is the matter with you? You look so pale and thin.'

'He is very ill,' replied Little John. 'I took him here to cure him.'

Then the Prioress looked at Robin carefully. 'Yes,' she said, 'he is very ill. I must bleed him.'

If Little John saw the face of the Prioress! There was such a wicked look upon it. But he did not see.

'Come, good Little John,' she said, 'I have a room for you. Take up my cousin and carry him there.'

So Little John took Robin in his arms and followed the Prioress.

It was very peaceful in this little room. It was far away from where the other people in the abbey lived.

Little John wanted to stay beside Robin, but the Prioress said, 'No, he must have perfect quietness.'

'I will not move nor make a sound,' said Little John, 'if you will only let me stay.'

'No,' said the Prioress again, 'I must be alone with him.'

'When may I come back?' asked Little John.

'In a few hours, perhaps. Perhaps tomorrow morning,' replied the Prioress. 'I will call you when it is time.'

So with a very heavy heart Little John walked away. He went into the abbey garden. There he sat down under a tree. He watched the window of Robin's room. Hour after hour he waited in the cold.

The Prioress was a bad woman. Robin was very kind to her, and she had pretended to love him. Really she hated him, and wanted to hurt him.

When Robin was well and strong she could do nothing. But now he was in her power. She wanted to kill him. That was why she sent Little John away.

Now she was alone. She made a cut in Robin's arm so that the blood flowed out. She pretended to bind the wound up again. But she put the bandage on so badly that the blood flowed all the time. Then she locked Robin in the room and went away.

Robin was so weak that he fell asleep. He slept for many hours. And all the time Little John sat under the tree in the garden — waiting.

When Robin woke he found he could hardly move. He saw the blood was still flowing from his arm. He knew that if not to stop it he would soon die.

He tried to rise but couldn't. Then he thought of his horn. He put it to his mouth, and blew three times.

Little John ran as fast as he could to the room in which Robin was lying. The door was locked. He put his shoulder against it and opened it. There he found Robin almost dead.

Carefully and quickly he bound up the arm. His heart was full of love for his master, and of anger against the wicked Prioress.

'**Grant me one favour**, master,' he said.

'What favour is it you would ask, dear Little John?' replied Robin.

'Let me gather all our men together, and bring them here to burn this abbey, and kill the wicked Prioress.'

'I never hurt a woman in all my life. Promise, you will not do it.'

Little John promised, but his heart was full of anger against her.

'Little John, I should like to shoot once more. Carry me to the window. Give me my bow into my hands, and hold me up while I shoot. Where the arrow falls there bury me.'

The arrow only went a very little way and fell in the garden.

'It was a good shot, master, a very good shot,' said Little John, though he could hardly speak for tears.

'Was it indeed, friend? I could not see,' replied Robin, 'but you will bury me where it fell.'

Little John promised to do everything as Robin asked.

'Thank you, dear friend, good-bye,' said Robin.

'Was it indeed a good shot?' he said.

Then he fell back again — dead.

Just at that moment the bells began to ring for the Christmas Eve service. Through the open window came the sound of the sweet voices of the nuns singing a Christmas carol. But Robin was dead. Never again would he hear the sweet Christmas carol.

There was great sadness, when people found that Robin Hood was dead. There was also great anger against the Prioress. No one tried to punish her, because Robin asked them.

Little John called all the Merry Men together for the last time. They buried their master where his last arrow fell, in the garden of Kirkley Abbey, in Yorkshire.

Over the grave they placed a stone, and carved upon it these lines: —

'Here, underneath this stone,
Lies Robert, Earl of Huntingdon;
No archer ever was so good,
The people called him Robin Hood.
Such outlaws as he and his men
Will England never see again.'

Helpful Words

what the matter with me is — что со мной случилось
'bleeding' — кровопускание
Grant me one favour — Сделайте мне одолжение
Christmas Eve — Канун Рождества; ночь с 24 на 25 декабря

Activities

🕮 *Reading*

Circle 'T' if the sentence is true. Circle 'F' if the sentence is false.

1)	Robin was ill because he was wounded in a fight.	T	F

2)	Little John took Robin to the doctor.	T	F
3)	The old doctor was very skillful.	T	F
4)	Robin asked to revenge after his death.	T	F
5)	Robin's grave is in Sherwood Forest.	T	F

Vocabulary

Read the definitions and connect them with the corresponding adjectives: *sad, sweet, angry, fast, deep.*

Definition	
1) pleasing or agreeable; delightful	
2) affected by unhappiness or grief; sorrowful	
3) extending far down from the top or surface	
4) done in comparatively little time; taking a comparatively short time	
5) feeling or showing anger or strong resentment	

Grammar

Make the sentences interrogative.

1) No one tried to punish her. *(Whom)*
2) It was very peaceful in this little room. *(What)*
3) They were always together. *(When)*
4) Little John promised to do everything. *(What)*
5) Robin was dead. *(Who)*

Speaking

Tell the story of the death of Robin Hood to you friend. Let him/her ask you some questions to make the story more detailed.

Writing

Write the story of the death of Robin as if you were:

a) John Little
b) the Prioress
c) Robin himself

While making up your story use the following linking words:

Firstly, first of all, before, after, then, finally, but, on the one hand, on the other hand, nevertheless, however.

Vocabulary

A

abbey [ˊæbɪ] *n* аббатство
add [æd] *v* добавлять
admire [ədˊmaɪə] *v* восхищаться
adventure [ədˊventʃə] *n* приключение
advice [ədˊvaɪs] *n* совет
advise [ədˊvaɪz] *v* советовать
alive [əˊlaɪv] *a* живой
allow [əˊlaʊ] *v* позволять
alone [əˊləʊn] *a* одинокий
angry [ˊæŋgrɪ] *a* злой
archer [ˊɑ:tʃə] *n* лучник
arm [ɑ:m] *n* рука
armed [ɑ:md] *a* вооруженный
armour [ˊɑ:mə] *n* кольчуга
arrive [əˊraɪv] *v* прибывать
arrow [ˊærəʊ] *n* стрела
awake [əˊweɪk] (awoke, awoken) *v* просыпаться; будить
awfully [ˊɔ:fʊlɪ] *adv* ужасно

B

beauty [ˊbju:tɪ] *n* красота
believe [bɪˊli:v] *v* верить
belong [bɪˊlɒŋ] *v* принадлежать
bend [bend] (bent, bent) *v* сгибать(ся)
besides [bɪˊsaɪdz] *adv* кроме
between [bɪˊtwi:n] *adv* между
bind [baɪnd] (bound, bound) *v* перевязывать
bishop [ˊbɪʃəp] *n* епископ (священнослужитель)
bitter [ˊbɪtə] *a* горький
bitterness [ˊbɪtənɪs] *n* горечь
blind [blaɪnd] *a* слепой
blood [blʌd] *n* кровь
blow [bləʊ] (blew, blown) *v* дуть
bold [bəʊld] *a* смелый
bow [baʊ] *n* лук
brave [breɪv] *a* смелый
bride [braɪd] *n* невеста
bridegroom [ˊbraɪdgrʊm] *n* жених
bridge [brɪʤ] *n* мост
bucket [ˊbʌkɪt] *n* ведро
bury [ˊberɪ] *v* хоронить
busy [ˊbɪzɪ] *a* занятый
butcher [ˊbʊtʃə] *n* мясник

C

can [kæn] *n* банка
careless [ˊkɛələs] *a* беззаботный
carol [ˊkær(ə)l] *n* хорал
catch [kætʃ] (caught, caught) *v* хватать, ловить
cattle [ˊkætl] *n* скот
certainly [ˊsə:t(ə)nlɪ] *adv* конечно
chain [tʃeɪn] *n* цепь
cheek [tʃi:k] *n* щека
cheer [tʃɪə] *v* приветствовать
christen [ˊkrɪs(ə)n] *v* крестить
church [tʃə:tʃ] *n* церковь
city [ˊsɪtɪ] *n* город
clever [ˊklevə] *a* умный
clothes [kləʊðz] *n* одежда
comfort [ˊkʌmfət] *v* утешать
comfortable [ˊkʌmf(ə)təbl] *a* удобный
corner [ˊkɔ:nə] *n* угол
count [kaʊnt] *v* считать
cover [ˊkʌvə] *v* накрывать
coward [ˊkaʊəd] *n* трус
crack [kræk] *v* трещать
cruel [ˊkrʊəl] *a* жестокий
cry [kraɪ] *v* плакать; кричать
cure [kjʊə] *v* лечить
curse [kə:s] *v* проклинать

D

danger [ˊdeɪnʤə] *n* опасность
dark [dɑ:k] *a* темный
deep [di:p] *a* глубокий
deer [dɪə] *n* олень
defeat [dɪˊfi:t] *v* побеждать
defend [dɪˊfend] *v* защищать
different [ˊdɪf(ə)r(ə)nt] *a* различный, разный
difficult [ˊdɪfɪk(ə)lt] *a* трудный
disappear [ˏdɪsəˊpɪə] *v* исчезать
disappearance [ˏdɪsəˊpɪər(ə)ns] *n* исчезновение
disappointed [ˏdɪsəˊpɒɪntɪd] *a* разочарованный
disguise [dɪsˊgaɪz] *n* переодеваться
disturb [dɪsˊtə:b] *v* беспокоить; мешать; тревожить
divide [dɪˊvaɪd] *v* делить
drop [drɒp] *v* капать
duke [dju:k] *n* граф

E

ear [ɪə] *n* ухо
earl [ə:l] *n* граф
easy [ˊi:zɪ] *a* легкий
enemy [ˊenɪmɪ] *n* враг
entertain [ˏentəˊteɪn] *v* развлекать
escape [ɪsˊkeɪp] *v* убегать
evil [ˊi:v(ə)l] *n* злой
example [ɪgˊzɑ:mpl] *n* пример
exciting [ɪkˊsaɪtɪŋ] *a* волнующий

F

fair [fɛə] *a* честный
fairy [ˈfɛərɪ] *a* сказочный
false [fɔ:ls] *a* ложный
farewell [ˈfɛəˈwel] *v* прощаться
fast [fɑ:st] *adv* быстро
favour [ˈfeɪvə] *n* одолжение; услуга
fearless [ˈfɪələs] *a* бесстрашный
feast [fi:st] *n* пир
fellow [ˈfeləʊ] *n* парень
fight [faɪt] (fought, fought) *v* драться, сражаться
finger [ˈfɪŋgə] *n* палец
flame [fleɪm] *n* пламя
flax [flæks] *n* лен
follow [ˈfɒləʊ] *v* следовать
force [fɔ:s] *n* сила
forgive [fəˈgɪv] (forgave, forgiven) *v* прощать
frighten [ˈfraɪt(ə)n] *v* пугать
funny [ˈfʌnɪ] *a* забавный, смешной

G

gaily [ˈgeɪlɪ] *adv* весело
gather [ˈgæðə] *v* собирать
gentle [ˈdʒentl] *a* нежный
gently [ˈdʒentlɪ] *adv* нежно
glad [glæd] *a* довольный; радостный
godfather [ˈgɒdfɑ:ðə] *n* крестный отец
golden [ˈgəʊld(ə)n] *a* золотой
grace [greɪs] *n* изящество
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
gratefully [ˈgreɪtf(ə)lɪ, ˈgreɪtfʊlɪ] *adv* благодарно
greedy [ˈgri:dɪ] *a* жадный
guess [ges] *v* догадываться
guest [gest] *n* гость

H

handsome [ˈhæn(d)səm] *a* симпатичный *(о мужчине)*
harm [hɑ:m] *v* причинять вред
harp [hɑ:p] *n* арфа
hate [heɪt] *v* ненавидеть
hatred [ˈheɪtrɪd] *n* ненависть
head [hed] *n* голова
health [helθ] *n* здоровье
heel [hi:l] *n* пятка; каблук
height [haɪt] *n* рост; высота
helmet [ˈhelmət] *n* шлем
holy [ˈhəʊlɪ] *a* святой
homeless [ˈhəʊmles] *a* бездомный
honestly [ˈɒnɪstlɪ, ˈɒnəstlɪ] *adv* честно
honour [ˈɒnə] *n* честь
horn [hɔ:n] *n* рог
horse [hɔ:s] *n* лошадь

hot [hɒt] *a* горячий, жаркий
hundred [ˈhʌndrəd, ˈhʌndrɪd] *num* сто
hungry [ˈhʌŋgrɪ] *a* голодный
hunt [hʌnt] *v* охотиться
hurt [hə:t] (hurt, hurt) *v* причинять боль

I

indeed [ɪnˈdi:d] *adv* действительно
instead (of) [ɪnˈsted ɒv] *adv* вместо

J

jealous [ˈdʒeləs] *a* ревнивый
join [dʒɒɪn] *v* присоединять(ся)
justly [ˈdʒʌstlɪ] *adv* честно

K

kill [kɪl] *v* убивать
kindness [ˈkaɪndnəs] *n* доброта
king [kɪŋ] *n* король
knee [ni:] *n* колено
kneel [ni:l] (knelt, knelt) *v* становиться на колени
knight [naɪt] *n* рыцарь

L

land [lænd] *n* земля
language [ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ] *n* язык
laugh [lɑ:f] *v* смеяться
laughter [ˈlɑ:ftə] *n* смех
lead [li:d] (led, led) *v* вести
leave [li:v] (left, left) *v* уходить
lifeless [ˈlaɪfləs] *a* безжизненный
lock [lɒk] *v* запирать на замок
lonely [ˈləʊnlɪ] *a* одинокий
loudly [ˈlaʊdlɪ] *adv* громко
lovely [ˈlʌvlɪ] *a* мило
loyal [ˈlɒɪəl] *a* преданный

M

mad [mæd] *a* сумасшедший
market [ˈmɑ:kɪt] *n* рынок
marriage [ˈmærɪdʒ] *n* брак
married [ˈmærɪd] *a* женатый
meal [mi:l] *n* еда; трапеза
mean [mi:n] (meant, meant) *v* обозначать; значить
meat [mi:t] *n* мясо
mention [ˈmenʃ(ə)n] *v* упоминать
merry [ˈmerɪ] *a* веселый
messenger [ˈmesɪndʒə] *n* посланник
mind [maɪnd] *n* ум
mouth [maʊθ] *n* рот

N

narrow [ˊnærəʊ] *a* узкий
neck [nek] *n* шея
noble [ˊnəʊbl] *a* благородный
noise [ˊnɔɪz] *n* шум
notice [ˊnəʊtɪs] *v* замечать

O

oath [əʊθ] *n* клятва

P

pain [peɪn] *n* боль
pale [peɪl] *a* бледный
pardon [ˊpɑ:dn] *v* прощать
pass [pɑ:s] *v* проходить
path [pɑ:θ] *n* тропа
peace [pi:s] *n* мир
perhaps [pəˊhæps] *adv* возможно
pillow [ˊpɪləʊ] *n* подушка
pink [pɪŋk] *a* розовый
pleasant [ˊpleznt] *a* приятный
point [pɒɪnt] *v* указывать
politely [pəˊlaɪtlɪ] *adv* вежливо
poor [pɔ:(r)], [pʊə] *a* бедный
pound [paʊnd] *n* фунт
pour [pɔ:] *v* наливать
power [ˊpaʊə] *n* сила, власть
prayer [prɛə] *n* молитва
prepare [prɪˊpɛə] *v* готовить
pretend [prɪˊtend] *v* притворяться
pretty [ˊprɪtɪ] *a* симпатичная
price [praɪs] *n* цена
prison [ˊprɪzn] *n* тюрьма
prisoner [ˊprɪznə] *n* заключенный; узник
promise [ˊprɒmɪs] *v* обещать
protect [prəˊtekt] *v* защищать
proud [praʊd] *a* гордый
prove [pru:v] *v* доказывать
proverb [ˊprɒvəb] *n* пословица, поговорка
punish [ˊpʌnɪʃ] *v* наказывать
punishment [ˊpʌnɪʃmənt] *n* наказание

Q

quarrel [ˊkwɒr(ə)l] *v* ссора
queen [kwi:n] *n* королева
quickly [ˊkwɪklɪ] *adv* быстро
quickness [ˊkwɪknɪs] *n* быстрота
quietness [ˊkwaɪətnɪs] *n* тишина

R

race [reɪs] *n* нация
reach [ri:ʧ] *v* добиваться
recover [rɪˊkʌvə] *v* выздоравливать

refuse [rɪˊfju:z] *v* отказывать(ся)
remind [ˊrɪmaɪnd] *v* напоминать
rescue [ˊreskju:] *v* спасать
return [rɪtə:n] *v* возвращаться
revenge [rɪˊvenʤ] *v* мстить
revolt [rɪˊvəʊlt] *v* возмущаться
reward [rɪˊwɔ:d] *v* вознаграждать
right [raɪt] *a* правый
ring [rɪŋ] (rang, rung) *v* звенеть; звонить
robber [ˊrɒbə] *n* грабитель
root [ru:t] *n* корень
ruin [rʊɪn] *v* разрушать
rule [ru:l] *v* править

S

sadness [ˊsædnɪs] *n* грусть, печаль
save [seɪv] *v* хранить; беречь
scarlet [ˊskɑ:lɪt] *a* алый
scream [skri:m] *v* кричать
sell [sel] (sold, sold) *v* продавать
servant [ˊsə:v(ə)nt] *n* слуга
serve [sə:v] *v* служить
service [ˊsə:vɪs] *n* служба
several [ˊsevr(ə)l] *adv* несколько
shady [ˊʃeɪdɪ] *a* тенистый
shame [ʃeɪm] *n* стыд
shine [ʃaɪn] (shone, shone) *v* сиять; блестеть
shoulder [ˊʃəʊldə] *n* плечо
shout [ʃaʊt] *v* кричать
sigh [saɪ] *v* вздыхать
sight [saɪt] *n* вид
silver [ˊsɪlvə] *a* серебряный
since [sɪns] *adv* с тех пор как
sink [sɪŋk] (sank, sunk) *v* тонуть
skill [skɪl] *n* умение
slim [slɪm] *a* стройный
smack [smæk] *n* хлопок
smile [smaɪl] *v* улыбаться
sob [sɒb] *v* рыдать; всхлипывать
soldier [ˊsəʊlʤə] *n* солдат
sound [saʊnd] *n* звук
spear [spɪə] *n* копье
special [ˊspeʃ(ə)l] *a* особый
speech [spi:ʧ] *n* речь
spindle [ˊspɪndl] *n* веретено
spot [spɒt] *n* место; пятно
spread [spred] (spread, spread) *v* распространять(ся)
starve [stɑ:v] *v* голодать
steal [sti:l] (stole, stolen) *v* воровать
stick [stɪk] *n* палка
stone [stəʊn] *n* камень
strange [streɪnʤ] *a* странный
strength [streŋθ] *n* сила
sudden [ˊsʌdn] *a* внезапный
suppose [səˊpəʊz] *v* предполагать

sure [ʃʊə] *a* уверенный
suspect [sə'spekt] *v* подозревать
swear [swɛə] (swore, sworn) *v* клясться
sweet [swi:t] *a* сладкий
sword [sɔ:d] *n* меч

T

tale [teɪl] *n* сказка, рассказ
target ['tɑ:gɪt] *n* цель
tear [tɛə] *n* слеза
terrible ['terəbl] *a* ужасный
thick [θɪk] *a* толстый; густой
thief [θi:f] *n* вор
thin [θɪn] *a* тонкий
thought [θɔ:t] *n* мысль
through [θru:] *adv* через
throw (threw, thrown) [θrəʊ] *v* бросать
tired ['taɪəd] *a* уставший
tongue [tʌŋ] *n* язык (во рту)
traitor ['treɪtə] *n* предатель
travel ['trævl] *v* путешествовать
treat [tri:t] *v* угощать
trouble ['trʌbl] *n* беда
twinkle ['twɪŋk] *v* моргать

U

ugly ['ʌglɪ] *a* уродливый; страшный
unhappiness [ʌn'hæpɪnəs] *n* несчастье
unless [ən'les] *conj* пока не
useless ['ju:slɪs] *a* бесполезный

V

value ['vælju:] *n* цена; ценность
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос

W

wait [weɪt] *v* ждать
walk [wɔ:k] *v* идти пешком
wash [wɒʃ] *v* мыть
weak [wi:k] *a* слабый
wear [wɛə] (wore, worn) *v* носить
wedding ['wedɪŋ] *n* свадьба
wet [wet] *a* мокрый
whole [həʊl] *a* целый, весь
wicked ['wɪkɪd] *a* злой
wide [waɪd] *a* широкий
wild [waɪld] *a* дикий
wisely [waɪzlɪ] *adv* мудро
witch [wɪʧ] *n* ведьма
witty ['wɪtɪ] *a* (остро)умный
wonderful ['wʌndəfʊl] *a* замечательный
world [wə:ld] *n* мир
worth [wə:θ] *a* стуящий
wound [wu:nd] *v* ранить
wrap [ræp] *v* заворачивать

Contents

"It is my house, and I built it where I said I did, so I think the wind have blown it here. And the wind blew it right over the wood, and blew it down here. And you know, this is the better place for a house."

"Much better," said Pooh and Piglet together.

"Do you see, Pooh? Do you see, Piglet?

Brains first and then Hard Work. Look at it! That's the way to build a house," said Eeyore proudly.

Beginner

Elementary

Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate

Для продолжающих первого уровня

Intermediate

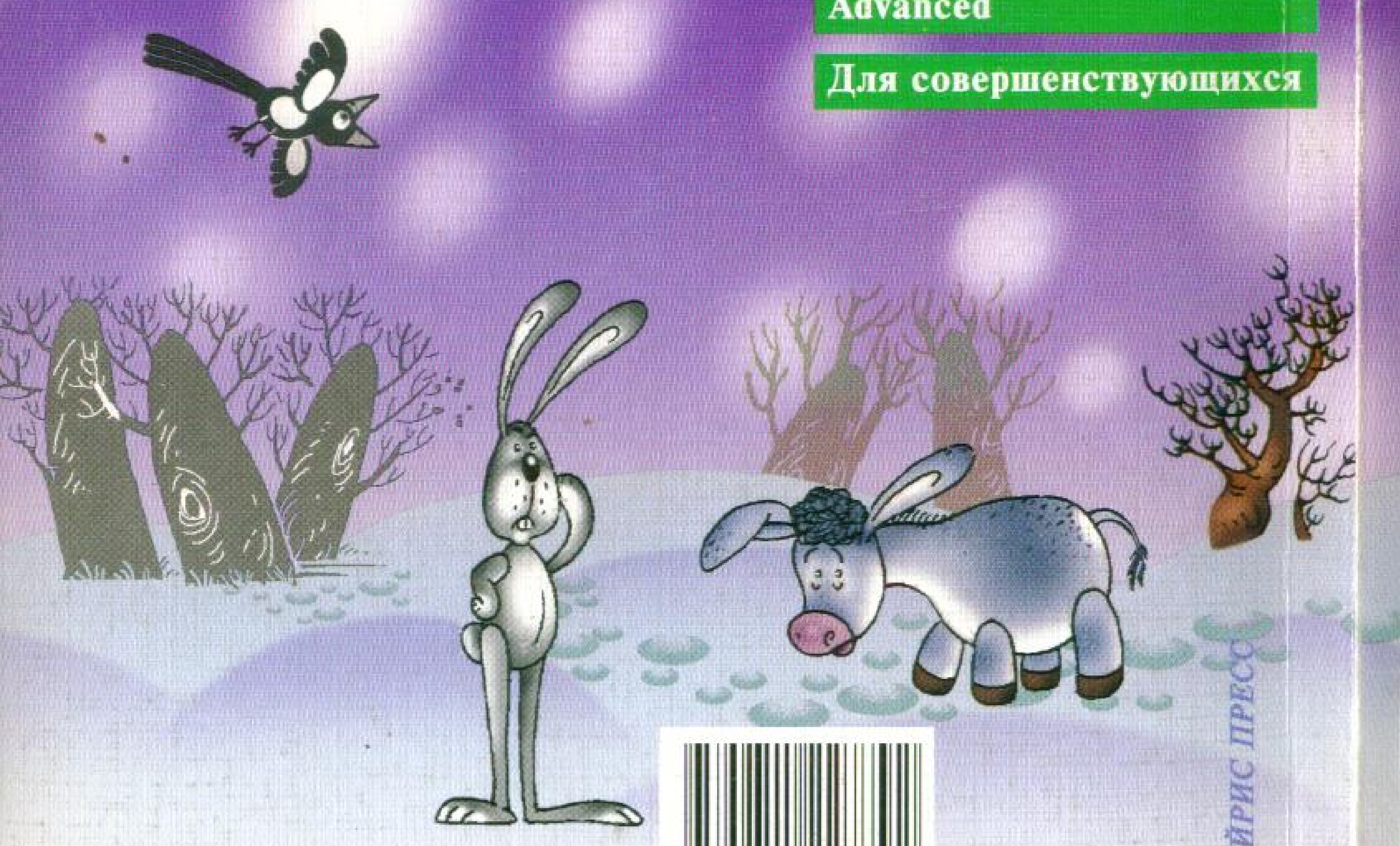
Для продолжающих второго уровня

Upper Intermediate

Для продолжающих третьего уровня

Advanced

Для совершенствующихся



9 785811 227792

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение

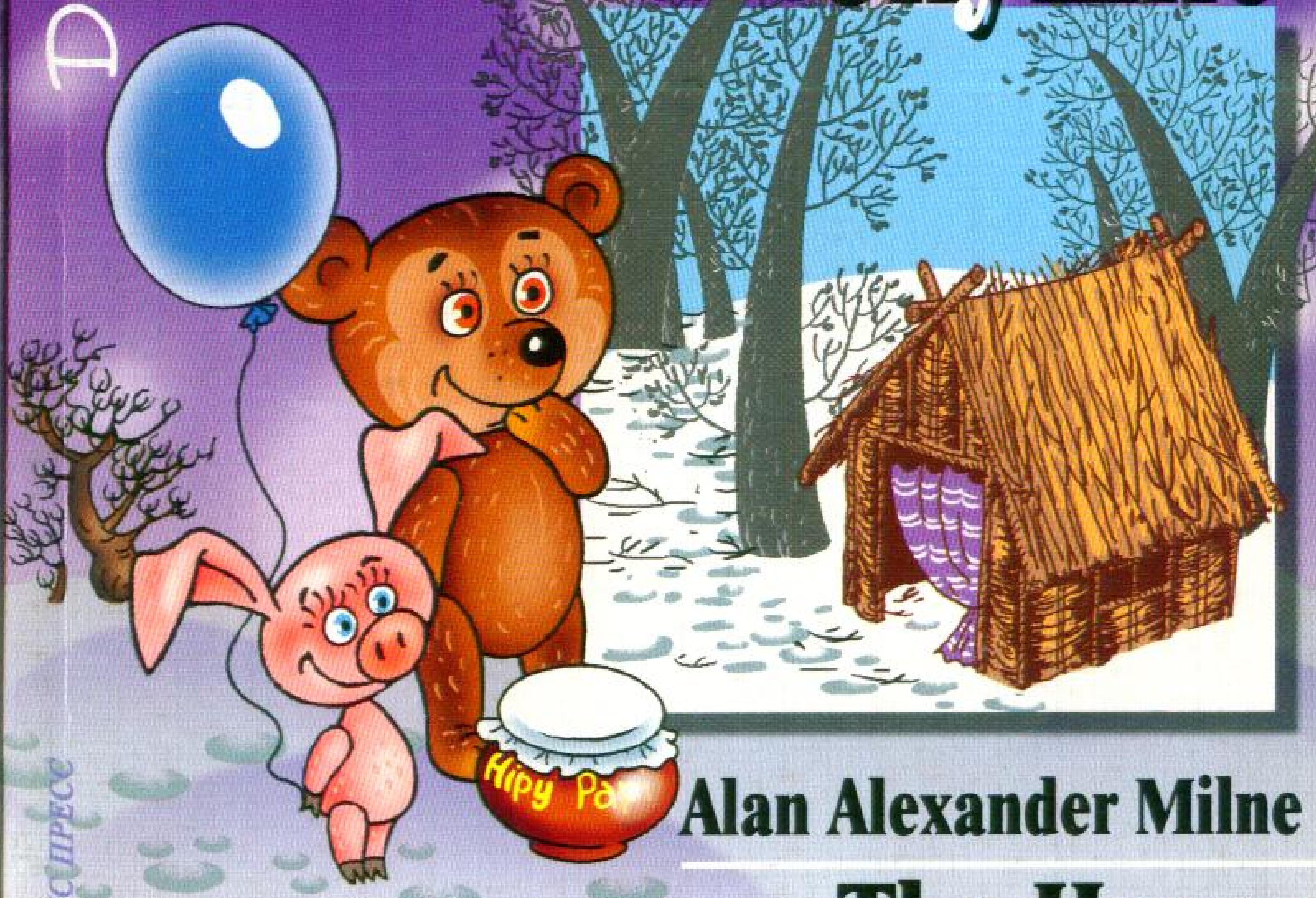
Elementary

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Английский клуб

Алан Александер Милн

Дом на Пуховой опушке



Alan Alexander Milne

The House at Pooh Corner

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Алан Александер Милн

Дом на Пуховой опушке

Адаптация текста, комментарий, упражнения, словарь Е. Г. Вороновой

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2007

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
М60

Серия *«Английский клуб»* включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Милн, Алан Александер

М60 Дом на Пуховой опушке / Алан Александер Милн; адаптация текста, коммент., упражнения, словарь Е. Г. Вороновой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2007. — 112 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

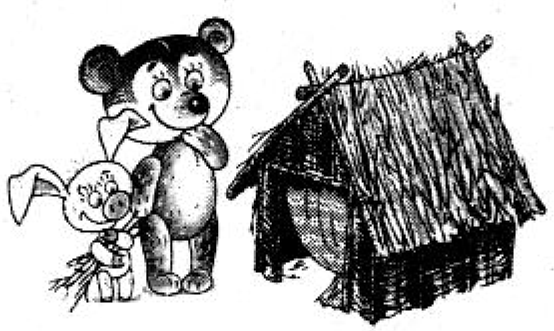
ISBN 978-5-8112-2779-2

Книга из серии «Английский клуб» знакомит читателя с творчеством известного английского писателя Алана А.Милна. Текст его произведения — «Дом на Пуховой опушке» — адаптирован с учетом уровня владения языком учащихся 5–6 классов. На страницах книги читатель встретится со знакомыми персонажами — медвежонком Винни-Пухом, осликом Иа-Иа, веселым тигренком Тигером и мальчиком Кристофером Робином. Пособие может быть использовано как на уроках английского языка, так и в качестве увлекательного чтения. Книга снабжена комментарием, упражнениями и словарем.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

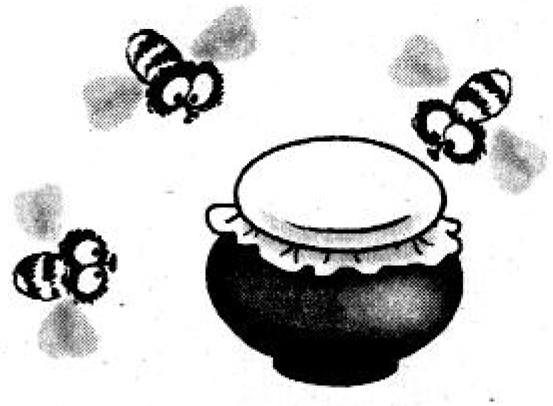
ISBN 978-5-8112-2779-2

The House at Pooh Corner



Chapter One

In Which a House Is Built at Pooh Corner for Eeyore



One day Pooh Bear had nothing to do, so he went to see Piglet. It was a cold winter day and it was snowing hard. Pooh was sure that his friend was at home. But the door of Piglet's house was open; and the more Pooh looked inside the more Piglet wasn't there.

"He's out," said Pooh sadly. "That's what it is.[1] He's not in. I shall have to go for a Thinking Walk alone!"

But first he knocked at the door and waited for Piglet not to answer. Suddenly a little song came into his head. It went like this:

The more it snows
(Tiddely pom[2]),
The more it goes
(Tiddely pom),
The more it goes
(Tiddely pom),
On snowing.

And nobody knows
(Tiddely pom),
How cold my toes

[1] **That's what it is.** — Вот в чем дело.
[2] **Tiddely pom** — *зд.* Трам-пам

(Tiddely pom),
How cold my toes
(Tiddely pom),
Are growing.

"So I'll go home first," said Pooh, "and I'll put a scarf round my neck, and then I'll go and see Eeyore and sing the song to him."

He ran back home. When he came into his own house, he was very surprised to find Piglet in his best arm-chair.

"Hello, Piglet," he said. "I thought you were out."

"No," said Piglet, "it's you who were out, Pooh."

"So it was," said Pooh. "I knew one of us was."

He looked up at his clock, which had stopped at five minutes to eleven some weeks ago.

"Nearly eleven o'clock," said Pooh happily. "You're just in time for a little something," and he put his head into the cupboard. "And then we'll go out, Piglet, and sing my song to Eeyore."

"Which song, Pooh?"

"The one we're going to sing to Eeyore," explained Pooh.

The clock was still saying five minutes to eleven when Pooh and Piglet started their way an hour later.

There was no wind and the snow was coming down very quietly. But it was still cold so soon Pooh and Piglet got cold and very snowy.

"Pooh," Piglet said at last, "I think we should go home and practise your song. It's not an easy song and I'd like to sing it very well to my friend Eeyore."

"That's a very good idea, Piglet," said Pooh. "We'll practise it now on our way. But it's no good going home to practise it[1], because it's a special Outdoor Snow Song."

"Are you sure?" asked Piglet anxiously.

"Well, you'll see, Piglet, when you listen. Because this is how it begins. *The more it snows, tiddely pom—*"

"Tiddely what?" said Piglet.

[1] **it it's no good going home to practise it** — бессмысленно репетировать ее дома

"Pom," said Pooh. "I put that in to make it more songy[1]. *The more it goes, tiddely pom, the more—*"

"Didn't you say snows?"

"Yes, but that was *before*."

"Before the tiddely pom?"

"It was a *different* tiddely pom," said Pooh. "I'll sing it to you again and then you'll see."

And so he did and Piglet listened carefully. By this time they were coming to Eeyore's Gloomy Place, and as it was very cold, and to keep themselves warm they sang Pooh's song six times.

"I am thinking about Eeyore," said Pooh.

"What about Eeyore?"

"Well, poor Eeyore has nowhere to live[2]."

"Nor he has," said Piglet.

"*You* have a house, Piglet, and I have a house, and they are very good houses. And Christopher Robin has a house, and Owl and Kanga and Rabbit have houses, and even Rabbit's friends have houses, but poor Eeyore has nothing. Let's build him a house."

"That," said Piglet, "is a Grand Idea. Where shall we build it?"

"We will build it here," said Pooh, "near this wood, out of the wind. And we will call it Pooh Corner[3]. And we will build an Eeyore House with sticks right here."

"I saw many sticks over there, in the wood," said Piglet. "Lots and lots."

"Thank you, Piglet," said Pooh. "It will be a Great Help to us. Come and bring the sticks."

Christopher Robin spent that cold morning at home reading books. Suddenly he heard a knock at the door and it was Eeyore.

---

[1] **songy** — *зд.* «песенный» (*Слово образовано от существительного* song *с помощью прибавления «детского» суффикса -у.*)

[2] **poor Eeyore has nowhere to live** — бедному Иа-иа негде жить

[3] **Pooh Corner** — *зд.* Опушка Пуха (*Слово* corner *вовсе не означает «опушка», оно употреблено в значении «место». Важно, что именно Пух выбрал это место для будущего домика, а так как дело происходит рядом с лесом, то слово «опушка» кажется наиболее уместным.*)

"Hello, Eeyore," said Christopher Robin, as he opened the door and came out. "How are you?"

"It's snowing," said Eeyore gloomily.

"So it is."

"*And* very cold."

"Is it?"

"Yes," said Eeyore. "But," he said, smiling a little, "we haven't had an earthquake yet."

"What's the matter, Eeyore?"

"Nothing, Christopher Robin. Nothing important. You haven't seen a house anywhere about[1], have you?"

"What sort of a house?"

"Just a house."

"Who lives there?"

"I do. I thought I did. But now I think I don't. After all, we can't all have houses."

"But, Eeyore, I didn't know — I always thought —"

"Christopher Robin, with all this snow, it isn't so Hot in my field about three o'clock in the morning as some people think," he went on, "and don't tell anybody, it's Cold."

"Oh, Eeyore!"

"And I said to myself: my friends will be sorry if I get very cold. They haven't got Brains, any of them. But if it goes on snowing for another six weeks, some of them will begin to think: 'Eeyore can't be so very much too Hot about three o'clock in the morning.' And they'll be Sorry."

"Oh, Eeyore!" said Christopher Robin, feeling very sorry already.

"I don't mean you[2], Christopher Robin. You're different. So, I built a house."

"Did you really? How interesting!"

"The really interesting thing," said Eeyore in his gloomy voice, "is that when I left it this morning it was there and when I came back

---

[1] **anywhere about** — где-нибудь поблизости

[2] **I don't mean you** — Я не про тебя

it wasn't. I wasn't surprised, it was very natural because and it was only Eeyore's house. But still I just wondered.[1]"

Christopher Robin didn't stop to wonder. He put on his hat, his boots, and his coat and ran out of his house.

"We'll go and look for it at once," he said to Eeyore.

"Sometimes," said Eeyore, "when people take a house, there are one or two things which they don't want. So I thought if we just went[2] —"

"Come on," said Christopher Robin, and off they went. Soon they got to the place where Eeyore's house wasn't any longer.

"There!" said Eeyore. "Not a stick of it left! Of course, I've still got a lot of snow to do what I want."

But Christopher Robin didn't listen to Eeyore; he heard something else.

"Can you hear it?" he asked.

"What is it? Somebody laughing?"

"Listen."

They both listened... and they heard a deep voice and a small high voice singing.

"It's Pooh," said Christopher Robin.

"Possibly," said Eeyore.

"*And* Piglet!" said Christopher Robin.

"Probably," said Eeyore. "What we want is a Dog to find my house."

The words of the song changed suddenly.

"*We've finished our HOUSE!*" sang the deep voice.

"*Tiddely pom!*" sang the high one.

"*It's a beautiful HOUSE...*"

"*The House at Pooh Corner...*"

"*Tiddely pom...*"

"*I wish it were MINE...*"

"*Tiddely pom...*"

"*Pooh!*" shouted Christopher Robin.

The singers stopped their song.

---

[1] **But still I just wondered.** — Но тем не менее у меня возникли вопросы.

[2] **if we just went** — если бы мы сейчас пошли

"It's Christopher Robin!" said Pooh happily.

"He's near the place where we got all those sticks from," said Piglet.

"Come on," said Pooh.

And they ran back.

"Why, here *is* Eeyore," said Pooh, "Hallo, Eeyore."

"Same to you, Pooh Bear, and twice on Thursdays[1]," said Eeyore gloomily.

Before Pooh could say "Why Thursdays?" Christopher Robin began to tell the sad story of Eeyore's Lost House. And Pooh and Piglet listened, and their eyes were getting bigger and bigger.

"Where did you say it was?" asked Pooh.

"Here," said Eeyore.

"Made of sticks?"

"Yes."

"Oh!" said Piglet.

"What?" said Eeyore.

"I just said 'Oh!' " said Piglet quickly.

"You're sure it *was* a house?" said Pooh. "I mean, you're sure the house was just here?"

"Of course I am," said Eeyore.

"Why, what's the matter, Pooh?" asked Christopher Robin.

"Well," said Pooh... "The fact *is*," said Pooh... "Well, the fact *is*," said Pooh... "You see," said Pooh... "It's like this," said Pooh, and stopped because he decided that he couldn't explain it well.

"It's like this," said Piglet quickly... "Only warmer."

"What's warmer?"

"The other side of the wood, where Eeyore's house is."

"My house?" said Eeyore. "My house was here."

"No," said Piglet. "On the other side of the wood."

"Because it is warmer," said Pooh.

"But I want to know..."

"Come and look," said Piglet and they all started their way.

At last they saw Eeyore's house. It looked very nice and comfortable.

---

[1] **twice on Thursdays** — а по четвергам в два раза больше



"There you are," said Piglet. "Inside as well as outside," said Pooh proudly.

Eeyore went inside... and came out again.

"It's a wonderful thing," he said. "It *is* my house, and I built it where I said I did, so I think the wind have blown it here. And the wind blew it right over the wood, and blew it down here. And you know, this is the better place for a house."

"Much better," said Pooh and Piglet together.

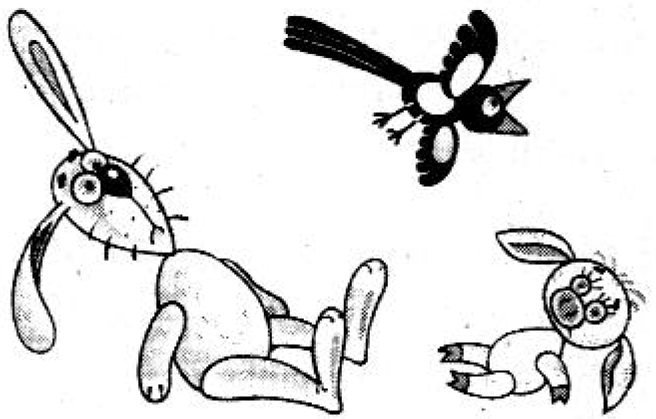
"Do you see, Pooh? Do you see, Piglet? Brains first and then Hard Work.[1] Look at it! *That's* the way to build a house," said Eeyore proudly.

So they left him in it; and Christopher Robin went back to lunch with his friends Pooh and Piglet, and on the way they told him of the Awful Mistake. And then they laughed a lot and then they all sang the Outdoor Snowy Song.

[1] **Brains first and then Hard Work.** — Сначала надо все продумать, потом — хорошо потрудиться.

Chapter Two

In Which Tigger Comes to the Forest and Has Breakfast



Winnie-the-Pooh woke up suddenly in the middle of the night and listened. Then he got out of bed, and went across the room to see if anybody was trying to get into his honey-cupboard, and they weren't, so he got into bed. But then he heard the noise again.

"Is that you, Piglet?" he said.

But it wasn't.

"Come in, Christopher Robin," he said.

But Christopher Robin didn't.

"Tell me about it tomorrow, Eeyore," said Pooh sleepily.

But the noise went on.

"*Worraworraworraworraworra*," said Whatever-it-was and Pooh found that he wasn't sleepy at all.

"What is it?" he thought. "There are lots of noises in the Forest, but this is a different one. It is a new noise in the Forest and some Strange Animal is making it! And he's making it near my house. So I shall ask him not to do it."

He got out of bed and opened his front door.

"Hello!" said Pooh.

"Hello!" said Whatever-it-was.

"Oh!" said Pooh. "Hello!"

"Hello!" said the Strange Animal, wondering how long this was going on.

Pooh was just going to say "Hello!" for the fourth time but he said, "Who is it?"

"Me," said a voice.

"Oh!" said Pooh. "Well, come here."

So Whatever-it-was came there, and in the light of the candle he and Pooh looked at each other.

"I'm Pooh," said Pooh.

"I'm Tigger," said Tigger.

"Oh! I have never seen such an animal before!" said Pooh. "Does Christopher Robin know about you?"

"Of course he does," said Tigger.

"Well," said Pooh, "it's the middle of the night, which is a good time for going to sleep. And tomorrow morning we'll have some honey for breakfast. Do Tiggers like honey?"

"They like everything," said Tigger.

"Then if they like going to sleep on the floor, I'll go back to bed," said Pooh, "and we'll do things in the morning. Good night." And he got back into bed and went to sleep.

When he woke up in the morning, the first thing he saw was Tigger, sitting in front of the mirror.

"Hello!" said Pooh.

"Hello!" said Tigger. "I've found somebody just like me. I thought I was the only one of them."

Pooh got out of bed, and began to explain what a mirror was, but suddenly Tigger said: "Excuse me a moment, but there's something climbing up your table," and with one loud *Worraworraworraworraworra* he jumped at the end of the tablecloth, pulled it to the ground, and after a terrible fight, he said: "Have I won?"

"That's my tablecloth," said Pooh.

"I wondered what it was," said Tigger.

"It goes on the table and you put things on it."

"Then why did it try to bite me?"

"I don't *think* it did," said Pooh.

"It tried," said Tigger, "but I was too quick!"

Pooh put the cloth back on the table, and he put a large honey-pot on the cloth, and they sat down to breakfast. And as soon as they

sat down, Tigger took a large mouthful of honey[1] and thought... and then he said in a very decided voice:

"Tiggers don't like honey."

"Oh!" said Pooh. "I thought they liked everything."

"Everything except honey," said Tigger.

Pooh felt rather pleased about this, and said to Tigger:

"I have already finished my breakfast, I can take you to Piglet's house. You can try some of Piglet's haycorns[2] there."

"Thank you, Pooh," said Tigger, "because haycorns is really what Tiggers like best."

So after breakfast they went round to see Piglet, and Pooh explained as they went that Piglet was a Very Small Animal who didn't like jumping and bouncing. So Pooh asked Tigger not to be too Bouncy just at first. And Tigger, who was bouncing in the trees, said that Tiggers were only Bouncy before breakfast, and after a nice breakfast they became Very Quiet Animals. At last they knocked at the door of Piglet's house.

"Hello, Pooh," said Piglet.

"Hello, Piglet. This is Tigger."

"Oh, is it?" said Piglet. "I thought Tiggers were smaller than that."

"Not the big ones," said Tigger.

"They like haycorns," said Pooh, "so that's what we've come for, because poor Tigger hasn't had any breakfast yet."

Piglet gave Tigger a lot of haycorns, and said, "So you're Tigger? Well, well!" But Tigger said nothing because his mouth was full of haycorns...

After a long pause he said:

"Tiggers don't like haycorns."

"But you said they liked everything except honey," said Pooh.

"Everything except honey *and* haycorns," explained Tigger.

When he heard this, Pooh said, "Oh, I see!" and Piglet, who was glad that Tiggers didn't like haycorns, said, "What about thistles?"

[1] **took a large mouthful of honey** — набил полную пасть меда

[2] **haycorns = acorns** — *зд.* желуди (*Автор обыгрывает типичную для маленьких англичан ошибку — добавление звука [h] в те слова, где он совсем не требуется.*)

"Thistles," said Tigger, "is what Tiggers like best."

"Then let's go along and see Eeyore," said Piglet.

So the three of them went; and after they had walked and walked and walked, they came to the part of the Forest where Eeyore was.

"Hello, Eeyore!" said Pooh. "This is Tigger."

"What is?" said Eeyore.

"This," explained Pooh and Piglet together, and Tigger smiled his happiest smile and said nothing.

Eeyore walked all round Tigger one way, and then turned and walked all round him the other way.

"What did you say it was?" he asked.

"Tigger."

"Ah!" said Eeyore.

"He's just come," explained Piglet.

"Ah!" said Eeyore again.

He thought for a long time and then said:

"When is he going?"

Pooh explained to Eeyore that Tigger was a great friend of Christopher Robin's, who had come to stay in the Forest.

"You know, I haven't had any breakfast today..."

"Tiggers always eat thistles, so that was why we came to see you, Eeyore," said Pooh

"So your new stripy friend wants his breakfast. What did you say his name was?"

"Tigger."

"Then come this way, Tigger."

Eeyore showed Tigger thistles growing nearby[1].

"This is the best thistle I have. I am growing it for my birthday," he said; "but, after all, what *are* birthdays? Here today and gone tomorrow.[2] Help yourself, Tigger."

Tigger thanked him and asked:

"Are these really thistles?"

"Yes," said Pooh.

"What Tiggers like best?"

[1] **growing nearby** — растущий поблизости

[2] **Here today and gone tomorrow.** — Сегодня он есть, а завтра уже и прошел.

"That's right," said Pooh.

"I see," said Tigger.

So he took a large mouthful, and...

"Ow!" said Tigger.

He sat down and put his paw in his mouth.

"What's the matter?" asked Pooh.

"*Hot!*"

"Perhaps there is a bee in his mouth. Perhaps he doesn't like thistles. Then why try the best one?" said Eeyore.

"But you said," began Pooh, "you *said* that Tiggers liked everything except honey and haycorns."

"*And* thistles," said Tigger, who was now running in circles with his mouth open.

Pooh looked at him sadly.

"What are we going to do?" he asked Piglet.

Piglet knew the answer to that, and he said at once that they must go and see Christopher Robin.

"You'll find him with Kanga," said Eeyore.

Pooh nodded and said to Tigger:

"Come and see Kanga. I think she has lots of breakfast for you."

Tigger finished his last circle and ran up to Pooh and Piglet.

"Hot!" he explained with a large and friendly smile. "Come on!" and he ran away.

Pooh and Piglet walked slowly after him. And as they walked Piglet said nothing, because he couldn't think of anything, and Pooh said nothing, because he was thinking of a poem. And when he had thought of it he began:

What shall we do about poor little Tigger?
If he never eats nothing he'll never get bigger.
He doesn't like honey and haycorns and thistles
Because of the taste and because of the bristles.
And all the good things which an animal likes
Have the wrong sort of swallow or too many spikes[1].

[1] **Have the wrong sort of swallow or too many spikes** — кажутся ему невкусными, слишком колючими

"He's quite big enough," said Piglet.

"He isn't *really* very big."

"Well, he *seems so*."

Tigger was bouncing in front of them all this time, turning round every now and then to ask, "Is this the way?" And at last they came to Kanga's house, and there was Christopher Robin. Tigger ran up to him.

"Oh, there you are, Tigger!" said Christopher Robin.

"I've found a lot of interesting things in the Forest," said Tigger importantly. "I've found a pooh and a piglet and an eeyore, but I can't find any breakfast."

Pooh and Piglet came up to Christopher Robin and explained everything to him.

"Don't *you* know what Tiggers like?" asked Pooh.

"I thought Tigger knew," said Christopher Robin.

"I do," said Tigger. "Everything there is in the world except honey and haycorns and thistles."

"Oh, well then, Kanga can give you some breakfast."

So they went into Kanga's house, and when Roo had said, "Hello, Pooh," and "Hello, Piglet" once, and "Hello, Tigger" twice, because he had never said it before and it sounded funny, they told Kanga what they wanted, and Kanga said very kindly, "Well, look in my cupboard, Tigger, dear, and see what you'd like."

"Shall I look, too?" said Pooh, who was beginning to feel a little hungry. And he found some condensed milk there and got very happy.

But the more Tigger put his nose into this and his paw into that, the more things he found which Tiggers didn't like. And when he had found everything in the cupboard, and couldn't eat any of it, he said to Kanga, "What happens now?"

But Kanga and Christopher Robin and Piglet were all standing round Roo, watching him have his Extract of Malt[1]. And Roo was saying, "Must I?" and Kanga was saying, "Now, Roo, dear, you remember what you promised."

[1] **Extract of Malt** — пивные дрожжи (*популярное в то время укрепляющее средство, которое сын автора очень любил в отличие от крошки Ру*)

"What is it?" asked Tigger.

"His Medicine," said Piglet. "He hates it."

So Tigger came closer and suddenly he opened his mouth and the Extract of Malt was gone.

"Tigger, dear!" said Kanga.

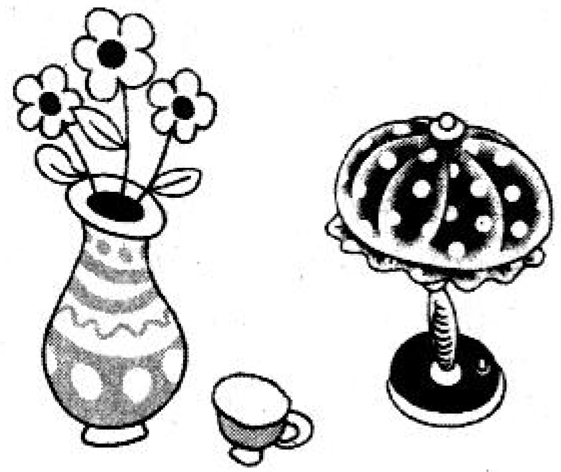
"He's taken my medicine, he's taken my medicine, he's taken my medicine!" sang Roo happily, thinking it was a nice joke.

Then Tigger closed his eyes, and a peaceful smile appeared on his face as he said, "So *that's* what Tiggers like!"

That's why he always lived at Kanga's house afterwards, and had Extract of Malt for breakfast, dinner, and tea. Sometimes he had some porridge or a sandwich but only after meals as medicine.

Chapter Three

In Which a Search Is Organized, and Piglet Nearly Meets the Heffalump Again



Pooh was sitting in his house one day, counting his pots of honey, when there came a knock on the door.

"Fourteen," said Pooh. "Come in. Fourteen. Or was it fifteen?"

"Hello, Pooh," said Rabbit.

"Hello, Rabbit. Fourteen, wasn't it?"

"What was?"

"My pots of honey what I was counting."

"Fourteen, that's right."

"Are you sure?"

"No," said Rabbit. "Does it matter?"

"I just like to know," said Pooh. "So as I can say to myself: 'I've got fourteen pots of honey left.' "

"Well, let's call it sixteen," said Rabbit. "What I came to say was: have you seen Small anywhere about?"

"I don't think so," said Pooh. And then, after thinking a little more, he said: "Who is Small?"

"One of my friends-and-relations," said Rabbit.

This didn't help Pooh much, because Rabbit had so many friends-and-relations!

"I haven't seen anybody today to say 'Hello, Small!'," said Pooh, "What did you want him for?"

"I don't want *him*," said Rabbit. "But it's always useful to know where a friend-and-relation *is*."

"Oh, I see," said Pooh. "Is he lost?"

"Well," said Rabbit, "nobody has seen him for a long time, so I think he is. You know," he went on importantly, "I promised Christopher Robin to Organize a Search[1] for him, so come on."

Pooh said good-bye to his fourteen pots of honey, and hoped they were fifteen; and he and Rabbit went out into the Forest.

"Now," said Rabbit, "this is a Search, and I've Organized it."

"Done what to it?[2]" said Pooh.

"Organized it. It means that you shouldn't look for Small in the place where somebody else is looking for him. So I want you, Pooh, to look for Small near the Six Pine Trees first and then go to Owl's House, and there you will see me. Do you see?"

"No," said Pooh. "What —"

"Then I'll see you at Owl's House in an hour."

"Have you Organized Piglet too?"

"I have Organized everybody," said Rabbit, and off he went.

As soon as Rabbit went away, Pooh remembered that he didn't know who Small was, but as it was Too Late Now, he decided to find Piglet first, and ask him what they were looking for before he looked for it.

"And it's no good looking at the Six Pine Trees for Piglet," said Pooh to himself, "because he has his special place of his own. So I shall have to look for the Special Place first. I wonder where it is." And he wrote it down in his head like this:

Plan to look for things.
1. Special Place. (*To find Piglet.*)
2. Piglet. (*To find who Small is.*)
3. Small. (*To find Small.*)
4. Rabbit. (*To tell him I've found Small.*)
5. Small Again. (*To tell him I've found Rabbit.*)

"It is going to be a busy day," thought Pooh and started his way.

[1] **to Organize a Search** — организовать поиски
[2] **Done what to it?** — Сделал с ним что?

The next moment the day became very busy, because Pooh was so busy not looking where he was going that the next moment he found himself falling down: "I'm flying. What Owl does. I wonder how to stop —" when he stopped.

Bump!

"Ow!" said something in a small high voice. "Help!"

"That's me again," thought Pooh. "I've fallen down, and my voice became very high, because I've done something to myself inside!"

"Help-help!"

"There you are! I say things when I'm not trying."

"Pooh!" said the voice.

"It's Piglet!" cried Pooh. "Where are you?"

"Under," said Piglet in an underneath sort of way.

"Under what?"

"You," said Piglet. "Get up!"

"Oh!" said Pooh, and jumped up as quickly as he could. "Did I fall on you, Piglet?"

"You fell on me," said Piglet.

"I didn't want to," said Pooh.

"I didn't want to be under you," said Piglet sadly. "But I'm all right now. Pooh, and I *am* so glad it was you."

"What's happened?" said Pooh. "Where are we?"

"I think we're in a Pit. I was walking along, looking for somebody, and then suddenly I wasn't any more, and just when I got up to see where I was, something fell on me. And it was you."

"So it was," said Pooh.

"Yes," said Piglet. "Pooh, do you think we're in a Pit?"

Pooh didn't think about it at all, but now he thought. Suddenly he remembered that many days ago Pooh and Piglet made a Pooh Trap for Heffalumps, and he understood everything. He and Piglet fell into a Heffalump Trap for Poohs! That was what it was.

"What happens when the Heffalump comes?" asked Piglet, when he had heard the news.

"Perhaps he won't see *you*, Piglet," said Pooh, "because you're a Very Small Animal."

"But he'll see *you*, Pooh."

"He'll see *me*, and I shall see *him*," said Pooh. "We'll look at each other for a long time, and then he'll say: 'Ho-ho!' "

"W-what will *you* say?" Piglet got afraid and asked.

Pooh tried to think of it, but the more he thought, the more he felt that there *is* no real answer to "Ho-ho!"

"I shan't say anything," said Pooh at last. "I shall just sing a song to myself."

"Then perhaps he'll say 'Ho-ho!' again?"

"He will," said Pooh, "and I shall go on singing. And then he will say: 'What's all this?' And then I shall say: 'It's a trap for a Heffalump. I have made it, and I'm waiting for the Heffalump to fall in.' And I shall go on singing."

"Pooh!" cried Piglet. "You've saved us!"

"Have I?" said Pooh. He was not sure.

But Piglet was. And then he thought suddenly and a little sadly:

"It's so nice to talk to the Heffalump!" He knew just what he would say[1]:

HEFFALUMP (*angrily*): "Ho-ho!"

PIGLET (*happily*): "Tra-la-la, tra-la-la."

HEFFALUMP (*surprised*): "Ho-ho!"

PIGLET (*more happily*): "Tiddle-um-tum, tiddle-mn-tuni."

HEFFALUMP (*more surprised*): "Hm! What's all this?"

PIGLET (*surprised*): "Hello! This is a trap I've made, and I'm waiting for a Heffalump to fall into it."

HEFFALUMP (*very sad*): "Oh!" (*After a long silence*): "Are you sure?"

PIGLET: "Yes."

HEFFALUMP: "Oh! I thought it was a trap to catch Piglets."

PIGLET (*surprised*): "Oh, no!"

HEFFALUMP: "But I can see I was wrong."

PIGLET: "I'm afraid so. I'm sorry." (*He starts singing.*)

HEFFALUMP: "Well, I think I must go."

PIGLET: "Must you? Well, if you see Christopher Robin, tell him I want to see him."

HEFFALUMP: "Certainly! Certainly!" (*He runs away.*)

POOH: "Oh, Piglet, how brave and clever you are!"

[1] **what he would say** — вот что бы он сказал

PIGLET: "Not at all, Pooh."

At that time the Search for Small was still going on all over the Forest. Small's real name was Very Small Beetle, but he was called Small for short. Christopher Robin was the last person who saw him.

"I think he's just gone home," said Christopher Robin to Rabbit.

"Did he say 'Good-bye and thank you for a nice time'?" said Rabbit.

"He's only just said 'How do you do?'," said Christopher Robin.

"Has he written a letter saying: 'I'm sorry but I have to go'?"

"No."

"Ha!" said Rabbit again, and looked very important. "This is Serious. He is Lost. We must begin the Search at once." And Rabbit ran away.

Christopher Robin went into his house and drew a picture of Pooh going a long walk at about seven o'clock in the morning. Then he climbed to the top of his tree and climbed down again and went across the Forest to see his friend Winnie-the-Pooh.

At last he came to the Pit, and he looked down, and there were Pooh and Piglet.

"Ho-ho!" said Christopher Robin loudly and suddenly.

Piglet jumped in the air.

"It's the Heffalump!" thought Piglet. "Now, then! Tra-la-la, tra-la-la," but he didin't look up. Because if you see a Heffalump looking down at you, sometimes you forget what you are going to say.

"Rum-tum-tum-tiddle-um," said Christopher Robin in a voice like Pooh's.

"He has said the wrong thing," thought Piglet. "He had to say 'Ho-ho!' again. I'll say his words: 'Ho-ho!' "

"How *did* you get there, Piglet?" said Christopher Robin in a voice like Christopher Robin's.

"This is Terrible," thought Piglet. "First he talks in Pooh's voice, and then he talks in Christopher Robin's voice, and he wants to frighten me." And he said very quickly: "This is a trap for Poohs, and

I'm waiting to fall in it, *ho-ho*, what's all this, and then I say *ho-ho* again."

"*What?*" said Christopher Robin.

"A trap for ho-ho's," said Piglet in a thin voice. "I've just made it, and I'm waiting for the ho-ho to come."

At that moment Pooh stopped dreaming about his pots of honey, because he felt something on his back. He heard Christopher Robin's voice.

"Hello!" he shouted happily.

"Hello, Pooh."

Piglet looked up and he felt so Foolish and Uncomfortable that... Suddenly he saw Something.

"Pooh!" he cried. "There's something climbing up your back."

"I thought there was," said Pooh.

"It's Small!" cried Piglet.

"Oh, *that's* who it is, is it?" said Pooh.

"Christopher Robin, I've found Small!" cried Piglet.

"Well done, Piglet," said Christopher Robin. And at these words Piglet felt quite happy again.

Then Christopher Robin helped them out of the Pit and they all went off together hand-in-hand.

And two days later Rabbit met Eeyore in the Forest.

"Hello, Eeyore," he said, "what are *you* looking for?"

"Small, of course," said Eeyore. "Haven't you any brain?"

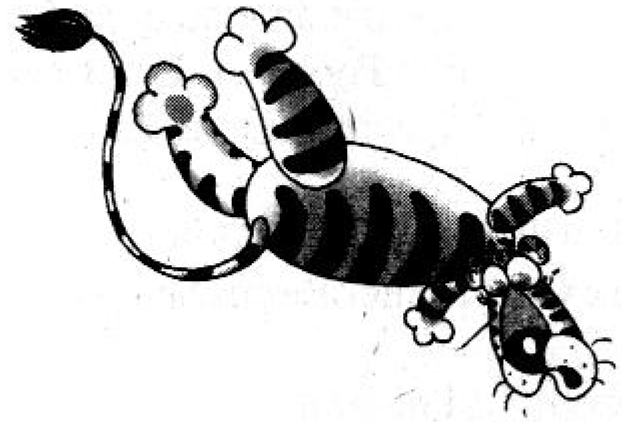
"Oh, but didn't I tell you?" said Rabbit. "Piglet found Small two days ago."

There was a moment's silence. "Ha-ha," said Eeyore gloomily. "It's just what would happen."[1]

[1] **It's just what would happen.** — По-другому и быть не могло.

Chapter Four

In Which Tiggers Don't Climb Trees



One day Pooh thought: "I'm going to see Eeyore, because I haven't seen him since yesterday." And he went to visit his friend but on his way he thought: "I haven't seen Owl since the day before yesterday, so I'll visit him first."

When he came to the small river, he remembered Kanga and Roo and Tigger and he thought, "I haven't seen Roo for a long time, and if I don't see him today it will be a longer time."

"Rabbit," remembered Pooh then. "I *like* talking to Rabbit. He doesn't use long, difficult words, like Owl. He uses short, easy words, like 'What about lunch?' and 'Help yourself, Pooh.' I think I will suppose, *really*, I go and see Rabbit."

So he went to the Rabbit's house. But on the way to him Pooh began to think:

"Is Rabbit at home, I wonder?"

"I wouldn't like to get stuck in his front door again..."

"His front door is getting thinner, isn't it?"

He was going on and on... suddenly he found himself[1] at his own front door.

And it was eleven o'clock.

It was Time-for-a-little-something...

Half an hour later he was going to Piglet's house and singing a song.

[1] **he found himself** — очутился

Piglet was busy that morning. He was digging a small hole in the ground outside his house.

"Hello, Piglet," said Pooh.

"Hello, Pooh," said Piglet, giving a jump of surprise[1]. "I knew it was you."

"So did I," said Pooh. "What are you doing?"

"I'm planting a haycorn, Pooh, so that it can grow up into an oak-tree, and have lots of haycorns just outside the front door, do you see, Pooh?"

"Are you sure it will grow?" said Pooh.

"It will, because Christopher Robin says it will, so that's why I'm planting it."

"Well," said Pooh, "if I plant a honeycomb, then it will grow up into a beehive."

Piglet wasn't quite sure about this.

"You are right, Pooh, it's a very difficult thing — planting," he said and put the acorn in the hole, and covered it with earth, and jumped on it.

"I know," said Pooh, "because Christopher Robin gave me a mastershalum[2] seed, and I planted it, and I'm going to have mastershalums."

"I thought they were called nasturtiums," said Piglet, as he went on jumping.

"No," said Pooh. "Not these. These are called mastershalums."

Piglet finished jumping and said, "What shall we do now?" and Pooh said, "Let's go and see Kanga and Roo and Tigger," and Piglet said, "Y-yes. L-let's" — because he was a little afraid of Tigger, who was a very Bouncy Animal.

That morning Kanga felt rather motherly[3] She asked: "How many jackets have you got, Roo?" and "How many pieces of soap have we got at home?" and "Is there food for Tigger at home?" She was very busy asking them and answering. So she gave some cabbage sandwiches to Roo and some extract-of-malt sandwiches for Tigger

[1] **giving a jump of surprise** — подпрыгнув от удивления

[2] **mastershalum** — *искаженное* настурция; *можно перевести как «растунция»*

[3] **felt rather motherly** — ощущала себя настоящей мамой

and sent them out to have a nice long morning in the Forest. And off they went.

And as they went, Tigger told Roo all about the things that Tiggers could do.

"Can they fly?" asked Roo.

"Yes," said Tigger, "they're very good flyers."

"Oo!" said Roo. "Can they fly as well as Owl?"

"Yes," said Tigger. "Only they don't want to."

"Why don't they want to?"

"Well, they don't like it."

Roo couldn't understand it.

"Well," said Roo, "can they jump as far as Kangas?"

"Yes," said Tigger. "When they want to."

"I *love* jumping," said Roo. "Let's see who is the best jumper, you or me."

"I can," said Tigger. "But we mustn't stop now, or we shall be late."

"Late for what?"

"For whatever we want to be in time for[1]," said Tigger.

"I can swim," said Roo. "I fell into the river, and I swam. Can Tiggers swim?"

"Of course they can. Tiggers can do everything."

"Can they climb trees better than Pooh?" asked Roo, stopping under the tallest tree in the wood, and looking up at it.

"Climbing trees is what they do best," said Tigger. "Much better than Poohs."

"Could they climb this one?"

"They're always climbing trees like that," said Tigger. "Up and down all day."

"Oo, Tigger, are they really?"

"I'll show you," said Tigger, "and you can sit on my back and watch me."

So Roo sat on Tigger's back and up they went.

And first Tigger said happily, "Up we go!"

And then he said:

"I always *said* Tiggers could climb trees."

[1] **For whatever we want to be in time for** — Туда, куда мы хотим прийти вовремя

And then he said:

"It's not easy, you see."

And then he said:

"Of course, the coming-down is not easy too."

And then he said:

"It really will be difficult..."

"But falling down will be..."

"EASY."

And at the word "easy" the branch he was standing on broke suddenly, and he turned over and over... until at last he was sitting on a branch.

Roo climbed off his back, and sat down next to him.

"Oo, Tigger," he said, "are we at the top?"

"No," said Tigger.

"Are we going to the top?"

"*No,*" said Tigger.

"Oh!" said Roo sadly.

Roo didn't say a word for some time, and then he said, "Shall we eat our sandwiches, Tigger?" And Tigger said, "Yes, where are they?" And Roo said, "At the bottom of the tree." And Tigger said, "I don't think we are going to eat them now." So they didn't.

That time Pooh and Piglet came along.

"Look, Pooh!" said Piglet suddenly. "There's something in one of the tree."

"So there is!" said Pooh, looking up. "There's an Animal."

"Is it One of the Angry Animals?"

"It's a Jagular[1]," he said.

"What do Jagulars do?" asked Piglet, hoping that they didn't eat Piglets.

"They hide in the trees, and drop on you as you go near the tree," said Pooh. "Christopher Robin told me."

"Perhaps we won't come to that tree. In case he dropped and hurt himself[2]."

[1] **Jagular** — *искаженное* ягуар (*такое встречается в речи детей*)

[2] **In case he dropped and hurt himself.** — Чтобы он не упал и не ударился.

"Don't be afraid!" said Pooh. "They're very good droppers."

Piglet was just going to hurry back for something when the Jagular called to them:

"Help! Help!"

"That's what Jagulars always do," said Pooh, much interested. "They call 'Help! Help!' and then when you look up, they drop on you."

"I'm looking *down*," cried Piglet loudly, so as the Jagular shouldn't do the wrong thing.

Something or somebody near the Jagular heard Piglet and called in a very thin voice:

"Pooh and Piglet! Pooh and Piglet!"

All of a sudden Piglet felt that it was a nicer day! All warm and sunny.

"Pooh!" he cried. "I believe it's Tigger and Roo!"

"So it is," said Pooh.

"I thought it was a Jagular and another Jagular."

"Hallo, Roo!" called Piglet. "What are you doing?"

"We can't get down, we can't get down!" cried Roo. "Isn't it fun? Pooh, isn't it fun, Tigger and I are living in a tree, like Owl, and we're going to stay here forever. I can see Piglet's house. Piglet, I can see your house from here. Aren't we high? Is Owl's house as high up as this?"

"How did you get there, Roo?" asked Piglet.

"On Tigger's back! And Tiggers can't climb down, because their tails get in the way[1], and Tigger forgot about that when we started. He has only remembered. So we will stay here forever. What did you say, Tigger? Oh, Tigger says if we go higher we shan't be able to see Piglet's house so well, so we're going to stop here."

"Piglet," said Pooh, when he had heard all this, "what shall we do?"

And he began to eat Tigger's sandwiches.

"They can't get down, can they?" asked Piglet. Pooh nodded.

"Couldn't you climb up to them?"

"I can bring Roo down on my back, but I can't bring Tigger

[1] **their tails get in the way** — им хвосты мешают



down. So we must think of something else." And he went on thinking and eating sandwiches.

Then Christopher Robin and Eeyore came up to them.

"There's Pooh!" said Christopher Robin, surprised.

"Hello, Pooh!"

"It's Christopher Robin!" said Piglet. "*He'll* know what to do."

They hurried up to him.

"Oh, Christopher Robin," began Pooh.

"And Eeyore," said Eeyore.

"Tigger and Roo are up the tree, and they can't get down, and —"

"I am sure that now when," said Piglet, "Christopher Robin —"

"And Eeyore —"

Christopher Robin looked up at Tigger and Roo, and tried to think of something.

"I think," said Piglet, "that Eeyore can stand close to the tree and Pooh can stand on Eeyore's back, and I can climb Pooh's shoulders —"

"And when Eeyore's back breaks suddenly, we will all laugh. Ha-ha! Very Funny!" said Eeyore, "but not helpful."

"I've got an idea!" cried Christopher Robin suddenly. "I'll take off long shirt and we'll each hold a corner[1], and then Roo and Tigger can jump into it, and it will be all soft and bouncy for them, and they won't hurt themselves."

"*Get Tigger down,*" said Eeyore, "and *Not hurt anybody.* Piglet, remember it!"

When Roo understood what he had to do, he cried out:

"Tigger, Tigger, we're going to Jump! Look at me jumping, Tigger! Like flying, my jumping will be. Can Tiggers do it?"

And he cried out: "I'm coming, Christopher Robin!" and he jumped in the middle of the shirt. And he was going so fast that he bounced up again as high as where he was before and went on bouncing and saying, "Oo!" for quite a long time and then at last he stopped and said, "Oo, lovely!" And they put him on the ground.

"Come on, Tigger," he called out. "It's easy."

---

[1] **we'll each hold a corner** — каждый из нас возьмется за краешек

But Tigger was sitting in the tree and saying: "It's all very well for Jumping Animals like Kangas, but it's quite different for Swimming Animals like Tiggers."

"Come on," called Christopher Robin. "You'll be all right."

"Just wait a moment," said Tigger. "I have got something in my eye."

"Come on, it's easy!" cried Roo. And suddenly Tigger found how easy it was.

"Ow!" he cried.

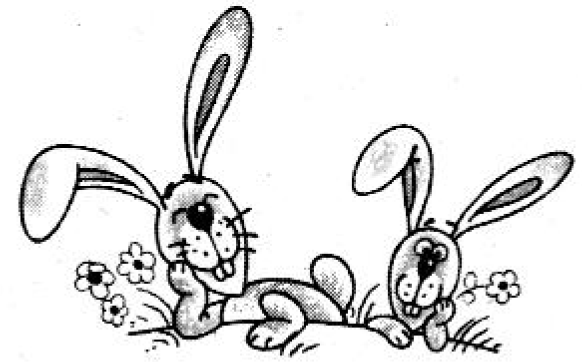
"Look out![1]" cried Christopher Robin to the others and all of them fell on the ground. Christopher Robin and Pooh and Piglet got up first, and then they picked Tigger up, and under everybody was Eeyore.

"Oh, Eeyore!" cried Christopher Robin. "Are you OK?" And he helped him to stand up. Eeyore said nothing for a long time. And then he said: "Is Tigger there?" Tigger was there, feeling Bouncy again. "Yes," said Christopher Robin. "Tigger's here." "Well, just thank him for me," said Eeyore.

[1] **Look out!** — Берегись!

Chapter Five

In Which Rabbit Has a Busy Day, and We Learn What Christopher Robin Does in the Mornings



One warm spring morning Rabbit woke up and felt important[1]. He came out of his house and looked around: "It is going to be a very important and busy day. What should I begin with?[2]"

He remembered about Kanga because Kanga's house was nearest. At Kanga's house was Roo but there was another animal there, the Strange and Bouncy Tigger. So Rabbit decided to visit Christopher Robin.

"After all," thought Rabbit, "Christopher Robin understands that I have enough brain. He loves Pooh and Piglet and Eeyore but they haven't got any Brain. And Kanga is too busy looking after Roo, and Roo is too young and Tigger is too Bouncy. So there's really nobody but Me.[3] I'll go and see if he wants doing something, and then I'll do it for him. It's just the day for doing things.[4]"

Rabbit was running quickly and feeling more important every minute, and soon he came to the tree where Christopher Robin lived. He knocked at the door, and he called out once or twice, and then he

[1] **felt important** — ощутил собственную значимость
[2] **What should I begin with?** — С чего мне следует начать?
[3] **So there's really nobody but Me.** — Никого кроме меня и не остается.
[4] **It's just the day for doing things.** — Это день для настоящих свершений.

walked back a little way and called to the top of the tree, and then he shouted "Hello!" and "I say!", "It's Rabbit!" but nothing happened. Then he stopped and listened. Not a sound.

"Oh dear!" said Rabbit. "He has gone out."

He came to the green front door and saw a piece of paper.

"Ha!" said Rabbit, feeling quite happy again. "A notice!"

This is what it said:

GON OUT
BACKSON
BISY
BACKSON
C.R.

"Ha!" said Rabbit again. "I must tell my friends." And he ran off importantly.

The nearest house was Owl's, and to Owl's House he made his way. He came to Owl's door, and he knocked and he rang, and he rang and he knocked, and at last Owl's head came out and said, "Go away, I'm thinking oh, it's you?" which was how he always began.

"Owl," said Rabbit shortly, "it is the time for Very Serious Thinking and you and I must do it. Read that."

Owl took Christopher Robin's notice from Rabbit and looked at it. He could write his own name WOL, and he could write 'Tuesday', and he could read when you weren't looking over his shoulder and saying "Well?" all the time, and he could...

"Well?" said Rabbit.

"Yes," said Owl, looking Clever. "Now I see."

"Well?"

"Certainly," said Owl.

"Yesterday morning," said Rabbit, "I went to see Christopher Robin. He was out. This notice was on his door!"

"The same notice?"

"A different one. But the words were the same. It's very strange."

"Interesting," said Owl, looking at the paper again, "What did you do?"

"Nothing."

"The best thing," said Owl at last.

"Well?" said Rabbit again.

For some time Owl could think of nothing; and then, suddenly, he had an idea.

"Tell me, Rabbit," he said, "the words of the first paper. This is very important. Tell me the words of *the first* notice."

"The words were the same as in this notice. It just said, 'Gon out. Backson.' Same as this, only this says 'Bisy Backson' too."

"Ah!" said Owl. "Now we know where we are.[1]"

"Yes, but where's Christopher Robin?" said Rabbit. "That's the question."

Owl looked at the notice again and read, "Gon out, Backson. Bisy, Backson."

"Now I see what has happened, my dear Rabbit," he said. "Christopher Robin has gone out somewhere with Backson. He and Backson are busy together. Have you seen a Backson anywhere about in the Forest?"

"I don't know," said Rabbit. "What are they like?"

"Well," said Owl, "the Spotted Backson is just a... the fact is, I don't know what they're like," said Owl.

"Thank you," said Rabbit. And he hurried off to see Pooh. Suddenly he heard Pooh singing a happy spring song and came up to him.

"Hello, Pooh," said Rabbit.

"Hello, Rabbit," said Pooh.

"Did you make that song up?"

"Well, I think I did," said Pooh. "But I didn't think much. Well, it comes to me sometimes."

"Ah!" said Rabbit, who never let things come to him, but always went to them. "Well, have you seen a Spotted Backson in the Forest?"

"No," said Pooh. "But I have just seen Tigger."

[1] **Now we know where we are.** — *зд.* Теперь все понятно. (*дословно* Сейчас мы знаем, где мы находимся; *именно так эту фразу и поймет Кролик*)

"That's no good.[1] Have you seen Piglet?"

"Yes," said Pooh. "Is that any good?"

"Well, it depends if he saw anything."

"He saw me," said Pooh.

Rabbit sat down on the ground next to Pooh, and, feeling much less important like that, stood up again.

"The question is," he said. "*What does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?* Did you see him the last few days?"

"Yes," said Pooh. "We had breakfast together yesterday. I made a little basket, just a little..."

"Yes, yes," said Rabbit, "but did you see him between eleven and twelve?"

"Well," said Pooh, "at eleven o'clock — at eleven o'clock — well, at eleven o'clock, you see, I usually get home. It is the time for Little Something."

"Quarter past eleven, then?"

"Well..." said Pooh.

"Half past?"

"Well..." said Pooh.

And now he began to remember that he didn't see Christopher Robin at that time. Afternoon, yes; evening, yes; before breakfast, yes; just after breakfast, yes. And then, perhaps, "See you again, Pooh," and off he went.

"Where?" asked Rabbit.

"Perhaps he lost something and looks for it."

"What?" asked Rabbit.

"That's just what I was going to say," said Pooh.

And then he said, "Perhaps he's looking for a—for a —"

"A Spotted Backson?"

"Yes," said Pooh.

"I don't think you can help me," Rabbit said.

"No," said Pooh. "I try."

Rabbit thanked him for trying, and said:

"I'll go and see Eeyore, and you can walk with me if you like..."

But that moment Pooh felt that another song was coming on him and he said:

[1] **That's no good.** — зд. Это нам ни к чему.

"I'll wait for Piglet here. Good-bye, Rabbit!"

So Rabbit went off.

But Rabbit saw Piglet first. Piglet got up early that morning and went for a walk in the forest. There were so many spring flowers there! He picked up a lot of violets and put them in a pot in the middle of his house. It suddenly came over him that nobody picked Eeyore any violets. It was so sad! So he ran out again, saying, "Eeyore, Violets," and then "Violets, Eeyore," because he didn't want to forget it. So he picked a lot of violets for Eeyore and feeling very happy, he came to the place where Eeyore was.

Eeyore was very busy that day.

"Oh, Eeyore," said Piglet. "It's a nice day today!"

"To-morrow..." said Eeyore and then "Or the next day..."

Piglet came a little closer to see what Eeyore was busy with. There were three sticks on the ground. Eeyore was looking at them. Two sticks were touching at one end, and the third stick across them. Piglet thought that perhaps it was a Trap.

"Oh, Eeyore," he began again.

"Is that little Piglet?" said Eeyore, looking at his sticks.

"Yes, Eeyore, and I —"

"Do you know what this is?"

"No," said Piglet.

"It's an A."

"Oh," said Piglet.

"Not O—A.[1] Can't you see, or do you think you know more than Christopher Robin?"

"Yes," said Piglet. "No," said Piglet very quickly. And he came closer to have a better look.

"Christopher Robin said it was an A, and an A it is."

Piglet jumped back, and smelt at his violets.

"Do you know what A means, little Piglet?"

"No, Eeyore, I don't."

"It means Learning, it means all the things that you and Pooh haven't got. That's what A means. I'm telling you. People come and

[1] **Not O—A.** — Не O—A. (*Иа-иа решил, что Пятачок только что назвал букву* 'O', *потому что восклицание* 'Oh!' *и название буквы* 'O' *произносятся одинаково.*)

go in this Forest. But do they know anything about A? They don't. It's just three sticks to them... "

"Here's Rabbit," Piglet said gladly. "Hello, Rabbit."

Rabbit came up importantly, nodded to Piglet, and said, "Ah, Eeyore."

"There's just one thing I wanted to ask you, Eeyore. What does Christopher Robin do in the morning?"

"What am I looking at?" asked Eeyore still looking at it.

"Three sticks," said Rabbit quickly.

"You see?" said Eeyore to Piglet. He turned to Rabbit. "I will now answer your question."

"Thank you," said Rabbit.

"What does Christopher Robin do in the mornings? He Learns. He gets Knowledge. I also am doing what he does. That, for instance, is —"

"An A," said Rabbit, "but not a very good one. Well, I must get back and tell the others."

Eeyore looked at his sticks and then he looked at Piglet.

"What did Rabbit say it was?" he asked.

"An A," said Piglet.

"Did you tell him?"

"No, Eeyore, I didn't. I think he just knew."

"He *knew*? You want to say that Rabbit knows what an A is?"

"Yes, Eeyore. He's clever."

"Clever!" said Eeyore gloomily. "What is Learning? A thing Rabbit knows! Ha!"

"I think..." began Piglet.

"Don't," said Eeyore.

"I think *Violets* are really nice," said Piglet. And he gave Eeyore the flowers.

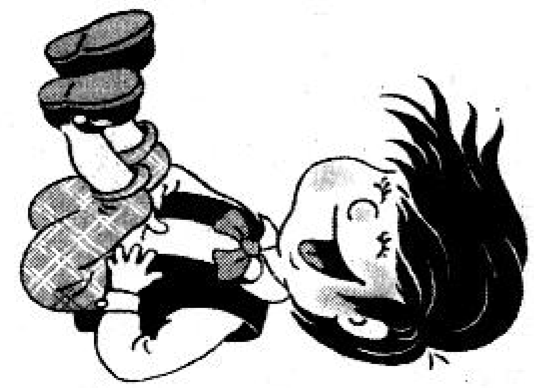
Next morning the notice on Christopher Robin's door said:

GONE OUT BACK SOON C.R.

So now all the animals in the Forest know what Christopher Robin does in the morning. But we are not sure about the Spotted Backson.

Chapter Six

In Which Pooh Invents a New Game and Eeyore Joins In



At the edge of the Forest a river grew up and it did not run and jump but moved slowly. There was a bridge over it and Christopher Robin liked to stand on it and watch the river. Pooh liked to watch the river too. And Piglet and Roo liked it too.

One day, when Pooh was walking to this bridge, he decided to make up a song about fir-cones, because there were a lot of them around. So he picked a fir-cone up, and looked at it, and said, "This is a very good fir-cone, but what is the rhyme to it?" But he couldn't think of anything.

That moment he was coming to the bridge. Suddenly he stepped on a fir-cone, it went up into the air and then fell right into the water.

"Oh!" said Pooh, looking at the fir-cone going under the bridge. He turned, and came to the opposite side of the bridge and looked down. And suddenly he saw his fir-cone in the river.

"That's funny," said Pooh. "I dropped it on the other side," said Pooh, "and it came out on this side! I'll do it again!" And he went back for some more fir-cones.

He did it again. Then he dropped two at once, and watched which fir-cone would come out first; and one of them did; but he couldn't say which because they were of the same size. So the next time he dropped one big one and one little one.

"I think the big fir-cone will be the first one!"

And the big one came out first and the little one came out last.

"I have won!" and he went on playing his new game. When he won thirty-six times, he went home to have some tea.

And that was the beginning of the game called 'Poohsticks'[1]. Pooh and his friends often played this game on the bridge. But more often they played with sticks, not with fir-cones.

One day Pooh and Piglet and Rabbit and Roo were all playing Poohsticks together. They dropped their sticks and then they ran across to the other side of the bridge, and they were watching and waiting to see the quickest stick. But it was a long time, because the river was very lazy that day.

"I can see my stick!" cried Roo. "No, I can't, it's something else. Can you see your stick, Piglet? Can you see your stick, Pooh?"

"No," said Pooh.

"I think my stick is stuck," said Roo. "Rabbit, my stick is stuck. Is your stick stuck, Piglet?"

"They are always slow on these lazy days," said Rabbit.

"How long do you *think* they'll take?" asked Roo.

"I can see yours, Piglet," said Pooh suddenly.

"My stick is a grey one," said Piglet.

"Yes, that's what I can see. It's coming."

"Come on, stick! Stick, stick, stick!" Piglet wanted to win very much. "Are you *sure* it's my stick?" asked Piglet.

"Yes, because it's grey. A big grey one. Here it comes! A very-big-grey — Oh, no, it isn't, it's Eeyore."

And out floated Eeyore, looking very quiet, with his legs in the air.

"It's Eeyore!" cried Roo.

"Is that so?" said Eeyore. "I didn't know that was Me."

"I didn't know you were playing," said Roo.

"I'm not," said Eeyore.

"Eeyore, what *are* you doing there?" said Rabbit.

[1] **'Poohsticks'** — *можно перевести как* «Пушишки» *(Сын писателя вспоминал, что он на самом деле играл в эту игру, но он не мог припомнить, что появилось сначала — игра или эта история.)*

"I'll give you three guesses[1], Rabbit. Am I digging holes in the ground? Wrong. Am I jumping from branch to branch in a tree? Wrong. Am I waiting for somebody to help me out of the river? Right. Give Rabbit time, and he'll always get the answer."

"But, Eeyore," said Pooh, "what can we — how shall we — do you think if we — "

"Yes," said Eeyore. "Thank you, Pooh."

"He's going *round* and *round*," said Roo, surprised.

"And why not?" said Eeyore coldly.

"I can swim too," said Roo proudly.

"Not round and round," said Eeyore. "It's much more difficult. I didn't want to come swimming at all today but when I got into the river, I decide to practise a round swimming."

"I've got an idea," said Pooh at last. "Let's throw stones and things into the river on *one* side of Eeyore! The stones will make waves, and the waves will wash Eeyore to the other side."

"That's a very good idea," said Rabbit, and Pooh looked happy again.

"Very," said Eeyore. "When I want to be washed, Pooh, I'll let you know."

"Can't we hit him by mistake?" said Piglet.

Pooh took the biggest stone and said:

"I'm not throwing it, I'm dropping it, Eeyore," he explained. "*Could* you stop turning round for a moment?"

"No," said Eeyore. "I *like* turning round."

"Now, Pooh," Rabbit said, "when I say 'Now!' you can drop it. Eeyore, when I say 'Now!' Pooh will drop his stone."

"Thank you very much, Rabbit, but I think I shall know it."

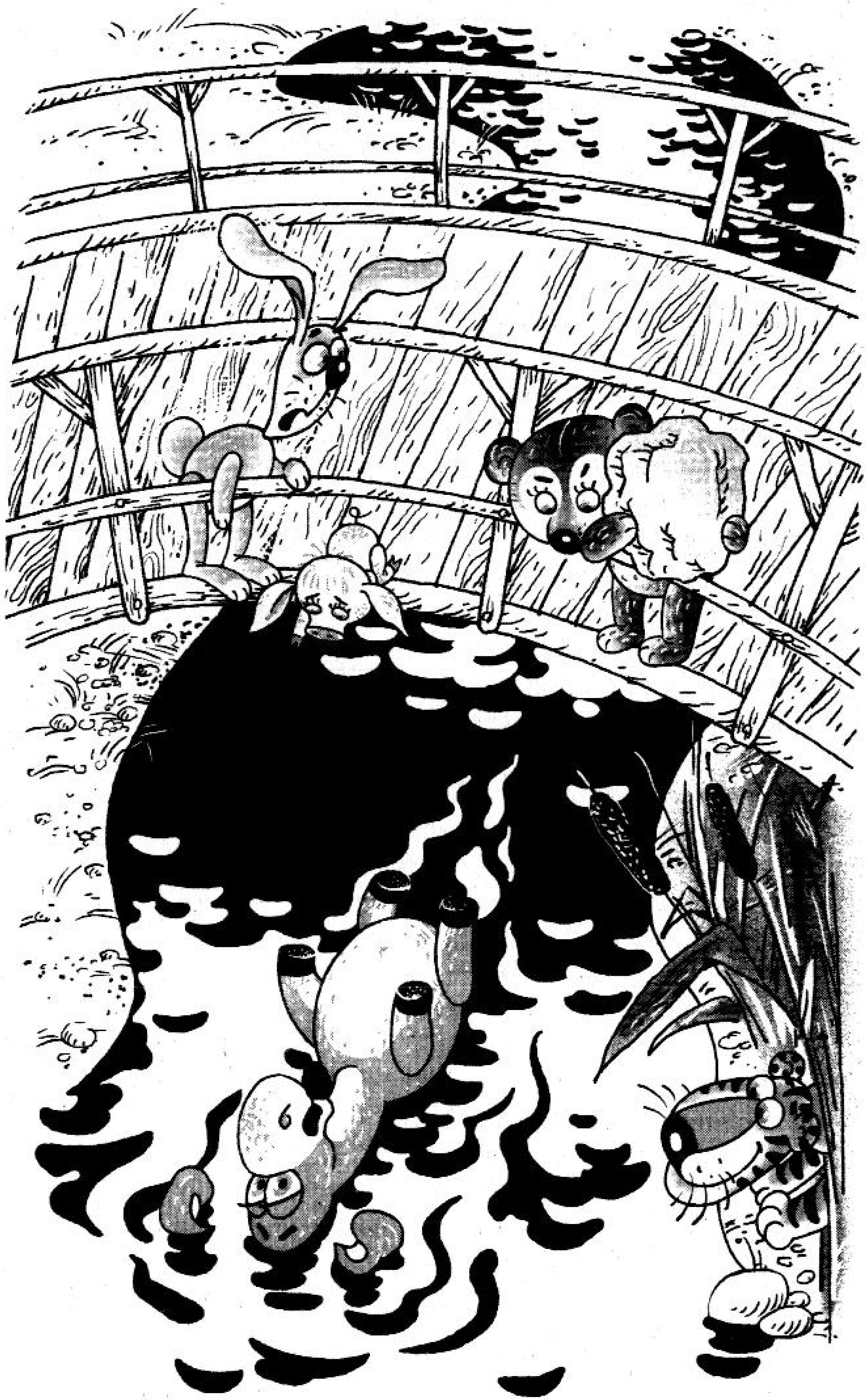
"Are you ready, Pooh? Now!" said Rabbit.

Pooh dropped his stone and Eeyore disappeared...

Everybody on the bridge looked and looked and looked... It took a lot of time! ... At last something grey showed for a moment by the river bank... and it got slowly bigger and bigger... and at last it was Eeyore coming out.

With a cry they ran to him, and pushed and pulled at him; and soon he was standing among them again on dry land.

[1] **I'll give you three guesses** — Я дам тебе три попытки угадать



"Oh, Eeyore, you *are* wet!" said Piglet.

Eeyore shook himself, and asked somebody to tell Piglet what happened when you were in water for some time.

"Well done, Pooh," said Rabbit. "That was a good idea of ours."

"What was?" asked Eeyore.

"Dropping the biggest stone!"

"Do you think I was washed to the river bank?" said Eeyore in surprise. "No, I wasn't. Pooh dropped a large stone on me but I didn't want it to hit me, so I went under the water and swam to the bank."

"How did you fall into the river, Eeyore?" asked Rabbit.

"I didn't," said Eeyore.

"But how — "

"I was BOUNCED," said Eeyore.

"Oo," said Roo, "did somebody push you?"

"Somebody BOUNCED me. I was just thinking near the river, when I was BOUNCED."

"Oh, Eeyore!" said everybody. "But who did it?"

Eeyore didn't answer.

"I think it was Tigger," said Piglet.

"But, Eeyore," said Pooh, "it was a Joke, wasn't it?"

"I asked this question, Pooh. In the water I asked this question, '*Is* this a Joke or Not?' I didn't find the answer."

"And where was Tigger?" asked Rabbit.

Before Eeyore could answer, there was a loud noise behind them. That was Tigger.

"Hello, everybody," said Tigger.

"Hello, Tigger," said Roo.

Rabbit became very important suddenly.

"Tigger," he said, "what happened?"

"When?" said Tigger a little uncomfortably.

"When you bounced Eeyore into the river."

"I didn't bounce him."

"You bounced me," said Eeyore.

"I didn't really. I had a cough, and I happened to be behind Eeyore, and I said '*Grrrr-oppp-ptschschschz.*' "

"Why?" said Rabbit, helping Piglet up. "It's all right, Piglet."

"It took me by surprise[1]," said Piglet nervously.

"That's what I call bouncing," said Eeyore. "Taking people by surprise. Very unpleasant thing. I don't mind Tigger being in the Forest[2]," he went on, "because it's a large Forest, and you can bounce around. But I don't see why he comes into *my* little corner and bounces there. There is nothing very wonderful about my little corner. Of course for people who like cold, wet, ugly places it *is* something special..."

"I didn't bounce, I coughed," said Tigger angrily.

"You know, it's all the same at the bottom of the river[3]."

"Well," said Rabbit, "here's Christopher Robin! What can he say about it?"

Christopher Robin came down from the Forest to the bridge, feeling all sunny and happy. But when he got to the bridge and saw all the animals there, then he knew that it wasn't the happy afternoon.

"It's like this, Christopher Robin," began Rabbit.

"Tigger — "

"No, I didn't," said Tigger.

"Well, there I was," said Eeyore.

"But I don't think he did it on purpose," said Pooh.

"He is just bouncy," said Piglet.

"Try bouncing *me*, Tigger," said Roo eagerly. "Eeyore, Tigger's going to try *me*. Piglet, do you think — "

"Yes, yes," said Rabbit, "we don't all want to speak at once. The point is, what does Christopher Robin think about it?"

"All I did was I coughed," said Tigger.

"He bounced," said Eeyore.

"Hush!" said Rabbit. "What does Christopher Robin think about it?"

"Well," said Christopher Robin, not quite sure what it was all about. "I think —"

"Yes?" said everybody.

"I think we all are going to play Poohsticks."

[1] **to take smb by surprise** — застать кого-л. врасплох

[2] **I don't mind Tigger being in the Forest** — Я не против того, чтобы Тигра был в лесу

[3] **it's all the same at the bottom of the river** — на дне реки это не важно

So they did. And Eeyore won more times than anybody else. Then Kanga took Roo home because it was time to go to bed. Then Rabbit said: "I'll go with them!" And Tigger and Eeyore went off together, because Eeyore wanted to tell Tigger How to Win at Poohsticks.

For a long time Christopher Robin and Pooh and Piglet watched the river, saying nothing, and the river said nothing too, for it felt very quiet and peaceful on this summer afternoon.

"Tigger is all right, *really*," said Piglet lazily.

"Of course he is," said Christopher Robin.

"Everybody is *really*," said Pooh.

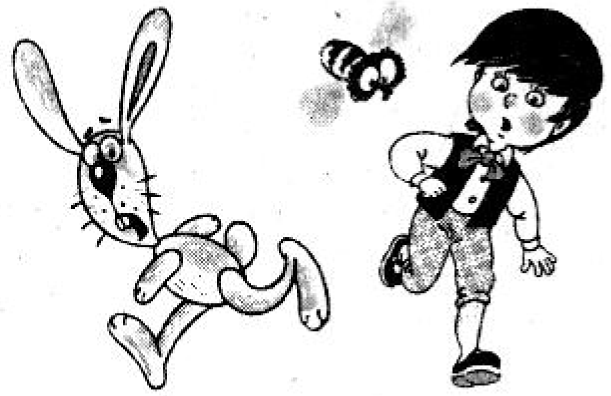
"That's what I think," said Pooh.

"But I don't think I'm right," he said.

"Of course you are," said Christopher Robin.

Chapter Seven

In Which Tigger Is Unbounced



One day Rabbit and Piglet were sitting near Pooh's house and listening to Rabbit. Pooh was sitting with them too. It was a lazy summer afternoon, and the Forest was full of gentle sounds. They said to Pooh, "Don't listen to Rabbit, listen to us." So Pooh tried to listen to Rabbit but sometimes he couldn't.

"Well," said Rabbit, coming to the end, "Tigger's getting so Bouncy nowadays that it's time to teach him a lesson. Don't you think so, Piglet?"

Piglet said that Tigger was very Bouncy:

"It's a good idea to unbounce him."

"I agree with you," said Rabbit. "What do *you* say, Pooh?"

Pooh opened his eyes and said, "Very."

"Very what?" asked Rabbit.

"What you were saying," said Pooh.

"But how shall we do it?" asked Piglet. "What sort of a lesson, Rabbit?"

"That's the question," said Rabbit.

Pooh thought: "I have already heard the word 'lesson' before."

"There's a thing called Twy-stymes[1]," he said. Christopher Robin tried to teach it to me once, but it didn't."

"What didn't?" said Rabbit.

[1] **Twy-stymes** — *искаженное* twice-times — дважды (*начало таблицы умножения*)

"Didn't what?" said Piglet.

Pooh shook his head.

"I don't know," he said. "What are we talking about?"

"Pooh," said Piglet, "are you listening to Rabbit?"

"I listened, but there is something in my ear. Could you say it again, please, Rabbit?"

Rabbit repeated that they decided to teach Tigger a lesson. He was too Bouncy and they were looking for a way of unbouncing him[1].

"Oh, I see," said Pooh.

Pooh tried to think, and all he could think of was something which didn't help at all — he made up a new song. So he sang it very quietly to himself.

If Rabbit
Was bigger
And fatter
And stronger,
Or bigger
Than Tigger,
If Tigger was smaller,
Then Tigger's bad habit
Of bouncing at Rabbit
Would matter
No longer,
If Rabbit
Was taller.

"What was Pooh saying?" asked Rabbit. "Any good?[2]"

"No," said Pooh sadly. "No good."

"Well, I've got an idea," said Rabbit, "and here it is. We take Tigger for a long walk and we lose him there, and next morning we find him again, and — mark my words[3] — he'll be a different Tigger then."

"Why?" said Pooh.

[1] **for a way of unbouncing him** — как бы сделать его менее прыгучим
[2] **Any good?** — Что-нибудь полезное?
[3] **mark my words** — попомните мои слова

"Because he'll be a Quiet Tigger. Because he'll be a Sad Tigger, a Small and Sorry Tigger, an Oh-Rabbit-I-am-glad-to-see-you Tigger. That's why."

"Will he be glad to see Me and Piglet, too?"

"Of course."

"That's good," said Pooh.

"I don't want him to be sad all the time," said Piglet.

"Tiggers are never Sad long," explained Rabbit. "They become Happy very quickly. I asked Owl and he was sure of it. But if we can make Tigger feel Small and Sad just for five minutes..."

"Is Christopher Robin sure as well as Owl?" asked Piglet.

"Yes," said Rabbit. "He will say 'Thank you very much, Piglet.' And Pooh, of course."

Piglet felt very glad about this, and he saw at once that what they were going to do to Tigger was a good thing to do, and as Pooh and Rabbit were doing it with him, it was a thing which even a Very Small Animal could wake up in the morning and be comfortable about doing. So the only question was: Where will they lose Tigger?

"We'll take him to the North Pole," said Rabbit, "because it was a very long way from here."

So they decided to start next morning and that Rabbit, who lived near Kanga and Roo and Tigger, went and ask Tigger what he was doing the next day, because if he wasn't doing anything, what about coming for an exploration and getting Pooh and Piglet to come too? And if Tigger said "Yes" that would be all right, and if he said "No" —

"He won't," said Rabbit.

The next day was quite a different day. It was not hot and sunny, it was cold and misty. When Piglet and Pooh got to Rabbit's house, Rabbit said:

"It is just the day[1], because Tigger always bounces ahead of everybody, and as soon as he bounces the greatest bounce, we can run away, and he will never see us again."

"Not never?" said Piglet.

"Well, not until we find him again, Piglet. Tomorrow, for example. Come on. He's waiting for us."

[1] **It is iust the day** — Это день что надо

When they got to Kanga's house, they found that Roo wanted to go with them because he was a great friend of Tigger.

"I don't think it is a good idea for Roo to join us," said Rabbit. "Not today."

"Why not?" said Roo.

"It a cold day," said Rabbit. "And you are ill today as you were coughing this morning."

"How do you know?" asked Roo indignantly.

"Oh, Roo, you never told me," said Kanga.

"It was a biscuit cough[1]," said Roo.

"I think not today, dear. Another day."

"Tomorrow?" asked Roo.

"We'll see," said Kanga.

"You're always seeing, and nothing ever happens," said Roo sadly.

"Nobody could see on a day like this, Roo," said Rabbit. "I don't think we shall get very far, and then this afternoon we'll all—we'll all—we'll—ah, Tigger, there you are. Come on. Good-bye, Roo! All ready? That's right. Come on."

So they went. At first Pooh and Rabbit and Piglet walked together, and Tigger ran round them in circles, and then, when the path got smaller Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh walked one after another, and Tigger ran round them, and up and down in front of them, and sometimes he bounced into Rabbit and sometimes he didn't. And by-and-by the mist got thicker, so that Tigger kept disappearing, and then when you thought he wasn't there, there he was again, saying, "I say, come on," and before you could say anything, there he wasn't.

Rabbit turned round to Piglet. "The next time," he said. "Tell Pooh."

"The next time," said Piglet to Pooh.

"The next what?" said Pooh to Piglet.

Tigger appeared suddenly, bounced into Rabbit, and disappeared again. "Now!" said Rabbit. He jumped away from the path, and Pooh and Piglet jumped after him. They got down listening. They could see nothing and hear nothing.

"Hush!" said Rabbit.

[1] **a biscuit cough** — *зд.* поперхнулся печеньем

"I am," said Pooh. There was a bouncing noise...

"Hello!" said Tigger.

"Where are you?" called Tigger.

"That's funny," said Tigger.

Everything got quiet and then they heard Tigger going away. They waited for some time and the Forest got so silent that it frightened them.

"Well?" Rabbit said at last. "There we are![1] Just as I said."

"I think," said Pooh.

"No," said Rabbit. "Don't. Run. Come on." And they all ran off following the Rabbit.

"Now," said Rabbit in ten minutes, "we can talk. What did you want to tell us, Pooh?"

"Nothing. Why are we going this way?"

"Because it's the way home."

"Oh!" said Pooh.

"I *think* it's more to the right[2]," said Piglet nervously. "What do *you* think, Pooh?"

"Well, — " he said slowly.

"Come on," said Rabbit. "I know it's this way."

They went on. Ten minutes later they stopped again.

"It's very silly," said Rabbit, "but just for the moment I — ah, of course. Come on."

"Here we are," said Rabbit ten minutes later. "No, we're not."

"It's a funny thing," said Rabbit ten minutes later, "how everything looks the same in a mist. Can you see it, Pooh?"

Pooh said that he could.

"Lucky we know the Forest so well[3]," said Rabbit half an hour later, and he gave the happy laugh which you give when you know the Forest so well that you can't get lost.

"Pooh!" said Piglet.

"Yes, Piglet?"

"Nothing," said Piglet, taking Pooh's paw. "I just wanted to be sure of you."

[1] **There we are!** — Вот так!

[2] **more to the right** — надо брать правее

[3] **Lucky we know the Forest so well** — К счастью, мы хорошо знаем лес

When Tigger finished waiting for his friends, he went home. The first thing Kanga said when she saw him was: "There's a good Tigger. You're just in time for your Medicine." Roo said proudly, "I've already *had* mine," and Tigger drank his and said, "So have I," and then he and Roo went outside to have a pushing-and-running game. When they got tired they went back to dinner.

And when they were finishing dinner, Christopher Robin put his head in at the door.

"Where's Pooh?" he asked.

"Tigger, dear, where's Pooh?" said Kanga. Tigger explained what had happened at the same time that Roo was explaining about his biscuit cough and Kanga was telling them not to talk both at once, so it was some time before Christopher Robin understood that Pooh and Piglet and Rabbit were all lost in the mist.

"It's a funny thing about Tiggers," whispered Tigger to Roo, "how Tiggers *never* get lost."

"Why don't they, Tigger?"

"They just don't," explained Tigger. "That's how it is."

"Well," said Christopher Robin, "we shall have to go and find them, that's all. Come on, Tigger."

"I shall have to go and find them," explained Tigger to Roo.

"The fact is," said Rabbit, "we are lost."

They decided to have a rest in a small sand-pit. Pooh got very tired of that sand-pit. "That sand-pit follows us. What way we go, it comes through the mist at us.[1]"

Rabbit said, "Now I know where we are!" and Pooh said sadly, "So do I," and Piglet said nothing. He tried to think of something to say, but the only thing he could think of was: "Help, help!" and it seemed silly to say that, when he had Pooh and Rabbit with him.

"Well," said Rabbit, after a long silence in which nobody thanked him for the nice walk they were having, "I think we must go on. Which way shall we go?"

"I think we should try to find the sand-pit," said Pooh slowly, "all the time we are looking for home we find the sand-pit. But if we

[1] **What way we go, it comes through the mist at us.** — Куда мы ни идем, она все время на нас натыкается.

start looking for the sand-pit, perhaps we find something we were not looking for."

"What's the good of that?" said Rabbit.

"Well," said Pooh, "perhaps, we will find the way home."

"I don't see much sense in that," said Rabbit.

"No," said Pooh humbly, "there isn't. But there was *going* to be when I began it. It's just that something happened to it on the way."

"If I walk away from this pit, and then walk back to it, *of course* I will find it."

"Well, I think you will not," said Pooh. "I just think."

"Try," said Piglet suddenly. "We'll wait here for you."

Rabbit gave a laugh to show how silly Piglet was, and walked into the mist. He went and went, then he turned and walked back again... and after Pooh and Piglet were waiting twenty minutes for him, Pooh got up.

"I just thought so[1]," said Pooh. "Now then, Piglet, let's go home."

"But, Pooh," cried Piglet, "do you know the way?"

"No," said Pooh. "But there are twelve pots of honey in my cupboard, and they are calling to me. I couldn't hear them twenty minutes ago, because Rabbit was talking, but now, nobody says anything except those twelve pots. I think, Piglet, I know where they're coming from. Come on."

They walked off together; and for a long time Piglet said nothing and then suddenly he made an oo-noise... because now he began to know where he was; suddenly out of the mist came Christopher Robin.

"Oh, there you are," said Christopher Robin.

"Here we are," said Pooh.

"Where's Rabbit?"

"I don't know," said Pooh.

"Oh, well, I hope Tigger will find him. He's looking for you all."

"Well," said Pooh, "I must go home for something, and so must Piglet, because we haven't had it yet, and —"

"I'll come and watch you," said Christopher Robin.

[1] **I just thought so** — Я почему-то так и подумал

So he went home with Pooh, and watched him for quite a long time... and all the time he was watching, Tigger was walking round the Forest looking for Rabbit and calling for Rabbit.

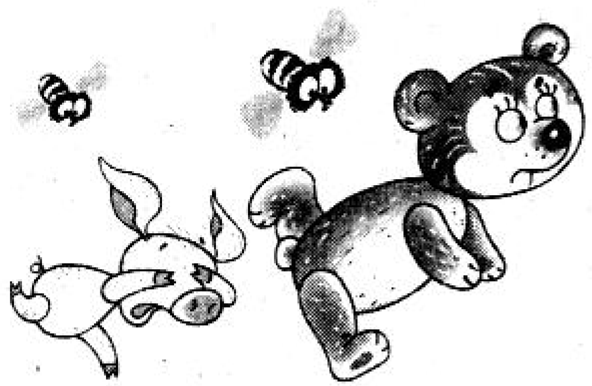
And at last a very Small and Sorry Rabbit heard him. And the Small and Sorry Rabbit ran through the mist at the noise, and it suddenly turned into Tigger[1], a Friendly Tigger, a Grand Tigger, a Large and Helpful Tigger.

"Oh, Tigger, I *am* glad to see you," cried Rabbit.

[1] **it suddenly turned into Tigger** — и вдруг он (шум) превратился в Тигру

Chapter Eight

In Which Piglet Does a Very Grand Thing



Half-way between Pooh's house and Piglet's house was a Thoughtful Spot[1] where they met sometimes. It was warm and out of the wind so they could sit down there for a little and talk.

One day Pooh made up a song about it, and now everybody knew what the place was for.

This warm and sunny Spot
Belongs to Pooh.
And here he wonders what
He's going to do.
Oh, bother, I forgot —
It's Piglet's too.

One autumn morning the wind blew all the leaves off the trees, and now was trying to blow the branches *off*. Pooh and Piglet were sitting in the Thoughtful Spot and thinking.

"What I think," said Pooh, "is I think we'll go to Pooh Corner and see Eeyore, because perhaps something has happened to his house and perhaps he'd like us to build it again."

"What I think," said Piglet, "is I think we'll go and see Christopher Robin. Only he won't be there, so we can't.[2]

"Let's go and see *everybody*," said Pooh. "Because when you

[1] **a Thoughtful Spot** — Место для Размышлений

[2] **Only he won't be there, so we can't.** — Только его там не будет, поэтому у нас это не получится.

walk in the wind for miles, and you suddenly go into somebody's house, and he says, 'Hallo, Pooh, you're just in time for a little something,' and you are, then it's what I call a Friendly Day."

"What is the Reason for going to see everybody? Looking for Small or Organizing an Expotition?" asked Piglet.

"We'll go because it's Thursday," Pooh said, "and we'll go to wish everybody a Very Happy Thursday. Come on, Piglet."

They got up and suddenly Piglet sat down again, because the wind was so strong that morning! At last they started off. They went to Pooh's house first and luckily Pooh was at home just as they got there, so he asked them in, and they had come, and then they went to Kanga's house, holding on to each other, and shouting, "Isn't it?" and "What?" and "I can't hear." By the time they got to Kanga's house they were so tired that they stayed to lunch. When the friends left Kanga's house, it was so cold outside, that they ran to Rabbit's as quickly as they could.

"We've come to wish you a Very Happy Thursday," said Pooh and he went in and out once or twice just to make sure that he *could* get out again.

"Why, what's going to happen on Thursday?" asked Rabbit, and when Pooh had explained, and Rabbit who liked only Important Things, said, "Oh, I thought you'd really come about something,[1]" they sat down for a little and then Pooh and Piglet went on again. The wind was behind them now, so they didn't have to shout.

"Rabbit's clever," said Pooh.

"Yes," said Piglet, "Rabbit's clever."

"And he has Brain."

"Yes," said Piglet, "Rabbit has Brain."

There was a long silence.

"I think," said Pooh, "that that's why he never understands anything."

Christopher Robin was at home, because it was the afternoon, and he was so glad to see them that they stayed there until very nearly tea-time, and then they had a Very Nearly tea, and hurried on to see Eeyore before it was too late to have a Proper Tea with Owl.

[1] **Oh, I thought you'd really come about something** — А я-то думал, что вы действительно пришли по делу

"Hallo, Eeyore," they called out cheerfully.

"Ah!" said Eeyore. "Lost your way?"

"We just came to see you," said Piglet. "And to see how your house was. Look, Pooh, it's still standing!"

"I know," said Eeyore. "Very strange, indeed. I think the wind has forgotten to blow it down."

"Well, we're very glad to see you, Eeyore, and now we're going on to see Owl."

"That's right. You'll like Owl. He flew here a day or two ago and saw me. He didn't say anything to me but he knew it was me. Very friendly of him, I thought."

"Well, good-bye, Eeyore," said Pooh and Piglet.

"Good-bye," said Eeyore. "Be careful, little Piglet. The wind is so strong today! Well, good-bye. And thank you for seeing me."

"Good-bye," said Pooh and Piglet for the last time, and they ran to Owl's house.

The wind was against them now, and Piglet's ears looked like flags behind him. It took Pooh and Piglet a lot of time to get to the Hundred Acre Wood. There they could walk up straight again and listen, a little nervously, to the strong wind among the tree-tops.

"If a tree falls down, Pooh, what will happen to us?"

"Let's hope it will not," said Pooh after careful thought.

They came up to Owl's door.

"Hello, Owl," said Pooh. "I hope we're not too late for—I mean, how are you, Owl? Piglet and I just came to see how you were because it's Thursday."

"Sit down, Pooh, sit down, Piglet," said Owl kindly. "Make yourselves comfortable.[1]"

They thanked him, and made themselves as comfortable as they could.

"Because, you see, Owl," said Pooh, "we were hurrying to you, because we didn't want to be late for... to see you before we went away again."

Owl nodded.

"I think it is a very Windy Day," he said, "but..."

"Very," said Piglet.

[1] **Make yourselves comfortable.** — Устраивайтесь поудобнее.

"I thought so," said Owl. "It was a Windy Day many years ago when my Uncle Robert, (his portrait you can see on the wall on your right) was coming back home from a — What's that?"

There was a loud noise.

"Look out![1]" cried Pooh. "Out of the way, Piglet! Piglet, I'm falling on you!"

"Help!" cried Piglet.

Pooh's side of the room was going up and his chair was going down on Piglet's side. The clock left the wall and, collecting vases on the way, crashed all together on the floor. But the floor was not the floor by that time. It was now trying to see what it looked like as a wall. Uncle Robert, who was going to be the carpet, brought his wall with him as carpet. They met Piglet's chair at the moment when Piglet wanted to leave it. At last it became very difficult to remember which was really the north. Then there was another loud crack... and there was silence.

In a corner of the room, the tablecloth began to move. Then it turned into a ball. Then it jumped up and down once or twice, and put out two ears. It went across the room again and said:

"Pooh!"

"Yes?" said one of the chairs.

"Where are we?"

"I'm not quite sure," said the chair.

"Are we—are we in Owl's House?"

"I think so, because we were just going to have tea, and we haven't had it."

"Oh!" said Piglet. "Well, did Owl *always* have a letter-box in his ceiling?"

"Has he?"

"Yes, look!"

"I can't," said Pooh. "I'm face downwards under something[2], and I can't look at the ceiling."

"Well, he has, Pooh."

"Perhaps he's changed it," said Pooh. "Just for a change.[3]"

[1] **Look out!** — Берегись!

[2] **I'm face downwards under something** — Я лежу лицом вниз под чем-то

[3] **Just for a change.** — Для разнообразия.

There was a noise behind the table in the other corner of the room, and Owl was with them again.

"Ah, Piglet," said Owl, "where's Pooh?"

"I'm not quite sure," said Pooh.

Owl turned at his voice, and looked at as much of Pooh as he could see[1].

"Pooh," said Owl severely, "*did you do* that?"

"No," said Pooh humbly. "I don't *think* so."

"Then who did?"

"I think it was the wind," said Piglet. "I think something has blown your house down."

"Oh, is that it? I thought it was Pooh."

"No," said Pooh.

"If it was the wind," said Owl, considering the matter, "then it wasn't Pooh's fault." With these kind words he flew up to look at his new ceiling.

"Owl," said Piglet, "come down and help Pooh."

Owl, who was admiring his letter-box, flew down again. Together they pushed and pulled at the armchair, and finally Pooh came out and looked round him again.

"Well!" said Owl. "This is a nice state of things!"[2]

"What are we going to do, Pooh? Can you think of anything?" asked Piglet.

"Well, I have just thought of something," said Pooh. "It was just a little thing I thought of." And he began to sing:

I lay on my chest
And I thought it best
To pretend I was having an evening rest;

I lay on my tum[3]
And I tried to hum
But nothing particular seemed to come.

[1] **looked at as much of Pooh as he could see** — посмотрел на ту часть Пуха, которая была видна
[2] **This is a nice state of things!** — Замечательное расположение вещей!
[3] **tum = tummy** — животик (*детское сокращение слова*)

My face was flat
On the floor, and that
Is all very well for an acrobat.[1]

"That was all," said Pooh.

"You know," said Owl, "we can't go out by the front door. It is not a door any more. Something's fallen on it."

"But how else *can* you go out?" asked Piglet.

"That is the Problem, Piglet. And I am asking Pooh to think of something."

Pooh sat on the floor (it was a wall some time ago), and looked up at the ceiling (it was another wall with a front door in it), and tried to think of something.

"Could you fly up to the letter-box with Piglet on your back?" he asked.

"No," said Piglet quickly. "He couldn't."

Pooh thought and thought and thought. He remembered the day when he saved Piglet from the flood, and everybody thanked him so much; and as that didn't often happen, he thought he would like it to happen again. And suddenly an idea came to him.

"Owl," said Pooh, "I have thought of something."

"Oh, Helpful Bear," said Owl.

Pooh looked proud and helpful bear and said:

"We will tie a piece of string to Piglet, and you will fly up to the letter-box, with the other end in your beak, and you will push

[1] **I lay on my chest...** —

Я лежу на боку?
Неужель на бегу
Я сломал и ногу, и руку — не пойму!

Я лежу на груди?
Что же там, впереди?
То ли пол, то ли стол — не пойму!

Я лежу на спине?
И мерещится мне,
Село кресло верхом на меня — посреди бела дня!

(*один из вариантов стихотворного перевода*)



it through the wire and will bring it down to the floor, and you and Pooh will pull hard at this end, and Piglet will go slowly up at the other end. And there you are."

"And there Piglet is," said Owl. "If the string doesn't break."

"Can it?" asked Piglet, really wanting to know.

So with one last look back at all the happy hours he spent in the Forest, Piglet said good-bye to Pooh and Owl.

"It won't break, because you're a Small Animal, and I'll stand under, and if you save us all, it will be a Very Grand Thing to talk about, and perhaps I'll make up a Song, and people will say 'It was so grand what Piglet did that a Pooh Song was made about it!'"

Piglet felt much better after this, and when everything was ready, he found himself slowly going up to the ceiling.

"Up we go!" said Pooh.

Soon it was over. Piglet opened the letter-box and climbed in. At last he was out at its other end. Happy and excited he turned round and called to Pooh and Owl.

"It's all right," he called through the letter-box. "Your tree is blown right over[1], Owl, and there's a branch across the door, but Christopher Robin and I can move it, and I'll go and tell him now, and I can climb down quite easily, I think it's dangerous but I can do it all right, and Christopher Robin and I will be back in half an hour. Good-bye, Pooh!" And without waiting to hear Pooh's answering "Good-bye, and thank you, Piglet," he ran off.

"Half an hour," said Owl. "So I can finish that story I began to tell you about my Uncle Robert (his portrait is under you). Now let me see, where was I?[2] Oh, yes. It was on just such a windy day as this that my Uncle Robert — "

Pooh closed his eyes.

---

[1] **Your tree is blown right over** — Твое дерево совсем повалилось

[2] **Now let me see, where was I?** — Дай мне вспомнить, где же это я остановился?

Chapter Nine

In Which Eeyore Finds the Wolery[1] And Owl Moves into It



One morning Pooh was walking around the Hundred Acre Wood, and suddenly stopped near the fallen tree. He understood that it was the same tree, which once was Owl's House. It didn't look at all like a house now; it looked just like a fallen tree. When a house looks like that it is time to find another one.

Early in the morning Pooh got a Mysterious Letter under his front door, saying, "I AM SCERCHING FOR A NEW HOUSE FOR OWL SO HAD YOU RABBIT." He was thinking hard what it meant but luckily Rabbit came in and read it for him.

"I'm bringing letters to everybody," said Rabbit, "and telling them what it means, and they'll all start looking for it too. I'm in a hurry, good-bye." And he had run off.

Pooh followed slowly because he remembered: "I promised Piglet to make up a song about an Old Owl's house and about a Brave Piglet.

"But it isn't Easy," said Pooh and looked at the fallen tree again. "Because Poetry and Songs aren't things which you get, they're things which get *you*. And all you can do is to go where they can find you."

He waited hopefully...

"Well," said Pooh after a long wait, "I shall begin '*Here lies a tree*' because it does, and then I'll see what happens."

[1] **wolery** — *искаженное* owlery — обиталище сов (*переносн.* чванстово, глупость)

This is what happened:

Here lies a tree which Owl (a bird)
Was fond of when it stood on end,
And Owl was talking to a friend
Called Me (in case you hadn't heard)
When something Oo[1] occurred.

For lo! the wind was blusterous
And flattened out his favourite tree;
And things looked bad for him and we—
Looked bad, I mean, for he and us—
I've never known them wuss[2].

Then Piglet (PIGLET) thought a thing:
"Courage!" he said. "There's always hope.
I want a thinnish piece of rope.
Or, if there isn't any, bring
A thickish piece of string."

So to the letter-box he rose,
While Pooh and Owl said "Oh!" and "Hum!"
And where the letters always come
(Called "LETTERS ONLY") Piglet sqoze[3]
His head and then his toes.

O gallant[4] Piglet (PIGLET)! Ho!
Did Piglet tremble? Did he blinch?
No, no, he struggled inch by inch
Through LETTERS ONLY, as I know
Because I saw him go.

[1] **Oo** — *зд.* страшный
[2] **wuss** — *искаженное* worse
[3] **sqoze** — *искаженное* squeeze
[4] **O gallant** — О, благородный

He ran and ran, and then he stood
And shouted, "Help for Owl, a bird,
And Pooh, a bear!" until he heard
The others coming through the wood
As quickly as they could.

"Help-help and Rescue!" Piglet cried,
And showed the others where to go.
(Sing ho! for Piglet (PIGLET) ho!)
And soon the door was opened wide,
And we were both outside!
Sing ho! for Piglet, ho!
Ho![1]

"So there it is," said Pooh and then he sang it to himself three times. "Now I must go and sing it to Piglet."

I AM SCERCHING FOR A NEW HOUSE FOR OWL SO HAD YOU RABBIT.

"What's all this?" said Eeyore.

Rabbit explained.

"What's the matter with his old house?"

Rabbit explained.

"Nobody tells me," said Eeyore. "Nobody has spoken to me since Friday."

"Eeyore, you've never been to see any of us. You just stay here in this one corner of the Forest waiting for the others to come to *you*. Why don't you go to *them* sometimes?"

Eeyore was thinking.

"I think there is something in what you say[2], Rabbit," he said at last. "I must move about more. I must come and go."

[1] **Here lies a tree...** — *см. один из вариантов стихотворного перевода на стр. 76*

[2] **there is something in what you say** — *в том, что ты говоришь, есть доля правды*

"That's right, Eeyore. Come to my place at any time."

"Thank you, Rabbit."

"Well," he said, "I must be going. I am very busy this morning."

"Good-bye," said Eeyore.

"What? Oh, good-bye. And if you find a good house for Owl, you must let us know."

"I hope I will be of help," said Eeyore.

Rabbit went.

Pooh found Piglet, and they were walking back to the Hundred Acre Wood together.

"Piglet," said Pooh.

"Yes, Pooh?"

"Do you remember about a Song?"

"Did you make it up, Pooh?" said Piglet, getting a little pink round the nose. "Oh, yes, I believe you did."

"I have made it up."

The pink went slowly up Piglet's nose to his ears.

"Have you, Pooh?" he asked. "About—About—That Time When?"

"Yes, Piglet. It is rather long!"

"Long?" said Piglet. "You don't often make up *long* songs, do you, Pooh?"

"Never," said Pooh. "I don't think, I have ever made up a long song before."

"Do the Others know?" asked Piglet, stopping for a moment.

"No," said Pooh. "And I wondered which you would like best: for me to sing it now, or to wait till we find the others, and then sing it to all of you?"

Piglet thought for a little.

"I think what I'd like best, Pooh, is I'd like you to sing it to me first and—and *then* to sing it to all of us. Because then Everybody would hear it, but I could say 'Oh, yes, Pooh's told me.' "

So Pooh sang it to him and Piglet said nothing, but just stood and got very happy — for never before nobody sang[1]: "Ho for Piglet

[1] **for never before nobody sang** — потому что никогда раньше (*двойное отрицание усиливает эмоциональную окраску*)

(PIGLET), ho!" When it was over, he wanted to ask for one of part again. It started 'O gallant Piglet,' and it seemed to him a very nice way to begin a poem with.

"Did I really do all that?" he said at last.

"Well," said Pooh, "in poetry, well, you *did* it, Piglet, because the poetry says you did. And that's how people know."

Piglet looked very proud and began to think about himself. He was BRAVE...

When they got to Owl's old house, they found everybody else there except Eeyore. Christopher Robin was telling them what to do, and Rabbit was telling them again, and then they were all doing it. They had got a rope and were pulling Owl's chairs and pictures and things out of his old house. Kanga was down packing Owl's things, and calling out to Owl, "You won't want this dirty old dish-cloth any more, will you, and what about this carpet, it's all in holes," and Owl was calling back, "Of course I do!" At last Kanga got very angry at Owl and said that his house was all wet and dirty, and no wonder, it fell down. Look at these terrible toadstools growing in the corner! So Owl looked there, a little surprised because he didn't know about this, and then gave a short laugh, and explained that this was his sponge, and that if people didn't know a bath-sponge when they saw it...

But they were all happy when Pooh and Piglel came along, and they stopped working and listened to Pooh's new song. So then they all told Pooh how good it was, and Piglet said, "It *is* good, isn't it?"

"And what about the new house?" asked Pooh. "Have you found it, Owl?"

"He's found a name for it," said Christopher Robin, "so now all he wants is the house."

"I am calling it this," said Owl importantly, and he showed a piece of board with the name of the house painted on it:

THE WOLERY

It was at this exciting moment that something came through the trees into Owl and the board fell to the ground.

"Oh, it's you," said Christopher Robin.

"Hello, Eeyore!" said Rabbit. "*There* you are! Where have *you* been?"

Eeyore took no notice of them.

"Good morning, Christopher Robin," he said sitting down on THE WOLERY. "Are we alone?"

"Yes," said Christopher Robin, smiling to himself.

"Somebody told me in the morning that somebody is looking for a house. I have found one for him."

"Ah, well done," said Rabbit kindly.

Eeyore looked round slowly at him, and then turned back to Christopher Robin.

"Somebody has joined us," he said in a loud whisper. "But no matter. If you will come with me, Christopher Robin, I will show you the house."

Christopher Robin jumped up.

"Come on, Pooh," he said.

"Come on, Tigger!" cried Roo.

"Shall we go, Owl?" said Rabbit.

Eeyore stopped them and said:

"Christopher Robin and I are going for a Short Walk," he said. "If he likes to take Pooh and Piglet with him, I shall be glad of *their* company."

And Christopher Robin and Eeyore went off.

So, in a little while, they came to the house which Eeyore had found, and just before they came to it, Piglet was saying to Pooh, and Pooh was saying to Piglet, and they were saying, "It is!" and "It can't be!" and "It is, *really!*" to each other.

And when they got there, it really was.

"There!" said Eeyore proudly, stopping them outside Piglet's house. "And the name on it, and everything!"

"Oh!" cried Christopher Robin, wondering whether to laugh or what[1].

"Just the house for Owl. Don't you think so, little Piglet?"

And then Piglet did a Noble and Brave Thing because he remembered a Song about himself.

[1] **wondering whether to laugh or what** — то ли смеяться ему, то ли плакать

"Yes, it's just the house for Owl," he said. "And I hope he'll be very happy in it."

"What do *you* think, Christopher Robin?" asked Eeyore, feeling that something wasn't quite right.

Christopher Robin had a question to ask first, and he was wondering how to ask it.

"Well," he said at last, "it's a very nice house, and if you have no house to live, you *must* go somewhere, mustn't you, Piglet? What would you do?[1]"

Before Piglet could think, Pooh answered for him.

"He'd come and live with me," said Pooh, "wouldn't you, Piglet?"

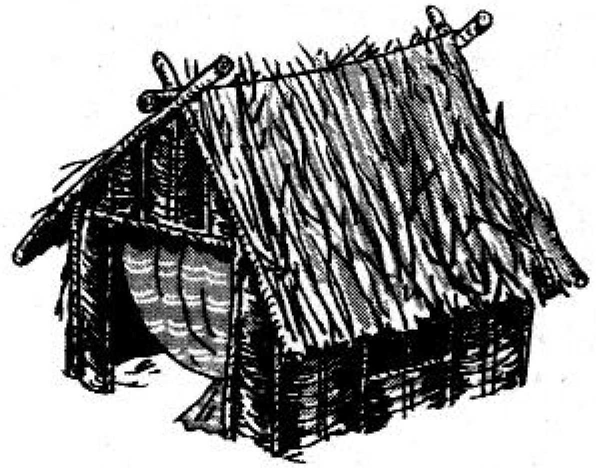
Piglet took his paw.

"Thank you, Pooh," he said, "I'd love to."

[1] **What would you do?** — Что бы ты сделал?

Chapter Ten

In Which Christopher Robin and Pooh Come to an Enchanted Place, and We Leave Them There



Christopher Robin was going away. Nobody knew why he was going; nobody knew where he was going; nobody even knew why he knew that Christopher Robin was away. But everybody in the Forest felt that it was happening at last. Even Smallest-of-all, a friend-and-relation of Rabbit's who thought he had once seen Christopher Robin's foot, but couldn't be quite sure because perhaps it was something else, even Smallest-of-all told himself that Things were going to be Different.

One day when Rabbit felt that he couldn't wait any longer, he made a Notice. And this is what it said:

"Notice a meeting of everybody will meet at the House at Pooh Corner."

When at last it was finished, he took it round to everybody and read it out to them. And they all said they would come.

"Well," said Eeyore that afternoon, when he saw everybody walking up to his house, "this *is* a surprise!"

"Don't mind Eeyore[1]," whispered Rabbit to Pooh. "I told him all about it this morning."

[1] **Don't mind Eeyore** — Не обращай внимание на Иа-иа

Everybody said "How-do-you-do" to Eeyore and then they sat down; and as soon as they were all sitting down, Rabbit stood up again.

"We all know why we're here," he said, "but I have asked my friend Eeyore — "

"That's Me," said Eeyore. "Grand. Nobody knows anything about this," he went on. "This is a Surprise." He began: "Perhaps I should say, before I end, I have Something to read to you. A Poem. We all know that Pooh can make up songs and poems but now I am going to read you a Poem that was written by Eeyore, or Myself, in a Quiet Moment. If somebody will take Roo's sweet away from him, and wake up Owl, we shall all be able to enjoy it. I call it — POEM." This was it:

Christopher Robin is going.
At least I think he is.
Where?
Nobody knows.
But he is going—
I mean he goes.
(*To rhyme with "knows".*)
Do we care?
(*To rhyme with "where".*)
We do
Very much.
Christopher Robin, good-bye,
I
(Good)
I
And all your friends
Sends—
I mean all your friend
Send—
(Very awkward this, it keeps
going wrong.)
Well, anyhow, we send
Our love

END.[1]

"If anybody wants to clap," said Eeyore at the end, "now is the time to do it."

They all clapped.

"Thank you," said Eeyore.

"It's much better than mine," said Pooh and he really thought it was.

"Well," said Eeyore, "I wanted it to be."

"Now we all sign it," said Rabbit, "and take it to Christopher Robin."

So it was signed PooH, WOL, PIGLET, EOR, RABBIT, KANGA and they all went off to Christopher Robin's house with it.

"Hello, everybody," said Christopher Robin. "Hello, Pooh."

They all said "Hello," and felt unhappy suddenly, because it was

---

[1] **Christopher Robin is going... —**

Кристофер Робин нас покидает...
Или мне кажется?
Нет, это правда.
Он уезжает,
Нас оставляет.
(Или *он оставляет,*
нас уезжает?)
Не все ли равно как сказать?
Как сказать все равно,
Только нам без него всем грустно.
Или грустно?
Кристофер Робин,
Я
Желаю тебе...
(и друзья, то есть мы)
Желаем тебе...
Впрочем, короче...
Запутался я...
Мы любим тебя,
Ты — молодец!
Конец!

(один из вариантов стихотворного перевода)

a sort of good-bye they were saying, and they didn't want to think about it. So they stood around, and waited for somebody else to speak, and finally Eeyore came to the front.

"What is it, Eeyore?" asked Christopher Robin.

Eeyore moved his tail from side to side and began.

"Christopher Robin," he said, "we've come to say—to give you—it's called—written by—but we've all—because we've heard, I mean we all know—well, you see, it's—we—you—well, that, to put it as shortly as possible, is what it is." He turned round angrily and said, "There are too many animals in the Forest. And they all are in the wrong places. Can't you *see* that Christopher Robin wants to be alone? I'm going." And he ran off.

When Christopher Robin finished reading POEM, and looked up to say "Thank you," only Pooh was there.

"Thank you very much," said Christopher and put the poem in his pocket. "Come on, Pooh," and he walked off quickly.

"Where are we going?" said Pooh, hurrying after him, and wondering whether it was to be an Explore or a What-shall-I-do-about-you-know-what.

"Nowhere," said Christopher Robin.

So they began going there, and after they had walked a little wav Christopher Robin said:

"What do you like doing best in the world, Pooh?"

"Well," said Pooh, "what I like best — " and then he had to stop and think. Because Eating Honey *was* a very good thing to do, and then he thought that being with Christopher Robin was a very good thing to do, and having Piglet near was a very friendly thing to have; and so, when he thought it all out, he said, "What I like best in the whole world is Me and Piglet going to see You, and You saying 'What about a little something?' and Me saying, 'Well, I'd like to have something, really.' "

"I like that too," said Christopher Robin, "but what I like *doing* best is Nothing."

"How do you do Nothing?" asked Pooh.

"Well, it's when people ask 'What are you going to do, Christopher Robin?' and you say 'Oh, nothing,' and then you go and do it."

"Oh, I see," said Pooh.

"This is a nothing sort of thing that we're doing now."

"Oh, I see," said Pooh again.

"We are just going, listening to all the things you can't hear..."

"Oh!" said Pooh.

They walked on, thinking of This and That, and by-and-by they came to an enchanted place called Galleons Lap, which is about sixty trees in a circle; and Christopher Robin knew that it was enchanted because nobody could count whether it was sixty-three or sixty-four. Its floor was not like the floor of the Forest. It was covered with soft green grass — it was the only place in the Forest where you could sit down carelessly, without getting up at once and looking for somewhere else.

Suddenly Christopher robin began to tell Pooh about some of the things, p eople called Kings and Queens and something called Factors, and a place called Europe, and an island in the middle of the sea where no ships came, and what comes from Brazil. And Pooh said "Oh!" and "I don't know," and thought how wonderful it would be to have a Clever Friend who could tell you things. And by-and-by Christopher Robin came to an end of the things, and he sat there looking out over the world, and wishing it wouldn't stop.

But Pooh was thinking too, and he said suddenly to Christopher Robin:

"Is it a very Grand thing to be an Afternoon[1], what you said?"

"A what?" said Christopher Robin.

"On a horse," explained Pooh.

"A Knight?"

"Oh, What is that?" said Pooh. "I thought it was a — Is it as Grand as a King and Factors and all the other things you said?"

"Well, it's not as grand as a King," said Christopher Robin but he added quickly, "but it's grander than Factors."

"Could a Bear be one?"

"Of course he could!" said Christopher Robin. "I'll make you one."

[1] **Afternoon** — *Кристофер Робин рассказал Пуху о рыцаре* — knight; *это слово произносится так же, как слово* night, *которое Пух перепутал со словом* afternoon.



And he took a stick and touched Pooh on the shoulder, and said, "Rise, Sir Pooh de Bear[1], most faithful of all my Knights."

So Pooh rose and sat down and said "Thank you," and he went into a dream again, in which he and Sir Pump and Sir Brazil and Factors lived together with a horse, and were brave knights (all except Factors, who looked after the horse) to Good King Christopher Robin. Then he began to think of all the things Christopher Robin would want to tell him when he came back from wherever he was going to. "Perhaps," he said sadly to himself, "Christopher Robin won't tell me any more."

Then, suddenly again, Christopher Robin called out "Pooh!"

"Yes?" said Pooh.

"When I'm—when — Pooh!"

"Yes, Christopher Robin?"

"I'm not going to do Nothing any more."

"Never again?"

"Well, not so much. They don't let you."

Pooh waited for him to go on, but he was silent again.

"Pooh, when I'm— *you* know—when I'm *not* doing Nothing, will you come up here sometimes?"

"Just Me?"

"Yes, Pooh."

"Will you be here too?"

"Yes, Pooh, I will be really. I *promise* I will be, Pooh."

"That's good," said Pooh.

"Pooh, *promise* you won't forget about me, ever. Not even when I'm hundred."

Pooh thought for a little.

"How old shall I be then?"

"Ninety-nine."

Pooh nodded.

"I promise," he said.

"Pooh," said Christopher Robin, "if I — " he stopped and tried again, "Pooh, *whatever* happens, you *will* understand, won't you?"

[1] Sir Pooh de Bear — *Пух посвящается в рыцари и награждается титулом* Sir. *Имя его переделано на нормандский манер, что в сочетании с английский словом* Bear *создает комический эффект.*

"Understand what?"

"Oh, nothing." He laughed and jumped to his feet. "Come on!"

"Where?" said Pooh.

"Anywhere," said Christopher Robin.

So they went off together. But wherever they go, and whatever happens to them on the way, in that Enchanted Place a little boy and his Bear will always be playing.

Один из вариантов стихотворного перевода песни Винни-Пуха со стр. 63 —

Вот здесь лежит теперь Бревно,
Но было деревом оно
Не так уж и давно.
Его хозяйкой была Сова,
Она нас в гости позвала.
Потом случилось ужас что!
Никто не мог понять, где кто!

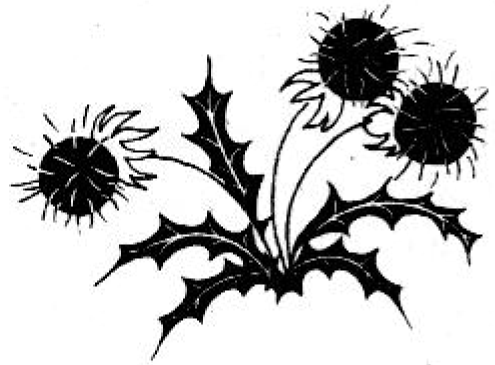
О, боже! Ветер так завыл,
Что дом на землю повалил:
С Совой и с нами в нем.
О, боже! Все на земле лежали мы,
Все мы, все мы и дом Совы.
Ну, и кому теперь он нужен?
Что может быть на свете хуже?

О, Пятачок! Ведь ты нас спас,
Когда раздался храбрый глас!
Твои слова: «Смелей! Вперед!
Надежда наша не умрет!»
И лишь веревочка одна
Для этого была нужна!
Ты знал, что выход есть всегда!
С тобой нам не страшна Беда!
Ты поднимался смело ввысь,
Туда, откуда брезжил свет.
А наши «Ох!» и «Ах!» вслед
за тобой неслись,
И с трепетом следили мы
За чередой твоих побед.
И вскрикнули мы «Ай!» и «Ой!»,
Когда нырнул ты с головой
Не в омут, нет,
В щель ящика для писем и газет!
О, благородный Пятачок! Дрожал ли ты,
Сражаясь с ужасом впотьмах?
О, нет! О, нет! Герою был неведом страх.
Он совершил не впопыхах
Свой подвиг.
Сложившись точно пополам,
В проем для писем-телеграмм
Пролез —
И устремился в темный Лес!

Он звал на помощь: «Все! Сюда!
Повержен Пух! Скорей! Беда!
Спасите наши души!»
Дурные вести по Лесу мгновенно разнес-
лись,
И все, кто мог
На помощь к нам, ног не жалея, понеслись!

Восславим вместе Пятачка!
От смерти спас он Пуха и Сову!
Так воздадим ему хвалу!
Ура! Ура! Ура!

Activities



Before Reading

Do you know Winnie-the-Pooh? Let's see how well you know him! If you can't remember something, ask your friend or your teacher for help. Say if these sentences are true or false.

1. Winnie-the-Pooh was a brown bear who lived in the forest with his family.
2. Winnie-the-Pooh wasn't a friendly bear. He had no friends and lived alone in the forest.
3. Winnie-the-Pooh came from England.
4. Winnie-the-Pooh was funny and kind. He always helped his friends.
5. Winnie-the-Pooh couldn't read and write.
6. Winnie-the-Pooh made up songs and he sang them when he was out walking in the forest.
7. Winnie-the-Pooh was always ready to have something tasty: honey, for example.
8. Winnie-the-Pooh was a very silly bear.

While Reading

1) Read Chapter I and say who said it. What was going around when these words were said?

1. "He's out. That's what it is. He's not in. I shall have to go for a Thinking Walk alone!"
2. The more it snows
(Tiddely pom),
The more it goes
(Tiddely pom),
The more it goes
(Tiddely pom),
On snowing.
3. It is nearly eleven o'clock. You're just in time for a little something. And then we'll go out and sing my song to Eeyore.
4. I think we should go home and practise your song. It's not an easy song and I'd like to sing it very well to my friend Eeyore.

5. You have a house and I have a house, and they are very good houses. And Christopher Robin has a house, and Owl and Kanga and Rabbit have houses, but poor Eeyore has nothing. Let's build him a house.
6. I saw many sticks over there, in the wood. Lots and lots.
7. It's snowing and very cold, but we haven't had an earthquake yet. You haven't seen a house anywhere about, have you?
8. And I said to myself: my friends will be sorry if I get very cold. They haven't got Brains, any of them. But if it goes on snowing for another six weeks, some of them will begin to think and they'll be Sorry.
9. There! Not a stick of it left! Of course, I've still got a lot of snow to do what I want.
10. It's a wonderful thing. It is my house, and I built it where I said I did, so I think the wind has blown it here. And the wind blew it right over the wood, and blew it down here. And you know, this is the better place for a house.

2) Read Chapter II, do the test and see if you can remember it well.

1. Who made the noise that woke Pooh up in the middle of the night?
   a) Christopher Robin
   b) Somebody who was trying to get into his cupboard.
   c) Eeyore
   d) Tigger

2. Why did Pooh stop being sleepy when he heard '*Worraworraworra*'?
   a) It was a new noise in the Forest.
   b) It was the most dangerous noise.
   c) Pooh knew that his friend Tigger was making it.
   d) It was the noise Pooh usually heard in the morning.

3. What is true about Tigger?
   a) He liked everything to eat.
   b) He was Pooh's great friend.
   c) He liked honey as much as Pooh did.
   d) He didn't know what the mirror was.

4. What was not new to Tigger?
   a) mirror
   b) breakfast
   c) honey
   d) tablecloth

5. Why did Pooh take Tigger to Piglet?
   a) Piglet liked bouncing animals very much.
   b) Tigger was hungry.
   c) Pooh wanted to have some haycorns for breakfast.
   d) It was Piglet's birthday and Pooh wanted to give Tigger as a present to Piglet.

6. What is true about Eeyore?
   a) He didn't give Tigger any of his haycorns.
   b) He gave Tigger thistles because it was his birthday.
   c) Tigger was not a new animal for Eeyore.
   d) Birthday was a very important day for Eeyore.

7. What did Tigger try to have for breakfast?
   a) honey-pots
   b) haycorns and thistles
   c) bees
   d) condensed milk

8. What was Tigger like?
   a) little and bouncy
   b) big and clever
   c) quiet and gloomy
   d) unfriendly

9. What did Tigger find in the Forest?
   a) friends
   b) breakfast
   c) a lot of tasty food
   d) parents

10. Why did Tigger decide to live at Kanga's?
    a) Kanga had the food Tigger liked.
    b) Kanga was not dangerous.
    c) Kanga lived near Christopher Robin.
    d) Kanga had a comfortable bed.

3) Read Chapter III. Can you remember who in this story:

1. liked to count honey-pots?
2. was lost that day?
3. was Small?
4. organized the Search for Small?
5. fell down the Trap?
6. was afraid of the Heffalump?
7. made a Trap for Heffalumps?
8. found Pooh and Piglet in the Trap?
9. spoke in a voice like Pooh's?
10. found Small?

4) Read Chapter IV. Can you answer these questions? You and your friends can have different answers. Why? Discuss it!

1. Why did Pooh like visiting his friends?
2. Why did Piglet and Pooh believe Christopher Robin?
3. Why did Pooh think that planting was a difficult thing?
4. Why did Kanga send Roo and Tigger out that day?
5. What could Tigger do?
6. Why was the climbing-down not easy for Tigger?
7. Was Piglet afraid that a Jagular could hurt himself?
8. Did Roo like being up in the tree?
9. Who had an idea how to get Tigger and Roo down?
10. What did Tigger get in his eye before jumping down?

5) Read Chapter V. These sentences are wrong. Can you make them right?

1. Kanga's house was the nearest to Rabbit's house, so Rabbit visited it first.

2. Rabbit didn't like Roo and Tigger because they were Bouncy.
3. Rabbit decided to visit Christopher Robin because Christopher was the only one who was clever.
4. Owl read Christopher's notice and explained what it meant to Rabbit.
5. Christopher Robin went away with Backson.
6. A spotted Backson was a dangerous animal.
7. Eeyore was very busy working that day.
8. Eeyore was looking at Piglet and Pooh and thinking what Christopher was doing that time.
9. Christopher Robin did nothing in the mornings.

6) Read Chapter VI. Find the right answer to the questions and see if you can remember the story well.

1. How did the river change on hot summer days?
   a) It became quick.
   b) It grew wider.
   c) It turned into the lake.
   d) It became lazy.

2. How did it happen that Pooh invented a new game?
   a) Pooh thought day and night and at last he invented it.
   b) Pooh stepped on a fir-cone and it went up into the air and then right into the water.
   c) Pooh dropped two sticks into the water and decided to watch them.
   d) Pooh threw one big fir-cone and one small stick and followed them into the water.

3. What is not true about the game that Pooh invented?
   a) It was called "Poohsticks".
   b) Pooh and his friends played this game on the bridge.
   c) Sometimes Pooh and his friends played it with big stones.
   d) Pooh and his friends played it with fir-cones or with sticks.

4. What should you do to play "Poohsticks"?
   a) watch the river
   b) drop stones
   c) swim round and round
   d) bounce each other

5. Who looked like a big grey stick in the river?
   a) Tigger
   b) Eeyore
   c) Piglet
   d) Roo

6. How did Eeyore look like floating in the water?
   a) nervously
   b) gloomy
   c) happy
   d) quiet

7. What was Eeyore doing in the river?
   a) He was waiting for help.
   b) Ha was swimming a race.
   c) He was swimming away from Tigger.
   d) He was practising a round swimming.

8. What did Pooh decide to do to help Eeyore out of the water?
   a) to throw fir-cones into the water
   b) to wash Eeyore
   c) to hit Eeyore with a big stone
   d) to drop stones into the river

9. How did it happen that Eeyore fell into the river?
   a) He went practising a round swimming.
   b) Tigger bounced him there.
   c) He was just thinking in the river.
   d) He coughed and fell into the river.

10. What is true about Tigger?
    a) He didn't bounce anybody.
    b) He was bouncy.
    c) He couldn't play "Poohsticks".
    d) He didn't know where Eeyore lived.

7) Read Chapter VII and put the sentences in the right order.

1. Tigger found Rabbit in the mist and Rabbit turned into a Small and Sorry Rabbit.
2. Rabbit went to Tigger and asked him to join the company for a long walk in the Forest.
3. Christopher Robin learnt that Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh had been lost, he went to look for them and found Piglet and Pooh in the mist.
4. Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh decided to teach Tigger a lesson and to unbounce him.
5. The next day was just the day for losing somebody in the mist.
6. Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh heard Tigger going away and started their way home.
7. Tigger ran home but Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh lost their way in the mist.
8. Rabbit had an idea to take Tigger for a long walk and to lose him in the Forest.
9. They met in the morning and started their way in the Forest. First they walked together but when the path got smaller, they suddenly jumped off it and got down.

8) Read Chapter VIII and answer the questions. You can have different answers and so you have a chance to discuss them with your friends and your English teacher.

1. Did Pooh like to visit his friends?
2. Was that day a Very Happy Thursday?
3. Was Rabbit clever?
4. Was it very friendly of Owl to say nothing to Eeyore when he flew near him?

5. Did Pooh want to listen to Owl's story about his Uncle Robert?
6. Did Owl have a letter-box in his ceiling?
7. Was the wind too strong? Was Owl's house too old?
8. Was Pooh helpful that Thursday?
9. Was Piglet helpful that Thursday?
10. Was it the first Very Windy Day in the Forest?

9) Read Chapter IX and say if these sentences are true or false.

1. Pooh made up a song about Brave Rabbit.
2. In this Chapter Pooh made up the longest song.
3. Rabbit told everybody that Owl had no house and that they had to help him to find a new one.
4. Pooh sang his new song to Christopher Robin and he liked it very much.
5. All the animals helped Owl to get his things out from his old house.
6. Owl had a new sponge that looked like terrible toadstools.
7. Owl found a new house for himself and he also found a name for it.
8. Eeyore found a new house for Owl.
9. Owl moved into Piglet's house and Piglet moved into Christopher's house.
10. Piglet and Pooh were true friends.

10) Read Chapter X and do the final test. Can you remember the characters of this book? What are their names?

1. Age: One year younger than Christopher Robin. Best Friend: Piglet. Favourite Food: Honey. And more honey. Favourite Things to Do: Play Poohsticks. Adventures with Piglet or Christopher Robin. Exercise in the morning. Thinking up poems and songs. Visiting friends who have honey. Honours: Hero. Knighted "Sir Pooh de Bear" by Christopher Robin. Discoverer of the North Pole. First Thing He Says in the Morning: "What's for breakfast?" Sayings: "Think, think, think."

2. Appearance: A Very Small Pink Animal. Best Friend: Winnie-the-Pooh. Favourite Food: Haycorns. Favourite Things to Do: Adventures with Pooh. Other Favourite Things: Enjoys bright colours and balloons. Likes flowers. What He Does Every Tuesday: Spends the day at Christopher Robin's house. First Thing He Says in the Morning: "I wonder what's going to happen exciting today?" Quotes and Sayings: "Oh, dear! Oh, dear, oh, dearie, dearie, dear!"
3. Character: Intelligent and quiet. Keeps to himself. Always depressed and gloomy. Favourite Food: Thistles. Favourite Things: Being remembered on his birthday. Things He Hates: Being bounced. Biggest Problem: His tail keeps coming off. Second Biggest Problem: His house keeps falling down.
4. Character: A Very Bouncy Stripy Animal. Very active and fun-loving. Favourite Food: Extract of Malt. Hates honey, haycorns, and thistles. Favourite Things to Do: Bouncing! Bouncing! Bouncing! Other Favourite Things: Playing detective, and doing what Tiggers do best! Other Talents: Finding his way home in the fog. (Tiggers "never get lost".) Finding lost friends. Quotes and Sayings: "I'm the only one!"
5. Character: Clever. Has a brain. The best speller of all the animals. His life is made up of Important Things. Gets lost easily. Favourite Things to Do: Likes to organize things and take charge of group events, even if nothing gets done. Favourite Food: Vegetables. Favourite Thing to Do: Gardening and not having Pooh at Lunch Time. Things He Hates: Being bounced. Number of Family Members: 17. Number of "Friends-and-Relations": Nobody knows the number.
6. Character: Somebody thinks she is an Angry Animal. A "Strange Animal". Carries her family about with her in her pocket. The fastest animal in the Woods. Son: Roo. Favourite Things to Do: Motherly things. What She Does Every Tuesday: Goes to Pooh's house to teach Pooh how to jump.
7. Character: Thinks he can do anything. Lives at Kanga's pocket. Best Friend: Tigger. Favourite Things to Do: Playing with Tigger, Poohsticks. Favourite Food: Enjoys milk. Likes most everything except extract of malt. What He Does Every Tuesday: Spends his time with Rabbit.

8. Character: Has a brain. Everyone thinks he's the wisest. Spells his own name "WOL", although he can spell "TUESDAY". Can even spell "HIPY PAPY THUTHDTH THUTHDA BTHUTHDY." ("A Very Happy Birthday with love from Pooh.") Favourite Things to Do: Likes long words. Tells stories to guests and anyone who will listen. Biggest Problem: Sometimes a real bore.
9. Description: Hostile Animal. Comes in every shape and size and colour. Often Elephant-shaped. Everybody in the Hundred Acre Wood is afraid of him. Favourite Thing to Do: Steal honey. Favourite Food: Pooh's Honey. How To Catch One: Build a Cunning Trap, like a Very Deep Pit, and use Honey. Or if you are like Pooh and love honey so much that you can't stand the thought of using real honey, then use yellow cheese (because it looks like honey) and put it in a jar marked "Honey". How to Get It Home If You Catch One: Lead it home by a string, or it may come if you whistle.
10. Appearance: A boy who lives behind a green door. Best Friends: Winnie-the-Pooh, Piglet, Eeyore, Tigger, Rabbit, Owl, Kanga, and Roo. Favourite Food: Birthday cake. Favourite Things to Do: Helping his friends with their problems. What He Likes to Do Best: "Nothing" (meaning nothing in particular, free time). Quotes and Sayings: "Silly old Bear."

After Reading

1) Is there anybody in this book whom you like better than the others? Can you give your reasons?
2) Is there anybody you don't like? If so, why not?
3) Which story about Pooh and his friends do you like best in this book? Why?
4) Prove that Pooh's stories teach you how to make true friends.
5) Have you got your favourite toy? Can you make any stories about it? Will they be funny or sad?
6) Why are Pooh's stories popular with children all over the world?
7) Why did Walt Disney choose this book to create his favourite cartoon and add some more new stories?

Vocabulary

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — имя прилагательное
adv adverb — наречие
a predic adjective predicative — предикативное употребление имени прилагательного
cj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — имя существительное
num numeral — числительное
p.p. past participle — причастие прошедшего времени
pl plural — множественное число
prep preposition — предлог
pron pronoun — местоимение
v verb — глагол
зд. — здесь

A

accident [ˈæksɪd(ə)nt] *n* случай, случайность; несчастный случай
acorn [ˈeɪkɔ:n] *n* желудь
acre [ˈeɪkə] *n* акр (*0,4 га*)
across [əˈkrɒs] *prep* сквозь, через
act [ækt] *v* действовать, поступать; вести себя
add [æd] *v* добавлять
afraid [əˈfreɪd] *a* испуганный
be afraid of smth бояться чего-л.
afternoon [ˌɑ:ftəˈnu:n] *n* день (*время после полудня*)
afterwards [ˈɑ:ftəwədz] *adv* впоследствии, позже
agree [əˈgri:] *v* соглашаться
air [eə] *n* воздух
alone [əˈləʊn] *a predic* одинокий
already [ɔ:lˈredɪ] *adv* уже
always [ˈɔ:lw(e)ɪz] *adv* всегда
angry [ˈæŋgrɪ] *a* сердитый
be angry with smb сердиться на кого-л.
anybody [ˈenɪˌbɒdɪ] *pron* кто-нибудь
anything [ˈenɪθɪŋ] *pron* что-нибудь
did you want him for anything? он тебе был зачем-то нужен?
anywhere [ˈenɪweə] *adv* где-нибудь
arm-chair [ˈɑ:mtʃeə] *n* кресло
ate *past* от **eat**
atmosphere [ˈætməsfɪə] *n* атмосфера
awful [ˈɔ:f(ə)l] *a* ужасный, страшный

B

back [bæk] *n* спина; обратная сторона
balloon [bəˈlu:n] *n* воздушный шарик
bang [bæŋ] *v* ударить, стукнуть
bank [bæŋk] *n* берег (*реки*)
bath [bɑ:θ] *n* ванна
have a bath принимать ванну

be (was, were; been) [bi:] ([wɒz], [wɜ:]; [bi:n]) *v* быть, являться
be good at быть способным к
be late for опаздывать
be out быть вне дома
be sorry сожалеть
beak [bi:k] *n* клюв
because [bɪˈkɒz] *cj* потому что, так как
became *past* от **become**
become (became, become) [bɪˈkʌm] ([bɪˈkeɪm], [bɪˈkʌm]) *v* становиться
bed [bed] *n* кровать; русло (*реки*)
bee [bi:] *n* пчела
beehive [ˈbi:haɪv] *n* улей
been *p.p.* от **be**
beetle [ˈbi:tl] *n* жук
before [bɪˈfɔ:] *adv* впереди; вперед; раньше; *cj* прежде чем; скорее чем
began *past* от **begin**
begin (began, begun) [bɪˈgɪn] ([bɪˈgæn], [bɪˈgʌn]) *v* начинать
begun *p.p.* от **begin**
behind [bɪˈhaɪnd] *prep* после; позади, сзади
believe [bɪˈli:v] *v* верить
bell [bel] *n* колокольчик; звонок
better [ˈbetə] *adv* лучше
between [bɪˈtwi:n] *prep* между
bird [bɜ:d] *n* птица
bit *past* от **bite**
bite (bit, bitten) [baɪt] ([bɪt], [ˈbɪtn]) *v* кусать
bitten *p.p.* от **bite**
blew *past* от **blow**
blow (blew, blown) [bləʊ] ([blu:], [bləʊn]) *v* дуть
blow up надувать; взрываться
blown *p.p.* от blow
board [bɔ:d] *n* борт (*корабля*)
boat [bəʊt] *n* лодка
boot [bu:t] *n* ботинок; сапог
boring [ˈbɔ:rɪŋ] a скучный
bottle [ˈbɒtl] *n* бутылка
bottom [ˈbɒtəm] *n* дно; низ
at the bottom внизу
bounce [baʊns] *v* подпрыгивать; отскакивать
brain [breɪn] *n* ум; мудрость; мозг
branch [brɑ:ntʃ] *n* ветка; ветвь
brave [breɪv] *a* храбрый
break (broke, broken) [breɪk] ([brəʊk], [ˈbrəʊkən]) *v* ломать
breakfast [ˈbrekfəst] *n* завтрак
have smth for breakfast есть что-л. на завтрак
bridge [brɪdʒ] *n* мост
bright [braɪt] *adv* ярко
bring (brought, brought) [brɪŋ] ([brɔ:t], [brɔ:t]) *v* приносить
broke *past* от **break**
broken *p.p.* от **break**
brought *past* и *p.p.* от **bring**
brush away [ˈbrʌʃəˈweɪ] *v* расчищать
build (built, built) [bɪld] ([bɪlt], [bɪlt]) *v* строить
built *past* и *p.p.* от **build**
bump [bʌmp] *n* глухой шум, удар; *v* ударять; биться о что-л.
bury [ˈberɪ] *v* похоронить; зарывать
busy [ˈbɪzɪ] *a* занятой
buzz [bʌz] *v* жужжать
buzzing-noise [ˈbʌzɪŋ ˌnɔɪz] *n* жужжание

C

cabbage [ˈkæbɪdʒ] *n* капуста (*белокочанная*)
call [kɔ:l] *v* звать; называть
came *past* от **come**
can (could) [kæn] ([kʊd]) *v* мочь, уметь
candle [ˈkændl] *n* свеча
careful [ˈkeəf(ə)l] *a* внимательный; тщательный
careless [ˈkeəlɪs] *a* небрежный
carpet [ˈkɑ:pɪt] *n* ковер
carry [ˈkærɪ] *v* носить; возить
case [keɪs] *n зд.* ящик; футляр
pencil case пенал
catch (caught, caught) [kætʃ] ([kɔ:t], [kɔ:t]) *v* ловить; поймать
caught *past* и *p.p.* от **catch**
ceiling [ˈsi:lɪŋ] *n* потолок
chair [tʃeə] *n* стул
cheer [tʃɪə] *v* приветствовать
cheese [tʃi:z] *n* сыр
circle [ˈsɜ:k(ə)l] *n* круг
clap [klæp] *v* хлопать
clean [kli:n] *a* чистый
clever [ˈklevə] *a* умный
climb [klaɪm] *v* лезть, взбираться
clock [klɒk] *n* часы
close [kləʊz] *v* закрывать
collect [kəˈlekt] *v* собирать
colour [ˈkʌlə] *n* цвет
come (came, come) [kʌm] ([keɪm], [kʌm]) *v* приходить
comfortable [ˈkʌmf(ə)təb(ə)l] *a* удобный
condensed milk [kənˈdenst ˌmɪlk] *n* сгущенное молоко
cone [kəʊn] *n* шишка
fir-cone еловая шишка
corner [ˈkɔ:nə] *n* угол; место
cough [kɒf] *v* кашлять
could *p.p.* от **can**
count [kaʊnt] *v* считать
cousin [ˈkʌz(ə)n] *n* двоюродный брат
cover [ˈkʌvə] *v* покрывать
crash [kræʃ] п грохот, треск; *v* падать, рушиться с треском
cross [krɒs] *v* переходить, пересекать
cry out [ˈkraɪˈaʊt] *v* выкрикивать
cunning [ˈkʌnɪŋ] *a* хитрый
cupboard [ˈkʌpbəd] *n* шкаф

D

dance [dɑ:ns] *v* танцевать
dangerous [ˈdeɪndʒərəs] *a* опасный
dark [dɑ:k] *a* темный
dear [dɪə] *int* выражает симпатию, презрение, огорчение, удивление и т. д.
oh, dear! боже мой!
deep [di:p] *a* глубокий; низкий (*о голосе*)
depend [dɪˈpend] *v* зависеть
it all depends в зависимости от обстоятельств
difference [ˈdɪf(ə)rəns] *n* отличие; разница
different [ˈdɪf(ə)rənt] *a* другой, непохожий
difficult [ˈdɪfɪk(ə)lt] *a* трудный
dig (dug, dug) [dɪg] ([dʌg], [dʌg]) *v* копать, рыть
dirty [ˈdɜ:tɪ] *a* грязный

disappear [ˌdɪsəˈpɪə] *v* исчезать
discover [dɪsˈkʌvə] *v* открывать, обнаруживать, раскрывать
donkey [ˈdɒŋkɪ] *n* осел
draw (drew, drawn) [drɔ:] ([dru:], [drɔ:n]) *v* рисовать
drawn *p.p.* от **draw**
dream [dri:m] *n* сон; мечта
drew *past* от **draw**
drop [drɒp] *n* капля; *v* капать; падать
dry [draɪ] *a* сухой
dug *past* и *p.p.* от **dig**

E

each [i:tʃ] *pron* каждый
each other друг друга
ear [ɪə] *n* ухо
earth [ɜ:θ] *n* земля
earthquake [ˈɜ:θkweɪk] *n* землетрясение
easy [ˈi:zɪ] *a* легкий
eat (ate, eaten) [i:t] ([et], [ˈi:tn]) *v* есть, кушать
eaten *p.p.* от **eat**
enchanted [ɪnˈtʃɑ:ntɪd] *a* заколдованный
end [end] *n* конец
Europe [ˈjʊ(ə)rəp] *n* Европа
even [ˈi:v(ə)n] *adv* даже
everything [ˈevrɪθɪŋ] *pron* все
everywhere [ˈevrɪweə] *adv* везде
except [ɪkˈsept] *prep* исключая, кроме
expedition [ˌekspɪˈdɪʃ(ə)n] *n* экспедиция
explain [ɪkˈspleɪn] *v* объяснять
explore [ɪkˈsplɔ:] *v* исследовать

F

face [feɪs] *n* лицо
make faces корчить гримасы, строить рожи
faithful [ˈfeɪθf(ə)l] *a* верный, преданный
fall (fell, fallen) [fɔ:l] ([fel], [ˈfɔ:lən]) *v* падать
fallen *p.p.* от **fall**
family [ˈfæm(ə)lɪ] *n* семья
fault [fɔ:lt] *n* ошибка
favourite [ˈfeɪv(ə)rɪt] *a* любимый
feel (felt, felt) [fi:l] ([felt], [felt]) *v* чувствовать
feeling [ˈfi:lɪŋ] *n* чувство
fell *past* от **fall**
felt *past* и *p.p.* от **feel**
field [fi:ld] *n* поле
finally [ˈfaɪnəlɪ] *adv* в конце концов
find (found, found) [faɪnd] ([faʊnd], [faʊnd]) *v* находить
fine [faɪn] *a* отличный, замечательный
finish [ˈfɪnɪʃ] *v* заканчивать
fire [ˈfaɪə] *n* пожар; огонь
first [fɜ:st] *a* первый
fish [fɪʃ] *n* рыба
flew *past* от **fly²**
float [fləʊt] *v* парить (*об облаках*); плыть по течению
floor [flɔ:] *n* пол
flown *p.p.* от **fly²**
fly¹ [flaɪ] *n* муха
fly² (flew, flown) [flaɪ] ([flu:], [fləʊn]) *v* летать
follow [ˈfɒləʊ] *v* следовать
fond [fɒnd] *a* нежный, любящий
be fond of любить

food [fu:d] *n* еда
foolish [ˈfu:lɪʃ] *a* глупый
foot [fʊt] (*pl* **feet**) *n* нога
forest [ˈfɒrɪst] *n* лес
forget (forgot, forgotten) [fəˈget] ([fəˈgɒt], [fəˈgɒtn]) *v* забывать
found *past* и *p.p.* от **find**
free [fri:] *a* свободный
friend [frend] *n* друг
frightened [ˈfraɪtnd] *a* испуганный
front [frʌnt] *a* передний
  in front of перед
full [fʊl] *a* полный
funny [ˈfʌnɪ] *a* забавный, смешной
fur [fɜ:] *n* мех

G

gave *past* от **give**
gentle [dʒentl] *a* нежный; мягкий
get (got, got) [get] ([gɒt], [gɒt]) *v* получать; становиться, стать
  get down спуститься
  get lost потеряться
  get off снимать
give (gave, given) [gɪv] ([geɪv], [ˈgɪv(ə)n]) *v* давать
given *p.p.* от **give**
glad [glæd] *a* довольный
gloomy [ˈglu:mɪ] *a* грустный, мрачный, печальный
golden [ˈgəʊld(ə)n] *a* золотой (*о цвете*)
good [gʊd] *a* хороший
  be good at быть способным к
got *past* и *p.p.* от **get**
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
grew *past* от **grow**
ground [graʊnd] *n* земля
grow (grew, grown) [grəʊ] ([gru:], [grəʊn]) *v* расти; выращивать
grown *p.p.* от **grow**
gun [gʌn] *n* ружье

H

half [hɑ:f] *n* половина
hang (hung, hung) [hæŋ] ([hʌŋ], [hʌŋ]) *v* вешать; развешивать
happen [ˈhæpən] *v* случаться, происходить
hard [hɑ:d] *a* твердый, жесткий
hate [heɪt] *v* ненавидеть
head [hed] *n* голова
heard *past* и *p.p.* от **hear**
heart [hɑ:t] *n* сердце
hear (heard, heard) [hɪə] ([hɜ:d], [hɜ:d]) *v* слышать
help [help] *v* помогать
here [hɪə] *adv* здесь, тут; сюда
hid *past* от **hide**
hidden *p.p.* от **hide**
hide (hid, hidden) [haɪd] ([hɪd], [ˈhɪdn]) *v* прятаться
high [haɪ] *a* высокий
  high voice громкий голос
hit (hit, hit) [hɪt] ([hɪt], [hɪt]) *v* ударять
hole [həʊl] *n* дыра; нора
honey [ˈhʌnɪ] *n* мед
honeycomb [ˈhʌnɪkəʊm] *n* соты
hot [hɒt] *a* жаркий, горячий
hour [ˈaʊə] *n* час
house [haʊs] *n* дом
hundred [ˈhʌndrəd] *num* сто; *n* сотня

hung *past* и *p.p.* от **hang**
hungry [ˈhʌŋgrɪ] *a* голодный
hunt [hʌnt] *v* охотиться
hurry [ˈhʌrɪ] *n* спешка
  in a great hurry в сильной спешке
hush [hʌʃ] *int* тише!

I

ice [aɪs] *n* лед
idea [aɪˈdɪə] *n* идея; понятие, представление
important [ɪmˈpɔ:t(ə)nt] *a* важный, значительный
inside [ɪnˈsaɪd] *adv* внутри, изнутри
interested [ˈɪntrɪstɪd] *a* заинтересованный
  be interested in интересоваться
invitation [ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃ(ə)n] *n* приглашение
island [ˈaɪlənd] *n* остров

J

jacket [ˈdʒækɪt] *n* куртка
join [dʒɔɪn] *v* присоединяться
joke [dʒəʊk] *n* шутка
journey [ˈdʒɜ:nɪ] *n* поездка; путешествие

K

keep (kept, kept) [ki:p] ([kept], [kept]) *v* держать; сохранять, хранить
kept *past* и *p.p.* от **keep**
kind [kaɪnd] *a* добрый
king [kɪŋ] *n* король
kitchen [ˈkɪtʃɪn] *n* кухня
knock [nɒk] *v* стучать
knocker [ˈnɒkə] *n* дверное кольцо (*чтобы стучать в дверь*)

L

large [lɑ:dʒ] *a* огромный
last [lɑ:st] *a* последний
  at last наконец
laugh [lɑ:f] *v* смеяться
lazy [ˈleɪzɪ] *a* ленивый
lead (led, led) [li:d] ([led], [led]) *v* вести, руководить
leaf [li:f] (*pl* **leaves**) *n* лист
learn (learnt, learnt) [lɜ:n] ([lɜ:nt], [lɜ:nt]) *v* учить; узнавать
learnt *past* и *p.p.* от **learn**
leave (left, left) [li:v] ([left], [left]) *v* покидать, оставлять
led *past* и *p.p.* от **lead**
left *past* и *p.p.* от **leave**
left [left] *a* левый
let (let, let) [let] ([let], [let]) *v* оставлять, не трогать
  let us (let's) давайте
  let go отпустить
letter [ˈletə] *n* письмо; буква
  letter-box почтовый ящик
lift [lɪft] *v* поднимать
light [laɪt] *a* легкий; светлый
like [laɪk] *v* любить; нравиться
  like best любить больше всего
listen [ˈlɪs(ə)n] *v* слушать
lonely [ˈləʊnlɪ] *adv* одиноко, грустно

look [lʊk] *v* смотреть
look after присматривать
look at смотреть на
look for искать
lose (lost, lost) [lu:z] ([lɒst], [lɒst]) *v* терять
be lost потеряться
lost *past* и *p.p.* от **lose**
loud [laʊd] *a* громкий
lovely [ˈlʌvlɪ] *a* чудесный
low [ləʊ] *a* низкий
lump [lʌmp] *v* ступать тяжело, неуклюже

M

made *past* и *p.p.* от **make**
make (made, made) [meɪk] ([meɪd], [meɪd]) *v* делать
make up сочинять
march [mɑ:tʃ] *v* маршировать
mark [mɑ:k] *n* след; *v* отмечать
matter [ˈmætə] *n* дело, суть; *v* значить, иметь значение
what's the matter? в чем дело?
meal [mi:l] *n* еда (*прием пищи*)
mean (meant, meant) [mi:n] ([ment], [ment]) *v* значить
medicine [ˈmeds(ə)n] *n* лекарство
take medicine принимать лекарство
meet (met, met) [mi:t] ([met], [met]) *v* встречаться; знакомиться
message [ˈmesɪdʒ] *n* сообщение, письмо, послание; поручение
met *past* и *p.p.* от **meet**
middle [ˈmɪdl] *n* середина
mirror [ˈmɪrə] *n* зеркало
miss [mɪs] *v* промахнуться; пропустить что-л.
misty [ˈmɪstɪ] *a* туманный
moon [mu:n] *n* луна
more [mɔ:] *adv* больше
the more чем больше
mouth [maʊθ] *n* рот
move [mu:v] *v* шевелить, двигать; перемещаться
muddy [ˈmʌdɪ] *a* грязный
mysterious [mɪˈstɪ(ə)rɪəs] *a* таинственный

N

natural [ˈnætʃ(ə)rəl] *a* естественный
it was very natural это было совершенно естественно
nearly [ˈnɪəlɪ] *adv* близко; почти
neck [nek] *n* шея
need [ni:d] *v* нуждаться
nervous [ˈnɜ:vəs] *a* нервный
never [ˈnevə] *adv* никогда
noble [ˈnəʊb(ə)l] *a* благородный
nobody [ˈnəʊbədɪ] *pron* никто
nod [nɒd] *v* кивать
north [nɔ:θ] *a* северный
North Pole Северный полюс
nothing [ˈnʌθɪŋ] *pron* ничто; ничего
notice [ˈnəʊtɪs] *n* объявление, вывеска; *v* замечать, примечать
nowhere [ˈnəʊweə] *adv* нигде; никуда

O

once [wʌns] *adv* один раз, однажды

only [ˈəʊnlɪ] *adv* только
the only единственный
organize [ˈɔ:gənaɪz] *v* организовывать
other [ˈʌðə] *a* другой, иной
outside [aʊtˈsaɪd] *adv* снаружи
owl [aʊl] *n* сова
own [əʊn] *a* собственный

P

pack [pæk] *v* складывать, упаковывать
paper [ˈpeɪpə] *n* бумага
part [pɑ:t] *n* часть
party [ˈpɑ:tɪ] *n* вечеринка
give a party устраивать вечеринку; приглашать гостей
path [pɑ:θ] *n* тропинка
paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа (*животного*)
paw-mark след от лапы
peaceful [ˈpi:sf(ə)l] *a* мирный
pencil [ˈpens(ə)l] *n* карандаш
perhaps [pəˈhæps] *adv* возможно
person [ˈpɜ:s(ə)n] *n* человек
portrait [ˈpɔ:trɪt] *n* портрет
pick [pɪk] *v* поднимать, подбирать
piece [pi:s] *n* кусочек
pink [pɪŋk] *a* розовый
pit [pɪt] *n* яма
pity [ˈpɪtɪ] *n* жалость
what a pity! как жаль!
place [pleɪs] *n* место
plant [plɑ:nt] *v* сажать (*о растениях*)
plate [pleɪt] *n* тарелка
please [pli:z] *v* нравиться, угождать, доставлять удовольствие
pocket [ˈpɒkɪt] *n* карман
poem [ˈpəʊɪm] *n* стихотворение
poetry [ˈpəʊɪtrɪ] *n* поэзия
porridge [ˈpɒrɪdʒ] *n* каша
pot [pɒt] *n* горшок
practical [ˈpræktɪk(ə)l] *a* практичный
practise [ˈpræktɪs] *v* тренироваться, упражняться
present [ˈprez(ə)nt] *n* подарок
probably [ˈprɒbəblɪ] *adv* вероятно
promise [ˈprɒmɪs] *v* обещать
proud (of) [praʊd] *a* гордый
pull [pʊl] *v* тянуть, тащить; вытаскивать
put (put, put) [pʊt] ([pʊt], [pʊt]) *v* положить
puzzle [ˈpʌz(ə)l] *n* загадка

Q

quarter [ˈkwɔ:tə] *n* четверть
at a quarter to two без четверти два
queen [kwi:n] *n* королева
question [ˈkwestʃ(ə)n] *n* вопрос
quickly [ˈkwɪklɪ] *adv* быстро
quiet [ˈkwaɪət] *a* тихий
quite [kwaɪt] *adv* вполне; совершенно

R

rag [ræg] *n* тряпка, лоскут
rain [reɪn] *n* дождь
ready [ˈredɪ] *a* готовый
red [red] *a* красный
relation [rɪˈleɪʃ(ə)n] *n* родственник

remember [rɪˈmembə] *v* помнить
repeat [rɪˈpi:t] *v* повторять
rest [rest] *v* отдыхать
rhyme [raɪm] *n* рифма; маленькое стихотворение
right [raɪt] *a* правый; правильный
  that's right! верно!
ring (rang, rung) [rɪŋ] ([ræŋ], [rʌŋ]) *v* звонить; звенеть
river [ˈrɪvə] *n* река
roll [rəʊl] *v* катиться
rope [rəʊp] *n* веревка
round [raʊnd] *a* круглый
rub [rʌb] *v* тереть
rubber [ˈrʌbə] *n* резинка
run (ran, run) [rʌn] ([ræn], [rʌn]) *v* бежать
  run out of кончиться

S

sad [sæd] *a* грустный, печальный
safe [seɪf] *a* безопасный
said *past* и *p.p.* от **say**
sang *past* от **sing**
sand [sænd] *n* песок
sandwich [ˈsænwɪdʒ] *n* бутерброд
save [seɪv] *v* сохранять; спасать
say (said, said) [seɪ] ([sed], [sed]) *v* сказать
scarf [skɑ:f] *n* шарф
sea [si:] *n* море
search [sɜ:tʃ] *v* искать; обыскивать
serious [ˈsɪ(ə)rɪəs] *a* серьезный
shake (shook, shaken) [ʃeɪk] ([ʃʊk], [ˈʃeɪkən]) *v* трясти
  shake hands жать руку, здороваться
shaken *p.p.* от **shake**
shelf [ʃelf] *n* полка
shine (shone, shone) [ʃaɪn] ([ʃəʊn], [ʃəʊn]) *v* светить; сверкать
ship [ʃɪp] *n* корабль
shone *past* и *p.p.* от **shine**
shook *past* от **shake**
shoot (shot, shot) [ʃu:t] ([ʃɒt], [ʃɒt]) *v* стрелять; застрелить
short [ʃɔ:t] а короткий
  for short короче, для краткости
shot *past* и *p.p.* от **shoot**
shoulder [ˈʃəʊldə] *n* плечо
shout [ʃaʊt] *v* кричать
side [saɪd] *n* сторона
sign [saɪn] *n* знак
silence [ˈsaɪləns] *n* тишина
silent [ˈsaɪlənt] *a* тихий; молчаливый
sing (sang, sung) [sɪŋ] ([sæŋ], [sʌŋ]) *v* петь
size [saɪz] *n* размер
skip [skɪp] *v* прыгать
sleep (slept, slept) [sli:p] ([slept], [slept]) *v* спать
sleepy [ˈsli:pɪ] *a* сонный
slept *past* и *p.p.* от **sleep**
slowly [ˈsləʊlɪ] *adv* медленно
smell (smelt, smelt) [smel] ([smelt], [smelt]) *v* нюхать; чуять запах; пахнуть; *n* запах
sneeze [sni:z] *v* чихать
snow [snəʊ] *n* снег
soap [səʊp] *n* мыло
so [səʊ] *adv* так, таким образом
  so as чтобы
  so that для того, чтобы
soft [sɒft] *a* мягкий
some [sʌm] *pron* несколько; некоторое количество

sometimes [ˈsʌmtaɪmz] *adv* иногда
somewhere [ˈsʌmweə] *adv* где-то; куда-нибудь
song [sɒŋ] *n* песня
sorry [ˈsɒrɪ] *a* полный сожаления
  I'm so sorry! мне так жаль!
sound [saʊnd] *n* звук; *v* звучать, издавать звук
south-west [ˌsaʊ(θ)ˈwest] *n* юго-запад
special [ˈspeʃ(ə)l] *a* особенный
spelling [ˈspelɪŋ] *n* орфография, правописание
spend (spent, spent) [spend] ([spent], [spent]) *v* тратить; проводить
spent *past* и *p.p.* от **spend**
splash [splæʃ] *n* всплеск; *v* плескать; плескаться
spoil (spoilt, spoilt) [spɔɪl] ([spɔɪlt], [spɔɪlt]) *v* портить
spoilt *past* и *p.p.* от **spoil**
squeak [skwi:k] *v* пищать; пропищать
stand (stood, stood) [stænd] ([stʊd], [stʊd]) *v* стоять
stay [steɪ] *v* оставаться
stick [stɪk] *n* палка
stick (stuck, stuck) [stɪk] ([stʌk], [stʌk]) *v* застрять; торчать
stone [stəʊn] *n* камень
stood *past* и *p.p.* от **stand**
straight [streɪt] *a* прямой; *adv* прямо
strange [streɪndʒ] *a* странный; незнакомый
string [strɪŋ] *n* веревка, шнур
strong [strɒŋ] *a* сильный
stuck *past* и *p.p.* от **stick**
such [sʌtʃ] *a* такой
sudden [ˈsʌdn] *a* внезапный
sung *p.p.* от **sing**
surprise [səˈpraɪz] *n* сюрприз
surround [səˈraʊnd] *v* окружать
swam *past* от **swim**
sweet [swi:t] *a* сладкий
swim (swam, swum) [swɪm] ([swæm], [swʌm]) *v* плавать
swum *p.p.* от **swim**

T

tablecloth [ˈteɪb(ə)lklɒθ] *n* скатерть
tail [teɪl] *n* хвост
take (took, taken) [teɪk] ([tʊk], [ˈteɪkən]) *v* брать, взять
  take hold держать
taken *p.p.* от **take**
taste [teɪst] *n* вкус; *v* пробовать на вкус
teach (taught, taught) [ti:tʃ] ([tɔ:t], [tɔ:t]) *v* учить
  teach a lesson проучить кого-л.
tell (told, told) [tel] ([təʊld], [təʊld]) *v* рассказывать
terrible [ˈterəb(ə)l] *a* страшный
that [ðæt] *pron* тот, та, то
these [ði:z] *pron* эти
thin [θɪn] *a* тонкий
think (thought, thought) [θɪŋk] ([θɔ:t], [θɔ:t]) *v* думать
this [ðɪs] *pron* этот, эта, это
thistle [ˈθɪs(ə)l] *n* чертополох
those [ðəʊz] *pron* те
through [θru:] *prep* сквозь
throw (threw, thrown) [θrəʊ] ([θru:], [θrəʊn]) *v* бросать, кидать
Thursday [ˈθɜ:zdɪ] *n* четверг

tight [taɪt] *a* тугой; тесный
tight place затруднительное положение
time [taɪm] *n* время
it was time наступило время
tired [ˈtaɪəd] *a* уставший
toadstool [ˈtəʊdstuːl] *n* поганка
toe [təʊ] *n* палец ноги
told *past* и *p.p.* от **tell**
tomorrow [təˈmɒrəʊ] *adv* завтра
took *past* от **take**
tooth [tuːθ] (*pl* **teeth**) *n* зуб
top [tɒp] *n* вершина; верхушка
touch [tʌtʃ] *v* дотронуться, прикоснуться
towards [təˈwɔːdz] *prep* по направлению к
towel [ˈtaʊəl] *n* полотенце
track [træk] *n* след
trap [træp] *n* ловушка
tree [triː] *n* дерево
true [truː] *a* правдивый, настоящий
try [traɪ] *v* пытаться, стараться
Tuesday [ˈtjuːzdɪ] *n* вторник
turn [tɜːn] *v* поворачивать
turn into превратиться

U

ugly [ˈʌglɪ] *a* безобразный; уродливый
umbrella [ʌmˈbrelə] *n* зонтик
underground [ˌʌndəˈgraʊnd] *n* под землей
understand (understood, understood) [ˌʌndəˈstænd] ([ˌʌndəˈstʊd], [ˌʌndəˈstʊd]) *v* понимать
understood *past* и *p.p.* от **understand**
unfavourable [ʌnˈfeɪv(ə)rəb(ə)l] *a* неблагоприятный, невыгодный
until [ʌnˈtɪl] *prep* до тех пор
use [juːs] *n* польза
use [juːz] *v* использовать
useful [ˈjuːsf(ə)l] *a* полезный
usual [ˈjuːʒʊəl] *a* обычный

V

vase [vɑːz] *n* ваза
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос
in a low voice шепотом

W

wait [weɪt] *v* ждать
wake (woke, woken) [weɪk] ([wəʊk], [ˈwəʊkən]) *v* просыпаться
walk [wɔːk] *v* ходить, идти пешком; гулять
wall [wɔːl] *n* стена
want [wɒnt] *v* хотеть
warm [wɔːm] *a* теплый
was *past* от **be**
wash [wɒʃ] *v* мыть
wash one's face умываться
watch [wɒtʃ] *n* часы (*наручные*); *v* наблюдать, следить
water [ˈwɔːtə] *n* вода
way [weɪ] *n* путь, дорога
it is a good way to do smth неплохой способ сделать что-л.
on the way to по пути в (к)
weak [wiːk] *a* слабый
Wednesday [ˈwenzdɪ] *n* среда
week [wiːk] *n* неделя
well [wel] *adv* хорошо

were *past* от **be**
wet [wet] а сырой, влажный
what [wɒt] *pron* что
whatever [wɒˈtevə] *pron* какой бы ни; что бы ни
where [weə] *adv* где
whistle [ˈwɪs(ə)l] *v* свистеть
whole [həʊl] *a* целый, весь
why [waɪ] *adv* почему
wind [wɪnd] *n* ветер
window [ˈwɪndəʊ] *n* окно
winter [ˈwɪntə] *n* зима
win (won, won) [wɪn] ([wʌn], [wʌn]) *v* побеждать, выигрывать
woke *past* от **wake**
woken *p.p.* от **wake**
won *past* и *p.p.* от **win**
wonder [ˈwʌndə] *v* удивлять; интересовать
wonderful [ˈwʌndəf(ə)l] *a* удивительный
wood [wʊd] *n* лес
word [wɜːd] *n* слово
world [wɜːld] *n* мир
wrong [rɒŋ] *a* неправильный, неверный

Y

year [jɪə] *n* год
yesterday [ˈjestədɪ] *adv* вчера

Contents

Учебное издание

Милн Алан Александер

ДОМ НА ПУХОВОЙ ОПУШКЕ

Адаптация текста, комментарий, упражнения, словарь *Е. Г. Вороновой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *Е. В. Гвоздкова*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Оформление *А. М. Кузнецов*
Иллюстрации *А. А. Гурьев*
Технический редактор *Т. В. Исаева*
Компьютерная верстка *В. А. Артемов*
Корректор *Е. В. Сонина*

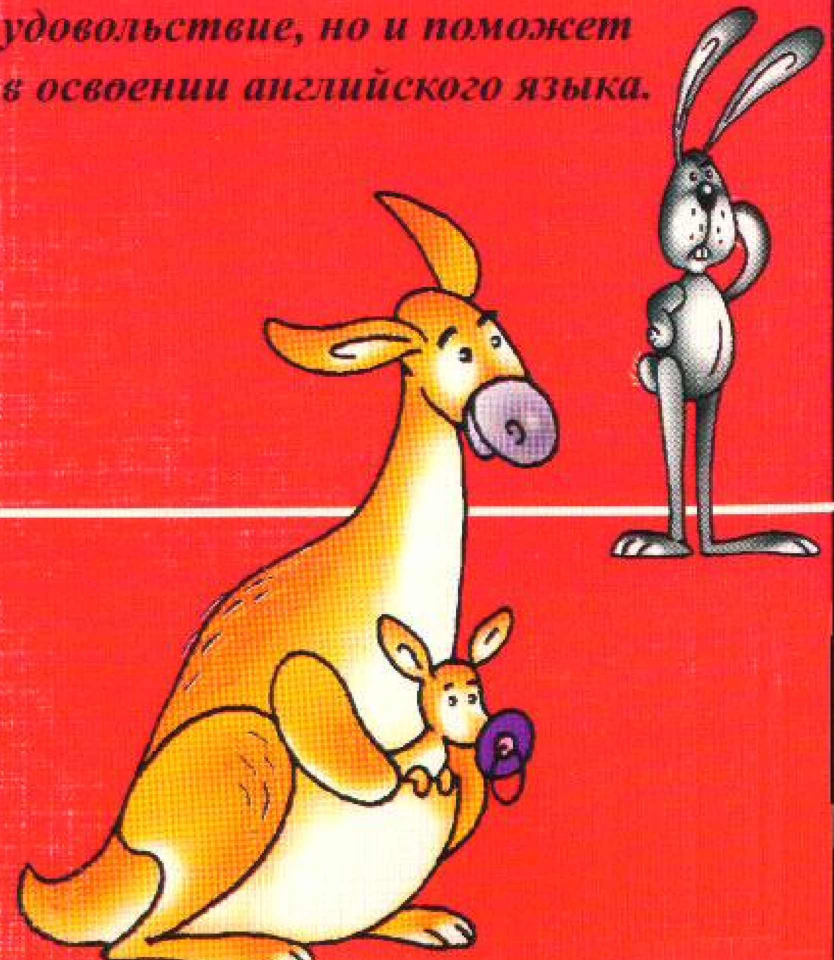
Подписано в печать 21.05.07. Формат 60x90/16. Печать офсетная.
Гарнитура «Таймс». Печ. л. 7. Усл.-печ. л. 7.
Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 1464.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

Отпечатано в ОАО «Можайский полиграфический комбинат»
143200, г. Можайск, ул. Мира, 93

Everybody does know
a little funny plush toy-bear
named Winnie-the-Pooh
and his true friends!
The reading of this
fascinating fairy tale,
which is so very
popular among children and their
parents, will give
readers real pleasure as well as
great help in mastering English.

Кто не знает забавного
плюшевого медвежонка
Винни-Пуха и его верных друзей!
Чтение этой увлекательной
сказочной повести,
пользующейся неизменной
популярностью у детей
и их родителей, не только
доставит читателям истинное
удовольствие, но и поможет
в освоении английского языка.



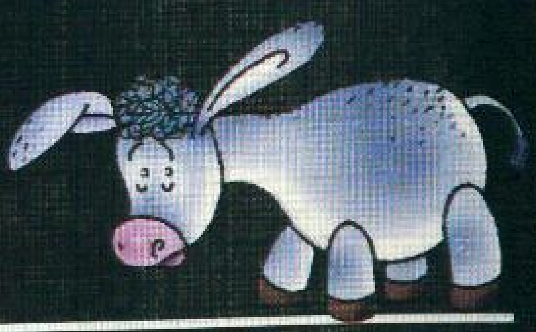
Elementary
Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate
Для продолжающих первого уровня

Intermediate
Для продолжающих второго уровня

Upper Intermediate
Для продолжающих третьего уровня

Advanced
Для совершенствующихся



АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Alan Alexander Milne WINNIE-THE-POOH
Алан Александр Милн ● ВИННИ-ПУХ

Домашнее чтение

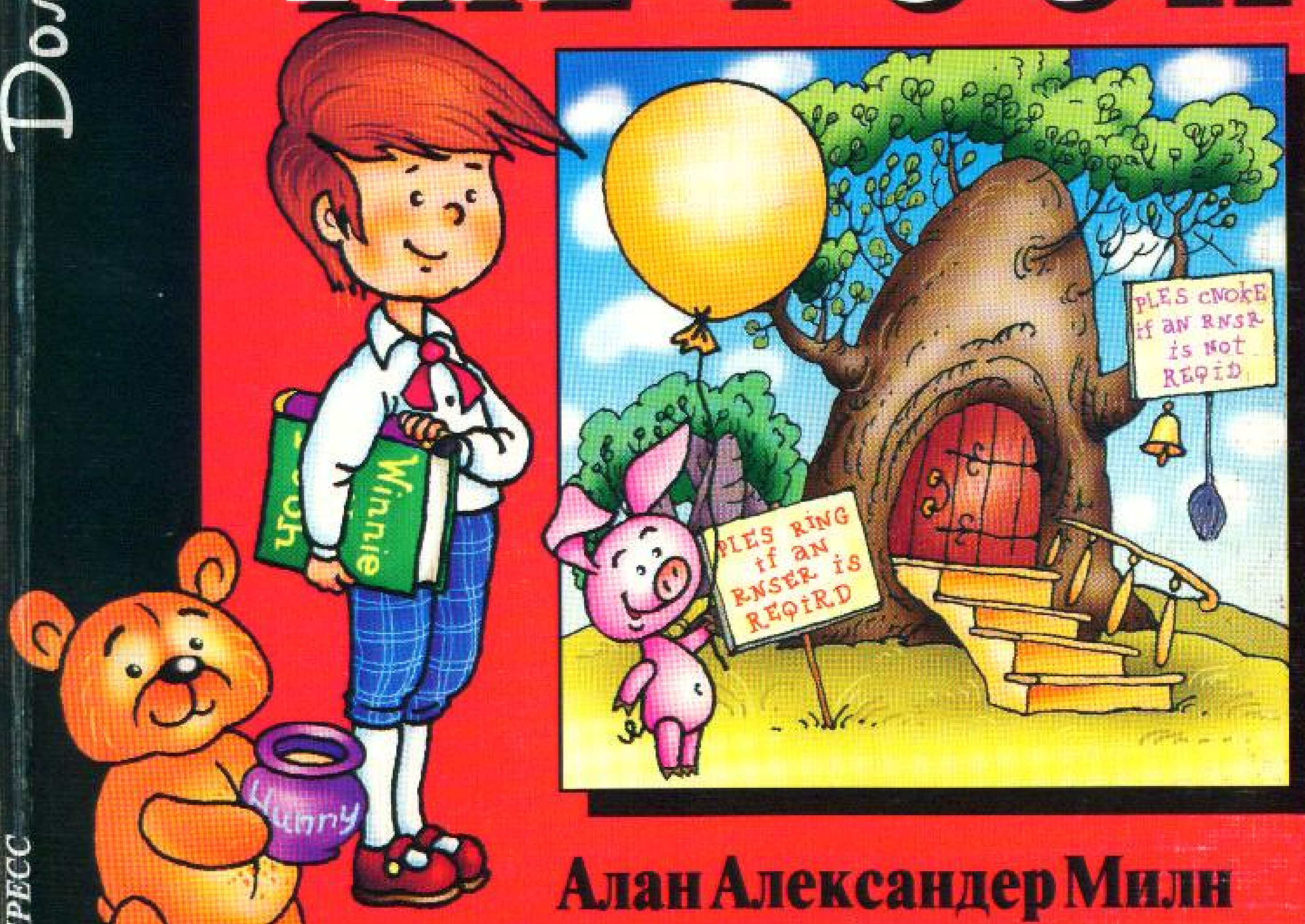
АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Elementary

Английский клуб

Alan Alexander Milne

WINNIE-THE-POOH



Алан Александер Милн

ВИННИ - ПУХ

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Алан Александер Милн

ВИННИ-ПУХ

Книга для чтения на английском языке в 5–6 классах средних школ, 2–3 классах школ с углубленным изучением английского языка

Адаптация текста, комментарий, словарь К. В. Ингал

Упражнения Е. В. Кошмановой

Москва

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2005

УДК 373.167.1:811.111
ББК 81.2Англ-93
М60

Серия *«Английский клуб»* включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Милн, Алан Александер
М60 Винни-Пух / Алан Александер Милн; адаптация текста, коммент., слов. К. В. Ингал; упражнения Е. В. Кошмановой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2005. — 192 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 5-8112-1481-2

В основу адаптации положена увлекательная повесть-сказка известного английского писателя Алана А. Милна о медвежонке Винни-Пухе и его друзьях.

Эта повесть пользуется неизменным успехом у детей, готовых бесконечно читать и перечитывать ее, отправляясь в мир захватывающих приключений.

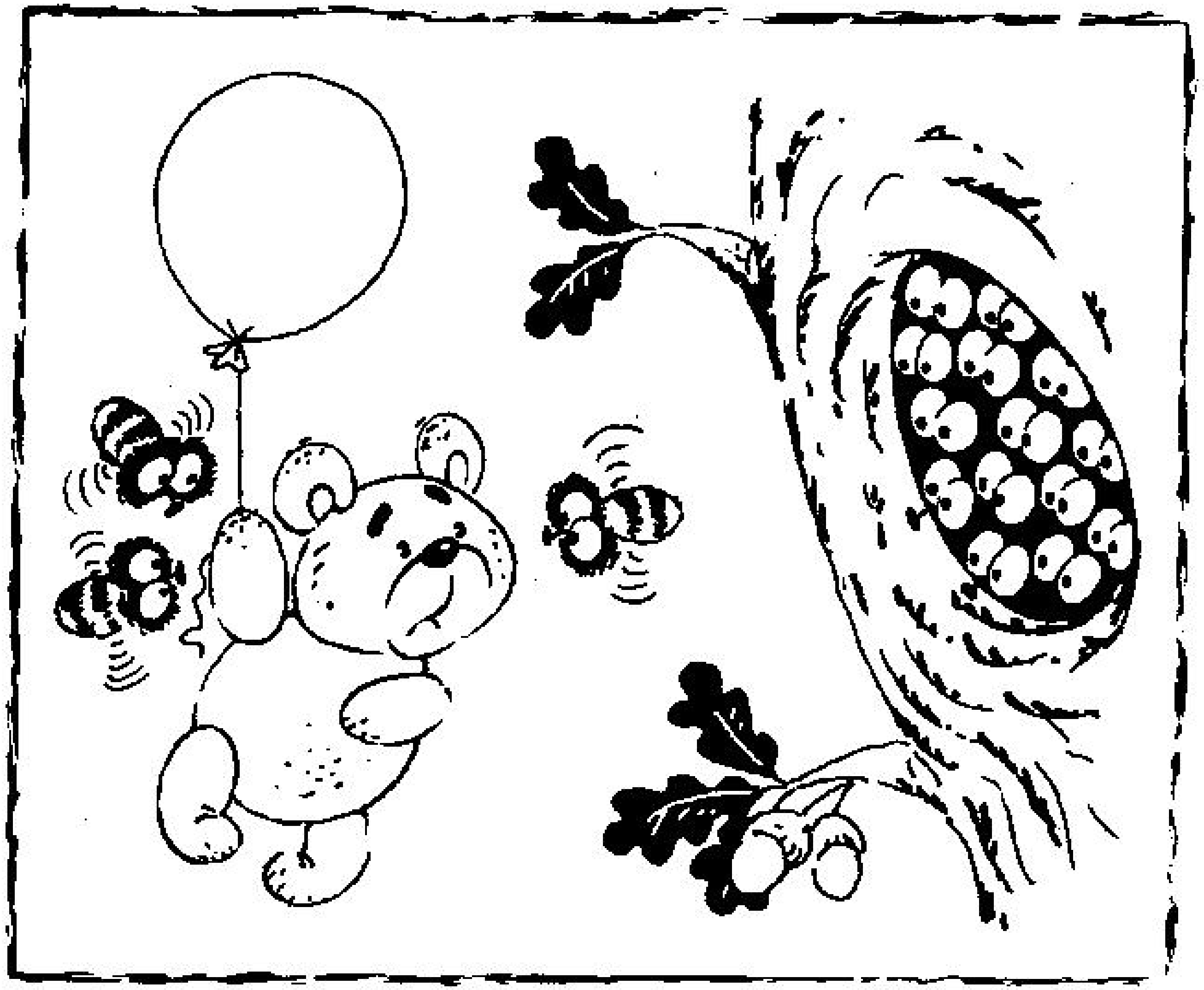
Книга содержит комментарий, упражнения, словарь и предназначена учащимся 5–6 классов средних школ, лицеев, гимназий, 2–3 классов школ с углубленным изучением английского языка, а также широкому кругу лиц, изучающих английский язык самостоятельно или под руководством преподавателя.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 373.167.1:811.111

ISBN 5-8112-1481-2

Winnie-the-Pooh





Chapter One

In which we meet Winnie-the-Pooh[1] *and some bees, and the stories begin*

Here is Winnie-the-Pooh. He is coming downstairs, bump, bump, bump[2] behind Christopher Robin.[3] Now,

[1] **Winnie-the-Pooh** ['wɪnɪðə'puː] — Винни-Пух

[2] **He is coming downstairs, bump, bump, bump** — Он спускается по лестнице — бум, бум, бум

[3] **Christopher Robin** ['krɪstəfə'rɒbɪn] — Кристофер Робин (*имя мальчика*)

here he is at the bottom, and ready to meet you. Winnie-the-Pooh.

Sometimes Winnie-the-Pooh likes to play a game when he comes downstairs, and sometimes he likes to sit quietly in front of the fire and listen to a story. This evening —

"What about a story?"[1] said Christopher Robin.

"*What* about a story?" I said.

"Could you very kindly tell Winnie-the-Pooh one?"[2]

"Certainly. What sort of stories does he like?"

"About himself. Because he's that sort of Bear."[3]

"Oh, I see."

"So could you?"

"I'll try," I said.

So I tried.

* * *

Once upon a time, a very long time ago, about last Friday, Winnie-the-Pooh lived in a forest.

One day when he was out walking, he came to an open place in the middle of the forest, and in the middle of this place was a large oak-tree, and, from the top of the tree, there came a loud buzzing-noise.

Winnie-the-Pooh sat down at the foot of the tree,

[1] **What about a story?** — А как насчет рассказа?

[2] **Could you very kindly tell Winnie-the-Pooh one?** — А не мог бы ты рассказать Винни-Пуху историю? (*Местоимение one (ones) употребляется, чтобы избежать повторения ранее упомянутого существительного.*)

[3] **Because he's that sort of Bear.** — Потому что такой уж он медведь.

put his head between his paws and began to think. He thought for a long time.

First of all he said to himself: "That buzzing-noise means something. If there's a buzzing-noise, somebody's making a buzzing-noise, and it must be a bee."

Then he thought another long time, and said: "And I know that bees make honey."

And then he got up, and said: "And if there is honey, so I can eat it." So he began to climb the tree.

He climbed and he climbed and he climbed, and as he climbed he sang a little song to himself.

Isn't it funny
How a bear likes honey?
Buzz! Buzz! Buzz!
I wonder why he does?[1]

Then he climbed a little higher... and a little higher... and then a little higher.

He was tired by this time. He was nearly there now. When he stood on that branch...

Crack.

"Oh, help!"[2] said Pooh, as he fell ten feet[3] on the branch below him.

Then he fell twenty feet on to the next branch.

[1] Мишка очень любит мед!
Почему? Кто поймет?
В самом деле, почему
Мед так нравится ему? (*Здесь и далее стихи даны в переводе Б. Заходера.*)

[2] **Oh, help!** — Помогите! (На помощь!)

[3] **ten feet** — десять футов; **foot** — фут (= *30, 48 см*)

After that he turned head-over-heels,[1] and crashed on to another branch thirty feet below.

He said good-bye to the last branch, turned round three times, and flew into a gorse-bush. "It all comes of *liking* honey so much.[2] Oh, help!"

He crawled out of the gorse-bush, took the prickles off his nose, and began to think again. And the first person he thought of was Christopher Robin.

So Winnie-the-Pooh went to his friend Christopher Robin, who lived behind a green door in another part of the forest.

"Good morning, Christopher Robin," he said.

"Good morning, Winnie-the-Pooh," said the boy.

"I wonder if you've got such a thing as a balloon about you?"[3]

"A balloon?"

"Yes, I said to myself as I came along: 'I wonder if Christopher Robin has such a thing as a balloon about him?'"

"What do you want a balloon for?"

Winnie-the-Pooh looked round to see that nobody was listening, put his paw to his mouth, and said in a deep whisper: "*Honey!*"

"But you don't get honey with balloons."[4]

[1] **After that he turned head-over-heels** — Затем он перевернулся вверх тормашками

[2] **It all comes of liking honey so much.** — И все это из-за того, что я очень люблю мед.

[3] **I wonder if you've got such a thing as a balloon about you?** — Интересно, есть ли у тебя такая штуковина, как воздушный шарик?

[4] **But you don't get honey with balloons.** — Но при помощи воздушных шариков меда не достанешь.

"*I* do," said Pooh.

Well, Christopher Robin was at a party yesterday at the house of his friend Piglet,[1] and he had balloons at the party. So he took a green balloon and a blue balloon home with him.

"Which balloon would you like?" Christopher Robin asked Pooh. "The green balloon or the blue balloon?"

Winnie-the-Pooh put his head between his paws and thought very carefully.

"It's like this," he said. "When you go after honey with a balloon, the great thing is not to let the bees know you're coming.[2] Now, if you have a green balloon, they may think you were only part of the tree,[3] and not notice you, and if you have a blue balloon, they may think you were only part of the sky, and not notice you, and the question is: Which is better?"

He thought for a moment and said: "I shall try to look like a small black cloud. That will deceive them."

"Then take the blue balloon," said the boy.

Well, they both went out with the blue balloon, and they took the gun with them, as they always did, and Winnie-the-Pooh went to a very muddy place and rolled and rolled until he was black all over.

Then, when the balloon was blown up as big as big,[4] Christopher Robin let the string go suddenly. And

[1] **Piglet** ['pɪglət] — Пятачок

[2] **the great thing is not to let the bees know you're coming** — главное — не дать пчелам знать, что ты приближаешься

[3] **you were only part of the tree** — что будто ты — часть дерева

[4] **as big as big** — большой-пребольшой (*оборот, характерный для детской речи*)

Pooh Bear floated gracefully up into the sky, and stayed there — near the top of the tree and about twenty feet away from it.

"Hooray!"[1] shouted the friends.

"Isn't that fine?" shouted Winnie-the-Pooh down to the boy. "What do I look like?"

"You look like a Bear who is holding on to a balloon," he said.

"Not," said Pooh anxiously, "not like a small black cloud in a blue sky?"

"Not very much."

There was no wind to blow him nearer to the tree, so there he stayed. He could see the honey, he could smell the honey, but he couldn't reach the honey.

After a little while[2] he called down to the boy.

"Christopher Robin!" he said in a loud whisper.

"Hallo!"

"I think the bees *suspect* something."

"Perhaps they think that you're going after their honey."[3]

"It may be that. You never can tell with bees."[4]

There was another little silence, and then he called down to Christopher Robin again.

"Christopher Robin!"

"Yes?"

"Have you an umbrella in your house?"

"I think so."

[1] **Hooray!** [hʊ'reɪ] — Ура!

[2] **After a little while** — Через некоторое время

[3] **you're going after their honey** — ты посягаешь на их мед

[4] **You never can tell with bees.** — С пчелами никогда не разберешься.

"Could you please bring it here, and walk up and down[1] with it, and look up at me every now and then,[2] and say, 'Tut-tut, it looks like rain.' I think, it will help to deceive the bees."

The boy laughed to himself, "Silly old Bear!" but he didn't say it aloud because he was so fond of Pooh, and he went home for his umbrella.

"Oh, there you are!"[3] called down Winnie-the-Pooh, as soon as the boy got back to the tree. "I know now that the bees really suspect something."

"Shall I put my umbrella up?" said the boy.

"Yes, but wait a moment. We must be practical. It is important to deceive the Queen Bee. Can you see which is the Queen Bee from down there?"

"No."

"A pity. Well, now, if you walk up and down with your umbrella, saying, 'Tut-tut, it looks like rain,' I shall do what I can. I'll sing a little cloud song... Go!"

So, while Christopher Robin walked up and down, Winnie-the-Pooh sang this song:

How sweet to be a Cloud
Floating in the Blue![4]
Every little cloud
Always sings aloud.

"How sweet to be a Cloud
Floating in the Blue!"

---

[1] **up and down** — взад и вперед
[2] **every now and then** — время от времени
[3] **Oh, there you are!** — Наконец-то ты здесь!
[4] **Floating in the Blue!** — Парящим в небесах!

It makes him very proud[1]
To be a little cloud.[2]

The bees were still buzzing. Some of them, indeed, left their nests and flew all round the cloud as Pooh began the second verse of this song, and one bee sat down on the nose of the cloud for a moment, and then got up again.

"Christopher — *ow*! — Robin," called out the cloud.

"Yes?"

"I think *these are the wrong sort of bees*."

"Are they?"

"Quite the wrong sort. So I think they make the wrong sort of honey, don't you think so?"

"I don't know."

"Yes, they do. They make the wrong sort of honey. So I think I shall come down."

"How?" asked Christopher Robin.

Winnie-the-Pooh did not know how. If he let go of the string, he would fall[3] — *bump* — and he didn't like the

---

[1] **It makes him very proud** — Гордость переполняет его
[2] Я Тучка, Тучка, Тучка,
А вовсе не медведь,
Ах, как приятно Тучке
По небу лететь!

Ах, в синем-синем небе
Порядок и уют —
Поэтому все Тучки
Так весело поют.
[3] **If he let go of the string, he would fall** — Если он отпустит веревочку, он упадет

idea of that. So he thought for a long time, and then he said:

"Christopher Robin, you must shoot the balloon with your gun. Have you got your gun?"

"Of course I have," he said. "But if I do that, it will spoil the balloon," said the boy.

"But if you *don't*," said Pooh, "I shall let the balloon go, and that will spoil *me*."

When he said this, Christopher Robin saw how it was, and he aimed very carefully at the balloon, and fired.

"*Ow!*" said Pooh.

"Did I miss?"[1] asked the boy.

"You didn't miss," said Pooh, "but you missed the balloon."

"I'm so sorry," said the boy, and he fired again and this time he hit the balloon, and the air came slowly out, and Winnie-the-Pooh floated down to the ground.

But his arms were so stiff from holding on to the string of the balloon all that time[2] and they stayed up straight in the air for more than a week. When a fly came and sat on his nose he had to blow it off. And I think — but I am not sure — that *that* is why they always call him Pooh.

"Is that the end of the story?" asked Christopher Robin.

"That's the end of that one. There are others."

"About Pooh and me?"

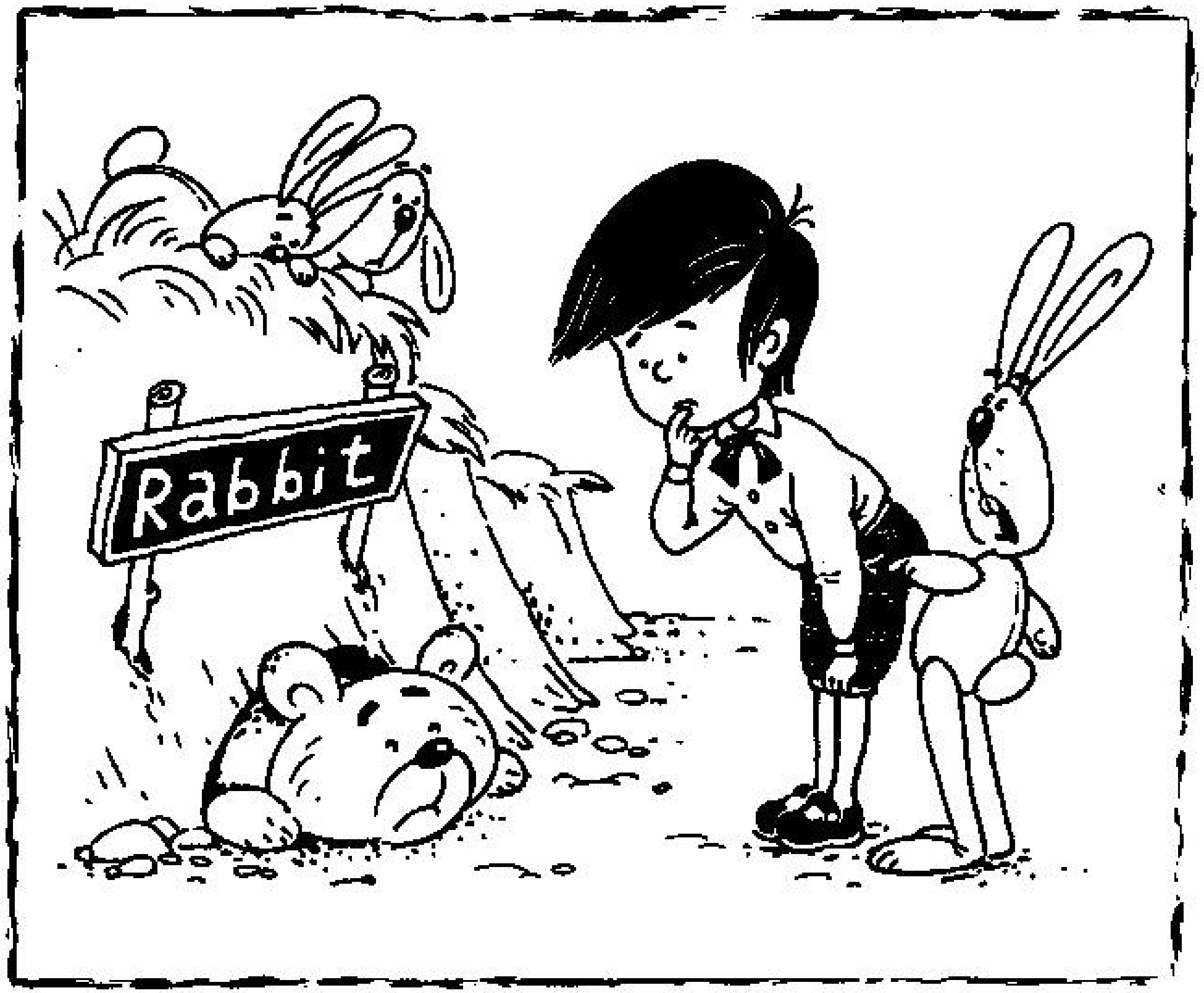
[1] **Did I miss?** — Я промахнулся?

[2] **But his arms were so stiff from holding on to the string of the balloon all that time** — Но он так долго держался за веревочку, что лапы у него совсем онемели

"And Piglet, and Rabbit, and all of you. Don't you remember?"

"I remember, I think, only Pooh doesn't very well. That's why he likes to hear about everything again."

"That's just how *I* feel," I said.



Chapter Two

In which Pooh goes visiting and gets into a tight place[1]

Winnie-the-Pooh, or Pooh for short,[2] was walking through the forest one day, and was humming proudly to himself. He had made up a little hum[3] that very morning,

[1] **and gets into a tight place** — и попадает в затруднительное положение (*букв.* в узкое место)

[2] **for short** — для краткости

[3] **He had made up a little hum** — Он сочинил песенку-вор-

as he was doing his P. T. Exercises[1] in front of the glass: *Tra-la-la, tra-la-la*, as he stretched up as high as he could go, and then *Tra-la-la, tra-la-la — oh, help! — la*, as he tried to reach his toes. After breakfast he said it over and over to himself until he knew it by heart, and now he was humming it again. It went like this:

Tra-la-la, tra-la-la,
Tra-la-la, tra-la-la,
Rum-tum-tiddle-um-tum.
Tiddle-iddle, tiddle-iddle,
Tiddle-iddle, tiddle-iddle,
Rum-tum-tum-tiddle-um.

Well, he was humming this hum to himself, and walking along gaily. Then he began to wonder what everybody else was doing. Suddenly he came to a sandy bank, and in the bank was a large hole.

"Aha!" said Pooh. (*Rum-tum-tiddle-um-tum.*) "If I know anything about anything, that hole means Rabbit," he said, "and Rabbit means company," he said, "and company means food and listening-to-me-humming.[2] *Rum-tum-tum-tiddle-um.*"

чалку (*Здесь и далее в книге встречается глагольная форма the Past Perfect Tense, которая образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола to have в прошедшем времени и третьей формы смыслового глагола. The Past Perfect Tense обозначает действие, которое закончилось до определенного момента в прошлом и переводится на русский язык прошедшим временем.*)

[1] **P. T. Exercises = Physical Training Exercises** ['fizikl'treiniŋ 'eksəsaiziz] — физзарядка

[2] **and company means food and listening-to-me-humming** — а компания означает, что меня угостят и послушают мою песенку

So he bent down, put his head into the hole, and called out:

"Is anybody at home?"

There was a sudden noise from inside the hole, and then silence.

"What I said was, 'Is anybody at home?'" called out Pooh very loudly.

"No!" said a voice; and then added, "Don't shout so loud. I heard you quite well the first time."

"Sorry!" said Pooh. "Isn't there anybody here?"

"Nobody."

Winnie-the-Pooh took his head out of the hole, and thought for a little, and he thought to himself, "There must be somebody there, because somebody said, 'Nobody.'" So he put his head back in the hole, and said:

"Hallo, Rabbit, isn't that you?"

"No," said Rabbit.

"But isn't that Rabbit's voice?"

"I don't *think* so," said Rabbit.

"Oh!" said Pooh.

He took his head out of the hole, and had another think,[1] and then he put it back, and said:

"Well, could you very kindly tell me where Rabbit is?"

"He has gone to see his friend Pooh Bear, who is a great friend of his."

"But this *is* me," said Bear, very much surprised.

"What sort of me?"

"Pooh Bear."

"Are you sure?" said Rabbit, still more surprised.

"Quite, quite sure," said Pooh.

"Oh, well, then, come in."

---

[1] **and had another think** — и подумал еще разок

So Pooh pushed and pushed and pushed his way through the hole, and at last he got in.

"You were quite right," said Rabbit, looking at him all over. "It *is* you. Glad to see you."

"Who did you think it was?"

"Well, I wasn't sure. You know how it is in the forest. One can't have *anybody* coming into one's house.[1] One has to be *careful*. What about a mouthful of something?"[2]

Pooh always liked a little something at eleven o'clock in the morning, and he was glad to see that Rabbit was getting out the plates and mugs. Then when Rabbit said, "Honey or condensed milk with bread?" he was so excited[3] that he said, "Both." But that seemed greedy, so he added, "But don't bother about the bread, please." And for a long time after that he said nothing... until at last, as he hummed to himself and licked all around his mouth, he got up, shook Rabbit lovingly by the paw, and said that he had to go.

"As a matter of fact,"[4] said Rabbit, "I was going out myself in a minute."

"Oh, well, then, I'll go too. Good-bye."

"Well, good-bye, if you don't want to have any more."

"*Is* there any more?" asked Pooh quickly.

Rabbit took the covers off the dishes, and said, "No, there isn't."

---

[1] **One can't have anybody coming into one's house.** — Нельзя пускать в дом кого попало.

[2] **What about a mouthful of something?** — А не перекусить ли нам немножко? (А не подкрепиться ли нам немножко?)

[3] **he was so excited** — он был так возбужден

[4] **As a matter of fact** — Дело в том, что

"I thought not," said Pooh, nodding to himself. "Well, good-bye. I must go now."

So he started to climb out of the hole. He pulled with his front paws, and pushed with his back paws, and in a little while his nose was out in the open again... and then his ears... and then his front paws... and then his shoulders... and then —

"Oh, help!" said Pooh. "I'd better go back."[1]

"Oh, bother!" said Pooh. "I must go on."

"I can't do either,"[2] said Pooh. "Oh, help and bother!"

Now by this time Rabbit wanted to go for a walk too, and as the front door was full, he went out by the back door, and came round to Pooh, and looked at him.

"Hallo, are you stuck?"[3] he asked.

"N-no," said Pooh carelessly. "I am just resting and thinking and humming to myself."

"Here, give me a paw."

Pooh Bear stretched out a paw, and Rabbit pulled and pulled and pulled...

"*Ow!*" cried Pooh. "You're hurting!"[4]

"The fact is," said Rabbit, "you're stuck."

"It all comes," said Pooh, "of not having front doors big enough."[5]

"It all comes," said Rabbit, "of eating too much. I

---

[1] **I'd better go back.** — Я лучше полезу назад.

[2] **I can't do either** — Я не могу ни то, ни другое

[3] **...are you stuck?** — ...ты застрял?

[4] **You're hurting!** — Ты делаешь мне больно!

[5] **It all comes... of not having front doors big enough.** — И все это из-за того... что парадные двери у тебя недостаточно большие.

thought about it," said Rabbit, "only I didn't want to say anything," said Rabbit, "I knew that one of us was eating too much," said Rabbit, "and I knew it wasn't *me*," he said. "Well, well, I shall go and fetch Christopher Robin."

Christopher Robin lived at the other end of the forest. When the boy came back with Rabbit, and saw the front half of Pooh, he said, "Silly old Bear," in such a loving voice that everybody felt quite hopeful again.[1]

"I was just beginning to think," said Bear unhappily, "that Rabbit will never be able to use his front door again."

"Use his front door again?" said Christopher Robin. "Of course he'll use his front door again."

"Good," said Rabbit.

"If we can't pull you out, Pooh, we shall push you back."

Rabbit scratched his whiskers thoughtfully, and said, "If we push Pooh back, he will be back."

"You mean I'll *never* get out?" said Pooh.

"Then there's only one thing you can do," Christopher Robin said. "You must get thin again."[2]

"How long does it take to get thin?" asked Pooh.

"About a week, I think."

"But I can't stay here for a *week*."

"You can *stay* here, you silly old Bear."

"We'll read to you," said Rabbit cheerfully. "And I hope it won't snow," he added. "And I say, old friend, you're taking up a good deal of room[3] in my house. *Do*

---

[1] **that everybody felt quite hopeful again** — что у всех опять появилась надежда

[2] **You must get thin again.** — Ты должен вновь похудеть.

[3] **you're taking up a good deal of room** — ты занимаешь много места

you mind if I use your back legs as a towel-horse?[1] Because, I mean, there they are — they are doing nothing — and it will be very convenient just to hang the towels on them."

"A week!" said Pooh. "*What about meals?*"

"I'm afraid no meals," said Christopher Robin, "because of getting thin quicker. But we'll read to you."

Bear began to sigh, and then found he couldn't because he was so tightly stuck; and a tear rolled down his eye, as he said:

"Then would you read a Sustaining Book,[2] to help and comfort a poor Bear."

So for a week Christopher Robin read that sort of book at the North end of Pooh, and Rabbit hung his washing on the South end... and in between Bear felt he was getting thinner and thinner.[3] And at the end of the week Christopher Robin said, "*Now!*"

So he took hold of Pooh's front paws[4] and Rabbit took hold of Christopher Robin, and all Rabbit's friends and relations took hold of Rabbit, and they all pulled together...

And for a long time Pooh only said "*Ow!*"...

[1] **Do you mind if I use your back legs as a towel-horse?** — Ты не возражаешь, если я использую твои задние лапы как вешалку для полотенца?

[2] **a Sustaining Book** — *зд.* Книга о полезной пище (*образовано по аналогии с выражением* **sustaining food** — калорийная пища)

[3] **Bear felt he was getting thinner and thinner** — медвежонок чувствовал, как становится худее и худее

[4] **So he took hold of Pooh's front paws** — Итак, он ухватился за передние лапы Пуха

And "*Oh!*"...

And then, suddenly he said "*Pop!*" just as if a cork was coming out of a bottle.[1]

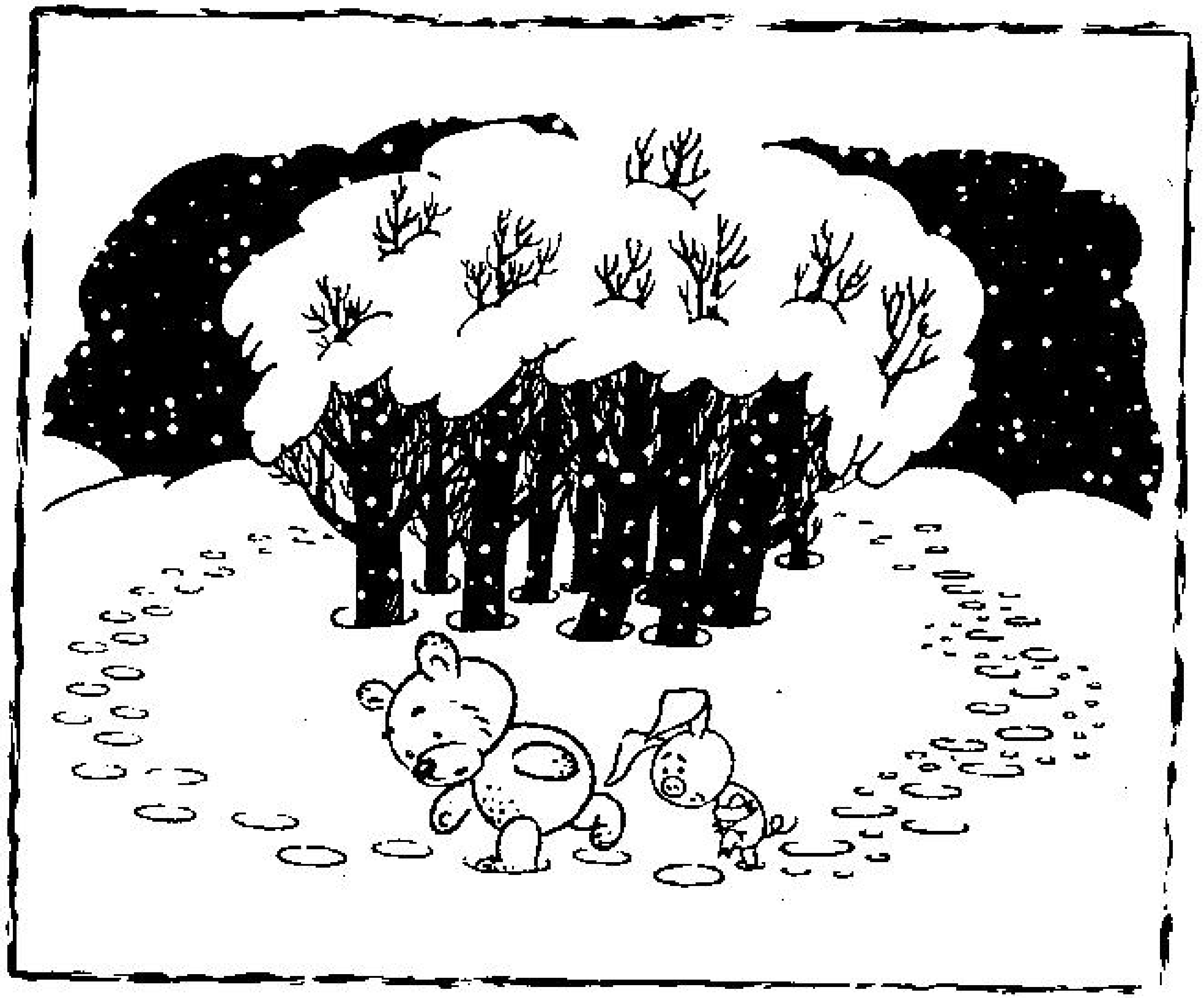
And Christopher Robin and Rabbit and all Rabbit's friends and relations went head-over-heels backwards...[2] and on the top of them came Winnie-the-Pooh — free!

So, with a nod of thanks to his friends, he went on with his walk through the forest,[3] humming proudly to himself. But, Christopher Robin looked after him lovingly, and said to himself, "Silly old Bear!"

[1] **just as if a cork was coming out of a bottle** — как будто пробка вылетела из бутылки

[2] **went head-over-heels backwards** — полетели вверх тормашками

[3] **he went on with his walk through the forest** — он продолжил свою прогулку по лесу



Chapter Three

In which Pooh and Piglet go hunting and nearly catch a Woozle[1]

The Piglet lived in a very nice house in the middle of a beech-tree, and the beech-tree was in the middle of the forest, and the Piglet lived in the middle of the house.

---

[1] **Pooh and Piglet go hunting and nearly catch a Woozle** ['wu:zl] — Пух и Пятачок отправляются на охоту и чуть не ловят Буку. **Woozle** — Бука (*придуманное слово*)

One fine winter's day when Piglet was sweeping away the snow in front of his house, he looked up, and there was Winnie-the-Pooh. Pooh was walking round and round in a circle. He was thinking of something else, and when Piglet called to him, he just went on walking.

"Hallo!" said Piglet. "What are *you* doing?"

"Hunting,"[1] said Pooh.

"Hunting what?"

"Tracking something,"[2] said Winnie-the-Pooh.

"Tracking what?" said Piglet, coming near.

"That's just what I ask myself. I ask myself, What?"

"What do you think you'll answer?"

"I shall wait until I catch it," said Winnie-the-Pooh. "Now, look there." He pointed to the ground in front of him. "What do you see there?"

"Tracks," said Piglet. "Paw-marks." He gave a little squeak of excitement.[3] "Oh, Pooh. Do you think it's a — a — a Woozle?"

"It may be," said Pooh. "Sometimes it is, and sometimes it isn't. You never can tell with paw-marks."

With these few words he went on tracking. Piglet watched him for a minute or two, and then ran after him. Winnie-the-Pooh suddenly stopped.

"What's the matter?" asked Piglet.

"It's a very funny thing," said Bear, "but there seem to be *two* animals now.[4] And the two of them are

---

[1] **Hunting** — Охочусь

[2] **Tracking something** — Выслеживаю кого-то

[3] **He gave a little squeak of excitement.** — Он взвизгнул от волнения.

[4] **but there seem to be two animals now** — но кажется, что теперь уже два зверя

now walking in company. Come with me, Piglet, will you? They may turn out to be hostile animals."[1]

Piglet scratched his ear and agreed. He said he had nothing to do until Friday, if it really *was* a Woozle.

"You mean, if it really is two Woozles," said Winnie-the-Pooh. So they went together.

There was a small group of larch-trees just here, and it seemed as if the two Woozles were going round these larch-trees; so Pooh and Piglet went after them round these larch-trees. And still the tracks went on in front of them...

Suddenly Winnie-the-Pooh stopped, and pointed excitedly in front of him. "*Look!*"

"*What?*" said Piglet, with a jump. And then, to show that he wasn't afraid, he jumped up and down once or twice more[2] as if he was doing his morning exercises.

"The tracks!" said Pooh. "*A third animal has joined the other two.*"

"Pooh!" cried Piglet. "Do you think it is another Woozle?"

"No," said Pooh, "because it makes different marks. It is either two Woozles and one, perhaps, Wizzle,[3] or two, perhaps, Wizzles and one Woozle. Let us continue to follow them."

So they went on. They were feeling just a little anxious now, perhaps the three animals in front of them really were hostile animals. And then, suddenly Winnie-the-Pooh stopped again, and licked his nose because he

---

[1] **They may turn out to be hostile animals.** ['hɒstaɪl] — *зд.* Может оказаться, что это очень страшные звери.

[2] **once or twice more** — еще разок-другой

[3] **Wizzle** ['wɪzl] — Бяка (*тоже придуманное слово*)

was feeling more hot and anxious than ever in his life before. *There were four animals in front of them!*

"Do you see, Piglet? Look at their tracks. Three Woozles, and one Wizzle. *Another Woozle has joined them!*"

There were the tracks. They crossed over each other here and there; but, there was no mistake, they were the tracks of four sets of paws.[1]

"I *think*," said Piglet, when he was licking his nose, "I *think* that I have just remembered something. I have just remembered something that I forgot to do yesterday and shan't be able to do tomorrow.[2] So I think I really must go back and do it now."

"We'll do it this afternoon, and I'll come with you," said Pooh.

"It isn't the sort of thing you can do in the afternoon," said Piglet quickly. "It's a morning thing. So, really, dear old Pooh, if you'll excuse me — *What's that?*"

Pooh looked up at the sky, and then, as he heard the whistle again, he looked up into the branches of a big oak-tree, and then he saw a friend of his.

"It's Christopher Robin," he said.

"Ah, then you'll be all right," said Piglet. "You'll be quite safe with *him*. Good-bye," and he ran home as quickly as he could, very glad to be out of all danger again.[3]

Christopher Robin came slowly down his tree.

"Silly old Bear," he said, "what *were* you doing? First you went round the larch-trees twice by yourself, and then Piglet ran after you and you went round again

---

[1] **the tracks of four sets of paws** — следы четырех пар лап

[2] **and shan't be able to do tomorrow** — и не смогу сделать завтра

[3] **out of all danger again** — вновь вне всякой опасности

together, and then you were just going round a fourth time —"

"Wait a moment," said Winnie-the-Pooh, holding up his paw.

He sat down and thought, in the most thoughtful way he could think.[1] Then he scratched his nose twice, and stood up.

"Yes," said Winnie-the-Pooh.

"I see now," said Winnie-the-Pooh.

"I have been foolish and have made a silly mistake," said he, "and I am a bear of no brain at all."[2]

"You're the best bear in all the world," said Christopher Robin lovingly.

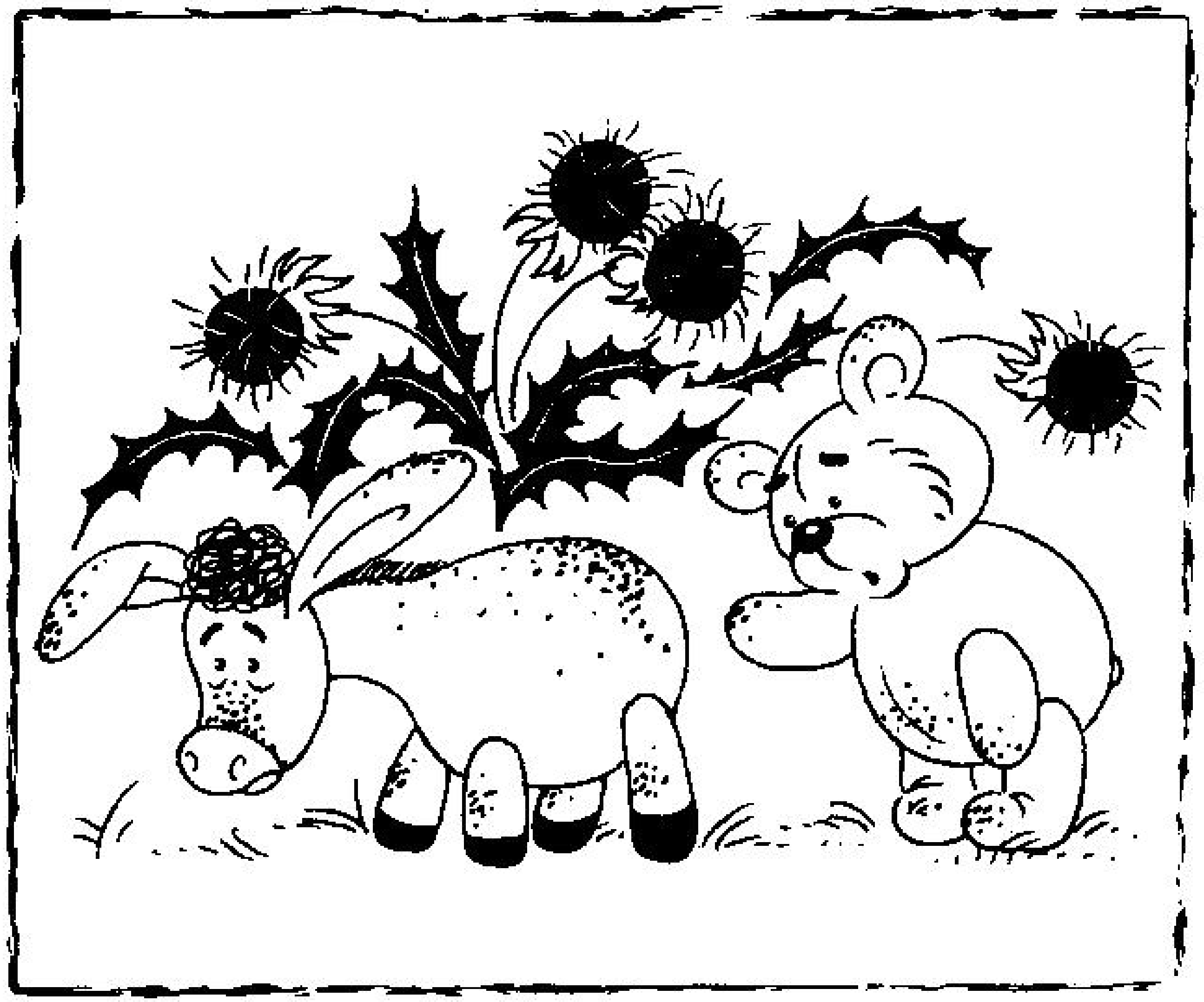
"Am I?" said Pooh hopefully. And then he brightened up suddenly.

"Anyhow," he said, "it is nearly lunch time."

So he went home for it.

[1] **in the most thoughtful way he could think** — *зд.* так напряженно, как он только мог думать

[2] **a bear of no brain at all** — очень бестолковый мишка



Chapter Four

In which Eeyore[1] loses a tail and Pooh finds one

The old grey donkey, Eeyore, stood by himself in a far corner of the forest, his head on one side, and thought about things.[2] Sometimes he thought sadly to himself, "Why?" and sometimes he thought, "Wherefore?"[3] And

[1] **Eeyore** [iː'jɔː] — Иа-Иа (*имя ослика, образовано от слова* **eeyore** — иа-иа (*крик осла*)

[2] **and thought about things** — и думал о всякой всячине

[3] **Wherefore?** — По какой причине?

sometimes he didn't quite know what he *was* thinking about. So when Winnie-the-Pooh came along, Eeyore was very glad to stop thinking for a little while, in order to say "How do you do?" to him in his gloomy voice.

"And how are you?" said Winnie-the-Pooh.

Eeyore shook his head from side to side.

"Not very how,"[1] he said.

"Dear, dear,"[2] said Pooh, "I'm sorry about that. Let's have a look at you."

So Eeyore stood there, looking sadly at the ground, and Winnie-the-Pooh walked all round him once.

"Why, what's happened to your tail?" he said in surprise.

"What *has* happened to it?" said Eeyore.

"It isn't there!"

"Are you sure?"

"Well, either a tail *is* there or isn't there. You can't make a mistake about it. And yours *isn't* there!"

"Then what is?"

"Nothing."

"Let's have a look," said Eeyore, and he turned slowly round to the place where his tail had been a little while ago,[3] and then, when he found that he couldn't see it, he turned round the other way, until he came back to where he was at first, and then he put his head down and looked between his front legs, and at last he said, with a long, sad sigh, "You're right, I think."

---

[1] **Not very how** — *зд.* Так себе

[2] **Dear, dear** — Ах, ах

[3] **where his tail had been a little while ago** — где недавно был его хвост

"Of course I'm right," said Pooh.

"It explains everything. No wonder,"[1] said Eeyore gloomily.

"You must have left it somewhere,"[2] said Winnie-the-Pooh.

"Somebody must have taken it," said Eeyore. "How like them,"[3] he added, after a long silence.

Pooh felt that he must say something helpful about it, but didn't quite know what. So he decided to do something helpful instead.

"Eeyore," he said solemnly, "I, Winnie-the-Pooh, will find your tail for you."

"Thank you, Pooh," answered Eeyore. "You're a real friend. Not like some,"[4] he said.

So Winnie-the-Pooh went off to find Eeyore's tail.

It was a fine spring morning in the forest as he started out. Little soft clouds played happily in a blue sky. Through them and between them the sun shone brightly. Bear marched down open slopes, over rocky rivers, up high banks of sand; and so at last, tired and hungry, he reached the Great Wood. For it was in the Great Wood that Owl lived.

"And if anyone knows anything about anything," said Bear to himself, "it's Owl who knows something about something," he said, "or my name's not Winnie-the-Pooh," he said. "Which it is," he added. "So there you are."

---

[1] **No wonder** — Ничего нет удивительного

[2] **You must have left it somewhere** — Должно быть, ты где-нибудь его (хвост) забыл

[3] **How like them** — Как это на них похоже

[4] **Not like some** — Не то, что другие

Owl lived at The Chestnuts, an old-world residence of great charm,[1] which was finer than anybody else's, or seemed so to Bear, because it had both a knocker *and* a bell-pull.[2] Under the knocker there was a notice which said:

PLES RING
IF AN RNSER IS REQIRD.[3]

Under the bell-pull there was a notice which said:

PLEZ CNOKE
IF AN RNSR IS NOT REQID.[4]

Christopher Robin had written these notices as he was the only one in the forest who could spell. For Owl, as wise as he was, could only read and write his own name WOL.[5]

---

[1] **The Chestnuts, an old-world residence of great charm** — «Каштаны», старое очаровательное имение

[2] **because it had both a knocker and a bell-pull** — так как там были и дверное кольцо, чтобы стучать в дверь, и шнурок, чтобы дергать колокольчик

[3] Эта надпись читается так: Please ring if an answer is required. — Прошу звонить, если требуется ответ (т. е. нужно открыть).

[4] Эта надпись читается так: Please knock if an answer is not required. — Прошу стучать, если не требуется ответа (т. е. не нужно открывать). (Обратите внимание, что надписи перепутаны: где надо стучать, написано звонить, и наоборот.) (См. сноску 2, с. 30)

[5] **WOL = OWL** [aʊl] — Сова

Winnie-the-Pooh read the two notices very carefully, first from left to right, and afterwards, in case he had missed some of it, from right to left. Then, to make quite sure, he knocked and pulled the knocker, and he pulled and knocked the bell-rope, and he called out in a very loud voice, "Owl! I require an answer! It's Bear speaking." And the door opened, and Owl looked out.

"Hallo, Pooh," he said. "How's things?"[1]

"Terrible and sad," said Pooh, "because Eeyore, who is my friend, has lost his tail. And he's very sad about it. So could you very kindly tell me how to find it for him?"

"Well," said Owl, "the customary procedure in such cases is as follows."[2]

"What does it mean?" said Pooh. "I am a bear of very little brain, and long words bother me."

"It means the thing to do. The thing to do is as follows. First — write a notice to say that we shall give a large something[3] to anybody who finds Eeyore's tail."

"I see, I see," said Pooh, nodding his head. "Talking about large something," he went on dreamily,[4] "I usually have a small something about now — about this time in the morning," and he looked at the cupboard in the corner of Owl's room. "Just a mouthful of condensed milk with a lick of honey —"[5]

---

[1] **How's things?** — Как дела?

[2] **the customary** [ˈkʌstəmərɪ] **procedure** [prəˈsiːdʒə] **in such cases is as follows** — обычная процедура в таких случаях следующая

[3] **we shall give a large something** — мы щедро расплатимся (мы дадим что-то большое)

[4] **he went on dreamily** — продолжал он мечтательно

[5] **Just a mouthful of condensed milk with a lick of honey** — Только глоточек сгущенного молока и разок лизнуть мед

"Well, then," said Owl, "we write out this notice, and we put it up all over the forest."

"A lick of honey," murmured Bear to himself. And he gave a deep sigh, and tried very hard to listen to what Owl was saying.

But Owl went on and on, using longer and longer words, until at last he came back to where he started. "The person who can write out this notice is Christopher Robin," he explained. "It was he who wrote the ones on my front door for me. Did you see them, Pooh?"

For some time Pooh was saying "Yes" and "No" in turn,[1] with his eyes shut, to all that Owl was saying.

"Didn't you see them?" said Owl, a little surprised. "Come and look at them now."

So they went outside. And Pooh looked at the knocker and the notice below it, and he looked at the bell-rope and the notice below it, and the more he looked at the bell-rope, the more he felt that he had seen something like it,[2] somewhere else, sometime before.

"Fine bell-rope, isn't it?" said Owl.

Pooh nodded.

"It reminds me of something," he said, "but I can't think what. Where did you get it?"

"I just found it in the forest. It was hanging on a bush, and I thought at first somebody lived there, so I rang it, and nothing happened, and then I rang it again

[1] **in turn** — по очереди

[2] **and the more he looked at the bell-rope, the more he felt that he had seen something like it** — и чем дольше он смотрел на шнурок для колокольчика, тем яснее ему становилось, что что-то похожее он уже где-то видел

very loudly, and it came off in my hand,[1] so as nobody wanted it, I took it home, and —"

"Owl," said Pooh proudly, "you made a mistake. Somebody did want it."[2]

"Who?"

"Eeyore. My dear friend Eeyore. He was — he was fond of it."

"Fond of it?"

"Attached to it,"[3] said Winnie-the-Pooh sadly.

So with these words he took it off Owl's front door and carried it back to Eeyore. Christopher Robin nailed it on in its right place again. Eeyore jumped about the forest, waving his tail so happily that Winnie-the-Pooh felt so happy and had to hurry home for a little something to sustain him.[4]

Half an hour afterwards, he wiped his mouth and sang proudly:

Who found the tail?
"I," said Pooh,
"At a quarter to two
(Only it was quarter to eleven really),
I found the tail."

[1] **and it came off in my hand** — и он остался у меня в руке

[2] **Somebody did want it.** — Кому-то он очень нужен.

[3] **Attached to it** — Привязан к нему

[4] **for a little something to sustain him** — чтобы перекусить немножко для подкрепления сил



Chapter Five

In which Piglet meets a Heffalump[1]

One day, when Christopher Robin and Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet were all talking together, Christopher Robin said carelessly, "I saw a Heffalump today, Piglet."

"What was it doing?" asked Piglet.

[1] **Heffalump** ['hefələmp] — Слонопотам (*воображаемое существо весьма устрашающего вида, похожее на слона*)

"Just lumping along,"[1] said Christopher Robin, "I don't think it saw *me.*"

"I saw one once," said Piglet. "I think I did."

"So did I," said Pooh. He wondered what a Heffalump was like.

"You don't often see them,"[2] said Christopher Robin carelessly.

"Not now," said Piglet.

"Not at this time of year," said Pooh.

Then they all talked about something else, until it was time for Pooh and Piglet to go home together. At first as they walked along the path in the wood, they didn't say much to each other. Then they came to the stream and helped each other to cross it on the stones. Walking side by side again, they began to talk in a friendly way about this and that. And then, just as they came to the six pine trees, Pooh looked round to see that nobody else was listening, and said in a very solemn voice:

"Piglet, I have decided something."

"What have you decided, Pooh?"

"I have decided to catch a Heffalump."

Pooh nodded his head several times as he said this, and waited for Piglet to say "How?" or "Pooh, you couldn't!" or something of that sort, but Piglet said nothing.

"I shall do it," said Pooh, "with the help of a trap. But it must be a clever trap. So you must help me, Piglet."

"Pooh," said Piglet, feeling quite happy again now, "I will."[3] And then he said, "How shall we do it?" and

[1] **Just lumping along** — Просто слонялся

[2] **You don't often see them** — Их не часто увидишь (Они редко встречаются)

[3] **I will.** — *зд.* Я согласен.

Pooh said, "That's just it.[1] How?" And then they sat down together near a gorse-bush to think it out.

Pooh said, "We shall dig a very deep pit, and then the Heffalump will come and fall into the pit, and —"

"Why?" said Piglet.

"Why what?" said Pooh.

"Why will he fall in?"

Pooh rubbed his nose with his paw and said, "The Heffalump will walk and look up at the sky to see if it is going to rain. So he won't see the very deep pit and will fall into it."

Piglet thought a little and said, "But what will the Heffalump do if it is raining already?"

Pooh rubbed his nose with his paw again and said, "The Heffalump will walk and look up at the sky to see if it is going to *clear up*. So he won't see the very deep pit and will fall into it."

Piglet said, "I see: it's a very clever trap."

Pooh was very proud when he heard this, and he felt that the Heffalump was as good as caught already.[2]

But there was another thing to think about.

"*Where will they dig the very deep pit?*"

Piglet said, "The best place will be somewhere near a Heffalump."

"But then he will see us digging it,"[3] said Pooh.

"Not if he is looking at the sky."

"He will suspect," said Pooh, "if he looks down." He thought for a long time and then added sadly.

[1] **That's just it.** — В том-то и дело.

[2] **he felt that the Heffalump was as good as caught already** — ему показалось, что Слонопотам уже пойман

[3] **he will see us digging it** — он увидит, как мы ее (яму) роем

"It isn't as easy as I thought. I suppose that's why Heffalumps hardly *ever* get caught."[1]

"That must be it,"[2] said Piglet.

They got up; and when they had taken a few gorse prickles out of themselves they sat down again; and all the time Pooh was saying to himself, "If only I could *think* of something!"[3] For he felt sure that a very clever brain could catch a Heffalump if only he knew the right way to do it.

"Suppose," he said to Piglet, "*you* want to catch *me*, how will you do it?"

"Well," said Piglet, "I shall do it like this. I shall make a trap, and I shall put a jar of honey in the trap, and you will smell it, and you will go in after it, and —"

"And I shall go after it," said Pooh excitedly, "only very carefully so as not to hurt myself, and I shall get to the jar of honey, and I shall lick round the edges first of all,[4] and then I shall walk away and think about it a little, and then I shall come back and start licking in the middle of the jar, and then —"

"Then I shall catch you. Now the first thing to think of is, What do Heffalumps like? I think acorns. Wake up, Pooh!"

Pooh, who had gone into a happy dream, woke up, and said, "Honey is a much more trappy thing than

[1] **I suppose that's why Heffalumps hardly ever get caught.** — Наверно, вот почему Слонопотамы так редко ловятся.

[2] **That must be it** — Очень может быть

[3] **If only I could think of something!** — Если бы только я мог что-нибудь придумать!

[4] **I shall lick round the edges first of all** — сначала я полижу краешки горшка

acorns."[1] Piglet didn't think so. But he did not want to find and gather acorns, so he said, "All right, honey then."

Pooh wanted to say, "All right, acorns."

"Honey," said Piglet, "*I'll* dig the pit and *you* go and get the honey."

"Very well," said Pooh, and he stumped off.

As soon as he got home, he went to the larder; and he stood on a chair, and took down a very large jar of honey from the top shelf. He read the word HUNNY on it, but, just to make sure, he took off the paper cover and looked at it, and it *looked* just like honey. "But you never can tell," said Pooh. "I remember that my uncle had seen cheese just this colour." So he put his tongue in, and took a large lick.[2] "Yes," he said, "it is. No doubt about that. It is honey all the way down to the bottom of the jar. But it may be cheese. Somebody could put cheese in at the bottom of the jar just for a joke." And he took another large lick. "I *was* right. It *is* honey, all the way down."

When he was quite sure of this, he took the jar back to Piglet, and Piglet looked up from the bottom of his very deep pit, and said, "Got it?"[3] and Pooh said, "Yes, but it isn't quite a full jar," and he threw it down to Piglet, and Piglet said, "No, it isn't. Is that all you've got left?"[4] and Pooh said, "Yes." So Piglet put the jar at the bottom of the pit, and climbed out, and they went off home together.

"Well, good night, Pooh," said Piglet, when they

---

[1] **Honey is a much more trappy thing than acorns** — Мед больше годится для приманки, чем желуди

[2] **and took a large lick** — и лизнул изо всех сил

[3] **Got it? = Have you got it?** — Принес?

[4] **Is that all you've got left?** — Это все, что у тебя осталось?

had got to Pooh's house. "And we'll meet at six o'clock tomorrow morning by the very deep pit, and see how many Heffalumps we've got in our trap."

"Six o'clock, Piglet. And have you got any string?"

"No. Why do you want string?"

"To lead them home with."[1]

"Oh!... I *think* Heffalumps come if you whistle."

"Some do and some don't. You never can tell with Heffalumps.[2] Well, good night!"

"Good night!"

And off Piglet trotted to his house, and Pooh went to bed.

Some hours later Pooh woke up suddenly with a sinking feeling.[3] He had that sinking feeling before, and he knew what it meant. He *was hungry*. So he went to the larder, and he stood on a chair and reached up to the top shelf, and found — nothing.

"That's funny," he thought. "I know I had a jar of honey there. A full jar, full of honey right up to the top, and it had the word HUNNY on it. That's very funny." And then he began to walk up and down, murmuring a murmur to himself. Like this:

It's very, very funny,
'Cos[4] I *know* I had some honey;
'Cos it had a label on,

---

[1] **To lead them home with.** — Чтобы отвести их (Слонопотамов) домой.

[2] **You never can tell with Heffalumps.** — Никогда не знаешь, что Слонопотамам придет в голову.

[3] **with a sinking feeling** — от какого-то щемящего чувства

[4] **'Cos = Because** (*форма разговорной и детской речи*)

Saying HUNNY.
No, I don't know where it's gone —[1]
Well, it's funny.

He had murmured this to himself three times, when suddenly he remembered. He had put it into the clever trap to catch the Heffalump.

"Bother!" said Pooh. "It all comes of trying to be kind[2] to Heffalumps." And he got back into bed.

But he couldn't sleep. The more he tried to sleep, the more he couldn't. He tried counting sheep, which is sometimes a good way of getting to sleep,[3] and, as that was no good, he tried counting Heffalumps. And that was worse. Because every Heffalump that he counted was going straight to a pot of Pooh's honey, *and was eating it all*.[4] For some minutes he lay there miserably, but when the five hundred and eighty-seventh Heffalump was licking its mouth and saying to itself, "Very good honey this, I don't know when I've tasted better," it was too much for Pooh. He jumped out of bed, he ran out of the house, and he ran straight to the very deep pit.

The sun was still in bed, but in the East the sky over the forest was brighter. In the half-light the trees

[1] **where it's gone** — куда он исчез

[2] **It all comes of trying to be kind** — И все это из-за того, что хочешь быть добрым

[3] **He tried counting sheep, which is sometimes a good way of getting to sleep** — Он попробовал считать овец — иногда это хороший способ скорее заснуть

[4] **every Heffalump... was going straight to a pot of Pooh's honey, and was eating it all** — Каждый Слонопотам... прямо устремлялся к Пухову горшку с медом и съедал все содержимое

looked cold and lonely, and the very deep pit seemed deeper than it was.

Pooh's jar of honey at the bottom was very small. But as he got nearer to it his nose told him that it was indeed honey.

"Bother!" said Pooh, as he got his nose inside the jar. "A Heffalump has eaten it!" And then he thought a little and said, "Oh, no, *I* did. I forgot."[1]

But there was still a very little honey left at the bottom of the jar, so he pushed his head right in, and began to lick...

By and by Piglet woke up. As soon as he woke he said to himself, "Oh!" Then he said bravely, "Yes," and then, still more bravely, "Quite so." But he didn't feel very brave, for he thought about Heffalumps.

What was a Heffalump like?

Was it fierce?

Did it come when you whistled? *And how* did it come?

Was it fond of pigs at all?

If it was fond of pigs, did it make any difference *what sort of pig*?

He didn't know the answer to any of these questions... and he was going to see his first Heffalump in about an hour from now!

Of course together with Pooh.

But what if Heffalumps were very fierce with both pigs *and* bears? Perhaps he'd better pretend that he had a headache, and couldn't go to the very deep pit this morning? What should he do?[2]

[1] **Oh, no, I did. I forgot.** — *зд.* О, нет. Я совсем забыл, это я его съел.

[2] **What should he do?** — Что ему следует делать?

And then he had a clever idea. "I shall go up very quietly to the very deep pit now, look very carefully into the trap, and see if there *is* a Heffalump there. And if there is, I shall go back to bed, and if there isn't, I won't," he said to himself.

So off Piglet went. At first he thought that there wasn't a Heffalump in the trap, and then he thought that there was, and as he got nearer he was *sure* that there was because he could hear it heffalumping about in the pit like anything.[1]

"Oh, dear, oh, dear, oh, dear!" said Piglet to himself. And he wanted to run away. But he felt that he must just see what a Heffalump was like. So he moved slowly and carefully to the trap and looked in...

And all the time Winnie-the-Pooh was trying to get the honey-jar off his head. The more he shook it, the more tightly it stuck on his head.[2] "*Bother!*" he said, inside the jar, and "*Oh, help!*" He tried to climb out of the trap, but as he could see nothing but the jar he couldn't find his way. So at last he lifted up his head with the jar on it, and made a loud roar of sadness and despair...[3] and it was at that moment that Piglet looked down.

"Help, help!" cried Piglet. "A Heffalump, a Horrible Heffalump!" and he ran off as hard as he could,

[1] **he could hear it heffalumping about... like anything** — он мог слышать, как тот слонопотамит... изо всех сил

[2] **The more he shook it, the more tightly it stuck on his head.** — *зд.* Чем больше он тряс головой, тем плотнее он (горшок) садился на его голову.

[3] **and made a loud roar** [rɔ:] **of sadness and despair** [dɪs'peə] — и издал громкий вопль тоски и отчания

still crying out, "Help, help, a Herrible Hoffalump![1] Hoff, Hoff, a Hellible Horralump! Holl, Holl, a Hoffable Hellerump!" And he didn't stop crying until he got to Christopher Robin's house.

"Whatever's the matter, Piglet?" said Christopher Robin, who was just getting up.

"Heff," said Piglet. He was breathing so hard that he could hardly speak, "a Heff — a Heff — a Heffalump."

"Where?"

"Up there," said Piglet, waving his paw.

"What did it look like?"

"Like — like — It had the biggest head you ever saw, Christopher Robin. A very great enormous thing, like — like nothing.[2] A very big — well, like a — I don't know — like a big nothing. Like a jar."

"Well," said Christopher Robin, putting on his shoes, "I shall go and look at it. Come on."

Piglet wasn't afraid if he had Christopher Robin with him, so off they went together...

"I can hear it, can't you?" said Piglet anxiously, as they got near.

"I can hear *something*," said Christopher Robin.

It was Pooh bumping his head against a tree.[3]

"There!" said Piglet. "Isn't it *awful*?" And he held on tight to Christopher Robin's hand.

[1] **Help, help, a Herrible Hoffalump!** — Помогите, помогите! Ужасный Слонопотам! (*Здесь и далее от страха Пятачок переставляет звуки и слоги из одного слова в другое.*)

[2] **A very great enormous** [ɪ'nɔ:məs] **thing, like — like nothing.** — Огромная, ни на что не похожая штуковина.

[3] **It was Pooh bumping his head against a tree.** — Это Винни-Пух колотил горшком о дерево.

Suddenly Christopher Robin began to laugh... and he laughed... and he laughed... and he laughed. And while he was still laughing — the Heffalump bumped his head against the tree. Smash went the jar,[1] and out came Pooh's head again...

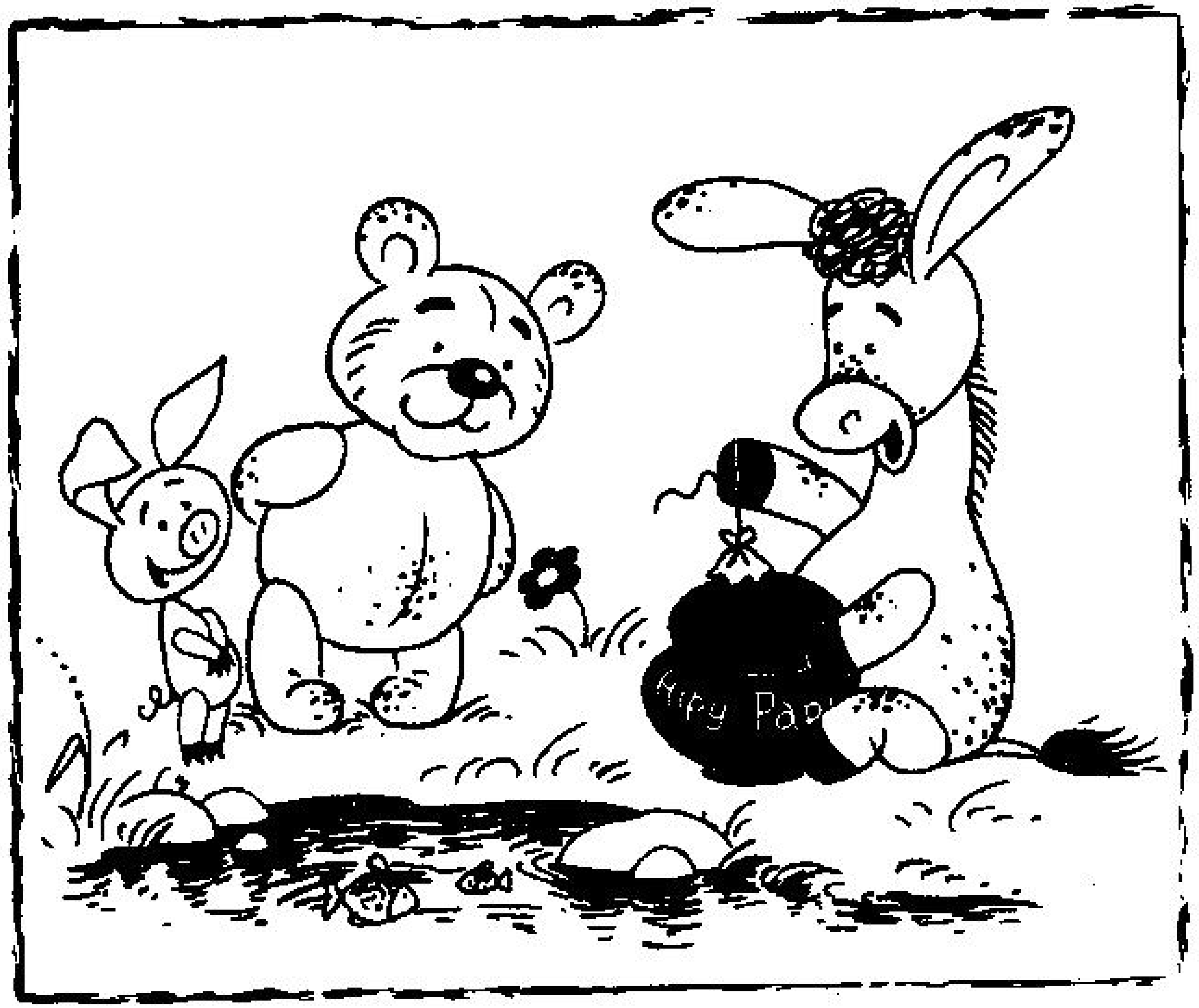
Then Piglet saw what a foolish Piglet he had been, and he was so ashamed of himself[2] that he ran straight off home and went to bed with a headache. But Christopher Robin and Pooh went home to breakfast together.

"Oh, Bear!" said Christopher Robin. "I love you so much!"

"So do I," said Pooh.

[1] **Smash went the jar** — Горшок раскололся вдребезги

[2] **and he was so ashamed of himself** — и ему стало так стыдно



Chapter Six

In which Eeyore has a birthday and gets two presents

Eyore, the old grey donkey, stood by the side of the stream, and looked at himself in the water.

"Pathetic,"[1] he said. "That's what it is. Pathetic."

He turned and walked slowly down the stream for twenty yards, splashed across it, and walked slowly back on the other side. Then he looked at himself in the water again.

[1] **Pathetic** — Душераздирающее зрелище

"As I thought," he said. "No better from *this* side. But nobody cares.[1] Pathetic, that's what it is."

There was a loud noise in the grass behind him, and Pooh came out.

"Good morning, Eeyore," said Pooh.

"Good morning, Pooh Bear," said Eeyore gloomily. "If it *is* a good morning," he said.

"Why, what's the matter?"

"Nothing, Pooh Bear, nothing."

"You seem so sad, Eeyore."

"Sad? Why should I be sad?[2] I'm not sad. It's my birthday. The happiest day of the year."

"Your birthday?" said Pooh in great surprise.

"Of course it is. Can't you see? Look at all the presents I have had." He waved a foot from side to side. "Look at the birthday cake and the candles."

Pooh looked — first to the right and then to the left.

"Presents?" said Pooh. "Birthday cake?" said Pooh. "Where?"

"Can't you see them?"

"No," said Pooh.

"Neither can I,"[3] said Eeyore. "Joke," he explained. "Ha, ha!"

Pooh scratched his head, being a little puzzled by all this.[4]

"But is it really your birthday?" he asked.

---

[1] **No better from this side. But nobody cares.** — И с этой стороны не лучше. И никому нет дела.

[2] **Why should I be sad?** — С чего это мне грустить?

[3] **Neither** ['naɪðə] **can I** — Я тоже (не вижу)

[4] **being a little puzzled by all this** — немного озадаченный всем этим

"It is."

"Oh, I see," said Pooh in a sad voice. He felt quite sorry for Eeyore.

"Many happy returns of the day," he said.

"It's bad enough," said Eeyore, "I am so miserable myself[1] with no presents and no cake and no candles, but if others are going to be miserable too..."

This was too much for Pooh. "Stay there!" he called to Eeyore, as he turned and hurried back home as quick as he could. He felt that he must get poor Eeyore *some* sort of a present at once.[2]

Outside his house he found Piglet. He was jumping up and down, trying to reach the knocker.

"Hallo, Piglet," he said.

"Hallo, Pooh," said Piglet.

"What are *you* trying to do?"

"I was trying to reach the knocker," said Piglet.

"Let me do it for you," said Pooh kindly. So he reached up and knocked at the door. "I have just seen Eeyore," he began, "and poor Eeyore is in a very sad condition,[3] because it's his birthday, and nobody knows it, and he's very gloomy — you know what Eeyore is. Why doesn't the person who lives here open the door? He's awfully slow." And he knocked again.

"But Pooh," said Piglet, "it's your own house!"

"Oh!" said Pooh. "So it is," he said. "Well, let's go in."

So in they went. First of all Pooh went to the cupboard

---

[1] **I am so miserable myself** — Я сам такой несчастный

[2] **at once** — сразу же, немедленно

[3] **in a very sad condition** — в жалком состоянии

to see if he had quite a small jar of honey left;[1] and he had, so he took it down.

"I'm giving this to Eeyore," he explained, "as a present. What are *you* going to give?"

"Can't I give it too?" said Piglet. "From both of us?"

"No," said Pooh. "That will *not* be a good plan."

"All right, then, I'll give him a balloon. I've got one left from my party. I'll go and get it now, shall I?"

"That, Piglet, is a *very* good idea. It is just what Eeyore wants to cheer him up.[2] A balloon will cheer anybody up."

So Piglet trotted off; and Pooh went off in the other direction with his jar of honey.

It was a warm day, and Pooh had a long way to go. Suddenly he had a sort of funny feeling. It began at his nose and ran all through him and out at his feet. It was just as if somebody inside him was saying,[3] "Now then, Pooh, time for a little something."

"Dear, dear," said Pooh, "I didn't know it was as late as that." So he sat down and took the top off his jar of honey. "What luck that I brought this with me," he thought. And he began to eat.

"Now let me see," he thought, as he took his last lick of the inside of the jar, "where was I going? Ah, yes, Eeyore." He got up slowly.

---

[1] **if he had quite a small jar of honey left** — не остался ли у него маленький горшочек меда

[2] **It is just what Eeyore wants to cheer him up.** — *зд.* Это как раз то, что развеселит Иа-Иа.

[3] **as if somebody inside him was saying** — как будто кто-то внутри него говорил

And then, suddenly, he remembered. He had eaten Eeyore's birthday present.

"*Bother!*" said Pooh. "What *shall* I do? I *must* give him *something.*"

For a little while he couldn't think of anything. Then he thought: "Well, it's a very nice pot, even if there's no honey in it, I shall wash it clean, and ask somebody to write '*A Happy Birthday*' on it. Eeyore can keep things in it, which may be useful." So, as he was just passing the Great Wood, he went inside to call on[1] Owl, who lived there.

"Good morning, Owl," he said.

"Good morning, Pooh," said Owl.

"Many happy returns of Eeyore's birthday," said Pooh.

"Oh, is that what it is?"

"What are you giving him, Owl?"

"What are *you* giving him, Pooh?"

"I'm giving him a useful pot to keep things in, and I want to ask you —"

"Is this it?" said Owl, taking it out of Pooh's paw.

"Yes, and I want to ask you —"

"Somebody kept honey in it," said Owl.

"You can keep *anything* in it,"[2] said Pooh. "It's very useful. And I want to ask you —"

"You must write '*A Happy Birthday*' on it."

"*That* was what I wanted to ask you," said Pooh. "Because my spelling is sometimes wrong. It's good spelling but sometimes the letters get in the wrong places. Could *you* very kindly write '*A Happy Birthday*' on it for me?"

---

[1] **to call on** — навестить

[2] **You can keep anything in it** — Здесь можно хранить все что угодно

"It's a nice pot," said Owl, and looked at it all round. "Can't I give it too? From both of us?"

"No," said Pooh. "That is *not* a good plan. Now I'll just wash it first, and then you can write on it."

Well, he washed the pot out, and dried it, while Owl licked the end of his pencil, and wondered how to spell "birthday".

"Can you read, Pooh?" he asked a little anxiously. "There's a notice which says: knock and ring outside my door. Christopher Robin wrote it. Could you read it?"

"Christopher Robin told me what it said, and *then* I could."

"Well, I'll tell you what *this* says, and then you'll be able to read it."

So Owl wrote... and this is what he wrote:

HIPY PAPY BTHUTHDTH THUTHDA BTHUTHDY.

Pooh looked on admiringly.

"I'm just saying 'A Happy Birthday'," said Owl carelessly.

"It's a nice long one,"[1] said Pooh.

"Well, of course, I'm saying, 'A very happy birthday with love from Pooh.' Naturally it takes a good deal of pencil to say a long thing like that."[2]

"Oh, I see," said Pooh.

---

[1] **It's a nice long one** — *зд.* Это длинное и красивое поздравление

[2] **Naturally it takes a good deal of pencil to say a long thing like that.** — Естественно, чтобы написать такое длинное поздравление, требуется много графита.

While all this was happening, Piglet had gone back to his own house to get Eeyore's balloon. He held it very tightly against himself, so that it couldn't blow away, and he ran as fast as he could so as to give Eeyore a present before Pooh did. But as he was running along, and thinking about Eeyore, he didn't look where he was going... and suddenly he put his foot in a rabbit hole, and fell down on his face.

BANG...???!!!

Piglet lay there, wondering what had happened. At first he thought that the whole world had blown up; and then he thought that perhaps only *he* had,[1] and he was now alone in the moon or somewhere. "I'll never see Christopher Robin or Pooh or Eeyore again." And then he thought, "Well, even if I'm in the moon, I don't have to lie on my face all the time," so he got carefully up and looked about him.

He was still in the forest!

"Well, that's funny," he thought. "I wonder what that bang was.[2] I couldn't have made such a noise just falling down.[3] And where's my balloon? And what's that small piece of damp rag doing?"[4]

It was the balloon!

"Oh, dear!" said Piglet. "Oh, dear, oh dear! Well, it's too late now. I can't go back, and I haven't another

---

[1] **and then he thought that perhaps only he had** — а затем он подумал, что, возможно, взорвался только он (Пятачок)

[2] **I wonder what that bang was.** — Интересно, что это так бухнуло.

[3] **I couldn't have made such a noise just falling down.** — Не может быть, что я наделал столько шуму, когда упал.

[4] **And what's that small piece of damp rag doing?** — *зд.* А это что еще за кусочек мокрой тряпки?

balloon, and perhaps Eeyore doesn't *like* balloons so *very* much."

So he trotted on, rather sadly now, and down he came to the side of the stream where Eeyore was, and called out to him.

"Good morning, Eeyore," shouted Piglet.

"Good morning, little Piglet," said Eeyore. "If it *is* a good morning," he said. "Which I doubt," said he. "But it doesn't matter."

"Many happy returns of the day," said Piglet. He was now nearer Eeyore.

Eeyore stopped looking at himself in the stream, and turned to look at Piglet.

"Just say that again," he said.

"Many hap —"

"Wait a moment."

He pushed his right ear forward with his foot to hear better.

"Many happy returns of the day," said Piglet again.

"Meaning me?"[1]

"Of course, Eeyore."

"My birthday?"

"Yes, Eeyore, and I've brought you a present."

Eeyore turned with great difficulty and pushed his left ear forward.

"Many happy returns of the day."

"Meaning me again?"

"Yes."

"I'm having a real birthday?"

"Of course, Eeyore. And I've brought you a present. It's a balloon."

---

[1] **Meaning me?** — Это касается меня?

"*Balloon?*" said Eeyore. "Did you say balloon? One of those big coloured things you blow up?"[1]

"Yes, but I'm afraid — I'm very sorry, Eeyore — but when I was running along to bring it to you, I fell down."

"Dear, dear, how unlucky! You ran too fast, I suppose. You didn't hurt yourself, little Piglet?"

"No, but I — I — oh, Eeyore. The balloon burst when I fell!"

There was a very long silence.

"My balloon?" said Eeyore at last.

Piglet nodded.

"My birthday balloon?"

"Yes, Eeyore," said Piglet. "Here it is. With — with many happy returns of the day." And he gave Eeyore the small piece of damp rag.

"Is this it?" said Eeyore a little surprised.

Piglet nodded.

"My present?"

Piglet nodded again.

"The balloon?"

"Yes."

"Thank you, Piglet," said Eeyore, "but what colour was this balloon when it — when it *was* a balloon?"

"Red."

"Red," he said to himself. "My favourite colour... How big was it?"

"About as big as me."

"About as big as Piglet," he said to himself sadly. "My favourite size. Well, well."

---

[1] **One of those big coloured things you blow up?** — *зд.* Это одна из тех больших цветных штуковин, которые надувают?

Piglet felt very miserable, and didn't know what to say. He was still opening his mouth to begin something, when he heard a shout from the other side of the river, and there was Pooh.

"Many happy returns of the day," called out Pooh. He forgot that he had said it already.

"Thank you, Pooh," said Eeyore gloomily.

"I've brought you a little present," said Pooh excitedly.

"I've had it," said Eeyore.

Pooh splashed across the stream to Eeyore. Piglet was sitting a little way off, his head in his paws.

"It's a useful pot," said Pooh. "Here it is. And it's got 'A very happy birthday with love from Pooh' on it. That's what all that writing is. And it's for putting things in. There!"

When Eeyore saw the pot, he became quite excited.

"Why!" he said. "I think my balloon will just go into that pot!"

"Oh, no, Eeyore," said Pooh. "Balloons are much too big to go into pots. What you do with a balloon is, you hold the balloon —"[1]

"Not mine," said Eeyore proudly. "Look, Piglet!" And as Piglet looked sadly round, Eeyore picked the balloon up with his teeth, and placed it carefully in the pot; picked it out and put it on the ground; and then picked it up again and put it carefully back.

"So it does!" said Pooh. "It goes in!"

"So it does!" said Piglet. "And it comes out!"

"Doesn't it?" said Eeyore. "It goes in and out."

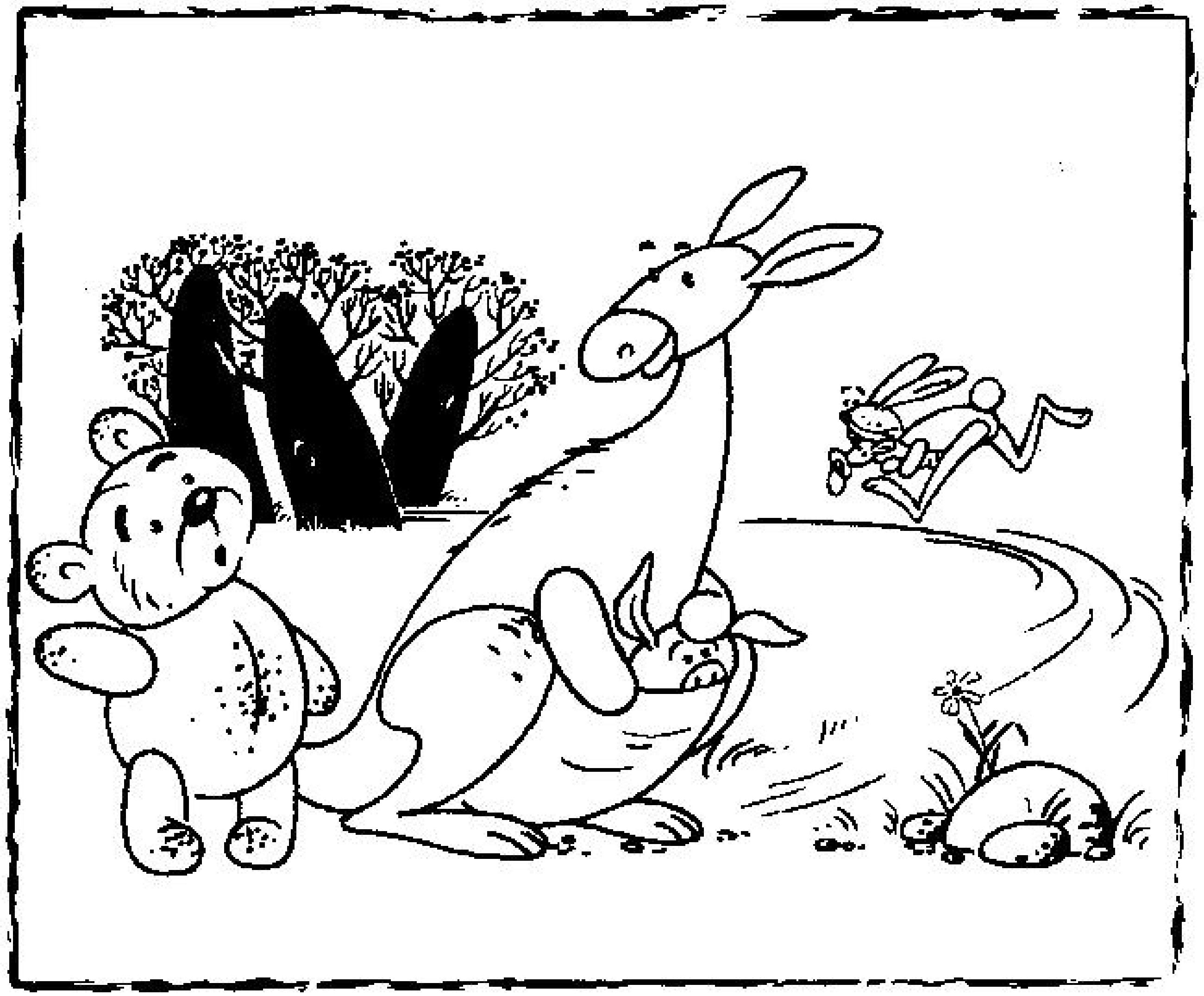
[1] **What you do with a balloon is, you hold the balloon** — Вот что надо делать с шариком, его следует держать

"I'm very glad," said Pooh happily, "that I thought of giving you a useful pot[1] to put things in."

"I'm very glad," said Piglet happily, "that I thought of giving you something to put in a useful pot."

But Eeyore wasn't listening. He was taking the balloon out, and putting it back again, as happy as a donkey could be...

[1] **that I thought of giving you a useful pot** — что я придумал подарить тебе полезный горшочек



Chapter Seven

In which Kanga and Baby Roo[1] come to the forest, and Piglet has a bath

Nobody knew where they came from, but there they were in the forest: Kanga and Baby Roo. When Pooh asked Christopher Robin, "How did they come here?" Christopher Robin said, "In the usual way, Pooh," and

[1] **Kanga** ['kæŋgə] **and Baby Roo** ['ru:] — Кенга и Крошка Ру (Если к слову Kanga прибавить слово Roo, то получится **Kangaroo** [ˌkæŋgə'ru:] — кенгуру.)

Pooh said "Oh!" Then he nodded his head twice and said, "In the usual way. Ah!" Then he went to call upon his friend Piglet to see what *he* thought about it. And at Piglet's house he found Rabbit. So they all talked about it together.

"What I don't like about it is this," said Rabbit. "Here we are — you, Pooh, and you, Piglet, and me — and suddenly —"

"And Eeyore," said Pooh.

"And Eeyore — and then suddenly —"

"And Owl," said Pooh.

"And Owl — and then suddenly —"

"Oh, and Eeyore," said Pooh. "I was forgetting *him.*"

"Here — we — are," said Rabbit very slowly and carefully, "all — of — us, and then, suddenly, we wake up one morning and, what do we find? We find a strange animal among us. An animal about whom we know nothing. An animal who carries her family about with her in her pocket. Suppose I carry my family about with me in *my* pocket, how many pockets do I need?"

"Sixteen," said Piglet.

"Seventeen, isn't it?" said Rabbit. "And one more for a handkerchief — that's eighteen. Eighteen pockets in one suit."

There was a long and thoughtful silence... and then Pooh, who was thinking very hard for some minutes, said: "I make it fifteen."[1]

"What?" said Rabbit.

"Fifteen."

"Fifteen what?"

[1] **I make it fifteen.** — У меня получается пятнадцать.

"Your family."

"What about them?"

Pooh rubbed his nose and said that he thought Rabbit was talking about his family.

"Was I?" said Rabbit carelessly.

"The question is, What shall we do about Kanga?" said Piglet.

"Oh, I see," said Pooh.

"The best way," said Rabbit, "is this.[1] The best way will be to steal Baby Roo and hide him, and then when Kanga says, 'Where's Baby Roo?' we say, '*Aha!*'"[2]

"*Aha!*" said Pooh, "*Aha! Aha!*... Of course," he went on, "we can say 'Aha!' even if we haven't stolen Baby Roo."

"Pooh," said Rabbit kindly, "you haven't any brain."

"I know," said Pooh sadly.

"We say '*Aha!*' so that Kanga knows that *we* know where Baby Roo is. '*Aha!*' means 'We'll tell you where Baby Roo is, if you promise to go away from the forest and never come back.' Now don't talk while I think."

Pooh went into a corner and tried saying 'Aha!' He tried to say it in that sort of voice.[3] "I suppose it's just practice," he thought.

"There's just one thing," said Piglet, "I was talking to Christopher Robin, and he said, 'A Kanga is one of the fiercer animals.'[4] I am not frightened of fierce animals. But if one of the fiercer animals loses its family, it becomes

---

[1] **The best way... is this.** — Лучший способ... следующий.

[2] **Aha!** [ɑːˈhɑː] — Ага!

[3] **in that sort of voice** — нужным (подходящим) голосом

[4] **one of the fiercer animals** — один из самых свирепых зверей

as fierce as two of the fiercer animals. In which case 'Aha!' is perhaps a *foolish* thing to say."

"Piglet," said Rabbit, taking out a pencil, and licking the end of it, "you are not very brave."

"It is hard to be brave," said Piglet, "when you're only a very small animal."

Rabbit, who began to write very busily, looked up and said:

"It is because you are a very small animal that you will be useful in the adventure before us."[1]

Piglet, who wanted to be useful, wasn't frightened any more, when Rabbit said, "Kangas are only fierce during the winter months. At other times they are nice, kind and quiet animals." When Piglet heard this he could hardly sit still, so much he wanted to be useful at once.

"What about me?" said Pooh sadly. "*I* suppose I shan't be useful?"

"Never mind, Pooh," said Piglet. "Another time perhaps."

"Without Pooh," said Rabbit solemnly as he sharpened his pencil, "the adventure will be impossible."

"Oh!" said Piglet, and tried not to look disappointed.[2] But Pooh went into a corner of the room and said proudly to himself, "Impossible without me! *That* sort of bear."

"Now listen all of you," said Rabbit when he had finished writing, and Pooh and Piglet sat listening with their mouths open. This was what Rabbit read:

---

[1] **you will be useful in the adventure before us** — ты будешь полезен в наших похождениях

[2] **and tried not to look disappointed** — и постарался не выглядеть разочарованным

PLAN TO CAPTURE BABY ROO

1. *General remarks.*[1] Kanga runs faster than any of us, even me.
2. Kanga never takes her eyes off Baby Roo, except when he's sitting in her pocket.
3. If we want to capture Baby Roo, we must get a long start,[2] because Kanga runs faster than any of us, even me.
4. *A thought.* If Roo jumps out of Kanga's pocket and Piglet jumps in, Kanga won't know the difference, because Piglet is a very small animal.
5. Like Roo.
6. But Kanga must look the other way[3] first, so as not to see Piglet jumping in.
7. *Another thought.* But if Pooh is talking to her very excitedly, she *may* look the other way for a moment.
8. And then I can run away with Roo.
9. Quickly.
10. *And Kanga will discover the difference only afterwards.*[4]

Well, Rabbit read this proudly. For a little while after he had read it nobody said anything. And then Piglet, who was opening and shutting his mouth without making any sound,[5] said:

[1] **General remarks.** — Общие замечания.

[2] **we must get a long start** — мы должны выиграть время

[3] **the other way** — в другую сторону

[4] **And Kanga will discover the difference only afterwards.** — И Кенга заметит разницу только потом.

[5] **without making any sound** — не произнося ни звука

"And — afterwards?"

"How do you mean?"

"When Kanga discovers the difference?"

"Then we all say 'Aha!'"

"All three of us?"

"Yes."

"Oh!"

"Why, what's the matter, Piglet?"

"Nothing," said Piglet, "as long *we all three* say it. I don't mind if we all three say it but I am afraid to say 'Aha!' by myself. By the way,"[1] he said, "*are* you quite sure about what you said about the winter months?"

"The winter months?"

"Yes, that Kangas are fierce only in the winter months."

"Oh, yes, yes, that's all right. Well, Pooh? You see what you have to do?"

"No," said Pooh Bear. "Not yet," he said, "What *do* I do?"

"Well, you just have to talk very hard to Kanga, then she won't notice anything."

"Oh! What about?"

"Anything you like."

"You mean like telling her a little bit of poetry or something?"[2]

"That's it," said Rabbit. "Very good. Now come along."[3]

So they all went out to look for Kanga.

[1] **By the way** — Между прочим

[2] **You mean like telling her a little bit of poetry or something?** — Ты имеешь в виду чтение ей какого-нибудь стишка или что-то в этом роде?

[3] **Now come along.** — Давайте начинать.

Kanga and Roo were spending a quiet afternoon in a sandy part of the forest. Baby Roo was practising very small jumps in the sand. He was falling down mouse-holes and climbing out of them, and Kanga was saying, "Just one more jump, dear, and then we must go home." And at that moment Pooh came up to the hill.

"Good afternoon, Kanga."

"Good afternoon, Pooh."

"Look at me jumping," squeaked Roo, and fell into another mouse-hole.

"Hallo, Roo, my little fellow!"

"We were just going home,"[1] said Kanga. "Good afternoon, Rabbit. Good afternoon, Piglet."

Rabbit and Piglet, who now came up from the other side of the hill, said "Good afternoon", and "Hallo, Roo", and Roo asked them to look at him jumping,[2] so they stayed and looked.

And Kanga looked too...

"Oh, Kanga," said Pooh, after Rabbit had winked at him twice,[3] "Do you like poetry?"

"Not very much," said Kanga.

"Oh!" said Pooh.

"Roo, dear, just one more jump and then we must go home."

There was a short silence while Roo fell down another mouse-hole.

---

[1] **We were just going home** — Мы как раз собирались идти домой

[2] **Roo asked them to look at him jumping** — Крошка Ру попросил их посмотреть, как он прыгает

[3] **after Rabbit had winked at him twice** — после того, как Кролик дважды подмигнул ему

"Go on," said Rabbit in a loud whisper behind his paw.

"I like poetry," said Pooh, "I made up a little poem as I was coming along. It went like this. Er — now let me see —"[1]

"Fancy!"[2] said Kanga. "Now, Roo, dear —"

"You'll like this poem," said Rabbit.

"You'll love it," said Piglet.

"You must listen very carefully," said Rabbit.

"Oh, yes," said Kanga, but she still looked at Baby Roo.

"*How* does it go, Pooh?" said Rabbit.

Pooh gave a little cough[3] and began.

LINES WRITTEN[4] BY A BEAR OF VERY LITTLE BRAIN

On Monday, when the sun is hot
I wonder to myself a lot:[5]
"Now is it true, or is it not,
"That what is which and which is what?"

On Tuesday, when it hails[6] and snows,
The feeling on me grows and grows
That hardly anybody knows
If those are these or these are those.

---

[1] **let me see** — дайте мне подумать

[2] **Fancy!** — *зд.* Подумать только!

[3] **Pooh gave a little cough** [kɒf] — Пух слегка откашлялся

[4] **Lines written** — Строки, написанные (*традиционный поэтический заголовок в английской поэзии*)

[5] **I wonder to myself a lot** — Мне очень интересно

[6] **when it hails** — когда идет град

On Wednesday, when the sky is blue,
And I have nothing else to do,
I sometimes wonder if it's true
That who is what and what is who.[1]

On Thursday —

"Yes, it is, isn't it?" said Kanga, not waiting to hear what happened on Thursday. "Just one more jump, Roo, dear, and then we really *must* go."

"By the way," said Pooh quickly, "have you ever noticed that tree right over there?"

"Where?" said Kanga, "Now, Roo —"

"Right over there," said Pooh, pointing behind Kanga's back.

"No," said Kanga. "Now jump in, Roo, dear, and we'll go home."

"You should look at that tree right over there," said Rabbit. "Shall I lift you in, Roo?" And he picked up Roo in his paws.

"I can see a bird in it from here," said Pooh. "Or is it a fish?"

"You should see that bird from here," said Rabbit. "Unless it's a fish."[2]

"It isn't a fish, it's a bird," said Piglet.

"So it is," said Rabbit.

"Is it a starling or a blackbird?" said Pooh.

"That's the question," said Rabbit. "Is it a blackbird or a starling?"

---

[1] Забавные окончания четверостиший придуманных Винни-Пухом стихов не имеют смысла.

[2] **Unless it's a fish.** — Если это не рыба.

And then at last Kanga turned her head to look. And at that moment Rabbit said in a loud voice, "In you go, Roo!"[1] and in jumped Piglet into Kanga's pocket, and off trotted Rabbit, with Roo in his paws, as fast as he could.

"Why, where's Rabbit?" said Kanga, as she turned round again. "Are you all right, Roo, dear?"

Piglet made a squeaky Roo-noise[2] from the bottom of Kanga's pocket.

"Rabbit had to go away," said Pooh. "I think he thought of something he had to do suddenly."

"And Piglet?"

"I think Piglet thought of something at the same time. Suddenly."

"Well, we must go home now," said Kanga. "Good-bye, Pooh." And in three large jumps she was gone.[3]

Pooh looked after her as she went.

"I wish I could jump like that,"[4] he thought. "Some can and some can't. That's how it is."

But Piglet didn't like it. Often, when he had had a long walk home through the forest, he wanted to be a bird. But now he thought to himself at the bottom of Kanga's pocket, "If this is flying,[5] I shall never really like it."

---

[1] **In you go, Roo!** — Залезай, Ру!

[2] **Piglet made a squeaky** ['skwi:kı] **Roo-noise** — Пятачок издал писк, как это делал Ру

[3] **And in three large jumps she was gone.** — И сделав три больших прыжка, она исчезла из виду.

[4] **I wish I could jump like that** — Жаль, что я не умею так прыгать

[5] **If this is flying** — Если это полет

And as he went up in the air he said, "*Ooooooo!*" and as he came down he said, "*Ow!*" And he was saying, "*Ooooooo-ow, Ooooooo-ow, Ooooooo-ow*" all the way to Kanga's house.

Of course when Kanga looked in her pocket she knew what had happened. She was not frightened. "Christopher Robin will never let any harm happen to Roo,"[1] she said to herself. "If they are having a joke with me, I shall have a joke with them."

"Now then, Roo, dear," she said, as she took Piglet out of her pocket. "Bed-time."

"*Aha!*" said Piglet, as well as he could after his terrifying journey.[2] But it wasn't a very good "*Aha!*" and Kanga didn't understand what it meant.

"Bath first," said Kanga in a cheerful voice.

"*Aha!*" said Piglet again, looking round anxiously for the others. But the others weren't there. Rabbit was playing with Baby Roo in his own house, and feeling more fond of him every minute, and Pooh, who had decided to be a Kanga, was still at the sandy place on the top of the forest, practising jumps.[3]

"I wonder," said Kanga in a thoughtful voice, "it will be a good idea to have a *cold* bath this evening. Would you like that, Roo, dear?"

Piglet, who was not fond of baths, tried to speak bravely.

"Kanga," he said, "I see that the time has come to tell you the truth."

---

[1] **Christopher Robin will never let any harm happen to Roo** — *зд.* Кристофер Робин никогда не позволит обидеть Ру

[2] **terrifying journey** — ужасное путешествие

[3] **practising jumps** — тренируясь в прыжках

"Funny little Roo," said Kanga, as she got the bath-water ready.[1]

"I am *not* Roo," said Piglet loudly. "I am Piglet!"

"Yes, dear, yes," said Kanga. "And you can imitate Piglet's voice too! So clever of you," she went on, as she took a large bar of yellow soap[2] out of the cupboard. "My clever little Roo!"

"Can't you *see*?" shouted Piglet. "Haven't you got *eyes*? *Look* at me!"

"I *am* looking, Roo, dear," said Kanga. "And you know what I told you yesterday when you made a face. If you make faces like Piglet's, you will grow up to *look* like Piglet — and *then* think how sorry you will be. Now then, into the bath,[3] and I hope I shan't have to speak to you about it again."

Before he knew where he was, Piglet was in the bath, and Kanga was washing him firmly with a large soapy flannel.[4]

"*Ow!*" cried Piglet. "Let me out! I'm Piglet!"

"Don't open your mouth, dear, or the soap will go in," said Kanga. "There! What did I tell you?" and the soapy flannel was in his mouth.

"You — you — you did it on purpose,"[5] squeaked Piglet, as soon as he could speak again... and then again he got a mouthful of soap.[6]

---

[1] **as she got the bath-water ready** — в то время как она приготавливала воду для ванны

[2] **a large bar of yellow soap** [səʊp] — большой кусок желтого мыла

[3] **Now then, into the bath** — А теперь, марш в ванну

[4] **a large soapy flannel** ['flænəl] — мыльная мочалка

[5] **you did it on purpose** — ты это нарочно сделала

[6] **a mouthful of soap** — полный рот мыла

"That's right, dear, don't say anything," said Kanga, and in another minute Piglet was out of the bath, and Kanga was rubbing him dry with a towel.[1]

"Now," said Kanga, "your medicine, and then bed."

"W-w-what medicine?" said Piglet.

"To make you grow big and strong, dear. You don't want to grow up small and weak like Piglet, do you? Well, then!"[2]

At that moment there was a knock at the door.

"Come in," said Kanga, and in came Christopher Robin.

"Christopher Robin, Christopher Robin!" cried Piglet. "Tell Kanga who I am. She says I'm Roo. I'm *not* Roo, am I?"

Christopher Robin looked at him very carefully, and shook his head.

"You can't be Roo," he said, "because I've just seen Roo playing in Rabbit's house."

"Well!" said Kanga, "Fancy that! Fancy my making a mistake like that."[3]

"There you are!"[4] said Piglet. "I told you so. I'm Piglet."

Christopher Robin shook his head again.

"Oh, you're not Piglet," he said. "I know Piglet well, and he's *quite* a different colour."

Piglet began to say that this was because he had just had a bath, and as he opened his mouth to say something

---

[1] **Kanga was rubbing him dry with a towel** — Кенга вытирала его насухо полотенцем

[2] **Well, then!** — *зд.* Ну, давай!

[3] **Fancy my making a mistake like that.** — Подумать только, что за ошибку я допустила.

[4] **There you are!** — Вот видите!

else, Kanga slipped the medicine spoon in, and said, "It is really tasty when you get used to it."[1]

"I knew this wasn't Piglet," said Kanga. "I wonder who it can be."

"Perhaps it's some relation of Pooh's," said Christopher Robin. "What about a nephew or an uncle or something?"[2]

Kanga agreed, and said, "We must call it by some name."

"I shall call it Pootel," said Christopher Robin. "Henry Pootel for short."

And just when he heard his new name, Henry Pootel jumped out of Kanga's arms on to the ground. To his great joy Christopher Robin had left the door open. Never had Henry Pootel Piglet run so fast as he ran then, and he didn't stop running until he had got quite close to his house. But when he was a hundred yards away he stopped running, and rolled the rest of the way home,[3] so as to get his own nice colour again...

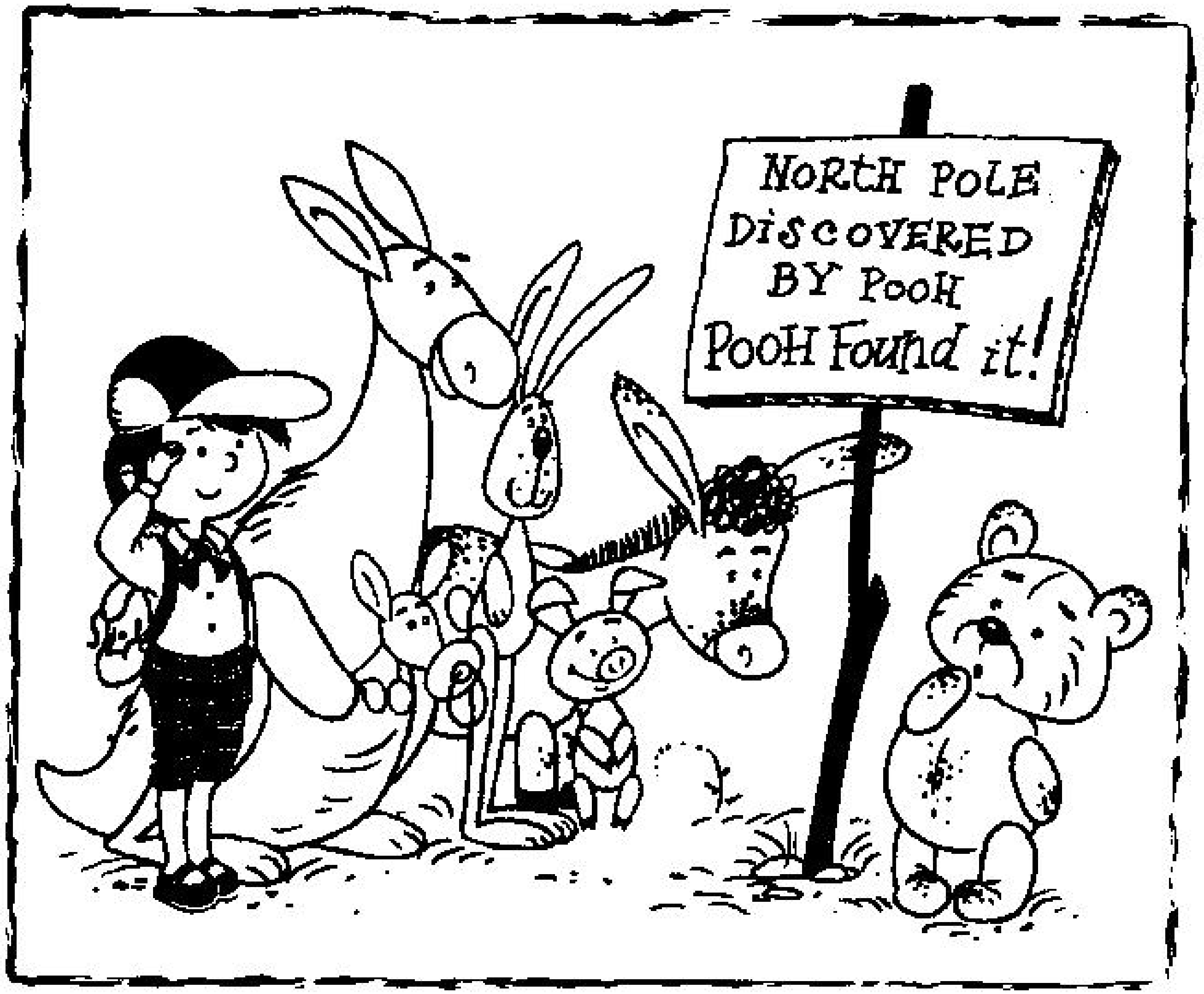
So Kanga and Roo stayed in the forest. And every Tuesday Roo spent the day with his great friend Rabbit, and every Tuesday Kanga spent the day with her great friend Pooh, teaching him to jump, and every Tuesday Piglet spent the day with his great friend Christopher Robin. So they were all happy again.

---

[1] **It is really tasty when you get used to it.** — Оно очень вкусное, когда ты к нему привыкаешь.

[2] **What about a nephew** ['nefju:] **or an uncle or something?** — Может быть, это племянник, или дядя, или еще что-нибудь в этом роде?

[3] **he stopped running, and rolled the rest of the way home** — он перестал бежать и покатился кубарем до самого дома



Chapter Eight

In which Christopher Robin leads an expotition[1] to the North Pole

One fine day Pooh stumped up to the forest to see his friend Christopher Robin. At breakfast that morning (a simple meal of marmalade and honey) he suddenly thought of a new song. It began like this:

[1] **expotition** — *подразумевается* **expedition** [,ekspɪ'dɪʃn] — экспедиция (*Пух не может произносить трудные слова. См. текст дальше.*)

"*Sing Ho! for the life of a Bear!*"[1]

When he had got as far as this, he scratched his head, and thought to himself, "That's a very good start for a song, but what about the second line?" He tried singing "Ho", two or three times, but it didn't help. "Perhaps it'll be better," he thought, "if I sing Hi for the life of a Bear." So he sang it... but it didn't help again. "Very well, then," he said, "I shall sing that first line twice, and perhaps if I sing it very quickly, I shall sing the third and fourth lines before I have time to think of them,[2] and that will be a good song. Now then:"

Sing Ho! for the life of a Bear!
Sing Ho! for the life of a Bear!
I don't much mind if it rains or snows,[3]
'Cos I've got a lot of honey on my nice new nose!
I don't much mind if it snows or thaws,
'Cos I've got a lot of honey on my nice clean paws!
Sing Ho! for a Bear!
Sing Ho! for a Pooh!
And I'll have a little something in an hour or two.[4]

[1] **Sing Ho! for the life of a Bear!** — *зд.* Какая у медведей замечательная жизнь!

[2] **before I have time to think of them** — прежде чем я их придумаю

[3] **I don't much mind if it rains or snows** — *зд.* Мне не мешает ни дождь, ни снег

[4] Хорошо быть медведем, ура!
Хорошо быть медведем, ура!
Побежу...
(Нет, победю!) (*см. продолжение перевода на с. 72*)

He was so pleased with this song that he sang it all the way.

Christopher Robin was sitting outside his door, putting on his big boots. As soon as he saw the big boots, Pooh knew that an adventure was going to happen. He brushed the honey off his nose with the back of his paw, so as to look ready for anything.

"Good morning, Christopher Robin."

"Hallo, Pooh Bear. I can't get this boot on."[1]

"That's bad," said Pooh.

"Could you kindly sit with your back against me, because I am pulling so hard that I fall over backwards."[2]

Pooh sat down, dug his feet into the ground, and pushed hard against Christopher Robin's back, and Christopher Robin pushed hard against Pooh's, and pulled and pulled at his boot until he had got it on.

"What do we do next?" said Pooh.

"We are all going on an expedition," said Christopher

Победю я и жару, и мороз,
Лишь бы медом был вымазан нос!
Победю...
(Нет, побежду!)
Побежду я любую беду,
Лишь бы были все лапки в меду!..
Ура, Винни-Пух!
Ура, Винни-Пух!
Час-другой пролетит словно птица,
И настанет пора подкрепиться!

[1] **I can't get this boot on.** — Никак не могу натянуть этот сапог.

[2] **that I fall over backwards** — что я падаю назад

Robin, as he got up and brushed himself. "Thank you, Pooh."

"Going on an expotition?" said Pooh. "Oh! I don't think I've ever been on one of those. Where are we going to on this expotition?"

"Expedition, silly old Bear. It's got an 'x' in it."

"Oh!" said Pooh. "I know." But he didn't really.

"We're going to discover the North Pole."

"Oh!" said Pooh again. "What is the North Pole?" he asked.

"It's just a thing you discover,"[1] said Christopher Robin carelessly, not being quite sure himself.[2]

"Oh! I see," said Pooh. "Are bears any good at discovering it?"[3]

"Of course they are. And Rabbit and Kanga and all of you. It's an expedition. That's what an expedition means. A long line of everybody. Suppose you tell the others to get ready,[4] and I shall take my gun. And we must all bring provisions."[5]

"Bring what?"

"Things to eat."

"Oh!" said Pooh happily. "I'll go and tell them." And he stumped off.

The first person he met was Rabbit.

[1] **It's just a thing you discover** — Это такая штука, которую открывают

[2] **not being quite sure himself** — не будучи сам уверен в этом

[3] **Are bears any good at discovering it?** — А медведи годятся на такое дело, как его (Северного полюса) открытие?

[4] **Suppose you tell the others to get ready** — А не пойти ли тебе и сказать всем остальным, чтобы они были готовы

[5] **provisions** [prəˈvɪʒnz] — провизия, продукты

"Hallo, Rabbit," he said, "is that you?"

"Let's pretend it isn't,"[1] said Rabbit, "and see what happens."

"I've got a message for you,"[2] said Pooh. "We're all going on an expotition with Christopher Robin!"

"What is it when you are on it?" asked Rabbit.

"A sort of boat, I think," said Pooh.

"Oh! That sort."[3]

"Yes. And we're going to discover a Pole or something. Or is it a mole? Anyhow we're going to discover it."

"Are we?" said Rabbit.

"Yes. And we've got to bring pro-things[4] to eat with us. In case we want to eat them. Now I'm going down to Piglet's. Tell Kanga, will you?"

He left Rabbit and hurried down to Piglet's house. Piglet was sitting on the ground at the door of his house blowing happily at a dandelion. He was wondering whether it would be this year, next year, sometime or never.[5] He had just discovered that it would be never, when Pooh came up.

"Oh! Piglet," said Pooh excitedly, "we're going on an expotition, all of us, with things to eat. To discover something."

"To discover what?" said Piglet anxiously.

"Oh! just something."

[1] **Let's pretend it isn't** — Давай притворимся, что я это не я

[2] **I've got a message for you** — У меня для тебя сообщение

[3] **Oh! That sort.** — О! Вот это что такое.

[4] **pro-things = provisions** — провизия, продукты

[5] **whether it would be this year, next year, sometime or never** — исполнится ли это в этом году, будущем, когда-нибудь или никогда

"Nothing fierce?"

"Christopher Robin didn't say anything about fierce. He just said it had an 'x'."[1]

"It isn't their necks I mind," said Piglet. "It's their teeth. But if Christopher Robin is coming I don't mind anything."

In a little while they were ready, and the expotition started. First came Christopher Robin and Rabbit, then Piglet and Pooh; then Kanga, with Roo in her pocket, and Owl; then Eeyore; and, at the end, in a long line, all Rabbit's friends-and-relations.[2]

"I didn't ask them," explained Rabbit carelessly. "They just came. They always do."

"What I say," said Eeyore, "is that I'm afraid that I may hurt one of them. If I want to sit down for a little rest, I mean. If I have to brush away a lot of Rabbit's smaller friends-and-relations first, then it isn't an expotition, it's only an unpleasant noise. That's what *I* say."

"I see what Eeyore means," said Owl. "If you ask me —"

"I'm not asking anybody," said Eeyore. "I'm just telling everybody."

There was a shout from the top of the line.

"Come on!"[3] called Christopher Robin.

"Come on!" called Pooh and Piglet.

"Come on!" called Owl.

"We're starting," said Rabbit. "I must go." And he

[1] **an 'x'** — *в речи звучит как* **(a) necks** — шеи (*так понимает Пятачок*)

[2] **all Rabbit's friends-and-relations** — все друзья и родственники Кролика

[3] **Come on!** — Вперед!

hurried off to the front of the expotition with Christopher Robin.

"All right," said Eeyore. "We are going."

So off they all went to discover the Pole. And as they walked, they talked to each other of this and that, all except Pooh, who was making up a song.

"This is the first verse," he said to Piglet, when he was ready with it.

"First verse of what?"

"My song."

"What song?"

"This one."

"Which one?"

"Well, if you listen, Piglet, you'll hear it."

"How do you know I'm not listening?"

Pooh couldn't answer that one, so he began to sing.

They all went off to discover the Pole,
Owl and Piglet and Rabbit and all;
It's a thing you discover, as I've been told[1]
By Owl and Piglet and Rabbit and all.
Eeyore, Christopher Robin and Pooh
And Rabbit's relations all went too —
And where the Pole was none of them knew...[2]
Sing Hey! for Owl and Rabbit and all![3]

---

[1] **It's a thing you discover, as I've been told** — Это то, что открывают, так мне сказали

[2] **none** [nʌn] **of them knew** — никто из них не знал

[3] Все вышли в ИКСПЕДИЦИЮ
(Считая и меня).
Сова, и Ру, и Кролик,
И вся его родня!

"Hush!"[1] said Christopher Robin turning round to Pooh. "We're just coming to a dangerous place."

"Hush!" said Pooh turning round quickly to Piglet.

"Hush!" said Piglet to Kanga.

"Hush!" said Kanga to Owl, while Roo said "Hush!" several times to himself very quietly.

"Hush!" said Owl to Eeyore.

"***Hush***!" said Eeyore in a terrible voice to all Rabbit's friends-and-relations, and "***Hush!***" they said to each other all down the line, until it got to the last one of all.

They had come to a stream which ran between high rocky banks, and Christopher Robin saw at once how dangerous it was.

"It's just the place," he explained, "for an ambush."[2]

"What sort of bush?" whispered Pooh to Piglet. "A gorse-bush?"

"My dear Pooh," said Owl in his superior way, "don't you know what an ambush is? An ambush is a sort of surprise."[3]

Вся наша Икспедиция
Весь день бродила по лесу,
Искала Икспедиция
Везде дорогу к Полюсу.
И каждый в Икспедиции
Ужасно был бы рад
Узнать, что значит Полюс
И с чем его *едят!*

[1] **Hush!** — Тише!

[2] **It's just the place... for an ambush** ['æmbuʃ]. — Это подходящее место... для засады.

[3] **An ambush is a sort of surprise** [sə'praɪz]. — Засада — это что-то вроде сюрприза.

"An ambush, as I was going to explain to Pooh," said Piglet, "is a sort of surprise."

"If people jump out at you suddenly, that's an ambush," said Owl.

They were climbing very slowly and carefully up the stream now, going from rock to rock, and after a little while they came to a place where the banks were green with grass on which they could sit down and rest. As soon as he saw this, Christopher Robin called "Halt!"[1] and they all sat down and rested.

"I think," said Christopher Robin, "that we must eat all our provisions now, so that we shan't have so much to carry."

"Eat all our what?" said Pooh.

"All that we've brought," said Piglet, getting to work.[2]

"That's a good idea," said Pooh, and he got to work too.

"Have you all got something?"[3] asked Christopher Robin with his mouth full.

"All except me," said Eeyore. "As usual." He looked round at them in his gloomy way. "None of you are sitting on a thistle by any chance, are you?"[4]

"Perhaps I am," said Pooh. "Ow!" He got up, and looked behind him. "Yes, I was. I thought so." And he brushed off the prickles.

---

[1] **Halt!** [hɒlt] — Стоп!

[2] **getting to work** — принимаясь за дело

[3] **Have you all got something?** — Все захватили с собой что-нибудь?

[4] **None of you are sitting on a thistle by any chance, are you?** — Интересно, никто из вас случайно не сидит на чертополохе?

"Thank you, Pooh," said Eeyore. He moved across to Pooh's place, and began to eat the thistle.

As soon as he had finished his lunch Christopher Robin whispered to Rabbit, and Rabbit said, "Yes, yes, of course," and they walked a little way up the stream together.

"I don't want the others to hear,"[1] said Christopher Robin.

"Quite so," said Rabbit, looking important.[2]

"What does the North Pole *look* like? Do you know, Rabbit?"

"Well," said Rabbit, "now you're asking me."

"I knew once," said Christopher Robin carelessly. "But I have forgotten."

"It's a funny thing," said Rabbit, "but I've forgotten too, but I knew *once*."

"I suppose it's just a pole stuck in the ground?"[3]

"Sure to be a pole,"[4] said Rabbit, "because people call it a pole. If it's a pole, it must be a pole stuck in the ground, because there is no other place to stick it."

"Yes, that's what I thought."

"The only thing," said Rabbit, "is, *where* is it stuck in the ground?"

"That's what we're looking for," said Christopher Robin.

---

[1] **I don't want the others to hear** — Я не хочу, чтобы остальные слышали это

[2] **looking important** — с важным видом

[3] **I suppose it's just a pole stuck in the ground?** — Наверное, это шест, воткнутый в землю. (*Слово pole имеет два значения — «полюс» и «шест».*)

[4] **Sure to be a pole** — Наверняка это шест

They went back to the others. Piglet was lying on his back, sleeping peacefully. Roo was washing his face and paws in the stream, while Kanga explained to everybody proudly that this was the first time he had ever washed his face himself, and Owl was telling Kanga an interesting anecdote full of long words to which Kanga wasn't listening.

Suddenly there came a sudden squeak from Roo, a splash, and a loud cry from Kanga.

"Roo's fallen in!" cried Rabbit, and he and Christopher Robin came rushing down to the rescue.[1]

"Look at me swimming!"[2] squeaked Roo from the middle of his pool.

"Are you all right, Roo, dear?" called Kanga anxiously.

"Yes!" said Roo. "Look at me sw —" and down he went over a waterfall into another pool.[3]

Everybody was doing something to help. Piglet was jumping up and down and saying "Oo, I say!" Owl was explaining that in this case the important thing was to keep the head above the water; Kanga was jumping along the bank, saying "Are you *sure* you're all right, Roo, dear?" to which Roo, from the pool he was in at the moment, was answering, "Look at me swimming." Eeyore had turned round and hung his tail over the first pool into which Roo fell. He was saying, "Catch on to my tail,[4]

---

[1] **came rushing down to the rescue** ['reskju:] — бросились вниз по речке на помощь

[2] **Look at me swimming!** — Посмотрите, как я плаваю!

[3] **and down he went over a waterfall into another pool** — и его понесло через запруду к следующей заводи

[4] **Catch on to my tail** — Цепляйся за мой хвост

little Roo, and you'll be all right." Christopher Robin and Rabbit came hurrying past Eeyore.

"All right, Roo, I'm coming," called Christopher Robin.

"Get something and put it across the stream," shouted Rabbit.

But Pooh was getting something. Two pools below Roo he was standing with a long pole in his paws, and Kanga came up and took one end of it, and they held it across the lower part of the pool. Roo, still shouting proudly, "Look at me swimming", drifted up against it,[1] and climbed out.

"Did you see me swimming?"[2] squeaked Roo proudly, while Kanga scolded him and rubbed him down. "Pooh, did you see me swimming? That's called swimming,[3] what I was doing. Rabbit, did you see what I was doing? Swimming. Hallo, Piglet! I say, Piglet! What do you think I was doing? Swimming! Christopher Robin, did you see me —"

But Christopher Robin wasn't listening. He was looking at Pooh.

"Pooh," he said, "where did you find that pole?"

Pooh looked at the pole in his hands.

"I just found it," he said. "I thought it would be useful."[4]

"Pooh," said Christopher Robin solemnly, "the expedition is over. You have found the North Pole!"

---

[1] **drifted up against it** — пришвартовался около него (шеста)

[2] **Did you see me swimming?** — Вы видели, как я плавал?

[3] **That's called swimming** — Это называется плавание

[4] **I thought it would be useful.** — Я подумал, что он будет полезен (пригодится).

"Oh!" said Pooh.

Eeyore was sitting with his tail in the water when they all got back to him.

"Tell Roo to be quick, somebody," he said. "My tail's getting cold."[1]

"Here I am!" squeaked Roo.

"Oh, there you are."

"Did you see me swimming?"

Eeyore took his tail out of the water, and waved it from side to side.

"As I thought," he said. "Lost all feeling."[2]

"Poor old Eeyore! I'll dry it for you," said Christopher Robin, and he took out his handkerchief and rubbed it up.

"Thank you, Christopher Robin. You're the only one who understands about tails."[3]

"Never mind, Eeyore," said Christopher Robin, rubbing the tail. "Is *that* better?"

"It's feeling better. It belongs again."[4]

"Hullo, Eeyore," said Pooh, coming up to them with his pole.

"Hullo, Pooh. Thank you for asking, but I shall be able to use it again in a day or two."

"Use what?" said Pooh.

"What we are talking about."

"I wasn't talking about anything," said Pooh, looking surprised.

---

[1] **My tail's getting cold.** — У меня замерзает хвост.

[2] **Lost all feeling.** — Потерял всякую чувствительность.

[3] **You're the only one who understands about tails.** — Ты — единственный, кто понимает толк в хвостах.

[4] **It belongs again.** — Он вновь стал моим. (Я снова стал его чувствовать.)

"My mistake again. I thought you were saying how sorry you were about my tail, because you could not help?"

"No," said Pooh. "That wasn't me," he said. He thought for a little and then said helpfully, "Perhaps it was somebody else."

"Well, thank him for me when you see him."

Pooh looked anxiously at Christopher Robin.

"Pooh's found the North Pole," said Christopher Robin. "Isn't that wonderful?"

Pooh looked modestly down.

"Is that it?" said Eeyore.

"Yes," said Christopher Robin.

"Is that what we were looking for?"

"Yes," said Pooh.

They stuck the pole in the ground, and Christopher Robin tied a message on to it.

NORTH POLE DISCOVERED BY POOH[1]
POOH FOUND IT!

Then they all went home again. And I think, but I am not quite sure, that Roo had a hot bath and went straight to bed. But Pooh went back to his own house, and feeling very proud of what he had done, and so had a little something to celebrate his discovery.

---

[1] **NORTH POLE DISCOVERED BY POOH** — СЕВЕРНЫЙ ПОЛЮС, ОТКРЫТЫЙ ПУХОМ



Chapter Nine

In which Piglet is entirely surrounded by water[1]

It rained and it rained and it rained. Piglet told himself that he had never in all his life seen so much rain. Days and days and days of rain.

"If only," he thought, as he looked out of the window, "I had been in Pooh's house, or Christopher Robin's

[1] **In which Piglet is entirely surrounded by water** — В которой Пятачок совершенно окружен водой

house, or Rabbit's house when it began to rain then I should have had company all this time.[1] But now I am here all alone." And he imagined he was with Pooh, and was saying, "Did you ever see such rain, Pooh?" And Pooh said, "Isn't it *awful*, Piglet?" and Piglet said, "I wonder how it is over Christopher Robin's way,"[2] and Pooh said, "I think poor old Rabbit is about flooded out[3] by this time." It was a pity he couldn't talk to anyone.

For it was rather exciting. The little dry ditches in which Piglet had run so often had become streams, the little streams across which he had splashed were rivers, and the river, between whose steep banks they had played so happily, had flooded out of its own bed.[4] Piglet was frightened.

"It's unpleasant," he said to himself, "to be a very small animal fully surrounded by water. Christopher Robin and Pooh can escape by climbing trees,[5] and Kanga can escape by jumping, and Rabbit can escape by digging a hole, and Owl can escape by flying, and Eeyore can escape by — by making a loud noise, and here am I, surrounded by water and I can't do *anything*."

[1] **If only... I had been in Pooh's house... then I should have had company all this time.** — Если бы... я был у Пуха... тогда я имел бы общество (компанию) все это время.

[2] **I wonder how it is over Christopher Robin's way** — Интересно, как дела у Кристофера Робина

[3] **poor old Rabbit is about flooded out** — беднягу Кролика, наверное, смыло водой

[4] **the river... had flooded out of its own bed** — речка... вышла из берегов

[5] **Robin and Pooh can escape by climbing trees** — Робин и Пух могут спастись, взобравшись на дерево

It went on raining, and every day the water got a little higher, until now it was nearly up to Piglet's window... and still he hadn't done anything.

"There's Pooh,"[1] he thought to himself. "Pooh hasn't much brain, but he never comes to any harm.[2] He does silly things and they turn out right. There's Owl. Owl knows things.[3] He will know the right thing to do when surrounded by water. There's Rabbit. He hasn't learnt in books, but he can always think of a clever plan. There's Kanga. She will do a good thing. And there's Eeyore. But he's always so miserable. He won't mind the rain. But I wonder what Christopher Robin does when it rains and rains for days."

Then suddenly he remembered a story which Christopher Robin had told him about a man on a desert island who had written something in a bottle and thrown it into the sea. So Piglet said to himself, "I'll write something in a bottle and throw it in the water. Then perhaps somebody will come and rescue *me*."

He left the window and began to look for a pencil. At last he found a pencil and a small piece of dry paper, and a bottle. And he wrote on one side of the paper:

HELP! PIGLET (ME)[4]

and on the other side:

IT'S ME PIGLET, HELP HELP!

---

[1] **There's Pooh** — *зд.* Вот Пух, например

[2] **he never comes to any harm** — он никогда не пострадает

[3] **Owl knows things.** — Сова понимает толк в делах.

[4] **HELP! PIGLET (ME)** — ПОМОГИТЕ! ПЯТАЧОК (ЭТО Я)

Then he put the paper in the bottle, and he corked the bottle,[1] and he threw the bottle out of the window as far as he could throw — *splash*! He watched it floating slowly away in the distance, until his eyes ached.

"So now," he thought, "somebody else will have to do something, and I hope they will do it soon, because if they don't I shall have to swim, which I can't, so I hope they do it soon." And then he gave a very long sigh and said, "I wish Pooh was here.[2] It's so much more friendly with two."[3]

* * *

When the rain began, Pooh was asleep. It rained, and it rained, and it rained, and he slept and he slept and he slept. He had had a tiring day.[4] You remember how he discovered the North Pole. He was so proud of this that he asked Christopher Robin one day, "Are there any other Poles that a bear of little brain can discover?"

"There's a South Pole," said Christopher Robin, "and I think there's an East Pole and a West Pole, but people don't talk about them."

Pooh was very glad when he heard this, and said, "Let us have an expotition to discover the East Pole." But Christopher Robin wanted to do something else with Kanga; so Pooh went out to discover the East Pole by himself. Whether he discovered it or not, nobody knows,

---

[1] **corked the bottle** — закрыл бутылку пробкой

[2] **I wish Pooh was here.** — Жаль, что здесь нет Пуха.

[3] **It's so much more friendly with two.** — Вдвоем гораздо веселее.

[4] **He had had a tiring day.** — У него был утомительный день.

but he was so tired when he got home, that he fell asleep in his chair, and slept and slept and slept.

Then suddenly he was dreaming.[1] He was at the East Pole, and it was a very cold pole with the coldest sort of snow and ice all over it. He had found a hole in a tree to sleep in, but there wasn't room for his legs;[2] so he had left them outside. And his legs got cold. Suddenly he woke up with an *Ow!* — and there he was, sitting in his chair with his feet in the water, and water all round him!

He splashed to his door and looked out...

"This is serious," said Pooh. "I must have an escape."[3]

So he took his largest pot of honey and escaped with it to a big branch of his tree, and then he climbed down again and escaped with another pot... and when the whole escape was over,[4] Pooh was sitting on his branch, dangling his legs,[5] and there, near him, were ten pots of honey...

Two days later, there Pooh was sitting on his branch, dangling his legs, and there, near him, were four pots of honey...

Three days later, there Pooh was, sitting on his branch; dangling his legs, and there, near him, was one pot of honey.

Four days later, there was Pooh...

And it was on the morning of the fourth day that

---

[1] **Then suddenly he was dreaming.** — Затем ему вдруг приснился сон.

[2] **but there wasn't room for his legs** — но там не было места для его ног

[3] **I must have an escape.** — Мне надо спасаться.

[4] **the whole escape was over** — когда вся спасательная экспедиция была окончена

[5] **dangling his legs** — болтая ногами

Piglet's bottle came floating past him, and with one loud cry of "Honey!" Pooh jumped into the water, caught the bottle, and climbed back to his tree again.

"Bother!" said Pooh, as he opened it. "All that wet for nothing.[1] What's that bit of paper doing?"

He took it out and looked at it.

"It's a message," he said to himself. "And that letter is a 'P', and 'P' means 'Pooh', so it's a very important message to me, and I can't read it. I must find Christopher Robin or Owl or Piglet, one of those clever readers who can read, and they will tell me what this message means. Only I can't swim. Bother!"

Then he had an idea. It was a good idea. He said to himself:

"If a bottle can float, then a jar can float, and if a jar floats, I can sit on the top of it, if it's a very big jar."

So he took his biggest jar and corked it up. "All boats have a name," he said, "so I shall call mine *The Floating Bear*."[2] And with these words he put his boat into the water and jumped in. Sometimes he was under the jar and sometimes he was on top of it. But at last he was able to sit on top of it and *The Floating Bear* and Pooh moved proudly through the water.

* * *

Christopher Robin lived at the very top of the forest. It rained, and it rained, and it rained, but the water couldn't come up to his house. It was interesting to look down into the valleys and see the water all

---

[1] **All that wet for nothing.** — *зд.* Так промокнуть зазря.

[2] **The Floating Bear** — Плавучий Медведь

round him, but it rained so hard that he stayed indoors most of the time, and thought about things.[1] Every morning he went out with his umbrella and put a stick in the place where the water came up to, and every next morning he went out and couldn't see his stick any more, so he put another stick in the place where the water came up to. On the morning of the fifth day he saw the water all round him, and knew that for the first time in his life he was on a real island. Which was very exciting.

It was on this morning that Owl came flying over the water to say "How do you do?" to his friend Christopher Robin.

"I say, Owl," said Christopher Robin, "isn't this fun? I'm on an island."

"The atmospheric conditions have been very unfavourable lately,"[2] said Owl.

"The what?"

"There has been a lot of rain," explained Owl.

"Yes," said Christopher Robin. "There has."

"The flood-level has reached an unprecedented height."[3]

"The who?"

"There's a lot of water about," explained Owl.

---

[1] **and thought about things** — и размышлял о всякой всячине

[2] **The atmospheric** [ˌætməsˈferɪk] **conditions have been very unfavourable** [ʌnˈfeɪvərəbəl] **lately** — Атмосферные явления были не совсем благоприятными в последнее время

[3] **The flood-level** [ˈflʌdˈlevl] **has reached an unprecedented** [ʌnˈpresɪdentɪd] **height** [haɪt]. — Уровень паводка достиг небывалой высоты.

"Yes," said Christopher Robin, "there is. Have you seen Pooh?"

"No."

"I hope he's all right," said Christopher Robin. "I expect Piglet's with him. Do you think they're all right, Owl?"

"I expect so."

"Go and see, Owl, please. Because Pooh hasn't got very much brain, and he may do something silly, and I love him so much, Owl. Do you see, Owl?"

"That's all right," said Owl. "I'll go. Back directly."[1] And he flew off.

In a little while he was back again.

"Pooh isn't there," he said.

"Not there?"

"He has *been* there. He was sitting on a branch of his tree outside his house with nine pots of honey. But he isn't there now."

"Oh, Pooh!" cried Christopher Robin. "Where *are* you?"

"Here I am," said a voice behind him.

"Pooh!"

They rushed into each other's arms.

"How did you get here, Pooh?" asked Christopher Robin, when he was ready to talk again.

"On my boat," said Pooh proudly. "I had a very important message that came in a bottle. I couldn't read it because I had got some water in my eyes, so I brought it to you. On my boat."

With these proud words he gave Christopher Robin the message.

---

[1] **Back directly.** — Немедленно вернусь назад.

"But it's from Piglet!" cried Christopher Robin when he had read it.

"Isn't there anything about Pooh in it?" asked Bear.

Christopher Robin read the message aloud.

"Oh, are those 'P's' piglets? I thought they were poohs."

"We must rescue him at once! I thought he was with *you*, Pooh. Owl, can you rescue him on your back?"

"I don't think so," said Owl, when he had thought a little.

"Then please fly to him at *once* and say that rescue is coming. And Pooh and I will think of a rescue and come very quickly. Oh, don't *talk*, Owl, go on quick!" So Owl flew off.

"Now then, Pooh," said Christopher Robin, "where's your boat?"

"I must say," explained Pooh as they walked down to the shore of the island, "that it isn't just an ordinary sort of boat. Sometimes it's a boat, and sometimes it's more of an accident.[1] It all depends."

"Depends on what?"

"On whether I'm on the top of it or under it."

"Oh! Well, where is it?"

"There!" said Pooh, pointing proudly to *The Floating Bear*.

It wasn't what Christopher Robin expected, and the more he looked at it, the more he thought what a brave and clever bear Pooh was.

"But it's too small for two of us," said Christopher Robin sadly.

[1] **and sometimes it's more of an accident** — а иногда это вроде несчастного случая

"Three of us with Piglet."

"That makes it smaller still. Oh, Pooh Bear, what shall we do?"

And then this bear, Pooh Bear, Winnie-the-Pooh, F. O. P. (Friend of Piglet's), R. C. (Rabbit's Companion), P. D. (Pole Discoverer) and T. F.[1] (Tail-finder) — in fact, Pooh himself — said something so clever that Christopher Robin could only look at him with mouth and eyes open. He thought: "Is this really the bear of very little brain whom I have known and loved so long?"

"We could[2] go in your umbrella," said Pooh.

"?"

"We could go in your umbrella," said Pooh.

"??"

"We could go in your umbrella," said Pooh.

"!!!!!!"

For suddenly Christopher Robin saw that they could. He opened his umbrella and put it point downwards in the water.[3] It floated but wobbled. Pooh got in. It upset and Pooh found himself in the water. After a short drink which he didn't really want he swam back to Christopher Robin. Then they both got in together, and it stopped wobbling.

"I shall call this boat *The Brain of Pooh*," said

[1] **F. O. P. ... R. C. ... P. D. ... T. F. ...** — здесь автор шутя использует сокращения, которые принято давать после фамилии в официальных бумагах. Например: Mr. Brown, PhD = Doctor of Philosophy [fɪ'lɒsəfɪ].

[2] **We could** — Мы могли бы

[3] **and put it point downwards in the water** — и опустил его острием в воду

Christopher Robin, and *The Brain of Pooh* set sail[1] in a south-westerly direction.

You can imagine Piglet's joy when at last he saw the ship. In after-years[2] he liked to think that he had been in very great danger during the terrible flood.[3] You can imagine Piglet's joy when at last he saw the good ship, *The Brain of Pooh* (*Captain*, C. Robin; 1*st Mate*,[4] P. Bear) coming over the sea to rescue him...

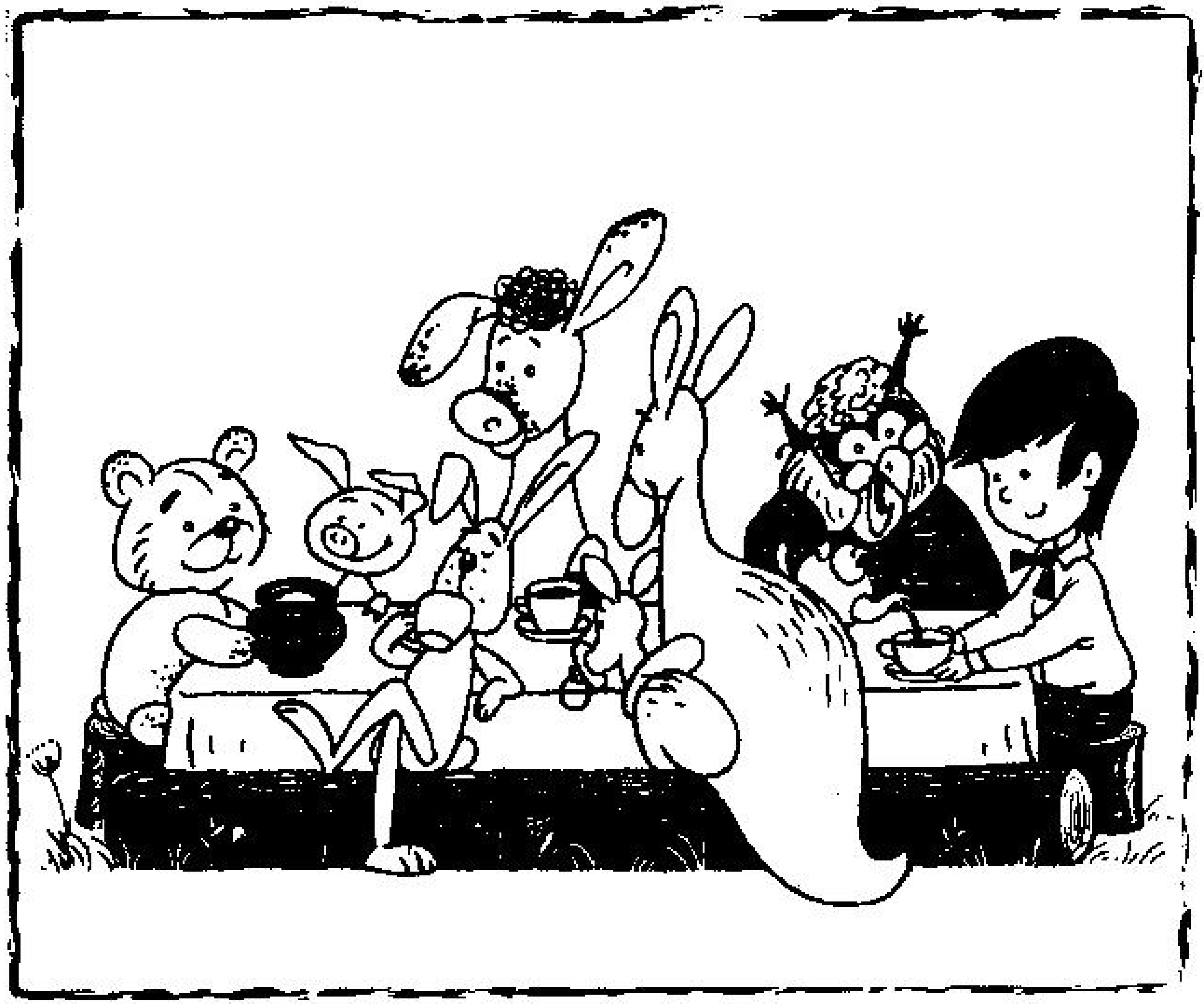
And that is really the end of the story.

[1] **set sail** — отправился в плавание

[2] **In after-years** — В последующие годы

[3] **in very great danger during the terrible flood** — в большой опасности во время ужасного потопа

[4] **1st Mate** — Первый помощник (капитана)



Chapter Ten

In which Christopher Robin gives a Pooh party,[1] and we say good-bye

One day when the Sun had come back over the forest, and it was spring again, Christopher Robin whistled a special sort of whistle and Owl came flying to see what he wanted.

[1] **In which Christopher Robin gives a Pooh party** — В которой Кристофер Робин устраивает праздник в честь Пуха

"Owl," said Christopher Robin, "I am going to give a party."

"Are you?" said Owl.

"And it is a special sort of party, because it's because of what Pooh did when he did what he did to save Piglet from the flood."

"Oh, is it?" said Owl.

"Yes, so will you tell Pooh as quickly as you can, and all the others, because it will be tomorrow."

"Oh, will it?" said Owl, still being as helpful as possible.[1]

"So will you go and tell them, Owl?"

Owl tried to think of something very wise to say, but couldn't, so he flew off to tell the others. And the first person he told was Pooh.

"Pooh," he said, "Christopher Robin is giving a party."

"Oh!" said Pooh. And then he said, "Will there be those little cakes?"

Owl felt that it was beneath him to talk about little cakes,[2] so he told Pooh what Christopher Robin had said, and flew off to Eeyore.

"A party for me?" thought Pooh to himself. "How grand!"[3] And he wanted all the other animals to know[4] that it is a special Pooh party because of his wonderful

---

[1] **still being as helpful as possible** — стараясь по-прежнему быть по возможности услужливой

[2] **it was beneath him to talk about little cakes** — это было ниже ее достоинства — беседовать о пирожках

[3] **How grand!** — *зд.* Вот здорово!

[4] **And he wanted all the other animals to know** — И он захотел, чтобы все другие звери узнали

ships: *The Floating Bear* and *The Brain of Pooh*. And a song began to sing in his head.

ANXIOUS POOH SONG

3 Cheers for Pooh![1]
(For Who?)
For Pooh —
(Why, what did he do?)
I thought you knew;
He saved his friend from the flood!
3 Cheers for Bear!
(For where?)
For Bear —
He couldn't swim,
But he rescued him!
(He rescued who?)
Oh, listen, do!
I am talking of Pooh —
(Of who?)
Of Pooh!
Well, Pooh was a Bear of enormous brain[2]
(Just say it again!)
Of enormous brain —
(Of enormous what?)
Well, he ate a lot,
And I don't know if he could swim or not,
But he managed to float

---

[1] **3 Cheers for Pooh!** — *зд.* Да здравствует Пух! (*букв.* Три раза прокричим ура Пуху!)

[2] **a Bear of enormous brain** — ужасно умный медведь

On a sort of boat[1]
(On a sort of what?)
Well, a sort of pot —
So now let's give him three hearty cheers[2]
And hope he'll be with us for years and years.
3 Cheers for Pooh!
(For who?)
For Pooh —
3 Cheers for Bear!
(For where?)
For Bear —
3 Cheers for the wonderful Winnie-the-Pooh!
(*Just tell me, somebody* — WHAT DID HE DO?)

While this was going on inside him,[3] Owl was talking to Eeyore.

"Eeyore," said Owl, "Christopher Robin is giving a party."

"Very interesting," said Eeyore.

"There is an invitation for you."

"What's that like?"

"An invitation! It's asking you to the party. Tomorrow."

Eeyore shook his head slowly.

"You mean Piglet. The little fellow with the excited ears. That's Piglet. I'll tell him."

"No, no!" said Owl, he was getting quite angry. "It's you!"

---

[1] **on a sort of boat** — на какой-то лодочке

[2] **let's give him three hearty cheers** — давайте трижды прокричим ему «ура»

[3] **While this was going on inside him** — И пока все это звучало у него внутри

"Are you sure?"

"Of course I'm sure. Christopher Robin said, 'All of them. Tell all of them.'"

"All of them, except Eeyore?"

"All of them," said Owl.

"Ah!" said Eeyore. "A mistake, no doubt,[1] but I shall come. Only it may rain tomorrow."

But it didn't rain. Christopher Robin had made a long table out of some long pieces of wood, and they all sat round it. Christopher Robin sat at one end, and Pooh sat at the other, and between them on one side were Owl and Eeyore and Piglet, and between them on the other side were Rabbit, and Roo and Kanga. And all Rabbit's friends and relations sat all around on the grass and waited.

It was the first party to which Roo had ever been, and he was very excited. As soon as they had sat down he began to talk.

"Hallo, Pooh!" he squeaked.

"Hallo, Roo!" said Pooh.

Roo jumped up and down in his seat for a little while and then began again.

"Hallo, Piglet!" he squeaked.

Piglet waved a paw at him, as he was too busy to say anything.

"Hallo, Eeyore," said Roo.

Eeyore nodded gloomily at him. "It will rain soon," he said.

Roo looked to see if it didn't, and it didn't, so he said, "Hallo, Owl!" — and Owl said, "Hallo, my little fellow", in a friendly way. Kanga said to Roo, "Drink up your milk first, dear, and talk afterwards." So Roo,

---

[1] **A mistake, no doubt** — Это ошибка, без сомнения

who was drinking his milk, tried to say that he could do both at once.[1] And he was patted on the back[2] and dried for a long time afterwards.

When they had all nearly eaten enough,[3] Christopher Robin bumped on the table with his spoon, and everybody stopped talking and was very silent, except Roo.

"This party," said Christopher Robin, "is a party because of what someone did, and we all know who it was, and it's his party, because of what he did, and I've got a present for him and here it is." Then he looked about a little and whispered, "Where is it?"

"Here it is!" cried Christopher Robin excitedly. "Pass it down to silly old Pooh. It's for Pooh."

"For Pooh?" said Eeyore.

"Of course it is. The best bear in all the world."

Eeyore tried to say something, but nobody was listening.

They were all saying, "Open it, Pooh", "What is it, Pooh?", "I know what it is", "No, you don't". And of course Pooh was opening it as quickly as ever he could. He didn't cut the string, because you never know when a bit of string may be useful. At last he managed to undo it.[4]

When Pooh saw what it was, he nearly fell down, he was so pleased. It was a special pencil case.[5] There

---

[1] **that he could do both at once** — что может делать и то, и другое одновременно

[2] **And he was patted on the back** — И его хлопали по спине

[3] **When they had all nearly eaten enough** — Когда они все были почти сыты

[4] **At last he managed to undo it.** — Наконец ему удалось развязать узел.

[5] **a special pencil case** — специальный пенал

were pencils in it, a knife to sharpen the pencils, a rubber to rub out anything which you had spelt wrong,[1] and a ruler to rule lines for the words to walk on,[2] and blue pencils and red pencils and green pencils. And all these lovely things were all for Pooh.

"Oh!" said Pooh.

"Oh, Pooh!" said everybody else except Eeyore.

"Thank you," said Pooh.

Later on, when they had all said "Good-bye" and "Thank *you*" to Christopher Robin, Pooh and Piglet walked home thoughtfully together in the golden evening, and for a long time they were silent.

"When you wake up in the morning, Pooh," said Piglet at last, "what's the first thing you say to yourself?"

"What's for breakfast?" said Pooh. "What do *you* say, Piglet?"

"I say, I wonder what's going to happen exciting *today*?"[3] said Piglet.

Pooh nodded.

"It's the same thing," he said.

* * *

"And did anything exciting happen?" asked Christopher Robin.

"When?"

---

[1] **a rubber to rub out anything which you had spelt wrong** — и резинка, чтобы стирать все, что написано неверно

[2] **and a ruler to rule lines for the words to walk on** — и линейка, чтобы чертить линии, по которым разгуливают слова

[3] **I wonder what's going to happen exciting today?** — интересно, а что особенного произойдет сегодня?

"Next morning."
"I don't know," I said.
"Could you think and tell me and Pooh some day?"
"If you want it very much," I said.
"Pooh does," said Christopher Robin.

Activities

•



Chapter One

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I wonder if you've got such a thing as a balloon about you?"
2) "But you don't get honey with balloons."
3) "You look like a Bear who is holding on to a balloon."
4) "I think these are the wrong sort of bees."

2 Say who:

1) asked to tell a story about Winnie-the-Pooh.
2) climbed the tree.
3) went to his friend Christopher Robin.
4) had a party the day before.
5) sang a little cloud song.
6) flew around the cloud.

3 Say who in the story is:

helpful / funny / friendly / rather silly/ honey-loving.

4 Say *true*, *false* or *I don't know*.

1) Winnie-the-Pooh and Christopher Robin were friends.
2) Winnie-the-Pooh didn't like stories about himself.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh thought for a long time sitting near the oak-tree.

4) Winnie-the-Pooh didn't like honey at all.
5) It was Thursday when Winnie-the-Pooh decided to get some honey.
6) Winnie-the-Pooh wanted to deceive the bees trying to look like a cloud.
7) Christopher Robin had no balloon at home.
8) There were about a hundred bees flying around the tree.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Christopher Robin aimed at the balloon, and fired.
2) "Christopher Robin, you must shoot the balloon with your gun," he said to his friend.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh went to his friend Christopher Robin.
4) He sat down at the foot of the oak-tree and began to think.
5) Christopher Robin hit the balloon and Winnie-the-Pooh floated down to the ground.
6) Winnie-the-Pooh came to an open place in the middle of the forest.
7) Pooh began to climb the tree.
8) Pooh crawled out of the gorse-bush.
9) He fell from the tree because the branch, he stood on, broke.
10) Winnie-the-Pooh took a blue balloon and tried to get honey but he couldn't reach it.

6 Answer the questions.

1) Where did Winnie-the-Pooh come to when he was out walking?
2) What noise came from the top of the tree?

3) Why did Winnie-the-Pooh begin to climb the tree?
4) What happened when he stood on that branch?
5) Who was the first person Winnie-the-Pooh thought of?
6) What did Winnie-the-Pooh want the balloon for?
7) What did Winnie-the-Pooh do to look like a small black cloud?
8) Why did Winnie-the-Pooh ask Christopher Robin to bring his umbrella?
9) What did Winnie-the-Pooh think about the sort of bees from the tree?
10) What did Pooh ask Christopher Robin to do to get him down?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say which of the words is the Odd One Out.

- bear, fox, bee, wolf, hare
- branch, tree, leaf, trunk, root
- green, blue, black, little
- bush, cloud, star, sun, moon
- rain, wind, snow, day

2 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns.

silly	clean
top	up
begin	right
muddy	never
down	stop
always	smart
wrong	foot

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

make
muddy
reach
wrong
foot
climb
floated
aimed

1) Winnie-the-Pooh sat down at the _______ of the tree.
2) "I know that the bees _______ honey."
3) So he began to _______ the tree.
4) Winnie-the-Pooh went to a very _______ place and rolled until he was black all over.
5) Winnie-the-Pooh _______ gracefully up into the sky.
6) He could see the honey, he could smell the honey but he couldn't _______ the honey.
7) "I think the bees make the _______ sort of honey."
8) Christopher Robin _______ very carefully at the balloon, and fired.

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

1) A long time ago Winnie-the-Pooh (live) in a forest.
2) Winnie-the-Pooh (come) to an open place in the middle of the forest.
3) He (sit) down at the foot of the tree, (put) his head between his paws and (begin) to think.

4) He (think) for a long time.
5) Then he (get) up and (say) to himself: "That buzzing noise means something."
6) He (begin) to climb the tree. As he (climb) he (sing) a little song to himself.
7) "Oh, help!" (say) Pooh, as he (fall) ten feet on the branch below him.
8) So Winnie-the-Pooh (go) to his friend Christopher Robin who (live) in another part of the forest.
9) Christopher Robin (take) two balloons home with him, so he (have) a green balloon and a blue balloon.
10) Pooh Bear (float) gracefully up into the sky and (stay) there.
11) "You (not miss)," (say) Pooh, "but you (miss) the balloon."
12) His arms (be) very stiff from holding on to the string of the balloon all that time.

Say what the italicized words mean.

1) After that he turned *head-over-heels.*
2) "Perhaps they think that *you're going after* their honey."
3) "I think that the bees *suspect* something."
4) "It is important to *deceive* the Queen Bee."
5) "Shall I *put* my umbrella *up*?"
6) When a fly sat on his nose he had to *blow* it *off.*

Fill in the missing prepositions.

Once upon a time Winnie-the-Pooh lived ____ a forest. One day he came ____ an open place ____ the middle ____ the forest. He sat ____ near a large oak-tree and began to think. He thought ____ a long time and then decided to climb the tree to get some honey. As he climbed he sang a little song himself. When he fell from the tree, the first person he thought ____ was Christopher Robin. Winnie-the-Pooh asked Christopher Robin: "Have you got such a thing as a balloon ____ you?" "What do you want a balloon ____ ?" Pooh looked ____ to see that nobody was listening and said ____ a deep whisper: "Honey!" "But you don't get honey ____ balloons," answered the boy. Christopher Robin was ____ a party yesterday ____ the house ____ his friend Piglet and he had balloons ____ the party. So he took a green balloon and a blue balloon home ____ him. Pooh had to choose which of the two balloons to take. He put his head ____ his paws and thought very carefully. He said: "When you go ____ honey ____ a balloon, the great thing is not to let the bees know you're coming."

Discussing the Text

1

Explain why:

1) there came a loud buzzing noise from the top of the oak-tree.
2) Winnie-the-Pooh began to climb the tree.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh went to his friend Christopher Robin.
4) Pooh chose the blue balloon.
5) Pooh thought that those were the wrong sort of bees.

6) Christopher Robin had to fire at the balloon for the second time.
7) Pooh's arms stayed up straight in the air for more than a week.
8) they call him Pooh.

2 Prove that:

1) Christopher Robin was very fond of Pooh.
2) Winnie-the-Pooh loved honey.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh was rather silly but funny.

3 Imagine that you are Winnie-the-Pooh. Speak about:

1) Christopher Robin.
2) the bees on the top of the oak-tree.
3) your adventure in the forest.

4 Read and draw.

1) Draw a picture of an open place with a large oak-tree in the middle of the forest.
2) Draw a picture of the bees' nest on the top of the tree.
3) Draw a portrait of Winnie-the-Pooh blowing a fly off his nose.

5 Role-play.

Imagine that Winnie-the-Pooh and Christopher Robin discuss their adventure in the forest. Which of them do you think is rather serious about it? Which of them would like to laugh at it, but doesn't? Act out their conversation.

Chapter Two

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I heard you quite well the first time."
2) "Is anybody at home?"
3) "What about a mouthful of something?"
4) "Then there's only one thing you can do. You must get thin again."

2 Say who:

1) came to his friend Rabbit.
2) liked a little something at eleven o'clock in the morning.
3) wanted to use Pooh's back legs as a towel-horse.
4) read a Sustaining Book to Winnie-the-Pooh.
5) helped to pull Winnie-the-Pooh out of the hole.

3 Make the right choice:

1) Pooh made up a little hum as he was
   a) having breakfast.
   b) walking through the forest.
   c) doing his morning exercises.

2) When Pooh came to the hole he called out
   a) "Is anybody at home?"
   b) "Whose house is this?"
   c) "Hallo, Piglet, is that you?"

3) Pooh decided to eat
a) jam and bread.
b) condensed milk and honey.
c) honey and bread.

4) When Pooh got stuck Rabbit went to
a) Christopher Robin.
b) Piglet.
c) Eeyore.

5) Christopher Robin said that Pooh had to stay there for
a) some days.
b) a month.
c) a week.

6) During that week Pooh ate
a) a lot of different food.
b) once a day.
c) nothing.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) And then, suddenly Pooh said "*Pop!*" just as if a cork was coming out of a bottle.
2) Christopher Robin said that they had to wait until Pooh got thin again.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh was walking through the forest one day.
4) He took hold of Pooh's front paws and they all pulled together.
5) Then he started to climb out of the hole but got stuck.
6) For a week Christopher Robin read a book to Winnie-the-Pooh.
7) With a nod of thanks to his friends he went on with his walk through the forest.

8) At the end of the week Christopher Robin said "*Now!*"
9) He came to his friend Rabbit and ate some honey and condensed milk.
10) Rabbit decided to fetch Christopher Robin.

5 Answer the questions.

1) Who was walking in the forest humming proudly to himself?
2) What hole did he suddenly come to?
3) Was he glad to see the hole?
4) What did Pooh like to have at eleven o'clock in the morning?
5) Did Rabbit give Pooh anything to eat?
6) What happened to Winnie-the-Pooh when he tried to climb out of the hole?
7) Whom did Rabbit go for?
8) Did Christopher Robin say anything when he saw the front half of Pooh?
9) What book was Christopher Robin reading to Winnie-the-Pooh?
10) How long did he read?
11) Who helped Christopher Robin to pull Winnie-the-Pooh out of the hole?
12) What did Winnie-the-Pooh do when he got out of the hole?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns:

silence	bad
come in	push
full	fat
pull	nobody
give	empty
good	noise
thin	come out
everybody	take

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) He *was humming* this hum to himself.
2) "I heard you *quite well* the first time."
3) "But don't *bother* about bread, please."
4) Pooh Bear *stretched out* a paw.
5) "Well, well, I shall go and *fetch* Christopher Robin."
6) Rabbit scratched his *whiskers* thoughtfully.
7) He went on his walk through the forest, humming *proudly* to himself.

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

wonder
called out
loud
hole
noise
first
silence
humming

1) Winnie-the-Pooh was walking through the forest one day and was _______ proudly to himself.
2) Then he began to _______ what everybody else was doing.
3) Suddenly he came to a sandy bank, and in the bank was a large _______ .
4) So he put his head into the hole and _______ : "Is anybody at home?"
5) There was a sudden _______ from inside the hole, and then _______ .
6) "Don't shout so _______ ," said a voice, "I heard you quite well the _______ time."

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Winnie-the-Pooh began to climb ____ ____ the hole. He pulled ____ his front paws and pushed ____ his back paws. Rabbit wanted to go ____ a walk too. As the front door was full, he went out ____ the back door and looked ____ Pooh. Pooh stretched ____ a paw and Rabbit tried to pull him ____ ____ the hole. "It all comes," said Rabbit, "____ eating too much. I knew that one ____ us was eating too much."
Christopher Robin lived ____ the other end of the forest. When the boy came back ____ Rabbit, he said, "Silly old Bear," ____ such a loving voice that everybody felt quite hopeful again. "We'll read ____ you," said Rabbit cheerfully. So ____ a week Christopher Robin read a Sustaining Book ____ the North end of Pooh, and Rabbit hung his washing ____ the South end.

5 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to make		
to do		
to begin		
to come		
to be		
to know		
to put		
to hear		
to take		
to give		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

6 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) Pooh asked, "Is anybody at home?"
2) "Don't shout so loud ," said the voice.
3) "I'm just resting and thinking," said Pooh.
4) "I must go on," said Pooh.
5) "If we can't pull you out, we shall push you back," said Christopher Robin.
6) "But I can't stay here for a week," said Pooh.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Winnie-the-Pooh was glad to see the hole.
2) Pooh had to call out "Is anybody at home?" twice.
3) Rabbit said that nobody was at home.
4) Pooh didn't eat bread.
5) Winnie-the-Pooh got stuck.
6) everybody felt quite hopeful again when Christopher Robin came.
7) Pooh wanted Christopher Robin to read a Sustaining Book to him.

2 Prove that:

1) Rabbit was rather careful.
2) Pooh trusted Christopher Robin.

3 Add more details to this:

1) One morning Pooh made up a little hum.
2) Pooh ate some food when he came to Rabbit.
3) Christopher Robin read a book to Pooh.

4 What's your opinion?

What do you think about this story? Did you learn anything important in this chapter? What is it?

5 Work in small groups. Act out the dialogues between:

1) Winnie-the-Pooh and Rabbit.
2) Pooh, Christopher Robin and Rabbit.

Chapter Three

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "You never can tell with paw-marks."
2) "It isn't the sort of thing you can do in the afternoon."
3) "I have been foolish and made a silly mistake."
4) "You're the best bear in all the world."
5) "Anyhow it is nearly lunch time."

2 Say who:

1) lived in a very nice house in the middle of a beech-tree.
2) was sweeping away the snow in front of his house one fine winter's day.
3) was walking round and round in a circle.
4) had nothing to do until Friday.
5) was sitting in an oak-tree.

3 Say who in the story is:

foolish / cowardly

4 Say *true, false* or *I don't know.*

1) Piglet lived in the middle of his house.
2) Piglet had nothing to do until Friday.
3) Piglet was not afraid of the Woozles at all.
4) Pooh thought that there were six Woozles and five Wizzles walking around.

5) It was ten o'clock in the morning when Piglet saw Pooh walking round and round in a circle.
6) Piglet really had something important to do in the morning.
7) Pooh and Piglet caught three Woozles and one Wizzle.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Piglet watched him for a minute or two, and then ran after him.
2) One fine winter's day Piglet was sweeping away the snow in front of his house.
3) Piglet said that he had nothing to do until Friday and decided to join Winnie-the-Pooh.
4) After a talk with Christopher Robin Pooh understood that he had been foolish and made a silly mistake.
5) But then Piglet became very frightened and said that he had something very important to do.
6) He looked up, and there was Winnie-the-Pooh.
7) So they went on together.
8) Piglet said "Good-bye", and ran home as quickly as he could.
9) Pooh said that he wanted to catch somebody, maybe a Woozle.
10) They saw Christopher Robin who was sitting in a tree.

6 Answer the questions.

1) Where did Piglet live?
2) What was he doing one fine winter's day?

3) What was Winnie-the-Pooh doing?
4) Did Pooh know whom he was tracking?
5) What did Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet see on the ground?
6) Did Piglet go tracking with Winnie-the-Pooh?
7) What kind of animals did they think Woozles to be?
8) Why did Winnie-the-Pooh suddenly stop?
9) Was Piglet afraid of the hostile animals?
10) What did he suddenly remember?
11) Whom did they see sitting on a branch of a big oak-tree?
12) What did Winnie-the-Pooh understand after a talk with Christopher Robin?
13) What did Christopher Robin call Winnie-the-Pooh?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) Piglet was *sweeping away* the snow in front of his house.
2) He gave a little *squeak* of excitement.
3) With these few words he went on *tracking*.
4) "Look at their *tracks*."
5) Perhaps the three animals in front of them *really* were hostile animals.
6) Pooh stopped and *licked* his nose.
7) "I am a bear of no *brain* at all."

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

circle thing company follow safe ear joined anxious

1) "There seem to be two animals now, and the two of them are now walking in _______ ."
2) They were feeling just a little _______ now.
3) Piglet scratched his _______ and agreed.
4) Pooh was walking round and round in a _______ .
5) "It isn't the sort of _______ you can do in the afternoon."
6) "Let us continue to _______ them."
7) "A third animal has _______ the other two."
8) "Then you'll be all right. You'll be quite _______ with him."

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

One day when Piglet was sweeping ____ the snow in front ____ his house, he looked ____ , and there was Winnie-the-Pooh. Piglet called ____ him, but he was thinking ____ something else, he just went ____ walking. Piglet asked him what he was doing. Pooh pointed ____ the ground, and Piglet saw paw-marks ____ the ground. He gave a little squeak ____ excitement. Piglet watched Pooh ____ a minute or

two, and then ran ____ him. Piglet had nothing to do ____ Friday, so they went together. Suddenly Pooh stopped and said: "Look!" "What?" said Piglet ____ a jump. And then, to show that he wasn't afraid ____ the Woozles, he jumped ____ and ____ once or twice more as if he was doing his morning exercises. Then Piglet remembered something that he had to do ____ the morning. Pooh heard a whistle and looked ____ ____ the sky. He saw Christopher Robin sitting ____ a branch ____ a big oak-tree.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the events of the story.

winter's	animals
hostile	squeak of excitement
morning	oak-tree
different	mistake
big	day
silly	exercises
little	marks

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Was, Pooh, round, a, walking, in, circle.
2) Ran, after, Piglet, him.
3) A, it, funny, very, is, thing.
4) Them, us, continue, let, follow, to.
5) Must, back, I, go.
6) Will, quite, be, safe, him, with, you.
7) A, I, made, have, mistake, silly.

6 How well do you know the rules of reading?

a) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [t] at the end? Underline them.

lived	looked	watched	pointed
stopped	crossed	remembered	scratched
brightened	jumped		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "What are you doing?" asked Piglet.
2) "I shall wait until I catch it," said Winnie-the-Pooh.
3) "What's the matter?" asked Piglet.
4) "A third animal has joined the other two," said Pooh.
5) "I'll come with you," said Pooh.
6) "It's a morning thing," said Piglet.
7) "You're the best bear in all the world," said Christopher Robin.

Discussing the Text

1 Explain why:

1) Pooh didn't answer when Piglet called to him.
2) Pooh was walking round and round in a circle.
3) Piglet gave a little squeak of excitement.

4) Winnie-the-Pooh suddenly stopped.
5) Piglet and Pooh felt a little anxious.
6) Piglet said that he had something to do and ran home as quickly as he could.
7) Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet didn't catch any Woozle.

2 Prove that:

1) Pooh was thinking of something when Piglet called to him.
2) Piglet was afraid of the Woozles.
3) They both were very excited about their tracking the Woozles.
4) Pooh understood that he had been foolish.

3 Imagine that you are Piglet. Speak about:

1) your house.
2) your friend Winnie-the-Pooh.
3) the Woozles.
4) your tracking the Woozles.

4 Read and draw.

1) Try to imagine what a Woozle and a Wizzle look like. Draw a picture of one of them.
2) Draw a picture of Piglet sweeping away the snow in front of his house.
3) Pooh was rather surprised and disappointed when he understood that he had made a mistake. Try to draw a portrait of him at that moment.

5 Role-play.

Work in pairs and act out the talk between Christopher Robin and Winnie-the-Pooh. Try to show that Christopher Robin loved his friend in spite of his foolishness.

Chapter Four

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "What's happened to your tail?"
2) "Somebody must have taken it. How like them."
3) "I will find your tail for you."
4) "Well, the customary procedure in such cases is as follows."
5) "Talking about large something, I usually have a small something about now."

2 Say who:

1) lost his tail.
2) noticed that Eeyore had lost his tail.
3) lived at The Chestnuts.
4) wrote two notices on the door of Owl's house.
5) nailed Eeyore's tail on in its right place again.

3 Say who in the story is:

gloomy / wise / friendly / kind / proud / happy

4 Say *true*, *false* or *I don't know*.

1) Eeyore lost his ears and was very sad about it.
2) Eeyore was glad to see Winnie-the-Pooh.
3) Christopher Robin was the only one in the forest who could spell.
4) It was a cold winter day as Pooh started out to look for Eeyore's tail.

5) Winnie-the-Pooh thought that Owl's house was finer than anybody else's.
6) There were two rooms and a kitchen in Owl's house.
7) Owl found Eeyore's tail in the forest and thought that nobody wanted it.
8) Winnie-the-Pooh found Eeyore's tail at a quarter to two.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) On Owl's house he saw a knocker and a bell-pull and two notices under them.
2) Pooh noticed that Eeyore had no tail and told Eeyore about that.
3) Suddenly Winnie-the-Pooh understood that the bell-rope was Eeyore's tail.
4) He went to The Chestnuts where Owl lived.
5) Eeyore stood by himself in a far corner of the forest and thought about things.
6) The donkey was very sad and Winnie-the-Pooh decided to help his friend.
7) Christopher Robin nailed it on in its right place again.
8) As Pooh came along he said "How do you do?" to him.
9) He took it off Owl's front door and carried it back to Eeyore.
10) Pooh asked Owl to help him to find Eeyore's tail.

6 Answer the questions.

1) Who stood by himself in a far corner of the forest?

2) What did Winnie-the-Pooh see looking at Eeyore?
3) What did he think about his tail?
4) What did Winnie-the-Pooh say to Eeyore?
5) Where did Owl live?
6) Did Pooh like Owl's residence?
7) What did Winnie-the-Pooh see under the knocker and under the bell-pull?
8) Who wrote those two notices?
9) What did Winnie-the-Pooh do to open the door?
10) Where did Pooh see Eeyore's tail?
11) Who wanted this tail very much?
12) What did Christopher Robin do with the tail?
13) Was Eeyore happy? And what about Winnie-the-Pooh?

📖 *Working with Vocabulary and Grammar*

1 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns.

old	inside
first	find
sad	new
lose	after
long	finish
outside	last
before	happy
start	short

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

helpful notice corner place bell-pull gloomy tail

1) Eeyore stood by himself in a far _______ of the forest.
2) He said "How do you do?" to Winnie-the-Pooh in his _______ voice.
3) "What's happened to your _______ ?" asked Winnie-the-Pooh.
4) Pooh decided to do something _______ .
5) Pooh liked Owl's house because it had both a knocker and a _______ .
6) There was a _______ under the knocker and another one under the bell-pull.
7) Christopher Robin nailed the tail on its right _______ again.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) When Winnie-the-Pooh *came along*, Eeyore was very glad to stop thinking for a little while.
2) "Let's *have a look* at you."
3) It was a fine spring morning in the forest as he *started out*.
4) He *called out* in a very loud voice, "Owl! I require an answer!"
5) "It *reminds* me of something," he said.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) It was a fine spring morning ____ the forest as Winnie-the-Pooh started ____ .
2) Little clouds played happily ____ a blue sky.
3) Bear marched _____ open slopes, _____ rocky rivers.
4) So ____ last he reached the Great Wood.
5) "If anyone knows anything ____ anything," said Bear ____ himself, "it's Owl who knows something ____ something."
6) Owl lived ____ The Chestnuts, an old-world residence ____ great charm.
7) Pooh read the notices ____ the knocker and the bell-pull very carefully, first ____ left ____ right and then ____ right ____ left.
8) Owl opened the door and looked ____ .
9) "Eeyore has lost his tail and he's very sad ____ it," said Pooh.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Looked, Pooh, the, at, knocker.
2) Get, where, did, it, you?
3) Found, the, Owl, in, the, tail, forest.
4) Made, a, you, mistake.
5) Forest, the, jumped, Eeyore, about.
6) Has, your, what, happened, tail, to?

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

	stood	
		been
to shake		
	let	
		felt
to have		
	found	
		gone
to write		
	meant	

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "What has happened to your tail?" asked Winnie-the-Pooh.
2) "It explains everything," said Eeyore gloomily.
3) "You're a real friend," said Eeyore to Winnie-the-Pooh.
4) "You made a mistake," said Pooh to Owl.
5) "I am a bear of very little brain," said Pooh.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Eeyore was very sad.
2) he was glad to see Winnie-the-Pooh.

3) Pooh went to Owl.
4) Pooh thought that Owl's house was finer than anybody else's.
5) it was Christopher Robin who wrote the two notices on the front door of Owl's house.
6) long words bothered Pooh.

2 Prove that:

1) Winnie-the-Pooh was a good friend.
2) Christopher Robin couldn't spell very well.
3) Pooh liked to dream about honey and condensed milk.
4) Owl didn't know that somebody wanted the tail.

3 Imagine that you are Owl. Speak about:

1) your residence.
2) your fiend Winnie-the-Pooh.
3) how you found your fine bell-rope.
4) Pooh's visit to you.

4 Look at the sentences in "Who said it" Exercise 1 and describe the situations in which they were said in more detail.

5 What is your opinion?

Do you remember what kind of language Owl spoke? Do you think it's nice to say things not clear to the others? Do you think that Owl tried to seem much cleverer than he was?

6 Role-play.

Working with one of your classmates read the conversation between Winnie-the-Pooh and Owl. Then act it out in class.

Chapter Five

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I saw a Heffalump today, Piglet."
2) "I have decided to catch a Heffalump."
3) "Honey is a much more trappy thing than acorns."
4) "I know I had a jar of honey there."
5) "It had the biggest head you ever saw, Christopher Robin."

2 Say who:

1) didn't want to find and gather acorns.
2) dug the very deep pit.
3) went home for honey.
4) couldn't sleep and tried counting sheep and Heffalumps.
5) wanted to pretend that he had a headache.

3 Say *true, false* or *I don't know.*

1) Christopher Robin said that there were a lot of Heffalumps in the forest.
2) Pooh wanted to catch a Heffalump with the help of a trap.
3) Piglet knew what a Heffalump looked like.
4) It was raining when Piglet was digging the very deep pit.
5) Piglet and Pooh put some acorns at the bottom of the pit.

6) They decided to meet in the morning by the very deep pit.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) They decided to dig a very deep pit and put a jar of honey there.
2) But at first they had no plan.
3) He went to the pit and began to eat honey.
4) Then they went home to sleep.
5) So Pooh and Piglet decided to catch a Heffalump.
6) But at last he saw that it was Winnie-the-Pooh.
7) Piglet began to dig the pit and Pooh went home for honey.
8) But Pooh couldn't sleep because he was hungry.
9) One day Christopher Robin, Pooh and Piglet spoke about Heffalumps.
10) At the same time Piglet came to the pit and became very afraid because he thought that there was a Heffalump there.

5 Answer the questions.

1) What did Christopher Robin say one day?
2) What did Pooh decide to do?
3) What was the plan to catch a Heffalump?
4) What did Pooh do to make sure that it was honey in the jar?
5) Where did Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet put the jar?
6) When and where did Winnie-the-Pooh decide to meet?
7) Could Pooh sleep well? What did Pooh do when he couldn't sleep?

8) Where did Pooh run at night?
9) What did Pooh do when he saw the honey at the bottom of the jar?
10) What did Piglet think about when he woke up?
11) What did Piglet decide to do?
12) What did he see in the trap?
13) Whom did Piglet run to?
14) Did Piglet understand his mistake when the jar went smash?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Which of the verbs in each line is the Odd One Out?

[t]	talked	looked	walked	rubbed	laughed
[d]	seemed	helped	supposed	smelled	climbed
[ɪd]	decided	suspected	waited	added	stumped

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

jar acorns cross joke ashamed headache pit bottom

1) Pooh and Piglet helped each other to ______ the stream on the stones.
2) Piglet didn't want to find and gather ______ , so he said, "All right, honey then."
3) Pooh took down a very large ______ of honey from the shelf.
4) Somebody could put cheese in at the bottom of the jar just for a ______ .
5) Piglet put the jar at the ______ of the pit.
6) Pooh and Piglet decided to meet at six o'clock in the morning by the very deep ______ .
7) Piglet wanted to pretend that he had a ______ .
8) Piglet understood that he was foolish and was very ______ of himself.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) They sat down together near a gorse-bush to *think* it *out*.
2) The Heffalump will look up at the sky to see if *it is going to clear up*.
3) Honey is a much more *trappy* thing than acorns.
4) Somebody could put cheese in at the bottom of the jar *just for a joke*.
5) Piglet *trotted off* to his house.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) As soon as Pooh got home, he went ____ the larder.
2) He stood ____ a chair, and took ____ a very large jar ____ honey ____ the top shelf.
3) To make sure, he took ____ the paper cover and looked ____ it.

4) He put his tongue ____ , and took a large lick.
5) "We'll meet ____ six o'clock tomorrow morning."
6) Pooh woke ____ suddenly ____ a sinking feeling.
7) Piglet didn't know if Heffalump was fond ____ pigs.
8) He was going to see his first Heffalump ____ about an hour.
9) As Piglet was afraid, he wanted to run ____ .

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Heffalump, saw, a, I, today.
2) Came, the, to, they, stream.
3) Way, began, they, to, in, friendly, talk, a.
4) Going, is, it, rain, to.
5) Could, Pooh, sleep, not.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

	stood	
to see		
	could	
to sit		
	dug	
		fallen
to catch		
	got	
		thrown
to run		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) Christopher Robin said, "I saw a Heffalump to-day."
2) "Piglet, I have decided something," said Pooh.
3) "What have you decided, Pooh?" asked Piglet.
4) "He will suspect," said Pooh, "if he looks down."
5) "It isn't as easy as I thought," said Winnie-the-Pooh.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Pooh thought that Heffalump would fall into the very deep pit.
2) it was not so easy to catch a Heffalump as Pooh thought at first.
3) Pooh wanted to be a little bit cleverer than he was.
4) they decided to put a jar of honey into the trap.
5) Pooh couldn't sleep.
6) Piglet wanted to pretend that he had a headache.
7) Piglet ran to Christopher Robin.
8) Christopher Robin laughed and laughed.

2 Prove that:

1) Piglet was cowardly.

2) counting sheep was not a very good way of getting to sleep.
3) Piglet wanted to know what a Heffalump looked like.

3 Imagine that you are Piglet. Speak about:

1) Heffalumps.
2) your friend Christopher Robin.
3) your attempt to catch a Heffalump.

4 Read and draw.

1) Draw a portrait of a Heffalump. Is it fierce or not?
2) Draw a picture of Winnie-the-Pooh who is counting sheep and Heffalumps, trying to get asleep.
3) Draw a picture of the very deep pit with a jar of honey in it.

5 Role-play.

Work in pairs and act out the dialogue between Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet in which they discuss the plan of catching a Heffalump.

Chapter Six

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "I'm not sad. It's my birthday. The happiest day of the year."
2) "I was trying to reach the knocker."
3) "Why doesn't the person who lives here open the door? He's awfully slow."
4) "All right, then, I'll give him a balloon."
5) "Naturally it takes a good deal of pencil to say a long thing like that."

2 Say who:

1) stood by the side of the stream and looked at himself in the water.
2) helped Piglet to reach the knocker of Pooh's house.
3) ate the honey from the pot.
4) wrote some words on Pooh's present.
5) gave Eeyore a balloon.

3 Make the right choice.

1) Eeyore was very sad because
   a) he was hungry.
   b) it was his birthday but nobody knew about it.
   c) it rained.

2) When Pooh came up to his house he saw
   a) Eeyore.
   b) Christopher Robin.
   c) Piglet.

3) Owl
a) wrote some words on the pot.
b) draw a picture as a present for Eeyore.
c) gave a jar of honey to Eeyore.

4) When Piglet fell down he thought that he was
a) in a high tree.
b) in the moon.
c) on the roof of his house.

5) When Eeyore got his presents he
a) began to sing a song.
b) became sad.
c) became very happy.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Outside his house he found Piglet.
2) Pooh came to Owl and asked him to write "Happy birthday" on the pot.
3) That's why he fell down and the balloon burst.
4) Eeoyre stood by the side of the stream when he saw Winnie-the-Pooh.
5) Eeyore got a burst balloon and an empty pot as birthday presents, but he was happy.
6) Piglet ran to Eeyore as fast as he could so as to give him his present before Pooh did.
7) They went in and Pooh took a pot of honey from the cupboard.

8) When Pooh knew that it was Eeyore's birthday, he hurried home as quick as he could.
9) Then Piglet went home to take a balloon and Pooh went off in the other direction.

5 Answer the questions.

1) What did Eeyore say to Winnie-the-Pooh when Pooh came out of the wood?
2) Why did Pooh say "Stay here" to Eeyore?
3) Whom did Pooh find outside his house?
4) What was Piglet doing?
5) Did Pooh understand at once that it was his house?
6) What did Pooh do first of all as they went in?
7) Did he find any honey in the cupboard?
8) What present did Pooh decide to give to Eeyore?
9) What present did Piglet decide to give to Eeyore?
10) What happened to Pooh's present?
11) What happened to Piglet's present?
12) What did Eeyore feel when he got his birthday presents?
13) Was he thankful to Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[aɪ]	side	behind	right	quite	nice	give	try
[u:]	gloomy	balloon	too	door	pool	whose	two
[æ]	glad	candle	that	what	sad	plan	back

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

useful returns reach turned excited cupboard tightly

1) Piglet was jumping up and down trying to _______ the knocker.
2) First of all Pooh came to the _______ to see if he had a jar of honey.
3) "I'm giving him a _______ pot to keep things in," said Pooh.
4) Piglet held the balloon very _______ against himself so that it couldn't blow away.
5) Eeyore stopped looking at himself in the stream, and _______ to look at Piglet.
6) "Many happy _______ of the day," called out Pooh.
7) When Eeyore saw the pot, he became quite _______ .

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

1) Eeyore (stand) by the side of the river and (look) at himself in the water.
2) Pooh (feel) quite sorry for Eeyore.
3) Pooh (hurry) home as quick as he (can).
4) Suddenly Pooh (have) a sort of funny feeling.
5) "I (not know) it (be) as late as that," said Winnie-the-Pooh.
6) So he (sit down) and (take) the top off his jar of honey.
7) Pooh (understand) that he (eat) Eeyore's birthday present.
8) Suddenly Piglet (put) his foot in a rabbit hole, and (fall) down on his face.
9) "I (bring) you a little present," (say) Winnie-the-Pooh.

4 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) He *waved* a foot from side to side.
2) Pooh *hurried* back home as quick as he could.
3) "I didn't know it was *as late as that*," said Pooh.
4) "*What luck* that I brought this with me," he thought.
5) Owl licked the end of his pencil, and *wondered* how to spell "birthday".

5 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) Eeyore stood ____ the side ____ the stream.
2) Pooh came ____ ____ the forest.
3) "Your birthday?" said Pooh ____ great surprise.
4) Pooh felt that he must get poor Eeyore some sort ____ a present ____ once.
5) Pooh went ____ the cupboard to see if he had a jar ____ honey.
6) Pooh asked Owl to write 'A Happy Birthday' ____ the pot.

7) "It's a useful pot," said Pooh. "And it's got 'A very happy birthday ___ love ___ Pooh' on it."
8) Piglet thought that he was now alone ___ the moon.

6 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) A, was, day, it, warm.
2) Began, to, he, eat.
3) Must, I, him, something, give.
4) Is, it, pot, a, nice.
5) Was, a, silence, there, long, very.
6) Eeyore, balloon, the, placed, the, in, pot.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Eeyore was very sad.
2) Eeyore had no presents at first.
3) Pooh ran back home as quickly as he could.
4) Piglet was jumping up and down near Pooh's house.
5) Winnie-the-Pooh said that it was a good idea to give Eeyore a balloon.
6) Pooh ate the honey from the pot.
7) Piglet felt very miserable when he gave Eeyore his present.

2 Prove that:

1) at first nobody knew that Eeyore had a birthday.

2) Pooh didn't realize at once that it was his house when he saw Piglet.
3) Piglet and Winnie-the-Pooh showed their friendship and love for the donkey.

3 Imagine that you are Eeyore. Speak about:

1) the beginning of the day.
2) your friends Pooh and Piglet.
3) your birthday presents.
4) the end of the day.

4 Read and draw.

1) Draw a picture of Eeyore standing by the side of the stream.
2) Draw a picture of Piglet running with the balloon.
3) Draw a picture of Eeyore playing with his two presents.

5 Role-play.

After visiting Eeyore Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet went home together. They were pleased that they made Eeyore happy and began to discuss their adventures with the presents. They laughed a lot. Act out their conversation.

Chapter Seven

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "It is hard to be brave, when you're only a very small animal."
2) "Without Pooh the adventure will be impossible."
3) "Just one more jump, dear, and then we must go home."
4) "I like poetry. I made up a little poem as I was coming along."
5) "You're not Piglet. I know Piglet well and he's quite a different colour."
6) "I am not Roo!"

2 Say who:

1) carried her family about with her in her pocket.
2) wrote the plan to capture Baby Roo.
3) was practising very small jumps in the sand.
4) trotted off with Roo in his paws.
5) jumped into Kanga's pocket.
6) washed Piglet.

3 Say *true*, *false* or *I don't know*.

1) Nobody knew where Kanga and Baby Roo came from.
2) Piglet, Rabbit and Pooh liked Kanga as they saw her.
3) Rabbit had twenty relatives.

4) Piglet didn't like sitting in Kanga's pocket.
5) Kanga was afraid when she saw Piglet in her pocket.
6) The medicine that Kanga gave Piglet was bitter.
7) Piglet liked his new colour very much.
8) Kanga became friends with the other animals.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Then Rabbit and Piglet came up from the other side of the hill and stayed to look at Roo jumping.
2) When Kanga turned her head to look at the bird, Piglet jumped in.
3) At that moment Winnie-the-Pooh came up the hill.
4) Kanga said that she had to go home and in three large jumps she was gone.
5) Pooh began to tell Kanga his poem.
6) And she decided to have a joke with the animals.
7) Kanga and Roo were spending a quiet afternoon in a sandy part of the forest.
8) Rabbit trotted off with Roo in his paws.
9) But Kanga didn't listen to him and told Roo to jump into her pocket.
10) When Kanga looked into her pocket she knew what had happened.
11) Pooh said "Good afternoon" to Kanga.

5 Answer the questions.

1) Did anybody know where Kanga and Baby Roo had come from?
2) Did Rabbit, Piglet and Winnie-the-Pooh like to see Kanga and Baby Roo in the forest?

3) What did they want to do with Baby Roo to make Kanga go away from the forest?
4) What were Kanga and Baby Roo doing this afternoon?
5) What did Winnie-the-Pooh begin to speak with Kanga about? Did Kanga like Pooh's poem?
6) What did Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh speak about with Kanga?
7) Did Kanga know what had happened when she looked into her pocket?
8) What joke did she want to play on Rabbit, Piglet and Pooh?
9) Did Piglet like the bath? What did Kanga do with Piglet?
10) What did Kanga give Piglet after the bath?
11) Did Christopher Robin join Kanga's game with Piglet?
12) What did Piglet do when he got quite close to his house?
13) Did Kanga and Baby Roo stay in the forest? Did they become friends with Pooh and other animals?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns.

usual	useless
forget	less
best	shut
fast	unusual
useful	hot
open	slowly
more	remember
cold	worst

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

capture squeaked promise imitate useful harm adventure truth

1) "We'll tell you where Baby Roo is, if you ______ to go away from the forest."
2) " You will be ______ in the adventure before us."
3) "If we want to ______ Baby Roo, we must get a long start."
4) "Without Pooh the ______ will be impossible."
5) "Look at me jumping," ______ Roo.
6) "Christopher Robin will never let any ______ happen to Roo."
7) "I see that the time has come to tell you the ______."
8) "And you can ______ Piglet's voice too!"

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) There was a long and *thoughtful* silence.

2) Pooh was thinking *very hard* for some minutes.
3) *The best way* will be to steal Baby Roo and hide him.
4) "I *suppose* I shan't be useful?"
5) Piglet looked round *anxiously* for the others.
6) *To his great joy* Christopher Robin had left the door open.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) Pooh came ____ the hill.
2) I can see a bird ____ the tree.
3) ____ last Kanga turned her head to look.
4) Piglet made a squeaky Roo-noise ____ the bottom ____ Kanga's pocket.
5) Piglet was not fond ____ baths.
6) Kanga took a large bar ____ yellow soap.
7) If you make faces like Piglet's, you will grow ____ to look like Piglet.
8) ____ that moment there was a knock ____ the door.
9) Christopher Robin looked ____ him and shook his head.
10) We must call it ____ some name.
11) I shall call it Pootel. Henry Pootel ____ short.
12) He didn't stop running ____ he had got quite close ____ his house.
13) Every Tuesday Roo spent the day ____ his friend Rabbit.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

1) Nodded, twice, Pooh, head, his.
2) Talking, was, family, Rabbit, about, his.

3) Not, you, brave, very, are.
4) Faster, Kanga, than, of, any, runs, us.
5) Piglet, opening, was, and, his, mouth, shutting.
6) Washing, Kanga, with, was, flannel, a, large, him.
7) Were, they, again, happy.

6 How well do you know the rules of reading?

a) Write down the plural forms of the words below:

way	
head	
month	
eye	
mistake	
jump	
pocket	
animal	
spoon	
minute	
relative	
moment	
joke	

b) Which of the words are pronounced with the sound [s] at the end? Underline them with ______ line.

c) Which of the words are pronounced with the sound [z] at the end? Underline them with _ _ _ _ line.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "A Kanga is one of the fiercer animals," said Christopher Robin.
2) "Without Pooh," said Rabbit, "the adventure will be impossible."
3) "Kanga never takes her eyes off Baby Roo," said Rabbit.
4) "I can run away with Roo," said Rabbit.
5) "It will be a good idea to have a cold bath this evening," said Kanga.
6) "You can't be Roo," he said, " because I've just seen Roo playing in Rabbit's house."

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Pooh, Rabbit and Piglet didn't like Kanga and Baby Roo.
2) they wanted to capture and hide Baby Roo.
3) Piglet was so useful in their adventure.
4) the adventure would be impossible without Winnie-the-Pooh.
5) Kanga was not afraid when she found Piglet in her pocket.
6) Christopher Robin said that it was not Piglet.
7) Piglet ran so fast from Kanga's house.

2 Prove that:

1) Rabbit was proud of himself.
2) Kanga was a loving mother.

3) Kanga didn't like Pooh's poem.
4) Kanga was clever.
5) Piglet liked to be dirty.

3 Imagine that you are Kanga. Speak about:

1) your friend Christopher Robin.
2) your first day in the forest.
3) Pooh's poem.
4) your joke with Piglet.

4 Work in small groups and act out the talk between:

1) Rabbit, Winnie-the-Pooh and Piglet.
2) Kanga, Rabbit, Piglet and Winnie-the-Pooh.
3) Piglet and Kanga.

5 What is your opinion?

Rabbit, Pooh and Piglet didn't like Kanga because she was new in their forest and they knew nothing about her. They didn't even think that she could be a nice friend. Do you think it is right to form an opinion about some person without knowing him?

Chapter Eight

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "Hallo, Pooh Bear. I can't get this boot on."
2) "If Christopher Robin is coming I don't mind anything."
3) "What I say, is that I'm afraid that I may hurt one of them."
4) "My dear Pooh, don't you know what an ambush is?"
5) What does the North Pole look like? Do you know, Rabbit?"
6) "Look at me swimming!"

2 Say who:

1) stumped up to the forest one day to see his friend Christopher Robin.
2) was sitting outside his door, putting on his new boots.
3) had no provisions about himself.
4) washed his face and paws in the stream.
5) hung his tail over the pool.
6) discovered the North Pole.

3 Say *true*, *false* or *I don't know*.

1) Winnie-the-Pooh had some marmalade and honey for breakfast that day.

2) Christopher Robin wanted to go on the expedition alone.
3) Piglet knew what the North Pole was.
4) Nobody was glad to see Rabbit's friends-and-relations.
5) Rabbit had no provisions about himself.
6) Pooh ate condensed milk when they made a halt.
7) Baby Roo was very excited about his swimming.
8) It was Piglet who helped Piglet to get out of the water.
9) Roo had a hot bath after his swimming and went straight to bed.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Christopher Robin said that they were all going on an expedition.
2) As they walked, they talked to each other of this and that.
3) When Pooh came to him, Christopher Robin was putting on his big boots.
4) First came Christopher Robin and Rabbit, then the others.
5) It was a stream which ran between high rocky banks.
6) Pooh became very excited about that and ran away to tell the others.
7) Pooh helped him to put the boots on.
8) "Hush!" said Christopher Robin when they came to a dangerous place.
9) One day Winnie-the-Pooh decided to visit his friend Christopher Robin.
10) When they all were ready, the expedition started.

5 Answer the questions.

1) What did Pooh do one fine day?
2) What was Christopher Robin doing when Pooh saw him?
3) What did Christopher Robin ask Winnie-the-Pooh to do?
4) What were they all going to do?
5) Did Pooh know what the word 'expedition' meant? What does an expedition mean in Christopher Robin's opinion?
6) Who took part in the expedition?
7) What did they do? Who was going after whom?
8) What did Eeyore eat?
9) Did they know anything about the North Pole?
10) What happened to Baby Roo?
11) How did Baby Roo climb out of the pool?
12) What did they do with the pole?
13) What did Christopher Robin write in the message tied on to the pole?
14) What made Christopher Robin proud and happy that day?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[ɑ:]	start	what	bath	far	hard	last	after
[aɪ]	line	twice	mind	nice	right	prickles	outside
[i:]	eat	peaceful	stream	squeak	head	feeling	clean

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

verse
pleased
able
handkerchief
discover
stuck
peacefully
dangerous

1) Winnie-the-Pooh was very _______ with his song.
2) Christopher Robin said that they were going to _______ the North Pole.
3) Pooh sang the first _______ of his son to Piglet.
4) Christopher Robin saw at once how _______ the stream was.
5) Christopher Robin thought that the North Pole was just a pole _______ in the ground.
6) Piglet was lying on the ground, sleeping _______ .
7) Christopher Robin took out his _______ and rubbed Eeyore's tail.
8) "I shall be _______ to use my tail again in a day or two," said Eeyore.

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

1) At breakfast Winnie-the-Pooh (think) of a new song.
2) He (try) singing "Ho" two or three times, but it (not to help).

3) He (be) so pleased with the song that he (sing) it all the way.
4) When Pooh (see) Christopher Robin's boots he (know) that an adventure was going to happen.
5) Pooh (sit down) and (push) hard against Christopher Robin's back.
6) The first person Winnie-the-Pooh (meet) was Rabbit.
7) Then Pooh (to hurry) down to Piglet's house.
8) When all of them (be ready), the expedition (start).
9) Pooh (get up) and (look) around him.
10) Eeyore (begin) to eat the thistle.
11) Pooh (say) that he (find) the pole.

4 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) If Christopher Robin is coming I *don't mind* anything.
2) In a little while they were ready.
3) He *hurried off* to the front of the expedition.
4) The stream ran between high *rocky* banks.
5) Pooh brushed off the *prickles.*
6) They wanted to discover the North *Pole.*
7) Pooh was standing with a long *pole* in his paws.

5 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) One day Pooh went ____ the forest to see his friend Christopher Robin.
2) ____ breakfast that morning he thought ____ a new song.
3) He was so pleased ____ his song that he sang it all the way.

4) Christopher Robin was putting ____ his big boots.
5) Winnie-the-Pooh brushed the honey ____ his nose so as to look ready ____ anything.
6) Christopher Robin said that they were all going ____ an expedition.
7) Pooh was not sure if bears were any good ____ discovering the North Pole.
8) When Pooh left Rabbit he hurried down ____ Piglet's house.
9) ____ a little while everybody was ready, and the expedition started.
10) Kanga came ____ Roo ____ her pocket.
11) "Come ____ ," called Christopher Robin ____ the top of the line.
12) They came ____ a dangerous place.
13) The stream ran ____ high rocky banks.
14) They sat ____ ____ the grass and rested.

Discussing the Text

1 Explain why:

1) Pooh understood that something was going to happen when he saw Christopher Robin.
2) Christopher Robin was putting on his big boots.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh couldn't pronounce the word 'expedition'.
4) Pooh was so happy when he heard about provisions.
5) Pooh didn't talk to anybody as they walked.
6) they ate all their provisions at once.
7) Eeyore hung his tail over the pool.
8) Eeyore's tail lost all feeling.

2 Prove that:

1) Pooh thought that he was a very good poet.
2) Piglet trusted Christopher Robin.
3) Kanga wasn't interested in Owl's anecdote.
4) Eeyore was dumb a little.

3 What's your opinion?

When Baby Roo fell into the pool, everybody did something to help him to get out of the water. Read once more the part of the story in which the author describes their actions. Did all of them really help Roo? What would you do in such a situation?

4 Look at the sentences in "Who said it" Exercise 1 and describe the situations in which they were said in more detail.

5 Role-play.

Work in small groups and act out the part of the chapter in which Roo falls into the water and everybody helps him to get out of it.

Chapter Nine

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "Are there any other Poles that a bear of little brain can discover?"
2) "I say, Owl, isn't this fun? I'm on an island."
3) "The atmospheric conditions have been very unfavourable lately."
4) "I must say that it isn't just an ordinary sort of boat."
5) "I shall call this boat *The Brain of Pooh.*"

2 Say who:

1) was frightened and felt lonely.
2) wanted to discover the East Pole.
3) every morning put a stick in the place where the water came up to.
4) found Piglet's message.
5) rescued Piglet.

3 Say *true, false* or *I don't know.*

1) Piglet didn't like the fact that he was a small animal.
2) Piglet could swim but he didn't want to.
3) Pooh was walking when the rain began.
4) Pooh went out to discover the East Pole alone.
5) Winnie-the-Pooh discovered the East Pole.
6) There were fifteen pots of honey near Winnie-the-Pooh when he was sitting on the tree.

7) The letter "P" in Piglet's message meant Piglet but not Pooh.
8) Pooh used the biggest jar as a boat.
9) It was Owl who rescued Piglet.
10) Christopher Robin's umbrella was green.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) When the whole escape was over, Pooh was sitting on the branch with ten pots of honey.
2) He splashed to his door and looked out.
3) So he took a pot of honey and escaped with it to a branch of his tree.
4) When Winnie-the-Pooh woke up, the water was all around him.
5) But he couldn't read and decided to go to Christopher Robin.
6) Four days later he saw a bottle and jumped into the water.
7) He caught the bottle and climbed back to his tree again.
8) He understood that he had to escape.
9) Then he climbed down again and escaped with another pot.
10) Pooh took Piglet's message out and tried to read it.

5 Answer the questions.

1) What was the weather like?
2) What did Piglet suddenly remember? What did he decide to do?
3) What did he write on a small piece of dry paper? What did he do with the paper?

4) What did Pooh do when the rain began?
5) What did he decide to do when he splashed to the door and looked out?
6) Where did he escape to with ten pots of honey?
7) What came floating past Pooh on the fourth day?
8) Could Winnie-the-Pooh swim?
9) What good idea came to Winnie-the-Pooh?
10) What did he call his boat?
11) What was very exciting for Christopher Robin?
12) What did Christopher Robin ask Owl to do and why?
13) Did Owl find Winnie-the-Pooh in his house?
14) What sort of boat did Pooh want to float in to save Piglet? What did Christopher Robin call the new boat?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

corked ditches himself pity rescue desert called message

1) "It's a ________ I can't talk to anyone," thought Piglet.

2) The little dry _______ had become streams.
3) Christopher Robin told Piglet a story about a man on a _______ island.
4) Piglet wrote a _______ on a piece of paper.
5) He put the paper in a bottle and _____ the bottle.
6) Pooh went to discover the East Pole by _______ .
7) Pooh _______ his boat *The Floating Bear.*
8) Owl couldn't _______ Piglet on his back.

2 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

1) It was rather *exciting.*
2) "Isn't it *awful*, Piglet?"
3) Eeyore is always so *miserable.*
4) Winnie-the-Pooh had a *tiring* day.
5) He was very *tired* when he got home.
6) At last Pooh *was able* to sit on the top of the jar.

3 **Fill in the missing prepositions.**

1) Christopher Robin lived ____ the very top ____ the forest.
2) ____ the fifth day he saw the water all around him.
3) Christopher Robin thought that Piglet was ___ Pooh.
4) Pooh got ____ Christopher Robin ____ his boat.
5) He had a very important message that came ____ a bottle.
6) The message was ____ Piglet.
7) But there was nothing ____ Pooh in that message.
8) Christopher Robin understood that they had to rescue Piglet ____ once.
9) Pooh's boat was not just an ordinary sort ____ boat.
10) It was too small ____ two ____ them.

11) They decided that they could go ____ Christopher Robin's umbrella.
12) Piglet was very happy when ____ last he saw the ship.

4 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

1) Can, by, Rabbit, a, digging, hole, escape.
2) Eeyore, the, won't, rain, mind.
3) Asleep, was, the, when, began, Pooh, rain.
4) Nobody, Pooh, knows, discovered, the, not, or, East, whether, Pole.
5) Last, at, was, Pooh, of, to, able, jar, the, on, top, sit, the.

5 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

	thought	
		said
to tell		
	became	
		learnt
to leave		
	slept	
		woken
to read		
	flew	
		brought

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

6 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "I must have an escape," said Pooh.
2) "If a bottle can float, then a jar can float," said Pooh to himself.
3) "I hope he's all right," said Christopher Robin.
4) "How did you get here, Pooh?" asked Christopher Robin.
5) "I had a very important message that came in a bottle," said Pooh proudly.
6) "We must rescue Piglet at once!" said Christopher Robin.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

1) Piglet was frightened.
2) Piglet thought that it was unpleasant to be a very small animal fully surrounded by water.
3) Piglet thought that Eeyore wouldn't mind the rain.
4) Pooh was asleep when the rain began.
5) Pooh went to discover the East Pole by himself.
6) Pooh jumped into the water when he saw Piglet's bottle.
7) Pooh wanted to find Christopher Robin.
8) Christopher Robin was anxious when he knew that Pooh was not at home.

9) Christopher Robin thought that Winnie-the-Pooh was brave and clever.
10) Piglet was so happy when he saw the ship, *The Brain of Pooh.*

2 Prove that:

1) Piglet was cowardly.
2) Pooh was a courageous and industrious bear.

3 Add more details to this:

1) Piglet wrote a message and put it in a bottle.
2) Pooh tried to discover the East Pole.
3) Winnie-the-Pooh escaped to a tree.

4 Read and write.

1) What do you think the other animals were doing during the rain? Write a story about Kanga and Baby Roo, Rabbit, or Eeyore. Were they frightened?
2) What do you do when it rains for days? Do you like such weather? Imagine that you are all alone for five days of rain. What would you do?

5 Role-play.

Piglet was very happy to see the ship, *The Brain of Pooh,* and Pooh and Christopher Robin were glad to see their friend Piglet. They talked about those five days of rain. Act out their dialogue.

Chapter Ten

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

1) "Owl, I'm going to give a party."
2) "Will there be those little cakes?"
3) "Eeyore, Christopher Robin is giving a party."
4) "A mistake, no doubt, but I shall come. Only it may rain tomorrow."
5) "Drink up your milk first, dear, and talk afterwards."
6) "I say, I wonder what's going to happen exciting today?"

2 Say who:

1) asked Owl to tell everybody about the party.
2) thought that it was beneath him to talk about little cakes.
3) made a table out of some long pieces of wood.
4) sat on the grass at the party.
5) was not silent when Christopher Robin bumped on the table with his spoon.
6) gave Pooh a present.

3 Say *true*, *false* or *I don't know*.

1) The first person whom Owl told about the party was Pooh.
2) Eeyore was not invited to the party.
3) Baby Roo had been to parties many times before.

4) Pooh ate his favorite little cakes at the party.
5) It didn't rain during the party.
6) Pooh liked the present Christopher Robin gave him very much.
7) There were blue, red and green pencils in the pencil case.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

1) Owl flew off to invite Pooh, Eeyore and the others.
2) Christopher Robin said that he was going to give a party.
3) When they had all eaten enough, Christopher Robin gave a present to Pooh.
4) The next day all were assembled.
5) One day Owl came flying to Christopher Robin.
6) Pooh liked it very much.
7) They sat down to table and began to talk.
8) He asked Owl to tell everybody about that.
9) Later on they all said "Good-bye" and walked home together.
10) It was a special pencil case.

5 Answer the questions.

1) What sort of party was Christopher Robin going to give?
2) Whom did Christopher Robin ask to tell everybody about the party?
3) What was the name of Winnie-the-Pooh's song?
4) Did Eeyore believe that he was invited?
5) What table did Christopher Robin make?

6) Who sat at one end of the table? And who sat at the other end?
7) Who sat between Christopher Robin and Pooh?
8) Whom did Roo speak to?
9) What did Kanga say to Roo?
10) Whose party was it?
11) What was the present for Pooh, the best bear in the world?
12) Did Pooh like the present?
13) Who walked home together?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

1) There is an *invitation* for you.
2) You *mean* Piglet.
3) Piglet was too *busy* to say anything.
4) Everybody stopped talking, *except* Roo.
5) All those *lovely* things were for Pooh.

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

friendly together wise whistle pleased pieces

1) Christopher Robin whistled a special sort of ______ .
2) Owl tried to think of something ______ to say, but couldn't.
3) Christopher Robin made a long table out of some long ______ of wood.
4) "Hallo, my little fellow," said Owl in a ______ way.
5) Pooh nearly fell down when he saw the present, he was so ______ .
6) Pooh and Piglet went home ______ .

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

1) Winnie-the-Pooh saved Piglet ____ the flood.
2) Christopher Robin wanted to give a party ____ Pooh.
3) Christopher Robin sat ____ one end ____ the table, and Pooh sat ____ the other.
4) Owl, Eeyore and Piglet were ____ one side, and Rabbit, Roo and Kanga were ____ the other side.
5) All Rabbit's friends and relations sat ____ the grass.
6) It was the first party ____ which Roo had ever been.
7) Christopher Robin thought that Pooh was the best bear ____ all the world.
8) Piglet and Pooh were silent ____ a long time.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the events of the story.

to give	milk
to save	a present
to walk	a table
to sing	home
to invite	all of them
to make	Piglet
to drink	a song
to open	a party

**5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

1) Going, to, a, Christopher Robin, give, was, party.
2) Flew, about, Owl, off, the, to, party, the, tell, others.
3) Owl, want, talk, to, little, about, did, cakes, not.
4) It, a, of, because, was, party, Pooh's, ships, special, wonderful.
5) The, Pooh, not, did, string, cut.
6) In, there, pencils, to, the, was, a, sharpen, the, knife, pencil case.

**6 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?**

[aʊ]	down	owl	now	know	doubt	about
[əʊ]	open	go	those	tomorrow	close	some
[eɪ]	day	said	save	take	rain	say

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

1) "Christopher Robin is giving a party," said Owl.
2) "There is an invitation for you," said Owl to Eeyore.
3) "You mean Piglet," said Eeyore to Owl.
4) "Pass it down to Pooh," said Christopher Robin.
5) Piglet asked Pooh, "What's the first thing you say to yourself?"
6) "Did anything exciting happen?" asked Christopher Robin.

Discussing the Text

1 Explain why:

1) Christopher Robin was giving a party.
2) Winnie-the-Pooh was so happy to hear about the party.
3) Owl didn't answer Pooh's question about the little cakes.
4) Eeyore didn't believe that he was invited to the party.
5) Roo was so excited.
6) Pooh nearly fell down when he saw the present.
7) Pooh said that "What's for breakfast?" and "What's going to happen exciting today?" were the same.

2 Prove that:

1) Eeyore thought that nobody loved him.
2) Roo was very excited about his first party.
3) Pooh liked to eat.

3 **On behalf of one of the characters speak about:**

1) the party.
2) Christopher Robin's present for Pooh.

4 **Read and write.**

1) Imagine that Christopher Robin wrote an invitation card to everybody. Write it on behalf of Christopher Robin.
2) Imagine that Christopher Robin wrote a postcard for Winnie-the-Pooh and gave it to him with his present. In that postcard he wrote that Pooh was the best bear in all the world and that Christopher Robin loved him very much. Write it on behalf of Christopher Robin.

5 **Role-play.**

During the party all the animals talked a lot. What did they talk about? Write a dialogue between them and then act it out, working in small groups.

Dear Friend!

You have finished reading this book. Congratulations! We hope, you have enjoyed it.
Now, let's talk about it and its characters once again.

Questions and tasks for the final discussion.

1) Did you like the stories about Winnie-the-Pooh and his friends?
2) What character did you like most of all? Characterize him (her). Do you want to be like him (her)?
3) Was there any character that you didn't like? If there was, why? Characterize him (her).
4) What do you think about friendship between the characters of this book? Were they real friends? Try to remember the episodes which show that they loved one another and were ready to help in difficult situations. To which of the episodes can we apply the proverb "A friend in need is a friend indeed"? Do you remember any other proverbs about friendship and friends?
5) Did you like the songs and the hums Winnie-the-Pooh made up? Which of the variants did you like most, English or Russian? Have you ever tried to make up something like that? Were they in English or in Russian?
6) Which parts of the stories do you find funny, sad or exciting? Try to remember them in detail.
7) What part of the book did you like most of all? Act it out with your friends.
8) Try your hand at story writing. Can you imagine

in what else funny situations could Winnie-the-Pooh and his friends find themselves? Write a story. It can begin like this:

"One fine morning as Pooh was walking through the forest he met his friend Piglet..."

9) Do you want to say good-bye to Winnie-the-Pooh and his friends? If not, why?

Vocabulary

Принятые сокращения

a adjective — прилагательное
adv adverb — наречие
cj conjunction — союз
int interjection — междометие
n noun — существительное
num numeral — числительное
pl plural — множественное число
pron pronoun — местоимение
prep preposition — предлог
v verb — глагол
зд. — здесь

A

able ['eɪbl] *a* способный
be able to мочь
about [ə'baʊt] *adv* кругом, повсюду
accident ['æksɪdənt] *n* происшествие, случай, несчастный случай
acorn ['eɪkɔːn] *n* желудь
add [æd] *v* добавлять, прибавлять
admire [əd'maɪə] *v* любоваться, восхищаться
admiringly [əd'maɪərɪŋlɪ] *adv* восхищенно, восторженно
aim [eɪm] *v* целиться, прицелиться
alarm [ə'lɑːm] *n* тревога, волнение
aloud [ə'laʊd] *adv* вслух
anecdote ['ænɪkdəʊt] *n* анекдот
anxious ['æŋkʃəs] *a* озабоченный
anxiously ['æŋkʃəslɪ] *adv* с тревогой, с волнением
anyhow ['enɪhaʊ] *adv* так или иначе; во всяком случае
as [æz] *adv* как; *cj* в то время как
as... as так же... как
as if как будто
as soon as как только
attach [ə'tætʃ] *v* привязывать, прикреплять
awful ['ɔːf(ə)l] *a* ужасный, страшный

B

back [bæk] *n* спина; обратная сторона
balloon [bə'luːn] *n* воздушный шарик
bank [bæŋk] *n* берег (*реки*)
bath [bɑːθ] *n* ванна

have a bath принимать ванну
bed [bed] *n* кровать; русло реки
beech-tree ['bi:tʃtri:] *n* бук
behind [bɪ'haɪnd] *prep* сзади, позади, за
believe [bɪ'li:v] *v* полагать, думать
below [bɪ'ləʊ] *adv* ниже, внизу
bend [bend] *v* **(bent, bent)** гнуться, нагибаться, тянуться
bent [bent] *см.* **bend**
better ['betə] *adv* лучше
I'd better я бы лучше
between [bɪ'twi:n] *prep* между
bit [bɪt] *n* кусочек, частица
blackbird ['blækbɜ:d] *n* черный дрозд
blew [blu:] *см.* **blow**
blow [bləʊ] *v* **(blew, blown)** дуть
blow up надувать; взрываться
blown [bləʊn] *см.* **blow**
boot [bu:t] *n* ботинок, сапог
both [bəʊθ] *pron* оба
bother ['bɒðə] *v* беспокоить, раздражать
Bother! Какая досада!
bottle ['bɒtl] *n* бутылка
bottom ['bɒtəm] *n* дно, низ
at the bottom внизу
brain [breɪn] *n* ум, мудрость, мозг
branch [brɑ:ntʃ] *n* ветвь, ветка
breathe [bri:ð] *v* дышать
brighten ['braɪtn] *v* проясняться
brighten up просиять, засиять
bump [bʌmp] *n* глухой шум, удар; *v* ударить, биться о что-либо
bump, bump, bump *зд.* бум, бум, бум
burst [bɜ:st] *v* **(burst, burst)** взрываться
busily ['bɪzɪlɪ] *adv* деловито
buzz [bʌz] *v* жужжать
buzzing-noise жужжание
by [baɪ]: **by and by** постепенно, вскоре

C

call [kɔ:l] *v* звать
call out позвать
call on, upon навещать
came [keɪm] *см.* **come**
candle ['kændl] *n* свеча
capture ['kæptʃə] *v* захватить
carefully ['keəf(ə)lɪ] *adv* внимательно, тщательно
carelessly ['keəlɪslɪ] *adv* небрежно
case [keɪs] *n* случай
in case если, в случае если
chatter ['tʃætə] *v* разговаривать, болтать

cheer [tʃɪə] *n* одобрительное восклицание, ура!; *v* ободрять, поощрять
cheerful ['tʃɪəf(ə)l] *a* бодрый, веселящий
cheerfully ['tʃɪəf(ə)lɪ] *adv* бодро, весело
cheese [tʃi:z] *n* сыр
circle ['sɜ:kl] *n* круг
come [kʌm] *v* **(came, come)** приходить, приезжать
come along идти гулять
come on пошли, вперед
comfort ['kʌmfət] *v* утешать, успокаивать
comfortingly ['kʌmfətɪŋlɪ] *adv* успокаивающе, *зд.* в утешение
company ['kʌmpənɪ] *n* общество, компания
condensed [kən'denst] *a* сгущенный
condensed milk сгущенное молоко
continue [kən'tɪnju:] *v* продолжать
convenient [kən'vi:njənt] *a* удобный, подходящий
cork [kɔ:k] *n* пробка; *v* затыкать пробкой
cough [kɒf] *n* кашель; *v* кашлять
give a cough кашлянуть
cover ['kʌvə] *n* крышка
crack [kræk] *n* шум, треск
crack! трах!
crash [kræʃ] *v* падать, рушиться с треском
crawl [krɔ:l] *v* ползать
cross [krɒs] *v* пересекать(ся)
cry [kraɪ] *n* крик
cupboard ['kʌpbəd] *n* буфет, шкаф

D

damp [dæmp] *a* влажный, сырой
dandelion ['dændɪlaɪən] *n* одуванчик
deceive [dɪ'si:v] *v* обманывать
decide [dɪ'saɪd] *v* решать
depend [dɪ'pend] *v* зависеть
desert ['dezət] *a* пустынный, необитаемый
desert island необитаемый остров
difference ['dɪfərəns] *n* разница, различие
dig [dɪg] *v* **(dug, dug)** копать, рыть
direction [dɪ'rekʃn] *n* направление
directly [dɪ'rektlɪ] *adv* прямо, сейчас
discover [dɪs'kʌvə] *v* открывать, обнаруживать, раскрывать
discovery [dɪs'kʌvərɪ] *n* открытие
dish [dɪʃ] *n* посуда, блюдо, миска, тарелка

distance ['dɪstəns] *n* расстояние
ditch [dɪtʃ] *n* канава, ров
donkey ['dɒŋkɪ] *n* осел
doubt [daʊt] *n* сомнение; *v* сомневаться
downstairs [,daʊn'steəz] *adv* вниз по лестнице
dry [draɪ] *v* сушить, вытирать; *a* сухой
dug [dʌg] *см.* **dig**

E

either ['aɪðə] *pron* один из двух, тот или другой; *adv* также (*при отрицании*)
either... or или... или
end [end] *n* конец, окончание
enough [ɪ'nʌf] *a* достаточный; *adv* достаточно, довольно
escape [ɪs'keɪp] *v* избежать, спастись
even ['i:vən] *adv* даже
ever ['evə] *adv* всегда, когда-либо
exactly [ɪg'zæktlɪ] *adv* точно
except [ɪk'sept] *prep* исключая, кроме, за исключением
excite [ɪk'saɪt] *v* возбуждать, волновать
excitedly [ɪk'saɪtɪdlɪ] *adv* возбужденно
excuse [ɪks'kju:z] *v* извинять, прощать
expect [ɪks'pekt] *v* ожидать, надеяться
I expect so я так думаю
expedition [,ekspɪ'dɪʃn] *n* экспедиция
explain [ɪks'pleɪn] *v* объяснять

F

feet [fi:t] *pl от* **foot**
fellow ['feləʊ] *n* товарищ, собрат
fetch [fetʃ] *v* сходить за кем-либо, принести, достать
few [fju:] *adv* мало, немного
a few несколько, немного
fierce [fɪəs] *a* свирепый
find [faɪnd] *v* **(found, found)** находить
fire ['faɪə] *v* стрелять, выстрелить
first [fɜ:st]: **first of all** во-первых, сначала
at first во-первых, сначала
float [fləʊt] *v* плыть, всплыть; плыть по небу
float down спускаться
flood [flʌd] *n* наводнение; *v* затоплять, наводнять, выходить из берегов
follow ['fɒləʊ] *v* следовать
as follows в таком порядке, следующее
foot [fʊt] *n* (*pl* **feet**) ступня, нога (*ниже щиколотки*), лапа (*животного*); фут (= = *30,48 см*)

forward ['fɔ:wəd] *adv* вперед, дальше
found [faʊnd] *см.* **find**
frighten ['fraɪtn] *v* пугать
further ['fɜ:ðə] *adv* дальше

G

get [get] *v* **(got, got)** получить; становиться, стать
get thin похудеть
get off снимать
get to добираться до
glass [glɑ:s] *n* стекло; *зд.* зеркало
go [gəʊ] *v* **(went, gone)** идти, ехать
go on продолжать
gloomily ['glu:mɪlɪ] *adv* грустно, мрачно, печально
gloomy ['glu:mɪ] *a* грустный, мрачный, печальный
gorse-bush ['gɔ:sbʊʃ] *n* утесник (*колючий кустарник*)
graceful ['greɪsf(ə)l] *a* грациозный, изящный
gracefully ['greɪsf(ə)lɪ] *adv* грациозно, изящно
greedy ['gri:dɪ] *a* жадный
gun [gʌn] *n* ружье

H

half-light ['hɑ:flaɪt] *n зд.* слабый свет
handkerchief ['hæŋkətʃɪf] *n* носовой платок
hang [hæŋ] *v* **(hung, hung)** вешать, развешивать
hardly ['hɑ:dlɪ] *adv* едва, с трудом, едва ли
harm [hɑ:m] *n* зло
come to harm пострадать
headache ['hedeɪk] *n* головная боль
held [held] *см.* **hold**
helpful ['helpf(ə)l] *a* полезный
hit [hɪt] *v* **(hit, hit)** ударять, поражать; *зд.* попадать в цель
hold [həʊld] *v* **(held, held)** держать
hold on to something держаться за что-либо
hope [həʊp] *n* надежда; *v* надеяться
hum [hʌm] *n* гул; *зд.* бурчалка, песенка-ворчалка; *v* мурлыкать, бормотать, гудеть
hung [hʌŋ] *см.* **hang**
hurt [hɜ:t] *v* **(hurt, hurt)** причинить боль, повредить

I

idea [aɪ'dɪə] *n* идея, понятие, представление
imitate ['ɪmɪteɪt] *v* подражать
important [ɪm'pɔ:tənt] *a* важный, значительный
impossible [ɪm'pɒsəb(ə)l] *a* невозможный, невыполнимый

indeed [ɪn'di:d] *adv* в самом деле, действительно
inside [ɪn'saɪd] *n* внутренняя часть; *зд.* изнутри
invitation [,ɪnvɪ'teɪʃn] *n* приглашение
island ['aɪlənd] *n* остров

J

just [dʒʌst] *adv* только, точно, просто, как раз

K

knock [nɒk] *v* стучать
knocker ['nɒkə] *n* дверное кольцо, дверной молоток (*чтобы стучать в дверь*)

L

label ['leɪbl] *n* этикетка
larch-tree ['lɑ:tʃtri:] *n* лиственница
larder ['lɑ:də] *n* кладовая, кладовка
lead [li:d] *v* **(led, led)** вести, руководить
led [led] *см.* **lead**
let [let] *v* **(let, let)** оставлять, не трогать
let us (let's) давайте, дайте
let me help you разрешите вам помочь
let go отпустить
lick [lɪk] *n* незначительное количество; *v* лизать, лизнуть
lift [lɪft] *v* поднимать
line [laɪn] *n* линия, очередь; *зд.* цепочка
from the top of the line с головы цепочки
little ['lɪtl] *adv* мало, немного
a little немного
a little while недолго
lonely ['ləʊnlɪ] *adv* одиноко, грустно
loud [laʊd] *a* громкий
loudly ['laʊdlɪ] *adv* громко

M

manage ['mænɪdʒ] *v* править, справляться
manner ['mænə] *n* манера, образ действия
mark [mɑ:k] *n* след, заметка; *v* отмечать, делать заметки
mate [meɪt] *n мор.* помощник капитана
matter ['mætə] *n* дело, суть; *v* значить, иметь значение
It doesn't matter. Не имеет значения.
What's the matter? В чем дело?
medicine ['meds(ə)n] *n* лекарство
take medicine принимать лекарство

message ['mesɪdʒ] *n* сообщение, письмо, послание, поручение
mind [maɪnd] *v* помнить, заботиться, возражать, иметь что-либо против
Never mind. Ничего, не беспокойтесь.
I don't mind. Мне все равно.
miserable ['mɪzərəbl] *a* жалкий, несчастный
miserably ['mɪzərəblɪ] *adv* несчастно, жалко
miss [mɪs] *v* промахнуться, пропустить что-либо, не достичь цели
mistake [mɪs'teɪk] *n* ошибка
modestly ['mɒdəstlɪ] *adv* скромно
mole [məʊl] *n* крот
mouthful ['maʊθf(ə)l] *n* глоток
muddy ['mʌdɪ] *a* грязный
murmur ['mɜ:mə] *v* шептать, ворчать

N

nail [neɪl] *n* гвоздь; *v* прибивать, забивать
naturally ['nætʃərəlɪ] *adv* естественно
nearly ['nɪəlɪ] *adv* близко, почти
nephew ['nefju:] *n* племянник
nest [nest] *n* гнездо
nod [nɒd] *v* кивать
notice ['nəʊtɪs] *n* объявление, вывеска; *v* замечать, примечать

O

oak-tree ['əʊktri:] *n* дуб
once [wʌns] *adv* один раз, однажды
at once сейчас, сразу же
open ['əʊpən] *n* лужайка, полянка; *a* открытый
ordinary ['ɔ:dɪnərɪ] *a* обычный, простой
own [əʊn] *a* свой, собственный

P

particular [pə'tɪkjulə] *a* особенный, личный
pass [pɑ:s] *v* проходить
past [pɑ:st] *prep* мимо
path [pɑ:θ] *n* дорожка, тропинка
paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа
paw-mark ['pɔ:mɑ:k] *n* след лапы
peacefully ['pi:sf(ə)lɪ] *adv* мирно
perhaps [pə'hæps] *adv* может быть, возможно
person ['pɜ:sn] *n* человек
pick [pɪk] *v* подбирать, выбирать
pick up поднимать

pine [paın] *n* сосна
pit [pıt] *n* яма
pocket ['pɒkıt] *n* карман
poetry ['pəʊıtrı] *n* поэзия, стихи
point [pɔınt] *v* показывать, указывать
pole [pəʊl] *n* столб, шест; полюс
the North Pole Северный полюс
the South Pole Южный полюс
pot [pɒt] *n* горшок, сосуд
practical ['præktıkəl] *a* практичный
practice ['præktıs] *n* опыт, практика
practise ['præktıs] *v* тренировать, упражняться
preparation [ˌprepə'reıʃn] *n* приготовление, подготовка
pretend [prı'tend] *v* притворяться
prickle ['prıkl] *n* колючка
proudly ['praʊdlı] *adv* гордо
pull [pʊl] *v* тянуть, тащить, вытаскивать
push [pʊʃ] *v* толкать, проталкиваться; пропихиваться

Q

queen [kwi:n] *n* королева
quietly ['kwaıətlı] *adv* тихо, спокойно

R

rag [ræg] *n* тряпка, лоскут
reach [ri:tʃ] *v* достигнуть чего-либо, добраться; дотянуться
reach up протянуть руку
relation [rı'leıʃn] *n* родственник
remind [rı'maınd] *v* напоминать
rescue ['reskju:] *n* спасение, освобождение; *v* спасать, освобождать
go to the rescue помогать, приходить на помощь
residence ['rezıdəns] *n* местожительство, резиденция
rock [rɒk] *n* скала, большой камень
rocky ['rɒkı] *a* скалистый
roll [rəʊl] *v* катиться
rub [rʌb] *v* тереть

S

sad [sæd] *a* грустный, печальный
sandy ['sændı] *a* песчаный
scold [skəʊld] *v* ругать
scratch [skrætʃ] *v* чесать, почесать
scrub [skrʌb] *v* тереть
search [sɜ:tʃ] *v* искать, обыскивать
seem [si:m] *v* казаться

settle ['setl] *v* устраивать; решать
shake [ʃeık] *v* **(shook, shaken)** трясти
shake hands жать руку
shaken ['ʃeıkən] *см.* **shake**
sharpen ['ʃɑ:pən] *v* точить, заострять
shook [ʃʊk] *см.* **shake**
shoot [ʃu:t] *v* **(shot, shot)** стрелять, застрелить
shot [ʃɒt] *см.* **shoot**
shore [ʃɔ:] *n* берег
side [saıd] *n* сторона
sigh [saı] *n* вздох; *v* вздыхать
give a sigh вздохнуть
silent ['saılənt] *a* тихий, молчаливый
size [saız] *n* размер
slender ['slendə] *a* худой, тонкий
slightly ['slaıtlı] *adv* слегка, незначительно
slope [sləʊp] *n* склон
smell [smel] *v* **(smelt, smelt)** нюхать, слышать запах, пахнуть
smelt [smelt] *см.* **smell**
snack [snæk] *n* легкая закуска
so [səʊ] *adv* так, таким образом
so as чтобы
so that для того чтобы
solemn ['sɒləm] *a* торжественный
solemnly ['sɒləmlı] *adv* торжественно
sometime ['sʌmtaım] *adv* когда-то, прежде
somewhere ['sʌmweə] *adv* где-то, куда-нибудь
sort [sɔ:t] *n* род, сорт
a sort of что-то вроде
special ['speʃəl] *a* специальный, особенный, особый
spell [spel] *v* **(spelt, spelt)** писать
spelling ['spelıŋ] *n* орфография, правописание
spelt [spelt] *см.* **spell**
splash [splæʃ] *n* всплеск; *v* плескать, плескаться
spoil [spɔıl] *v* **(spoilt, spoilt)** портить
spoilt [spɔılt] *см.* **spoil**
squeak [skwi:k] *v* пищать, пропищать
starling ['stɑ:lıŋ] *n* скворец
start [stɑ:t] *v* начинать что-либо, стартовать
steal [sti:l] *v* **(stole, stolen)** воровать, красть
stick [stık] *v* **(stuck, stuck)** застрять; торчать
stiff [stıf] *a* негибкий, окостеневший
still [stıl] *adv* до сих пор, еще, по-прежнему
stole [stəʊl] *см.* **steal**
stolen ['stəʊlən] *см.* **steal**
stone [stəʊn] *n* камень

straight [streɪt] *a* прямой; *adv* прямо
stream [striːm] *n* ручей
stretch [stretʃ] *v* тянуться
stretch up вытягиваться
string [strɪŋ] *n* веревка, шнур, бечевка
stump [stʌmp] *v* ковылять, тяжело ступать; *зд.* топать
sudden ['sʌdn] *a* внезапный, неожиданный
superior [sjuː'pɪərɪə] *a* самодовольный, высокомерный
suppose [sə'pəʊz] *v* предполагать, полагать, думать
sure [ʃʊə] *a* верный, надежный
be (feel) sure быть уверенным
make sure удостовериться
surround [sə'raʊnd] *v* окружать
suspect [səs'pekt] *v* подозревать
sustain [səs'teɪn] *v* поддерживать, подкреплять

T

taste [teɪst] *v* пробовать
terrible ['terəbl] *a* ужасный, страшный
thaw [θɔː] *n* оттепель; *v* таять, оттаивать
thistle ['θɪsl] *n* чертополох
though [ðəʊ] *cj* хотя, несмотря на
thoughtful ['θɔːtf(ə)l] *a* задумчивый, глубокомысленный
tight [taɪt] *a* тугой, тесный
tight place затруднительное положение
tightly ['taɪtlɪ] *adv* прочно, крепко
toe [təʊ] *n* палец на ноге; носок (*ноги, башмака*)
together [tə'geðə] *adv* вместе
tongue [tʌŋ] *n* язык
top [tɒp] *n* верх, верхушка; *a* верхний
track [træk] *n* след; *v* выслеживать, идти по следу
trap [træp] *n* ловушка, западня
trickle ['trɪkl] *n* струйка; *v* течь тонкой струйкой
trot [trɒt] *v зд.* бежать, прыгать
trouble ['trʌbl] *n* неприятность, волнение
truth [truːθ] *n* правда
tell the truth говорить правду
twice [twaɪs] *adv* дважды, два раза

U

unhook [ʌn'hʊk] *v* развязывать, отвязывать
unless [ən'les] *cj* если не
until [ən'tɪl] *prep* до; *cj* до тех пор, пока не
use [juːz] *v* использовать, употреблять
useful ['juːsf(ə)l] *a* полезный, пригодный

V

valley ['vælɪ] *n* долина, равнина
verse [vɜːs] *n* стих, строфа

W

waterfall ['wɔːtəfɔːl] *n* водопад
wave [weɪv] *v* махать, размахивать
way [weɪ] *n* способ
by the way между прочим
whether ['weðə] *cj* ли
while [waɪl] *n* время, промежуток; *adv* пока, в то время как
a little while некоторое время
whiskers ['wɪskəz] *n* (*обыкн. pl*) усы
whisper ['wɪspə] *n* шепот
whistle ['wɪsl] *n* свист; *v* свистеть
wink [wɪŋk] *v* мигать, подмигивать
wipe [waɪp] *v* вытирать, утирать
wobble ['wɒb(ə)l] *v* качаться из стороны в сторону, ковылять
wonder ['wʌndə] *v* интересоваться, желать знать; удивляться
worse [wɜːs] *a* (*сравн. ст. от* **bad**) худший
why [waɪ] *int* ну, да

Y

yard [jɑːd] *n* ярд (*= 3 футам или 914,4 мм*)

Содержание

Winnie-the-Pooh

Activities

Учебное издание

Алан Александер Милн
ВИННИ-ПУХ

Адаптация текста, комментарий, словарь *К. В. Ингал*
Упражнения *Е. В. Кошмановой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *Н. А. Шлепанова*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *А. А. Гурьев*
Оформление обложки *М. А. Владимирская*
Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректоры *В. С. Добровинская, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 12.07.05. Формат 60×90/16.
Гарнитура «Таймс». Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 12. Усл.-печ. л. 12.
Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 1445.

ООО «Издательство "Айрис-пресс"»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

He had an extraordinary feeling
so difficult to describe,
and yet so real and
so unforgettable – the feeling
that he was in another world.
The feeling was very wonderful;
perhaps you will feel it some day.
There are still some places
in the world where it can be felt.



- Beginner
- Elementary
- Для начинающих

- Pre-Intermediate
- Для продолжающих первого уровня

- Intermediate
- Для продолжающих второго уровня

- Upper Intermediate
- Для продолжающих третьего уровня

- Advanced
- Для совершенствующихся

9785811229444

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение

Elementary

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Английский клуб

Эдит Несбит

Заколдованный ЗАМОК



Edith Nesbit

The Enchanted Castle

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Эдит Несбит

Заколдованный ЗАМОК

Адаптация текста, предисловие, комментарий, упражнения и словарь Е. В. Угаровой

МОСКВА

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Н55

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Несбит, Э.

Н55 Заколдованный замок / Эдит Несбит; адаптация текста, предисловие, коммент., упражнения, словарь Е. В. Угаровой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 128 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-2944-4

Данная книга представляет собой адаптацию повести английской писательницы Эдит Несбит (1858–1924) «Заколдованный замок». Эта книга, написанная в жанре фэнтези, рассказывает об удивительных приключениях обычных школьников, в распоряжении которых оказалось волшебное кольцо. Книга написана невероятно легким языком и держит в напряжении читателя на протяжении всего повествования.

После каждой главы приводится перевод новых слов на русский язык, а также упражнения, направленные на проверку понимания текста, отработку лексики и грамматических конструкций, развитие устной речи. Текст книги сопровождается постраничным комментарием.

Пособие предназначено учащимся школ, гимназий, лицеев, а также широкому кругу лиц, изучающих английский язык самостоятельно.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 978-5-8112-2944-4

Предисловие

Дорогие ребята!

Мы предлагаем вашему вниманию новую книгу для чтения из серии «Английский клуб» – повесть английской писательницы Эдит Несбит «Заколдованный замок». Книги Эдит Несбит еще мало известны у нас, но невероятно популярны в Англии. «Заколдованный замок» – это одно из лучших произведений в жанре фэнтези, написанных для детей. В нем рассказывается о приключениях четырех английских школьников во время детских каникул. Главными героями повести являются обычные дети, которым пришлось встретиться с волшебством, столкнуться с самыми невероятными персонажами и пережить немало страшных минут. Автор описывает произошедшие с ними удивительные события с большой симпатией и теплым юмором.

Мы надеемся, что чтение этой книги будет для вас не только интересным, но и полезным. Мы советуем пользоваться словариком и внимательно изучать комментарии, помещенные после каждой главы. Специально подобранные упражнения помогут вам выучить новые английские слова и выражения и научиться правильно употреблять их в речи.

Желаем успеха!



Part 1

There were three of them — Jerry, Jimmy, and Kathleen. Jerry's name was Gerald, and Jimmy's name was James; and Kathleen was never called by her name at all, but Cathy, or **Puss Cat**[1], when her brothers were pleased with her, and **Scratch Cat**[2] when they were not pleased. And they were at school in a little town in the West of England — the boys at one school, and the girl at another. They saw each other on Saturdays and Sundays at the house of a kind lady; but it was one of those important houses where it is impossible to play. So they ***looked forward*** to the holidays, when they would all go home. Then they could be together

[1] **Puss Cat** — Киска

[2] **Scratch Cat** — Кошка-Царапка

all day long and play in the house and ***explore*** the Hampshire forests and fields. Their Cousin Betty was expected there too. Betty got to the Hampshire home first, and the moment she got there **she began to have measles**[1], so that the three children couldn't go home at all. You may imagine their feelings. It was absolutely impossible to spend seven weeks at Miss Hervey's house, so all three wrote home and said so. This surprised their parents very much, because they had always thought the children liked to go to dear Miss Hervey's house. However, **they were 'jolly decent about it'**[2], as Jerry said, and let the boys go and stay at Kathleen's school, where there was no one except the French teacher.

'We must have some sort of play during the holidays,' said Kathleen, when she had unpacked and ***arranged*** the boys' clothes in the drawers, feeling very grown-up. 'Let's write a book about what schools really *are* like. People would read it and say how clever we were.'

'More likely ***expel*** us,' said Gerald. 'No; we'll have an out-of-doors game. We could get a cave and keep ***stores*** in it.'

'There aren't any caves,' said Jimmy. 'And, besides, Mademoiselle won't let us go out alone.'

'Don't worry,' said Gerald. 'I'll go and talk to her.'

It was a thin and interesting-looking boy that knocked at the door of the room where the French teacher sat reading a book. Gerald could always make himself look interesting when he met new grown-ups. It was done by opening his grey eyes rather wide, and having a nice expression.

'I hope I am not disturbing you,' said Gerald, when he came in.

'But no,' she said. 'What is it that you want?'

'I decided to come and say how do you do,' said Gerald, 'because you are **the lady of the house**[3].'

[1] **she began to have measles** — она схватила корь

[2] **they were jolly decent about it** — они поступили как порядочные люди

[3] **the lady of the house** — начальница школы

'You are a very polite little boy,' she said.

'Not at all,' said Gerald, more polite than ever. 'I am so sorry for you, because you'll have to look after us in the holidays.'

'But not at all,' said Mademoiselle in her turn. 'I am sure you will be very good children.'

'We'll try,' he said honestly. 'We don't want to give you any trouble at all. And I was thinking it would be less trouble for you if we could go out into the woods tomorrow and take our dinner with us — something cold, you know.'

Mademoiselle laughed and Gerald laughed too.

'Little deceiver!' she said. 'Why not say at once **you want to be free of overwatching**[1]?'

'You have to be careful with grown-ups,' said Gerald.

'Your parents, they permit these days at woods?'

'Oh, yes,' said Gerald truthfully.

'Then I will not be more a dragon than the parents.'

'Thank you!' said Gerald. 'Is there anything we can do for you — ***wind*** your wool, or find your spectacles, or —?'

'He thinks me a grandmother!' said Mademoiselle, laughing more than ever.

'Well, what luck?' the others asked.

'It's all right,' said Gerald. 'I told you it would be.'

'I don't believe you. She's too ***stern***,' said Kathleen.

'Ah!' said Gerald, 'that's only because **you don't know how to manage her**[2]. She wasn't stern with me.'

Next morning the children went to explore the woods.

'But are there any woods?' asked Kathleen as they passed the market-place.

'**It doesn't much matter about woods**[3],' said Gerald dreamily, 'I'm sure we'll find *something*. One of the boys told me his

[1] **you want to be free of overwatching** — вы хотите избавиться от моего надзора

[2] **you don't know how to manage her** — ты не умеешь правильно к ней подойти

[3] **It doesn't much matter about woods** — Это уж и не так важно

father said when he was a boy there was a little cave near the Salisbury Road; but he said there was an enchanted castle there too, so perhaps the cave isn't true either.'

Finally they came to a place where the road, as Gerald said, went two ways at once.

'*That* looks like adventures,' said Kathleen; and they turned to the right, then turned to the left, **so as to be quite fair**[1],' Jimmy said, and then to the right again and to the left again, and so on, till they were completely lost.

'*Completely*,' said Kathleen; 'how interesting!'

The adventurers decided to sit down and have something to eat. And as they sat and rested, Gerald ***leaned*** back against the bushes and almost fell over backward. He stood up and said. 'I couldn't feel anything but air, it's a hole there.' The other two pulled back the bushes. There certainly was a hole in the ***bank***. 'I'm going in,' said Gerald. He put his knee on a stone and disappeared.

'You all right?' asked Jimmy.

'Yes; come on.'

He helped Kathleen and Jimmy to get in.

'It *is* a cave,' said Kathleen.

They could see that they were in a dark stone cave three or four ***yards*** long, which turned then sharply to the right.

The adventurers turned the corner and saw a round ***arch***. They passed through the arch into a deep, narrow passage whose banks were of stones. On the top of the banks grew trees, and the sunlight came through their branches, turning the passage to a corridor of gold-green. At the end of it was another round arch, quite dark inside, above which rose rocks and grass and bushes.

'It's like a railway tunnel,' said James.

'It's the entrance to the enchanted castle,' said Kathleen.

At the dark arch they stopped.

'There are steps down,' said Jimmy.

[1] **so as to be quite fair** — ради равновесия

Very slowly and carefully they went down the steps. Gerald struck a match and they saw a passage, turning to the left. They went on, following their leader. The passage was very dark.

'I don't like it!' whispered Jimmy.

Then the children saw daylight that grew and grew. The passage finally ended in another arch. They passed through the arch and came to a marble terrace, which was white in the sunlight. It was a fantastic ***view*** like a picture out of a book about Italy. Immediately below them was a lake with swans and an island; beyond it were green ***slopes*** covered with trees, and amid the trees they saw white statues. To the left there was a round white building with ***pillars***, and to the right — a waterfall. Away across the grassy slopes they saw ***deer***.

'It is an enchanted castle,' said Kathleen.

'I don't see any castle,' said Jimmy.

'What do you call that, then?' Gerald pointed to white towers beyond the trees. 'It *is* an enchanted castle,' said Gerald.

'But there aren't any.' Jimmy was quite positive.

'How do you know? Do you think there's nothing in the world but what *you've* seen?'

'I think magic went out when people began to have steam-engines[1],' Jimmy insisted, 'and newspapers, and telephones.'

'Perhaps there's no magic because people don't believe in it any more,' said Kathleen.

'Well, don't let's ***spoil*** the show with any silly old not believing,' said Gerald with decision. 'I'm going to believe in magic as hard as I can. This is an enchanted garden, and that's an enchanted castle, and I'm going to explore them.'

There never was such a garden out of a picture or a fairy-tale. They passed quite close by the deer, who only raised their pretty heads to look, and were not afraid at all. Then they

---

[1] **I think magic went out when people began to have steam-engines** — Я думаю, волшебство закончилось после того, как изобрели паровоз

came into a rose-garden, red and pink and green and white in the sun, like a giant's many-coloured handkerchief.

The feeling of magic got thicker and thicker, till they were almost afraid of the sound of their feet in the great silent place. Beyond the rose garden was a ***hedge*** with an arch cut in it, and it was the beginning of a ***maze***.

It was impossible to get to the middle of the maze. Again and again they found themselves at the arch. It was when they found themselves there for the fourth time that Jimmy suddenly cried, 'Oh, where's the dinner?' And then in silence they all remembered that the basket with the dinner had been left at the entrance of the cave.

'Let's go back,' said Jimmy, 'now this minute, and get our things and have our dinner.'

'Let's have one more try at the maze. **I hate giving things up**[1],' said Gerald. What's that?'

'That' was a red cotton ***thread***. Gerald picked it up. One end of it was tied to a ***thimble*** with holes in it, and the other —

'There *is* no other end,' said Gerald, with firm triumph. 'It's a ***clue*** — that's what it is. I've always felt something magic would happen some day, and now it has.'

'I think the gardener put it there,' said Jimmy.

'With a Princess's silver thimble on it? Look! There's a crown on the thimble.'

There was.

'Come,' said Gerald, 'if you are adventurers be adventurers.'

He walked forward, winding the red thread round his fingers as he went. The red clue led them to the middle of the maze. There was a sun-dial there, and all round against the hedge a low, wide marble seat. The red clue ended in a small brown hand with rings on every finger. The hand belonged to a lady who lay on the stone seat asleep in the sun. She was wear-

---

[1] **I hate giving things up** — Терпеть не могу не доводить дело до конца

ing a wonderful rosy-gold silk dress; a thin white veil with silver stars covered the face.

'It's the enchanted Princess,' said Gerald, now really impressed. 'I told you so.'

'It's the Sleeping Beauty,' said Kathleen. 'It is — look how old-fashioned her clothes are. She has slept for a hundred years. Oh, Gerald, you're the eldest; you must be the Prince, and we never knew it.'

She very gently lifted the edge of the veil and turned it back. The Princess's face was small and white. It was surrounded by long black hair. Her nose was straight; there were a few ***freckles*** on cheekbones and nose.

'No wonder,' whispered Kathleen, 'sleeping all these years in all this sun! But she is lovely!'

'**Not so dusty**[1],' said Gerald.

'Now, Jerry,' said Kathleen firmly, 'You've got to kiss and wake the Princess.'

'Not me!' declared Gerald. '**She'd go for me the minute she woke up.**[2]'

'I can kiss her,' said Jimmy. 'I'm not a coward, like Some People.'

And before Gerald could say a word Jimmy loudly kissed the Princess on her pale cheek, and now the three stood breathless, waiting for the result.

And the result was that the Princess opened large, dark eyes, stretched out her arms, yawned a little, covering her mouth with a small brown hand, and said:

'Then the hundred years are over? Which of you is my Prince that woke me from my deep sleep?'

'I did,' said Jimmy fearlessly, for she did not look as though she were going to ***slap*** anyone. 'But you aren't really a Princess, are you?'

---

[1] **Not so dusty** — Да вроде не дурнушка

[2] **She'd go for me the minute she woke up.** — Она проснется и тут же набросится на меня.

'Of course I am,' she answered. 'Look at my crown!' She pulled aside the veil, and showed beneath it a crown decorated with diamonds.

'How did you get past the dragons?' asked the Princess.

Gerald ignored the question. 'I say,' he said, 'do you really believe in magic, and all that?'

'**I ought to, if anybody does**[1],' she said and showed a little scar on her wrist from the spindle.

'Then this really is an enchanted castle?'

'Of course it is,' said the Princess. 'How stupid you are!' She stood up.

'Let's go back to the castle,' she said, 'and I'll show you all my lovely jewels and things. Wouldn't you like that?'

'Yes,' said Gerald with hesitation. 'But —'

'But what?' The Princess's tone was ***impatient***.

'But we're most awfully hungry.'

'Oh, so am I!' cried the Princess. 'I haven't had anything to eat for a hundred years. Come along to the castle.'

'**The mice have eaten everything**[2],' said Jimmy sadly. He saw now that she really was a Princess.

'Not they,' cried the Princess. 'You forget everything's enchanted here. Time simply stood still for a hundred years.'

Helpful Words

look forward (to) *phr v* ожидать с нетерпением
explore *v* изучать, исследовать
arrange *v* приводить в порядок; устраивать
expel *v* исключать, выгонять
stores *n pl* припасы
wind *v* сматывать

---

[1] **I ought to, if anybody does** — Кому же не верить, как мне

[2] **The mice have eaten everything** — Там, наверное, уже всё съели мыши

stern *a* строгий
lean back *phr v* откидываться
bank *n* насыпь, берег
yard *n* ярд (мера длины, равная 91 см)
arch *n* арка
view *n* вид, пейзаж
slope *n* склон
pillar *n* колонна
deer (*pl* **deer**) *n* олень
spoil *v* портить
hedge *n* живая изгородь
maze *n* лабиринт
thread *n* нить
thimble *n* наперсток
clue *n зд.* путеводная нить
freckle *n* веснушка
slap *v* лупить
impatient *a* нетерпеливый

Exercises

1 Say who is:

a) Kathleen.
b) Betty.
c) Miss Hervey.
d) Mademoiselle.
e) the Princess.

2 Answer the questions.

a) Where and why did Jerry, Jimmy and Kathleen spend their summer holidays?
b) Who looked after the children at school?
c) Where did the children go next morning?
d) How did they find the cave?

e) What looked like a railway tunnel?
f) What helped the children to get to the middle of the maze?
g) Who woke the Sleeping Beauty?

3 Say why:

a) Mademoiselle was not stern with Gerald.
b) Gerald refused to kiss the Princess.
c) the Sleeping Beauty invited the children to her castle.

4 What do we call a person who:

a) deceives?
b) is fond of adventures?
c) works in a garden?
d) is not brave?

5 Choose the verbs from the box and use them in the sentences in the right form.

to permit to look forward to point to pick up to arrange

a) The children _________ to exciting adventures.
b) Mademoiselle _________ the children to go out to the woods.
c) Gerald _________ to the white towers of the enchanted castle.
d) Gerald _________ the red cotton thread tied to a silver thimble.
e) Kathleen unpacked her brothers' clothes and _________ them in the drawers.

6 **Write the words in the plural form.**

Example: a swan — swans

A cave, a deer, a handkerchief, an arch, a grown-up, a match, a sun-dial, a mouse.

7 **Draw the way to the enchanted castle and say how you can get there. Use the following phrases**:

The way starts at
First you should go
Then you should turn to the right (left)
Pass through the arch
Turn the corner

8 **Make a map of the park and describe it.**

9 **Jimmy said: 'The magic went out when people began to have steam-engines...' Do you agree with him? Do you believe in magic?**

10 **Describe the Princess and say what the children thought about her.**

Part 2

When the procession entered the castle the Princess turned to her guests.

'You just wait here a minute,' she said, 'and don't talk while I'm away. This castle is full of magic, and I don't know what will happen if you talk.' And with that she ran out, as Jimmy said afterwards, '**most unprincesslike**[1],' showing as she ran black stockings and black shoes.

[1] **most unprincesslike** — совсем не так, как подобает принцессе

Soon she returned with a tray, which held some bread and cheese and a jug of water.

'Come along,' said the Princess ***hospitably***. 'I couldn't find anything but bread and cheese — but it doesn't matter, because everything's magic here, and **unless you have some awful secret fault**[1] the bread and cheese will turn into anything you like. What *would* you like?' she asked Kathleen.

'Roast chicken,' said Kathleen, without hesitation.

The Princess cut a slice of bread and laid it on a dish.

'Green peas?' asked the Princess, cut a piece of cheese and laid it beside the bread.

Kathleen began to eat the bread, cutting it up with knife and fork as you would eat chicken. She didn't see any chicken and peas, or anything but cheese and dry bread.

'If I have an awful secret, it *is* a secret, even from me,' she told herself.

The others asked for roast beef and cabbage and got it, she supposed, though to her it only looked like dry bread and Dutch cheese. For herself the Princess chose a piece of roast ***peacock***.

'It's a game, isn't it?' asked Jimmy suddenly.

'What's a game?' asked the Princess, frowning.

'Pretending it's beef — the bread and cheese, I mean.'

'A game? But it *is* beef. Look at it,' said the Princess, opening her eyes very wide.

'Yes, of course,' said Jimmy. 'I was only joking.'

Bread and cheese is not perhaps so good as roast beef or chicken or peacock, but bread and cheese is, at any rate, very much better than nothing at all. Everyone ate and drank and felt much better.

'Now,' said the Princess, 'you can come and see my treasures.'

She got up and they followed her down the long hall to the great stone stairs. Under the stairs behind a heavy curtain there was a little door.

[1] **unless you have some dreadful secret fault** — если только у вас на совести нет какого-нибудь ужасного греха

'This is the door leading to my private apartments,' said the Princess.

She opened the door, and they went straight on — in the dark.

Soon they reached another door. The Princess took the key from the outside of the door, put it in the keyhole, and turned it.

The room they were in was small and high. Its ceiling was deep blue with gold stars. The walls were of wood, panelled, and there was no furniture in it at all.

'This,' said the Princess, 'is **my treasure chamber**[1].'

'But where,' asked Kathleen politely, '*are* the treasures?'

'Don't you see them?' asked the Princess.

'No, we don't,' said Jimmy. **'You don't come that bread-and-cheese game with me**[2] — not again!'

'If you really don't see them,' said the Princess, 'I suppose I shall have to say the ***charm***. Close your eyes, please. And give me your word of honour you won't look till I tell you, and that you'll never tell anyone what you've seen.'

The children gave their words of honour rather ***reluctantly*** and closed their eyes.

'Wiggadil yougadoo begadee leegadeeve nowgadow?' said the Princess rapidly. Then they heard a ***creaking*** noise.

'She's locking us in!' cried Jimmy.

'Your word of honour,' whispered Gerald.

'You may look,' said the voice of the Princess. And they looked. The room was not the same room, yet — yes, the blue ceiling was there, but now the walls sparkled with white and blue and red and green and gold and silver. There were shelves around the room, and on them were gold cups and silver dishes, and ***ornaments*** of gold and silver, tiaras of diamonds, necklaces of rubies, emeralds and pearls.

---

[1] **my treasure chamber** — комната, где я храню свои сокровища

[2] **You don't come that bread-and-cheese game with me** — И не рассчитывайте, что я снова буду играть в поддавки, как с хлебом и сыром

The three children remained breathless, open-mouthed, looking at the sparkling treasures all about them, while the Princess stood with a proud smile on her lips.

'Can I do magic, or can't I?' she asked triumphantly.

'You can; oh, you can!' said Kathleen.

'May we — may we *touch*?' asked Gerald.

'All that's mine is yours,' said the Princess, and added quickly, 'Only, of course, you mustn't take anything away with you.'

'We're not ***thieves***!' said Jimmy. The others were already turning over the wonderful things on the shelves.

'Perhaps not,' said the Princess, 'but you're a very unbelieving little boy. I say, let's all ***dress up*** and you be princes and princesses too.'

The children decorated themselves with diadems, necklaces, and rings.

Kathleen stood quite still with a diamond bracelet raised in her hand.

'I say,' she said. 'The King and Queen?'

'What King and Queen?' asked the Princess.

'Your father and mother,' said Kathleen. 'Won't they be wanting to see you, after a hundred years, you know?'

'Oh — ah — yes,' said the Princess slowly. 'I ***embraced*** my parents when I got the bread and cheese. They're having their dinner.'

'Look here,' said Gerald, 'if you're sure your father and mother don't expect you, let's go out and have a good game of something — unless you can do any more magic ***tricks***.'

'You forget,' said the Princess, 'I'm grown up. I don't play games. And I don't like to do too much magic at a time, it's so ***tiring***. Besides, we must put all these things back in their proper places.'

As Kathleen was putting the last shining ornament into its proper place, she saw more rings and ***brooches*** and chains and other things, and all were of ordinary metal.

'What's all this ***rubbish***?' she asked.

'Rubbish, indeed!' said the Princess. 'Why those are *all* magic things! This bracelet — anyone who wears it has got to speak the truth. This chain makes you as strong as ten men.'

'What does this brooch do?' asked Kathleen, reaching out her hand. The princess caught her by the wrist.

'You mustn't touch,' she said; 'if anyone but me touches them all the magic goes out at once and never comes back. That brooch will give you any wish you like.'

'And this ring?' Jimmy pointed.

'Oh, that makes you invisible.'

'I say,' said Gerald, excited. 'Could you show us how some of the things act? Couldn't you give us each a wish?'

'No,' said the Princess suddenly, '**It can't give wishes to *you*, it only gives me wishes**[1]. But I'll let you see the ring make *me* invisible. Only you must close your eyes while I do it.'

They closed them.

'***Count*** fifty,' said the Princess, 'and then you may look. And then you must close them again, and count fifty, and I'll reappear.'

Gerald counted, aloud. Through the counting they could hear a creaking sound.

'Forty-nine, fifty!' said Gerald, and they opened their eyes.

They were alone in the room. The jewels had disappeared and so had the Princess.

'That *is* magic,' said Kathleen breathlessly.

Gerald began counting again. He and Kathleen had both closed their eyes. But somehow Jimmy hadn't. He didn't mean to ***cheat***, he just forgot. And as Gerald's count reached twenty he saw a panel under the window open slowly.

'I knew it was a trick!' he said to himself and at once closed his eyes, like an honourable little boy.

---

[1] **It can't give wishes to *you*, it only gives me wishes** — Ваши желания брошка исполнить не может, потому что она выполняет только мои желания

On the word 'fifty' six eyes opened. And the panel was closed and there was no Princess.

'I believe there's a cupboard under the window,' said Jimmy, 'and she's hidden in it. Secret panel, you know.'

'You looked! That's cheating,' said the voice of the Princess so close to his ear that he quite jumped.

'I didn't cheat.'

Though the children heard her voice still there was no Princess to be seen.

'Come back again, Princess dear,' said Kathleen. 'Shall we close our eyes and count again?'

'Don't be silly!' said the voice of the Princess.

'We're not silly,' said Jimmy. 'You know you're only hiding.'

'If you're hiding, as Jimmy says, you'd better come out. If you've really turned invisible, you'd better make yourself visible again,' said Gerald.

'Do you really mean,' asked a voice quite changed, 'that you can't see me?'

'*No*, I tell you,' said Jimmy.

'You are really invisible. Look in the glass,' said Gerald.

There was a silence, and then the children heard a cry of despair.

'Oh — oh — oh! I am invisible. What shall I do?'

'Take the ring off,' said Kathleen, suddenly practical.

Another silence.

'I can't!' cried the Princess. '**It won't come off.**[1] But it can't be the ring. I was only playing at magic. I just hid in the secret cupboard — it was only a game. Oh, whatever *shall* I do?'

'A game?' said Gerald slowly; 'but you can do magic — the invisible jewels, and you made them come visible.'

'Oh, **it's only a secret spring and the panelling slides up**[2]. Oh, what shall I do!'

---

[1] **It won't come off.** — Оно не снимается.

[2] **it's only a secret spring and the panelling slides up** — если нажмешь на потайную пружинку, панель в стене сдвигается

'Don't cry, dear,' said Kathleen; 'let me go and tell the King and Queen.'

'The —?'

'Your royal father and mother.'

'Oh, ***don't mock*** me!' said the poor Princess. 'You *know* that was only a game, too, like —'

'Like the bread and cheese,' said Jimmy triumphantly. 'I knew *that* was!'

'But your dress and being asleep in the maze, and —'

'Oh, I dressed up for fun, because everyone's away at the ***fair***, and I put the clue just to make it all more real. I was playing at the Sleeping Beauty first, and then I heard you talking in the maze, and I thought what fun; and now I'm invisible, and I don't know what to do.

'But if you're not the Princess, who *are* you?' asked Kathleen.

'I'm — my aunt lives here,' said the invisible Princess. 'She may be home any time. Oh, what shall I do?'

'Perhaps she knows some charm —'

'Oh, nonsense!' said the voice sharply; 'she doesn't believe in charms. She would be so ***cross***.'

'Let's go out into the garden, near the lake, where it's cool, and we can discuss it,' Gerald said kindly. 'You'll like that, won't you?'

'Let's go down to the **Temple of Flora**[1], by the lake,' said the voice.

The three children and the invisible Princess went down to the white marble Temple of Flora that stood close against the side of the little hill, and sat down inside it. It was cool and quiet there.

'Well,' said Gerald, 'first of all, what's your name, and if you're not a Princess, who are you?'

'I'm — I'm,' said a crying voice, 'I'm the housekeeper's — niece — at — the — castle — and my name's Mabel Prowse.'

[1] **Temple of Flora** — Храм Флоры (Флора — древнеримская богиня весеннего цветения и цветов)

'That's exactly what I thought,' said Jimmy, without a shadow of truth, because how could he? The others were silent, because they didn't know what to think of it.

'Well, anyhow,' said Gerald, 'you live here.'

'Yes,' said the voice. 'Oh yes, I live here right enough, but what's the use of living anywhere if you're invisible?'

Helpful Words

hospitably *adv* гостеприимно
peacock *n* фазан
charm *n* заклинание; колдовские чары
reluctantly *adv* неохотно
creaking *a* скрипучий
ornament *n* украшение
thief (*pl* **thieves**) *n* вор
dress up *phr v* наряжаться
embrace *v* обнимать
tiring *a* утомительный
brooch *n* брошка
rubbish *n* мусор, хлам
count *v* считать
cheat *v* мошенничать, обманывать
trick *n* трюк; шутка; уловка
mock *v* насмехаться
fair *n* ярмарка
cross *a* сердитый

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What kind of food did the Princess give to her guests?
b) Where did she take them after dinner?

c) What treasures did the Princess show to the children?
d) How did the Princess turn invisible?
e) Why couldn't she become visible again?
f) What is the real name of the Princess?

2 **Say who:**

a) chose roast beef and cabbage for dinner.
b) said the charms.
c) saw rings and chains of ordinary metal.
d) hid in the secret cupboard.
e) went to the marble Temple of Flora.

3 **Choose the right ending.**

a) Gerald and Kathleen agreed to pretend that the dry bread and cheese were roast beef and chicken because
   1) they were terribly hungry.
   2) they were afraid of the Princess.
   3) they were too polite to tell the truth.

b) Jimmy didn't close his eyes because
   1) he wanted to cheat.
   2) he forgot about it.
   3) he had a problem with his eyes.

c) Mabel dressed up as a Princess because
   1) she decided to play at a Sleeping Beauty.
   2) her aunt was at the fair and couldn't stop her.
   3) she had no other clothes.

4 **Translate into English the word combinations and phrases with the word *magic*.**

Здесь всё волшебное.
волшебное кольцо
Волшебство исчезнет и никогда не появится снова.
играть в волшебство

5 **Fill in the prepositions *of, with, in, for, off*.**

a) Kathleen asked Mabel to take ______ the magic ring.
b) Mabel's aunt didn't believe ______ charms.
c) The children decorated themselves ______ jewels.
d) The castle is full ______ magic.
e) Mabel dressed up as a princess ______ fun.

6 **Complete the chart.**

take	took	taken	брать
lay	______	______	класть
______	______	______	резать
catch	______	caught	______
hide	______	______	______

7 **Say which word does not go with the others and why.**

a) chicken, cheese, peacock, beef
b) bracelet, ring, necklace, dish
c) triumphantly, practical, cross, shining
d) to cheat, to count, to cut, to come

8 **Imagine that you are Mabel. Say:**

a) how you spent the summer holidays.
b) what happened that day.
c) what you felt when you became invisible.

9 **Mabel told the children that they couldn't touch the magic things. Why do you think she said that? Do you believe her?**

10 **Imagine that you are Jimmy. What made you think that the Princess's magic was a trick?**



Part 3

'You'll have to tell your aunt,' said Kathleen kindly.

'No, no, no!' ***moaned*** Mabel invisibly; 'take me with you. I don't think that my aunt likes me very much. I'll leave her a note to say I've run away to sea.'

'Girls don't run away to sea.'

'Well, what shall I do?'

'Really,' said Gerald, 'I don't know what the girl *can* do. Let her come home with us and have —'

'Tea — oh, yes,' said Jimmy, jumping up.

'And have a good discussion.'

'After tea,' said Jimmy.

'But the aunt will think something's happened to her.'

'So it has.'

'And she'll tell the police, and they'll look everywhere for me.'

'They'll never find you,' said Gerald.

'I'm sure,' said Mabel, 'aunt would rather never see me again than see me like this. It might kill her. I'll write to her, and we'll put it in the big letter-box at the gate as we go out. Has anyone got a pencil and paper?'

Gerald tore a page out of the note-book and gave Mabel a small pencil. The pencil began writing, forming round, clear letters on the page. This is what it wrote:

'Dear Aunt,

'I am afraid you will not see me again for some time. A lady in a car has ***adopted*** *me, and we are going straight to the coast and then in a ship. It is useless to try to follow me. Good-bye. I hope you enjoyed the fair.*

Mabel.'

'But that's all lies,' said Jimmy.

'No, it isn't; it's ***fancy***,' said Mabel. 'If I said I've become invisible, she'd think that was a lie, anyhow.'

Mabel led the children by another and very much nearer way out of the park. As they got back to school, the first drops of rain fell.

Mademoiselle came herself to open the door.

'You are late!' she cried. 'All goes well?'

'We are very sorry,' said Gerald. 'It took us longer to get home than we expected.'

The children sat down to supper. There were only three plates, but Jimmy let Mabel have his. It was strange to see the bread and butter flying about in the air, and bite after bite disappearing; and the spoon rising with baked apple in it and returning to the plate empty.

Everyone was very hungry, and asked for more bread and butter. Cook ***grumbled*** when the plate was filled for the third time.

'It'll be difficult to give Mabel any breakfast,' said Gerald; 'Mademoiselle will be here then. She'd have a ***fit*** if she saw bits of bacon fly in the air and disappear.'

'We shall have to buy things for Mabel to eat in secret,' said Kathleen.

'**Our money won't last long**[1],' said Jimmy. 'Have you got any money?'

'I've not got much money,' was Mabel's reply, 'but I've got a lot of ideas.'

'We will talk about everything in the morning,' said Kathleen. 'We must just say good night to Mademoiselle, and then you shall sleep in my bed, Mabel. I'll give you one of my nightgowns.'

It was extremely strange, Kathleen thought, to see the Princess's clothes coming out of nothing. First the veil appeared hanging in the air. Then the sparkling crown suddenly showed on the table. Then a sleeve of the pinky dress showed, then another, and then the whole dress lay on the floor. Each piece of clothes became visible as Mabel took it off. The nightgown, lifted from the bed, disappeared a bit at a time.

Kathleen was just getting sleepy when she remembered that the ***maid*** who would come in the morning would see those wonderful Princess clothes.

'I'll have to get up and hide them,' she said.

And as she lay thinking about it she fell asleep, and when she woke again it was bright morning, and Eliza was standing in front of the chair where Mabel's clothes lay, looking at the pink dress.

'Oh, don't touch, please!' cried Kathleen.

'Where did you get that?'

'**We're going to use it for acting**[2],' invented Kathleen. 'It's given me for that.'

Here a bell rang and Eliza had to go, because it was the postman, and she particularly wanted to see him.

'And now,' said Kathleen, pulling on her first stocking, 'we shall have to *do* the acting. Everything seems very difficult.'

---

[1] **Our money won't last long** — Нам никаких денег не хватит

[2] **We're going to use it for acting** — Нам это нужно для спектакля

'Acting isn't,' said Mabel; and a stocking disappeared in the air. 'I shall love it.'

'You forget,' said Kathleen, 'invisible actresses can't take part in plays unless they're magic ones.'

'Oh,' cried a voice, 'I've got such an idea!'

'Tell it us after breakfast,' said Kathleen.

She brought Mabel a piece of bread taken by Gerald from the ***pantry***. Mabel ate the bread and drank water from the tooth-mug.

'I'm afraid it tastes of cherry tooth-paste,' said Kathleen apologetically.

'It doesn't matter,' replied Mabel; 'it's more interesting than water. I think red wine in ballads was rather like this.'

'We're going to tell your aunt where you really are,' said Kathleen.

'She won't believe you. I expect you'll be sorry for it,' said Mabel; 'but come on and, I say, **do be careful not to shut me in the door as you go out**[1]. You nearly did just now.'

Mabel's aunt was reading a pink novel at the window of the housekeeper's room.

'Excuse me,' said Gerald, 'but I believe you've lost your niece?'

'Not lost, my boy,' said the aunt, who was thin and tall.

'We could tell you something about her,' said Gerald.

'No complaints, please,' replied the aunt. 'My niece has gone. **If she's played any tricks on you it's only her light-hearted way.**[2] Go away, children, I'm busy.'

'Did you get her note?' asked Kathleen.

The aunt showed more interest than before, but she still kept her finger in the novel.

---

[1] **do be careful not to shut me in the door as you go out** — только, пожалуйста, не пришиби меня дверью

[2] **If she's played any tricks on you, it's only her light-hearted way.** — Если она сыграла с вами злую шутку, то из-за своего легкомыслия.

'Oh,' she said, 'so you saw her leave? Did she seem glad to go?'

'Quite,' said Gerald truthfully.

'These romantic adventures do occur in our family,' said the aunt. 'Lord Yalding selected me out of eleven candidates for the post of housekeeper here. I have no doubt the child was changed at birth and her rich relatives have found her.'

'Your Mabel's invisible,' said Jimmy. 'She's just beside me now.'

'I hate lies,' said the aunt, 'in all its forms. Will you kindly take that little boy away? I am quite satisfied about Mabel.'

'But what will Mabel's father and mother say?' asked Gerald.

'Mabel's father and mother are dead,' said the aunt calmly.

'All right,' he said, 'we'll leave. But don't say we didn't tell you the truth, that's all.'

'You have told me nothing,' said the aunt, 'none of you, except that little boy, who has told me a silly lie. Good-bye.'

And on this they got away quickly.

'Why,' said Gerald, when they were outside the little court, 'your aunt's mad. She doesn't care what becomes of you and believes that nonsense about the lady in a car!'

'I knew she'd believe it when I wrote it,' said Mabel. 'She's not mad, only she's always reading novels. Now I'll tell you my great idea. I'm not ungrateful, but I'm rather hungry. And you can't always take things for me from the pantry. If you like, I'll go back and live in the castle together with the ghosts. I am a sort of ghost now, you know.'

'Oh no,' said Kathleen kindly; 'you must stay with us.'

'If you could get the ring off, you could go back,' said Jimmy.

'Yes, but I can't. I tried again last night and again this morning,' said Mabel's voice. 'What I mean to say — now that I am invisible we can have adventures.'

' "Adventures," said the brave pirate, "are not always ***profitable***." ' It was Gerald who said this.

'This one will be. Look here, if Jerry could make himself look common, he could go to the fair and **do conjuring**[1].'

'He doesn't know any,' said Kathleen.

'*I* should do it really,' said Mabel, 'but Jerry could look like doing it. Move things without touching them and all that. Only you mustn't all go. People may wonder what children are doing all alone by themselves.'

'Don't show that you know me,' said Gerald, 'try to look as if you came to the fair with grown-ups. If you don't, some kind policemen will take the little lost children by the hand and lead them home to parents — the French teacher, I mean.'

'Let's go now,' said the voice. So they went.

The fair was held about half a mile from the castle gates. When they got near enough Gerald went ahead to get something to eat. He brought some nuts, red apples, small yellow pears, sweets and two bottles of **ginger-beer**[2].

They ate and drank. The boys were never tired of seeing Mabel eat, or rather of seeing the strange, magic-looking disappearance of food which was all that showed of Mabel's eating.

'I'm sure **it will knock them**[3]!' said Gerald, again and again.

It did.

Jimmy and Kathleen were the first to go to the fair. Soon they saw a strange figure with its hands in its pockets. It was Gerald, but at first they hardly recognized him. He had taken off his tie, and round his head, like a turban, was the red school-scarf. And his face and hands were bright black!

Everyone turned to look at him.

Gerald went up close to a long-faced woman who was sitting at the door of a small tent.

'I'm a conjurer, from India,' said Gerald.

---

[1] **do conjuring** — показывать фокусы

[2] **ginger-beer** — имбирный лимонад (шипучий безалкогольный напиток с имбирем)

[3] **it will knock them** — их это потрясет

'Not you!' said the woman; 'the backs of your ears are all white.'

'Are they?' said Gerald. 'How clever of you to see that!' He rubbed them with his hands. 'That better?'

'That's all right. What do you do?'

'Conjuring,' said Gerald. 'Look here, **if you help me with the show I'll go shares**[1].

'Let's first see how you do conjuring, since you're so clever.'

'Right you are,' said Gerald firmly. 'You see this apple? Well, I'll make it move slowly through the air, and then when I say "Go!" it'll disappear.'

'Yes — into your mouth! Get away with your nonsense.'

He held out one of the little apples, and the woman saw it move slowly along the air.

'Now — *go*!' cried Gerald, to the apple, and it went. 'How's that?' he asked, in tones of triumph.

The woman was excited. 'The best I ever saw!' she whispered. **'I'm on, mate**[2], if you know any more tricks like that.'

'A lot,' said Gerald. Then he asked: 'Will you give me your shawl?' She gave him a red and black shawl, and he spread it on the ground and **seated himself cross-legged**[3] behind it. The woman got a drum from the inside of the tent and beat it.

Quite soon a little crowd gathered.

'Ladies and gentlemen,' said Gerald, 'I come from India, and I can do tricks which you've never seen. When I see two shillings on the shawl I'll begin.'

A few pennies fell on the shawl.

'Ninepence,' said Gerald. 'Well, I've got a ***generous*** nature. I don't wish to deceive you — I have an assistant, but my assistant is invisible.'

---

[1] **if you help me with the show I'll go shares** — если вы мне поможете устроить представление, мы поделим заработанные деньги пополам

[2] **I'm on, mate** — Я в деле, приятель

[3] **seated himself cross-legged** — сам сел по-турецки

The crowd laughed.

'Now,' said he, laying the nine pennies down on the shawl, 'you keep your eyes on those pennies, and one by one you'll see them disappear.'

And of course they did. Then one by one they were laid down again by the invisible hand of Mabel. 'Bravo!' 'Show us another!' cried the people.

'Now,' said Gerald, 'you've seen what I can do, but I don't do any more till I see five shillings on this carpet.'

And in two minutes seven shillings lay there and Gerald did a little more conjuring.

The news of the conjurer had spread all over the fair. More people came to look at him. The woman stood, looking more and more pleasant as she saw the money and beat her drum every time Gerald stopped conjuring.

It was getting quite late, and Gerald, who was very tired and quite satisfied with his ***share*** of the money, was wondering how to get out of it.

'They'll never let us get away. I didn't think of that before,' he whispered to Mabel.

She thought and told him what to do.

Gerald asked the woman to divide the money, which she did honestly enough.

'Now,' he said, 'I'll give you five shillings for your shawl.'

'Seven shillings,' said the woman mechanically.

'***Righto***!' said Gerald, putting his heavy share of the money in his trouser pocket.

'This shawl will now disappear,' he said, picking it up. He gave it to Mabel, who put it on; and, of course, it disappeared. The audience was impressed.

'Now,' he said, 'I come to the last trick of all. I shall take three steps backwards and disappear. He took three steps backwards, Mabel put the invisible shawl round him, and he did not disappear. The invisible shawl couldn't make him invisible.

'Yah!' cried a boy's voice in the crowd. 'Look at him! He knows he can't do it.'

The crowd was crowding closer. At any moment they might touch Mabel, and then anything might happen — simply anything.

'Oh!' whispered Mabel suddenly, 'I can get it off.'

'Not —'

'Yes — the ring.'

'Come on, young master. Give us something for our money,' a farmer shouted.

'I will,' said Gerald. 'This time I really will disappear. Go into the tent,' he whispered to Mabel. 'Push the ring under the canvas. Then go away and join the others. When I see you with them I'll disappear. Go slow, and I'll ***catch*** you ***up***.'

'It's me,' said a pale and real Mabel in the ear of Kathleen. 'He's got the ring; come on, before the crowd begins to shout.'

As they went out of the gate they heard the shouting of surprise, and knew that this time Gerald really *had* disappeared.

Later they heard footsteps on the road, and next moment Gerald's voice spoke.

'Hello!' it said ***gloomily***.

'You made me jump! Take my ring off!'

'It's not yours any more than ours, anyhow,' said Jimmy.

'Yes, it is,' said Mabel.

'Oh, stop it!' said the tired voice of Gerald beside her. 'You can't have the ring. *I can't get it off!*'

Helpful Words

moan *v* стонать
adopt *v* усыновлять, удочерять
fancy *n* фантазия
grumble *v* ворчать
fit *n* приступ
maid *n* служанка

pantry *n* кладовка
profitable *a* выгодный
generous *a* щедрый
share *n* доля
righto *int* идет, согласен
catch (smb) up *phr v* догнать (кого-л.)
gloomily *adv* мрачно

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why didn't Mabel want to talk to her aunt?
b) What kind of note did she write to her?
c) How did Kathleen explain to Eliza Mabel's clothes?
d) What did the children tell Mabel's aunt?
e) What did she think of their explanations?
f) What was Mabel's great idea?
g) What did the children do at the fair?
h) What did Gerald look like then?
i) What did he do to get away from the crowd?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Gerald asked the woman with the drum to divide the money.
b) The children sat down to supper.
c) Mabel put the invisible shawl round Gerald.
d) The sparkling crown suddenly showed on the table.
e) The woman got a drum from the tent and beat it.
f) Mabel ate the bread and drank water from the tooth-mug.
g) Gerald went up close to a long-faced woman.

3 Complete the sentences.

a) Jimmy wanted to have a good discussion after supper because _________.

b) The children needed money because _________.
c) Gerald thought that Mabel's aunt was mad because _________.
d) Gerald didn't disappear when Mabel put the invisible shawl round him because _________.
e) Gerald couldn't return the ring to Mabel because _________.

4 Find in the text the English for:

Вода пахнет вишневой зубной пастой.
Ребенка подменили при рождении.
привидение
показывать фокусы

5 Match the words and their definitions.

a) a share	1) a sea-robber
b) an assistant	2) a musical instrument played by beating with sticks
c) a pirate	3) a person who helps to do something
d) tooth-paste	4) a part of something that belongs to more than one person
e) a drum	5) a paste used for cleaning the teeth

6 Fill in the gaps with the names of clothes used in the text in the singular or plural form.

a) Kathleen gave Mabel one of her own _________.
b) Eliza was standing in front of the chair looking at Mabel's pink _________.
c) Gerald was wearing his red _________ like a turban.
d) The woman gave Gerald a red and black _________ and he spread it on the ground.
e) Gerald put his share of money in the pocket of his _________.

7 What did you learn about Mabel and her family? What's your impression of Mabel's aunt?

8 What do you think of Mabel's letter to her aunt? What would you write if you were Mabel?

9 Describe Gerald's performance as a conjurer using the following word combinations.

to move things without touching them
to do tricks
to sit crossed-legged
to make things disappear
to lay pennies on the shawl

10 "Adventures," said the brave pirate, "are not always profitable." How do you understand this phrase?

Part 4

The difficulty was not only that Gerald was invisible now, but that Mabel who was no more invisible couldn't get into the house.

'I can't go back to aunt. I can't and I won't,' said Mabel firmly.

'But what shall we say to Mademoiselle about you —!' said Gerald.

'You could tell the truth,' said Mabel.

'She wouldn't believe it,' said Cathy.

'No,' said Gerald's voice, 'we can't *tell* her. But she's really nice. Let's ask her to let you stay the night because it's too late for you to get home.'

'That's all right,' said Jimmy, 'but what about you?'

'I shall go to bed,' said Gerald, 'with a ***headache***. Oh, *that*'s not a lie! I've got one right enough.'

'I'd do something different from going to bed with a silly headache,' said Jimmy unkindly.

'What would you do?' asked the voice of Gerald.

'I'd be a ***burglar***,' said Jimmy.

Cathy and Mabel reminded him how wrong it was, and Jimmy replied:

'Well, then — a detective.'

'It's exactly what I am going to do,' said Gerald. **'We'll go to the police-station and see what they've got in the way of crimes.**[1]'

They did, and read the ***notices*** on the board outside. Two dogs had been lost and a purse. Also someone had stolen many silver plates. **'Twenty pounds reward offered for any information that may lead to the recovery of the missing property.**[2]'

'I'll detect that,' said Gerald; 'Here comes Johnson,' he added; 'Ask him about it, Jimmy.'

'Hello, Johnson!' he said.

And Johnson replied: 'Hello. What are you doing here this time of night?' the constable asked. 'You should be at home now.'

'We've been to the fair,' said Kathleen. 'There was an unusual conjurer there.'

'Heard about him,' said Johnson; 'all ***fake***, you know.'

Such is fame. Gerald, standing in the shadow, ***jingled*** the money in his pocket.

'What's that?' the policeman asked quickly.

'Our money jingling,' said Jimmy, with perfect truth.

'It's well to have pockets full of money,' said Johnson remarked.

'Well, why haven't you?' asked Mabel. 'Why don't you get that twenty pounds reward?'

---

[1] **We'll go to the police-station and see what they've got in the way of crimes.** — Мы отправимся в полицию и посмотрим, какие у них для нас найдутся преступления.

[2] **Twenty pounds reward offered for any information that may lead to the recovery of the missing property.** — Вознаграждение в двадцать фунтов будет выплачено любому, кто предоставит информацию, способствовующую возвращению украденного.

'I'll tell you why I don't. Because you can't arrest a person **on suspicion**[1], even if you know well who did the job.'

'And who do you think did it?' asked Jimmy.'

'I don't think — I know. It's a man known to the police for many crimes he's done, but we never can get enough ***evidence*** against him.'

'Well,' said Jimmy, 'after school I'll come to you and be a detective. Just now I think we'd better go home and detect our supper. Good night!'

When the policeman disappeared in the police-station, they heard Gerald's voice.

'You've no more brains than a halfpenny bun[2],' he said; 'no details about how and when the silver was taken.'

'But he told us he knew,' said Jimmy.

'Yes, that's all you've got out of him. Go home and detect your supper! It's all you can do.'

'What'll you do about supper?' Mabel asked.

'Buns!' said Gerald, 'halfpenny buns. I hope you can buy buns? I can't go into a shop in this state.'

While Cathy and Jimmy were in the shop, Gerald spoke to Mabel about his plans of starting a detective career.

'The invisible detective may not only find out about the purse and the silver, but detect some crime that isn't even done yet. I can follow suspiciously-looking people and **catch them red-handed**[3].'

'Oh!' suddenly cried Mabel. 'Oh, how awful! I never thought of that before.'

'Never thought of *what*?' asked Gerald.

'The window.'

'What window?'

---

[1] **on suspicion** — на основании одних подозрений

[2] **You've no more brains than a halfpenny bun** — У тебя мозгов не больше, чем у булочки за полпенса

[3] **catch them red-handed** — поймать их с поличным

'The panelled-room window. At the castle. We left it open, and all the jewels and things there. Aunt never goes in. I must go home now this minute.'

When the others came out of the shop, the situation was explained to them.

'Aunt will be cross,' said Mabel sadly. 'As we left the key inside the door, she'll have to ask the gardeners to get a ***ladder*** and —'

'I can help you!' said Gerald. 'I'll climb in, close the window and get out.'

'Won't you be afraid?' Mabel asked. 'You can be caught?'

'No, I can't be,' answered Gerald. He expected the question about danger from Kathleen, but all Kathleen said was, 'Well, good-bye; we'll come and see you tomorrow, Mabel. The Temple of Flora at half-past ten.'

'Leave the pantry window open for me so I can get in when I've done my detecting,' said Gerald gloomily. Then he took the bag with the buns and caught Mabel's hand. 'Come on, Mabel.'

Jimmy and Kathleen explained to Mademoiselle that Jerry had a headache and couldn't come to supper. After supper they went to bed. They didn't worry at all about their brother.

It was the aunt herself who opened the door to a very pale Mabel. She made a step towards Mabel.

'You naughty, naughty girl!' she cried angrily; 'how could you do this to me? Oh, Mabel, thank Heaven you're safe!' And with that the aunt's arms went round Mabel and Mabel's round the aunt as if they had never met before.

'But you didn't seem to care about me this morning,' said Mabel.

'How do you know?'

'I was there listening. Don't be angry, auntie.'

'My dear,' said the aunt slowly, 'I've been in a sort of trance. I've always been fond of you, but I didn't want to ***spoil*** you. But yesterday quite suddenly I felt as if you didn't matter at all. I felt the same when I got your letter and when those

children came. And today I suddenly woke up and realized that you were gone. It was awful. Oh, Mabel, why did you do it?'

'It was a joke,' said Mabel. And then the two went in and the door was shut.

'That's very strange,' said Gerald, outside; 'looks like more magic to me. **There's more about this castle than meets the eye.**[1]'

There certainly was. As Gerald was walking alone and invisible through the shadowy great garden to look for the open window of the panelled room he began to feel — well, not excited, not surprised, not worried, but different.

He had an extraordinary feeling so difficult to describe, and yet so real and so unforgettable — the feeling that he was in another world. The feeling was very wonderful; perhaps you will feel it some day. There are still some places in the world where it can be felt.

Something white moved under a tree. A white figure came out, a creature with horns and goat's legs and the head and arms of a boy. And Gerald was not afraid. The white thing rolled on the grass and ran away across the lawn. Then Gerald saw the pedestal of a statue — empty.

'**The statues come alive**[2],' he said; and another white shape came out of the Temple of Flora and disappeared in the bushes.

Then something enormously long and darkly grey came towards him, slowly, heavily. The moon came out just in time to show its shape. It was of those great dinosaurs, which lived millions of years ago when they were masters of the world, before Man was.

'It can't see me,' said Gerald. 'I am not afraid. *It*'s come to life, too.'

He touched the side of its gigantic tail. It was of stone. It turned, however, at the touch; but Gerald also had turned, and was running with all his speed towards the house. It was Fear that he ran from, and not the moving stone beast.

---

[1] **There's more about this castle than meets the eye.** — В этом замке все не так просто, как кажется на первый взгляд.

[2] **The statues come alive** — Статуи ожили

He stood some time under the window, then he climbed into the room. Once inside the room, Gerald turned for another look. The statue stood calm on its pedestal. Everything was in its place now in the garden, nothing moved.

'How extraordinary!' said Gerald. 'I never thought I could go through a garden and dream like that.'

He shut the window, turned the key, went out, locked the door again and went to the end of the passage.

'I wonder where the kitchen is,' said Gerald. He had quite forgotten that he was a detective. He wanted only to get home and tell the others about that unusual dream that he had had in the garden.

He opened many doors, but he could not find the kitchen. At last he opened a door, and someone inside said something.

Gerald stood back against the wall, as a man ran to look into the passage.

'All right,' said the man, with ***relief***. 'The door opened, it's heavy — that's all.'

'I thought it was the police that time!' said another voice.

They closed the door again. Gerald did not mind. He didn't like the look of those men. He felt that they were dangerous. And Gerald had seen what he wanted to see. **By wonderful luck — beginner's luck — he had discovered a burglary on the very first night of his detective career.**[1] The men were taking silver out of two great boxes and packing it in sacks.

Gerald turned and went away, very carefully and very quickly. What shall he do? He stopped and thought hard. Then he took a pencil and a note-book and wrote:

'*You know the room where the silver is. Burglars are taking silver. Send a man for police. I will follow the burglars if they get away before police arrive.*'

---

[1] **By wonderful luck — beginner's luck — he had discovered a burglary on the very first night of his detective career.** — Благодаря необыкновенной удаче — удаче новичка — он встретил грабителей в первую же ночь после того, как решил стать детективом.

'He hesitated a moment, and ended —

'*From a Friend* — **this is not a sell**[1].'

Then Gerald tied the letter round a stone and threw it into the room where Mabel and her aunt were having supper.

He saw the stone picked up, the letter read.

'Nonsense!' said the aunt.

'Oh! Please send for the police, like he says,' asked Mabel.

'Like who says?' said the aunt.

'Whoever it is,' Mabel moaned. 'It's true — I know it's true. Please wake Bates!'

'I don't believe a word of it,' said the aunt, but she asked Bates to go for the police.

When the police arrived the door of the room was open, and the silver was gone.

It was five in the morning when Gerald finally got into his bed, tired and cold.

'Master Gerald!' — it was Eliza's voice in his ears — 'it's seven o clock and another fine day, and there's been another burglary — Oh!' she screamed as she came up to his bed. Kathleen came running from her room; Jimmy sat up in his bed.

'What's up?' Kathleen cried.

Eliza sat down heavily on a box as she spoke. 'At first his bed was all empty and black and he was not in it, and when I looked again he was in it. I'll tell Mam'selle of you, with your tricks.'

'Look here,' said Gerald slowly; 'I'm going to tell you something. Can you keep a secret?'

'Yes,' said Eliza.

'Then keep it and I'll give you two shillings.'

'But what were you going to tell me?'

'That. About the two shillings and the secret. And you must keep your mouth shut.'

'I will,' said Eliza, holding out her hand.

'Oh, I'm so glad you're safe,' said Kathleen, when Eliza had gone.

---

[1] **this is not a sell** — я не обманываю

'You didn't seem to care much last night,' said Gerald coldly.

'I can't think how I let you go. I didn't care last night. But I woke this morning and remembered!'

'How did you get visible?' Jimmy asked.

'It just happened when she called me — the ring came off.'

'Tell us all about everything,' said Kathleen.

'Not yet,' said Gerald mysteriously.

'Where's the ring?' Jimmy asked after breakfast. '***I* want to have a try now.**[1]'

'I expect it's in the bed somewhere,' said Gerald.

But it wasn't. Eliza had made the bed.

'There was no ring there,' she said. 'I ***swear***.'

Helpful Words

headache *n* головная боль
burglar *n* вор-взломщик
notice n объявление
fake *n* фальшивка, надувательство
jingle *v* звенеть, звякать
evidence *n* доказательство, улика
ladder *n* лестница-стремянка
spoil *v* *зд.* баловать
relief *n* облегчение
swear *v* клясться

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Whom did the children meet near the police-station?
b) What did Gerald have for supper?

[1] ***I* want to have a try now.** — Сейчас моя очередь.

c) What did Kathleen and Jimmy do when Gerald and Mabel went to the castle?
d) How did the housekeeper meet her niece?
e) What did Gerald see in the garden?
f) What letter did Gerald write to Mabel and her aunt?
g) What happened in the morning?

2 Say why:

a) Mabel couldn't return to school now.
b) the children went to the police-station.
c) the constable couldn't catch the burglars.
d) Mabel suddenly decided to return to the castle.
e) Gerald ran with all his speed to the castle.
f) Mabel's aunt didn't believe Gerald's letter.

3 Choose the ending and explain your choice.

a) Gerald went to the castle together with Mabel because
   1) he wanted to help her.
   2) he wanted to become a hero.
   3) he wanted to catch the burglars red-handed.

b) Gerald didn't go to the police when he saw the burglars because
   1) he was afraid of them.
   2) he was invisible and couldn't explain the situation to the police.
   3) he wanted to follow the burglars and find all stolen things.

4 Find in the text the English for:

получить вознаграждение
раскрыть преступление
оживать *(2 варианта)*
непослушная девчонка
хозяева вселенной

5 **Match the words and their definitions.**

a) a pedestal	1) good reputation
b) a burglar	2) Anything that shows or proves some-thing.
c) fame	3) A person who breaks into a house or a shop to steal.
d) evidence	4) a base for a column or a statue

6 **Fill in the gaps with the nouns from the box.**

notice
headache
creature
career

a) Gerald decided to start a detective ________.
b) Gerald saw a strange ________ with horns and goat's legs and the head and the arms of a boy.
c) Kathleen and Jimmy told Mademoiselle that Gerald was in bed with a bad ________.
d) The children went to the board and read a ________ about a lost purse.

7 **Imagine that you are Gerald. Describe the creatures you saw in the garden and say what you felt about it.**

8 **Imagine that you are Mabel. Say:**

a) why you returned to the castle.
b) how you learned about the burglary.
c) what you did then.

9 **Beginner's luck helped Gerald to discover the burglary at the first night of his detective career. Have you ever had beginner's luck? Can you describe your feelings?**



Part 5

On the way to the Temple of Flora the children decided to take a short rest and sat on the churchyard wall.

'Oh, Jerry,' said Kathleen. 'I'm simply dying to hear what happened last night.'

Gerald told them his story. As he told it some of the white mystery and magic of the moonlit garden got into his voice and his words, so that when he told of the statues and the great beast that came alive, Kathleen and Jimmy listened to him open-mouthed.

Then came the ***thrilling*** story of the burglars, and the warning letter. Gerald told the story with the greatest enjoyment and in detail. The church clock struck half-past eleven, and they saw Mabel.

'I couldn't wait any longer,' she explained, 'when you didn't come. Has anything more happened? The burglars had gone when Bates got to the room.'

'Go on, Jerry,' said Kathleen. 'He's just got to where he threw the stone into your room, Mabel.'

Mabel climbed on to the wall. 'You've got visible again quicker than I did,' she said.

Gerald nodded and went on with his story:

'I returned to the room. Soon the burglars came out. They didn't see me, and I saw them all right.

'Which way did they go?' asked Mabel.

'They passed across the park. The stone things that come alive kept looking out from between bushes and under trees. They saw the burglars; but the burglars couldn't see them.'

'The stone things?' asked Mabel.

Gerald told her of the statues.

'I never saw them come alive,' she said, 'and I've been in the garden in the evening many times.'

'I saw them,' said Gerald firmly.

'I know, I know,' said Mabel; 'what I mean to say is that they could only be visible when you're invisible.'

'You can be right,' agreed Gerald. 'The castle garden's enchanted, but what I should like to know is how and why. I say, come on, I've got to catch Johnson before twelve.'

'But you can talk as we go,' said Mabel. 'Oh, it is so awfully thrilling!'

This pleased Gerald, of course.

'Well, I just followed. They got out of the park the same way, where we got in. Then they went through the place where the poor people live, and right down to the river. And — I say, we must run to catch Johnson.'

So the story stopped and the running began.

They caught Johnson in his own back-yard washing.

'Look here, Johnson,' said Gerald, 'what'll you give me if I help you to win that reward?'

'Half,' said Johnson, 'but I don't believe any of your nonsense.'

'It's not nonsense,' said Gerald very impressively. 'When you catch the burglars you just give me a ***quid*** for luck. I won't ask for more.'

'I'm sure you *do* want something more off of me,' said Johnson, 'But don't you want the reward yourself?'

'You are right,' said Gerald. 'I want that you never tell anyone who told you. Let them think it was your own luck and ***far-sightedness***. You see, I found it out late at night, **in a place where I wasn't supposed to be**[1].

Johnson was now too interested, and Gerald told him how he had seen the burglars at Yalding Towers and how he had followed them.

'I saw them hide the sacks and I know the other stolen things are in the same place, and I heard them talk about when to take them away.'

'Come and show me where,' said Johnson.

'No,' said Gerald calmly; 'if you go there now you'll find the silver, but you'll never catch the thieves.'

'You're right there,' said the policeman. 'Well?'

'Well, a car will be waiting for them beyond the ***boat-house*** at one o clock tonight. They'll get the things out at half-past twelve. And you could catch them then.'

'It seems to me real enough,' said Johnson.

'He's not a liar — none of us are.'

'It's the chance of your lifetime.[2] Do you agree?'

'I agree,' said Johnson.

'Then when you're on duty you go down to the river, and **the place where you see me blow my nose is *the* place**.[3] The sacks are tied to the posts under the water.'

[1] **in a place where I wasn't supposed to be** — в том месте, где мне не следовало быть

[2] **It's the chance of your lifetime.** — Такой шанс выпадает лишь один раз в жизни.

[3] **the place where you see me blow my nose is *the* place** — когда вы увидите, что я сморкаюсь в носовой платок, вы узнаете, что это и есть то самое место

Johnson said that he would go immediately.

The children were already at the river when they heard the policeman's heavy boots. Gerald stopped at the end of a little ***landing-stage*** and loudly blew his nose.

'Morning,' he said immediately.

'Morning,' said Johnson. 'Got a cold?'

'Ah! **I shouldn't have a cold if I'd got boots like yours**[1],' said Gerald admiringly. 'Look at them. Anyone would know your footsteps a mile off. How do you ever get near enough to anyone to arrest them?' He whispered as he passed Johnson, 'That's the place,' and he left followed by the others.

'We've brought a friend home to dinner,' said Kathleen, when Eliza opened the door. 'Where's Mademoiselle?'

'Gone to see Yalding Towers. **Today's show day.**[2] And hurry over your dinner. It's my afternoon out, and **my gentleman friend**[3] doesn't like to wait.'

'All right, we'll eat very quickly,' Gerald promised.

They kept their word. The dinner was over in a quarter of an hour.

'And now,' said Mabel, when Eliza disappeared up the stairs, 'where's the ring? I must put it back.'

'I'm very sorry — we're all very sorry,' began Kathleen, and then they told her how the ring was lost. 'Let's all look again. We *were* rather in a hurry this morning.'

So they looked, and they looked. In the bed, under the bed, under the carpet, under the furniture. They shook the curtains; they explored the corners, but found no ring.

'Then,' said Mabel at last, 'your housemaid have stolen it. That's all. I shall tell her I think so.'

Suddenly they heard knocking at the back door. All the servants except Eliza were away on their holidays, so the children went together to open the door.

---

[1] **I shouldn't have a cold if I'd got boots like yours** — Я бы никогда не простудился, если бы у меня были такие ботинки

[2] **Today's show day.** — Сегодня там пускают посетителей.

[3] **my gentleman friend** — мой жених

When they opened the door they saw a young man, with his hat very much on one side, his mouth open under his fair ***moustache***, and **his eyes as nearly round as human eyes can be**[1]. He wore a suit of a bright ***mustard*** colour and a blue necktie. **His expression was that of a person who is being dragged somewhere against his will.**[2] He looked so strange that Kathleen tried to shut the door in his face, but she couldn't do it. There was something in the way.

'**Leave go of me!**[3]' said the young man.

'Oh, yes! I'll leave go of you!' It was the voice of Eliza but no Eliza could be seen.

'Who holds you?' asked Kathleen.

'*She* has, miss,' replied the unhappy stranger. 'Eliza, miss. At least it sounds like her voice, and it feels like her body, but I can't see her.'

'That's what he keeps on saying,' said Eliza's voice. 'He's my gentleman friend.'

Suddenly his hand dropped. Eliza had 'left go' of him. She pushed past the children, but Gerald caught her by the arm with one hand and whispered: 'Don't move and don't say a word. If you do — well, what's to stop me from sending for the police?'

Eliza did not know what there was to stop him. So she did as she was told, and stood invisible and silent.

The mustard-coloured young man stood looking at the children with eyes, if possible, rounder than before.

'What *is* it?' he asked. 'What's it all about?'

'If you don't know, I'm afraid we can't tell you,' said Gerald politely, 'but I'll give you a bit of advice. You go home and lie down. You'll be all right tomorrow.'

'The sun's very hot, you know,' added Mabel.

---

[1] **his eyes as nearly round as human eyes can be** — глаза его стали абсолютно круглыми

[2] **His expression was that of a person who is being dragged somewhere against his will.** — Весь его вид говорил о том, что его куда-то тащат против воли.

[3] **Leave go of me!** — Отпусти меня!

'Hasn't Eliza gone out to meet me?' he asked.

'Eliza's indoors,' said Mabel. 'She can't come out to meet anybody today.'

'You go home and lie down,' said Kathleen. 'I'm sure you must need it. Good afternoon.'

'Good afternoon, miss,' said the young man and went slowly away.

The children explained to Eliza very carefully and quite kindly that she really was invisible, and that if you steal rings you can never be sure what will happen to you.

'Is it for ever?' moaned Eliza, 'No one will marry a girl he can't see.'

'No, not for ever,' said Mabel kindly, 'I expect you'll be all right tomorrow.'

'Tonight, *I* think,' said Gerald.

'We'll help you all we can, and not tell anyone,' said Kathleen.

'Not even the police,' said Jimmy.

'Look here, we'll have a picnic and we'll take Eliza. I'll go out and get the cakes,' said Gerald.

When Mademoiselle came home, they started off for Yalding Towers.

'Picnic parties aren't allowed,' said Mabel.

'Ours will be,' said Gerald.

Tea and the buns made an excellent picnic. They sat in the garden till the sun set behind the line of black fir-trees on the top of the slope, and the white temple turned grey.

'It would be a very nice place to live in,' said Kathleen.

'***Draughty***,' said Eliza, 'a lot of steps to clean! Oh, what's that?'

'What?'

'That white thing coming down the steps. **Why, it's a young man in statuary**.[1]'

[1] **Why, it's a young man in statuary.** — Да это же молодой человек, который только что был статуей.

'The statues do come alive here, after sunset,' said Gerald calmly.

'I see they do.' Eliza did not seem at all surprised or alarmed. 'There's another of them. And many more.'

'*I* don't see any statues,' said Jimmy.

'Don't you see?' Gerald whispered; 'The statues come alive when the sun goes down and you can't see them unless you're invisible, and you're not afraid unless you *touch* them.'

'Let's get her to touch one and see,' said Jimmy.

In the darkness of the park the children could see the statues — white and motionless. But Eliza saw other things.

'Oh,' she cried suddenly, 'here's the dear little boy with the deer — he's coming to me!'

Next moment she was screaming and running away.

'Come on!' cried Gerald; 'she touched it, and then she was frightened. Just like I was. Run! **She'll send everyone in the town mad if she gets there like that.**[1]

They ran, but Eliza was much ahead of them.

'I'll stop here; see you tomorrow,' said Mabel, as they reached the terrace. Then they turned the corner of their own street and saw an unseen person trying to open the locked door of the school. The church clock struck the half-hour.

'Half-past nine,' said Gerald. 'Pull at the ring. Perhaps it'll come off now.'

He spoke to the bare doorstep. But it was Eliza who suddenly held out a hand — a hand that they could see; and in the hand they saw the magic ring.

Next morning Eliza's gentleman friend was waiting for her when she opened the door.

'Sorry you couldn't come out yesterday,' he said.

'So am I. What did you do?' she asked.

[1] **She'll send everyone in the town mad if she gets there like that.** — Она сведет с ума весь город, если примчится туда в таком состоянии.

'I had a headache,' said the gentleman friend. 'I laid down most of the afternoon. And what did you do?'

'Oh, nothing interesting,' said Eliza.

'Then it was all a dream,' she said, when he was gone; 'but it'll be a lesson to me not to take anybody's old ring again in a hurry.'

'So they didn't tell her about me behaving like I did,' said he as he went — 'sun, I think. I hope it will not happen to me again!'

Helpful Words

thrilling *a* захватывающий
quid *n разг.* фунт стерлингов
far-sightedness *n* дальновидность
boat-house *n* сарай для лодок
landing-stage *n* пристань
moustache *n* усы
mustard *a* горчичный
draughty *a* расположенный на сквозняке
scene *n зд.* декорации

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why children didn't meet Mabel at the Temple of Flora?
b) Why did they go to Johnson's house?
c) What did Gerald offer to the constable?
d) Why did Eliza ask the children to hurry over their dinner?
e) What advice did the children give to Eliza's young man?
f) What happened at Yalding Towers?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Gerald told his friends the story of the burglars and the warning letter.
b) When Mademoiselle returned the children and Eliza went to Yalding Towers for a picnic.
c) The children heard the policeman's heavy boots.
d) Gerald stopped at the end of a little landing-stage and loudly blew his nose.
e) The children explored the corners of the room but couldn't find the magic ring.
f) The children saw a strange young man in a mustard-coloured suit with round eyes.

3 Prove that Kathleen, Jimmy and Mabel found Gerald's story about the enchanted garden and the burglars thrilling.

4 Find in the text the English for:

слушать кого-то, раскрыв рот
высморкаться
галстук
закрыть дверь перед самым его носом
в спешке

5 Fill in the prepositions *against, under, at, in, for.*

a) Gerald asked the constable to give him a quid ______ luck.
b) Gerald described his adventures ______ detail.
c) The sacks were tied to the posts ______ the water.
d) Eliza's young man had a look of a person dragged somewhere ______ his will.
e) The children heard knocking ______ the back door.

6 Put as many questions as you can.

a) Then they went through the place where the poor people live.

b) A car will be waiting for them beyond the boat-house at one o'clock tonight.
c) Tea and the buns made an excellent picnic.
d) Next moment she was screaming and running away.

7 Imagine that you are constable Johnson. Say:

a) what story you heard from Gerald.
b) what you thought about it.
c) where the burglars kept the sacks with silver.
d) how you learned about this place.
e) what Gerald's plan was.
f) what you think about this boy.

8 Describe Eliza's young man. How did he explain himself what had happened to him?

9 Imagine that you are Eliza. Say:

a) how you got the ring.
b) why you didn't return it at once.
c) what happened when you put it on your finger.
d) when you realized that you were invisible.
e) what you saw at Yalding Towers.
f) what you thought about all this story with the ring.

Part 6

Johnson was the hero of the town. It was he who had ***tracked*** the burglars and found the stolen silver. It was Gerald who went out after breakfast to buy the newspaper, and who read aloud to the others the two columns about the policeman with perfect detective instincts. As he read every mouth opened wider and wider.

'How could he say all that?' said Kathleen, '**if it hadn't been for you they could do nothing**[1], Jerry.'

'Well,' said Gerald, 'you know, after all, he had to say something. I'm glad I —' And he stopped.

'You're glad you what?'

'It doesn't matter,' he said, 'Now, what are we going to do today? Mabel will want her ring. And you and Jimmy want it too. Oh, I know. We haven't been attentive to Mademoiselle lately. We'll go to the fair and buy her flowers.'

The three children met Mabel at the corner of the square where every Friday there was a fair and you could buy fresh meat, vegetables, sweets, toys, mirrors, and all sorts of other interesting things.

The sun was shining, and, as Mabel said, 'all Nature looked smiling and cheerful.'

They chose ***carnations***: a ***bunch*** of yellow ones, a bunch of white ones, and a bunch of red ones. They took the carnations home, and Gerald knocked at the door of the drawing-room, where Mademoiselle seemed to sit all day.

'Come in!' came her voice; and Gerald entered. She was not reading, on the table he saw a sketch-book and an open colour-box.

'With all of our loves,' said Gerald and laying the flowers down before her.

'You are a dear child.' And before Gerald could say anything, she kissed him on the two cheeks.

'Are you painting?' he asked.

'I am doing a sketch,' she answered and showed him a beautiful and exact sketch of Yalding Towers.

'Oh, I say — ***ripping***!' was the critic's comment. 'May the others come and see?' The others came, including Mabel, who stood behind the rest, and looked over Jimmy's shoulder.

---

[1] **if it hadn't been for you they could do nothing** — если бы не ты, у них бы ничего не вышло

Mademoiselle saw Mabel and asked: 'A friend from the town, yes?'

'How do you do?' said Mabel politely. 'No, I'm not from the town. I live at Yalding Towers.'

The name seemed to impress Mademoiselle very much.

'Yalding Towers,' she repeated, 'but this is very extraordinary. Is it possible that you are then of the family of Lord Yalding?'

'He hasn't any family,' said Mabel; 'he's not married.'

'Are you his niece then?'

'No,' said Mabel, 'I'm Lord Yalding's housekeeper's niece.'

'But you know Lord Yalding?'

'No,' said Mabel, 'I've never seen him.'

'Then he never comes to his castle?'

'I have never seen him. But he's coming next week.'

'Why doesn't he live there?' Mademoiselle asked.

'Auntie says he's too poor,' said Mabel, and told the story as she had heard it in the housekeeper's room: how Lord Yalding's uncle had left all the money to Lord Yalding's cousin, and poor Lord Yalding had only just enough **to keep the old place in repair**[1], and to live very quietly somewhere else.

'But how his uncle could be so cruel to leave him the castle and no money?' asked Mademoiselle.

'Oh, I can tell you that too,' said Mabel. 'Lord Yalding wanted to marry a lady his uncle didn't want him to, a barmaid or a ballet lady or something, and his uncle said, "Well then," and left everything to the cousin.'

'And you say he is not married.'

'No — the lady went into a ***convent***.'

'And this lord did not then look for his lady?'

'Oh, yes did,' said Mabel; 'but there are millions of convents, you know, and he had no idea where to look, and they sent back his letters from the post-office, and — '

[1] **to keep the old place in repair** — чтобы содержать в порядке старый замок

'It seems that **one knows all in the housekeeper's saloon**[1],' said Mademoiselle.

'Pretty well all,' said Mabel simply.

'It is nearly dinner-time,' said the French teacher. 'Your friend will be our guest, and in her honour we will make a little ***feast***. My beautiful flowers — put them into the water, Kathleen. I run to buy the cakes. Wash the hands, all, and be ready when I return.'

Smiling and nodding to the children, she left them, and ran up the stairs.

'Look here,' said Gerald, 'this is jolly decent of her. Let us stay today indoors and play with her instead. I think **she's most awfully bored**[2].'

'Would she really like it?' Kathleen wondered. 'Aunt Emily says grown-ups never really like playing. They do it to please us.'

'They little know,' Gerald answered, 'how often we do it to please them.'

'We've got to do that dressing-up with the Princess clothes anyhow,' said Kathleen. 'We can do it after dinner. Come on, Jimmy; let's help Eliza **to lay the table**[3].

They went.

'It was lucky,' said Gerald suddenly thought, 'that the burglars didn't go for the diamonds in the treasure-chamber.'

'They couldn't,' said Mabel almost in a whisper; 'they didn't know about them. Nobody knows about them, except me — and you. Aunt doesn't know. I just found out the spring by accident. And if the burglars *do* know,' said Mabel, **'it'll all come out at the trial**[4].'

'There won't be any trial,' said Gerald thoughtfully.

'No trial?'

[1] **one knows all in the housekeeper's saloon** — в комнате экономки обсуждают всё

[2] **she is most awfully bored** — она здесь ужасно скучает

[3] **to lay the table** — накрыть на стол

[4] **it'll all come out at the trial** — всё станет известно на суде

'The burglars had been warned by someone and the police didn't catch them,' he said.'

'What a pity!' said Mabel.

'It's a pity you think it's a pity, because it was me,' said Gerald. **'I couldn't help it.**[1] I went to a prison once, with father; and after I'd shown the place to Johnson I remembered that, and I just couldn't.'

'How did you warn them?' said Mabel.'

'I just ***shoved*** a paper under the man's door — the one that I knew where he lived — to tell him **to lie low**[2]. I know it was wrong, but I couldn't help it. Don't tell the others. They wouldn't understand why I did it. I don't understand it myself.'

'I do,' said Mabel: 'it's because you've got a kind and noble heart.'

'Come on; let's wash our hands.'

'It's a pity the ring can't make invisible just parts of you — the dirt, for instance.'

'Perhaps,' Gerald said unexpectedly, 'it won't make even all of you invisible again.'

'Why not?' asked Mabel.

'You were invisible twenty-one hours; I was invisible fourteen hours, and Eliza only seven — that's seven less each time. And now we've come to zero. It will be something different this time. And there's another ***odd*** thing. When you're invisible your ***relations*** don't love you. Look at your aunt, and Cathy didn't care about me going burgling. **We haven't got to the bottom of that ring yet.**[3]

It was a real feast. They had cakes and fruit and chocolates. There were jokes and stories and laughter. Jimmy did conjuring, Mademoiselle told them stories of her own school-

---

[1] **I couldn't help it.** — Я не мог ничего с собой поделать.

[2] **to lie low** — сидеть тихо

[3] **We haven't got to the bottom of that ring yet.** — Мы еще не всё знаем об этом кольце.

days and drew pictures of everything they asked for, till Gerald asked her: 'Do you like acting — the theatre, I mean?'

'But yes — I love it.'

'All right,' said Gerald. 'We'll act a play for you this evening if you like.'

'But certainly,' said Mademoiselle; 'amuse yourselves well, my children.'

'But it's *you*,' said Mabel suddenly, 'that we want to amuse. Because we love you very much — don't we, all of you?'

'Yes,' said the others. As Mabel said it, they found to their surprise that it was true.

'You love the old French teacher? Impossible,' said Mademoiselle.

'You're not old,' said Mabel; 'and you're as lovely as a Princess.'

The children ran out of the room to get ready for the performance.

In the evening Mademoiselle was invited into the dining-room. Eliza held the door open before her, and followed her in. It was rather dark there. The curtain ***concealed*** that part of the room, which was the stage.

Chairs had been placed across the other end of the room — all the chairs in the house, as it seemed. Mademoiselle ***started*** when she saw that many of these chairs were occupied by men and women with strange, ***clumsy*** figures, and all with hats on.

'But,' whispered Mademoiselle, 'you have then invited other friends?'

Laughter answered her from behind the curtain.

'It's only part of the performance,' cried Mabel.

Eliza, laughing, turned on the light.

Mademoiselle looked at the figure seated nearest to her, half laughed, half screamed, and sat down suddenly.

'Oh!' she cried, 'they are not alive!'

Eliza, with a much louder scream, had found out the same thing and announced it differently. **'They have got no**

insides[1],' said she. The seven members of the audience had, indeed, no insides to speak of. Their bodies were rolled-up blankets, their backs were ***broom-handles***, and their arm and leg were hockey sticks and umbrellas. Their hands were gloves filled with handkerchiefs; and their faces were the paper masks painted in the afternoon by Gerald and tied on to the round heads made of the pillows. The faces were really ***ugly***.

'You have made yourself an audience, yes? Bravo!' cried Mademoiselle. At this moment the curtain went up. A voice said, '**Beauty and the Beast**[2].'

There was a real stage — the dining-tables pushed close together and covered with pink-and-white curtains. The ***scene*** was simple, but ***convincing***.

You may imagine what Beauty and the Beast would be like acted by four children who had spent the afternoon arranging their costumes and so had left no time for ***rehearsing*** what they had to say. Yet they acted with great pleasure, and the audience liked it. Mabel, in her Princess clothes, was a real Beauty; Gerald was a Beast, Jimmy was a ***merchant***, and Kathleen surprised even herself by the quickness with which she changed from one to the other of small roles — fairies, servants, and messengers. It was at the end of the second act that Gerald put a ring into Mabel's hand and said, 'Good-bye, dear Beauty! This is a magic ring that will give you anything you wish. When you desire to return to your beast, put on the ring and say your wish. And you will be by my side.'

Beauty-Mabel took the ring, and it was *the* ring.

The curtain closed to warm ***applause*** from two pairs of hands.

'It's a pity those creatures we made are not alive,' said Mabel. 'We could get something like real applause then.'

'I'm glad they aren't,' said Gerald. 'When I catch their paper eyes I fell awful.'

It was the middle of the last act when it all happened.

---

[1] **They have got no insides** — Внутри-то они пустые

[2] **Beauty and the Beast** — сказка «Красавица и чудовище» (ср. сказку русского писателя С. Т. Аксакова «Аленький цветочек»)

Mademoiselle began it: **she applauded the garden scene**[1]. Eliza's fat red hands followed heavily, and then — someone else was applauding, six or seven people. Nine faces instead of two were turned towards the stage, and seven out of the nine were painted paper faces. And every hand and every face was alive. Mabel looked at the audience in ***horror***, Mademoiselle and Eliza ran from the room.

'Curtain! curtain! quick!' cried Beauty-Mabel, in a voice that wasn't Mabel's or the Beauty's. 'Jerry, those things *have* come alive. Oh, what *shall* we do?'

Jimmy and Kathleen drew the curtains.

'**You've done it this time!**[2]' said Gerald to worried Mabel.

'I've done it?' asked Mabel. 'I like that!'

'I knew something different was going to happen,' said Gerald. 'It's turned into a **wishing ring**[3]. Those **Ugly-Wuglies**[15] have come alive because Mabel wished it.'

'We must go and **pull them to pieces**[4].'

'They're going out!' screamed Kathleen — '*walking* out — on their umbrella and broomstick legs. You can't stop them, Jerry, they're too awful!'

'Everybody in the town will be mad if we don't stop them,' cried Gerald. 'Here, give me the ring, **I'll unwish them**[5].'

He took the ring from Mabel, cried, 'I wish the Uglies weren't alive,' and ran to the door. But nothing happened. The hall was crowded with live things, strange things, all horribly short as broom sticks and umbrellas are short. A white face with

---

[1] **she applauded the garden scene** — она захлопала, увидев замечательные декорации сцены в саду

[2] **You've done it this time!** — Ну, на этот раз ты влипла по-настоящему!

[3] **wishing ring** — кольцо желаний

[4] **Ugly-Wuglies** — Уродцы

[5] **pull them to pieces** — растащить их на части

[6] **I'll unwish them** — я загадаю, чтобы они превратились обратно в чучела

red cheeks looked up at him, and wide red lips said something, he could not tell what. And it had said it four times before Gerald could understand that this alive horror was saying calmly and politely: 'Can you recommend me a good hotel?'

Helpful Words

track *v* выслеживать
carnation *n* гвоздика
bunch *n* букет
ripping *a школ. сл.* потрясающий
convent *n* монастырь
feast *n* праздничный обед, пир
shove *v* толкать, запихивать
odd *a* странный
relation *n* родственник
conceal *v* скрывать
start *v* начинать; вздрагивать
clumsy *a* неуклюжий
broom-handle *n* длинная ручка от метлы
ugly *a* отталкивающий, противный
scene *n зд.* декорации
convincing *a* убедительный
rehearse *v* репетировать
merchant *n* купец
applaud *v* аплодировать
applause *n* аплодисменты
horror *n* ужас

Exercises

1 Say why:

a) the constable was called the hero of the town.
b) Gerald decided to buy flowers for Mademoiselle.
c) Gerald liked Mademoiselle's sketch.

d) the police didn't catch the burglars.
e) Gerald was sure that the ring would make something different this time.
f) the children had to stop the Ugly-Wuglies.

2 Match the two parts of the sentences.

a) Gerald knocked at the door of the drawing-room,	1) and Mademoiselle and Eliza ran from the room.
b) I just shoved a paper under the burglar's door	2) to get ready for the performance.
c) The children ran out of the room	3) to tell him to lie low.
d) Mabel looked at the audience in horror,	4) where Mademoiselle seemed to sit all day.

3 Choose the right person and make up sentences.

Example: It was Gerald who went out in the morning to buy the newspaper.

to become the hero of the town
to do a sketch of Yalding Towers
to leave his nephew the castle and no money
to run to buy the cakes
to do conjuring
to play small roles

4 Find in the text the English for:

накрыть на стол
уйти в монастырь
сказать шепотом
включить свет

5 Fill in the gaps with prepositions *with, to, by, in, at.*

a) Mademoiselle offered to make a feast ________ honour of Mabel.

b) The children met Mabel _________ the corner of the square.
c) Mabel found a secret spring _________ accident.
d) The children didn't have much time to rehearse the play but they acted _________ great pleasure.
e) Mademoiselle asked Kathleen to put the flowers _________ the water.

6 Match the verbs and their definitions.

a) to rehearse	1) to make a picture by using paint
b) to scream	2) to practise a play for later performance in public
c) to recommend	3) to give a loud, sharp cry
d) to paint	4) to let somebody know of possible danger
e) to warn	5) to give advice

7 Act out the dialogue between Mademoiselle and Mabel about Yalding Towers and Lord Yalding.

8 Gerald warned the burglars about the police trap (о полицейской ловушке). Mabel felt that he had a kind and noble heart. Do you agree with her?

9 Imagine that you are Mademoiselle. Speak of the performance.

a) Describe the room.
b) Describe the strange figures, say what you felt about them.
c) Speak of your impressions of the play and the actors.
d) Say what happened in the middle of the last act.

10 Gerald says that the children often play to please the adults. Do you agree with him?



Part 7

The thing was alive, and was asking a definite and a reasonable question.

'You want a hotel?' Gerald repeated stupidly, 'a *good* hotel?'

'A good hotel,' said the painted lips.

'I'm awfully sorry,' Gerald went on politely, 'but all our hotels shut so early — about eight, I think.'

'**Knock them up**[1],' said the Ugly-Wugly. Gerald even now does not understand how that creature made of clothes could become a perfectly respectable person, about fifty years old — the kind of man who travels first class and smokes expensive cigars.

[1] **Knock them up** — Постучитесь

'You can't,' Gerald explained; 'they're all ***deaf***— every person who keeps a hotel in this town. It's a ***law***. Only deaf people are allowed to keep hotels. **It's because of the hops in the beer, they are so good for ear-ache.**[1]'

The other Ugly-Wuglies were crowding round. The lady in a tall hat said:

'If not a hotel, a room.'

'I do know rooms,' said Gerald, 'but —' The lady Ugly-Wugly in the hat with flowers interrupted him.

'What *I* want to know,' she said, 'is where are the carriages we ordered?'

'I don't know,' said Gerald, 'but I'll find out. But we must go now,' he added; 'you see, the performance is over, and **they want to shut up the house**[2] and turn off the light. Let's go.'

The Ugly-Wuglies went towards the front door.

'I'll try to do anything, of course,' said Gerald. 'I could go with you, and get you a lodging, if you'd only wait a few moments in the yard. You see I've got an uncle who's quite mad, and I have to give him his ***gruel*** at half-past nine. **He refuses to eat out of any hand but mine.**[3]' Gerald did not mind what he said. You can tell lies to the Ugly-Wuglies, because **they are not real people and cannot be really deceived**[4].

Gerald went through the back door, down the steps into the yard, and the Ugly-Wuglies followed him. Some of them had boots, but the ones whose feet were only broomsticks or umbrellas had problems with the stairs.

---

[1] **It's because of the hops in the beer. They are so good for ear-ache.** — Это всё из-за шишечек хмеля в пиве. Они очень хорошо помогают, когда болят уши.

[2] **they want to shut up the house** — служители хотят закрыть театр

[3] **He refuses to eat out of any hand but mine.** — Он ест только то, что даю ему я.

[4] **they are not real people and cannot be really deceived** — они не настоящие люди и ложь, сказанная им, не может считаться ложью

'Please wait *under* the balcony,' said Gerald, 'my uncle is very mad. If he sees any strangers — I mean, even aristocratic ones — I won't answer for the ***consequences***.'

'Perhaps,' said the lady in the hat with flowers nervously, 'we could try to find rooms ourselves?'

'I don't recommend it to you,' said Gerald as gloomily as he could; 'the police here arrest all strangers. It's the new law. I wouldn't like to see you in prison,' he added convincingly.

The Ugly-Wuglies gathered under the balcony. Gerald went up the stairs. Behind him in the yard there were seven impossible creatures. Before him in the silent house there were five frightened people.

Of course the reason why Gerald was not afraid was that he had the ring; and, as you have seen, the person who wears it is not frightened by *anything* unless he touches that thing. But Gerald knew well enough how the others must feel.

'Cathy! I say! Jimmy! Mabel!' he cried in a loud, cheerful voice that sounded very unreal to himself.

The dining-room door opened.

'Are you alone?' whispered Kathleen.

'Yes, of course.'

'Where are they? Have you unwished them? We heard them talking. Horrible!'

'They're in the yard,' said Gerald **with the best imitation of excitement that he could manage**[1]. 'It is such fun! They're just like real people, quite kind and ***jolly***. Look here, Kathleen and Jimmy must go to bed, and I'll take Mabel home. I must find some place where the Ugly-Wuglies could stay. Now I'll speak to Mademoiselle and Eliza.'

He put on his coat as he spoke and now ran up the stairs. The others, gathered in the hall, could hear his knock at Mademoiselle's door, his words 'It's only me — Gerald,' the pause, the opening of the door, and the talk that followed. Then Mad-

---

[1] **with the best imitation of excitement that he could manage** — изо всех сил изображая радостную заинтересованность

emoiselle and Gerald went to Eliza's door, trying to ***calm** her **down***.

'I wonder what lies he's telling them,' said Jimmy.

'Oh! not lies,' said Mabel; 'he's only telling them as much of the truth as it's good for them to know.'

'I'm so sorry you were frightened,' Gerald was saying; 'it was a good trick, wasn't it?'

'Well, so it was,' said Mabel.

'It was indeed a wonderful trick,' said Mademoiselle; 'and how did you move the figures?'

'Oh, we've often done it — with ***strings***, you know,' Gerald explained.

'That's true, too,' Kathleen whispered.

'Can you do this remarkable trick again?' asked Mademoiselle.

'Oh, I've cleared them all out,' said Gerald. ('So he has,' said Kathleen to Jimmy.) 'We thought you wouldn't like to see them again.'

Mademoiselle entered the dining-room and saw that the figures had indeed disappeared.

Then Gerald explained to her that it was his duty to escort Mabel home.

The moment that front door was shut Gerald led Mabel to the corner of the side street which led to the yard. Just round the corner he stopped.

'Now,' he said, 'what I want to know is — are you an idiot or aren't you?'

'Idiot yourself!' said Mabel mechanically.

'I'm not frightened of the Ugly-Wuglies. They're ***harmless***. **But an idiot might be frightened and give the whole show away.**[1]'

'I'm not an idiot,' said Mabel terribly frightened; 'I'm not afraid of anything.'

---

[1] **But an idiot might be frightened and give the whole show away.** — Если ты будешь идиоткой и испугаешься, ты провалишь всё дело.

'Mabel,' said Gerald, in low, thrilling tones, for he saw that the time had come **to sound another note**[1], 'I know you're brave. I believe in you. That's why I've arranged it like this. I'm certain you've got the heart of a lion. Can I trust you?'

Mabel felt that to say anything but 'Yes' was **to throw away a priceless reputation for courage**[2]. So she said 'Yes.'

'Then wait here. And when you see me with *them* remember they're as harmless as snakes — I mean doves. Talk to them just like you would to anyone else. See?'

He turned to leave her, but stopped at her natural question:

'What hotel did you say you were going to take them to?'

'Oh!' said Gerald hands. 'I forgot! I wanted to ask you — are there any rooms or anything in the castle where I could put them for the night? **The charm will break**[3], you know, some time and they'll just be coats and things that we can easily carry home any day.'

'There's a secret passage,' Mabel began — but at the moment the yard-door opened and an Ugly-Wugly put out its head and looked down the street.

'Righto!' — Gerald ran to meet it.

Mabel's hands became cold and damp, but she stood, saying over and over again: 'They're not true — they can't be true. It's only a dream.' And then Gerald was there, and all the Ugly-Wuglies crowding round, and Gerald saying: 'This is one of our friends, Mabel — the Princess in the play, you know.' The Ugli-Wuglies shook her hand and talked very nicely to her.

Then they all walked up the High Street as if, as Gerald said, they were anybody else. It was a very strange procession, but fortunately they met no one.

Mabel decided to show Gerald that she was not an idiot. So she went on talking with these impossible people.

---

[1] **to sound another note** — сменить пластинку

[2] **to throw away a priceless reputation for courage** — лишиться ценной репутации отважной девочки

[3] **The charm will break** — Это колдовство пройдет

Finally the procession arrived at the gates of the castle.

Locked — of course.

'You see,' explained Gerald, as the Ugly-Wuglies shook the gates with his hands; 'it's so very late. There *is* another way. But you have to climb through a hole.'

'The ladies —' the respectable Ugly-Wugly began; but the ladies with one voice said that they loved adventures. 'So thrilling,' added the one who wore roses.

So they went round by the road, climbed through the hole and came through all passages and arches to the castle garden.

The Ugly-Wuglies looked at the garden and marble terraces in admiration.

'This seems a very good hotel,' said the Ugly-Wugly in a **high hat**[1].

'We will have to go in by the back door,' said Mabel suddenly. 'The front door's locked at half-past nine.'

They went up the steps of the Temple of Flora. Mabel passed behind the statue of the ***goddess***, and then Gerald's ***lantern*** showed a very high and very narrow doorway: the stone that was the door, and that had closed it, moved slowly under the touch of Mabel's fingers.

'This way,' she said, feeling very nervous.

'**You lead the way**[2], with the lantern,' said a small Ugly-Wugly to Gerald.

'I — I must stay behind to close the door,' said Gerald.

'The Princess can do that. We'll help her,' said the lady with flowers.

'*You* take it,' insisted Gerald giving the lantern to the elderly Ugly-Wugly; 'you're the natural leader. Go straight ahead.'

The respectable Ugly-Wugly and the others disappeared into that narrow doorway. Gerald and Mabel almost ***sobbed*** with relief. But they didn't have time to close the door. Suddenly the Ugly-Wuglies returned and tried to open it again. They could see something in the dark passage that alarmed them or they took it into their empty heads that this could not be the back way to any really respectable hotel — Mabel and Gerald never knew. But they knew that the Ugly-Wuglies were no longer polite and friendly. They were angrily shouting threats and trying to open the narrow stone door.

[1] **high hat** — цилиндр, высокая мужская шляпа с небольшими твердыми полями

[2] **You lead the way** — Вы пойдете первым

'Push, push!' cried Gerald.

'I can't any more — oh, I can't!' moaned Mabel.

'They mustn't get out!' shouted Gerald.

'What's up, there?' cried suddenly a new voice and a new shadow fell on the marble floor of the Temple of Flora.

'Come and help push!' shouted Gerald. 'If they get out, they'll kill us all.'

A strong shoulder pushed suddenly between the shoulders of Gerald and Mabel; the heavy, narrow door slowly closed, and the angry, threatening mass of Ugly-Wuglies was ***shut in***.

The stranger looked at them and asked:

'Who are you, and what's it all about?'

'I can't possibly tell you,' answered Gerald.

'Come out into the moonlight and let's talk,' said the man.

The stranger led both children out from the temple into the bright white moonlight and sat down on the steps, a child on each side of him. He was ***clean-shaven***, and had large eyes that sparkled when the moonlight touched them. He looked at the children and said in a friendly way:

'Now then! Go ahead!'

Mabel sobbed, but Gerald said: 'If we told you the truth, you wouldn't believe it.'

'Let me just **put the thing from my point of view**[1]. I come down from London to take care of a big ***estate***. On the very first evening I go out for a walk air, and approaching a white building, hear sounds of a ***scuffle***, accompanied by cries for help.

[1] **put the thing from my point of view** — изложить свое видение событий

I do help and shut in someone who behind a stone door. Now, is it unreasonable to ask who it is that I've shut in — helped to shut up, I mean, and who it is that I've helped?'

'It's reasonable enough,' agreed Gerald.

'Well then,' said the stranger.

'No,' said Gerald, 'I simply can't tell you.'

'Then I must ask the other side,' said the man. 'Let me go — I'll open that door and find out for myself.'

'Tell him,' said Mabel, speaking for the first time. 'We can't let them out.'

'Very well,' said Gerald, 'I'll tell him. Will you promise us that you won't tell any one what we tell you and that you won't put us in a **lunatic asylum**[1] if you think that we are mad?'

'Yes,' said the stranger, 'I think I can promise that.

'Let me begin, then,' said Mabel. 'I found a ring, and I said it would make me invisible. I said it in play. And it did. I was invisible twenty-one hours. Don't ask where I got the ring. Now, Gerald, you go on.'

Gerald went on. He spoke for a long time.

'And so,' he ended, 'we got them in there; and when seven hours are over, or fourteen, or twenty-one, or something with a seven in it, they'll just be old coats again. They came alive at half-past nine. *I* think they'll stop being it in seven hours — that's half-past four. *Now* will you let us go home?'

'I'll take you home,' said the stranger in a kindly tone. 'Come.'

'You don't believe us,' said Gerald. 'Of course you don't. Nobody could.'

'Come, and I'll take you home, ' said the man.

'Mabel lives at the Towers,' said Gerald.

'I'm housekeeper's niece,' said Mabel.

The stranger took Mabel to the castle and went with Gerald to the door of the school.

---

[1] **lunatic asylum** — сумасшедший дом

'Look here,' said Gerald. 'I know that you're going to open that door.'

'Possibly,' said the man.

'Well — don't. Or, any way, wait till daylight and let us be there. We can get there at ten.'

'All right — I'll meet you there at ten,' answered the stranger. 'Good night.'

As the four children went towards the Temple of Flora, they talked, as they had talked all the morning, about the adventures of last night. It was not ten, but half-past twelve; because they had **to clear up the mess**[1] in the dining-room.

'I do hope he'll be there,' Mabel said; 'he *was* such a ***dear***, a real gentleman.'

'He isn't there, though,' said Jimmy. 'I believe you it was just a dream.'

They went up the marble steps in the sunshine, and it was difficult to believe that it was the same place where Gerald and Mabel had been so frightened.

'Shall we open the door,' suggested Kathleen, 'and begin to carry home the coats?'

'Let's listen first,' said Gerald; 'perhaps they aren't only coats yet.'

They listened, but the passage behind the stone door was quiet. As they turned away they saw the man they had come to meet. He was on the other side of Flora's pedestal. He lay there on his back, **his arms flung wide**[2].

'Oh, look!' cried Cathy, and ***pointed***. The stranger's face was almost green, and on his forehead there was a cut; and a little blood from it was on the marble floor.

At the same time Mabel pointed too — but she did not cry as Cathy had done. And she pointed at a white painted paper face with very red lips. In a moment the face disappeared in the bushes.

---

[1] **to clear up the mess** — навести порядок

[2] **his arms flung wide** — широко раскинув руки

Helpful Words

deaf *a* глухой
law *n* закон
gruel *n* жидкая овсяная каша
consequence *n* последствие
jolly *n* веселый
calm (smb) down *phr v* успокаивать (кого-л.)
string *n* веревка
harmless *a* безобидный
goddess *n* богиня
lantern *n* фонарь
sob *v* рыдать, всхлипывать
clean-shaven *a* чисто выбритый
shut (shut, shut) (smb) in *phr v* запирать (кого-л.)
estate *n* поместье
scuffle *n* стычка, потасовка
dear *n* прелесть, душечка
point *v* указывать

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did Gerald refuse to recommend a hotel to the Ugli-Wuglies?
b) Why did Gerald ask them to wait for him under the balcony?
c) What did Gerald say to Mademoiselle and Eliza?
d) What did Mabel feel about the Ugli-Wuglies?
e) Where did Gerald and Mabel take the creatures?
f) Why didn't Gerald and Mabel have time to close the door after the Ugli-Wuglies?
g) Who helped the children to shut the Ugli-Wuglies in the passage?
h) What happened in the morning?

2 Complete the sentences.

a) Gerald said that he needed to visit his uncle because _________.
b) You can lie to the Ugli-Wuglies because _________.
c) Gerald was not afraid of the Ugli-Wuglies because _________.
d) Mabel agreed to help Gerald with the Ugli-Wuglies because _________.
e) The Ugli-Wuglies were no longer polite and friendly because _________.
f) Gerald didn't want to tell the stranger the truth because _________.

3 Match the two parts of the sentences.

a) Mademoiselle entered the dining room,	1) and the heavy, narrow door slowly closed.
b) Then they all walked up the High Street	2) and a little blood from it was on the marble floor.
c) A strong shoulder pushed suddenly between the shoulders of Gerald and Mabel;	3) and saw that the figures had indeed disappeared.
d) On his forehead there was a cut;	4) as if they were anybody else.

4 Find in the text the English for:

отвечать за последствия
сказать автоматически
естественный вопрос
прирожденный лидер
Это был всего лишь сон.

5 Can you say it in a different way?

You've got a heart of a lion.

You lead the way.
They're as harmless as doves.
to clear up the mess in the dinning-room

6 **Choose *frightened* or *afraid*.**

a) In the silent house there were five ____________ people.
b) The younger children were ____________ to leave the room.
c) 'I'm not ____________ of anything,' said Mabel.
d) Mabel was terribly ____________ but she tried not to show it.
e) The person who wears the ring is not ____________ by anything unless he touches that thing.
f) In the bright sunshine it was difficult to believe that it was the same place where Gerald and Mabel had been so ____________ .

7 **Imagine that you Gerald. Speak of the Ugli-Wuglies.**

a) Describe the creatures.
b) Say what you felt when they came alive.
c) Say what happened when you tried to shut them in behind the stone door.

8 **Imagine that you are Mabel. Say:**

a) what you felt about the Ugli-Wuglies.
b) what happened when you got at Yalding Towers.
c) what you thought about the stranger who helped you.

9 **Prove that the stranger didn't believe Gerald and Mabel. Would you open the door too?**

Part 8

It was clear that the stranger had opened the door before the charm broke. The Ugly-Wuglies were then something more than just coats and hats and sticks. So they had hit him on his forehead with some kind of stick.

Jimmy and Gerald both knew what was the first thing needed by the ***unconscious*** man, even before Mabel impatiently said: 'Water! water!'

The two boys turned away.

'And if they go after us?' asked Jimmy.

'*What* go after us?' said Gerald sharply.

'The Ugly-Wuglies,' Jimmy whispered.

'I'll do it,' said Gerald. He looked to right and left very carefully, and chose the way to the lake that did not lead near the bushes. He dropped his handkerchief into the water and returned to the Temple of Flora. It was with this that the girls ***wiped*** the blood from the man's forehead.

'We need **smelling salts**[1],' said Kathleen to Mabel. 'Hasn't your aunt any?'

'Yes, but —'

'Don't be a coward,' said Gerald; 'They won't ***hurt*** you.'

There was no choice, so Mabel looked at the bushes and ran towards the castle.

'He's not dead, is he?' asked Jimmy ***anxiously***.

'No,' said Kathleen, 'his heart's beating. How good-looking he is!'

Suddenly a shadow fell on the marble beside them and a voice said: 'Quite a nice young man.'

The children looked up and saw the face of the respectable Ugly-Wugly. Jimmy and Kathleen screamed. Gerald was not frightened because he was wearing the magic ring. He looked into the face of the Ugly-Wugly and started. The face was no

---

[1] **smelling salts** — нюхательная соль (так раньше называли нашатырный спирт)

longer paper. It was a real face, and the hands were real hands. It was alive.

'What happened?' asked Gerald.

'The others lost their way in the passage last night,' said the Ugly-Wugly. 'They never found the hotel.'

'Did you?' asked Gerald.

'Of course,' said the Ugly-Wugly. 'Most respectable, exactly as you said. Then when I came away I found the others all at this door, very angry. They'd been here all night, trying to get out. Then this gentleman opened the door and that man in the high hat who has bad manners hit him on the head, and he fell where you see him. The others went away, and I myself was just going for help when I saw you.'

Jimmy was sobbing and Kathleen was white as drawing-paper.

'What's the matter, my little man?' said the respectable Ugly-Wugly kindly.

'Here, take the ring!' whispered Gerald and put it on Jimmy's finger. Jimmy stopped crying at once. And Gerald realized what it was that Mabel had gone through the night before. But it was daylight, and Gerald was not a coward.

'We must find the others,' he said. 'You two go and see. I'll stay with the man.'

In the wood Jimmy, now fearless as a lion, discovered the Ugly-Wuglies. There was no life in them. Jimmy shook them to pieces.

When Kathleen and Jimmy returned to the Temple of Flora, Gerald asked the elderly Ugly-Wugly to hide in the bushes with Jimmy. 'I think,' said he, 'the man may be upset when he sees the strangers.'

So the two disappeared behind the bushes. Mabel came back with the salts just as the stranger opened his eyes with the question: 'What's up now?'

'You've hurt your head,' said Gerald.

The man sat up, looked round him and said: 'When did it happen?'

'We don't know. We found you like it,' said Gerald.

'I'm all right now,' said the stranger, 'thank you for the first ***aid***. But what an odd thing!'

'What's an odd thing?' asked Gerald.

'Well, I saw you just before I ***fainted***, or whatever it was — but I had the most extraordinary dream while I was unconscious and you were in it.'

'Only us?' asked Mabel.

'Oh, many things — impossible things — but *you* were real enough.'

Everyone breathed deeply in relief.

'I ***dreamed*** there was a door behind Flora's statue, but of course there isn't. I don't know how to thank you,' he added, looking at them with what the girls called his beautiful, kind eyes; 'You come here when you like, you know.'

'I'll tell you what,' said Gerald, as the stranger disappeared in the trees, 'I think I know how we can spend the day. Let's go home and ***seal up*** the ring in an envelope so that it'll be powerless to do something horrible. Then we'll get out on the roof and have a quiet day — books and apples. **I'm fed up with adventures.**[1]'

The others told him the same thing.

'But first we must **get rid**[2] of that Ugly-Wugly,' said Gerald. 'The Ugly-Wugly's *real* — don't make any mistake about that. And he became real inside that passage. If we could get him back there he might get changed again, and then we could take the coats and things back.'

'Isn't there any other way?' Kathleen asked; and Mabel said sharply: 'I'm not going into that passage!'

'Afraid! **In broad daylight**[3],' Gerald ***sneered***.

'It isn't broad daylight in there,' said Mabel.

---

[1] **I'm fed up with adventures.** — Я уже по горло сыт приключениями.

[2] **get rid of that Ugly-Wugly** — избавиться от этого уродца

[3] **In broad daylight** — Средь бела дня

'Anyway,' said Gerald, 'we'll try to get him back, and shut the door. **That's the most we can hope for.**[1] Now, we've just got to do it. And he's not terrible. He's real, you see. Come on!'

He took a hand of each girl, and they walked towards the bushes behind which Jimmy and the Ugly-Wugly had been told to wait. When they were near the bushes Jimmy came out into the sunlight. He was alone.

'Where is it?' asked the girls in one breath.

'Walking up and down in a ***walk***,' said Jimmy, '**doing sums in a book**[2]. He says he's a broker. He's very rich, he's got a car, and a garden with a tennis-court and a lake and he goes to Greece for his holiday sometimes. He's building a public library for the people where he lives.'

The children passed the bushes and reached a grass walk surrounded by trees of different kinds. 'He's just round that corner,' said Jimmy. '**He's simply rolling in money.**[3] He doesn't know what to do with it. I wish *I* was rich; I'd soon show him — '

'Oh!' cried Gerald. There, in the green shadows of the trees Jimmy got his wish. He became rich. And the horrible thing was that though they could see what was happening, they could not stop it. The whole thing was over in a few seconds. Yet in those few seconds they saw him grow to a young man, a middle-aged man; and then, he turned into an elderly gentleman, who was looking down at them through spectacles and asking them the nearest way to the railway-station. It was hard to believe that this stout, well-dressed elderly gentleman with the high hat was their own Jimmy.

'Oh, Jimmy, don't!' cried Mabel.

Gerald said: 'This is awful,' and Kathleen burst into tears.

'Don't cry, little girl!' said That-which-had-been Jimmy; 'and you, boy, can't you give an answer to a question?'

[1] **That's the most we can hope for.** — Больше нам надеяться не на что.

[2] **doing sums in a book** — что-то подсчитывает в записной книжке

[3] **He's simply rolling in money.** — Он просто купается в деньгах.

'He doesn't know us!' cried Kathleen.

'Look here, Jimmy,' said Gerald. '**Are you kidding?**[1] Because if you are, it's simply —'

'My name is Mr —,' said That-which-had-been-Jimmy, and gave the name correctly. 'And I don't know you.' By the way, it will perhaps be shorter to call this elderly stout person 'That' — **short for**[2] 'That-which-had-been Jimmy'.

'What shall we do?' whispered Mabel in horror, and aloud she said: 'Oh, Mr. James, please give me the ring.'

'Certainly not,' said That firmly. 'Will you tell me the way to the nearest railway station?

'No,' said Gerald, 'we won't.'

'Then,' said That, politely, though quite clearly angrily, 'perhaps you'll tell me the way to the nearest lunatic asylum?'

'Oh, no!' cried Kathleen. 'You're not mad.'

'I'm not, but you are,' said That. 'If you're not mad, you're idiots. However, I see a gentleman ahead. I recognize him.' And he walked towards the elderly Ugly-Wugly. Two elderly figures raised their hats, said a few words to each other and walked side by side down the green walk, followed by three unhappy children.

'He wished to be rich, so of course he is,' said Gerald; 'he'll have money for tickets and everything. And when the charm breaks he'll find himself somewhere — perhaps in a really good hotel and not know how he got there. Look here, you two must collect the coats and things. Hide them, anywhere you like, and we'll carry them home tomorrow. **I must stick to Jimmy.**[3] Go home to Mademoiselle and tell her Jimmy and I have gone off in the train and will be back to tea.'

And Gerald started to run after the Ugly-Wugly and That. He followed them to the station, listened at the ticket office to the voice of That who asked a ticket to London. When That and the

[1] **Are you kidding?** — Ты что, прикидываешься?

[2] **short for** — сокращение от

[3] **I must stick to Jimmy.** — Мне нужно держаться ближе к Джимми.

Ugly-Wugly appeared on the platform, he bought **a third return to London**[1]. The train arrived and everyone took their seats.

'I don't understand,' said Gerald, alone in his third-class ***carriage***, 'how railway trains and magic can be at the same time.'

And yet they do.

Mabel and Kathleen found six heaps of coats, hats, skirts, gloves, golf-clubs, hockey-sticks, broom-handles. They carried them up the hill to the stone dinosaur and put them in a hole in his stomach. Then they returned to school. Just as they were explaining to Mademoiselle that the boys had gone to London, a figure passed the window. It was the stranger who was coming back from the doctor's with antiseptic plaster on his cut.

'Who's that?' suddenly asked Mademoiselle.

The girls said that they had met him at Yalding Towers. After that Mademoiselle didn't ask them any questions about the boys and later went out for a walk. Kathleen and Mabel stayed at school thinking of Gerald and Jimmy.

Gerald was standing on the stairs of a London office building. On the floor below him was a door with a name 'Mr U. W. Ugli, Broker' and on the floor above was another door, on which was the name of Gerald's little brother, now elderly and very rich. There were no explaining words under Jimmy's name. When the door opened, Gerald saw a lot of clerks and ***mahogany*** desks. It was clear that That had a large business, though Gerald couldn't ***guess*** what.

What could Gerald do? It is almost impossible for a boy to enter a large London office and explain that the elderly and respected head of it is not what he seems, but is really your little brother, who had been made old and rich by a wishing ring. He couldn't knock at the door of Mr U. W. Ugli and inform his clerks that their chief was just old clothes that had accidentally come alive and then became real.

---

[1] **a third return to London** — билет третьего класса до Лондона и обратно

There was another difficulty. Gerald had had no dinner and was very hungry.

At that moment a boy came up the stairs. He had in his hands a dark blue bag full of buns.

'If you get me buns too, I'll give you half a shilling,' said Gerald.

'All right, give the money,' quickly said the boy.

'**Payment on delivery**[1],' said Gerald, using words, which he had never thought to use.

The boy looked at him in admiration and left.

When he returned Gerald gave the sixpence and took the buns. A minute later the boy came out of Mr U. W. Ugli's office.

'What sort of man's that?' he asked.

'**Big pot**[2],' said the boy; 'very rich.'

'Know anything about the one on the next floor?'

'He's bigger than this one. Very old firm. These two have been ***rivals*** for years,' said the boy.

'Look here. I'll give you five shillings if you help me.'

'Go ahead,' said the boy.

'I'm a private detective,' said Gerald. 'That old man on the floor above — **he's *wanted***[3].'

'Police?' asked the boy.

'No — relations. And I must get him to them, somehow. Now, if you could go in and give him a message from someone who wanted to meet him on business —'

'I've got a better idea,' said the boy. 'You go in and see old Ugli. **He'd give his ears to have the old boy out of the way for a day or two.**[4] '

---

[1] **Payment on delivery** — Оплата по доставке

[2] **Big pot** — Большая шишка

[3] **he's *wanted*** — он разыскивается

[4] **He'd give his ears to have the old boy out of the way for a day or two.** — Он с радостью лишится своих ушей, лишь бы другой старикан пару дней не болтался у него под ногами.

'You're right,' said Gerald. 'I'll try to do it. Here's your five shillings.'

He knocked at the door of Mr U. W. Ugli. It opened and he entered.

The boy went down a few steps and heard the voice of Mr U. W. Ugli. He was saying:

'Then I'll ask him to let me look at the ring and I'll drop it. You pick it up. But remember, you don't know me. You're *sure* he's really unwell?'

'Yes,' said Gerald; 'he's quite mad about that ring. He'll follow it anywhere. I know he will. And think of his unhappy relations.'

'I do — I do,' said Mr Ugli kindly; 'that's all I think of, of course.'

He went up the stairs to the other office, and then That and Mr Ugli went out to have lunch. The two boys followed.

'I say,' said the boy, '**what are you up to?**[1]'

'Well, I'll tell you, but you won't believe me. That old gentleman's not really old at all — he's my younger brother who suddenly turned into what you see. The other's not real at all. He's only just old clothes and nothing inside. They were turned like that by a magic ring'.

'There is no such thing as magic,' said the boy. 'I learned that at school.'

'All right,' said Gerald. 'Good-bye.'

'Oh, go ahead!' said the boy.

'Well, if I can get that magic ring I shall just wish we were all in a certain place. And we shall be. And then I will take care of them.'

That and Mr Ugli entered a very expensive restaurant. Gerald was going to follow them.

'I say, are you really going into this place?'

'Yes, I am. You go, too. I'll pay for the lunch.'

---

[1] **what are you up to?** — что ты задумал?

The boy was the only person Gerald knew in London except That-which-had-been-Jimmy and the Ugly-Wugly; and he did not want to talk to them.

What happened next happened so quickly that, as Gerald said later, it was 'just like magic'. The restaurant was crowded. Gerald ordered two chops. Then at the next table he heard the words, 'Ah, yes, a curious old family thing.' That took off the ring and gave it to Mr Ugli. And then the ring ***slipped*** from the hand of Mr Ugli and fell on the floor. Gerald ***grasped*** the ring, put it on his finger and cried out aloud in that crowded place:

'I wish Jimmy and I were inside that door behind the statue of Flora.'

It was the only safe place he could think of.

Gerald never knew what happened in that restaurant. There was nothing about it in the papers. He never knew what the boy did or thought. The lights and the sounds of the restaurant disappeared. Now there was darkness and silence around them. And through the darkness came a voice — and it was not the voice of that elderly man who had been Jimmy, but the voice of Jimmy who was Gerald's little brother. The voice said: 'Jerry, Jerry! I've had such an odd dream.'

'It's all right, Jimmy,' he said; 'it's not a dream now. It's that ring again. **I had to wish us here**[1], to get you back out of your dream.'

'Wish us where?' asked Jimmy.

'Inside the passage behind the Flora statue,' said Gerald.

'But how are we going to get out?' asked Jimmy. 'Oh! I know. It isn't true. It's a dream!'

'Yes,' said Gerald bravely, 'it's just a dream, Jimmy. **We'll just call out now and then**[2], but it's really only a dream, of course.'

---

[1] **I had to wish us here** — Мне пришлось пожелать, чтобы мы оказались здесь

[2] **We'll just call out now and then** — Мы только будем время от времени звать на помощь

Helpful Words

unconscious *a* без сознания
wipe *v* вытирать
hurt *v* причинить боль, ранить
anxiously *adv* с беспокойством
aid *n* помощь
faint *v* потерять сознание
dream *v* сниться, видеть во сне
seal up *phr v* запечатывать
sneer *v* усмехаться
walk *n зд.* тропинка
carriage *n зд.* вагон
mahogany *n* красное дерево
guess *v* догадаться
rival *n* соперник, конкурент
slip *v* скользить, выскользнуть
grasp *v* хватать

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) What did the children do to help the stranger?
b) What happened to the respectable Ugly-Wugly?
c) What made Jimmy fearless as a lion?
d) Why did Gerald want to get rid of the Ugly-Wugly?
e) What happened to Jimmy when he wished to be rich?
f) Why did Gerald follow his brother to London?
g) Where did Kathleen and Mable hide the clothes of the Ugli-Wuglies?
h) In what way did Gerald bring his younger brother back?

2 Say who:

a) lost their way in the passage.

b) hit the stranger with a stick.
c) shook the Ugli-Wuglies to pieces.
d) was building a public library.
e) walked side by side followed by three children.
f) knocked at the door of Mr U. W. Ugly.
g) ordered two chops in the restaurant.

3 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) That and Mr Ugli entered a very expensive restaurant.
b) In the green shadows of the trees Jimmy got his wish.
c) Gerald dropped his handkerchief into the water and returned to the Temple of Flora.
d) The children looked up and saw the face of the respectable Ugly-Wugly.
e) Mabel came back with the smelling salts.
f) The train arrived and everyone took their seats.

4 Find in the text the English for:

Что стряслось на этот раз?
первая помощь
частный детектив
Он совсем потерял голову из-за этого кольца.

5 Fill in the prepositions *through, for, over, in, after*.

a) Jimmy was afraid that the Ugly-Wuglies would go _________ him.
b) The boy looked at Gerald _________ admiration, took the money for the buns and left.
c) And _________ the darkness came the voice of little Jimmy.
d) I was just going _________ help when I saw you.
e) The whole thing was _________ in a few seconds.

6 Use the verbs in the right form.

a) Jimmy ________ (to stop) crying at once.
b) The children saw what ________ (to happen) to Jimmy, but they couldn't stop it.
c) The girls said that they ________ (to meet) the stranger at Yalding Towers.
d) Gerald ________ (to have) no dinner and was very hungry.
e) The lights and the sounds of the restaurant ________ (to disappear).

7 Say what you know about Mr U. W. Ugli. Use the same plan to talk about Mademoiselle and yourself.

Questions	**Mr U. W. Ugli**
a) What do you do?	I'm a broker.
b) Where do you work?	________
c) Where do you live?	________
d) Where do you go for your holidays?	________
e) What hobby do you have?	________

8 Imagine that you're Kathleen. Say:

a) how Jimmy turned into an elderly gentleman.
b) what you felt about it and why.
c) what you told Mademoiselle.

9 Imagine that you are a boy who helped Gerald in London. Describe in detail what happened that day. Do you think that it was magic?



Part 9

When people are surrounded by magic almost anything may happen. So it is not surprising that Mabel and Kathleen felt a strange, unreasonable, but quite strong wish to return to the Temple of Flora.

And this explains how it was that when Gerald and Jimmy, holding hands in the darkness of the passage, called for help for the first time, and that call was at once answered from outside.

Mabel and Kathleen opened the stone door, and the boys came out of the passage into the Temple of Flora. Then Gerald and Jimmy answered the questions of their sister and Mabel.

'And you left that Ugly-Wugly in London,' said Mabel; 'though you could take him with you.'

'It's all right where it is,' said Gerald. 'I couldn't think of everything. And besides, no, thank you!'

'Look here,' said Mabel, 'let's just put the ring back in the treasure-room. **It's time to have done with it.**[1]'

So they went up to the castle, and the ring was put back among the odd ornaments that Mabel had once said were magic.

'It doesn't look magic at all!' said Gerald. 'It's just like an old silly ring. I wonder if what Mabel said about the other things is true! Let's try.'

'I'd like to try,' said Mabel, 'only — I don't remember what I said anything was.'

So had the others. Perhaps that was why, when they invented ***qualities*** for various rings and chains and brooches, nothing at all happened.

'It's only the ring that's magic,' said Mabel at last; 'Oh, I say!' she added, in quite a different voice.

'What?'

'I think the ring is not magic!'

'But we know it is.'

'What ring?'

'The wishing-ring,' said Kathleen; 'the invisibility ring.'

'Don't you see,' said Mabel, opening her dark eyes very wide, 'the ring is what you say it is? That's how it made us invisible — I just said it. Oh, we can't leave it here. It is too ***valuable***. Say what it is.'

'It's a wishing-ring,' said Jimmy.

'We've had that before and you had your silly wish,' said Mabel, more and more excited. 'I say it isn't a wishing-ring. I say it's a ring that makes the person who wears it four yards high.'

She put the ring on her finger and at the same moment she became indeed four yards high.

'Now you've done it!' said Gerald and he was right.

'Oh, Mabel, it was silly of you!' said Kathleen.

---

[1] **It's time to have done with it.** — Пора с ним покончить.

'You didn't believe me when I said it was what I said it was,' said Mabel. 'And I had to show it to you. What shall I do now, I should like to know?'

'We must conceal you till you get normal,' said Gerald practically.

'Yes — but *where*?' said Mabel. 'I'm afraid one of you will have to stay the night with me. **I'm not going to be left alone, the silly height I am.**[1]'

Height was the right word; Mabel had said 'four yards high' and she was four yards high. But she was as thin as when her height was normal, so she looked, as Gerald said, 'like a nice ***worm***.' Her clothes had, of course, grown with her. She sat down suddenly on the floor.

'It's no use sitting there,' said Gerald.

'I'm not sitting here,' said Mabel; 'I only got down so as to be able to get through the door. I think I'll have to go on my hands and knees through most places. Look here, I must be out of doors before it gets dark.'

'You can't. Someone will see you.'

'No, I can ***creep*** on my front like a snake and hide in the bushes near the dinosaur,' said Mabel. 'And we could have a picnic there. I'll write to auntie. She'll give you the things for a picnic.'

So she wrote on a page from Gerald's note-book:

'DEAREST AUNTIE,

'Please may we have some things for a picnic? Gerald will bring them. I can't come myself, because I am a little tired. **I think I have been growing rather fast.**[2] — Your loving niece,

Mabel.

P.S. — Lot of things, please, because some of us are very hungry.'

---

[1] **I'm not going to be left alone, the silly height I am.** — Я не хочу оставаться одна, хоть я сейчас и такая дылда.

[2] **I think I have been growing too fast.** — Думаю, это потому, что я слишком быстро расту.

It was difficult, but possible, for Mabel to creep through the bushes. When Gerald returned with a basket, her long, pale face could be seen among the leaves, very near the ground.

'I look just like anybody else like this, don't I?' she asked anxiously; 'all the rest of me is miles away, under different bushes.'

'We've covered up the parts between the bushes with branches and leaves,' said Kathleen; 'don't move, Mabel, or you'll shake them off.'

Jimmy was unpacking the basket. He found there many good things: bread and butter, a bottle of milk, a bottle of water, cake and apples.

It was a wonderful picnic. Everyone became happy and calm. **A nice after-food peace filled the summer air.**[1] Even the stone dinosaur seemed peaceful and happy.

'I think **he liked a good meal in his day**[2],' said Gerald.

'Who did?'

'The dinosaur,' said Gerald.

'He had a meal today,' said Kathleen, and ***giggled***.

'Yes,' said Mabel, giggling also.

'What do you mean a meal?' Jimmy asked suspiciously.

'Oh, don't be stupid!' said Kathleen. 'We ***fed*** the dinosaur through the hole in his stomach with the clothes the Ugly-Wuglies were made of!'

'We can take them home with us, then,' said Gerald, 'so that's all right.'

'Look here,' said Kathleen suddenly; 'I've got an idea. Let me have the ring. I'll give it back before we go.'

'Oh, but you aren't going yet!' said Mabel. She pulled off the ring.

Kathleen took the ring and started to run towards the dinosaur, crying, 'Let's go and take the things now.' Her idea was

[1] **A nice after-food peace filled the summer air.** — В летнем воздухе ощущался приятный послеобеденный покой.

[2] **he liked a good meal in his day** — в свое время он тоже любил покушать

quite simple. She knew that a person who is not enchanted by the ring could **rename it and change its powers**[1]. She wanted to say aloud, so that the others could not hear her, 'This is a wishing-ring. It gives you any wish you choose.' And she did say it. And no one heard her, except the birds.

The way was uphill; it was sunny, and Kathleen had run fast. So when her brothers caught her at the dinosaur she was very hot indeed and couldn't decide calmly what to wish.

'I'll get up and move the things down, because I know where I put them,' she said.

Gerald and Jimmy helped her to climb up, and she disappeared through the hole into the dark inside of the monster. Then she began to throw down clothes and sticks.

'I'm coming up to help you,' said Gerald. Just as he got his shoulders through the opening he heard Kathleen's boots on the floor of the dinosaur's inside, and Kathleen's voice: 'It's so cool in here. Statues are always cool. I wish to be a statue. Oh!'

The 'oh' was a cry of horror.

'What's up?' Gerald asked. But in his heart he knew. He climbed up inside. In the little light that came up through the hole he could see something white. He struck a match and saw the face of Kathleen, white, stony, and lifeless. Her hair was white, too, and her hands, clothes, shoes — everything was white, hard and cold. Kathleen had her wish: she was a marble statue. Gerald could not speak. It was too sudden, too terrible. Then he turned and spoke down out of that cold, stony silence to Jimmy, in the green, sunny live world outside.

'Jimmy,' he said, 'Kathleen's gone and said that ring was a wishing-ring. And so it was, of course. I see now what she was up to, running like that. And then she went and wished she was a statue.'

'And she is?' asked Jimmy, below.

'Come up and have a look,' said Gerald. And Jimmy came.

[1] **rename it and change its powers** — дать ему другое название и изменить его чары

'She is really a statue,' he said in horror.

'Come on — let's go and tell Mabel,' said Gerald.

The two boys returned and told her the news.

'Oh, how awful! What next?' said Mabel.

'**She'll come all right**[1],' said Gerald, trying to be calm.

'Yes; but what about me?' asked Mabel. 'I haven't got the ring. **And my time will be up before hers is**.[2] Could you get it off her hand? I'll put it back on her hand when I am normal again.'

'I'm afraid the ring's turned to stone like her boots and all her clothes. But I'll go and see.'

Gerald got inside the dinosaur, struck a match and saw the dark ring on the white hand of the marble Kathleen. He pulled the ring, and, to his surprise, it slipped easily off the cold marble finger.

'I say, Cathy, I am sorry,' he said. Then he thought that perhaps she could hear him. So he told the statue exactly what he and the others wanted to do. Then he returned to the others.

'Here's your ring,' he said to Mabel. 'Now you're not frightened of anything, are you?'

'No,' said Mabel, in surprise. 'I'll stay here, but you must leave me all the coats, because it will be cold in the night. Then I shall be here when Kathleen comes out of the stone again. And you two go home and tell Mademoiselle that Kathleen's staying at the Towers.'

'But we don't know which of you will come right first. Anyhow, we'll say good night to Mademoiselle, and come and have a look at you before we go to bed,' said Gerald.

Mabel crept under the dinosaur, the boys covered her with coats and left.

The sun had disappeared behind the black trees and the moon was rising. Mabel slept peacefully under the dinosaur.

[1] **She'll come all right** — С ней всё будет нормально

[2] **And my time will be up before hers is.** — А мой срок кончится раньше, чем ее.

Inside the monster Kathleen, alive in her marble, slept too. She had heard Gerald's words. She was the same Kathleen, only she was Kathleen in a ***case*** of marble that didn't let her move. Inside, the marble was not cold or hard, but warm and pleasantly safe. Everything was well. She had only to wait quietly and quite comfortably when she would come out of this stone case. So she waited calmly and then fell asleep.

When she woke she felt needles in feet, and her arms were tired. She rubbed her eyes and remembered. She had been a statue, a statue inside the stone dinosaur.

'Now I'm alive again,' she said, 'and I'll get out of it.'

She sat down, put her feet through the hole, and realized that the dinosaur was moving!

'Oh!' said Kathleen inside it. 'It is moonlight, and it's come alive, like Gerald said.'

It was indeed moving. Kathleen was afraid to jump out of it, because the beast was moving fast. They were going downhill. Then Kathleen heard a ***splash***. They were close to water — the lake. Kathleen dropped quickly out of the hole on the grass, ran sideways and stood ***panting*** in the shadow of a statue's pedestal. A moment later the dinosaur slipped heavily into the water, and swam towards the central island.

'Be careful, little lady. I jump!' The voice came from the pedestal, and next moment **Phoebus**[1] had jumped from the pedestal.

'You are new,' said Phoebus. 'I haven't seen you before.'

'I am quite new,' said Kathleen, 'And I didn't know you could talk.'

'Why not?' Phoebus laughed. 'You can talk.'

'But I'm alive.'

'Am I not?' he asked. 'The white water calls me! I go.' And he jumped into the water.

Kathleen turned and went up the hill towards the bushes. She must find Mabel, and they must go home at once. She

[1] **Phoebus** — Феб (второе имя бога солнца Аполлона)

found Mabel very quickly, because her long and worm-like form covered with coats and trousers could be easily seen in the moonlight. Kathleen touched her long cheek gently, and she woke.

'What's up?' she said sleepily.

'It's only me,' Kathleen explained.

'How cold your hands are!' said Mabel.

'Wake up,' said Kathleen, 'and let's talk.

'Can't we go home now? I'm awfully tired and hungry.'

'You're too long to go home yet,' said Kathleen sadly, and then Mabel remembered.

She lay with closed eyes then she suddenly cried out:

'Oh! Cathy, I feel so funny —I'm getting shorter. I know I am —'

Mabel was really getting shorter. Her feet were near — her long arms became shorter — her face was no longer half a yard long.

'You are all right. Oh, I am so glad!' cried Kathleen; 'and now we'll go home at once, dear.'

'Go home?' said Mabel, slowly sitting up and looking at Kathleen with her big dark eyes. 'Go home like that?'

'Like what?' Kathleen asked impatiently.

'Why, *you,*' was Mabel's odd answer.

'I'm all right,' said Kathleen. 'Come on.'

'Look at yourself — your hands — your dress — everything.'

Kathleen looked at her hands. They were of marble whiteness. Her dress, too — her shoes, her stockings, even the ends of her hair. She was white as snow.

'What is it?' she asked, worried.

'Don't you see? You've *not* come right. You're a statue still.'

'I'm not — I'm alive — I'm talking to you.'

'I know you are, darling,' said Mabel kindly. 'That's because it's moonlight.'

'But you can see I'm alive.'

'Of course I can. I've got the ring,' said Mabel, taking her marble hand. 'It's moonlight, and you're a statue, and you've just come alive with all the other statues. And when the moon goes down you'll just be a statue again. By the way, where's the dinosaur?'

'In his bath,' said Kathleen, 'and so are all the other stone beasts.'

'Well,' said Mabel, **trying to look on the bright side of things**[1], 'that's good news.'

Helpful Words

quality *n зд.* свойство
valuable *a* ценный
worm *n* червяк
creep (crept, crept) *v* ползать
giggle *v* хихикать
fed *past от* **feed** *v* кормить
case *n* оболочка
splash *n* всплеск
pant *v* часто и тяжело дышать

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Who opened the stone door?
b) What did Mabel understand about the magic ring?
c) How did she prove that she was right?
d) What letter did Mabel write to her aunt?
e) Where did the children hide Mabel?

---

[1] **trying to look on the bright side of things** — пытаясь сохранить оптимизм

f) When did Kathleen become a statue?
g) Where did Kathleen meet Phoebus?
h) When did Mabel come right?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Mabel crept under the dinosaur, the boys covered her with coats and left.
b) Kathleen touched Mabel's long cheek gently, and she woke.
c) Gerald and Jimmy answered the questions of their sister and Mabel.
d) Kathleen took the ring and started to run towards the dinosaur.
e) Mabel put the ring on her finger and at the same moment she became indeed four yards high.
f) Gerald and Jimmy helped their sister to climb up inside the dinosaur.

3 Complete the sentences.

a) The children went up to the castle because _________.
b) Mabel refused to leave the ring in the treasure-room because _________.
c) Kathleen took the magic ring from Mabel because _________.
d) Kathleen jumped out of the dinosaur because _________.
e) The girls couldn't go home when Mabel became normal because _________.

4 Find in the text the English for:

Бесполезно здесь сидеть.
Дорога шла в гору.
Он зажег спичку.
Желание Кэтлин исполнилось.

Я теперь понимаю, что она задумала.
Это хорошие новости.

5 Match the verbs with the same or very close meaning.

a) to hide	1) to discover
b) to find	2) to conceal
c) to laugh	3) to understand
d) to realize	4) to giggle

6 Fill in the prepositions *among, out, into, off, for*.

a) Gerald and Jimmy called ____ help for the first time, and that call was at once answered form the outside.
b) The ring was put back ____ the odd ornaments that Mabel had once said were magic.
c) Mabel asked Gerald to get the ring ____ Kathleen's hand.
d) Kathleen realized that the dinosaur was moving and it was time to get ____ of it.
e) A moment later the dinosaur slipped heavily ____ the water.

7 Think of possible qualities for other rings, chains and brooches and make up sentences.

Example: A person who wears this ring is as strong as a bear.

8 Imagine that you are Gerald. Say:

a) when Mabel became four yards high.
b) what she looked like then.

9 Imagine that you are Kathleen. Say:

a) why you got the magic ring.
b) why you became a marble statue.
c) how you felt in the marble case.
d) what happened at moonrise.

Part 10

'I've got an idea,' said Mabel, 'we may find out a lot about this magic place, if the other statues aren't too proud to talk to us.'

'They aren't,' said Kathleen; 'at least, Phoebus wasn't. He was very polite and nice.'

'Where is he?' Mabel asked.

'He was in the lake,' said Kathleen.

'Then let's go down there,' said Mabel. She jumped up, but the white Kathleen did not move.

'Hello, little sister!' said a voice behind them. They turned their heads, surprised. There in the moonlight stood Phoebus, smiling at them, very friendly.

'Oh, it's you!' said Kathleen.

'Yes,' said Phoebus cheerfully. 'Who is your friend, child?'

'This is Mabel,' said Kathleen.

Mabel got up and ***bowed***, hesitated, and held out a hand.

'I'm happy to meet you, little lady,' said Phoebus, taking her marble fingers. 'But I don't understand how you can see us, and why you do not fear.'

Mabel showed him the ring.

'I see,' said Phoebus; 'but if you have that, why not become a statue and swim with us in the lake?'

'I can't swim,' said Mabel.

'**Nor yet me**[1],' said Kathleen.

'You can,' said Phoebus. 'All statues that come to life are good at all sports. And you, little lady, **wish yourself a statue**[2] and join us.'

'You see,' said Mabel 'this ring ... you wish for things, and you never know how long they're going to ***last***. It would be jolly to be a statue *now*, but not next morning.'

'You don't know the powers of your ring,' said Phoebus. 'Wish exactly, and the ring will exactly perform. Say this: "I wish to be a statue of living marble till the dawn".'

---

[1] **Nor yet me** — И я тоже

[2] **wish yourself a statue** — пожелай превратиться в статую

'Oh, yes, do, Mabel, it would be so jolly!' cried Kathleen.

'And could I swim then?'

'Swim, and laugh, and eat the food of the gods, and listen to a beautiful song.'

'O, Mabel, do!' said Kathleen. 'I am so hungry.'

Still Mabel hesitated. Then she looked at Kathleen's legs and suddenly said: 'Very well, I will. But first I'll take off my shoes and stockings. Marble boots look simply awful.'

She had pulled off shoes and stockings, then she said the wish, and there were two little live statues in the moonlight. Tall Phoebus took a hand of each.

'Come — run!' he cried. And they ran.

They ran down the slope to the lake and jumped into the water. They swam easily and beautifully. And it was so lovely there. The moon was high in the sky. The ***willows***, water-lilies, temples, terraces and bushes made the place very romantic.

'Now one more round,' said Phoebus kindly, 'and then we'll swim to the island.'

The island was bigger than it seemed, and it was covered with trees and bushes. But when they passed the trees, they saw a wide lawn, and then marble steps going down to a round pool, where there were no water-lilies — only gold and silver fish. And the water and marble and grass was lighted with a clear, white, light, seven times stronger than the whitest moonlight, and in the waters of the pool seven moons ***reflected***. The girls looked up at the sky, almost expecting to see seven moons there. But no, the old moon was alone there.

'There are seven moons,' said Mabel.

'Of course,' said Phoebus; '**everything in our world is seven times as much so as in yours**[1]. Now let's join the ladies.'

On the other side of the pool there were twenty or thirty figures — all statues and all alive. Some were ***dipping*** their white

---

[1] **everything in our world is seven times as much so as in yours** — в нашем мире все превосходит в семь раз то, что есть в вашем мире

feet among the gold and silver fish. Others were holding hands and dancing in a ring.

'I bring two guests,' said Phoebus, coming up to the group. The statues crowded round, ***stroking*** the girls' hair.

'Are the ***wreaths*** ready, **Hebe**[1]?' the tallest lady asked. 'Make two more!'

And almost directly Hebe came down the steps with rose-wreaths on her arms. There was one for each marble head.

The children remembered how Mademoiselle had said that gods and goddesses always wore wreaths for meals.

Hebe herself put the roses on the girls' heads and **Aphrodite**[2] took them by the hands and said: 'Come, we must get the feast ready. **Eros**[3] — **Psyche**[4] — Hebe — all you young people can get the fruit.'

'I don't see any fruit,' said Kathleen.

'You must pick it like this,' said Psyche, lifting her marble arms to a willow branch. She showed her hand to the children — it held a pear.

'I see,' said Mabel. 'You just —' She touched the willow branch — and they saw a big peach in her hand.

'Yes, just that,' laughed Psyche, who was a dear, as any one could see.

After this they gathered fruit into a few silver baskets, while the elder statues were busy getting golden glasses and jugs and dishes from the branches of other trees and filling them with everything nice to eat and drink. Then everyone sat or lay down on the steps and the feast began.

'I wonder what the boys are doing,' said Mabel, taking the third peach.

---

[1] **Hebe** — Геба, древнегреческая богиня вечной юности

[2] **Aphrodite** — Афродита, древнегреческая богиня любви и красоты

[3] **Eros** — Эрос, древнегреческий бог любви

[4] **Psyche** — Психея, древнегреческая богиня, олицетворяющая человеческую душу.

'At this moment,' said **Hermes**[1], who had just returned from the flight, 'at this moment they are trying to find you near the home of the dinosaur. They're very worried about you.'

Kathleen stood up.

'Thank you all very much,' she said. 'It was very kind of you to have us, and we've enjoyed ourselves very much, but I think it's time to go now.'

'If you are worried about your brothers,' said Phoebus, 'they can easily join you. Give me your ring for a moment.'

He tookit from Kathleen's half-reluctant hand, dipped it in the reflection of one of the seven moons, and gave it back. 'Now,' he said, 'say what Mabel wished for herself. Say —'

'I know,' and Kathleen made her wish.

'You were too quick,' said Phoebus. 'They are statues now, but they are not here. Hermes, bring them here and explain things as you come.'

He dipped the ring again in one of the reflected moons and gave it back to Kathleen.

'Now it's clean and ready for the next magic.'

It was clear that Hermes had 'explained everything' quite fully, because when marble Gerald and Jimmy arrived, **they were quite at ease**[2]. They bowed to the goddesses and took their places beside them.

When the feast was over, Hera turned her eyes on the children and said: 'How did the ring come into your hands?'

'I'll tell you,' said Mabel. 'Once upon a time there was a little girl called Mabel,' she added and went on with story of the enchanted castle. The marble gods listened — almost as enchanted as the castle itself.

---

[1] **Hermes** — Гермес, вестник олимпийских богов, покровитель пастухов и путников

[2] **they were quite at ease** — они не чувствовали никакого смущения

'And so,' ended Mabel ended, 'Kathleen wished for the boys and the Lord Hermes brought them and here we all are.'

The statues began discussing the story. When the discussion was over, Mabel said: 'Now we want to know something.'

'What?'

'How you come alive, and how you know about the ring.'

'Tell them, Phoebus,' said Aphrodite.

So Phoebus told.

'All statues,' he said, 'can come alive when the moon shines. But only on one night in all the year people can see them.'

'And when is that?' Gerald asked politely.

'At the **festival of the harvest**[1],' said Phoebes. 'And it can happen only in certain temples. One of these temples is in this great garden.'

'Then,' said Gerald, much interested, 'if we come up to that temple on that night, we could see you, even if we are not statues or don't have the ring?'

'Even so,' said Phoebus. 'More, we must answer any question asked by people.'

'And the night is when?'

'Ah!' said Phoebus, and laughed. '**Wouldn't you like to know!**[2]'

Then the great marble **Zeus**[3] stroked his long beard, and said: 'Enough of stories, Phoebus. Play to us.'

'But the ring,' said Mabel in a whisper, 'how you know all about the ring?'

'Ask me again before dawn, and I will tell you all I know of it,' the god whispered back.

---

[1] **festival of the harvest** — праздник урожая (традиционный праздник, который отмечается в Англии в конце сентября или начале октября)

[2] **Wouldn't you like to know!** — Еще бы вам не хотелось это знать!

[3] **Zeus** — Зевс, верховный бог у древних греков

Then Phoebus began to play the ***lyre***, and music filled the air. It was so sweet and beautiful that those who listened forgot time and ***space***.

And then, suddenly, the music stopped. Phoebus stood up, crying, 'The dawn! To your pedestals, o gods!'

At once the whole crowd of beautiful marble people ran towards the trees. Then the children heard the splash. They heard, too, the breathing of a great beast, and knew that the dinosaur, too, was returning to his own place.

Only Hermes had time to whisper to them with a laugh: 'In fourteen days from now, at the Temple of Strange Stones.'

'What's the secret of the ring?' asked Mabel.

'The ring is the heart of the magic,' said Hermes. 'Ask at the moonrise on the fourteenth day, and you shall know all.'

And as he flew away a cold wind began to blow, a grey light grew and grew, and the marble slipped away from the children like a skin, and they were statues no more, but live children, standing in long grass. There was no lawn, no marble steps, no pool with seven moons.

'What shall we do now?' said Mabel, ***shivering*** with cold. 'We can't swim now. And this *is* the island?'

It was and they couldn't swim.

'Is there a boat?' Jimmy asked.

'No,' said Mabel, 'not on this side of the lake.'

'Can't anyone think of anything?' Gerald asked.

'The ring,' said Mabel. 'Of course we can get home with the help of the ring.'

'Where is the ring?' asked Gerald.

'You had it,' Mabel said to Kathleen.

'I know I had,' said Kathleen, 'but I gave it to Psyche to look at and — and she put it on her finger!'

Everyone tried not to be angry with Kathleen.

'If we ever get off this island, can you find Psyche's statue and get it off again?' asked Gerald.

'No, I can't,' Mabel moaned. 'I don't know where the statue is. I've never seen it.'

'Now, look here,' said Gerald after a long silence. 'Let's make a tour of the island. Perhaps we could find a boat.'

Quite sure that there wasn't and couldn't be any boat, the four children started to explore the island.

The sun was already sending strong light straight at the children's eyes. This, with the fact that he was not looking where he was going, was the reason why Gerald ***stumbled***, fell down some steps that opened suddenly in the ground.

'Oh, Gerald!' called Mabel down the steps; 'are you hurt?'

'No,' said Gerald, angrily, because he was hurt; 'it's steps, and there's a passage.'

'I knew there was a passage,' said Mabel; 'it goes under the water and comes out at the Temple of Flora.'

'Then we can get out that way,' said Gerald's voice.

'I think it goes past the place where the Ugly-Wugly found its good hotel.'

'It's no good,' said Jimmy weakly; 'you know well you can't get out of that Temple of Flora door, even if you get to it.'

'I *don*'t know,' said Gerald, 'there can be a secret spring inside that door.'

So the four went down the stone steps that led to the underground and underwater passage. Then the passage took a turn, there were more steps, down, down, and then the children saw something that they had never thought possible. It was a great marble hall. Its roof was held up by two rows of round pillars, and every corner of the hall was filled with a warm, lovely light.

'How beautiful!' Kathleen whispered. 'I can't believe it's real,' said Mabel.

This hall in which the children found themselves was the most beautiful place in the world. All round it were great arches. And through these arches they could see many things. Through one arch they saw an olive garden, and in it two lovers who held each other's hands, under an Italian moon; through another a small ship on a ***wild*** sea. A third showed a king on his throne; a fourth showed a really good hotel, with the respectable Ugly-Wugly sitting on the front doorsteps. There was a mother, ***bending*** over a child's bed. There was an artist looking at the picture he had painted, a general dying on a field of a battle he had won. And these things were not pictures, but true life.

There were many other pictures, and all showed the best moments in people's lives. And the really good hotel had its place here too, because there are some souls that ask nothing more than 'a really good hotel'.

They went slowly up the hall, and at the end of it the children saw where the light came from. It came from one statue that Mabel 'did not know where to find' — the statue of Psyche. They went on slowly, quite happy. And when they came close to Psyche they saw the ring on her hand.

Gerald put his knee on the pedestal. 'I hope you don't mind,' he said, and drew the ring off very gently.

Then they passed behind the white Psyche, and came to a dark passage that led from the hall. Kathleen said, 'Give me the ring. I know exactly what to say.'

Gerald gave it reluctantly.

'I wish,' said Kathleen slowly, 'that we were safe in our own beds, undressed, and in our nightgowns, and asleep.'

And the next moment they were all in their own beds. Mabel's own bed was, of course, at Yalding Towers, and to this day Mabel's aunt cannot understand how Mabel, who was staying the night in the town was in her bed in the morning.

Helpful Words

bow *v* кланяться
last *v* длиться
willow *n* ива
reflect *v* отражаться
dip *v* окунать
stroke *v* гладить, ласкать

wreath *n* венок
lyre *n* лира
space *n* пространство
shiver *v* дрожать
stumble *v* спотыкаться
wild *a* бурный
bend (bent, bent) *v* сгибать(ся)

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Where did Phoebus invite the girls?
b) How did the gods meet them?
c) Where did the gods get the food and drinks?
d) Why did Phoebus dip the ring in the reflection of one of the seven moons?
e) When did the feast end?
f) How did the children get into the underground passage?
g) What did they see in the hall?

2 Say who:

a) pulled off her shoes and stockings.
b) was dancing in a ring.
c) showed the girls how to pick up fruit.
d) brought Gerald and Jimmy to the island.
e) told the story of the enchanted castle and the ring.
f) played the lyre.
g) drew the ring off Psyche's hand.

3 Complete the sentences.

a) Kathleen and Mabel could easily swim in the lake because ________.

b) The girls looked up at the sky almost expecting to see seven moons but ________.
c) Kathleen wanted to get back to the dinosaur because ________.
d) The gods didn't tell the children about the secret of the ring because ________.
e) The children didn't have the magic ring because ________.

4 Find in the text the English for:

еще один круг
Как кольцо попало к вам в руки?
Мы приятно провели время.
Ты ушибся?

5 Complete the chart.

easy	easier	the easiest	easily
kind	________	________	________
________	________	the most awful	________
________	________	________	beautifully
reluctant	________	________	________
________	________	the best	well

6 Fill in the gaps with the verbs in Past Simple.

to bow to fill to slip to stroke to show

a) Zeus ________ his long beard and asked Phoebus to play a song.
b) At dawn the marble ________ away from the children like a skin.

c) The pictures in the hall ________ the best moments in people's lives.
d) Gerald and Jimmy ________ to the goddesses and took their places beside them.
e) Then Phoebus began to play the lyre, and music ________ the air.

7 Say which word does not go with the others and why.

a) peach, apple, cabbage, pear
b) ring, wreath, crown, brooch
c) water-lily, rose, carnation, lily
d) marble, grass, moonlight, water

8 Draw a map of the island. Describe it.

9 Imagine that you are Mabel. Say:

a) who invited you to the island.
b) what made you accept (принять) the invitation.
c) how you got to the island.
d) what the gods and goddesses were doing when you came there.
e) how you spent the night with the gods.

10 Are you good at sports? What sports do you prefer? What sporting events (спортивные события) do you watch on TV?



Part 11

It was show-day at Yalding Castle, and the children decided to go and visit Mabel. There were more visitors than usual today because many people knew that Lord Yalding, who was in the castle, wanted to show the place in all its fantastic beauty to a rich American who wished to ***rent*** it.

It certainly looked very splendid. Mabel's aunt had taken the covers off the furniture and put flowers in the rooms.

All the afternoon the crowd in its ***smart*** holiday clothes, pink blouses, and light-coloured suits, and summer hats passed through and through the dark hall, the magnificent drawing-rooms and bedrooms and picture-galleries. The sounds of boots and **high-heeled shoes**[1], laughter and loud voices could be heard everywhere.

[1] **high-heeled shoes** — туфли на высоких каблуках

'I hate to see all these people in our garden,' said Gerald, as the children watched the visitors from the window of the stone ***summer-house*** at the end of the terrace.

'I said that to that nice man this morning,' said Mabel, 'and he said **it wasn't much to let them come once a week**[1].

'Did he say anything else?' asked Jimmy.

'A lot of things,' said Mabel. 'I told him about our adventures.'

'Oh, no!'

'And he thinks I've got a real literary talent.'

'I say, I forgot to tell you, but I met Mademoiselle and she's coming to meet us and walk back with us,' said Gerald.

'It may be kind, but now we shall have to sit here and wait for her,' said Mabel, 'and I promised we'd meet that man. He's going to bring things in a basket and have a picnic-tea with us.'

'Where?'

'Beside the dinosaur.'

'When?'

'As soon as the gates shut. That's five.'

'We might take Mademoiselle to the picnic,' suggested Gerald.

'You can't tell what she will think about it,' said Kathleen.

'Well, I'll tell you what,' said Gerald, lazily turning on the stone bench. 'You all go there and meet your man. A picnic's a picnic. And I'll wait for Mademoiselle.'

Mabel said that this was jolly decent of Gerald. Jimmy added that Gerald liked to ***suck up*** to people.

'Little boys don't understand diplomacy,' said Gerald calmly; 'You never know when a grown-up may be useful. Besides, they *like* it. You must give them *some* little pleasures.'

'All right,' said Mabel, 'come on, Cathy, Jimmy.'

It was a sunny summer day. When the children reached the dinosaur, they were very hot. The man looked very nice,

---

[1] **it wasn't much to let them come once a week** — не страшно, если люди будут приходить сюда раз в неделю

the girls thought. He was wearing a grey summer suit, a pretty green tie and a straw hat. He welcomed the children warmly. And there were two promising baskets under the trees.

He was a man of tact.

'You must be thirsty and hungry,' he said, 'We'll have tea, but first you can take off your shoes and stockings; there's a little canal right there.'

It was very pleasant to dip feet in cool water after a hot walk. When they came back, they had tea with milk and cakes, and fruit.

Jimmy was much impressed with it and he suddenly said: 'Your feast's as good as the feast of the gods, almost.'

'What do you mean?' asked the host; and Jimmy told him the whole story of that wonderful night when the statues came alive, and they had a feast with them.

The man smiled: 'Did you get all this out of a book?'

'No,' said Jimmy, 'it happened; everything I've told you did happen, and so did the things Mabel told you.'

The man looked a little uncomfortable. 'All right,' he said. And there was a short silence.

'Look here,' said Jimmy. 'Do you believe me or not?'

'Don't be silly, Jimmy!' Kathleen whispered.

'I think you tell adventures very well,' said the man calmly.

'Very well,' said Jimmy, sitting up, 'you don't believe me. 'Cathy, give me the ring.'

'Oh, no!' said the girls together.

They did not want to give the ring to Jimmy, but they couldn't stop him. It was his hour.

'Now,' said Jimmy, 'this is the ring Mabel told you about. I say it is a wishing-ring. And if you put it on your finger and wish, everything you wish will happen.'

'Don't wish for anything silly,' said Kathleen. 'Wish for something you really want.'

'I'll wish for the only thing I really want,' said the man. 'I wish my friend were here.'

The three who knew the power of the ring looked round to see the man's friend, but they only saw Mademoiselle and Ger-

ald. Mademoiselle was wearing a white dress, looking quite nice and like a picture, and Gerald was hot and polite.

'Good afternoon,' said Gerald. 'I ***persuaded*** Mademoiselle —'

That sentence was never finished, because the man and the French teacher were looking at each other **'like stuck pigs'**[1], as Jimmy said later.

'Is she your friend?' Jimmy asked.

'Oh yes,' said the man. 'You are my friend, are you not?'

'But yes,' Mademoiselle said kindly. 'I am your friend.'

'There! you see,' said Jimmy, 'the ring does do what I said.'

'You can say it's the ring. For me it's the happiest ***coincidence***,' said the man. 'Jimmy, give your brother some tea. Mademoiselle, come and walk in the woods. I would like to talk to you.'

'Yes, we must speak to each other,' said Mademoiselle, 'I haven't seen Lord Yalding for a long time!'

'So he was Lord Yalding all the time,' said Jimmy, as the white dress and the grey suit disappeared in the wood. 'And she is his friend.'

'His friend!' said Mabel with strong ***scorn***; 'don't you see she's his lover? She's the lady that had gone into a convent, and he couldn't find her. And now the ring's made them happy.'

Mabel was right about Mademoiselle. Her ***guardian*** was against her marriage to a poor lord and had put her in a convent. Then he disappeared in South America with all her money, and Mademoiselle had to work. She became a teacher and came to that school because it was near Lord Yalding's home.

Next morning Mademoiselle looked a different person. Her cheeks were pink, her lips were red, and her eyes were larger and brighter.

Immediately after breakfast Lord Yalding invited the whole party to Yalding Towers.

The children decided to explore the castle. Lord Yalding gave his permission, and together with Mademoiselle he went

[1] **'like stuck pigs'** — «словно пришибленные»

out for a walk in the garden. Mabel showed the others all the secret doors and passages and stairs that she had discovered. When they were coming out of a little secret room they suddenly met an odd little man who had a beard like a goat.

'This part of the castle is private,' said Mabel and shut the door behind her.

'I know that,' said the stranger, 'but I have the permission of the Lord Yalding to see the house.'

'Oh!' said Mabel. 'I'm sorry. We didn't know.'

The gentleman was thin and well-dressed; he had small, quick eyes and a brown face.

'You are playing some game?

'No, sir,' said Gerald, 'only exploring.'

'May I join your expedition?' asked the gentleman, smiling.

The children looked at each other.

'We can't take you because we don't know what you want to find here,' said Jimmy.

'I understand your position,' said the gentleman. 'I have come to this country because I want to rent a nice house. My name is Jefferson D. Conway.'

'Oh!' said Mabel; 'then you're the American millionaire.'

'Not yet, young lady,' said Mr Jefferson D. Conway. 'Now let's start our tour.'

Mabel led the millionaire through the castle. He seemed pleased, but at the same time disappointed too.

'It is a fine castle,' he said at last when they returned to the ***state*** bedroom; 'but isn't there a secret passage or a ghost?'

'There are,' said Mabel, 'if you were sleep in this room, I expect you'll see the ghost,' said Mabel.

'There *is* a ghost here then?' he said with enthusiasm.

'Yes,' Mabel answered, 'old Sir Rupert, who lost his head long ago, walks at night here, with his head under his arm.'

'Well,' said the American with a smile, 'I'll ask the Lord Yalding to let me pass a night in his state bedroom. And if I hear a ghost's footsteps, I'll take the place.'

'I *am* glad!' said Kathleen.

'You are very certain of your ghost[1],' said the American suspiciously. 'Let me tell you, young gentlemen, that I carry a gun, and when I see a ghost, I ***shoot***.' And he pulled a pistol out of his pocket. 'Thank you for all your kindness.'

'If the American rents the castle, he'll pay Lord Yalding a good rent, and then he could marry the French teacher,' said Mabel. 'We must make a ghost for him.'

Later that evening Lord Yalding suddenly appeared at school again and said: 'Mr Jefferson Conway wants you boys to spend the night with him in the state chamber. You don't mind, do you? He thinks **you've got some idea of playing ghost-tricks on him**[2].'

It was impossible to refuse, though the boys were reluctant to see Sir Rupert's ghost.

As soon as Mabel learned from her aunt that Mr Jefferson D. Conway would sleep at the castle that night, she found Lord Yalding and got the ring back. Then she said a wish, 'that Sir Rupert and his head may appear tonight in the state bedroom.'

Gerald and Jimmy were awakened by a pistol shot. In the dark state bedroom lighted by six tall candles they saw the American with a pistol in his hand; and at the door a figure — and no head! The head, sure enough, was there; but it was under the right arm. The face looking from under the arm was pleasantly smiling. Both boys screamed. The American shot again. The ***bullet*** passed through Sir Rupert, who didn't notice it.

Then, suddenly, it was morning. The American was gone.

'Perhaps you'll believe in the ring now,' said Jimmy to Lord Yalding, whom he met later on in the picture-gallery; **'it's all our doing**[3] that Mr Jefferson saw the ghost. He told us he'd take the house if he saw a ghost, so of course he did see one.'

---

[1] **You're very certain of your ghost** — Вы очень уверены в своем привидении

[2] **you've got some idea of playing ghost-tricks on him** — вы хотите разыграть его, изображая привидение

[3] **it's all our doing** — это мы устроили

'Oh, you did, did you?' said Lord Yalding in rather an odd voice. 'Perhaps you'll be interested to learn, Mr Jefferson D. Conway was so pleased with your ghost that he got me out of bed at six o'clock this morning to talk about it.'

'Oh!' said Jimmy. 'What did he say?'

'He said, as far as I can remember,' said Lord Yalding, in the same strange voice — 'he said: "My lord, I like your castle and the park, but I don't like your ***ancestors***. They walk at night with their heads under their arms. I don't mind a ghost that ***sighs***. But a ghost that stands with its head under his arm smiling when bullets go through it — no! If this is a British family ghost, excuse me!" And he went off by the early train.'

'I am sorry, said Jimmy remarked, 'we thought it would be just what you wanted. And perhaps someone else will take the house.'

'I don't know anyone else rich enough,' said Lord Yalding.

'I say —' Jimmy looked up at Lord Yalding with a new idea. 'If you need money, why don't you sell your jewels?'

'I haven't any jewels,' said Lord Yalding and began to walk away.

'I mean the ones in the panelled room with the stars in the ceiling,' Jimmy insisted, following him.

'There aren't any,' said Lord Yalding shortly; 'and I don't want to hear any of this nonsense.'

'It's not nonsense,' said Mabel, appearing together with Mademoiselle. 'You just come and see.'

'Let us see what they want to show us,' said Mademoiselle.

So they went, Mabel and Jimmy leading, while Mademoiselle and Lord Yalding followed, hand in hand.

Helpful Words

rent *n* плата за аренду; *v* арендовать
smart *a* нарядный
summer-house *n* беседка
suck up (to) *phr v* подлизываться (к)

persuade *v* убеждать
coincidence *n* совпадение
scorn *n* презрение
guardian *n* опекун
state *a зд.* парадный
shoot (shot, shot) *v* стрелять
bullet *n* пуля
ancestor *n* предок
sigh *v* вздыхать

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

a) Why did the children go to the castle?
b) Why didn't they like so many visitors at Yalding Towers?
c) Where did they have the picnic?
d) What did Jimmy do when the stranger didn't believe his story?
e) When did the children find out that the stranger was Lord Yalding?
f) When did the children explore the castle?
g) Who joined their tour of the castle?
h) Did the American rent the place?

2 Put the sentences in the right order.

a) Immediately after breakfast Lord Yalding invited the whole party to Yalding Towers.
b) The face looking from under the arm was pleasantly smiling.
c) Mabel led the millionaire through the castle.
d) Mademoiselle was wearing a white dress, looking quite nice and like a picture, and Gerald was hot and polite.
e) Mabel's aunt had taken the covers off the furniture and put flowers in the rooms.
f) When they came back, they had tea with milk and cakes, and fruit.

g) When the children reached the dinosaur, they were very hot.

3 Choose the right ending.

a) There were many visitors at Yalding Towers because
1) it was the first show-day that year.
2) Lord Yalding wanted to show it in all its beauty to a man who could rent it.
3) it was the time when the garden was fantastically beautiful.

b) Gerald stayed in the summer-house to wait for Mademoiselle because
1) he didn't want to walk in the sun.
2) he didn't like the stranger.
3) he had promised to do so.

c) The children made a ghost for Mr Jefferson D. Conway
1) to get rid of the unpleasant man.
2) to make him rent the castle and pay Lord Yalding a good rent.
3) to show Lord Yalding his famous ancestor.

d) The rich American left the castle early in the morning because
1) the rent was too high.
2) the castle was too big for him.
3) he didn't like the ghost.

4 Find in the text the English for:

соломенная шляпа
В эту часть замка посетителям вход запрещен.
Он вытащил меня из постели.
подлизываться к людям

5 Put the verbs in the right form.

a) Mabel showed her friends all secret doors and passages she _________ (to discover).

b) When they ________ (to come) out of a little secret room they suddenly met an odd little man who had a beard like a goat.
c) 'We must speak to each other. I ________ (to see) Lord Yalding for a long time,' said Mademoiselle.
d) The American ________ (to shoot) again.

6 Prove that Lord Yalding was a grateful man and a man of tact.

7 Gerald said: "You never know when a grown-up may be useful... You must give them *some* little pleasures." Do you agree with him? Was it diplomacy or was he really sucking up? Give your opinion.

8 Tell the story of Mademoiselle. Say how she changed after her meeting with Lord Yalding.

9 Imagine that you are Jimmy. Speak of Mr Jefferson D. Conway.

a) Say when you met him for the first time.
b) Describe his appearance.
c) Say why you decided to make a ghost for him.
d) Say what you saw that night.
e) Say what happened in the morning.
f) Say where you took Lord Yalding and Mademoiselle and why.

Part 12

The procession entered the little panelled room.

'There's a secret spring here somewhere,' said Mabel, trying to find it.

'Where?' said Lord Yalding.

'Here,' said Mabel impatiently, 'only I can't find it.'

And she couldn't. Mabel's careful fingers ***felt*** the whole panelling. The spring was simply not there.

'You see!' said Lord Yalding ***severely***. 'I've had enough of this silly business. Give me the ring; it's mine, as you found it somewhere here and don't say another word about all this rubbish of magic and enchantment.'

'Gerald's got the ring,' said Mabel ***miserably***.

'Then go and find him,' said Lord Yalding — 'both of you.'

Soon the four children came back together.

'They don't believe about the jewels,' said Mabel, suddenly in tears, 'and I can't find the spring. It was here, and —'

Her fingers felt it as she spoke; and as she stopped speaking the panels opened, and everyone saw the shelves full of jewels.

'My God!' said Lord Yalding and Mademoiselle.

'But why *now*?' asked Mabel. 'Why not before?'

'I think it's magic,' said Gerald. 'There's no real spring here, and it couldn't act because the ring wasn't here. Phoebus told us the ring was the heart of all the magic.'

Gerald gave the ring to Lord Yalding. Soon the children and Mademoiselle returned to school.

In the evening and at breakfast Mademoiselle was happy and kind. Then Lord Yalding came to see her. The meeting took place in the drawing-room. Soon Lord Yalding went out of the drawing-room leaving the door open, and Gerald, going up to his room for a pencil, heard the sobs. Mademoiselle was quite certainly crying.

'They're beginning to quarrel *already*!' he said to himself. He went into the drawing-room, shutting the door behind him.

'It is all over,' Mademoiselle was saying, 'he will not marry me!'

Gerald was certain that the matter was somehow the ***fault*** of that ring. And in this Gerald was right. As you remember **Gerald had very pretty ways with grown-ups**[1] when he wanted. So he persuaded her to tell him what had happened.

[1] **Gerald had very pretty ways with grown-ups** — Джеральд отлично умел обходиться со взрослыми

The story, as told by Mademoiselle, was certainly an unusual one. Lord Yalding, last night after dinner, had walked in the park —'

'I know,' said Gerald; 'and he had the ring on. And he saw —'

'He saw the monuments become alive,' sobbed Mademoiselle; 'He remembered your story and wished himself a statue. Then he swam in the lake and had a feast with gods on an island. At dawn he became a real man again. He says that it's not a dream; he thinks that he's mad. And a mad man must not marry. There is no hope.'

'There *is*,' said Gerald. 'He's not mad, and it's not a dream. It's magic. Did he talk to the gods?'

'This is the most mad of all his ideas. He says that the gods asked him to come to some temple tomorrow when the moon rises.'

'Right,' cried Gerald, 'Dear nice, kind, pretty Mademoiselle, stop crying. Tomorrow he will go to that temple. We will go. He'll see that he isn't mad, and you'll understand all about everything.'

Mademoiselle half sobbed, half smiled and said: 'Is it some of your tricks, like the ghost?'

'I can't explain,' said Gerald, 'but everything is going to be exactly what you wish.'

'I believe you,' said Mademoiselle.

And now it is near moonrise. The French teacher and the four children are going over the grass. They go across the lawn and through the wood and come at last to a ring of big stones. It is the Temple of Strange Stones. In the middle of the circle there is a great ***flat*** stone. Something dark moves in the circle. Mademoiselle goes to it and takes its arm. It is Lord Yalding, and he is telling her to go.

'Never!' she cries. 'If you are mad, I am mad too, because I believe the story these children tell. And I am here to be with you.'

The children, holding hands near the flat stone, listen, trying not to listen.

'Are you not afraid?' Lord Yalding is saying.

Gerald goes to them to say: 'You can't be afraid if you are wearing the ring. And I'm sorry, but we can hear every word you say.'

She laughs again. 'It doesn't matter,' she says, 'you already know that we love each other.'

Then Lord Yalding puts the ring on her finger, and they stand together.

Then the first ***moonbeam*** touches the far end of the central stone, now it gets nearer and nearer to the middle of it, now at last it touches the very heart and centre of that great stone. And a fountain of light comes out of it. Everything changes. There are no more secrets. There is no time or space. It is a moment and it is ***eternity***.

At that moment six people saw many moving shapes. The great beasts came first, strange forms that were **when the world was new**[1] — gigantic dinosaurs, ***mammoths***, strange birds. Then, not from the garden but from very far away, came the stone gods of Egypt with the heads of animals and birds, all in stone, and all alive; figures of angels with wings, sphinxes, idols from Southern islands; and, last of all, the beautiful marble shapes of the gods and goddesses whom they had seen on the lake-island.

The children had thought to ask many questions, but now no one spoke a word, because they were in the circle of the real magic where all things are understood without speech.

All the stone creatures gathered round the stone. Then all the faces turned upward and cried one word: 'The light!' And the sound of their voice was like the sound of a great wave.

And then the light disappeared, and with it disappeared all the stone figures.

'I want to go to the cave on the island,' said the French girl.

Very quietly they went down to the boat-house, crossed the lake in a boat and came to the island. Then they found the steps.

They went down into the Hall of Psyche.

[1] **when the world was new** — в доисторические времена

It was **the Hall of Granted Wishes**[1].

'The ring,' said Lord Yalding.

'The ring,' said his lover, 'is the magic ring given long ago to people, and it is what you say it is. A lady of my house gave it to your ancestor and asked him to build her a garden and a house like her own palace and garden in her own land. This place is built partly by his love and partly by that magic. She never lived to see it; that was the price of the magic.'

'Only one wish is left now,' her voice went on. 'Shall I wish?'

'Yes — wish,' they said, all of them.

'I wish, then,' said Lord Yalding's lover, '**that all the magic this ring has done may be undone**[2], and that the ring itself may be just a symbol of our love.'

As soon as she said these words the enchanted light and the windows of granted wishes disappeared. And where Psyche's statue had been was a stone.

'It is her grave,' the girl said.

Next day no one could remember anything at all exactly. But many things were changed. When Mademoiselle woke in her own bed in the morning she had in her hand not the magic ring but the ***plain*** gold ring (later it was used in the wedding ceremony). More than half the jewels in the panelled room were gone, and those that remained lay just on the shelves. There was no passage at the back of the Temple of Flora. Quite a lot of the secret passages and hidden rooms had disappeared. And there were fewer statues in the garden. However, the jewels that were left were quite enough to pay for everything.

All the ring-magic was undone so suddenly that it was difficult to believe that any magic had ever happened. But how then could you explain the paragraph, which appeared in the evening papers the day after the magic of the moon-rising?

---

[1] **the Hall of Granted Wishes** — Зал Сбывшихся Желаний

[2] **that all the magic this ring has done may be undone** — чтобы всё волшебство, совершенное при помощи этого кольца, исчезло

'MYSTERIOUS DISAPPEARANCE OF A WELL-KNOWN BUSINESSMAN'

'Mr U. W. Ugli,' the papers said, 'had remained late, working at his office. When in the morning the office door was opened, the police found the clothes of this gentleman on the floor, together with an umbrella, a walking stick and a golf club. His body was not found.'

Helpful Words

feel (felt, felt) *v зд.* ощупывать
severely *adv* строго
miserably *adv* жалобно
fault *n* вина
flat *a* плоский
moonbeam *n* луч лунного света
eternity *n* вечность
mammoth *n* мамонт

Exercises

1 Answer the questions.

b) Who brought the magic ring into the treasure-room?
a) When did Lord Yalding come to see Mademoiselle?
c) What happened when he left?
d) Who persuaded Mademoiselle to say what had happened?
e) What did the people see at the Temple of Strange Stones?
f) What did the stone creatures do?
g) What happened in the Hall of Granted Wishes?
h) What was the wish of Lord Yalding's lover?
i) What things were changed the next day?

2 **Say why:**

a) Mabel couldn't find the secret spring.
b) Mademoselle was crying after the meeting with Lord Yalding.
c) Gerald went into the drawing-room, shutting the door behind him.
d) Mademoiselle refused to leave Lord Yalding at the Temple of Strange Stones.
e) the children didn't ask any questions there.

3 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

a) As soon as she said these words the enchanted light and the windows of granted wishes disappeared.
b) Quite a lot of the secret passages and hidden rooms had disappeared.
c) The procession entered the little panelled room.
d) And then the light disappeared, and with it disappeared all the stone figures.
e) Very quietly they went down to the boat-house, crossed the lake in a boat and came to the island.
f) All the stone creatures gathered round the stone.
g) Gerald gave the ring to Lord Yalding.

4 **Find in the text the English for:**

Хватит с меня этих глупостей.
подняться в свою комнату за карандашом
Всё кончено.
Это не имеет значения.
церемония бракосочетания

5 **Fill in the prepositions *for, on, by, of, with.***

a) As she stopped speaking the panels opened, and everyone saw the shelves full _________ jewels.
b) Gerald had very pretty ways _________ grown-ups when he wanted.

c) Then he swam in the lake and had a feast with gods _________ an island.
d) This place was built partly _________ his love and partly _________ that magic.
e) The jewels that were left were quite enough to pay _________ everything.

6 **Choose right.**

a) *There/It* is a secret spring here somewhere.
b) In the middle of the circle *it/there* is a great flat stone.
c) *There/It* is no time or space.
d) *It/There* is a moment and *it/there* is eternity.
e) *It/There* is her grave.

7 **Write the words in the singular form.**

Example: shelves — a shelf

Jewels, children, sobs, tears, idols, steps, secrets.

8 **Describe the scene at the Temple of Strange Stones. What can you say about the stone creatures? What do they have in common?**

9 **Say what you learned about the magic ring. What things at Yalding Towers disappeared with the magic ring? What did the magic bring into the life of the children, Mademoiselle, Lord Yalding?**

10 **Final discussion.**

a) Did you like the book?
b) Which characters of the book do you like best of all? Why?
c) What do you think of the end of this book? Can you think of a different end?

Содержание

Учебное издание

Несбит Эдит

ЗАКОЛДОВАННЫЙ ЗАМОК

Адаптация текста, предисловие, комментарий, упражнения, словарь *Е. В. Угаровой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *Т. П. Кондратьева*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Оформление *А. М. Кузнецов*
Иллюстрации *В. Н. Фекляев*
Технический редактор *Т. В. Исаева*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректоры *В. М. Сизова, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 04.06.08. Формат 60×90/16. Печать офсетная. Гарнитура «Таймс». Печ. л. 8. Усл.-печ. л. 8. Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 4207.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

Английский клуб

Памела Линдон Трэверс

Мэри Поппинс



Pamela Lyndon Travers

Mary Poppins

Домашнее чтение

Elementary

Айрис Пресс

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Памела Линдон Трэверс

Мэри Поппинс

Адаптация текста, комментарий, упражнения и словарь Е. Г. Вороновой

МОСКВА
АЙРИС ПРЕСС
2006

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Т80

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Трэверс, П. Л.
Т80 Мэри Поппинс / Памела Линдон Трэверс; адаптация текста, коммент., упражнения, словарь Е. Г. Вороновой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2006. — 96 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 5-8112-2202-5

Известная повесть Памелы Трэверс «Мэри Поппинс» адаптирована для учащихся начальной школы или тех, кто находится на начальном этапе изучения английского языка.

Прочитав эту книгу, вы узнаете об увлекательных приключениях Джейн и Майкла, об их экстравагантной няне и ее друзьях.

Упражнения, представленные в конце каждой главы, помогут вам развить навыки чтения, расширить словарный запас и закрепить грамматические правила.

Мы надеемся, что полезными для вас окажутся биография писательницы Памелы Трэверс, страноведческий комментарий и англо-русский словарь.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 5-8112-2202-5

Pamela Lyndon Travers

P. L. (Pamela Lyndon) Travers, the creator of the well-known Mary Poppins, was born Helen Lyndon Goff. She was born in Maryborough, Queensland, in Australia on 9 August 1899. Travers is a family name, where her other name, Pamela is from, nobody knows. She didn't use it often but she liked it when her friends called her P. L.

We know little about Travers' family. Her great grandfather, Robert Archibald Morehead, came to Australia in 1841 as manager of the Scottish Australian Company. Travers' father died while his three daughters were quite young. After her father's death, Pamela moved with her mother and sisters to New South Wales. She went to school at Normanhurst in Sydney.

When she was about fifteen, Travers' poems and articles began to appear in Australian newspapers and magazines. For about two years she wrote a human interest column for a daily newspaper. During the early 1920s, she travelled across New South Wales as an actor and dancer.

In 1924 Travers left Australia for England. Since that time she lived in England. Around 1960 she made her only return visit to Australia.

In Ireland in 1925 she met the poet George Russell. He published some of her poems and invited her to Dublin. There Travers met W. B. Yeats and other Irish poets who gave her knowledge of world mythology.

Travers' first real literary success was the 1934 publication of *Mary Poppins.* Like later books in the series, *Mary Poppins* was illustrated by Mary Shepard, the daughter of Ernest Shepard who illustrated A. A. Milne's *Winnie-the-Pooh* books.

Translated into more than a dozen languages, *Mary Poppins* was popular throughout the world. It was followed in 1935 by *Mary Poppins Comes Back.* Then came *Mary Poppins Opens the Door* (1944) and *Mary Poppins in the Park* (1952). Four other Mary Poppins titles have been published, the latest *Mary Poppins and the House Next Door*, in 1989.

She didn't like the Disney film *Mary Poppins*, but it stimulated public interest in her works. It is from this time that articles by Travers began to appear in magazines and journals. She was invited to give lectures in the United States. Travers often visited the United States where she lived during World War II, and from 1969 until 1977.

Myth and fairy tale, important elements in the original *Mary Poppins* books, appear in Travers' later works, notably *Friend Monkey* (1971), a novel in three parts based on the monkey god Hanuman from the Indian epic *Ramayana*; and *About the Sleeping Beauty* (1975) containing six versions of the fairy tale including one by Travers herself.

She died in 1996.



Chapter 1
THE EAST WIND

Helpful Words

to give a sniff	фыркнуть
apron	фартук
soap	мыло
hairpin	шпилька
perfume	духи
strawberry	клубника
pajamas	пижама
to change	меняться

Cherry Tree Lane is a nice London street. On one side there are houses, on the other there is a park. The cherry-trees go dancing right in the middle. Number Seventeen is the smallest house in the street. The Banks live in this house. They are six — Mr. and Mrs. Banks and their four children — Jane, Michael and the twins — Barbara and John. Mrs. Banks has a lot of housework and she has a nurse to help her with the children. But one day their nurse left them and Mrs. Bank didn't know what to do.

"Write to the newspaper," said Mr. Banks, "and the nurses will come. I'm sorry, but now I must go to work."

He kissed his wife on her nose and went away to the City. The City was a place where Mr. Banks went every day. There he sat at a large desk and made money. He was very busy with it. And he brought some money home in his little black bag. Sometimes he gave some to Jane and Michael, but sometimes he didn't and said: "The Bank is broken."

When Mr. Banks went to work, Mrs. Banks began to write letters to the newspapers.

Upstairs in the Nursery, Jane and Michael were waiting for their father. It was a windy evening and the East Wind was blowing through the cherry-trees.

"Look! The trees are dancing!" cried Jane.

"That's Daddy over there!" said Michael.

"That's not Daddy," she said. "It's somebody else."

It was a woman with her hat on and a bag in her right hand. Suddenly a strange thing happened. The wind lifted her up and brought her to the garden door. When the woman opened it, the wind lifted her up again and carried her at the front door.

"Let's go and see who it is!" said Jane.

They left their room to have a look at a visitor. Jane and Michael could see that she was thin and had black hair and blue eyes.

"They are very nice and very quiet children," said Mrs. Banks but in fact she didn't believe it. The Nursery was upstairs

and the woman followed Mrs. Banks but **she slid up the banisters**[1]! Down, of course, the children often did it themselves. But up — never!

"Well, children," said Mrs. Banks. "This is your new nurse, Mary Poppins!"

Mary Poppins looked at them carefully. At last the woman gave a long loud **sniff** and said: "All right. I'll stay."

When Mrs. Banks left the Nursery, Jane and Michael came up to Mary Poppins.

"How did you come?" Jane asked. "Did the wind blow you here?"

"It did," said Mary Poppins and no more. And she gave another sniff and opened her bag.

"What a funny bag!" Michael said. There was nothing inside.

But the next moment Mary Poppins took out a white **apron**, a large cake of **soap**, a tooth-brush, a packet of **hairpins**, a bottle of **perfume** and a small armchair. Jane and Michael were shocked.

Then Mary Poppins took out a large bottle of medicine.

"Is that your medicine?" asked Michael.

"No, it's yours," said Mary Poppins.

"I don't want it! I won't!"

But suddenly Michael understood that he could not say "no" to her. He closed his eyes and opened his mouth.

"**Strawberry** ice," he said. "More, more, more!"

But Mary Poppins, with her cold eyes, came up to Jane. Her spoon was full of something green and yellow.

"Sweet lemon-juice. I love it," Jane said but when Mary Poppins came to the twins with the bottle, she cried.

"Oh no! It's not good for them. Please!" But Mary Poppins didn't look at her. She brought the spoon to John's mouth. He drank it and Jane saw there was milk in the spoon!

---

[1] **she slid up the banisters** — она поехала вверх по перилам

Then Marry Poppins opened her bag and took out eleven **pajamas**, a pair of boots, a set of dominoes, two bathing-caps and a book. Then came a bed.

Jane and Michael were very surprised. Now they knew that something strange and wonderful happened at their house.

"Mary Poppins," said Michael, "will you never leave us?"

"Till the wind **changes**," she said and went to bed.

Activities

1 Выберите правильный ответ.

1. Where were the Banks from?
   a) They were from London.
   b) They were from the USA.
   c) They were from Australia.

2. How large was the Banks family?
   a) They were three.
   b) They were five.
   c) They were six.

3. What was Mary Poppins like?
   a) She was very special.
   b) She was very noisy.
   c) She was not nice.

4. What kind of bag did Mary Poppins have?
   a) It had carpet inside.
   b) It was empty.
   c) It was magic.

5. What did Mary Poppins take out of her bag?
   a) a bottle of lemon-juice
   b) a bed
   c) a table

6. What surprised Jane and Michael?
   a) Mary Poppins had a bag with her.
   b) The way Mary Poppins went upstairs.
   c) The way Mary Poppins looked like.

7. Jane and Michael asked Mary Poppins some questions. What question did she answer "yes"?
   a) Will you leave us?
   b) Is that your medicine?
   c) Is your bag to carry carpets in?

2 **Кому принадлежат эти слова? Объясните, почему этот герой произнес их.**

1. Write to the newspaper.
2. Look! The trees are dancing!
3. They are very nice and very quiet children.
4. Did the wind blow you here?
5. What a funny bag!
6. I don't want it! I won't!
7. Oh no! It's not good for them. Please!
8. Till the wind changes.

3 **Соедините пары слов, которые встречаются в этой главе. Затем заполните пропуски с их помощью.**

give	money
pair of	perfume
garden	a large desk
cherry	ice
bottle of	soap
blue	trees
make	boots
sit at	a sniff
cake of	door
strawberry	eyes

1. He didn't like me and he __________ .
2. I love __________ but I can't eat it. I am ill.
3. Where is my new __________ ? I'm going for a walk.
4. You hands are dirty. Take a __________ and wash them.
5. __________ and do your homework!
6. I'd like to get into the garden. Is there a __________ ?
7. He was a famous singer and __________ at his concerts.
8. There are a lot of __________ in my garden. There are some apple-trees there too.
9. She had black hair and __________ .
10. Don't drink it! It is not water! Give that __________ to me!

4 Постарайтесь вспомнить свои первые детские впечатления.

1. Where did you live?
2. Did you have a nursery? How did it look like?
3. Did you have a nurse? How did she look like?
4. Did you wait for anybody to come from work by the window?
5. Can you remember any strange person?
6. Did anything strange and wonderful happen to you?

Chapter 2
THE DAY OUT

Helpful Words

handle	ручка
straight	ровно
pavement	тротуар
money	деньги

diamonds	бриллианты
waiter	официант
pay	платить
chalk	мел
own	собственный

"Every third Thursday," said Mrs. Banks.

"The best people, madam," Mary Poppins said, "give every second Thursday. Or..."

"Very well," said Mrs. Banks quickly.

So her Day Out began. Mary Poppins put on her white coat and white gloves and took her umbrella with a parrot's head for a **handle** under her arm. Mary Poppins liked to look her best. And she knew she always looked her best.

She walked very quickly. But sometimes she stopped near a car or shop window to put her hat **straight**. She didn't forget about her dress and her umbrella.

So she went to meet her friend, Bert. He was very good at drawing **pavement** pictures.

It was a fine day and there were some pictures — two Bananas, and an Apple, and a head of Queen Elizabeth on the pavement.

"Mary!" Bert cried happily.

"It's my Day Out, Bert," she said.

"I know, Mary," he said, "but..." and he looked sadly into his cap. There was little **money** in it. "Business is bad today. I'm sorry, I can't take you to tea today."

Mary Poppins thought of the lemon-cakes. What a pity! But when she saw Bert's face and said:

"That's all right, Bert. I really don't want any tea today." And it was nice of Mary Poppins because she liked lemon-cakes very much.

Bert understood everything but he said nothing. He took her hand in his and said: "Look, there is a new picture!" They could see big trees, green grass and blue sea in it. "Mary," he said, "I've got an idea! Let's go there, into the picture?"

And he got Mary out of the street, into the picture. There they were, inside it!

How green it was there and how quiet! What soft grass under their feet! There were green leaves near their hats, and little coloured flowers near their shoes. Mary Poppins looked at Bert. Now he had a bright green-and-red coat and white trousers and a new yellow hat.

"Bert, you look fine!" she cried.

Bert could not say anything; he was looking at her with round eyes! She took a little mirror out of her bag and looked into it. Round her shoulders there was a watery blue dress, on her head there was a beautiful blue hat. She was wearing shoes with **diamonds** like a princess.

So, they went and went and came to a little table. And there on a green table was Afternoon Tea! There were hundreds of lemon-cakes on it!

"Sit down, Madam," asked a tall man in a black coat. Mary Poppins and Bert sat down on little green chairs.

"I'm the **Waiter**!" said the man in the black coat.

"Oh! But I didn't see you in the picture," said Mary Poppins.

"Ah, I was behind the tree," said the Waiter.

So, they began their afternoon tea. They drank a lot of tea and finished all the cakes.

"There is nothing to **pay**," said the Waiter. "Can you see a Merry-go-Round?" And he showed them the way between trees.

"That's funny," said she. "I didn't see it in the picture."

They came up to the Merry-go-Round. Mary Poppins and Bert jumped on two horses. When the music started, the horses left their places! What a surprise! Mary Poppins and Bert had a nice ride that day! When they came back, it was nearly dark. "I'm very sorry," the Waiter said, "but we close at seven. May I show you the Way Out?"

"It's a wonderful picture, Bert!" said Mary Poppins.

"Well, I did my best, Mary," said Bert and they saw a large white door. It was made of thick **chalk** lines.

"Here you are!" the Waiter said. "This is the Way Out."

"Good-bye and thank you," said Mary Poppins. Then they went through the white door.

When they went out, the lovely dress and the diamonds from her shoes and her beautiful hat disappeared. So did Bert's bright clothes.

When she came back to Number Seventeen, Jane and Michael asked her:

"Where have you been?"[1]

"In Fairyland," said Mary Poppins.

"Did you see Cinderella?" said Jane.

"Cinderella? Not me... No!" said Mary Poppins.

"Or Robinson Crusoe?" asked Michael.

"Robinson Crusoe — no!" said Mary Poppins.

"Then you have not been to our Fairyland!"

Mary Poppins gave her greatest sniff.

"Don't you know," she said, "that everybody's got a Fairyland **of their own**?"

Activities

1 Скажите, кто в этой главе:

1) had a day out every second Thursday.
2) drew a head of Queen Elizabeth on the pavement.
3) loved lemon-cakes.
4) got an idea to get into the picture.
5) changed in the picture.
6) had diamonds on the shoes.
7) had a ride that day.
8) paid nothing for the tea and cakes.
9) was in Fairyland that day.

---

[1] **Where have you been?** — Где вы были?

2 Ответьте на вопросы.

1. How often did Mary Poppins have her day out?
2. What clothes did Mary Poppins put on when she left house on her day out?
3. Who was Bert?
4. What was Bert good at?
5. Did Mary Poppins like lemon-cakes or cherry-cakes?
6. What could Mary Poppins see in Bert's pavement pictures?
7. What happened to Bert and Mary when they got into the picture?
8. Why didn't Mary see the Waiter in the picture?
9. How much were the cakes?
10. Did Mary Poppins have a nice day out?

3 Заполните пропуски словами из текста.

1. Mary Poppins had her Day Out every second __________ .
2. She put on __________ and took __________ under her arm with a __________'s head because she liked to look her best.
3. Bert was her __________ .
4. He drew __________ on the pavement.
5. It was __________'s idea to get into the picture.
6. Mary Poppins and Bert changed a lot. Bert had __________ on and Mary Poppins had __________ on.
7. They went through the little wood and came to the __________ with __________ on it.
8. They drank __________ and ate __________ but they paid __________ to the Waiter and went to the __________ .
9. The jumped on the __________ and had a ride.

10. When they came back it was nearly __________ and __________ showed then the Way Out.

4 **Напишите вторую форму глаголов и заполните пропуски глаголом в правильной форме.**

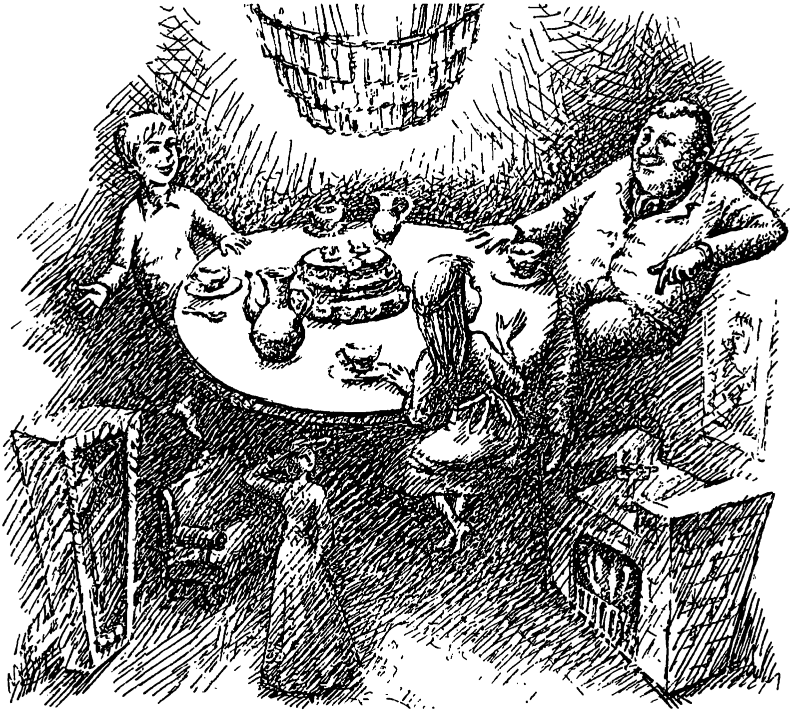
say		сказать
begin		начинать
put		положить
know		знать
forget		забывать
meet		встречать
be		быть
go		идти
think		думать
see		видеть

1. Yesterday she __________ : “It is a fine day, so I’m going to draw a pavement picture today!”
2. He __________ for a long time but he couldn’t get an idea.
3. Where did you __________ your umbrella?
4. I’m sorry, I don’t __________ how to do it.
5. We __________ at her birthday party last Sunday.
6. At our school, lessons __________ at 8.30.
7. It is very dark here. I can’t __________ you well.
8. They __________ to the Zoo yesterday to watch monkeys.
9. Where __________ you yesterday? — I was at home.
10. He didn’t give me any presents for my birthday. He __________ about it.

5 Соедините пары антонимов и переведите предложения на английский язык.

best	light
dark	late
long	forget
early	worst
remember	nothing
everything	short
new	old

1. Джейн — лучшая ученица в классе.
2. Я не люблю темные цвета.
3. Расскажи мне короткую сказку.
4. Он приходит домой очень поздно.
5. Я всегда забываю твой номер телефона.
6. Я ничего не вижу. Здесь темно.
7. С Новым Годом!



Chapter 3
LAUGHING GAS

Helpful Words

special	особенный
indeed	на самом деле
to laugh	смеяться
filled	наполненный
light	легкий
curious	любопытный
catching	заразный

That nice afternoon Mary Poppins took Jane and Michael to her uncle, Mr. Wigg. It was a long way to Number Three, Robertson Road. But when Mary Poppins rang the bell, the door flew open and a thin lady came out.

"How do you do, Mrs. Wigg," said Jane.

"Mrs. Wigg!" said the thin lady. "No, thank you! I'm Miss Persimmon and am proud of it!" Jane and Michael looked at each other. They thought that Mr. Wigg was a very **special** person if the lady was so glad not to be Mrs. Wigg.

Jane and Michael followed Mary Poppins upstairs.

"Come in! And welcome!" called a loud voice from inside.

Mary Poppins opened the door and they came into a nice large room. There was a fireplace in the corner and in the middle of the room there was a big table with four cups, bread and butter, biscuits, chocolates and a large cherry cake.

"Nice to see you," somebody said. Jane and Michael looked around but saw nobody.

"Oh, Uncle Albert — not again! It's not your birthday, is it?" Mary Poppins said and looked up. Jane and Michael looked up too and saw a round, fat man in the air. Indeed, he was sitting on the air and reading a newspaper.

"My dear," said Mr. Wigg, smiling down at them, "I'm very sorry, but it is my birthday." he said, looking down at Jane and Michael.

"I can see you're a little surprised," said Mr. Wigg. And, **indeed**, their mouths were so wide open! "You see, I'm a happy sort of man. I can smile and **laugh** at everything," said Mr. Wigg.

"But why... ?" said Jane.

"But how... ?" said Michael.

"Well, when my birthday comes on Friday and I laugh on that day, I become **filled** with Laughing Gas. I can't keep on the ground. The first funny idea, and I'm up like a balloon!" Mr. Wigg said. "And now here it is Friday again and my birthday, and you are visiting me. Oh, don't make me laugh,

please..." Mr. Wigg began to laugh loudly. He looked so funny, like a big balloon in the air, that Jane and Michael started laughing too. They laughed. And they laughed. They tried to stop, but couldn't.

Then a funny thing happened to Jane — she felt herself growing **light**er and lighter, getting filled with the air. It was a **curious** and nice feeling. And suddenly, she jumped up in the air.

"Oh, this Laughing Gas is **catching**!" said Mr. Wigg.

The next moment Michael flew up on Mr. Wigg's knee.

"Nice to meet you," said Mr. Wigg to Michael. "It is kind of you to come up to me! Because I can't come down to you!" And then he and Michael looked at each other and started to laugh again.

"Well, Mary," said Albert to Mary Poppins, "what about you, my dear?"

"Mary Poppins, Mary Poppins, come up!" said Michael and Jane. "Think of something funny!"

"Ah, she can come up if she wants to," said Mr. Wigg, "even without laughing."

"Well," said Mary Poppins, "it's all very silly! But you're all up there and you can't get down, so..."

Then she put her hands down at her sides and without a laugh, without even a smile, she flew up through the air.

"Now we're all comfortable... And we can have tea," Mr. Wigg said. "But ... the table's down there and we're up here. What shall we do? We're here and it's there. It's a terrible tragedy! But oh, it's terribly comic!" And he hid his face in his hands and laughed loudly. Jane and Michael joined him. Finally, Mr. Wigg dried his eyes.

"Well," he said, "we must think of something sad, very sad. And then we shall get down! Well, I had an aunt Emily. **She was run over by a bus.**[1] Sad. Very sad. Terribly sad. Poor

---

[1] **She was run over by a bus.** — Ее переехал автобус.

Aunt Emily. But her umbrella was OK. That was funny, wasn't it?" And he started laughing.

"Mary, can't you do something? We want our tea," he said finally.

The next moment the table began to jump on its legs. Suddenly with all the cups and plates, it flew up and stopped next to them.

"Good girl!" said Mr. Wigg. "It is my birthday, so we will begin with the Cake!"

Then they heard a quick knock at the door. The door opened, and there stood Miss Persimmon.

"I thought, Mr. Wigg," she began, looking around the room, "you want some more hot water... Well, I never!" She saw them sitting on the air round the table. "Mr. Wigg, I know you are a little special. But to have tea in the air! For a gentleman of your age!"

"But perhaps you will, Miss Persimmon!" said Michael.

"Will what?" said Miss Persimmon.

"Catch the Laughing Gas, as we did," said Michael.

"I hope, young man," she said, "I'll stay on my feet, oh dear — what is the matter? I can't walk, I'm going, I — oh, help, HELP!"

Miss Persimmon flew up and came to the table with the jug of hot water. Then she turned and went down again.

"I must see a doctor. I must see a doctor," she said again and again and ran away from the room.

"IT IS TIME TO GO HOME," Mary Poppins said seriously. Suddenly Jane and Michael and Mr. Wigg came down. That thought was the first sad thought of the afternoon!

"What a pity!" Mr. Wigg said. "It's very sad that you must go home."

They came back home by bus. Jane and Michael were very quiet all the way. Then Michael said to Mary Poppins:

"How often does your Uncle get like that?"

"Like what?" said Mary Poppins sharply.

"Laughing and going up in the air."

"Up in the air?" Mary Poppins' voice was angry. "What an idea! He is not a balloon!"

"But he did!" said Michael. "We saw him."

"What? My Uncle is a gentleman!"

Michael and Jane said nothing. "Is it true or isn't it? About Mr. Wigg. Is Mary Poppins right or are we?" they thought.

Activities

1 Выберите правильный ответ.

1. What is true about Mary Poppins?
   a) She didn't have any relatives.
   b) She liked the way she looked like.
   c) She didn't like his uncle.

2. What question is not answered?
   a) Why Mr. Wigg is called Mr. Wigg?
   b) When did Mr. Wigg get filled with Laughing Gas?
   c) What happens to Mr. Wigg when he gets filled with Laughing Gas?

3. What was Mr. Wigg like?
   a) He was very funny.
   b) He was very sad.
   c) He was sometimes very angry with children.

4. What is true about Mr. Wigg?
   a) Mr. Wigg had a pet.
   b) Mr. Wigg lived alone in his house.
   c) Mr. Wigg had a wife.

5. Why were Jane and Michael surprised in Mr. Wigg's room?
   a) They saw nobody there.
   b) There was a big table with four cups there.
   c) Mr. Wigg was sitting on the air.

6. What was not true about the Laughing Gas?
   a) It was catching.
   b) When Jane and Michael got it, they grew lighter.
   c) It was very unpleasant and smelled bad eggs.

7. How could the children get down?
   a) They remembered about poor Aunt Emily.
   b) They remembered that it was time to go home.
   c) They remembered about school.

8. What surprised Jane and Michael on their way home?
   a) They went home by bus.
   b) Mary Poppins didn't talk to them.
   c) Mary Poppins was angry when they asked her some questions about Mr. Wigg.

2 Составьте предложения и переведите их на русский язык.

Mr. Wigg	is	a very special person.
A cherry cake		a nice day for a party.
A birthday		a place where Mr. Wigg lives.
Laughing Gas		a nice thing to have with tea.
A balloon		a toy that flies up in the sky.
Number Three, Robertson Road		something that makes you happy and light.

3 Заполните пропуски правильными предлогами.

at, with, on, down, up, on, of

Mr. Wigg was a happy man. He could smile and laugh __________ everything. When his birthday came __________ Friday and he laughed on that day, he be-

came filled __________ Laughing Gas. He couldn't keep __________ the ground. The first funny idea, and he was __________ like a balloon!

He had to think __________ something sad, very sad. Only then he could get __________!

4 **Дайте краткие ответы на вопросы, затем выберите подходящее предложение, чтобы дополнить ответ.**

1. *Did Mr. Wigg open the door to Mary Poppins and the children?*
2. *Was Mr. Wigg a special person?*
3. *Was Mr. Wigg a happy sort of man?*
4. *Was Mr. Wigg high up in the air when the children came?*
5. *Did the children start laughing when they saw Mr. Wigg in the air?*

a) When Mary Poppins rang the bell, the door flew open and a thin lady came out.
b) He was reading a newspaper.
c) He could smile and laugh at everything.
d) They tried to stop but they couldn't.
e) Miss Persimmon was so glad not to be Mrs. Wigg.

Chapter 4
MISS LARK'S ANDREW

Helpful Words

dictionary	словарь
loud	громкий
piece	кусок

Miss Lark lived in the biggest house in Cherry Tree Lane. All day they could hear her **loud** voice:

"Andrew, where are you?" or

"Andrew, put on your coat!" or

"Andrew, come to Mother!"

Was Andrew a boy? No, he was a dog. A nice small dog called Andrew. Some people said that he looked like a toy-dog. But he was a dog!

Andrew lived like a prince. He slept in his bed; he had milk and chocolate for every meal. Andrew could do what he wanted. His days looked like our birthdays. And when Andrew had his birthday, he had *two* candles on his cake for every year, not one.

But Andrew wasn't happy. People laughed when they saw Andrew in his best coat or nice boots.

"Oh, no!" said Michael. "He looks so stupid! And he is stupid too!"

"He is *not* stupid," said Mary Poppins.

And Mary Poppins was right. Andrew wasn't stupid at all. You can think that he didn't love Miss Lark. But he did. She always was so kind to him! But he didn't like his life. He would like to have a nice **piece** of red meat. He wanted to be a usual dog. And he wanted to have usual dogs as his friends.

Sometimes he ran out of his garden. He wanted to speak to a dog. One day Andrew had a new friend. It was more than a usual dog — it was a terrible dog. All people were happy that he was not their dog.

Miss Lark didn't like Andrew's friend. When she saw that Andrew was talking to his friend, she called:

"Andrew! Come home, my dear! Don't talk to this dog!"

But one day Jane and Michael saw Andrew, all alone, in the park. He was running very fast and looked very serious.

"Hi, Andrew! Where's your coat?" cried Michael.

But Andrew just looked at them both and then turned to Mary Poppins.

"Yap-yap!" said Andrew very quickly.

"Second house on the left," said Mary Poppins.

"Yap?" said Andrew.

"No — no garden."

Andrew barked again.

"I'm not sure," said Mary Poppins. "He usually goes home at tea-time."

And Andrew ran away.

"What was he saying?" Jane and Michael asked together.

"Nothing special!" said Mary Poppins, and closed her mouth.

"I think he asked you where somebody lived..." Michael began.

"Well, why are you asking me then?" said Mary Poppins sniffing. "*I'm* not a **dictionary**."

"Oh, Michael," said Jane, "Mary Poppins, tell us what Andrew said to you, *please.*"

But she did not say.

When they were near their house, they heard Miss Lark's loud cries. She ran and ran about the garden. She looked under and up every tree. "Oh Andrew! Where are you?" she cried again and again.

Then she saw him. Andrew was coming to her and near him was walking a big brown dog.

"Oh, you are OK!" said Miss Lark. "But that terrible dog! Shoo! Shoo! Go home!"

But the dog didn't go.

"Go away! Go home!" said Miss Lark. "And you, Andrew, come in the house! You mustn't go for a walk without me and without your coat."

Andrew barked but did not go.

"What's the matter? Come in!" said Miss Lark.

Andrew barked again.

"He says," said Mary Poppins, "that he's not coming in."

Miss Lark looked at her in surprise. "How do *you* know what my dog says? Of course he will come in."

Andrew barked again.

"He won't," said Mary Poppins. "He will go home only with his friend."

"No!" said Miss Lark angrily. "That terrible street dog will never come into my garden."

Andrew barked three or four times.

"And he will go away..."

"Oh, Andrew, you can't!" Miss Lark was crying.

Andrew barked and the two dogs got up.

"Oh, he is going away!" Miss Lark was going to cry. "Very well, Andrew. This dog can stay. But he will sleep in the garden."

"He says, madam, that that his friend must sleep in the room. Or he will go and sleep in the garden with his friend," said Mary Poppins.

Andrew got up and was ready to go.

"Oh, Andrew!" cried Miss Lark. "Very well, he will sleep in the room."

Andrew barked again.

Andrew barked to his friend "Come on!" and they went into the house.

"He isn't stupid, you see," said Jane.

"No," said Michael. "But how can Mary Poppins... ?"

"I don't know," said Jane. "And she'll never, never, tell us."

Activities

1 Завершите предложения.

1. Andrew was __________ dog.
   a) a nice small
   b) the happiest
   c) a stupid

2. Andrew looked __________ .
   a) like a toy-dog
   b) like a prince
   c) terrible

3. Miss Lark __________ Andrew.
   a) was afraid of
   b) loved
   c) wasn't kind to

4. Andrew's new friend was __________ .
   a) a toy-dog
   b) a terrible dog
   c) not a street dog

5. When Andrew ran away, Miss Lark was __________ .
   a) worried and unhappy
   b) quiet and sad
   c) angry and hungry

6. Miss Lark was __________ to have Andrew's new friend in her house.
   a) happy
   b) pleased
   c) not happy

2 Заполните пропуски модальными глаголами *must, mustn't, can, can't.*

1. You __________ go for a walk without me. — Тебе **нельзя** гулять без меня.
2. Oh, Andrew you __________ go away! — О, Эндрю, ты **не можешь** уйти!
3. All right, this dog __________ stay in the garden. — Хорошо, эта собака **может** остаться в саду!
4. This dog __________ sleep in the garden. — Эта собака **должна** остаться в саду.

3 Напиши, что:

1) ты должен делать дома, в школе.

Example: *I must help my parents.*

____ .

2) тебе нельзя делать дома, в школе.

Example: *I mustn't watch TV at night.*

____.

3) ты можешь делать дома, в школе.

Example: *I can talk on the phone for long.*

____.

4 Заполните пропуски именами героев: *Miss Lark, Andrew, Mary Poppins, Jane, Michael.*

__________ said, "Andrew, you mustn't go out without your coat!"
__________ said, "He looks so stupid! And he is stupid too!"
__________ said, "Come home, my darling! Don't talk to this dog!"
__________ said, "Yap-yap!"
__________ said, "Well, if you know, why are you asking me? I am not a dictionary."
__________ said, "How do *you* know what my dog says? Of course he will come in."
__________ said, "That terrible street dog will never come into my garden."
__________ said, "He says, madam, that that his friend must sleep in the room. Or he will go and sleep in the garden with his friend."
__________ said, "He isn't stupid after all."

Chapter 5
THE DANCING COW

Helpful Words

outside	на улице
to lose (lost, lost)	терять
calf	теленок

corner	угол
Majesty	Высочество
throne	трон

Jane was in bed. She was very ill.

"Shall I sit at the window and tell you what is happening **outside**?"

"Yes, please," said Jane.

So Michael came up to the window and cried "Wow!"

"What is it?" said Jane.

"A very strange thing. There's a cow," said Michael.

"A cow? In the middle of a town? How funny! Mary Poppins," said Jane, "there's a cow in the Lane."

"Yes, and it's walking very slowly and looking around. I think it has **lost** something."

Mary Poppins came up to the window.

"It's not funny at all," she said. "I know that cow. She was my Mother's great friend. The Red Cow lived in the field of beautiful yellow flowers. She had a happy life in her sunny and green world. In the morning and in the afternoon she gave lessons to the Red **Calf**, her daughter. Then they had supper, and the Red Cow showed the Red Calf how to tell good grass from bad grass. When her daughter went to sleep, she went into a **corner** of the field and thought her own happy thoughts.

"The Red Cow liked her life and she didn't want any change. But one night she came to the end of her happy days. That night the Red Cow got up suddenly and began to dance. There was no music but she danced and danced and danced.

"'What a strange thing!' said the Red Cow. 'I don't like dancing, but now I am dancing and I like it.'

"At last she got tired and decided to stop. But, to her great surprise, she could not stop dancing. She went dancing all the night. In the morning she couldn't have breakfast because she couldn't stop. In the afternoon and in the evening she danced too. When the second night came, and she still could not stop,

she got very worried. And at the end of a week dancing she was very, very, very worried.

"'I must go and see the King,' she said. She danced out of the field and went to the King. All the people and animals looked at the dancing cow with a great surprise. But nobody was more surprised than the Red Cow herself.

"At last she came to the Palace where the King lived. When the Palace door opened, she danced through the halls to the King's throne.

"The King was very busy. He was making new Laws. His Secretary was writing them down in a little red notebook.

"'How many laws?' asked the King.

"'Seventy-two, your **Majesty**,' the Secretary said.

"'Well, not bad for an hour's work,' said the King. He stood up and saw the Red Cow. She was dancing to the **throne**.

"'What is that?' the King asked.

"'A Cow, your Majesty!' she answered.

"'I can see that, but what do you want? Be quick, because I am a very busy King! And stop dancing,' the King said in an angry voice.

"'That's my problem, your Majesty. I can't stop!' said the Red Cow.

"The Red Cow tried to stop dancing but it was no good.

"'I can't. It is the seventh day of dancing. And I can't eat. I can't sleep.'

"'Hm — very strange,' said the King. **'What does it feel like?'**[1]

"'Funny,' said the Red Cow, 'it's a happy feeling, too.'

"'Very funny,' said the King and looked at the cow very carefully.

"Suddenly he jumped on his feet and cried, 'Don't you see that? The cow has caught a fallen star on her horn! Now, pull it off and this lady can stop dancing and have some breakfast.'

---

[1] **What does it feel like?** — *зд.* Что ты чувствуешь?

"But the star didn't come off. Then the King took the biggest book but it said nothing about cows with stars on their horns. Except the story of **the Cow Who Jumped Over the Moon**.[1]

"'Try that too,' the King said.

"'Try what?' said the Red Cow.

"'Try to jump over the Moon. I think it will help.'

"'Me?' the Red Cow was very surprised. 'I am a serious animal. Jumping is not good for a lady.'

"'Madam,' the King said, 'do you want to go on dancing? Do you like to feel hungry and sleepy?'

"The Red Cow thought of the sweet yellow flowers and soft grass. And she said, 'I'll try it.'

"And they went to the garden.

"'Now,' said the King, 'One! Two! Three!'

"That moment the Red Cow jumped and flew up into the sky. She looked down. The King was growing smaller and smaller. She went higher and higher through the dark sky. The stars were dancing around her like great golden plates. Then she closed her eyes because the moonlight was very bright and cold. Suddenly the star fell off with a great noise.

"Next moment the Red Cow came down on the Earth again. To her great surprise she was in her green field. And she stopped dancing!

"The Red Cow and her daughter had a lovely dinner of soft grass and sweet yellow flowers. And she began to live her usual life. At first she enjoyed it very much. She was glad to eat her breakfast without dancing. She lay down in the grass and

---

[1] **the Cow Who Jumped Over the Moon** — скорее всего, имеется в виду известное английское детское стихотворение

Hey, diddle, diddle,
The cat and the fiddle,
The cow jumped over the moon.
The little dog laughed
To see such sport,
And the dish ran away with the spoon.

slept peacefully at night. But one night she began to feel uncomfortable. She wanted something else. But she couldn't understand what it was. At last she understood it. It was the star. She thought only about the star. She lost her appetite. One day, she went to my Mother and told her the story.

"'My dear!' my Mother said to her. 'You know, millions of stars fall out of the sky every night! But they fall in different places.'

"'So I'll go and look for one...' the Red Cow began, and a happy look came into her eyes."

Mary Poppins paused.

"And now she is walking down Cherry Tree Lane," Jane said.

"Yes," said Michael, "she is looking for her star."

Activities

1 Выберите правильный ответ.

1. Why did Michael cry "Wow!" when he came up to the window?
   a) He saw Mary Poppins.
   b) He saw a cow in the street.
   c) He saw a cow sleeping in the Lane.

2. Was the Red Cow happy living with her daughter in the field?
   a) Yes, she had a happy and quiet life there.
   b) Yes, her life was bright and exciting.
   c) No, she had a boring life there.

3. Why did the Red Cow start dancing one night?
   a) She caught a fallen star on her horn.
   b) She heard lovely music.
   c) She had her daughter's birthday party.

4. How did the Red Cow feel when she started dancing?
   a) She was surprised.
   b) She was worried.
   c) She was happy.

5. Why did the Red Cow get worried after a week of dancing?
   a) She couldn't stop dancing.
   b) She started to enjoy dancing.
   c) She couldn't teach her daughter to dance.

6. How did the King stop the Red Cow dancing?
   a) He told her to stop.
   b) He found the answer in a book.
   c) He pulled the star off her horn.

7. What was the Red Cow doing in London?
   a) She was going to visit the King.
   b) She was looking for a fallen star.
   c) She was looking for Mary Poppins.

2 Выразите свое согласие (*That's true.*) или несогласие (*That's wrong.*). Исправьте неверные предложения.

1. The Red Cow had an unhappy life in her sunny and green world.
2. The Red Cow wanted a change in her life.
3. One night a strange thing happened to her- she started dancing.
4. She couldn't stop dancing at night, but she stopped it in the morning.
5. She decided to visit the King because she couldn't dance any more. And she wanted it so much.
6. The King helped the Cow.
7. The King saw a fallen star on the Cow's horn.
8. The King took the star off the Cow's horn.

9. The Cow wanted her star back and she jumped high up into the sky to get it.
10. When the Cow landed on the Earth she was happy and never remembered the star.

3 Ответьте на вопросы, обращая внимание на артикли.

1. Did you have **a** happy life when you were little?
2. What animals live in **the** forest? What animals live in **the** field? What animals live in **the** sea?
3. What always happens at **the** end of the lesson? What holiday do we have at **the** end of the year?
4. If you like the film, you say, 'What **an** interesting film!' What do you say if the film is boring/ if the morning is cold/ if the exercise is easy?
5. What do you usually do in **the** morning/ in **the** afternoon/ in **the** evening?
6. What is **the** first letter of the English ABC? What is **the** second letter of the Russian alphabet?
7. Where did **the** King live? Where does **the** President live in Russia? Who is **the** author of "Mary Poppins"?
8. Look around! Is **the** door open? Is **the** window closed? Is anybody in **the** hall?
9. Are you **a** good pupil? Is your uncle **a** dentist? Is your mother **a** very busy woman?
10. Your friend has got **a** problem. What is **the** problem? You have got **a** pet, haven't you? What is **the** pet?

4 Заполните пропуски артиклями *a/an* или *the*, если это необходимо.

____ Red Cow lived in ____ field and had ____ happy life. But one night she came to ____ end of her happy days. That night she suddenly got up and began to dance.

'What ____ strange thing!' she thought.

At last she got tired but she couldn't stop dancing. In ____ morning she couldn't have breakfast. In ____ after-

noon and in ____ evening she danced too. When ____ second night came, and she still could not stop. And at ____ end of a week dancing she was very, very, very worried.

'I must see ____ King,' she said and danced to ____ King's palace. When ____ Palace door opened, she danced through ____ halls to ____ King's throne.

'What do you want? Be quick, because I am ____ very busy King! And stop dancing,' the King said in ____ angry voice.

'That's ____ problem! It is ____ seventh day of dancing.'

'It is ____ very strange. ____ cow has caught ____ fallen star on her horn! Now, pull ____ star off.'

But it didn't come off. ____ King took ____ biggest book but it said nothing about ____ cows with ____ stars on their horns. Except for ____ story of the Cow Who Jumped Over the Moon.

5 Обведите слово, не подходящее по смыслу.

1. a cow, a calf, a palace, a horn
2. a throne, a hall, a door, a field
3. funny, happy, worried, lovely
4. a star, the Moon, the Sun, the Earth
5. a field, a window, grass, a flower
6. sweet, angry, soft, nice
7. the King, the sky, the sunshine, the moonlight



Chapter 6
BAD TUESDAY

Helpful Words

What an idea!	Что за идея!
bamboo	бамбук
to tickle	щекотать

That morning Michael got up with a funny feeling. Something was wrong with him.

"What day is it today, Mary Poppins?" he asked.

"Tuesday," said Mary Poppins. "Go and take a shower!"

He didn't. The funny feeling got stronger.

"I won't," he said slowly. "I WON'T."

All day nothing went right with him. He did the most terrible things. And he felt very pleased and glad!

"You are ill," said Mrs. Banks, "you will have some medicine!"

"I'm not ill," said Michael. "I don't want to be good."

Suddenly Mary Poppins said to him, "You got out of bed the wrong side this morning."

"I didn't," said Michael. "There is no wrong side to my bed."

"Every bed has a right and a wrong side," said Mary Poppins.

"Not mine — it's next to the wall."

"Both sides were wrong this morning! Now, sir," said Mary Poppins. "Let's go for a walk."

When they were in the park, Michael saw a compass on the ground.

"What is it, Michael?" Jane asked.

"I won't tell you," said Michael.

"Mary Poppins, what is it for?" asked Jane. Mary Poppins took the little box from Michael's hand.

"To go round the world with," said Mary Poppins.

"**What an idea!**" said Michael. "It is not a ship! This little box can't take you round the world."

Mary Poppins sniffed, turned the compass and said the word "North!"

Suddenly it got very cold, and the wind was very strong! All around them there was a lot of ice and snow.

"Oh!" cried Jane. "Where are we now? Where is the park?"

The next moment a Polar Bear jumped out. He was standing on his legs.

"Welcome to the North Pole! You are very cold, aren't you?" the Bear asked in a kind voice. "That's because you need something to eat. What would you like? Fish?"

"I'm afraid we can't stay. We're on our way round the world. South!" Mary Poppins said to the compass.

The next moment the air got soft and warm. The children were in a noisy green jungle.

"Welcome!" said a large Parrot. "Can you help me, Mary Poppins? My wife's out and I'm so tired sitting on the eggs. Well, stay here, and I can get some sleep. Do, Mary Poppins! And I'll get you some bananas."

"I'm sorry but we are on our way round the world," said Mary Poppins. Jane and Michael wanted to try some tropical fruit but Mary Poppins said, "East!"

Again the world went round and round — or they went round and round the world?

Now they were among **bamboos**. A big black animal with white spots was sleeping on the ground. It was a Panda in its own home and not in a Zoo!

The Panda opened one black eye. "Oh, it's you, my dear girl," he said sleepily. "Well, I'll make a home for you all in a moment."

"We are not going to stay," Mary Poppins said. "We're taking a little trip round the world."

"Isn't it strange? Going round the world when you could stay here with me. My dear children, **tickle** me behind the ears. That always sends me to sleep."

In a moment he was sleeping peacefully and Mary Poppins said in a low voice: "West!"

Hills and lakes, mountains and forests went round and round. This time they were on long white seashore. And before them there was a large black and grey Dolphin with her baby.

"Mary Poppins, you're just in time for an evening swim. What are you doing here?"

"Oh, Amelia, we are just going round the world," Mary Poppins.

"Well, now for a meal. What would you like?" Amelia smiled at Jane and Michael, showing her white teeth.

"Thank you, Amelia. But we must be at home in a moment," said Mary Poppins.

"What kind of visit is that? Next time you must stay for tea, and we'll all sit together on a rock and sing a song to the moon." Amelia got very sad.

"That will be lovely," said Jane and Michael.

"Well, bye-bye then!"

"Bye, Amelia!" Michael and Jane cried.

"What are you doing, Michael?" The boy heard Mary Poppins's cold voice. The sea was not there. There was green grass and Jane and the Twins and Mary Poppins walking in the Park.

"Round the world and back in a minute — what a wonderful box!" said Jane.

"It's a compass. And it's mine," said Michael. "Give it to me!"

"My compass," said Mary Poppins and put it into her bag.

He looked at her very angrily. The strange feeling inside him grew worse, and in the evening he grew very naughty. He kicked the Twins and pulled Jane's hair.

"And that," said Mary Poppins, "is the end."

Michael was naughty and hated everybody. He got into bed without cleaning his teeth! Suddenly he saw the compass on the table and had an idea.

"I'll take the compass and go round the world. And they will never see me again!" He got up, took the compass in his hand.

"North, South, East, West!" he said very quickly.

He heard a noise and saw four large animals — the Polar Bear, the Parrot, the Panda and the Dolphin. They were coming to him, not kind and friendly, but angry and terrible.

"Oh! Mary Poppins, help me!" Michael cried and shut his eyes.

Suddenly the animals stopped and then disappeared.

"Mary Poppins!" he cried again.

"I can hear you OK," he heard Mary Poppins's voice.

He opened one eye. No angry animals. Then he sat up and looked round the room. There was nothing there. He was in his bed. And there was no strange feeling inside. He felt quiet and happy.

"What happened?" he asked Mary Poppins.

"I told you that it was my compass. Don't take my things, please," she said. Then she took the compass, put it in her pocket and went out of his bedroom. She came back in some minutes with a cup of hot milk in her hands.

Michael was drinking the milk very slowly. How comfortable his bed was! How warm it was! How happy he was to be at home!

Activities

1 Скажите, кто в этой главе:

1) had a funny feeling that day.
2) was naughty that day.
3) found a compass in the park.
4) lived in the North.
5) lived in the noisy green jungle.
6) wanted to give some bananas to Mary Poppins and the children.
7) lived among the bamboos.
8) wantedё to sing a song to the Moon with Mary Poppins and the children.
9) wanted to go round the world alone.
10) took the compass away from Michael.

2 Кому принадлежат эти слова? Объясните, почему этот герой произнес их.

1. I won't!
2. You got out of bed the wrong side this morning.
3. Mary Poppins, what is it for?
4. Welcome to the North Pole! You are very cold, aren't you?
5. My wife's out and I'm so tired sitting on the eggs.
6. My dear, tickle me behind the ears.
7. Next time you must stay for tea, and we'll all sit together on a rock and sing a song to the Moon.

8. And they will never see me again!
9. Don't take my things, please.

3 Ответьте на вопросы.

1. How did Michael feel when he got up in the morning?
2. What naughty things did he do in the morning?
3. What did Michael find in the park? What was it for?
4. What place did Jane and Michael visit first?
5. What animals did they meet in their round-the-world journey?
6. What were the animals like?
7. Why did Michael decide to go round the world alone?
8. What were the animals he saw like? Were they different from those he saw during his first journey?
9. What did he feel when he was drinking the warm milk in his comfortable bed?
10. Whose compass was that?

4 Подберите из текста прилагательные к следующим существительным и заполните пропуски.

funny	box
little	side
wrong	feeling
noisy	jungle
terrible	Pole
North	things
tropical	spots
white	fruit

1. That morning Michael got up with a _________ .
2. He did the most _________ .
3. He got out of bed the _________ that morning.
4. That _________ took the children round the world.
5. First they came to the _________ .
6. Next moment the children were in a _________ .

7. Michael wanted to try some __________ .
8. They also met a panda — a big black animal with __________ .

5 **Подберите вопросы к ответам, а затем допишите вопросы к другой группе ответов.**

What day is it today?	To go round the world with.
What is it for?	Yes, please.
What are you doing here?	Seventy-two, your Majesty.
Shall I tell you what is happening outside?	Tuesday.
How many laws?	Oh, we are just going round the world.
It's not your birthday, is it?	Funny but it's a happy feeling, too.
What does it feel like?	Yes, it is!

1. Will you __________ ? — Yes, please.
2. Would you __________ ? — No, thank you.
3. Do you __________ ? — Never!
4. When did you __________ ? — On Sunday.
5. What __________ ? — To ride in the park.
6. How many __________ ? — Three.
7. What __________ ? — Very boring.
8. Where __________ ? — At school.

6 **Соедините слово и его описание.**

The polar bear		a large black and white animal that looks like a bear and eats bamboo leaves.
The parrot	is	a tropical bird with bright feathers that can copy your speech.
The panda		a very clever sea animal like a fish with a long grey pointed nose.
The dolphin		a large white bear that lives in the North Pole.

Chapter 7
THE BIRD WOMAN

Helpful Words

daisy	ромашка, маргаритка
to feed	кормить
tuppence a bag	два пенса за пакетик
sparrow	воробей
pigeon	голубь
decoration	украшение
there are no crumbs left	не осталось крошек

"May be, she won't be there," said Michael.

"Yes, she will," said Jane. "She's always there."

Mary Poppins and the children were on the way to the Bird Woman! Mary Poppins walked between Jane and Michael. She had a new hat on and looked into every shop window. Was the hat OK? Didn't the pink roses turn into **daisies**?

At last they came to St. Paul's Cathedral. It was built a long time ago by a man with a bird's name — Sir **Christopher Wren**.[1] That was why so many birds and the Bird Woman lived near Sir Christopher Wren's Cathedral.

"There she is!" cried Michael suddenly.

"She's saying it! She's saying it!" cried Jane.

And she *was* saying it.

"**Feed** the birds, **tuppence a bag**! Feed the birds, tuppence a bag! Feed the birds, tuppence a bag!" she said it again and again in a high singing voice.

In her hands the Bird Woman had a lot of little bags full of breadcrumbs. She was selling them. There were many birds around her. They were flying or walking or eating something. Mary Poppins didn't like them. She always called them "**spar-**

---

[1] **Christopher Wren** — знаменитый английский архитектор; wren — название маленькой коричневой птички

rows." But they were not sparrows, they were **pigeons**. There were grey pigeons like Grandmothers; and brown pigeons like Uncles; and grey-green, noisy pigeons like Fathers. And the silly soft blue pigeons were like Mothers. That's what Jane and Michael thought about them.

They flew round and round the head of the Bird Woman, and when the children came up to her, they suddenly flew away and sat on the top of St. Paul's, laughing and looking down.

It was Michael's turn to buy a bag. Jane bought one the day before. He came up to the Bird Woman and gave her money.

"Feed the birds, tuppence a bag!" said the Bird Woman, and she put a bag of crumbs into his hand.

Michael knew it was no good asking her any questions. He and Jane often tried, but she always said, "Feed the birds, tuppence a bag!" and nothing more. Just as a cuckoo can only say "Cuckoo," no matter what questions you ask it.

Jane and Michael and Mary Poppins spread the crumbs in a circle on the ground, and one by one, the birds came down from St. Paul's.

The birds were eating the crumbs and making a great noise. They left no crumbs on the ground because it is not polite for a pigeon to leave anything on the plate. When the meal was finished the birds flew up and went flying round and round the Bird Woman's head. One of them sat on her hat and looked like a hat **decoration**. And one bird sat on Marry Poppins's hat and took a flower off it. Mary Poppins got very angry and shook an umbrella at the bird: "I'll put you in a pie!" said Mary Poppins. Then she called to Jane and Michael.

"It is time to go," she said.

"Good-bye," said Jane and Michael to the Bird Woman.

"Feed the birds," she replied, smiling.

They left her, walking with Mary Poppins between them.

"What happens when everybody goes away?" said Michael to Jane.

He knew well what happened, but asked Jane because it was her story.

"At night when everybody goes to bed," began Jane, "all the birds come down from the top of St. Paul's and run very carefully all over the ground just to see **there are no crumbs left**. And when — "

"You've forgotten the baths."

"Oh, yes — they have a bath and clean their wings. And when they fly three times round the head of the Bird Woman, they..."

"Do they sit on her shoulders?"

"Yes, and on her hat."

"And some on her knee. Then she looks at them and smiles at them and tells them to be good birds."

"In the bird language?"

"Yes. And when they are all sleepy and it is time to go to sleep, she spreads out her skirts, as a mother hen spreads out her wings, and the birds go under the skirts and they sleep there till morning."

Michael looked at his sister happily. He loved the story and was never tired of hearing it.

"And it's all true, isn't it?" he said, just as he always did.

"No," said Mary Poppins, who always said "No."

"Yes," said Jane, who always knew everything...

Activities

1 Завершите предложения.

1. The Bird woman was always saying, __________
   a) Cuckoo! Cuckoo!
   b) It is time to go!
   c) Feed the birds, tuppence a bag!

2. The hands of the Bird Woman were full of __________.
   a) breadcrumbs
   b) little bags
   c) pigeons

3. The birds were __________.
   a) sparrows
   b) cuckoos
   c) pigeons

4. When the birds were eating the crumbs they were __________.
   a) angry
   b) sleepy
   c) noisy

5. The birds ate __________ crumbs the children spread in a circle on the ground.
   a) all the
   b) no
   c) a few

6. Mary Poppins got angry with the bird because the bird __________.
   a) didn't like her hat
   b) took her pie
   c) took a flower off her hat

7. __________ made up a story about the Bird Woman.
   a) Jane
   b) Mary Poppins
   c) Michael

2 Расположите предложения по порядку.

_1_ All the birds come down from the top of St. Paul's Cathedral.
___ The Bird Woman spreads out her skirts and the birds sleep under her skirts till morning.
___ The birds have a bath and clean their wings.
___ Some of the birds sit on her shoulders and on her hat and some on her knee.

___ The Bird Woman looks at them and smiles at them and tells them to be good birds.

___ The birds fly three times round the head of the Bird Woman.

___ The birds run very carefully all over the ground just to see there are no crumbs left.

3 Заполните пропуски словами из рамочки.

Mary Poppins the Bird Woman a pigeon Jane an English architect pigeons

1. __________ looked in every shop window during the walks around the City.
2. Christopher Wren was __________ .
3. __________ lived near Christopher Wren's Cathedral.
4. __________ was saying: "Feed the birds, tuppence a bag!" and nothing more.
5. __________ was flying round the Bird Woman.
6. __________ took a flower from Mary Poppins' hat.
7. __________ made up a story about the Bird Woman.
8. __________ sleeps under the Bird Woman's skirts.
9. __________ could speak the bird language.
10. __________ didn't believe Jane's story.

4 Вспомните свои детские годы и ответьте на вопросы.

1. Did you like to walk around your town?
2. Did you feed the birds?
3. What did you feed them with?
4. Where did you feed them?
5. Did you meet any strange people in the place where you lived?

6. What were they like?
7. How did they look like?
8. Did you make up stories about them?
9. What stories were they?

5 Заполните пропуски словами из текста.

крошки	*собор*
круг	*шум*
пирог	*прочь*
цветок	*вокруг*
закончен	*деньги*
шляпа	*голуби*
кормить	*сердитый*

The Bird Woman lived near St. Paul's __________ . She was selling little bags full of __________ . There were many __________ around her. They flew __________ the Bird Woman, and when the children came up to her, they suddenly flew __________ .

Michael's came up to the Bird Woman and gave her __________ .

"__________ the birds, tuppence a bag!" said the Bird Woman. The children spread the crumbs in a __________ on the ground and the birds came. They were eating the crumbs and making a great __________ . When the meal was __________ the birds flew up and went flying round the Bird Woman's head. One of them sat on her __________ and one bird sat on Marry Poppins's hat and took a __________ off it. Mary Poppins got very __________ and cried: "I'll put you in a __________ !"



Chapter 8
MRS. CORRY

Helpful Words

gingerbread	пряник
mysterious	загадочный
to shake (shook, shaken) hands with	здороваться за руку
serious	серьезный
dozen	дюжина, 12 штук
baker's dozen	чёртова дюжина, 13 штук
to stick (stuck, stuck)	застревать, прилипать
curious	любопытный

brush	кисточка
ladder	лестница
pail	ведро

"Now we are going to buy some **gingerbread**," said Mary Poppins to the children. They were doing shopping that morning.

The next moment Mary Poppins turned the corner and suddenly stopped. Jane and Michael saw a strange shop. It was very small and very dark. There was a small dark door between the windows, and through it Mary Poppins, Jane and Michael came in.

There wasn't any lamp inside. The golden light came from paper stars lying all around the shop. They were gingerbread decorations. **Mysterious** — that's the right word for that shop.

"Fannie! Annie! Where are you?" Mary Poppins called.

And the next moment two of the largest people in the world appeared and **shook hands with** Mary Poppins and the children.

"What's this, what's this?" A high, thin, little voice came from the back of the shop. The next moment Fannie and Annie became frightened.

"What's going on?" cried the voice. And the woman appeared. She was as small and thin as her voice. She looked very old with thin hair and a little face. But she ran up to them as quickly as a young girl.

"Mary Poppins, with John and Barbara. What — Jane and Michael, too? I haven't been so surprised since Christopher Columbus discovered America!"

She smiled at the Twins so nicely that they stopped crying and began to laugh.

"That's better!" she said and then she did a very strange thing. She broke off two of her fingers and gave them to John and Barbara. And the strangest thing was that the next mo-

ment she had two new fingers on her hand. Jane and Michael saw it.

"What a pity," Michael said, "they aren't chocolate."

"Well, they are, sometimes," said Mrs. Corry, "I often eat them, if I can't sleep at night. I think, my dear" — she turned to Mary Poppins, "I think you want some gingerbread. Now, my darlings," said Mrs. Corry in a soft voice and smiled sweetly at Jane and Michael, "won't you come and take some? It's very special today. How many?"

"Four each," said Mary Poppins. "That's twelve. One **dozen**."

"I'll make it a **Baker's Dozen** — take thirteen," said Mrs. Corry.

So Jane and Michael chose thirteen bars of gingerbread, each with a golden paper star. Michael tried one of them.

"Good?" asked Mrs. Corry, and then she cried in her thin voice: "Hooray, hooray!" Then she stopped and her face grew **serious**.

"But remember — you must pay."

Mary Poppins opened her bag and took out three coins. She gave them to Jane and Michael.

"Now," said Mrs. Corry. "**Stick** the coins on my coat! They won't come off!"

Mary Poppins was the first to stick her coin on the Mrs. Corry's coat. And it stuck. Then Jane and Michael put theirs on — Jane's on the right shoulder and Michael's on the left one.

"How strange!" said Jane.

"I'm afraid we must be off now, Mrs. Corry," said Mary Poppins.

"Well, my dear Miss Poppins, it has been a very pleasant visit. And you'll come again soon, won't you, with Jane and Michael and the Twins?"

They nodded. Then Mrs. Corry came closer to the children with a **curious** look on her face.

"I wonder," she said, "what you will do with the paper stars?"

"Oh, we'll keep them," said Jane. "We always do."

"Ah — you keep them! And I wonder where you keep them?"

"Well," Jane began, "my paper stars are all in the box under the table and..."

"My stars are in a shoe-box on the first shelf of the wardrobe," said Michael.

"Box under the table and shoe-box in the wardrobe," said Mrs. Corry and looked at Mary Poppins. You could see some secret passed between them.

"Well," said Mrs. Corry, "that is very interesting. And now, good-bye!"

Suddenly Jane and Michael found themselves outside. They turned and didn't see the shop.

"How strange!" said Jane, "but the gingerbread is very good."

And they were so busy eating their gingerbread that they forgot how very strange it was. They remembered it again that night when they were in bed.

"Jane!" called Michael. "I can hear someone coming up the stairs!"

The door opened and somebody came into the room. It was Mary Poppins. She moved about the room softly with quick secret movements. First she took Jane's box, opened it and shut it quickly. Then she opened the wardrobe and took something out. Then she went out.

In the garden somebody was speaking in a low voice. There were some people there. Jane and Michael got out of bed and came up to the window. They saw a little figure and two gigantic ones near their gate.

"Mrs. Corry with Fannie and Annie," said Jane.

Fannie had two long **ladder**s on her shoulder and Annie had a large **pail** of something that looked like glue and a large

brush. Then the front door opened and Mary Poppins came to meet them. She had a basket on her arm, and in the basket there was something. It gave out a soft, mysterious light.

"Come on, we must hurry! We haven't much time," said Mrs. Corry.

Jane and Michael saw them go down Cherry Tree Lane, and then they turned to the left and went up the hill. When they got to the top of the hill, where there were no houses but only grass and flowers, they stopped.

"What are they going to do?" asked Michael. But there was no need for Jane to answer because they could see what was happening.

Annie and Fannie fixed the ladder with its one end on the ground and the other in the sky. Mrs. Corry took the brush and the pail of glue and climbed the ladder. Mary Poppins with her basket climbed the other ladder.

Then the most surprising thing happened — Mrs. Corry started covering the sky with the glue and Mary Poppins took something shiny from her basket and fixed it to the glue. She was sticking the gingerbread stars to the sky! They understood it when she took her hand away. When the star was placed on the sky it began to shine brightly.

"They are our stars!" said Michael.

At last it was over. Then Mary Poppins and Mrs. Corry came down and started their way back.

Jane and Michael looked at each other. Then without a word they went to their boxes where they usually kept the paper stars. They were empty.

"But why? But why?" said Michael looking surprisingly at his sister.

Jane said nothing. She thought and thought and thought.

"What I want to know," she said, "is this: are the stars made of gold paper or is the gold made of paper stars?"

But there was no answer.

Activities

1 Расставьте предложения по порядку.

__ They came into a mysterious shop that was small and very dark with the golden light that came from gingerbread decorations.
__ Jane and Michael got thirteen bars of gingerbread, each with a golden paper star on it.
__ Jane and Michael put the coins on Mrs. Corry's coat and they stuck.
__ Mary Poppins went to buy the gingerbread.
__ Jane and Michael told Mrs. Corry where they kept their paper stars.
__ Two gigantic girls shook hands with Mary Poppins and then a small and thin old woman, Mrs. Corry ran up to Mary Poppins, Jane and Michael.
__ Mrs. Corry broke off two of her fingers and gave to the children.

2 Соедините названия глав и слова, которые в них встречались.

The East Wind	Uncle, special, birthday party, air, grow lighter, funny, have tea
The Day Out	prince, stupid, usual dog, have friends, street dog, bark
Laughing Gas	cherry-trees, nurse, blow, bottle of medicine, strawberry ice, sweet lemon juice, milk
Miss Lark's Andrew	field of yellow flowers, a happy life, strange thing, the King, over the Moon
The Dancing Cow	wrong side of the bed, compass, panda, travel, North Pole, dolphin
Bad Tuesday	pavement, drawings, diamonds, lemon-cakes, waiter, Merry-go-Round

The Bird Woman	mysterious, gingerbread, ladder, pail, stick, gold paper, stars
Mrs. Corry	St. Paul's Cathedral, bread-crumbs, money, feed, pigeons, spread skirts

3 Переведите предложения на русский язык, обращая внимание на прилагательные.

1. Nobody was **more surprised** than the Red Cow herself.
2. Then the King took **the biggest** book but it said nothing about cows with stars on their horns.
3. The King was growing **smaller and smaller**.
4. She went **higher and higher** through the dark sky.
5. The funny feeling got **stronger.**
6. He did **the most terrible** things.
7. The strange feeling inside him grew **worse**, and in the evening he grew very naughty.
8. And the next moment two of **the largest** people in the world appeared.
9. And **the strangest** thing was that the next moment she had two new fingers on her hand.
10. Then Mrs. Corry came **closer** to the children with a curious look on her face.

4 Заполните таблицу прилагательными в нужной форме и переведите предложения на английский язык.

long	longer	the longest
		the highest
	smaller	
large		
strong		
	cleverer	

	bigger	
close		
		the youngest
good		
		the worst
	more surprised	
terrible		
long	longer	the longest
		the highest
	smaller	
large		
strong		
	cleverer	
	bigger	
close		
		the youngest
good		
		the worst
	more surprised	
terrible		

1. Это был самый ужасный день в моей жизни.
2. Слон — не самое большое животное на земле.
3. Я не худшая, я — самая лучшая!
4. Подойди поближе!
5. Колибри — самая маленькая птичка в мире.
6. Она была удивлена еще больше, чем я.
7. Иван — самый младший в нашем классе.

8. Мой папа сильнее, чем ты.
9. Эверест — самая высокая гора в мире.
10. Какая река длиннее Волги?

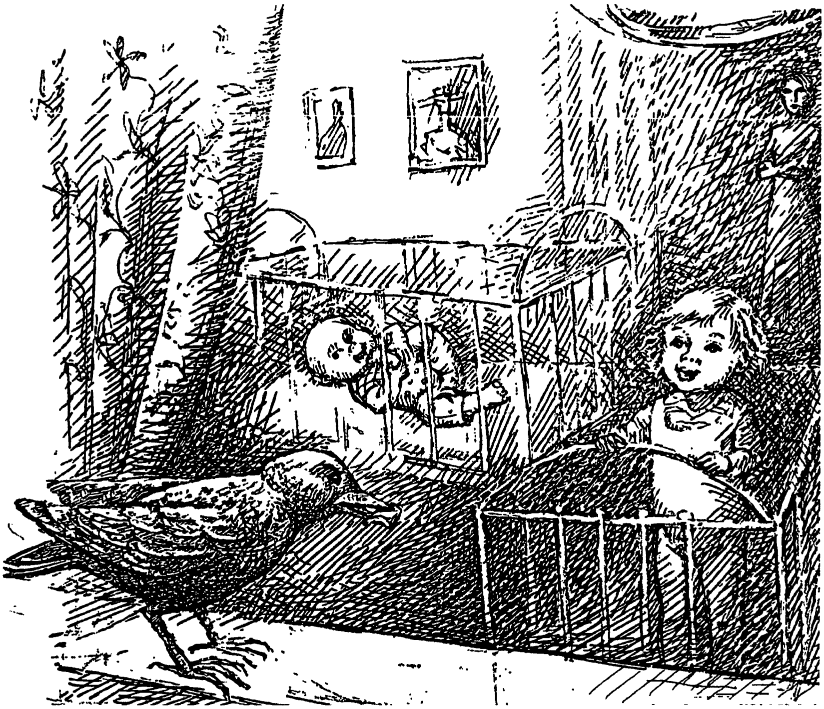
5 Ответьте на общие вопросы, используя ответы в рамочке.

Yes, it is. / No, it isn't. *Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.* *Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.* *Yes, I do. / No, I don't.* *Yes, they do. / No, they don't.* *Yes, it will. / No, it won't.* *Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.*

1. Are there any small and dark shops in the place where you live?
2. Do you like gingerbread?
3. Do Russian people decorate gingerbread with golden paper?
4. Will the coin stick if you put it on your coat?
5. Have you got any collections at home?
6. Are there any shoe-boxes in your wardrobe?
7. Are the stars made of gold paper?
8. Is the gold made of paper stars?

6 Обведите слово, не подходящее по смыслу.

1. pail, ladder, grass, brush, glue
2. gingerbread, tea, biscuit, crumb, cake
3. lemon juice, milk, strawberry ice-cream, apple cake, orange jam
4. shop, supermarket, bank, baker's, sweet shop
5. Jane, Mary Poppins, Mrs. Corry, Annie, Fannie
6. hill, lake, river, sea, ocean
7. big, naughty, large, gigantic, great
8. noisy, naughty, bad, stupid, lovely



Chapter 9
JOHN AND BARBARA'S STORY

Helpful Words

consultations, discussions, arguments, disputes	консультации, дискуссии, споры, диспуты
a pain	боль
grown-ups	взрослые
It's how things happen.	Вот так и происходит.
they're getting their teeth	у них прорезаются зубы
to miss	скучать

One day Jane and Michael were out at a party. Mrs. Banks was on the sofa with her feet up and Mary Poppins was making the room. The Twins, John and Barbara were in their beds.

"Oh, go away! You're in my eyes," said John in a loud voice.

"Sorry!" said the sunlight. "I must move from East to West in a day. Sorry! Shut your eyes and you won't see me."

The golden sunlight went across the room as quick as it could because it didn't want to trouble John.

"How soft, how sweet you are! I love you," said Barbara to the sunlight.

"Talking, talking! What a noisy place! There's always somebody talking in this room," said a voice at the window.

John and Barbara looked up. It was the Black Bird.

"I like that," said Mary Poppins. "And what about you? All day long — non-stop talking. You are worse than any sparrow, and that's the truth."

The Black Bird looked at Mary Poppins.

"Well," he said, "**consultations, discussions, arguments, disputes** — that is my work..."

"Work!" said John, laughing.

"And I wasn't talking to you, young man," said the Black Bird. "I heard you talking for some hours last Saturday. Well, I thought you would never stop — I couldn't sleep all night."

"That wasn't talking," said John. "I was... I had **a pain**."

But the Black Birds didn't listen to him. "Well, Barbara, have you got anything for me today?"

"There's the half of a biscuit," she said. The Black Bird took the biscuit and began to eat it.

"Thank you!" said Mary Poppins, but he was too busy eating the biscuit.

"I said 'Thank you!'," said Mary Poppins a little louder.

The Black Bird looked up. "Eh — what? Oh, I'm sorry. I've no time for such useless words." And he finished his biscuit.

The room was very quiet. John put his right foot into his mouth.

"Why are you doing that?" said Barbara, in her soft voice. "There's nobody to see you."

"I know," said John. "But I like to keep in practice. The **grown-ups** like my trick so much."

"They liked my trick, too," said Barbara. "Yesterday I took off my socks and she said I was so sweet that she would like to eat me. She really wanted to eat me, didn't she?"

"No. It's only the idiotic way they talk," said John. "I don't believe I'll ever understand them. They are so stupid. And even Jane and Michael are stupid sometimes."

"Yes," agreed Barbara, taking off her socks and putting them on again.

"Well," John went on, "they don't understand anything we say. They don't understand what *other* things say. Last Monday Jane said that she didn't understand the language of the wind."

"I know," said Barbara. "Michael thinks that the Black Bird says 'Wee-Twee!' He doesn't know that the Black Bird speaks English!"

"They knew once," said Mary Poppins.

"What?" said John and Barbara together. "Really? They understood the Bird and the Wind and..."

"And the language of the sunlight and the stars — of course they did! Once."

"But — why have they forgotten it all?" asked John.

"Because they've grown older," explained Mary Poppins. "Barbara, put on your socks at once, please."

"How silly they are! I shall never forget it when I grow up," said John.

"Nor I," said Barbara.

"Yes you will," said Mary Poppins.

"We won't!" said the Twins.

But the Black Bird laughed. "I say you will. You'll forget because everybody forgets. There never was a boy or a girl except, of course, Her." And he looked at Mary Poppins.

"But why can she remember?" said John.

"She's different," said the Black Bird. "She's something special, you see."

The sunlight moved on through the room, outside a light wind was blowing among the cherry trees in the Lane.

"Listen, the wind's talking," said John. "We won't hear *that*, Mary Poppins?"

"You'll hear," said Mary Poppins, "but you won't understand. **It's how things happen.**"

Now John and Barbara were crying loudly. The door opened and Mrs. Banks came in.

"Oh, my sweets, what is it? Why are they crying, Mary Poppins?"

"I think **they're getting their teeth**," said Mary Poppins.

"Oh, of course," said Mrs. Banks happily.

"I don't want teeth. I will forget all the things I like," cried John.

"And I don't want any teeth," cried Barbara.

Mrs. Banks was saying sweet words to her babies and John stopped crying. He didn't want his Mother to be sad. So he stopped crying and gave her a lovely smile. Then Jane stopped crying too. Mother gave them a kiss and left the room.

That moment Mary Poppins smiled a secret smile.

"Just listen to them!" said the Black Bird. "They think they will remember. In a month or two — their teeth will grow, they will be one year old — and they will forget. They won't even know my name, silly children! Ha! Ha! Ha!" And he flew away through the window.

At last the teeth came through and the Twins had their first birthday. Next day the Black Bird came back.

"Hello! Here we are again!" he said happily. "Well, Barbara," he began in his soft voice, "anything for the old friend today?"

"Ba-loo — ba-loo — ba-loo!" said Barbara, finishing her last biscuit.

"What's my name? What's my name? What's my name?" cried the Black Bird in a loud voice.

"Er-umph!" said John.

The Black Bird understood everything.

"So — it's happened," he said quietly to Mary Poppins. She nodded.

"Oh, well — I knew it. But they didn't believe it. I shall **miss** them!" and he was gone.

Activities

1 Выберите правильный ответ.

1. Who were John and Barbara?
   a) They were friends.
   b) They were twins.
   c) They were Jane's cousins.

2. Why were John and Barbara in their beds?
   a) It was time to go to sleep.
   b) They were babies.
   c) They were ill.

3. Who loved the sunlight?
   a) Barbara
   b) John
   c) the Black Bird

4. What did the Black Bird like doing?
   a) crying at night
   b) talking
   c) saying "Thank you"

5. Who wanted to eat Barbara?
   a) her mother
   b) the Black Bird
   c) nobody

6. Who could understand the language of the Wind?
   a) babies
   b) Jane and Michael
   c) Mr. and Mrs. Banks

7. How does it happen that people forget the language of the sunlight and the language of the stars?
   a) They are out of practice.
   b) They grow older.
   c) They grow stupid.

8. Why could Mary Poppins remember the language of the birds?
   a) She was very clever.
   b) She was special.
   c) She didn't grow older.

9. Jane didn't want to have her teeth. Why?
   a) She didn't want to forget the language of the Black Bird.
   b) She had a pain.
   c) She didn't like the way the people looked with their teeth in their mouths.

10. How old were the twin when they forgot the Bird's language?
   a) They were one.
   b) They were very old.
   c) They were as old as Jane.

2 Соедините пары слов, которые встречаются в этой главе. Затем заполните пропуски с их помощью.

A

loud	place
noisy	voice
useless	wind
light	words
secret	smile

1. My teacher is a kind woman, she never speaks in a __________ at class.
2. What a __________ to live! I couldn't sleep well at night.
3. Stop that! These are __________ to say. I don't believe you.
4. What a warm day! __________ is blowing and the sky is cloudless.
5. I am sure she knows something. Look at her __________!

B

make	socks
have	a smile
cry	the room
take off	in a loud voice
give	a pain

1. We are having a party tonight, so I have to __________ today.
2. I __________ in my leg. I think I have broken it.
3. He didn't __________ yesterday. He slept peacefully from morning till night.
4. Don't __________. The floor is cold in the room.
5. Say 'cheese' and __________. I am going to take your picture.

3 **Выразите свое согласие (*That's true.*) или несогласие (*That's wrong.*). Исправьте неверные предложения.**

1. The Twins, John and Barbara, didn't like it when the sunlight went across their room.
2. The Black Bird liked talking.
3. One day John wasn't OK and cried a lot.
4. Mary Poppins always had a biscuit for the Black Bird.
5. John and Barbara knew some funny tricks.
6. Mrs. Banks wanted to eat Barbara because the baby was so sweet.

7. Mary Poppins could understand the language of the wind and the stars.
8. Jane and Michael understood the language of the wind when they were babies.
9. The Twins didn't want to have their teeth.
10. When the Twins were one, they forgot the bird language.

4 Заполните пропуски глаголами в настоящем времени.

1. You __________ worse than any sparrow, and that __________ the truth. (*to be*)
2. I __________ any time for such useless words. (*to have, not*)
3. There __________ nobody to see you. (*to be*)
4. The grown-ups __________ my trick so much. (*to like*)
5. I __________ I'll ever understand them. (*to believe, not*)
6. They __________ what *other* things say. (*to understand, not*)
7. Michael __________ that the Black Bird says "Wee-Twee!" (*to think*)
8. He __________ that the Black Bird speaks English! (*to know, not*)

Chapter 10
FULL MOON

Helpful Words

gate	ворота
tin	банка
to dive	нырять
stork	журавль

panther	пантера
to knit	вязать (на спицах, крючком)
skin	кожа, шкура
belt	пояс, ремень
to protect	защищать
branch	ветвь

"I wonder what happenes in the Zoo at night?" asked Michael.

"**Care killed a cat**[1]," said Mary Poppins angrily and sent the children to their beds. Next moment she went away as fast as the wind.

Suddenly the children heard a voice, "Put on some clothes! Quick!" They dressed and opened the door. There was nobody there, but they heard something going down the stairs. Jane and Michael followed. "Quick!" said the voice and they followed it down streets. Finally they were in front of the **gate**.

"Look!" Jane cried. "It's the Zoo!"

"Welcome!" said a big Brown Bear. "No money! Here's your ticket."

"But we usually *give* tickets," said Jane.

"Tonight you get them," said the Bear and smiled.

Michael looked at the Bear, "I remember you. Once I gave you a **tin** of syrup."

"You did," said the Bear. "But you forgot to open it. Be more careful next time."

"Are you always out at night?" said Michael.

"No — only when the Birthday falls on a Full Moon."

Jane and Michael came into the Zoo. The full Moon was up in the sky. It was so bright that the children could see every tree, every flower and every cage too. Zoo animals were out of cages. Suddenly two wolves ran past the children, talking to a very tall **stork**. In the distance a tiger and a parrot were talking. Near the Elephant House a fat old gentleman was walking

---

[1] **Care killed a cat** — *зд.* Любопытной Варваре нос оторвали

up and down[1] on his knees, and on his back there were eight little monkeys. They were having a nice time, laughing and talking!

Suddenly they heard an angry voice.

"Come on! Let's see how *you* **dive** for orange." There was a pool of water near them and the voice came from it. It was a small black Seal:

"But — but we can't swim!" said Michael.

"Really? Why didn't you learn to swim when you were little? Nobody is interested if *I* can swim or not."

Suddenly they saw a big Lion.

"Oh," he began, "I can show you the way! Come quickly, it is beginning!"

At last they came up to the Big Cat House. Inside there were a lot of animals. There were **panthers** and leopards, wolves, tigers and antelopes, monkeys, goats and giraffes.

"Fantastic, isn't it?" said the Lion proudly. "Just like the dear old jungle days."

"Look! The cages are full of people!" said Michael and his mouth fell open. In one cage two gentlemen in hats were standing and waiting for something. Children of all ages were playing in another cage. The animals outside watched them with great interest. Then there were three old ladies in raincoats in another cage. One of ladies was **knit**ting but the other two were standing and shouting at the animals, "Terrible animals. Go away. I want my tea!"

"But how did they all get in there?" Jane asked the Lion.

"Lost," said the Lion. "We had to put them somewhere for a night. Some are very dangerous. Don't go near them! Look! The Zookeeper is going to feed them!"

Jane and Michael saw four Brown Bears coming to the cage. They opened a small door in each cage and pushed the food inside. There were bottles of milk for babies, cakes for children, cheese sandwiches for the old ladies, meatballs for gentlemen.

---

[1] **up and down** — туда-сюда

"Well, that's the end. I'm afraid we must go.You mustn't be late, it's her Birthday!"

They left the Big Cat House and soon stopped near another small house. The Lion opened the door and pushed the two children inside. It was the Snake House! All the cages were open and the snakes were out. And in the middle of the hall the children saw Mary Poppins. Jane and Michael could hardly believe their eyes.

Suddenly they heard a hissing voice: "My dear child!" The King Cobra was coming to Mary Poppins. "It is long since your Birthday fell on a Full Moon."

He turned his head to Jane and Michael.

"And who are these?" he said in his soft voice, looking at the children.

"Jane and Michael Banks," said Mary Poppins. "My friends."

"Then they are welcome."

Jane said in a low voice: "He talks as though he were a great lord."

"He *is*. **He's the lord of our world**[1] — the cleverest and most terrible of us all," said the Lion.

The King Cobra smiled, a long, slow, secret smile and turned to Mary Poppins, "Cousin," hissed the King Cobra, "I am going to give you my own **skin**. It is a small present, dear Mary, but it may serve for a **belt** or a pair of shoes — these things are always useful, you know."

And the King Cobra started to move slowly from side to side. Suddenly he gave a long jump and his golden skin fell on the floor, and in its place he had a new coat of shining silver.

"I will write some nice words on it," said the King Cobra and he wrote something with his tail on the skin.

"Thank you very much. It's so kind of you!" Mary Poppins was very pleased to get such a wonderful present.

---

[1] **He's the lord of our world** — Это наш повелитель

"Listen!" the King Cobra said. "It is time for the Great Dance! **You must be off.**[1] Good-bye, till your next Birthday."

Mary Poppins, Jane, Michael and all the snakes went out. The children could hear the animals singing and shouting. They saw leopards and lions, camels, bears, parrots, antelopes standing around Mary Poppins. Then the animals began to move, wildly crying their Jungle songs and dancing their wild Jungle dances.

Jane and Michael watched the dance. Their friend the Lion was dancing with a Zebra, a Wolf was dancing with a Rabbit, a Tiger — with an Antelope.

"I thought, Sir," Jane said to the King Cobra, "that lions and birds, and tigers and little animals are natural enemies."

"You are right. But not on the Birthday," said the King Cobra. "Tonight the small are free from the great and the great **protect** the small. Even I can meet a Goose **without any thought**[2] of dinner."

Birds and animals were now dancing together, round and round Mary Popping. The trees were moving their **branch**es and the Full Moon was also dancing high up in the sky. Jane and Michael felt that soft light fell on their faces.

"They are sleeping and dreaming," said a soft voice.

Was it the voice of the King Cobra or their mother's voice? Jane and Michael could not tell... could not tell...

"I had such a strange dream last night," said Jane in the morning. "I dreamt we were at the Zoo and it was Mary Poppins' birthday, and animals were out of the cages but the people were inside them.'

"That's *my* dream," said Michael, looking very surprised.

"We couldn't have the same dreams," said Jane.

"Are you sure? Do you remember the Lion and the Seal?" said Michael.

---

[1] **You must be off.** — Вам надо идти.

[2] **without any thought** — и даже не подумаю

"Of course I do! And the babies inside the cage, and the King Cobra..."

"Then it wasn't a dream at all," said Jane. "It was *true*."

"Mary Poppins," she said, "were you at the Zoo last night?"

"At the Zoo? In the middle of the night? I have a Zoo in this nursery, thank you," said Mary Poppins. "Hyenas and orangutans, all of you. Sit up straight, and no more stupid talk."

"Then it was a dream," Jane said.

But Michael was looking with his mouth open at Mary Poppins.

"Jane," he said, "Jane, look;" and Jane saw what he was looking at. Mary Poppins was wearing a belt made of golden snake skin, and on it there were words, "A Present from the Zoo."

Activities

1 Выразите свое согласие (*That's true.*) или несогласие (*That's wrong.*). Исправьте неверные предложения.

1. Mary Poppins put the children into the bed and went away as fast as the wind.
2. Jane and Michael slept peacefully in their beds till the morning came.
3. The voice woke the children up at night and they followed it to the shop.
4. The children didn't have money and couldn't buy a ticket to the Zoo.
5. Animals were out of their cages but people were inside them that night.
6. The Zookeepers gave meat to the people inside the cage.
7. Jane and Michael were special visitors in the Zoo that night.

8. Jane and Michael found Mary Poppins inside the cage with snakes around her.
9. King Cobra was Mary Poppins's cousin and he gave Mary his skin as a present.
10. Birds and animals were friends at Mary Poppins's birthday party.

2 Завершите предложения.

1. Jane and Michael had no money but __________ .
2. When Jane and Michael came into the Zoo __________.
3. The children were very surprised because __________ .
4. The cages were full of people who __________ .
5. In the Snake House the children could hardly believe their eyes when __________ .
6. The King Cobra gave Mary Poppins a present. It was __________ .
7. When it was time for the Great Dance the animals started __________ .
8. Jane and Michael thought it wasn't a dream because __________ .

3 Соедините две части предложений.

The Moon is 'full' when	that eats fish and lives around coasts.
A 'Zoo house' is a building	with long legs and a long beak.
A 'stork' is a tall white bird	you wear when it is raining.
A 'seal' is a large sea animal	it is completely round.
A 'raincoat' is a coat that	who looks after animals in the Zoo.
A 'Zookeeper' is a person who	where animals live.
A 'cobra' is	a long and dangerous snake.

4 Напишите свое определение слов.

1. A 'giraffe' is ______________________________.
2. A 'birthday' is ______________________________.
3. A 'present' is ______________________________.
4. A 'Zoo' is ______________________________.
5. A 'cage' is ______________________________.
6. A 'baby' is ______________________________.
7. A 'meatball' is ______________________________.
8. A 'nursery' is ______________________________.

5 Обведите слово, не подходящее по смыслу.

1. meatball, soup, fish, moon, chicken
2. milk, juice, tea, cake, coffee
3. wall, door, hall, nursery, wind
4. cobra, bear, lion, wolf, tiger
5. parrot, monkey, stork, pigeon, sparrow
6. raincoat, bottle, belt, shoes, hat
7. present, party, skin, birthday, cake
8. gentleman, door, lady, boy, baby

6 Продолжите последовательность.

1. Fruit: grapes, pears, __________ .
2. Drinks: water, chocolate, __________ .
3. Meals: tea, breakfast, __________ .
4. People of the family: cousin, uncle, __________ .
5. Clothes: jeans, trousers, __________ .
6. Animals: antelope, goat, __________ .
7. Months: January, March, __________ .
8. Days of the week: Monday, Tuesday, __________ .

7 Ответьте на вопросы.

1. When is your birthday?
2. Do you always have a party on your birthday?
3. Who comes to your parties?

4. What do your friends say to you on your birthday?
5. What presents do you like to get?
6. What presents did you get on your last birthday?
7. What do you do when your friends come to you?
8. Do you stay at home or go out at your party?
9. When do your friends usually go home?



Chapter 11
CHRISTMAS SHOPPING

Helpful Words

plum	слива
pram	коляска (детская)
hairpin	заколка для волос, шпилька
curious	любопытный
to introduce	знакомить
broom	метла
skipping-rope	скакалка
hoop	обруч
top	волчок (*игрушка*)

to pay платить
on tiptoe на цыпочках

It was Christmas time and Mary Poppins, Jane and Michael were going to the Largest Shop to do their Christmas shopping. Shop windows were full of toys and books and **plum** cakes.

"Look, airplanes!" said Michael.

"Two little black babies — are they chocolate?" asked Jane.

"Now we will go in," Mary Poppins said to Jane and Michael.

It wasn't easy to choose the presents for all the family.

"That will be for Daddy," said Michael and took a toy train with special signals. "I will take care of it for him when he goes to the City."

"I think I will get this for Mother," said Jane and took a small doll's **pram**, which her Mother always wanted. "Perhaps she will give it to me sometimes."

After that, Michael chose a packet of **hairpins** for the Twins and a **Meccano set**[1] for his Mother.

Jane bought 'Robinson Crusoe' for the Twins to read when they grew up.

"Now I can read it myself," she said. "I am sure they will give it to me."

At last Mary Poppins said: "And it is time to go home."

"Just five minutes longer," asked Jane.

But Mary Poppins said "No" and the children had to go with her. Behind them the dolls on the Christmas tree were saying, "Take me home, somebody!" and the airplanes were all trying to fly, "Let me fly! Ah, do let me fly!"

Jane and Michael hurried away, closing their ears to those voices. The time in the Toy Department was very short.

And when they were going to open the shop door, they saw a running girl.

"Look!" said Jane and Michael both together.

---

[1] **Meccano set** — набор конструктора

"Oh dear!" said Mary Poppins surprisingly.

The girl had few clothes on. Suddenly she stopped and looked around. The girl was looking for someone. Then she saw Jane, Michael and Mary Poppins.

"Ah, *there* you are! Thank you for waiting. I'm afraid I'm a little late. Aren't you glad to see me?"

"Yes," said Jane smiling, "but who are you?"

"Who am I? Don't say you don't know me?"

The child looked very surprised and then she turned to Mary Poppins.

"*She* knows me. Don't you? I'm sure you know me!"

There was a **curious** look on Mary Poppins' face: "Does it begin with an M?"

"Of course it does. I'm Maia. I'm the second of **the Pleiades**[1]. Electra — she's the eldest — couldn't come because she's looking after Merope, the baby. Oh, Jane! Oh, Michael! I've often watched you from the sky, and now I'm actually talking to you. There is nothing about you I don't know.

"Michael doesn't like to brush his hair. And your Father has got thin hair on the top. I like him. It was he who first **introduced** us — don't you remember? He said one evening last summer: 'Look, there are the Pleiades. Seven stars all together, the smallest in the sky. But there is one of them you can't see.' He meant Merope, of course. She's still too young to stay up all night. She's such a baby that she has to go to bed very early. Some of them up there call us the Little Sisters."

"But what are you doing here?" asked Michael, still very surprised.

"I've come down to buy toys for them all. We can't get away very often, you know. We're so busy making the spring rains. Can you help me?" she said and took the children back to

---

[1] **the Pleiades** — звездное скопление; согласно легенде, семь дочерей океаниды Плейоны Электра, Алкиона, Келено, Майя, Стеропа, Тайгета и Меропа были превращены в семь звезд

the Toy Department. As they went, the people stood and looked at them and dropped their bags.

"Just look at her. She is so cold. What are her parents thinking of?"

But Jane, Michael, Mary Poppins and Maia were very busy with shopping and didn't look around.

"Here we are!" said Maia. "What shall we buy? I want something for each of my sisters — six of them. First — my eldest sister. She's very domestic. What about that nice **broom**? We have so many troubles with star-dust. Now for Taygete. She likes dancing. Don't you think, Jane, a **skipping-rope** would be just the thing for her. Then there's Alcyone. She's so quiet. Does she want anything? A book, do you think, Mary Poppins? I hope she would like that nice little book. And if she doesn't, she can look at the pictures. I know what Celaeno wants. A **hoop**. She will like morning exercises with it up there, in the sky. She'll love that red and blue one. Now there are only the two little sisters left. Michael, what would you advise for Sterope?"

"What about a **top**?" said Michael.

"What a good idea! She will love to watch it turning round and round in the sky. And what do you think for Merope, the baby, Jane?"

"John and Barbara," said Jane, "have rubber ducks!"

"Oh, Jane, how clever you are! A rubber duck for Merope, please — a blue one with yellow eyes."

Then Michael turned and said to Mary Poppins.

"But who will **pay** for the toys?"

"What did you say?" asked Maia with round, surprised eyes. "Nobody will pay. There is nothing to pay — is there?"

"Nothing at all, madam," the shop assistant said and gave her the bag full of toys.

"Now we must go," she went on, taking Michael's arm. "We must all go home. It's very late, and I heard your Mother telling you that you must be home in time for tea. Besides, I must get back, too. Come." And she led the way through the shop and out.

Outside the shop Jane suddenly said, "But there's no present for *her*. She's bought something for all the others and nothing for herself. Maia has no Christmas present."

Mary Poppins gave a quick look into the shop window. She saw herself, very nicely dressed, with her hat and her new gloves on. Then she took off her new gloves and put them on to Maia's hands.

"There!" she said. "It's cold today."

Maia looked at the gloves. They were too big for her little hands. She said nothing, but came up to Mary Poppins and kissed her.

"I've been so happy," said Maia. "Don't forget me, will you?"

The children shook their heads.

"Good-bye," said Maia. She stood **on tiptoe**, lifted up her arms and jumped into the air. She began to walk the air up and up, climbing higher and higher. You could think there were stairs in the grey sky.

"What on earth is happening?" somebody asked.

"But it's not possible!" said another voice.

A lot of people were standing with their heads up and looking at the girl in the sky. Suddenly they heard the voice of the Policeman.

"What is this? What is going on here?"

He looked up and called angrily:

"There! Come down! What are you doing up there? Come down! We can't have the girl walking through the air. It's not natural!"

But Maia was going up and up. Then a cloud hid her but they knew she was behind it. The bright light was coming through the dark cloud.

When Jane, Michael and Mary Poppins came home and the children told their story to their Mother, she said:

"Perhaps...You know, at Christmas time strange things happen."

"But what about Mary Poppins' gloves?" said Jane. "We saw her give the gloves to Maia. And she's not wearing them now!"

"What, Mary Poppins!" said Mrs. Banks. "Your best gloves! You gave them away!"

Mary Poppins said in her usual cold voice:

"My gloves are my gloves and I do with them what I like!"

Activities

1 Завершите предложения.

1. Jane, Michael and Mary Poppins went to the Largest Shop to buy __________ .
   a) toys for the Twins
   b) a present for Mary Poppins
   c) Christmas presents for their family

2. The children bought __________ for their parents.
   a) a packet of hairpins and a book
   b) gloves and airplanes
   c) a toy train, a Meccano set and a doll's pram

3. The children bought __________ for the Twins.
   a) a packet of hairpins and a book
   b) a train and an airplane
   c) some chocolate and a doll's pram

4. When Jane, Michael and Mary Poppins were going out of the shop, they saw __________ .
   a) two little black babies
   b) some plum cakes
   c) a running girl

5. __________ knew the girl.
   a) Nobody of them
   b) Mary Poppins
   c) Jane

6. Maia knew a lot about Jane and Michael because she __________.
   a) watched them from the sky
   b) she often met them in London
   c) Mary Poppins often told her about the Banks family

7. Maia bought __________ for herself.
   a) no present
   b) a skipping-rope
   c) a broom

8. When Maia went home, everybody was __________ the way she did it.
   a) frightened of
   b) happy with
   c) surprised of

2 Объясните почему:

1) Jane, Michael and Mary Poppins went shopping that day.
2) Michael chose a toy train for his father.
3) Jane chose a small doll's pram for her mother in the shop.
4) Jane and Michael didn't recognize Maia.
5) the children were surprised when they saw Maia.
6) Maia knew a lot about Jane and Michael.
7) Maia came to the Shop that evening.
8) Maia bought a nice broom, a skipping-rope, a book, a hoop, a top and two rubber ducks in the Shop.
9) Maia paid nothing for the toys.
10) Maia kissed Mary Poppins.

3 Напишите вторую форму глаголов и заполните пропуски глаголом в прошедшем времени.

know		знать
pay		платить
come		приходить
buy		покупать
see		видеть
be		быть
stand		стоять
have		иметь

1. Maia __________ a rubber duck for Merope.
2. Maia __________ nothing at the shop.
3. Maia __________ no present for herself.
4. The gloves __________ too big for Maia's little hands.
5. Maia __________ to Mary Poppins and kissed her.
6. Maia __________ on tiptoe, lifted up her arms and jumped into the air.
7. A cloud hid Maia but the children __________ that she was there.
8. The children __________ Mary Poppins give her gloves to Maia.

4 Заполните пропуски предлогами, данными в рамочке.

to (×*2*) on (×*2*) of (×*3*) for (×*3*) about

1. Shop windows were full __________ toys and books and plum cakes.
2. It wasn't easy to choose the presents __________ all the family.

3. "I will take care __________ the train when Father goes to the City," said Michael.
4. "Perhaps Mother will give the doll's pram __________ me sometimes," said Jane.
5. The girl was looking __________ someone.
6. Thank you __________ waiting.
7. There was a curious look __________ Mary Poppins' face.
8. I've often watched you from the sky, and now I'm actually talking __________ you.
9. There is nothing __________ you I don't know.
10. And your Father has got thin hair __________ the top.
11. What are her parents thinking __________?

5 Соедините английские словосочетания и их перевод. Затем составьте английские предложения, начиная с *'I...'*

to be full of smth.	искать что-либо
to think of smth.	разговаривать с кем-либо
to talk to smb.	ждать что-либо
to take care of smb.	заботиться о ком-либо
to wait for smth.	быть полным чего-либо
to look for smth.	думать о чем-либо

Chapter 12
THE WEST WIND

Helpful Words

thought	мысль
cross	сердитый
chimney	каминная труба
parcel	посылка, сверток

It was the first day of spring. Jane and Michael knew it at once, because they heard Mr. Banks singing in the bathroom, and there was only one day in the year when he did that. Then he went out into the garden and smelled the air.

"Hm, I think it is the West Wind. It's warm today," he said.

"Did you hear what he said?" Michael took Jane's arm.

"It is the West Wind," she said slowly.

They didn't say a word but they had the same **thought**.

They forgot it soon, because everything was fine that morning. But trouble began after lunch.

Jane was in the garden. Michael ran out of the house, very red in the face.

"Look, Jane, look!" he cried. In his hand he had Mary Poppins' compass.

"The compass?" said Jane.

Michael suddenly started crying.

"She gave it to me. Oh, oh, there must be something wrong! What is going to happen? She has never given me anything before."

That afternoon Mary Poppins was very kind. She was thinking about something. At last Michael asked her:

"Oh, do be **cross**, Mary Poppins! Do be cross again! It is not like you."

"Trouble trouble and it will trouble you!"[1] said Mary Poppins crossly, in her usual voice. And the same moment he felt a little better.

"Perhaps it's only a feeling," he said to Jane.

"Perhaps," said Jane slowly.

The wind grew stronger and stronger. They could hear it everywhere inside the house: down the **chimneys** and near the windows, even in the Nursery.

Mary Poppins gave them their supper and took away the plates after it.

---

[1] **Trouble trouble and it will trouble you!** — *измененная английская пословица* 'Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you!'

"There!" she said. Then she put one hand on Michael's head and the other on Jane's shoulder.

"Now," she said, "I am just going off for a few minutes."

She went out and shut the door quietly behind her. They wanted to run after her, but something stopped them. They were waiting for her to come back.

"How silly we are," said Jane. "Everything's all right." But she knew it was not true. They still sat there at the table, waiting.

At last Michael said: "She's been gone a very long time, hasn't she?" But there was no answer. Suddenly they heard somebody shut the front door.

"Michael!" said Jane, jumping up.

"Jane!" said Michael, with a white look on his face.

They ran quickly to the window and looked out. Down, stood Mary Poppins, dressed in her coat and hat, with her carpet bag in one hand and her umbrella in the other. The wind was blowing wildly about her. She smiled at the wind and opened the umbrella. The wind got under the umbrella and lifted Mary Poppins from the ground. Then it lifted her over the front gate and carried her over the cherry trees in the Lane.

"She's going, Jane, she's going!" cried Michael.

Jane and Michael opened the window and cried: "Mary Poppins! Mary Poppins, come back!" But she did not hear them. She went up into the air. At last she was over the hill and the children couldn't see her.

"I wonder if we'll ever see her again?" said Jane and started to take off her clothes because it was time to go to sleep.

"What is this under my pillow?"

It was a small **parcel** there. When Jane opened it, she cried:

"It's her picture," she said. And it was! Under it was written, "Mary Poppins by Bert." Jane saw that there was a letter in the parcel too. It said: "Dear Jane, Michael had the compass so the picture is for you. Au revoir. Mary Poppins."

Jane didn't understand the last word, so she asked Michael: "What does 'au revoir' mean in English?"

"Au revoir? I think it means 'To Meet Again'."

Jane and Michael looked at each other. Happiness shone in their eyes. They knew **what Mary Poppins meant**[1]. "That's all right," Michael said. "She always does what she says she will."

Activities

1 Выберите правильный ответ.

1. When did Mr. Banks sing in the bathroom?
   a) on the first spring day
   b) when he was happy
   c) when it was warm

2. What was the weather like that day?
   a) It was very cold.
   b) It was warm, but windy.
   c) It was raining hard.

3. When did the children feel that something was wrong that day?
   a) When Jane found a letter from Mary Poppins.
   b) When Michael found a compass.
   c) When Father told them about the West Wind.

4. When did Mary Poppins leave the Banks family?
   a) in the morning
   b) after supper
   c) on the first of March

---

[1] **what Mary Poppins meant** — что Мэри Поппинс хотела этим сказать

5. What is true about the way Mary Poppins left the Banks family?
   a) She left them by taxi.
   b) The wind took her away.
   c) She took the plane.

6. What did the children feel when Mary Poppins left them?
   a) They wanted Mary Poppins to come back.
   b) They were happy.
   c) They cried for a long time.

7. How did the children understand that Mary Poppins would come back?
   a) She sent them a telegram.
   b) She told them about it.
   c) She wrote about it in her letter to Jane.

2 Кому принадлежат эти слова? О ком или о чем они говорят?

1. She gave it to me. Oh, oh, there must be something wrong! What is going to happen? She has never given me anything before.
2. Oh, do be cross! Do be cross again! It is not like you.
3. Trouble trouble and it will trouble you!
4. She's going, Jane, she's going!
5. Come back! Please, come back!
6. I wonder if we'll ever see her again?
7. It's her picture.
8. She always does what she says she will.

3 Обведите слово, не подходящее по смыслу.

1. nursery, bathroom, window, kitchen, hall
2. smell, hear, see, feel, cry
3. table, bed, garden, chair, wardrobe

4. cross, angry, wrong, funny, stupid
5. garden, tree, forest, field, jungle
6. wind, snow, pillow, sun, rain
7. letter, parcel, picture, telegram, postcard

4 Заполните пропуски артиклем *the*, если это необходимо.

Suddenly Jane and Michael heard somebody shut __________ front door. They ran to __________ window. Down, stood __________ Mary Poppins, dressed in __________ coat, with __________ carpet bag in one hand and her umbrella in __________ other. __________ wind was blowing wildly about her. She smiled at __________ wind and opened __________ umbrella. __________ wind got under __________ umbrella and lifted __________ Mary Poppins from _ ground. Then it lifted her over __________ front gate and carried her over __________ cherry trees in __________ Lane.

Jane and Michael opened __________ window and cried: "Mary Poppins! Mary Poppins, come __________ back!" But she did not hear them. She went up into __________ air. At last she was over __________ hill and __________ children couldn't see her.

5 Переведите предложения на английский язык, обращая внимания на определенный артикль *the*.

1. Открой окно!
2. Закрой дверь, пожалуйста!
3. Посмотри на пальто! Почему пальто грязное?
4. У меня в одной руке сумка, а в другой посылка.
5. Где зонтик?
6. Сегодня дует сильный ветер.
7. Что это на земле?
8. Воздушный шарик взлетел в воздух.

Содержание

Учебное издание

Трэверс Памела Линдон

МЭРИ ПОППИНС

Адаптация текста, комментарий,
упражнения, словарь *Е. Г. Вороновой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Редактор *Е. В. Угарова*
Оформление *А. М. Кузнецов*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *Е. В. Папенина*
Технический редактор *Т. В. Исаева*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректор *Н. И. Лапшина*

Подписано в печать 18.08.06. Формат 60×90/16. Печать офсетная.
Гарнитура «Таймс». Печ. л. 6. Усл.-печ. л. 6.
Тираж 5000 экз. Заказ № 4504.

ООО «Издательство “Айрис-пресс”»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

Отпечатано
в ОАО «Можайский полиграфический комбинат»
143200, г. Можайск, ул. Мира, 93

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

Elementary

ENGLISH RHYMES FOR CHILDREN



АНГЛИЙСКИЕ СТИХИ ДЛЯ ДЕТЕЙ

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Elementary

Английский клуб

Домашнее чтение

АНГЛИЙСКИЕ СТИХИ ДЛЯ ДЕТЕЙ

Книга для чтения на английском языке в 5—7 классах средних школ, 2—5 классах школ с углубленным изучением английского языка, лицеях, гимназиях и для начинающих самостоятельно изучать английский язык

Составитель В. А. Верхогляд

МОСКВА

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2006

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
А64

Серия «*Английский клуб*» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Английские стихи для детей / сост. В. А. Верхогляд. —
А64 М.: Айрис-пресс, 2006. — 96 с.: ил. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 5-8112-2017-0

Сборник содержит более 100 фольклорных стихов на английском языке; к некоторым из них приводятся переводы С. Я. Маршака. Стихи снабжены списками слов с переводом и транскрипцией. В конце сборника помещен алфавитный указатель первых слов стихотворений.

ББК 81.2Англ-93
УДК 811.111(075)

ISBN 5-8112-2017-0

CONTENTS

Rhymes about Animals

Rhymes about Nature

Rhymes about People

Jingles and Wonders

Songs and Riddles

Dear children!

In this book you will be reading some popular English poems. In times gone by parents and grandparents used to tell them to their children and grandchildren, and they in their turn told them to their children. In this way these verses were handed down from generation to generation, and then they began to be published in books.

In this collection are more than 100 English poems. They include rhymes, riddles, limericks, etc. Reading and learning English verses by heart will give you great pleasure and will also be very useful. You will remember a lot of new words and expressions and you will learn more about English people's lives.

The book consists of five sections: Rhymes about Animals; Rhymes about Nature; Rhymes about People; Jingles and Wonders; Songs and Riddles.

The poems in each section are arranged according to specific topics and in increasing order of difficulty. You are, therefore, advised to read the book from beginning to end without missing anything out.

If after reading the whole book you want to re-read and perhaps learn one of the pieces by heart, a full table of contents and an alphabetical index of the first lines of the poems will help you to find it.



RHYMES ABOUT ANIMALS

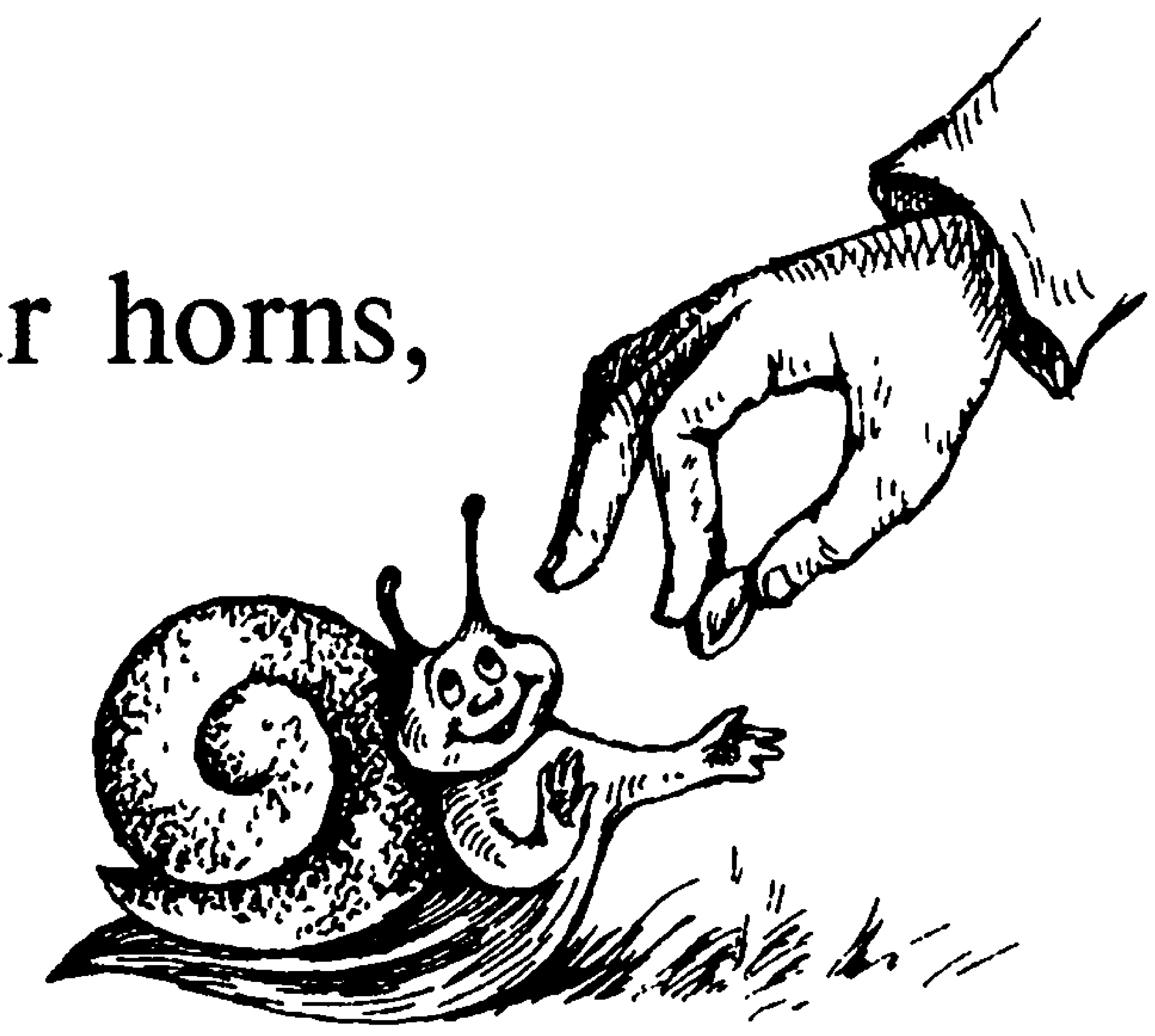
***

Bow-wow, says the dog,
Mew, mew, says the cat,
Grunt, grunt, goes the hog,
And squeak goes the rat.
Tu-whu, says the owl,
Caw, caw, says the crow,
Quack, quack, says the duck,
And what cuckoos say you know.

bow-wow, mew, grunt, squeak [skwi:k] и др. — *звукоподражания*

to go = to say
hog — боров
rat — крыса
owl [aul] — сова
cuckoo ['kuku:] — кукушка

To the Snail



Snail, snail, put out your horns,
And I'll give you bread
and barley-corns.

snail [sneɪl] — улитка
horns [hɔ:nz] — рожки (*улитки*)
barley-corns ['bɑ:lɪ'kɔ:nz] — зерна ячменя

To the Lady-Bird

Lady-bird, lady-bird,
Fly away home,
Your house is on fire
And your children all gone;
All except one
And that's little Ann
And she has crept under
The warming pan.

lady-bird ['leɪdɪbə:d] — божья коровка
fly away [ə'weɪ] **home** — лети домой
all gone [gɔn] — все улетели
all except [ɪk'sept] **one** — все, кроме одной
she has crept — она уползла
warming ['wɔ:mɪŋ] **pan** — грелка

***

There were two blackbirds,
Sitting on a hill,
The one named Jack,
The other named Jill;
Fly away, Jack!
Fly away, Jill!
Come again, Jack!
Come again, Jill!



blackbird [ˈblækbəːd] — черный дрозд
the one named Jack — одного звали Джек

Visitor

Little Robin Redbreast
Came to visit me;
This is what he whistled,
Thank you for my tea.

visitor [ˈvɪzɪtə] — гость
Robin [ˈrɔbɪn] **Redbreast** [ˈredbrest] **came to visit me** — малиновка прилетела ко мне в гости
to whistle [ˈwɪsl] — свистеть

Catch

Little Robin Redbreast sat upon a tree,
Up went pussy-cat, and down went he;
Down came pussy, and away Robin ran;
Says little Robin Redbreast,
Catch me if you can.



Little Robin Redbreast jumped
upon a wall,
Pussy-cat jumped after him,
and almost got a fall;
Little Robin chirped and sang,
and what did pussy say?
Pussy-cat said, Mew,
and Robin jumped away.

catch — ловля, поимка
Robin Redbreast sat upon [ə'pɔn] **a tree** — малиновка села на дерево
up went pussy-cat ['pusɪkæt] — вверх полезла кошка
to catch — ловить, поймать
and almost ['ɔ:lmoust] **got a fall** [fɔ:l] — и чуть не упала
chirped [tʃə:pt] **and sang** — защебетала и запела

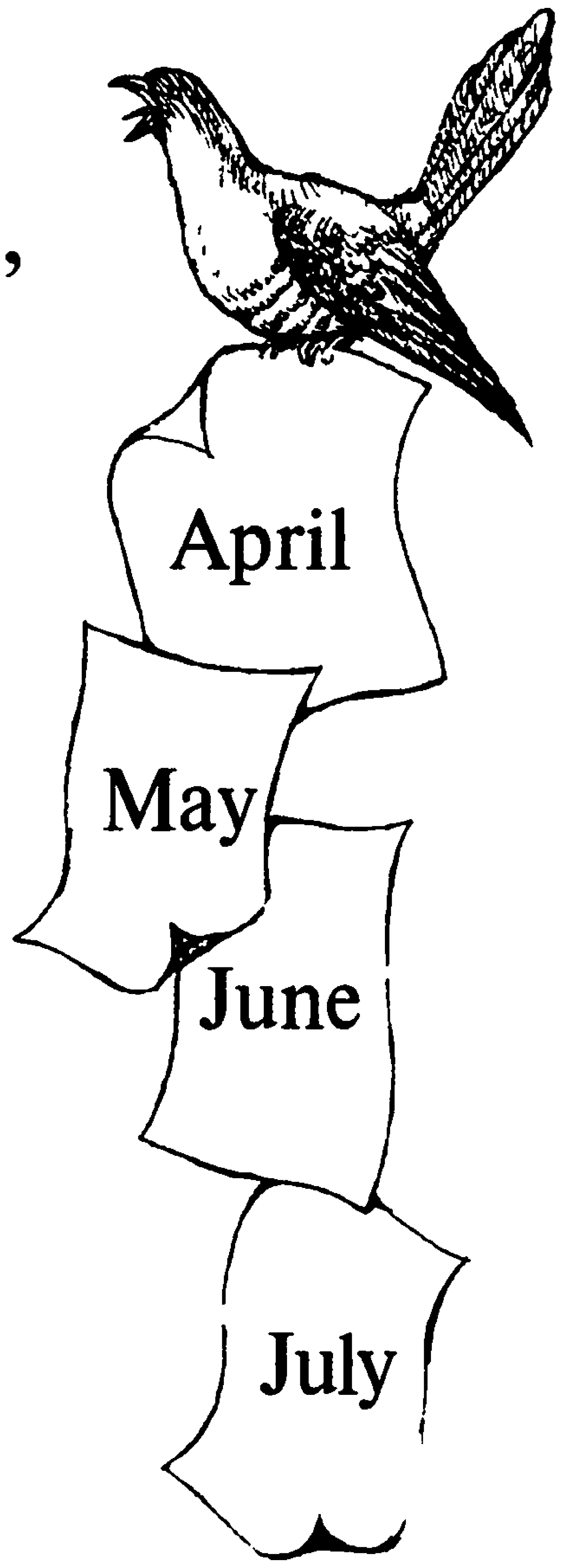
To the Cuckoo

Cuckoo, cuckoo, what do you do?
In April I open my bill;
In May I sing all day;
In June I change my tune;
In July away I fly;
In August away I must.

cuckoo ['kuku:] — кукушка
bill — клюв
I change [tʃeɪndʒ] **my tune** [tju:n] — я пою на другой лад

***

The cuckoo comes in April,
He sings his song in May;
In the middle of June
He changes his tune,
And then he flies away.



to fly away — улетать

Little Bird

Once I saw a little bird
Come hop, hop, hop,
And I cried, Little bird,
Will you stop, stop, stop?

I was going to the window
To say, How do you do?
But he shook his little tail
And away he flew.

hop — прыжок; подскакивание
cried [kraɪd] — закричал
shook [ʃuk] — качнул
flew [flu:] — улетел

***

A wise old owl sat in an oak,
The more he heard the less he spoke;



The less he spoke the more he heard.
Why aren't all like that wise old bird?

a wise old owl [aul] **sat in an oak** [ouk] — мудрая старая сова сидела на дубе
The more [mɔ:] **he heard** [hə:d] **the less he spoke**. — Чем больше она слышала, тем меньше она говорила.

***

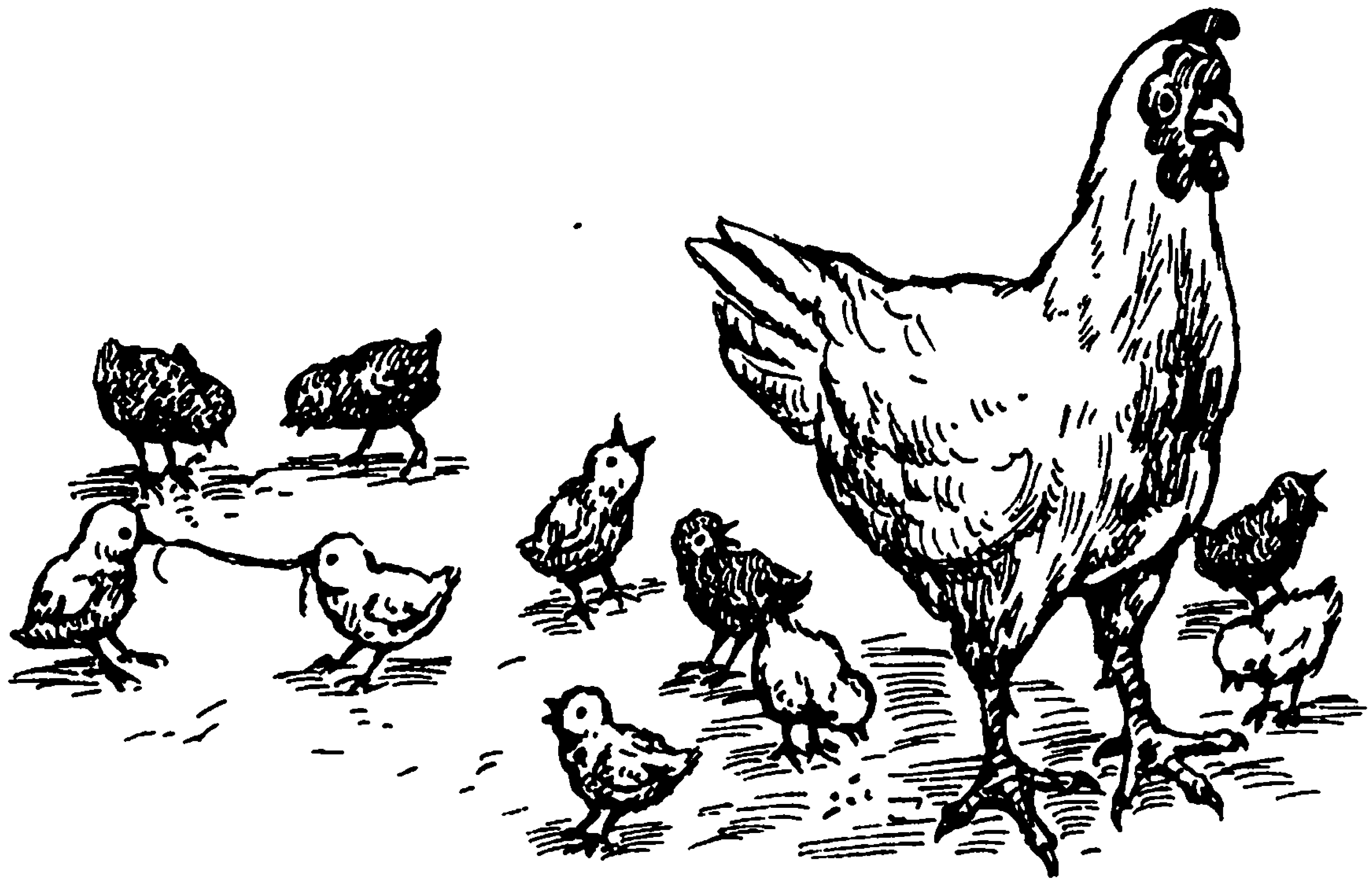
I had two pigeons bright and gay,
They flew from me the other day;
What was the reason they did go?
I cannot tell for I do not know.

pigeon ['pɪdʒɪn] — голубь
bright [braɪt] — яркий
gay [geɪ] — веселый
reason ['ri:zn] — причина
for — так как, потому что

Mrs. Hen

Chook, chook, chook, chook, chook;
Good morning, Mrs. Hen.
How many chickens have you got?
Madam, I've got ten.
Four of them are yellow,
And four of them are brown,

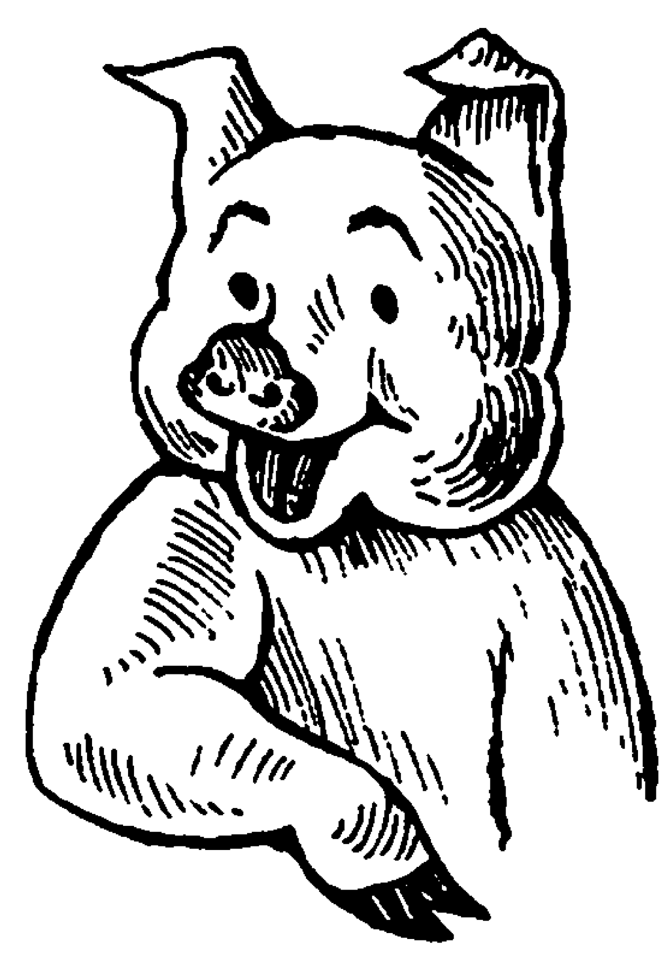
And two of them are speckled red,
The nicest in the town.



Mrs. ['mɪsɪs] — миссис
to have got = to have
madam ['mædəm] — госпожа
speckled ['spekld] **red** — пестро-рыжие

Jack Sprat's Pig

Little Jack Sprat
Once had a pig;
It was not very little,
Nor yet very big,
It was not very lean,
It was not very fat —
It's a good pig to grunt,
Said little Jack Sprat.



once [wʌns] — нéкогда, когда-то
not... nor — не... и не
lean [li:n] — тощий
fat — жирный
to grunt — хрюкать
said [sed] — сказал

Grig's Pig

Grandfa' Grig
Had a pig,
In a field of clover;
Piggy died,
Grandfa' cried,
And all the fun was over.

grandfa' = grandfather
clover ['klouvə] — клевер
piggy (= pig) died [daɪd] — поросенок умер
cried [kraɪd] — заплакал
fun — веселье, забава

Baa, Baa, Black Sheep

Baa, baa, black sheep,
Have you any wool?
Yes, sir, yes, sir,
Three bags full;
One for the master,
And one for the dame,
And one for the little boy
Who lives down the lane.

wool [wul] — шерсть
sir [sə:] — сэр, господин
master ['mɑ:stə] — хозяин
dame — госпожа
lane — узкая улочка

Барашек

— Ты скажи, барашек наш,
Сколько шерсти ты нам дашь?
— Не стриги меня пока.
Дам я шерсти три мешка:
Один мешок — хозяину,
Другой мешок — хозяйке,
А третий — детям маленьким
На теплые фуфайки!

Перевод С. Маршака

Visitor

Who's that ringing at my doorbell?
A little pussy-cat that isn't very well.
Rub its little nose with a little
mutton fat,
That's the best cure for a little
pussy-cat.



Who's that ringing ['rɪŋɪŋ] **at my door-bell?** — Кто это звонит в мою дверь?
isn't very ['verɪ] **well** — нездорова
to rub — тереть, натирать
mutton ['mʌtn] **fat** — бараний жир
cure [kjuə] — лекарство

Kindness

I love little pussy,
Her coat is so warm,
And if I don't hurt her
She'll do me no harm.
So I'll not pull her tail,
Nor drive her away,
But pussy and I
Very gently will play.
She shall sit by my side,
And I'll give her some food;
And pussy will love me
Because I am good.

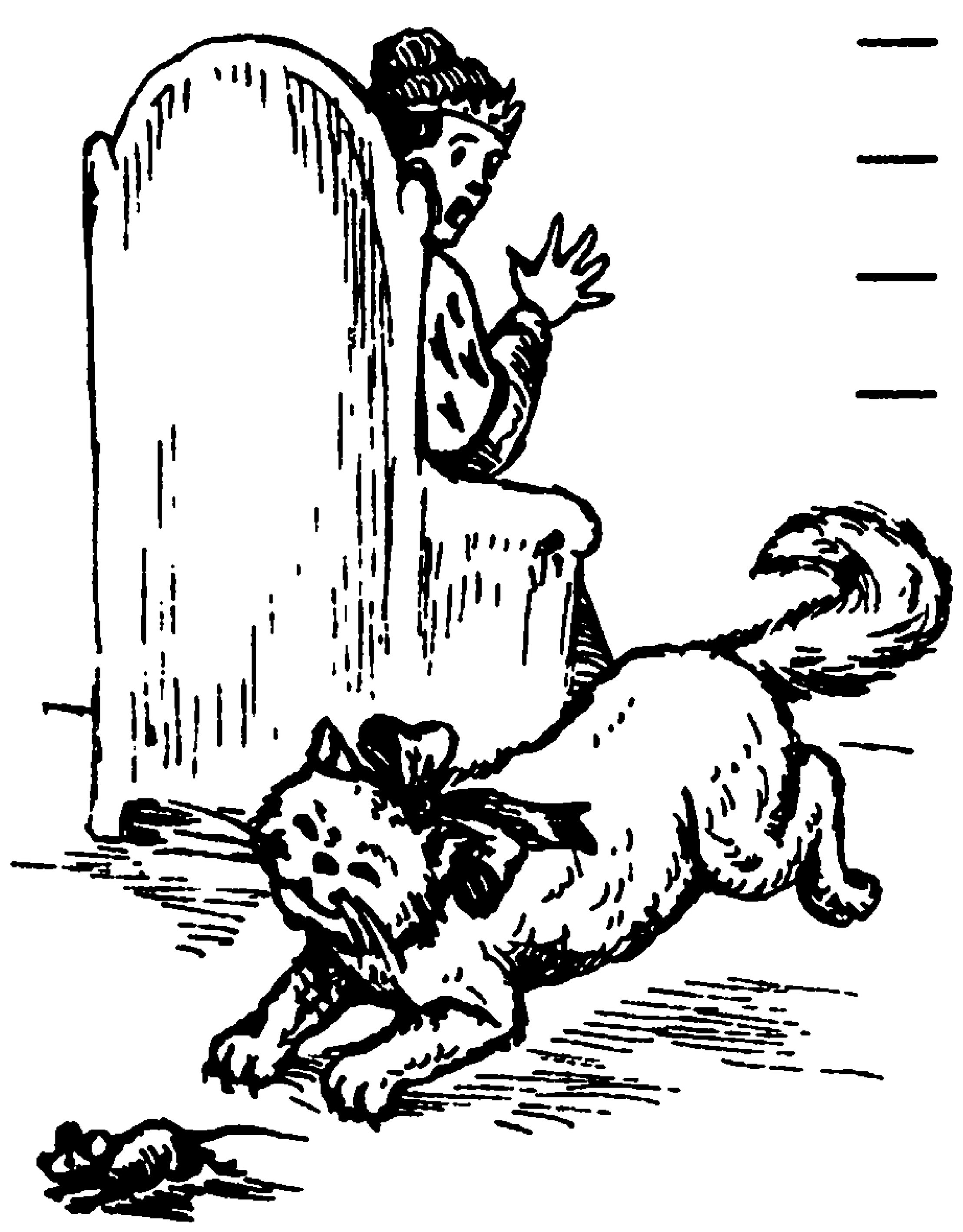
kindness ['kaındnıs] — доброта
pussy = pussy-cat
to hurt — причинять боль
harm — вред, зло
to pull [pul] — тянуть
to drive away [ə'weı] — прогонять
gently ['dʒentlı] — нежно

Traveller

Pussy-cat, pussy-cat,
Where have you been?
I've been to London
To look at the Queen.
Pussy-cat, pussy-cat,
What did you there?
I frightened a little mouse
Under her chair.

traveller ['trævlə] — путешественник
Where have you been? — Где ты была?
I've been (= I have been) to London — Я была в Лондоне
queen [kwi:n] — королева
to frighten ['fraɪtn] — пугать

В гостях у королевы



— Где ты была сегодня, киска?
— У королевы у английской.
— Что ты видала при дворе?
— Видала мышку на ковре.

Перевод С. Маршака

***

Where are you going,
My little kittens?
We are going to town
To get us some mittens.
What! Mittens for kittens!
Do kittens wear mittens?
Who ever saw little kittens
with mittens?



kitten ['kɪtn] — котенок
mitten ['mɪtn] — варежка

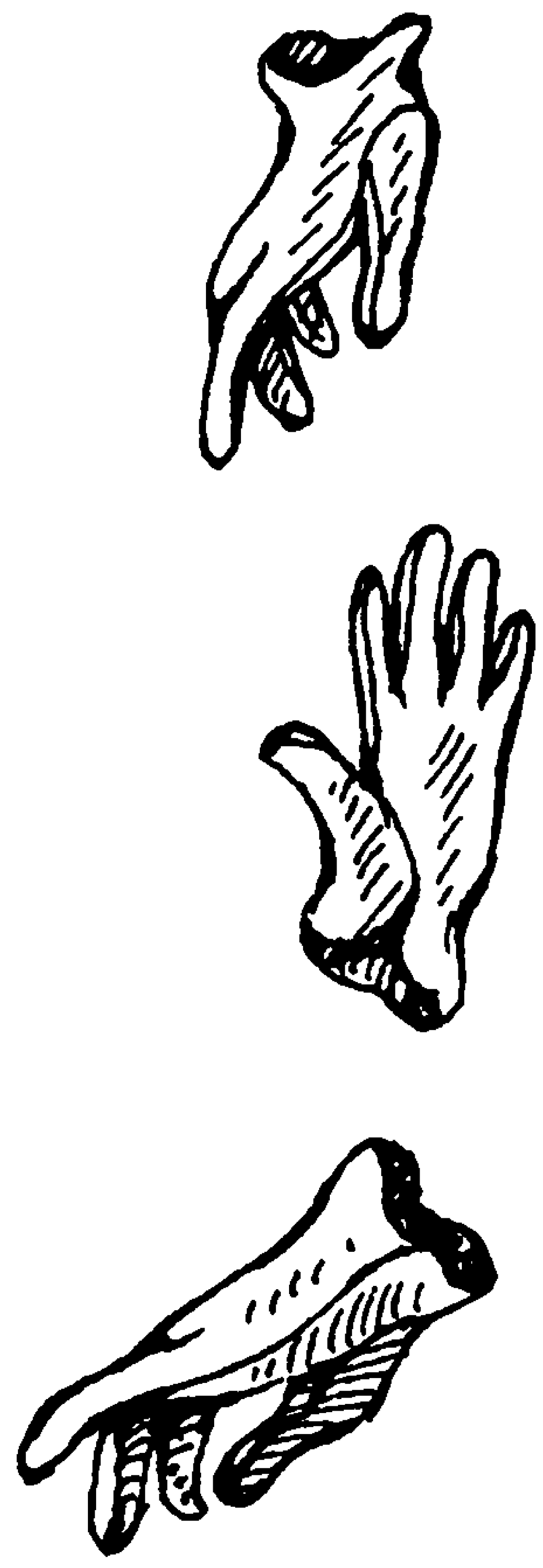
The Three Little Kittens



Three little kittens
They lost their mittens,
And they began to cry,
Oh, mother dear,
We greatly fear
Our mittens we have lost.
Lost your mittens,
You naughty kittens!
Then you shall have no pie.
Miew, miew, miew,
No, you shall have no pie.
Three little kittens
They found their mittens,
And they began to cry,
Oh, mother dear,
See here, see here,
Our mittens we have found!
Found your mittens,
You clever kittens,
Then you shall have some pie.
Purr, purr, purr,
Oh, let us have some pie.

lost — потеряли
to cry — плакать
greatly ['greɪtlɪ] — очень
to fear [fɪə] — бояться
we have lost — мы потеряли
naughty ['nɔ:tɪ] — непослушный
pie [paɪ] — пирог
found [faund] — нашли

Перчатки



Потеряли котятки
На дороге перчатки
И в слезах прибежали домой:
— Мама, мама, прости,
Мы не можем найти,
Мы не можем найти перчатки!

— Потеряли перчатки?
Вот дурные котятки!
Я вам нынче не дам пирога.
Мяу-мяу, не дам,
Мяу-мяу, не дам,
Я вам нынче не дам пирога.

Побежали котятки,
Отыскали перчатки
И, смеясь, прибежали домой:
— Мама, мама, не злись,
Потому что нашлись,
Потому что нашлись перчатки!

— Отыскали перчатки?
Вот спасибо, котятки!
Я за это вам дам пирога.
Мур-мур-мур, пирога,
Мур-мур-мур, пирога,
Я за это вам дам пирога!

Перевод С. Маршака





RHYMES ABOUT NATURE

Days in the Month

Thirty days hath September,
April, June and November;
February has twenty-eight alone.
All the rest have thirty-one,
But leap year coming once in four
Gives February one day more.

hath [hæθ] — *устар.* = **has**
alone [ə'loun] — один; только
all the rest — все остальные

leap year coming once in four — високосный год, приходящий один раз в четыре года

***

It's raining, it's pouring,
The old man's snoring;
He got into bed
And bumped his head
And couldn't get up
in the morning.

it's (= it is) pouring ['pɔːrɪŋ] – льет как из ведра
to snore [snɔː] – храпеть
to bump – ударять(ся)

***

It's raining, it's raining,
There's pepper in the box,
And all the little ladies
Are picking up their frocks.

pepper ['pepə] — перец
lady ['leɪdɪ] — дама, госпожа
to pick up ['pɪk'ʌp] — поднимать, подбирать
frock [frɔk] — платье

The Star

Twinkle, twinkle, little star,
How I wonder what you are!

Up above the world so high,
Like a diamond in the sky.

twinkle ['twɪŋkl] — мерцать, сверкать
to wonder ['wʌndə] — желать знать
above [ə'bʌv] — над
diamond ['daɪəmənd] — алмаз, бриллиант

***

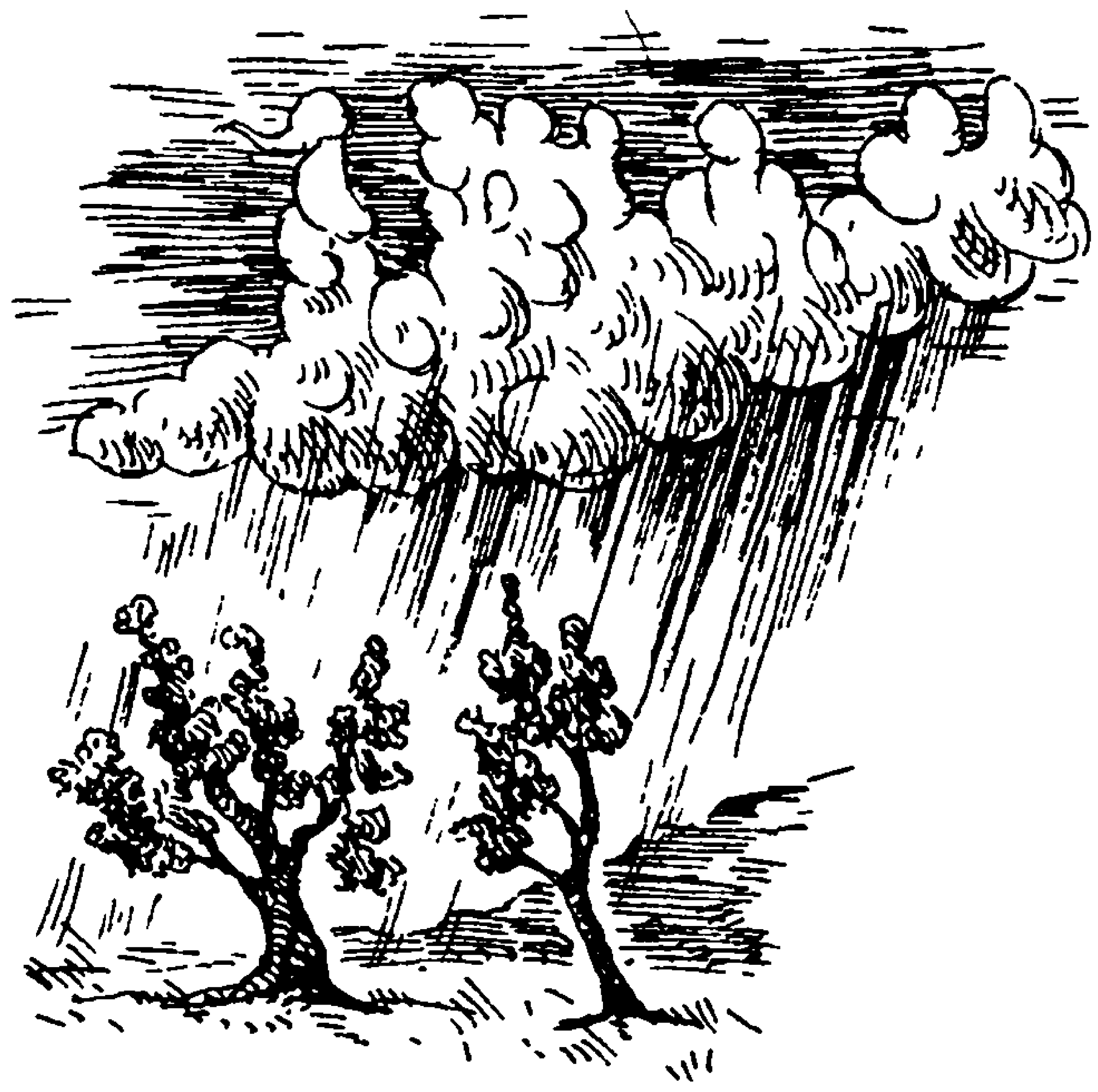
When the wind blows,
Then the mill goes;
When the wind drops,
Then the mill stops.

the wind blows — дует ветер
mill — мельница
the wind drops — ветер прекращается

***

March winds and April showers
Bring forth May flowers.

shower ['ʃauə] — ливень
to bring [brɪŋ] **forth** [fɔ:θ] — производить, рождать



Примета

Ветрено в марте,
В апреле дожди —
В мае
Фиалок и ландышей жди.

Перевод С. Маршака

***

When clouds appear
Like rocks and towers,
The earth's refreshed
By frequent showers.

clouds [klaudz] **appear** [ə'pɪə] — облака появляются
like rocks and towers ['tauəz] — похожие на скалы и башни
the earth's refreshed [rɪ'freʃt] — земля обновляется, освежается
frequent ['fri:kwənt] — частый

***

Cut thistles in May,
They grow in a day;
Cut them in June,
That is too soon;
Cut them in July,
Then they will die.

to cut — резать, срезать
thistle ['θɪsl] — *бот.* чертополох
to die [daɪ] — умирать, погибать

***

A swarm of bees in May
Is worth a load of hay;
A swarm of bees in June
Is worth a silver spoon;
A swarm of bees in July
Is not worth a fly.

a swarm [swɔ:m] **of bees** [bi:z] — пчелиный рой
is worth [wə:θ] — стоит
a load [loud] **of hay** [heɪ] — воз сена
a silver ['sɪlvə] **spoon** [spu:n] — серебряная ложка
fly [flaɪ] — муха

About Weather

If bees stay at home,
Rain will soon come;
If they fly away,
Fine will be the day.

bee [bi:] — пчела

***

Evening red and morning grey,
Send the traveller on his way;
Evening grey and morning red,
Bring the rain upon his head.

send the traveller ['trævlə] **on his way** [weɪ] — посылают путешественника в дорогу

***

Red sky at night,
Shepherd's delight;
Red sky in the morning,
Shepherd's warning.



shepherd ['ʃepəd] — пастух
delight [dɪ'laɪt] — восторг, восхищение
warning ['wɔ:nɪŋ] — предостережение, предупреждение

***

When the dew is on the grass,
Rain will never come to pass.
A sunshiny shower
Won't last half an hour.

dew [dju:] — роса
will never come to pass [pɑ:s] — никогда не придет

a sunshiny ['sʌnʃaɪnɪ] **shower** ['ʃauə] — грибной дождь
to last [lɑ:st] — продолжаться, длиться

***

Mackerel sky,
Mackerel sky,
Not long wet
And not long dry.

mackerel ['mækrəl] **sky** — небо барашками
wet — дождливый, сырой
dry [draɪ] — засушливый, сухой



RHYMES ABOUT PEOPLE

***

How many days has my baby to play?
Saturday, Sunday, Monday,
Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday,
Saturday, Sunday, Monday.

***

Go to bed, Tom,
Go to bed, Tom,

Tired or not, Tom,
Go to bed, Tom.

Jerry Hall

Jerry Hall,
He is so small,
A rat could eat him,
Hat and all.

rat — крыса

Robin Hood

Robin Hood
Has gone to the wood;
He'll come back again
If we are good.

has gone [gɔn] **to the wood** [wud] — пошел в лес
if we are good — если мы будем хорошими

***

Little fishes in a brook,
Father caught them on a hook,
Mother fried them in a pan,
Johnnie eats them like a man.

brook — ручей
caught [kɔ:t] **them on a hook** — поймал на крючок
fried [fraɪd] **them in a pan** — поджарила их на сковородке

Tommy Tittlemouse



Little Tommy Tittlemouse
Lived in a little house;
He caught fishes
In other men's ditches.

caught [kɔ:t] — ловил
ditch [dɪtʃ] — канава, ров

***

One, two, three, four,
Mary's at the cottage door,
Five, six, seven, eight,
Eating cherries off a plate.

cottage ['kɔtɪdʒ] — загородный дом, коттедж
cherry ['tʃerɪ] — вишня

***

One, two, three, four, five,
Once I caught a fish alive,
Six, seven, eight, nine, ten,
Then I let it go again.
Why did you let it go?
Because it bit my finger so.
Which finger did it bite?
The little finger on the right.

alive [ə'laɪv] — живой
I let it go — я отпустил ее

because [bɪ'kɔz] **it bit my finger** ['fiŋgə] **so** — потому что она так укусила мой палец
to bite — кусать(ся)

Betty Blue

Little Betty Blue
Lost her holiday shoe,
What can little Betty do?
Give her another
To match the other,
And then she may walk out in two.

lost — потеряла
to match — подходить (под пару), соответствовать
she may [meɪ] **walk** [wɔ:k] **out** [aut] — она сможет гулять

Little Girl

Little girl, little girl,
Where have you been?
I've been to see grandmother
Over the green.
What did she give you?
Milk in a can.
What did you say for it?
Thank you, Grandam.

Where have you been? — Где ты была?
over ['ouvə] **the green** — по ту сторону луга, за лугом
can — бидон
Grandam ['grændæm] — *устар.* = **Grandmother**

***

— Маленькая девочка,
Скажи, где ты была?
— Была у старой бабушки
На том конце села.

— Что ты пила у бабушки?
— Пила с вареньем чай.
— Что ты сказала бабушке?
— «Спасибо» и «прощай».



Перевод С. Маршака

***

What are little boys made of, made of?
What are little boys made of?
Frogs and snails,
And puppy-dogs' tails,
That's what little boys are made of.
What are little girls made of, made of?
What are little girls made of?
Sugar and spice
And all things nice,
That's what little girls are made of.

What are little boys made of...? — Из чего сделаны маленькие мальчики...?
frog — лягушка
snail [sneɪl] — улитка
puppy-dog ['pʌpɪdɔg] — щенок
sugar ['ʃugə] — сахар
spice [spaɪs] — специя, пряность

Мальчики и девочки

Из чего только сделаны мальчики?
Из чего только сделаны мальчики?
Из колючек, ракушек и зеленых лягушек —
Вот из этого сделаны мальчики.

Из чего только сделаны девочки?
Из чего только сделаны девочки?
Из конфет и пирожных,
и сластей всевозможных —
Вот из этого сделаны девочки.

Перевод С. Маршака

Good Counsel for Children

Go to bed late,
Stay very small;
Go to bed early,
Grow very tall.

One thing at a time
And that done well,
Is a very good rule,
As many can tell.

Good, better, best;
Never rest
Till "good" be "better",
And "better" "best".

counsel ['kaunsəl] — совет
late — поздно

to stay [steɪ] — оставаться
tall [tɔ:l] — высокий
time — раз
done [dʌn] **well** — сделано хорошо
rule — правило
as many can tell — как могут сказать многие
never ['nevə] **rest** — никогда не успокаивайся
till — до тех пор пока

***

Elsie Marley is grown so fine,
She won't get up to feed the swine,
But lies in bed till eight or nine
Lazy Elsie Marley.



is grown [groun] — растет
she won't get up to feed the swine — она не хочет вставать кормить свиней
to lie [laɪ] — лежать
lazy — ленивый

William McTrimbletoe

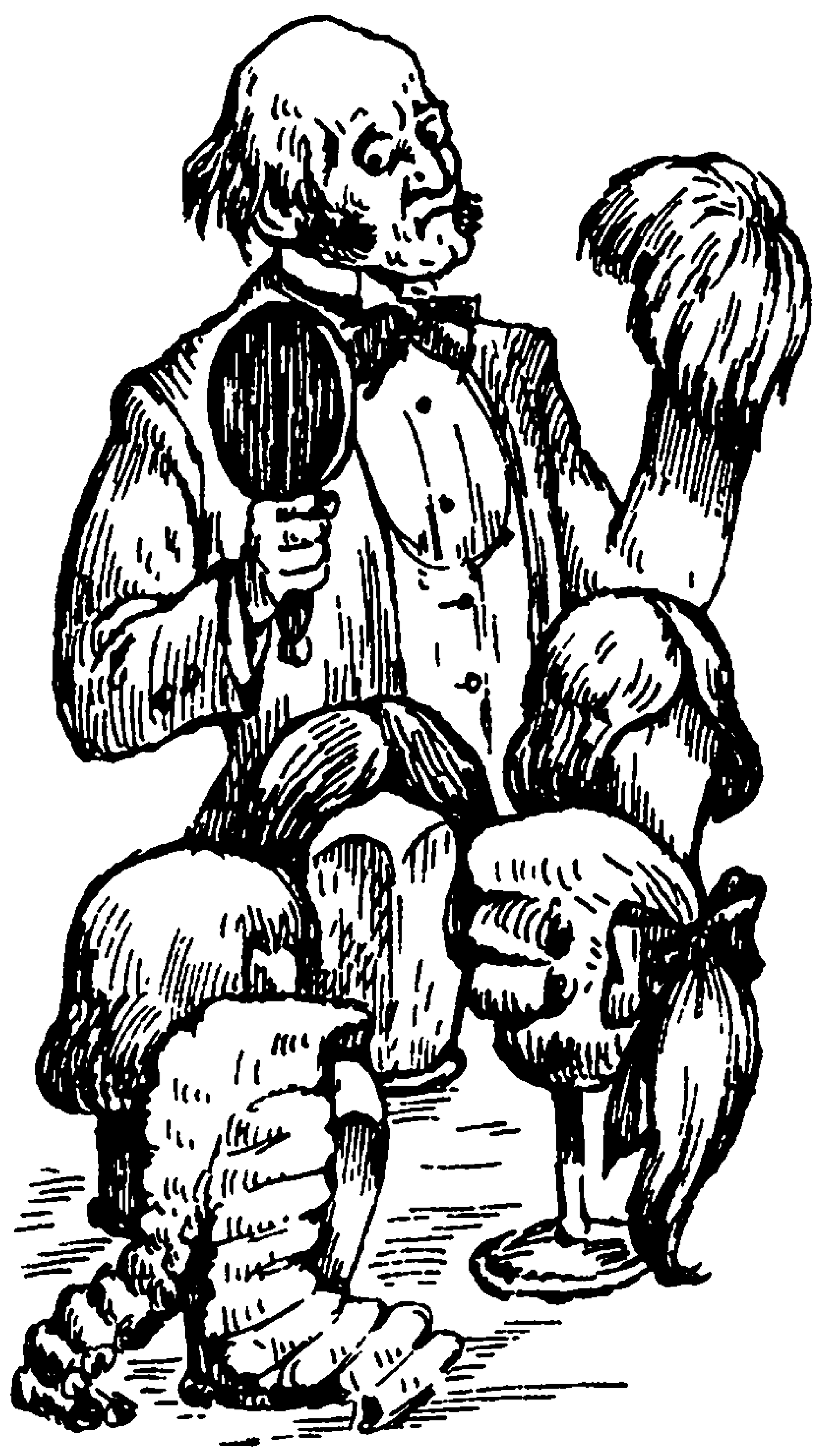
William McTrimbletoe,
He's a good fisherman,
Catches fishes,
Puts them in dishes,
Catches hens,
Puts them in pens;
Some lay eggs,

Some lay none,
William McTrimbletoe,
He doesn't eat one.

fisherman ['fɪʃəmən] — рыбак, рыболов
to catch — ловить
dish — блюдо, тарелка
pen — небольшой загон (*для птицы, скота*)
to lay eggs — откладывать яйца
none [nʌn] — ничто, никто

•

Gregory Griggs



Gregory Griggs, Gregory Griggs,
Had twenty-seven different wigs.
He wore them up, he wore them down,
To please the people of the town;
He wore them east, he wore them west,
But he never could tell
Which he loved the best.

wig — парик
to please — нравиться
east — восток
west — запад
never ['nevə] **could** [kud] **tell which** [wɪtʃ] **he loved** [lʌvd] **the best** — никогда не мог сказать, какой он любит больше всего

Dob and Mob

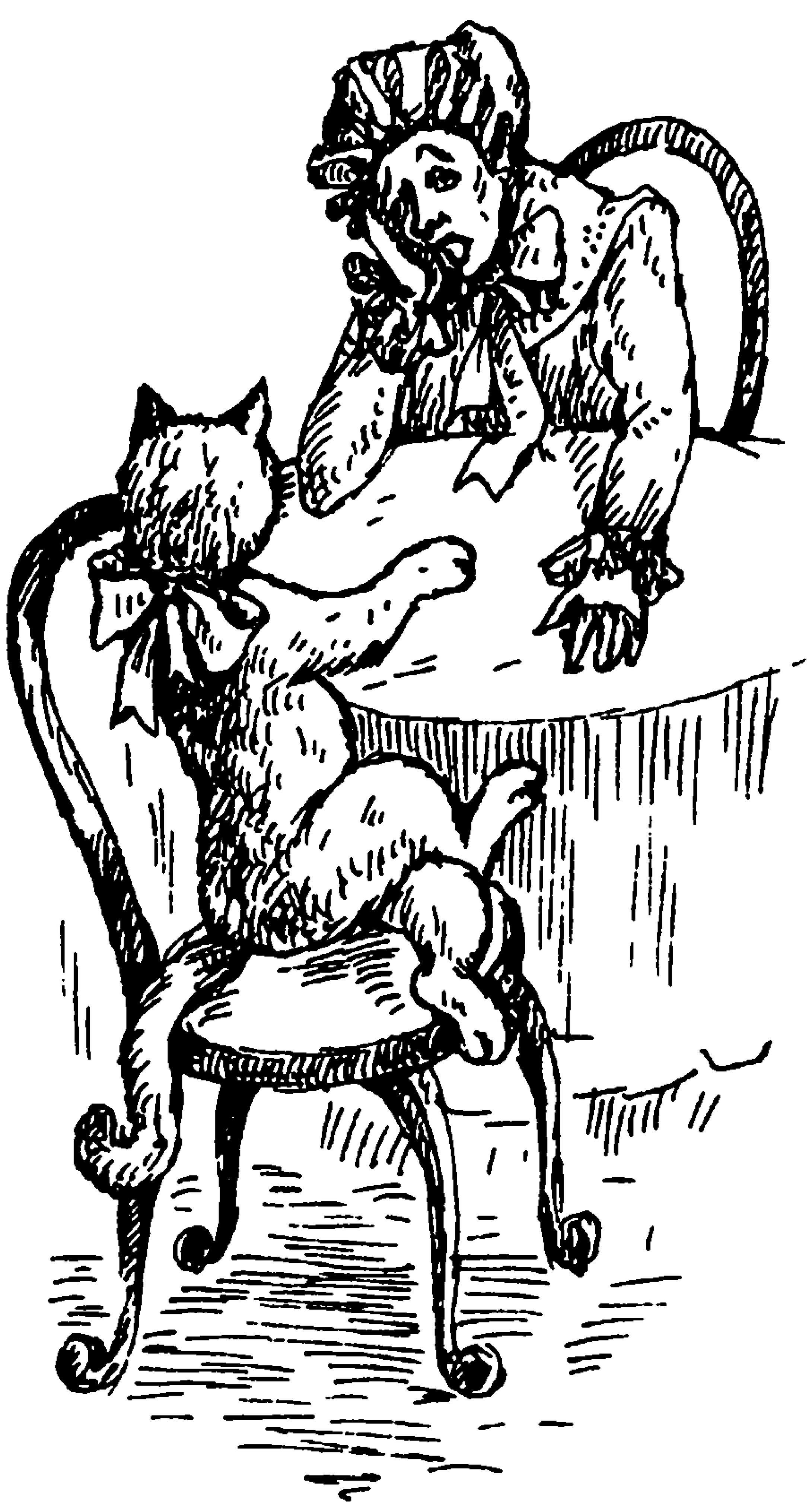
There was a man,
And his name was Dob,
And he had a wife,
And her name was Mob.
And he had a dog,
And he called it Bob,
And she had a cat,
Called Chitterabob.
Bob, says Dob;
Chitterabob, says Mob.
Bob was Dob's dog,
Chitterabob Mob's cat.

wife — жена
to call [kɔ:l] — называть

Dame Trot

Dame Trot and her cat
Sat down for a chat;
The Dame sat on this side
And puss sat on that.

Puss, says the Dame,
Can you catch a rat,
Or a mouse in the dark?
Purr, says the cat.



dame — дама, госпожа
sat down [daun] **for a chat** — сели поговорить

sat on this side — села с одной стороны
puss [pus] — кошечка, киска
catch a rat — поймать крысу
in the dark — в темноте
purr [pə:] — мур

Разговор

Тетя Трот и кошка
Сели у окошка,
Сели рядом вечерком
Поболтать немножко,
Трот спросила: — Кис-кис-кис,
Ты ловить умеешь крыс?
— Мурр!.. — сказала кошка,
Помолчав немножко.

Перевод С. Маршака

Hector Protector

Hector Protector was dressed all in green;
Hector Protector was sent to the Queen.
The Queen did not like him,
No more did the King;
So Hector Protector was sent back again.

Protector [prə'tektə] — протектор (*в Англии XV-XVI веков официальный титул некоторых высокопоставленных государственных деятелей*)
was dressed — был одет
was sent — был послан
queen [kwi:n] — королева
no more did the king — не понравился он и королю

Гектор-Протектор

Гектор-Протектор
Во всем был зеленом.
Гектор-Протектор
Предстал перед троном.
Увы, королю
Не понравился
Он,
И Гектор-Протектор
Отправился
Вон.



Перевод С. Маршака

Robin and Richard

Robin and Richard
Were two pretty men,
They lay in bed
Till the clock struck ten;
Then up starts Robin
And looks at the sky,
Oh, brother Richard,
The sun's very high.
You go before
With a bottle and bag,
And I will come after
On little Jack Nag.

pretty ['prɪtɪ] — привлека́тельный
lay [leɪ] — лежали
till the clock struck ten — до тех пор, пока часы не пробили десять

to start — вскочить (с постели)
bottle — бутылка



The Dame of Dundee

There was an old woman
Who lived in Dundee,
And in her back garden
There grew a plum-tree;
The plums they grew rotten
Before they grey ripe,
And she sold them
Three farthings a pint.

plum — слива
grew [gru:] **rotten** ['rɔtn] — становились гнилыми
before they grew ripe [raɪp] — до того, как они созревали
sold [sould] — продавала
three farthings ['fɑ:ðɪŋz] **a pint** [paɪnt] — три фартинга[1] за одну пинту[2]

Abram Brown

Old Abram Brown is dead and gone,
You'll never see him more;
He used to wear a long brown coat
That buttoned down before.

[1] фартинг — старинная английская бронзовая мелкая монета (0,25 пенни), вышла из употребления в первой половине XIX века
[2] пинта — мера емкости (около 0,5 л)

is dead [ded] **and gone** [gɔn] — умер
more [mɔ:] — больше
he used to wear [wɛə] — он обычно носил
to button ['bʌtn] — застегивать(ся) на пуговицы

Solomon Grundy

Solomon Grundy,
Born on a Monday,
Christened on Tuesday,
Married on Wednesday,
Took ill on Thursday,
Worse on Friday,
Died on Saturday,
Buried on Sunday.
This is the end
Of Solomon Grundy.

born..., christened ['krɪsnd] **..., married** — родился..., окрещен..., женился
took ill — заболел
died [daɪd] ..., **buried** ['berɪd] — умер..., похоронен
end — конец

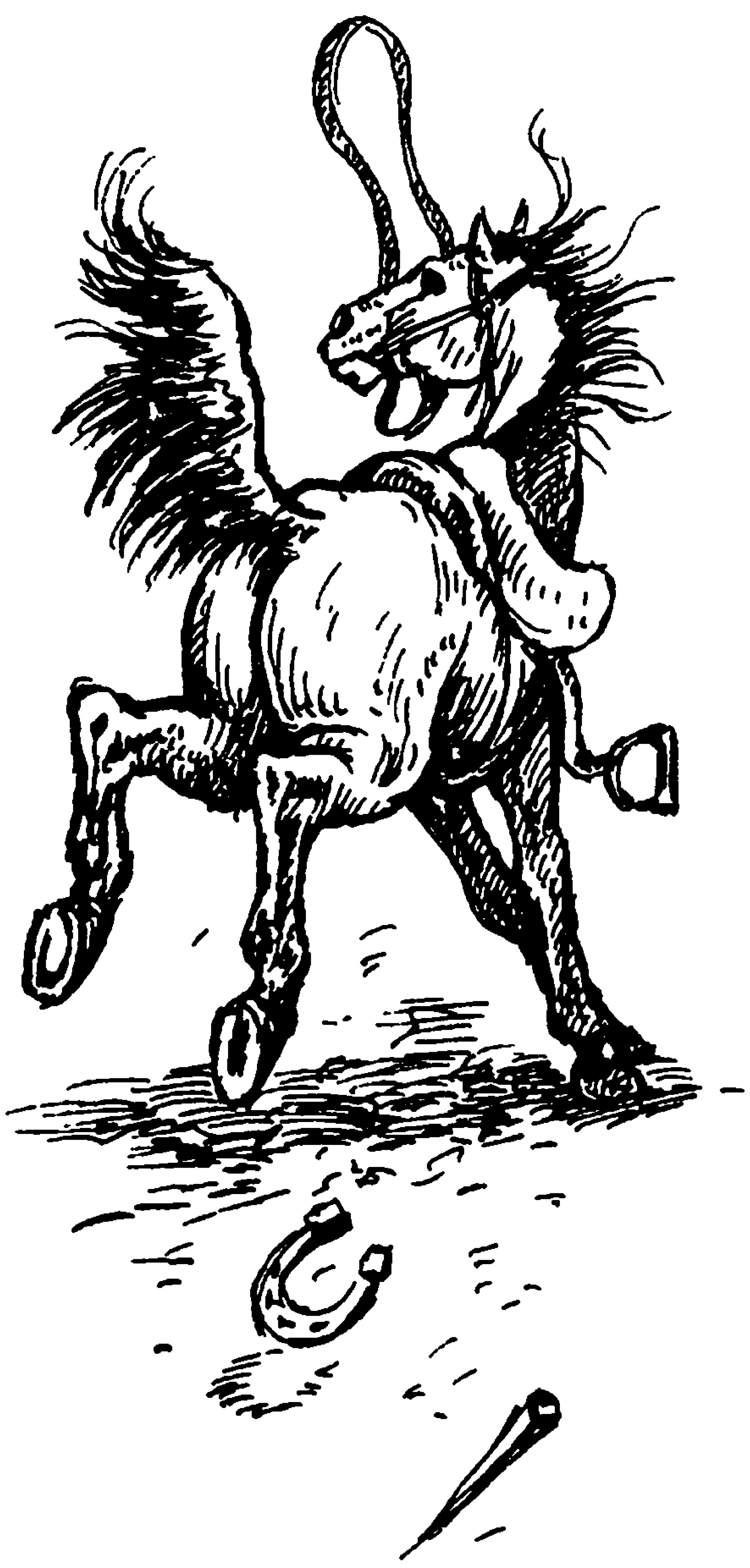
***

For want of a nail
The shoe was lost,
For want of a shoe
The horse was lost,
For want of a horse
The rider was lost,

For want of a rider
The battle was lost,
For want of a battle
The kingdom was lost,
And all for the want
Of a horse shoe nail.

for want [wɔnt] **of** — из-за нехватки (недостатка)
nail [neɪl] — гвоздь
the shoe [ʃu:] **was lost** — подкову потеряли
rider — всадник
the battle was lost — битва проиграна
kingdom — королевство

Гвоздь и подкова



Не было гвоздя —
Подкова
Пропала.

Не было подковы —
Лошадь
Захромала.

Лошадь захромала —
Командир
Убит.

Конница разбита,
Армия
Бежит.

Враг вступает
В город,
Пленных не щадя,—

Оттого, что в кузнице
Не было
Гвоздя!

Перевод С. Маршака

This Is the Key

This is the key of the kingdom:
In that kingdom there is a city.
In that city there is a town.
In that town there is a street.
In that street there is a lane.
In that lane there is a yard.
In that yard there is a house.
In that house there is a room.
In that room there is a bed.
On that bed there is a basket.
In that basket there are some flowers.

Flowers in a basket.
Basket on the bed.
Bed in the room.
Room in the house.
House in the yard.
Yard in the lane.
Lane in the street.
Street in the town.
Town in the city.
City in the kingdom.
Of the kingdom this is the key.

the key [ki:] **of the kingdom** — ключ от королевства
city ['sɪtɪ] — большой город

lane — узкая улица, переулок
yard [ja:d] — двор
basket ['ba:skɪt] — корзина

Ключ

Вот вам ключ от королевства.

В королевстве — город,
А в городе — улица,
А на улице есть двор.
На дворе — высокий дом.
В этом доме — спаленка.
В спальне — колыбелька.
В колыбели — ландышей
Полная корзина.

Ландышей, ландышей
Полная корзина!

Ландыши — в корзине,
Корзина — в колыбельке.
Колыбелька — в спаленке.
А спаленка — в доме.
Дом стоит среди двора.
Двор глядит на улицу.
А улица — в городе,
Город — в королевстве.

Вот от королевства ключ,
Ключ от королевства.

Перевод С. Маршака

The House That Jack Built
(*Extract*)

This is the house that Jack built.

This is the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the dog,
That worried the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.



This is the cow with the crumpled horn,
That tossed the dog,
That worried the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the maiden all forlorn,
That milked the cow with the crumpled horn,
That tossed the dog,
That worried the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the man all tattered and torn,
That kissed the maiden all forlorn,
That milked the cow with the crumpled horn,
That tossed the dog,
That worried the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the priest all shaven and shorn,
That married the man all tattered and torn,
That kissed the maiden all forlorn,
That milked the cow with the crumpled horn,
That tossed the dog,
That worried the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

This is the cock that crowed in the morn,
That waked the priest all shaven and shorn,
That married the man all tattered and torn,
That kissed the maiden all forlorn,
That milked the cow with the crumpled horn,
That tossed the dog,
That worried the cat,
That killed the rat,
That ate the malt
That lay in the house that Jack built.

built [bɪlt] — построил
the malt [mɔlt] **that lay** — солод[1], который лежал
the rat that ate [et] — крыса, которая съела
to kill — убивать
worried ['wʌrɪd] **the cat** — приставала к кошке
the cow with the crumpled horn — корова с согнутым (закрученным) рогом
to toss — подбрасывать, поднимать на рога
the maiden ['meɪdn] **all forlorn** [fə'lɔ:n] — девушка, совсем одинокая
to milk — доить
the man all tattered ['tætəd] **and torn** — мужчина, весь в лохмотьях (оборванный)
to kiss — целовать
the priest [pri:st] **all shaven** ['ʃeɪvn] **and shorn** — священник, побритый и подстриженный
to marry ['mærɪ] — женить, жениться
the cock that crowed [kroud] **in the morn** — петух, который закричал кукареку утром
to wake — будить, пробудить

[1] солод — вещество из проросших и смолотых зерен хлебных злаков, употребляется в пивоварении

Дом, который построил Джек

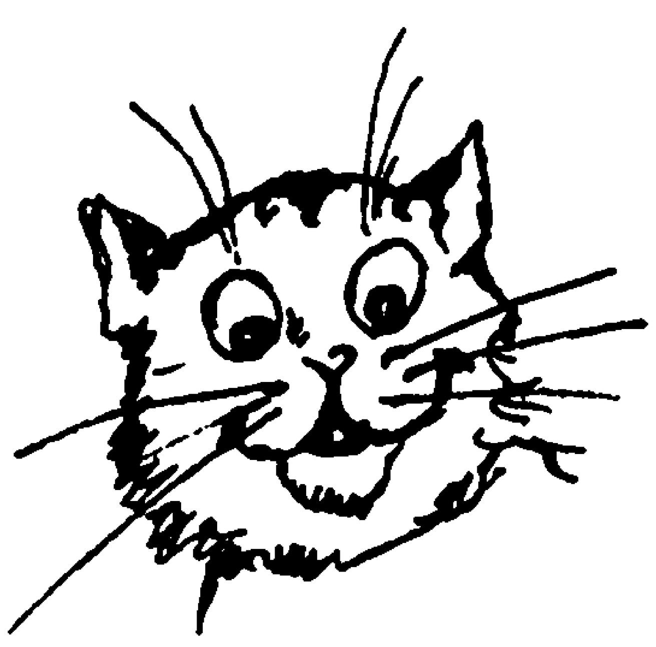
Вот дом,
Который построил Джек.

А это пшеница,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.

А это веселая птица-синица,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.



Вот кот,
Который пугает и ловит синицу,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.





Вот пес без хвоста,
Который за шиворот треплет кота,
Который пугает и ловит синицу,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,

Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.

А это корова безрогая,
Лягнувшая старого пса без хвоста,
Который за шиворот треплет кота,
Который пугает и ловит синицу,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.

А это старушка, седая и строгая,
Которая доит корову безрогую,
Лягнувшую старого пса без хвоста,
Который за шиворот треплет кота,
Который пугает и ловит синицу,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.

А это ленивый и толстый пастух,
Который бранится с коровницей строгою,
Которая доит корову безрогую,
Лягнувшую старого пса без хвоста,
Который за шиворот треплет кота,
Который пугает и ловит синицу,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.

Вот два петуха,
Которые будят того пастуха,

Который бранится с коровницей строгою,
Которая доит корову безрогую,
Лягнувшую старого пса без хвоста,
Который за шиворот треплет кота,
Который пугает и ловит синицу,
Которая ловко ворует пшеницу,
Которая в темном чулане хранится
В доме,
Который построил Джек.

Перевод С. Маршака



JINGLES AND WONDERS[1]

***

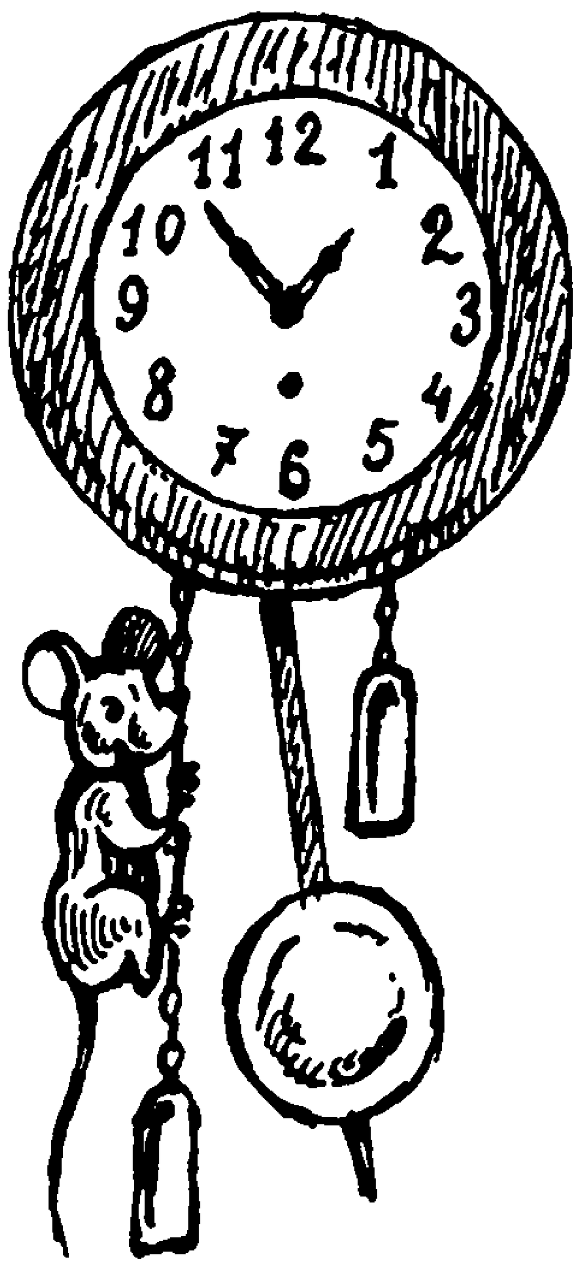
Higglety, pigglety, pop!
The dog has eaten the mop;
The pig's in a hurry,
The cat's in a flurry,
Higglety, pigglety, pop!

has eaten [ˈi:tn] **the mop** — съела швабру
to be in a hurry [ˈhʌrɪ] — торопиться, спешить

[1] Jingles and Wonders — рифмовки и небылицы

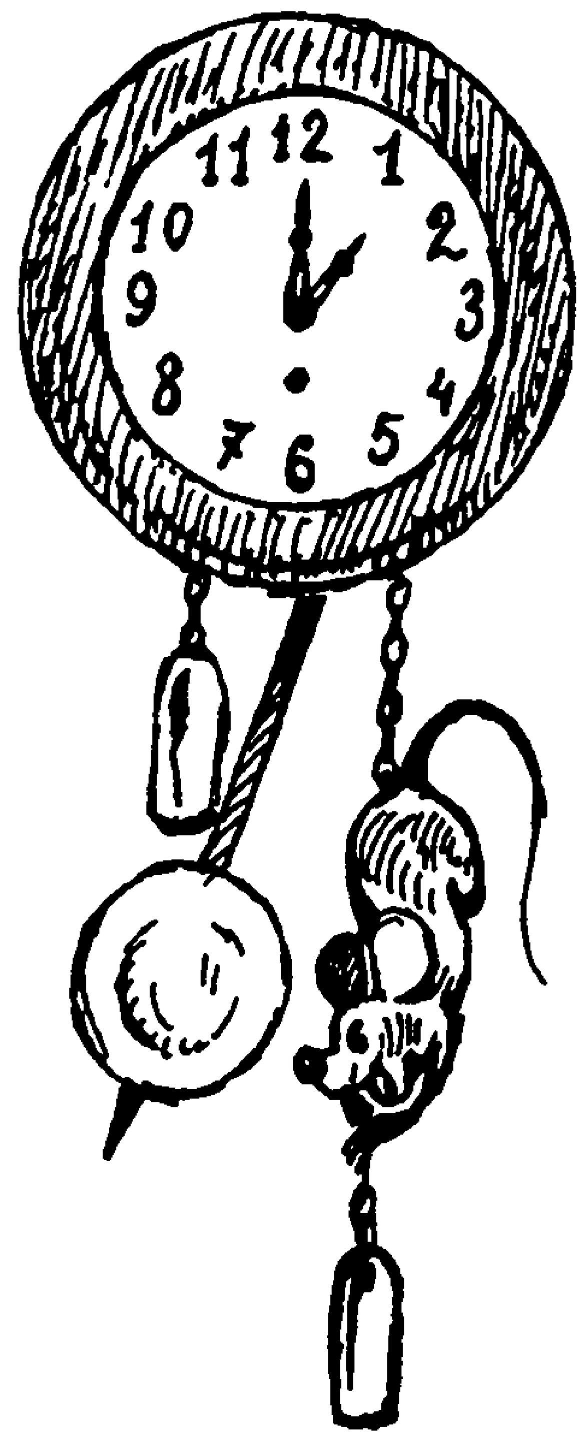
to be in a flurry ['flʌrɪ] — беспокоиться, волноваться (быть в смятении)

***



Hickory, dickory, dock,
The mouse ran up the clock.
The clock struck one,
The mouse ran down,
Hickory, dickory, dock.

ran up — побежала вверх
struck — пробили (*о часах*)



***

Hey diddle, diddle,
The cat and the fiddle,
The cow jumped over the moon;
The little dog laughed
To see such sport,
And the dish ran away with the spoon.

fiddle — скрипка
such sport — такой спорт, такую забаву
the dish ran away [ə'weɪ] **with the spoon** — блюдо убежало вместе с ложкой



***

Diddle, diddle, dumpling, my son John,
Went to bed with his trousers on;
One shoe off, and one shoe on,
Diddle, diddle, dumpling, my son John.

The Flying Pig

Dickery, dickery, dare,
The pig flew up in the air;
The man in brown
Soon brought him down,
Dickery, dickery, dare.

the flying ['flaiiŋ] **pig** — летающая свинья
flew [flu:] **up in the air** [ɛə] — полетела в воздухе
soon [su:n] — скоро, вскоре
brought [brɔ:t] **down** [daun] — подстрелил

Humpty-Dumpty

Humpty-Dumpty sat on a wall,
Humpty-Dumpty had a great fall;
All the King's horses and all the King's men
Couldn't put Humpty together again.

humpty-dumpty ['hʌmptı'dʌmptı] — низенький толстяк, коротышка
sat — сидел
king — король



Шалтай-Болтай

Шалтай-Болтай
Сидел на стене.
Шалтай-Болтай
Свалился во сне.

Вся королевская конница,
Вся королевская рать
Не может
Шалтая,
Не может Болтая,
Шалтая-Болтая,
Болтая-Шалтая,
Шалтая-Болтая собрать.

Перевод С. Маршака

Washing Up

When I was a little boy
I washed my mammy's dishes;
I put my finger in my eye,
And pulled out golden fishes.

pulled [puld] **out golden** ['gouldn] **fishes** — вытаскивал золотые рыбки

Caution

Mother, may I go out to swim?
Yes, my darling daughter,

Hang your clothes on a hickory tree
But don't go near the water.

caution ['kɔ:ʃən] — предостережение, предупреждение
darling ['dɑ:lɪŋ] — любимый, дорогой
hang your clothes [klouðz] — повесь свою одежду
hickory ['hɪkərɪ] — гикори (*род сев.-амер. орешника*)

Tom Tittlemouse

Little Tom Tittlemouse
Lived in a bell-house;
The bell-house broke,
And Tom Tittlemouse woke.

bell-house — дом-колокольчик
broke — разбился, сломался
woke — проснулся

Doctor Foster

Doctor Foster went to Gloucester
In a shower of rain;
He stepped in a puddle,
Right up to his middle,
And never went there again.

Gloucester ['glɔstə] — г. Глостер
a shower ['ʃauə] **of rain** — ливень
stepped in a puddle — ступил в лужу
right [raɪt] **up to his middle** — прямо в середину



Доктор Фостер

Доктор Фостер
Отправился в Глостер.
Весь день его дождь поливал.
Свалился он в лужу,
Промок еще хуже,
И больше он там не бывал.

Перевод С. Маршака

Silly

Gilly Silly Jarter,
She lost her garter,
In a shower of rain.
The miller found it,
The miller ground it,
And the miller gave it to Silly again.

lost her garter — потеряла свою подвязку
the miller found [faund] **it** — мельник нашел ее
ground [graund] — смолол

On Oath

As I went to Bonner,
I met a pig
Without a wig,
Upon my word and honour.

oath [ouθ] — клятва, присяга
met — встретил
without [wɪ'ðaut] **a wig** — без парика
upon [ə'pɔn] **my word** [wə:d] **and honour** ['ɔnə] — честное слово

Не может быть

Даю вам честное слово:
Вчера в половине шестого
Я видел двух свинок
Без шляп и ботинок.
Даю вам честное слово!

Перевод С. Маршака

The Old Woman in a Shoe

There was an old woman
who lived in a shoe,
She had so many children
she didn't know what to do;
She gave them some broth
without any bread;
She whipped them all soundly
and put them to bed.

she gave them some broth [brɔθ] **without** [wɪ'ðaut] **any bread** [bred] — она дала им супа без хлеба
she whipped [wɪpt] **them all soundly** ['saundlɪ] — она устроила им всем хорошую порку

Сказка про старушку

Жила-была старушка в дырявом башмаке.
И было у нее ребят, что пескарей в реке!
Она их выпорола всех, сварила им кисель
И, накормив их киселем, велела лечь в постель.

Перевод С. Маршака



An Old Woman

There was an old wóman
Who lived under a hill,
She put a mouse in a bag,
And sent it to the mill.
The miller did swear
By point of his knife,
He never took toll
Of a mouse in his life.

sent it to the mill — послала ее на мельницу
the miller did swear [swɛə] — мельник клялся

by point [pɔɪnt] **of his knife** [naɪf] — острием своего ножа
he never ['nevə] **took toll** [toul] — он никогда не брал за помол

Мышка в мешке

Однажды старушка
У нас в городке
Послала на мельницу
Мышку в мешке.

Но мельник ни разу
Мышей не молол,
А если молол,
То не брал за помол.

Перевод С. Маршака

Peter White

Peter White will ne'er go right;
Would you know the reason why?
He follows his nose wherever he goes,
And that stands all awry.

ne'er = never — никогда
right [raɪt] — прямо
Would [wud] **you know** [nou] **the reason** ['ri:zn] **why?** — Знаете ли вы почему?
to follow ['fɔlou] — следовать, идти за
wherever [wɛər'evə] — куда бы ни
awry [ə'raɪ] — криво; кривой



A Man in the Wilderness

A man in the wilderness asked me,
How many strawberries grow in the sea.
I answered him, as I thought good,
As many red herrings as swim in the wood.

wilderness ['wıldənıs] — пустыня
strawberries ['strɔ:bərı] — земляника, клубника
herring ['herıŋ] — сельдь

Вопрос и ответ

Спросил меня голос
В пустыне дикой:
— Много ли в море
Растет земляники?

— Столько же, сколько
Селедок соленых
Растет на березах
И елках зеленых.

Перевод С. Маршака

And That's All

There was an old man,
And he had a calf,
And that's half;
He took him out of the stall,
And put him on the wall,
And that's all.

calf [kɑ:f] — теленок
half [hɑ:f] — половина
stall [stɔ:l] — стойло

The Wise Men of Gotham

Three wise men of Gotham
Went to sea in a bowl;
If the bowl had been stronger,
My story would have been longer.

wise — мудрый
bowl [boul] — таз
If the bowl had been stronger, my story would have been longer. — Если бы таз был прочнее, мой рассказ был бы длиннее.

Три мудреца

Три мудреца в одном тазу
Пустились по морю в грозу.

Будь попрочнее
Старый таз,
Длиннее
Был бы мой рассказ.

Перевод С. Маршака

The King and His Daughters

There was a king, and he had three daughters,
And they all lived in a basin of water;

The basin bended,
My story's ended.
If the basin had been stronger,
My story would have been longer.

basin ['beɪsn] — миска, таз
to bend — наклоняться
my story's ended — мой рассказ окончился

The Crooked Man



There was a crooked man,
And he walked a crooked mile,
He found a crooked sixpence
Against a crooked stile;
He bought a crooked cat,
Which caught a crooked mouse,
And they all lived together
In a little crooked house.

crooked ['krukɪd] — кривой, сгорбленный
mile — миля (= *1609 м*)
found [faund] — нашел
sixpence ['sɪkspəns] — монета в 6 пенсов (*была в обращении до 1971 года*)
against [ə'geɪnst] — напротив
stile — ступеньки для перехода через забор или стену; перелаз

***

Жил-был человечек кривой на мосту.
Прошел он однажды кривую версту.
И вдруг на пути меж камней мостовой
Нашел потускневший полтинник кривой.
Купил на полтинник кривую он кошку.
А кошка кривую нашла ему мышку,
И так они жили втроем понемножку,
Покуда не рухнул кривой их домишко.

Перевод С. Маршака

***

If all the world was paper,
And all the sea was ink,
If all the trees were bread and cheese,
What should we have to drink?

if all the world [wə:ld] **was paper** ['peɪpə] — если бы весь мир был из бумаги
ink — чернила
bread [bred] — хлеб
cheese [tʃi:z] — сыр
What should [ʃud] **we have to drink?** — Что бы мы пили?

***

If all the seas were one sea,
What a *great* sea that would be!
If all the trees were one tree,

What a *great* tree that would be!
And if all the axes were one axe,
What a *great* axe that would be!
And if all the men were one man,
What a *great* man that would be!
And if the *great* man took the *great* axe,
And cut down the *great* tree,
And let it fall into the *great* sea,
What a splish-splash that would be!

if all the seas were one sea — если бы все моря были одно море
what a great sea that would [wud] **be** — какое это было бы большое море
axe [æks] — топор
cut down [daun] — срубил
splish-splash — брызги, плеск

Если бы да кабы!..

Кабы реки да озера
Слить бы в озеро одно,
А из всех деревьев бора
Сделать дерево одно,

Топоры бы все расплавить
И отлить один топор,
А из всех людей составить
Человека выше гор,

Кабы, взяв топор могучий,
Этот грозный великан
Этот ствол обрушил с кручи
В это море-океан,—

То-то громкий был бы треск,
То-то шумный был бы плеск.

Перевод С. Маршака

Robin the Bobbin

Robin the Bobbin,
the big-bellied Ben,
He ate more meat
than fourscore men;
He ate a cow,
he ate a calf,
He ate a butcher
and a half,
He ate a church,
he ate a steeple,
He ate a priest
and all the people!
A cow and a calf,
An ox and a half,
A church and a steeple,
And all good people,
And yet he complained
that his stomach wasn't full.



big-bellied — с большим брюхом
he ate [et] **more meat** — он съел больше мяса
fourscore ['fɔ:'skɔ:] — *устар.* восемьдесят
calf [kɑ:f] — теленок
butcher ['butʃə] — мясник
half [hɑ:f] — половина
church [tʃə:tʃ] — церковь
steeple ['sti:pl] — колокольня

priest [pri:st] — священник
ox — бык
and yet he complained [kəm'pleɪnd] — и он еще жаловался
stomach ['stʌmək] — желудок, живот

Рóбин-Бóббин

Рóбин-Бóббин
Кое-как
Подкрепился
Натощак:
Съел теленка
Утром рано,
Двух овечек
И барана,
Съел корову
Целиком
И прилавок
С мясником,
Сотню жаворонков в тесте
И коня с телегой вместе,
Пять церквей и колоколен —
Да еще и недоволен!

Перевод С. Маршака

The Little Woman and the Pedlar

There was a little woman,
As I have heard tell,
She went to market
Her eggs for to sell;
She went to market

All on a market day,
And she fell asleep
On the king's highway.

There came by a pedlar,
His name was Stout,
He cut her petticoats
All round about
He cut her petticoats
Up to her knees;
Which made the little woman
To shiver and sneeze.

When this little woman
Began to awake,
She began to shiver,
And she began to shake;
She began to shake,
And she began to cry,
Lawk a mercy on me,
This is none of I!

But if this be I,
As I do hope it be,
I have a little dog at home
And he knows me;
If it be I,
He'll wag his little tail,
And if it be not I
He'll loudly bark and wail!

Home went the little woman
All in the dark,

Up starts the little dog,
And he began to bark;
He began to bark,
And she began to cry,
Lawk a mercy on me,
This is none of I!

pedlar ['pedlə] — коробейник, разносчик
as I have heard [hə:d] **tell** — я слышал, как рассказывали
she went to market ['mɑ:kɪt] **her eggs for to sell** — она пошла на рынок продавать яйца
fell asleep — заснула
highway ['haɪweɪ] — большая дорога, большак
petticoat ['petɪkout] — юбка
up to her knees [ni:z] — по колени
to shiver ['ʃivə] **and sneeze** — дрожать и чихать
began [bɪ'gæn] **to awake** [ə'weɪk] — начала просыпаться
to shake — дрожать, трястись
to cry — кричать
Lawk [lɔ:k] **a mercy** ['mə:sɪ] **on me** ...! — О, господи, помилуй...!
this is none [nʌn] **of I** — это не я
if this be I, as I do hope it be — если бы это действительно была я, как я надеюсь
to wag the little tail — вилять хвостом
he'll loudly ['laudlɪ] **bark and wail** [weɪl] — он (пес) громко залает и завоет
all in the dark — совсем в темноте
up starts — вскакивает, бросается

Сказка о старушке

Старушка пошла продавать молоко.
Деревня от рынка была далеко.

Устала старушка и, кончив дела,
У самой дороги вздремнуть прилегла.

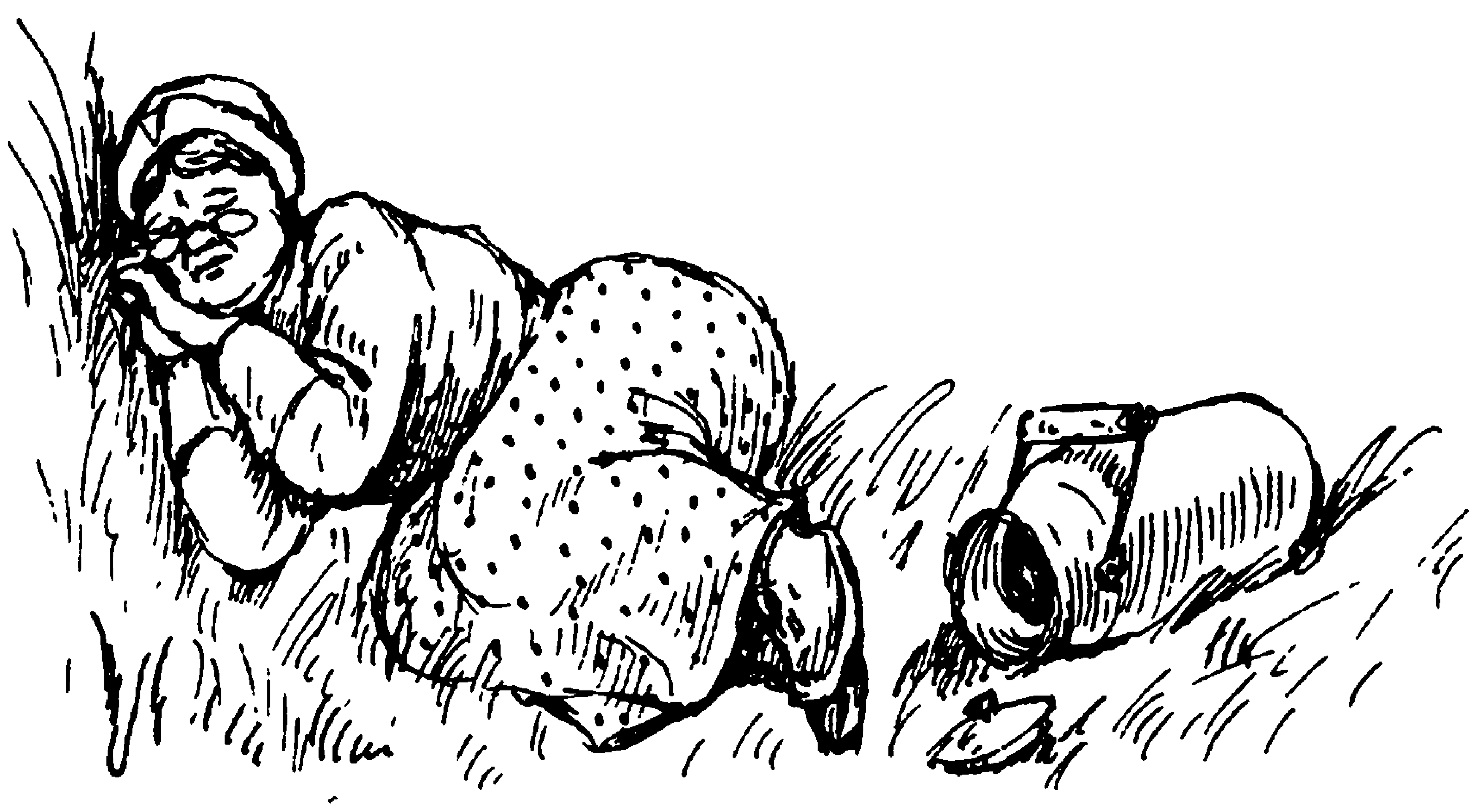
К старушке веселый щенок подошел,
За юбку схватил и порвал ей подол.
Погода была в это время свежа.
Старушка проснулась, от стужи дрожа.

Проснулась старушка и стала искать
Домашние туфли, свечу и кровать.
Но, порванной юбки ощупав края,
Сказала: «Ах, батюшки, это не я!»

Пойду-ка домой. Если я — это я,
Меня не укусит собака моя.
Она меня встретит, визжа, у ворот,
А если не я — на куски разорвет».

В окно постучала старушка чуть свет.
Залаяла громко собака в ответ.
Старушка присела, сама не своя,
И тихо сказала: «Ну, значит, – не я!»

Перевод С. Маршака





SONGS AND RIDDLES

To the Rain

Rain, rain, go away,
Come again another day,
Little Johnny wants to play.

***

Rain, rain, go to Spain,
Never show your face again.

Spain [speɪn] — Испания

***

Rain on the green grass,
And rain on the tree,
Rain on the house-top,
But not on me.

the house-top — крыша

Churning

Come, butter, come,
Come, butter, come;
Peter stands at the gate
Waiting for a butter cake.
Come, butter, come.

churning [ˈtʃə:nɪŋ] — сбивание масла
butter — масло
at the gate — у ворот
waiting [ˈweɪtɪŋ] — ожидая

A Rhyme for Washing Hands

Wash, hands, wash,
Daddy's gone to plough.
Splash, hands, splash,
They're all washed now.



Daddy's gone [gɔn] **to plough** [plau] — папа ушел пахать
to splash [splæʃ] — брызгаться, плескаться

Marching

March, march, head erect,
Left, right, that's correct.

to march, marching — маршировать, маршировка
erect [ɪ'rekt] — прямо
that's correct [kə'rekt] — правильно

A Song from a Game

Blind man, blind man,
Sure you can't see?
Turn round three times,
And try to catch me.
Turn east, turn west,
Catch as you can,
Did you think you'd caught me?
Blind, blind man!

game — игра
blind [blaɪnd] — слепой
sure [ʃuə] — конечно
Turn round [raund] **three times, and try to catch me**. — Повернись вокруг три раза и постарайся поймать меня.
east — восток
west — запад
you'd (had) caught me? — ты поймал меня?

***

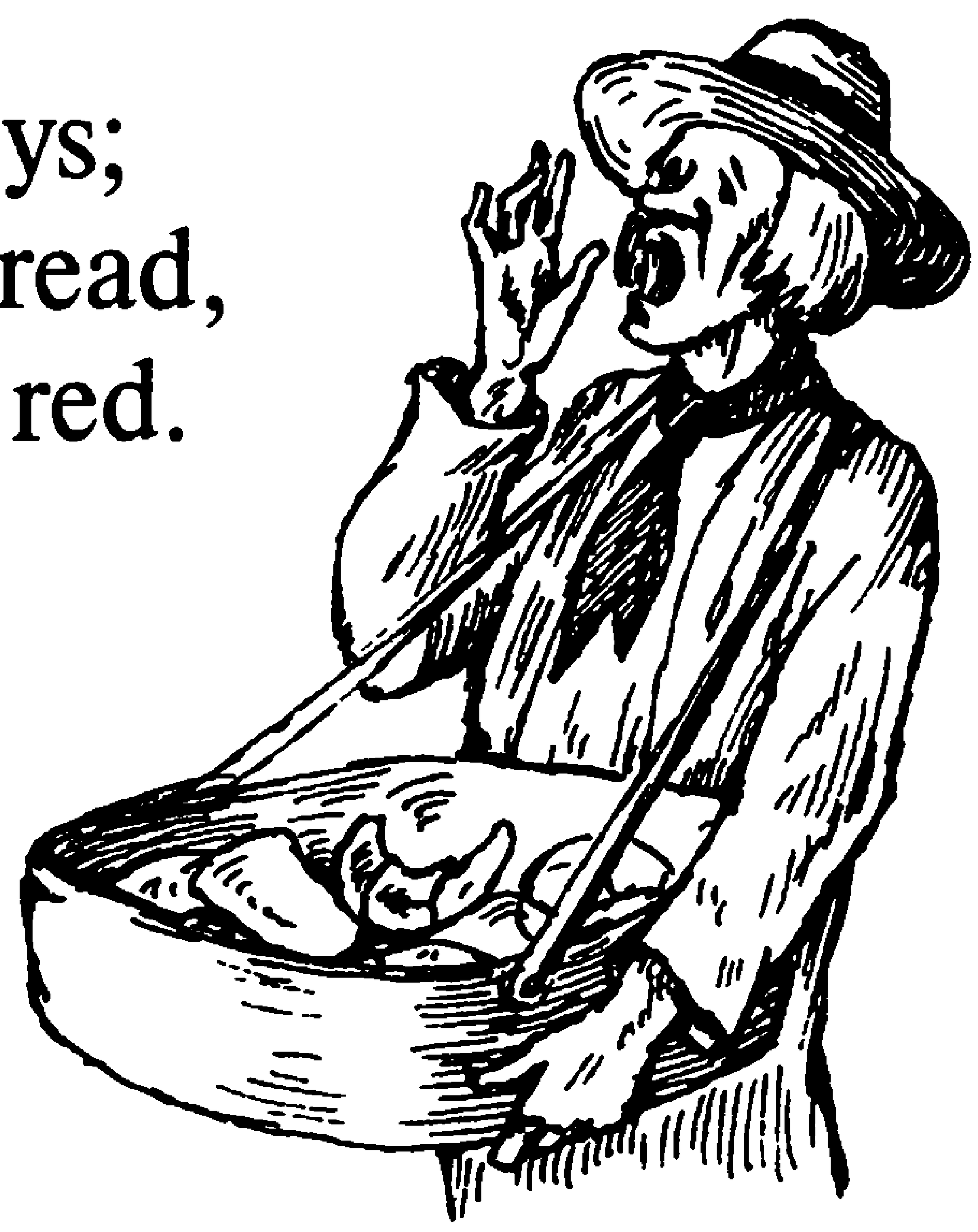
One, two,
Buckle my shoe;

Three, four,
Knock at the door;
Five, six,
Pick up sticks;
Seven, eight,
Lay them straight;
Nine, ten,
A good fat hen.

buckle ['bʌkl] — застегивать пряжку
to knock [nɔk] — стучать(ся)
pick up sticks — подними палки
lay [leɪ] **them straight** [streɪt] — положи их ровно
fat — жирный

The Gingerbread Man

Smiling girls, rosy boys,
Come and buy my little toys;
Monkeys made of gingerbread,
And sugar horses painted red.



gingerbread ['dʒɪndʒəbred] — пряник
smiling ['smaɪlɪŋ] — улыбающийся
rosy — румяный, розовый
made of — сделанные из
sugar ['ʃugə] **horses painted red** —
сахарные лошадки красного цвета

Chairs to Mend

If I'd as much money as I
could spend,



I never would cry, Old chairs
to mend!
Old chairs to mend! Old chairs
to mend!
I never would cry, Old chairs
to mend!

mend — чинить, ремонтировать
if I'd (I had) as much money ['mʌnɪ]
as I could spend — если бы
я имел столько денег, сколько
я мог потратить
I never ['nevə] **would** [wud] **cry** —
я никогда не кричал бы

***

If I'd as much money as I could tell,
I never would cry, Old clothes to sell!
Old clothes to sell! Old clothes to sell!
I never would cry, Old clothes to sell!

Old clothes [klouðz] **to sell!** — Продавайте старую одежду!

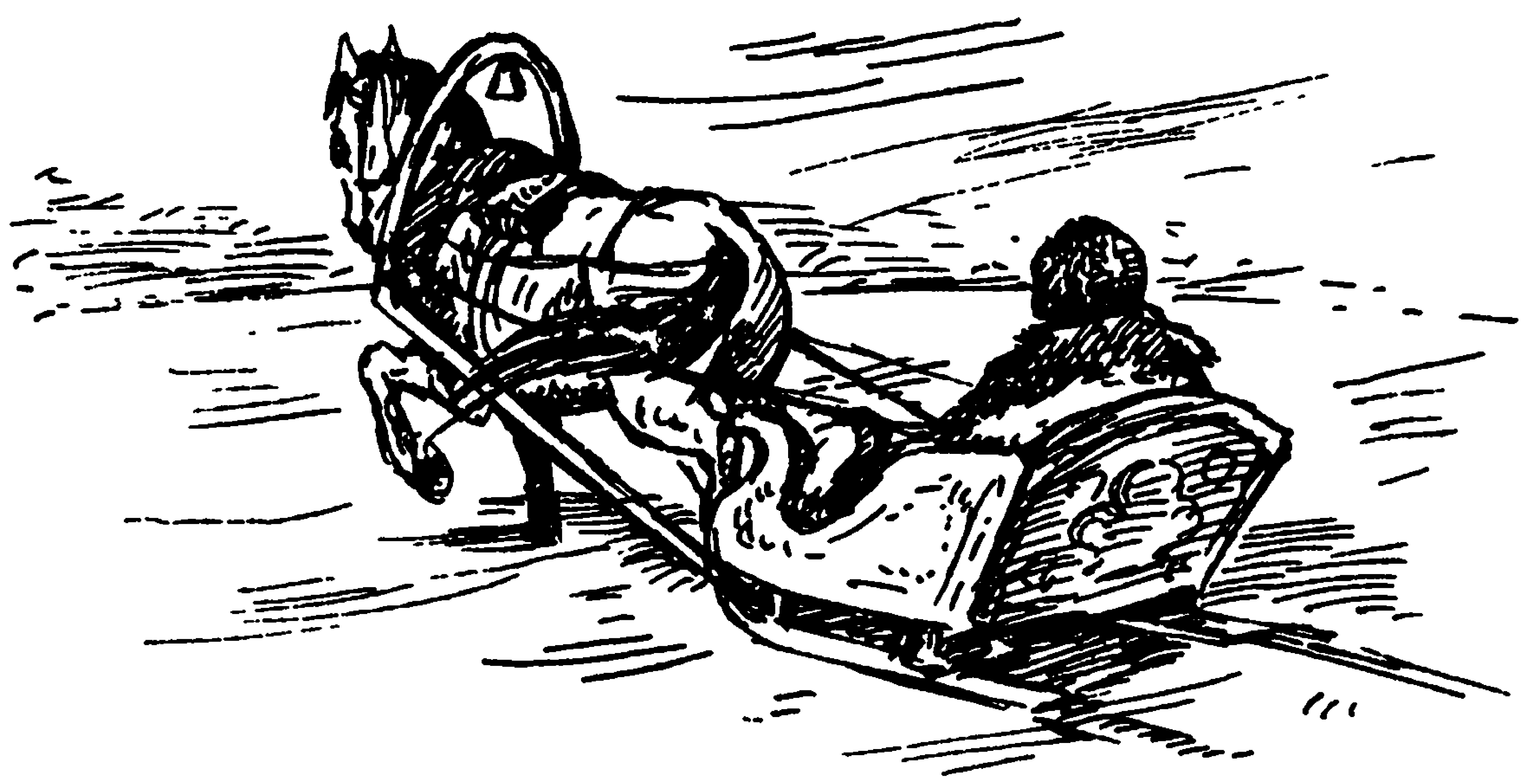
Buy Any Buttons?

Buttons, a farthing a pair,
Come, who will buy them of me?
They are round and sound and pretty
And fit for the girls of the city.
Come, who will buy them of me?
Buttons, a farthing a pair.

button ['bʌtn] — пуговица
a farthing ['fɑːðɪŋ] **a pair** [pɛə] — фартинг за пару
they are round and sound [saund] **and pretty** ['prɪtɪ] — они круглые, прочные и красивые
to fit — годиться

Jingle, Bells

Jingle, bells! Jingle, bells!
Jingle all the way;
Oh, what fun it is to ride
In a one-horse open sleigh.



Jingle ['dʒɪŋgl], **bells!** — Звените, колокольчики!
all the way — всю дорогу
what fun it is to ride — как весело ехать
open sleigh [sleɪ] — открытые сани

Tea-Time



Polly, put the kettle on,
Polly, put the kettle on,
Polly, put the kettle on,
We'll all have tea.

Sukey, take it off again,
Sukey, take it off again,
Sukey, take it off again,
They've all gone away.

put the kettle on — поставь чайник
take it off — сними его (чайник)
they've (they have) all gone [gɔn] **away** [ə'weɪ] — они все ушли

Harvest Song

The boughs do shake and the bells do ring,
So merrily comes our harvest in,
Our harvest in, our harvest in,
So merrily comes our harvest in.

We have ploughed, we have sowed,
We have reaped, we have mowed,
We have brought home every load,
Hip, hip, hip, harvest home!

harvest ['hɑːvɪst] — урожай
the boughs [bauz] **do shake and the bells do ring** — ветви качаются, и колокольчики звенят
merrily ['merɪlɪ] — весело, радостно
we have ploughed [plaud], **we have sowed** [soud] — мы вспахали, мы засеяли
we have reaped, we have mowed [moud] — мы сжали, мы заскирдовали
we have brought [brɔːt] **home every** ['evrɪ] **load** [loud] — мы привезли домой все возы
hip — эй

The Brave Old Duke of York

Oh, the brave old Duke of York,
He had ten thousand men;
He marched them up to the top of the hill
And he marched them down again.
And when they were up, they were up,
And when they were down, they were down.
And when they were only half-way up,
They were neither up nor down.



the brave old duke [dju:k] — храбрый старый герцог
he marched them up to the top of the hill — он повел их на вершину холма
neither ['naɪðə] **... nor** [nɔ:] — ни... ни...

***

Higher than a house,
Higher than a tree;
Oh, whatever can that be?

whatever [wɔt'evə] **can that be?** — что бы это могло быть?

***

Thirty white horses
Upon a red hill,
Now they stamp,
Now they champ,
Now they stand still.

to stamp — *зд.* кусать
to champ — жевать
they stand still — они стоят спокойно

***



Two brothers we are,
Great burdens we bear,
On which we are bitterly pressed;
The truth is to say,
We are full all the day,
And empty when we go to rest.

great [greɪt] **burdens** ['bə:dnz] **we bear** [bɛə] — мы носим тяжелую ношу
we are bitterly ['bɪtəlɪ] **pressed** — мы сильно сжаты
the truth [tru:θ] **is to say** — по правде говоря
empty ['emptɪ] — пустой, порожний

***

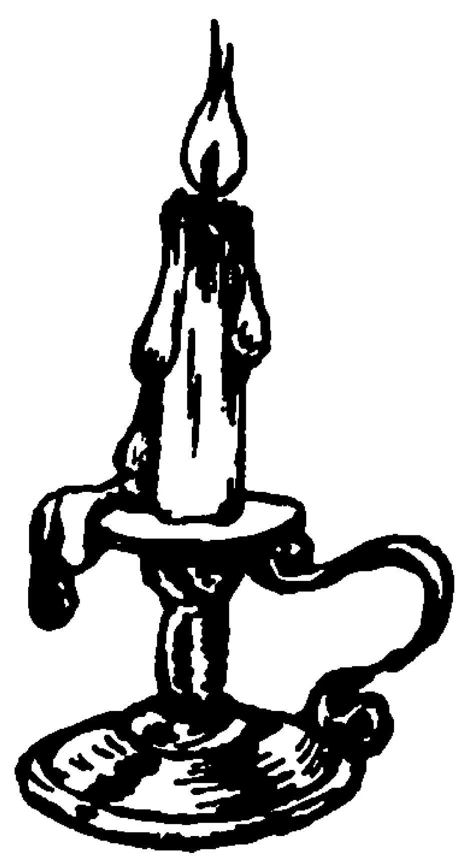
Little Nancy Etticoat
With a white petticoat,
And a red nose;

She has no feet or hands
The longer she stands
The shorter she grows.

petticoat ['petıkout] — юбка
to grow [grou] — становиться

Свеча

Тонкая девчонка,
Белая юбчонка,
Красный нос.



Чем длиннее ночи,
Тем она короче
От горючих слез.

Перевод С. Маршака

***

As I was walking in a field of wheat,
I picked up something good to eat;
Neither fish, flesh, fowl, nor bone,
I kept it till it ran alone.

as I was walking ['wɔːkıŋ] — когда я шел
wheat [wiːt] — пшеница
to pick up — подбирать
neither ['naıðə] **fish, flesh, fowl** [faul], **nor bone** — ни рыба, ни мясо, ни птица, ни кость
I kept it till it ran alone. [ə'loun] — Я хранил его, пока оно само не побежало.

Загадка

В чистом поле на ходу
Я нашел себе еду —
Не мясо, не рыбу,
Не хлеб и не сало.
Но скоро еда от меня убежала.

(*Яйцо — цыпленок*)

Перевод С. Маршака

***

He went to the wood and caught it,
He sat him down and sought it;
Because he could not find it,
Home with him he brought it.

wood — лес
caught [kɔ:t] — поймал
he sat him down [daun] **and sought** [sɔ:t] **it** — он сел и начал искать его
to find [faɪnd] — находить

***

Elizabeth, Elspeth, Betsy and Bess,
They all went together to seek a bird's nest;
They found a bird's nest with five eggs in,
They all took one, and left four in.

to seek — искать, разыскивать
nest — гнездо
left — оставили

Загадка

Эли́забет, Лиззи,
Бэтси и Бэсс
Весною с корзинкой
Отправились в лес.
В гнезде на березе,
Где не было птиц,
Нашли они пять
Розоватых яиц.
Им всем четверым
По яичку досталось,
И все же четыре
На месте осталось.



Разгадка

Хоть разные
Названы здесь имена
(Элизабет,
Лиззи,
Бэтси и Бэсс),
Но так называлась
Девчонка одна.
Она и ходила
С корзинкою в лес.

Перевод С. Маршака

***

Two legs sat upon three legs
With one leg in his lap;

In comes four legs
And runs away with one leg;
Up jumps two legs,
Catches up three legs,
Throws it after four legs,
And makes him bring back one leg.

lap — колени
to catch up — поднять, подхватить
to throw [θrou] — бросать, кидать
to make — заставлять



INDEX OF FIRST LINES

P

R

S

T

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:
тел./факс: (495) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 106

Наш сайт: www.airis.ru

Вы можете приобрести наши книги
с 11^{00} до 17^{30}, кроме субботы, воскресенья,
в киоске по адресу: пр. Мира, д. 106, тел. 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «Айрис-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.
По всем вопросам обращаться
по тел.: (495) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

Учебное издание

АНГЛИЙСКИЕ СТИХИ ДЛЯ ДЕТЕЙ

Составитель *Верхогляд Вера Александровна*

Ведущий редактор *Е. Л. Занина*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *А. Н. Белов*
Иллюстрации на обложку *В. М. Трифонов*
Обложка *А. М. Кузнецов*
Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*
Компьютерная верстка *Ю. Б. Курганова*
Корректоры *Е. Ю. Драгныш, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 23.05.06. Формат 60×90/16.
Гарнитура «Таймс». Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 6. Усл.-печ. л. 6.
Тираж 3000 экз. Заказ № 3532.

ООО «Издательство "Айрис-пресс"»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

Отпечатано
в ОАО «Можайский полиграфический комбинат»
143200, г. Можайск, ул. Мира, 93